68 - INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS/TRIM PANELS AND COVERS

Glove compartment, assembly overview

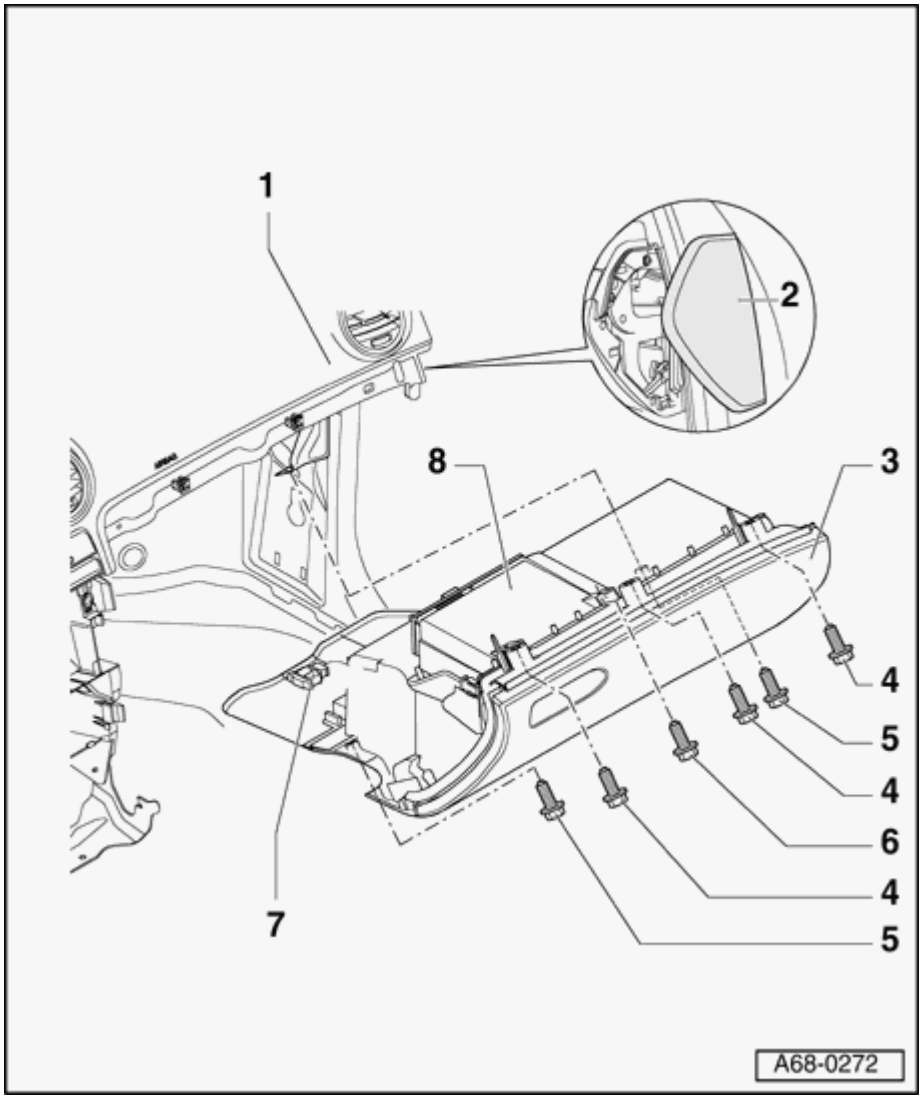


Fig. 1: Glove Compartment, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Instrument panel

2 - Instrument panel cover, right

- Removing **Removing right instrument panel cover**

3 - Glove compartment

cardiagn.com

- **Removing**

  - Remove instrument panel cover - **2** -.
  - Open glove compartment lid.
  - Remove three bolts - **4** - in recesses at top of glove compartment - **3** -.
  - Remove bolts - **5** - (2x) from underneath (footwell).
  - For vehicles with CD changer - **8** - : Remove bolt - **6** -.
  - Vehicles with insulation box: Remove vent.
  - Pull out glove compartment downward.
  - Disconnect connector - **7** - from glove compartment light.
  - Disconnect connectors to electrical components in glove compartment (if applicable).

4 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

5 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

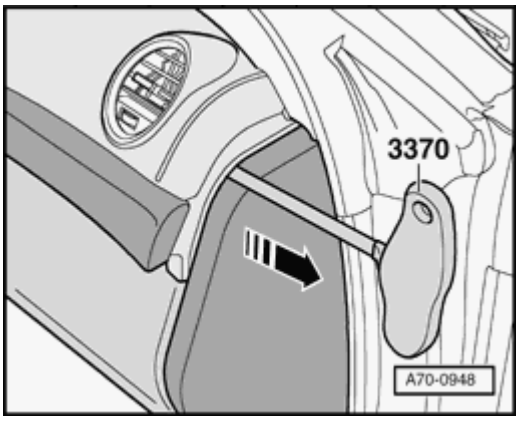
6 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm
- Vehicles with CD changer only

7 - Connector

8 - CD changer

Removing right instrument panel cover



cardiagn.com

Fig. 2: Removing Right Instrument Panel Cover Using Front End Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front end hook 3370

Removing:

- Remove right instrument panel cover - **arrow** - using front end hook 3370.

Glove compartment lock handle, removing and installing

- **Removing**

- Open glove compartment lid - **2** -.
- Use a screwdriver to carefully pry cover - **1** - from glove compartment lid.

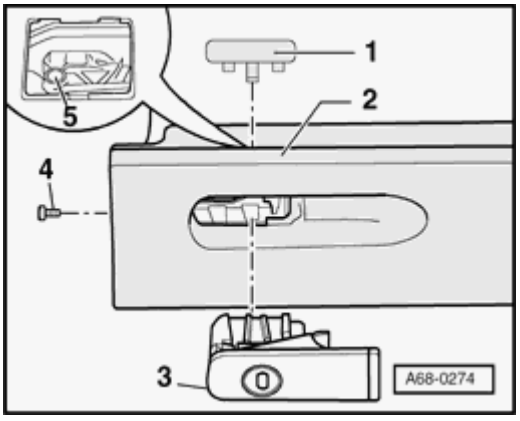


Fig. 3: Glove Compartment Lock Handle, Removing/Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **4** - from handle - **3** - on left side of glove compartment.
- Use a screwdriver to carefully press central locking lever - **5** - out of glove compartment lock.
- Remove handle - **3** - from glove compartment lid.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Damping mechanism for glove compartment lid, removing and installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front end hook 3370

cardiagn.com

Removing

- Open glove compartment.

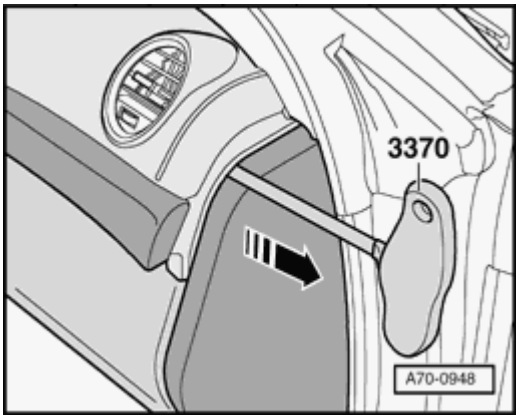


Fig. 4: Removing Right Instrument Panel Cover Using Front End Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove right instrument panel cover - **arrow** - using front end hook 3370.

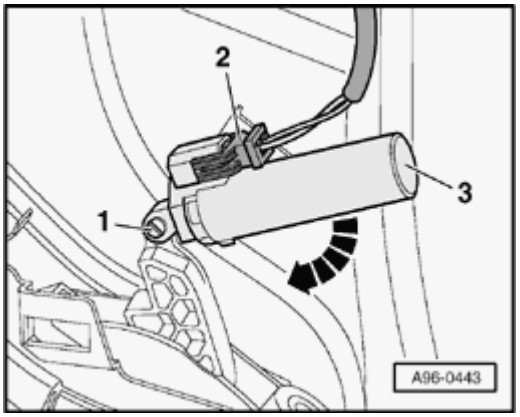


Fig. 5: Disconnecting Electrical Connector, Removing Joint Pin 1 & Disengaging Brake For Glove Compartment Cover In A Clockwise
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector - **2** -.
- Remove joint pin - **1** -.
- Unlock glove compartment lid damping mechanism - **3** - in clockwise direction and remove.

NOTE:

- **Shown in illustration with glove box removed.**
- **Installing**
- **Installation is in reverse order of removal.**

Glove compartment (vehicles with knee bolster), assembly overview

cardiagn.com

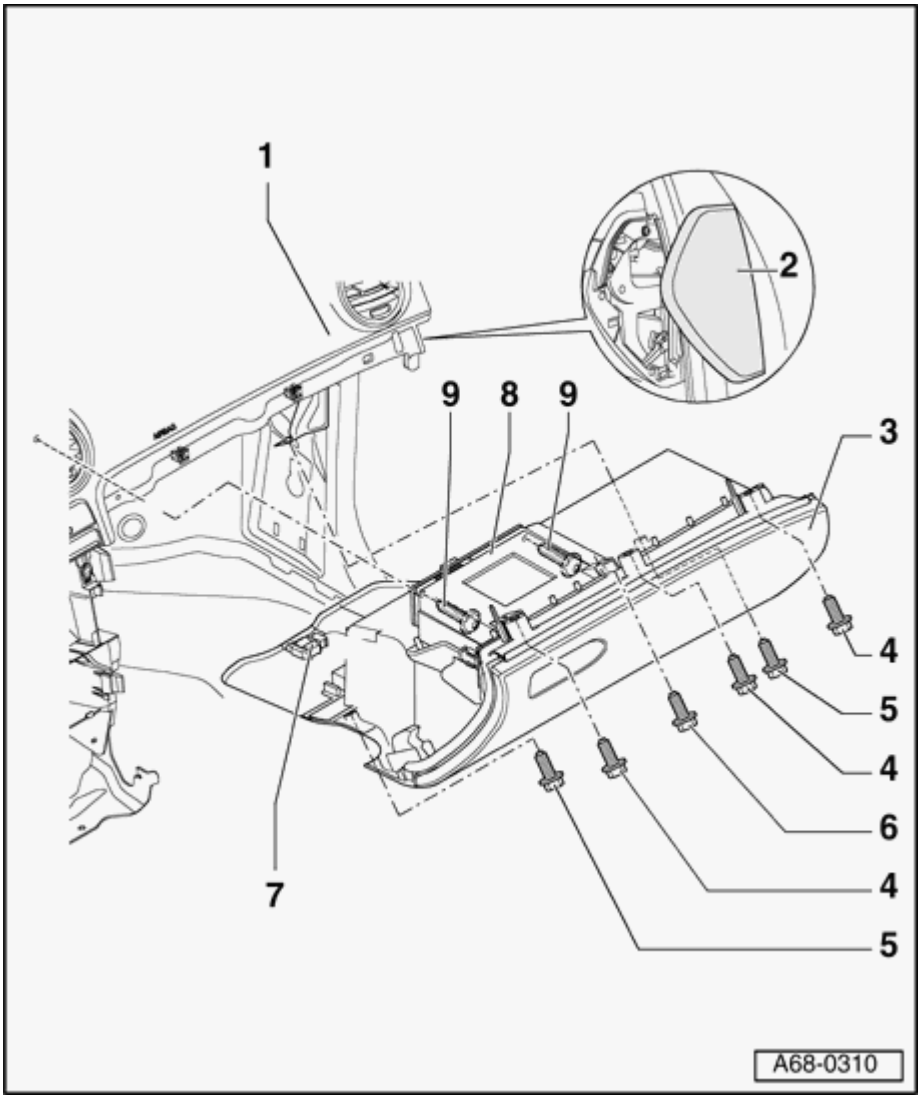


Fig. 6: Glove Compartment (Vehicles With Knee Bolster), Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Instrument panel

2 - Instrument panel cover, right

- Removing **Removing right instrument panel cover**

3 - Glove compartment

Removing

- Remove instrument panel cover - **2** - **Removing right instrument panel cover**.
- Open glove compartment lid.
- Remove three bolts - **4** - in recesses at top of glove compartment - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolts - **5** - (2x) from underneath (footwell).
- For vehicles with CD changer - **8** - : Remove bolt - **6** -.
- Remove bolts - **9** -.
- Vehicles with insulation box: Screw out vent :
- Pull out glove compartment downward.
- Disconnect connector - **7** - of glove compartment light.
- Disconnect connectors to electrical components in glove compartment (if applicable).

4 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

5 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

6 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 5 Nm
- Only for vehicles with CD changer

7 - Connector

8 - CD changer

9 - Bolts (2x)

Removing instrument panel cover, right

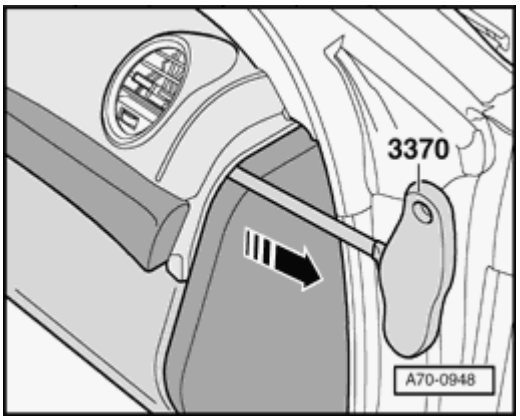


Fig. 7: Removing Right Instrument Panel Cover Using Front End Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front end hook 3370

Removing

- Remove right instrument panel cover - **arrow** - using front end hook 3370.

Glove compartment lock handle (vehicles with knee bolster), removing and installing

- **Removing**

- Open glove compartment lid - **2** -.
- Use a screwdriver to carefully pry cover - **1** - from glove compartment lid.

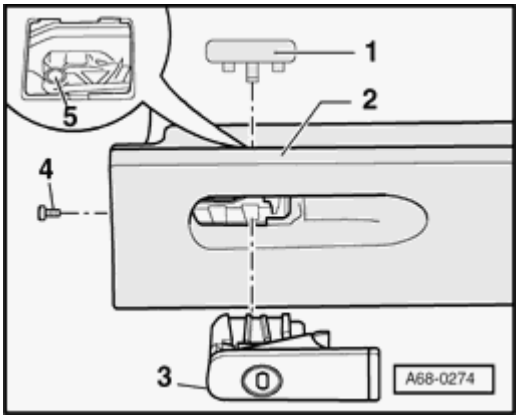


Fig. 8: Glove Compartment Lock Handle, Removing/Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **4** - from handle - **3** - on left side of glove compartment.
- Use a screwdriver to carefully press central locking lever - **5** - out of glove compartment lock.
- Remove handle - **3** - from glove compartment lid.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Glove compartment lid damping mechanism (vehicles with knee bolster), removing and installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front end hook 3370

Removing:

- Open glove compartment.

cardiagn.com

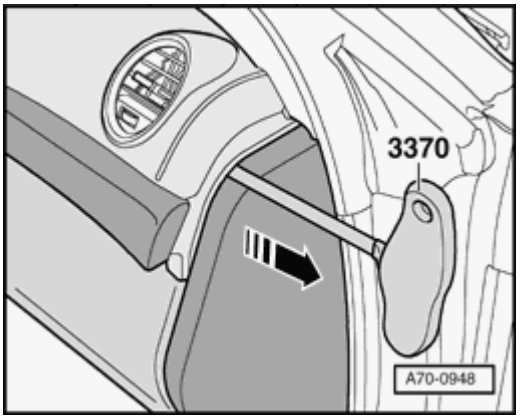


Fig. 9: Removing Right Instrument Panel Cover Using Front End Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove right instrument panel cover - **arrow** - using front end hook 3370.

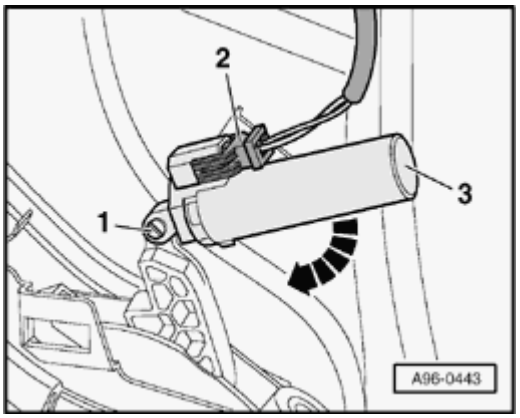


Fig. 10: Disconnecting Electrical Connector, Removing Joint Pin 1 & Disengaging Brake For Glove Compartment Cover In A Clockwise
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector - **2** -.
- Remove joint pin - **1** -.
- Unlock glove compartment lid damping mechanism - **3** - in clockwise direction and remove.

NOTE:

- **Shown in illustration with glove compartment removed.**

Insulation compartment, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

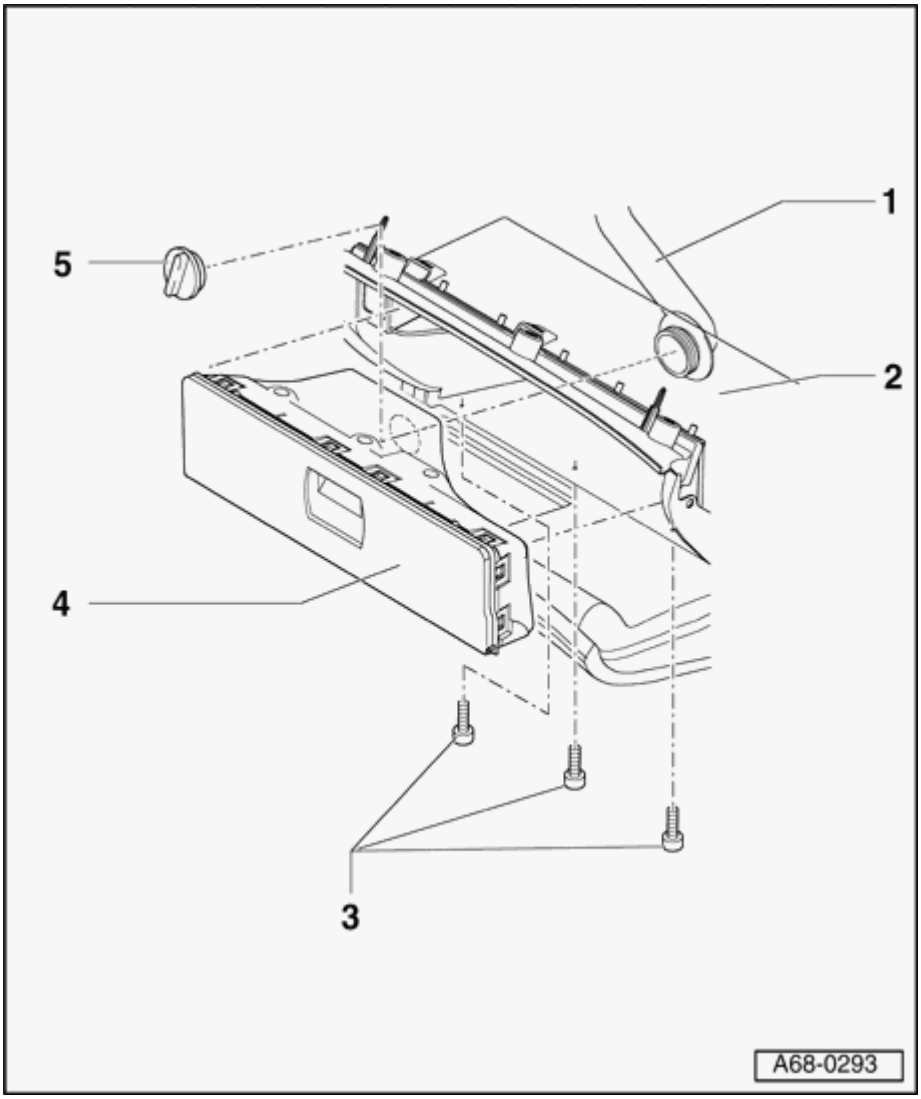


Fig. 11: Insulation Compartment Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cold air hose

2 - Glove compartment

3 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 0.6 Nm

4 - Insulation box

Removing

- Remove vent - **5** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolts - **3** - (3x) and carefully pull insulation box out off glove compartment - **2** -.

NOTE:

- **Install cold air hose - 1 - and screw to vent - 5 -.**

5 - Vent

- Tighten as far as possible

Drivers storage compartment (without knee protection), removing and installing

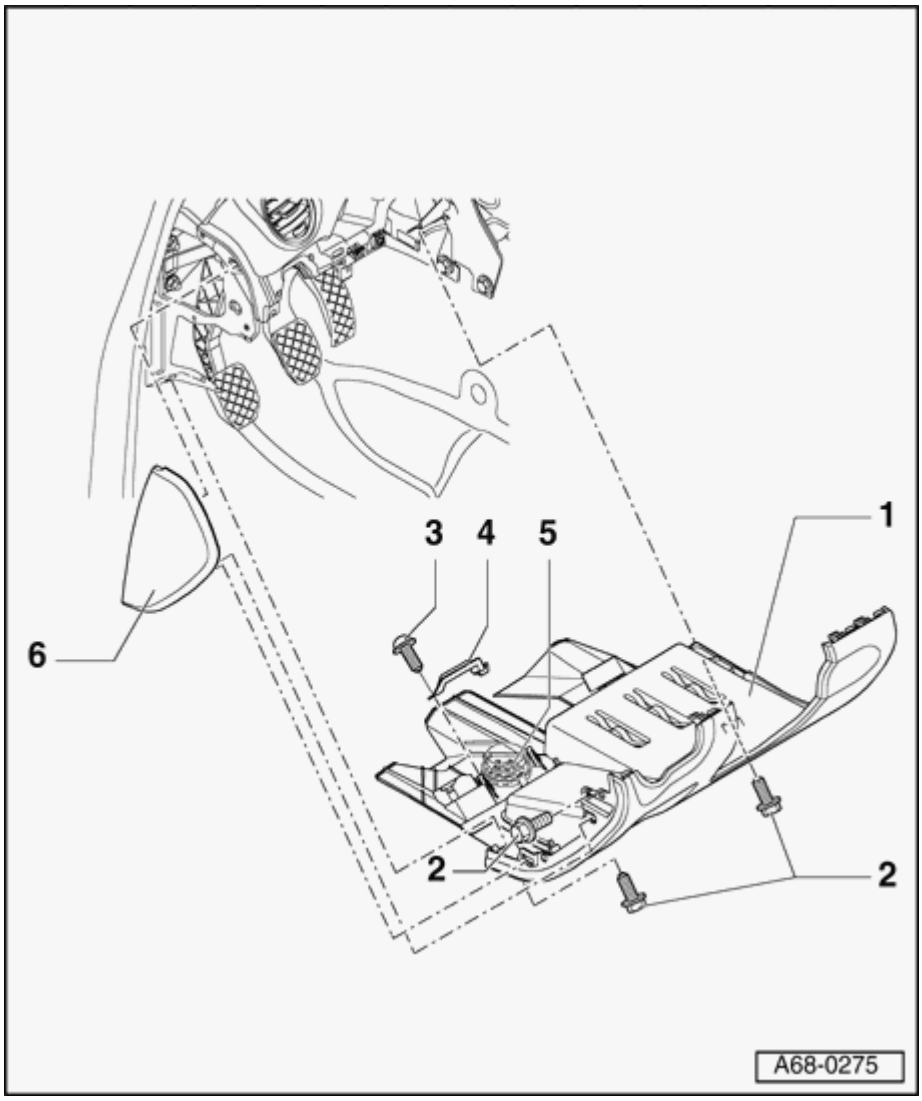


Fig. 12: Drivers Storage Compartment (Without Knee Protection) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Drivers storage compartment

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

- Remove instrument panel cover - **6** - **Removing left instrument panel cover**.
- Remove bolts - **2** - (3x).
- Pull storage compartment at top of instrument panel to back and remove.
- Unclip diagnostic connector.
- Disconnect connector on footwell light and on additional speaker - **5** - if required.

- **Installing**

- First engage drivers storage compartment in guides on bottom edge, then clip onto instrument panel at top.

2 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

3 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 1.5 Nm

4 - Angle bracket

5 - Additional speaker

- Removing **Removing additional speaker**

6 - Instrument panel cover, left

- Removing **Removing left instrument panel cover**

Removing left instrument panel cover

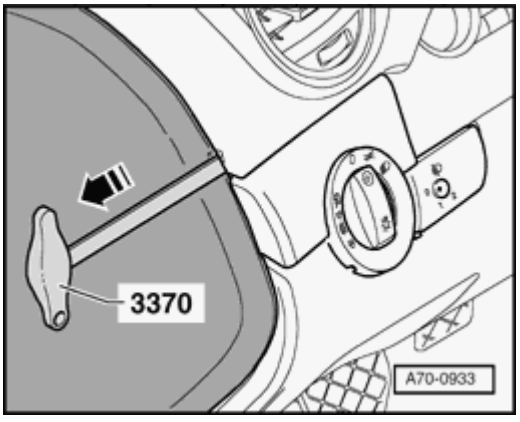


Fig. 13: Removing Left Instrument Panel Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front end hook 3370

Removing

- Remove left instrument panel cover - **arrow** - using front end hook 3370.

Removing additional speaker

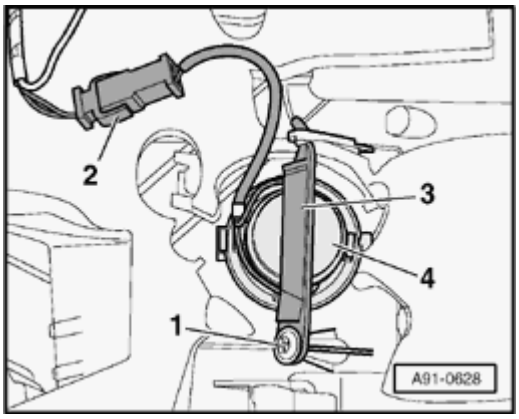


Fig. 14: Disconnecting Connector, Removing Bolt, Retaining Bracket And Additional Speaker
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector - **2** -.
- Remove bolt - **1** - and remove retaining bracket - **3** - and additional speaker - **4** -.

Drivers storage compartment (vehicles with knee bolster), assembly overview

cardiagn.com

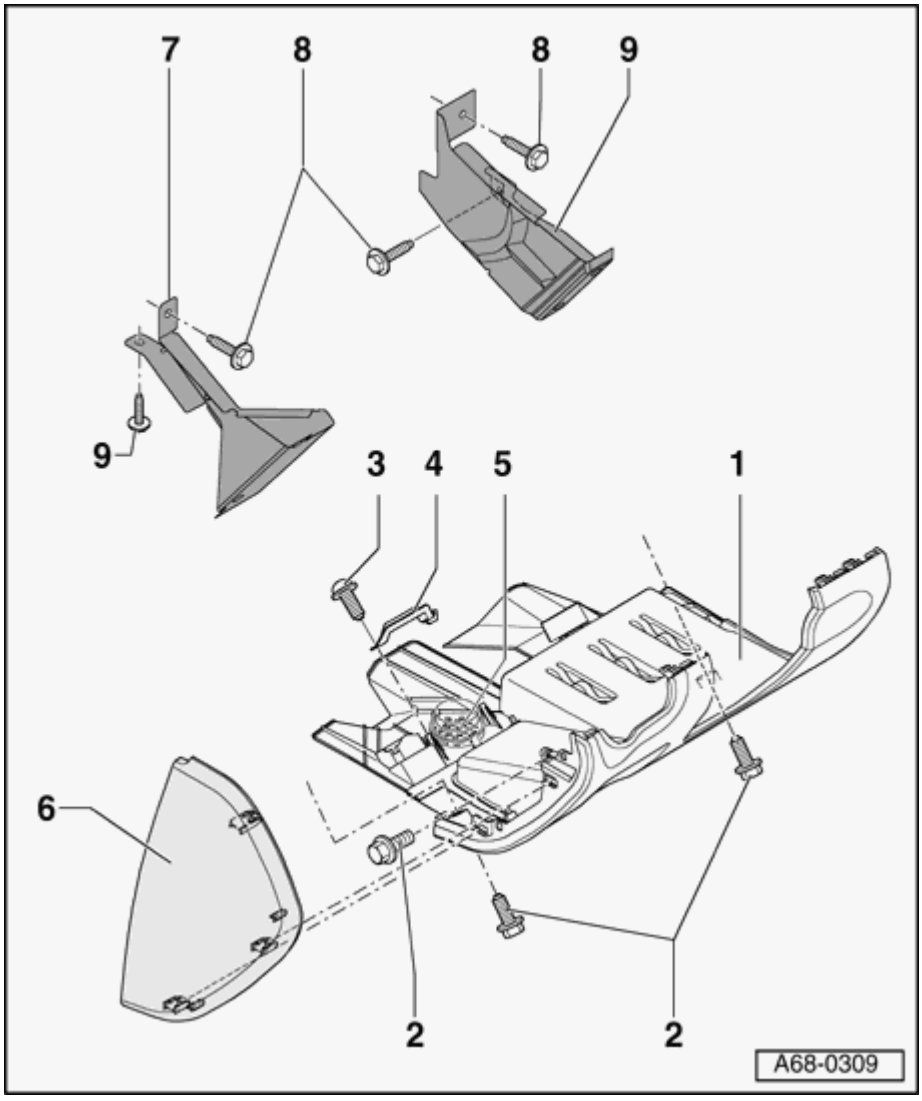


Fig. 15: Drivers Storage Compartment (Vehicles With Knee Bolster), Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Drivers storage compartment

- **Removing**

  - Remove instrument panel cover - **6** - **Removing left instrument panel cover**.
  - Remove bolts - **2** - (3x).
  - Pull storage compartment at top of instrument panel to back and remove.
  - Unclip diagnostic connector.

  - Disconnect connector on footwell light and on additional speaker - **5** - if required.

- **Installing**

cardiagn.com

- First engage drivers storage compartment in guides on bottom edge, then clip onto instrument panel at top.

2 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

3 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 1.5 Nm

4 - Angle bracket

5 - Additional speaker

- Removing **Removing additional speaker**

6 - Instrument panel cover, left

- Removing **Removing left instrument panel cover**

7 - Support, left

- Only for vehicles with knee bolster

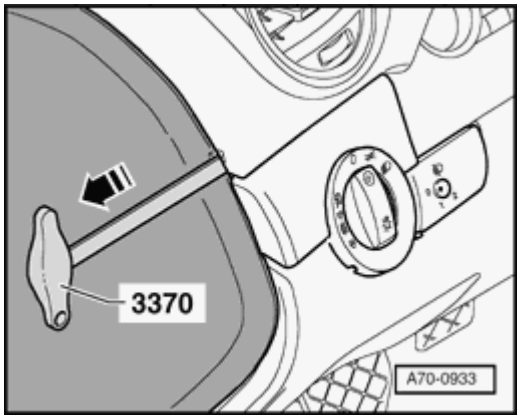
8 - Bolts (4x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

9 - Support, right

- Only for vehicles with knee bolster

Removing left instrument panel cover



cardiagn.com

Fig. 16: Removing Left Instrument Panel Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Front end hook 3370
- **Removing**

  - Remove left instrument panel cover - **arrow** - using front end hook 3370.

Removing additional speaker

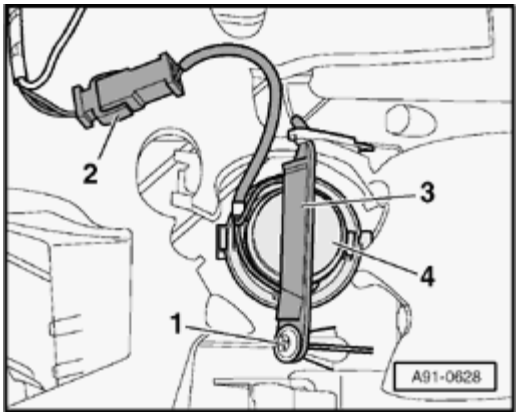


Fig. 17: Disconnecting Connector, Removing Bolt, Retaining Bracket And Additional Speaker
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

  - Disconnect connector - **2** -.
  - Remove bolt - **1** - and remove retaining bracket - **3** - and additional speaker - **4** -.

Instrument cluster trim, removing and installing

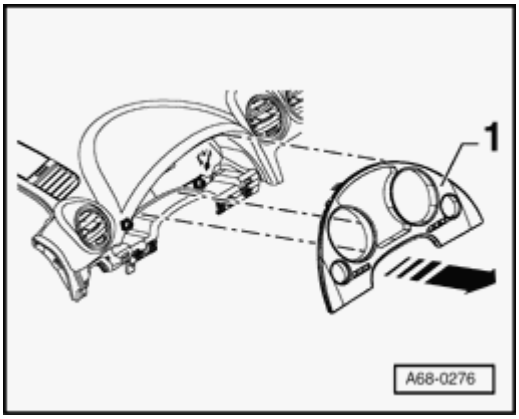


Fig. 18: Removing Instrument Cluster Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Pull instrument cluster trim - **1** - in direction of - **arrow** -.

Rear center armrest and ashtray, assembly overview

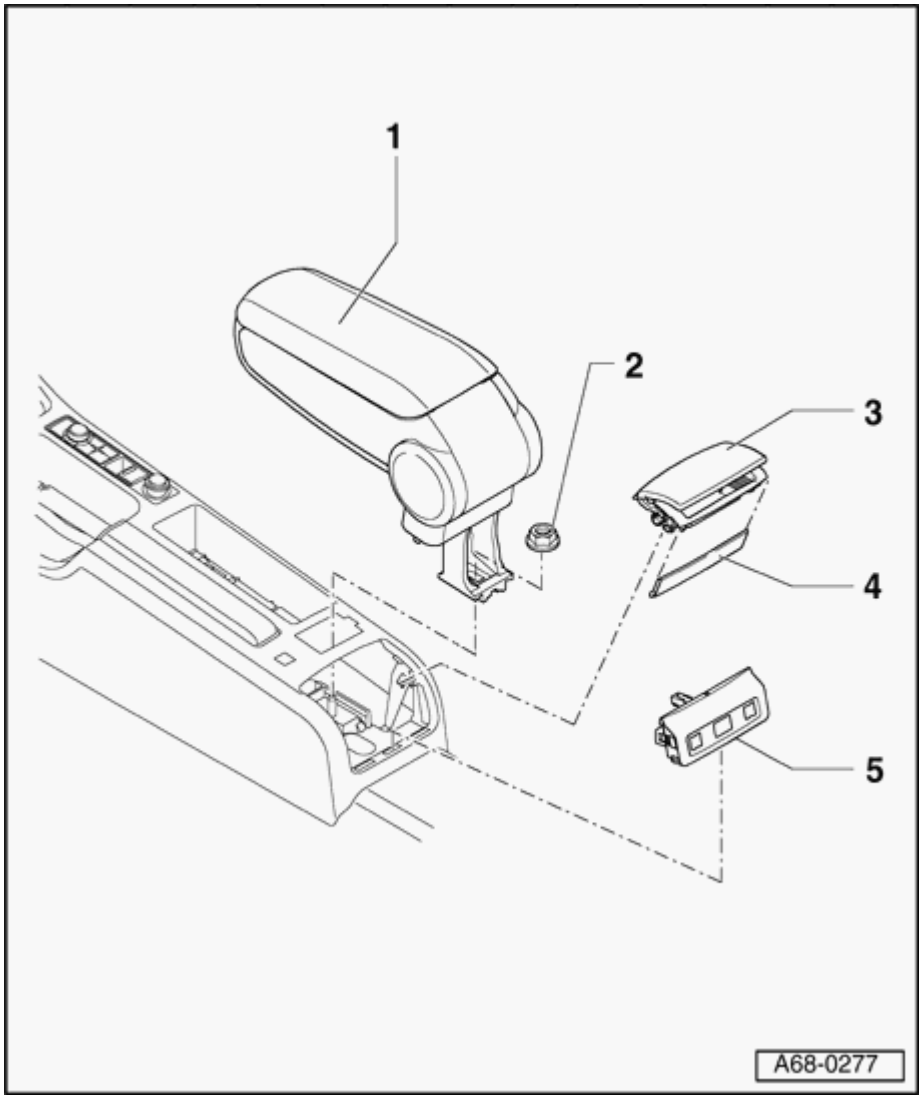


Fig. 19: Rear Center Armrest And Ashtray, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Center armrest

- **Removing**

- Remove rear ashtray - **3** -.
- Remove nut - **2** - in ashtray well.
- On center armrest with telephone, disconnect telephone connector.
- Remove center armrest - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

2 - Nut

- Tightening torque 26 Nm

3 - Rear ashtray

- **Removing**

  - Unclip lid - **4** -.
  - Detach ashtray at rear - **3** -.
  - If installed, unclip mount for seat heating switch - **5** -.

4 - Cover

5 - Mount for switch

- Removing and installing **Removing and installing mount for switch**

Removing and installing mount for switch

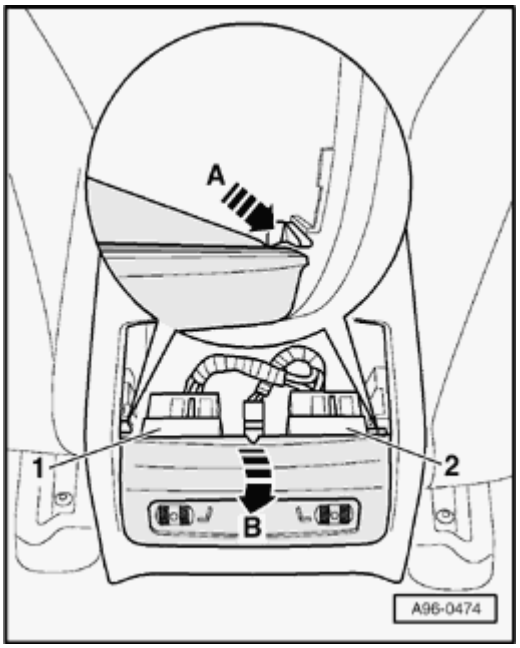


Fig. 20: Switch Mount Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- **Removing**

  - Remove rear ashtray.
  - Press left and right engaging hooks - **arrow A** - outward and fold back switch mount - **arrow B** -.
  - Disengage lower switch mount on rear of center console.

cardiagn.com

- Disconnect connectors.
- Unclip switches - **1** - and - **2** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Support bracket for center armrest, removing and installing

- **Removing**

- Remove center armrest --> **Rear center armrest and ashtray, assembly overview**.
- Remove center console --> **Center console, assembly overview**.

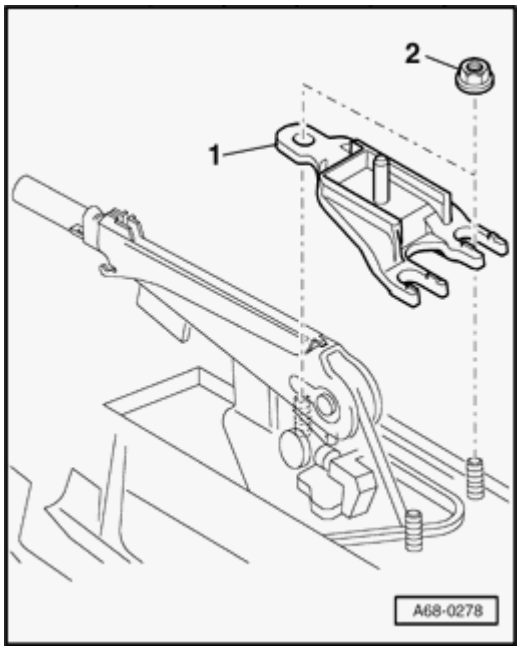


Fig. 21: Removing Nuts & Detaching Support Bracket
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove nuts - **2** - (2x).
- Tightening torque 10 Nm
- Detach support bracket - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Center console, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

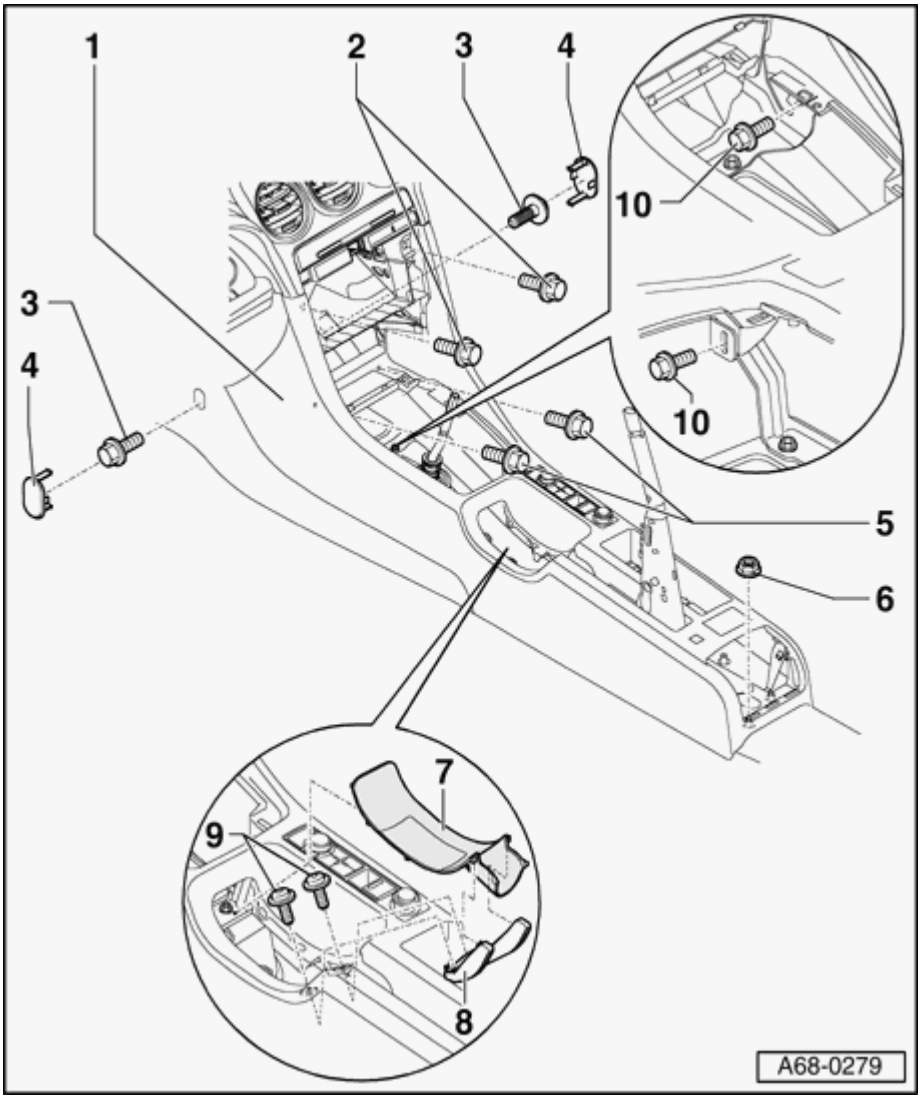


Fig. 22: Center Console, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Center console

- **Removing**

- Refer to coding on vehicles with encoded radio/radio navigation system (RNS); if necessary, interrogate.
- Disconnect ground (GND) strap at battery with ignition switched off.
- Vehicles with radio: Remove radio. -->
  - **91 - COMMUNICATION**
  - **91 RADIO, TELEPHONE, NAVIGATION, TRIP COMPUTER** for COMMUNICATION, CABRIOLET
- For vehicles with on-screen navigation system: Remove Control module for operating electronics, navigation J401. -->

cardiagn.com

- **91 - COMMUNICATION**
- **91 RADIO, TELEPHONE, NAVIGATION, TRIP COMPUTER** for COMMUNICATION, CABRIOLET

- Remove radio trim and storage compartment trim in front center section --> **Radio cover and trim, assembly overview**.
- Remove center armrest --> **Rear center armrest and ashtray, assembly overview**.
- Remove A/C Control Head E87. --> **87 AIR CONDITIONING**
- Apply parking brake firmly.

- In the case of an automatic transmission push selector lever fully back.
- Remove caps - **4** - from bolts - **3** - on right and left of front footwell at side of center console.
- Remove bolts - **3** - on right and left of front footwell at side of center console.
- Remove parking brake lever handle --> **Parking brake handle, removing and installing**.

- Remove parking brake trim --> **Parking brake lever trim, assembly overview**.
- Pry out cover - **7** - from front.
- Remove the two Phillips head screws - **9** - on connecting piece - **8** - and remove connecting piece. Otherwise the center console cannot be pulled over the parking brake lever.
- Manual transmission: Remove cover and boot --> **Gear cover and boot, assembly overview**.

- Automatic gearbox: Pry gear cover off upward --> **Gear cover and boot, assembly overview**.
- Remove front ashtray --> **Front ashtray, assembly overview**.
- Remove two bolts - **5** - in ashtray opening.
- Remove four bolts - **10** - around the gear lever, which secure the center console.

- Disconnect connector for convertible-top actuation, cigarette lighter and/or navigation module --> **Navigation system operating unit in center console, assembly overview**.
- Remove two bolts - **2** -.
- Remove hex combi nut - **6** -.
- Push center console carefully backward and remove from vehicle. .

NOTE:

- **Before installing center console, make sure all insulating elements have been installed correctly --> Insulation, center console.**

2 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

3 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

cardiagn.com

4 - Covers (2x)

5 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

6 - Hex combi nut

- Vehicles with center armrest: Tightening torque 10 Nm
- Vehicles without center armrest: Tightening torque 5 Nm

7 - Parking brake cover

8 - Connecting piece

9 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

10 - Bolts (4x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

Insulation, center console

cardiagn.com

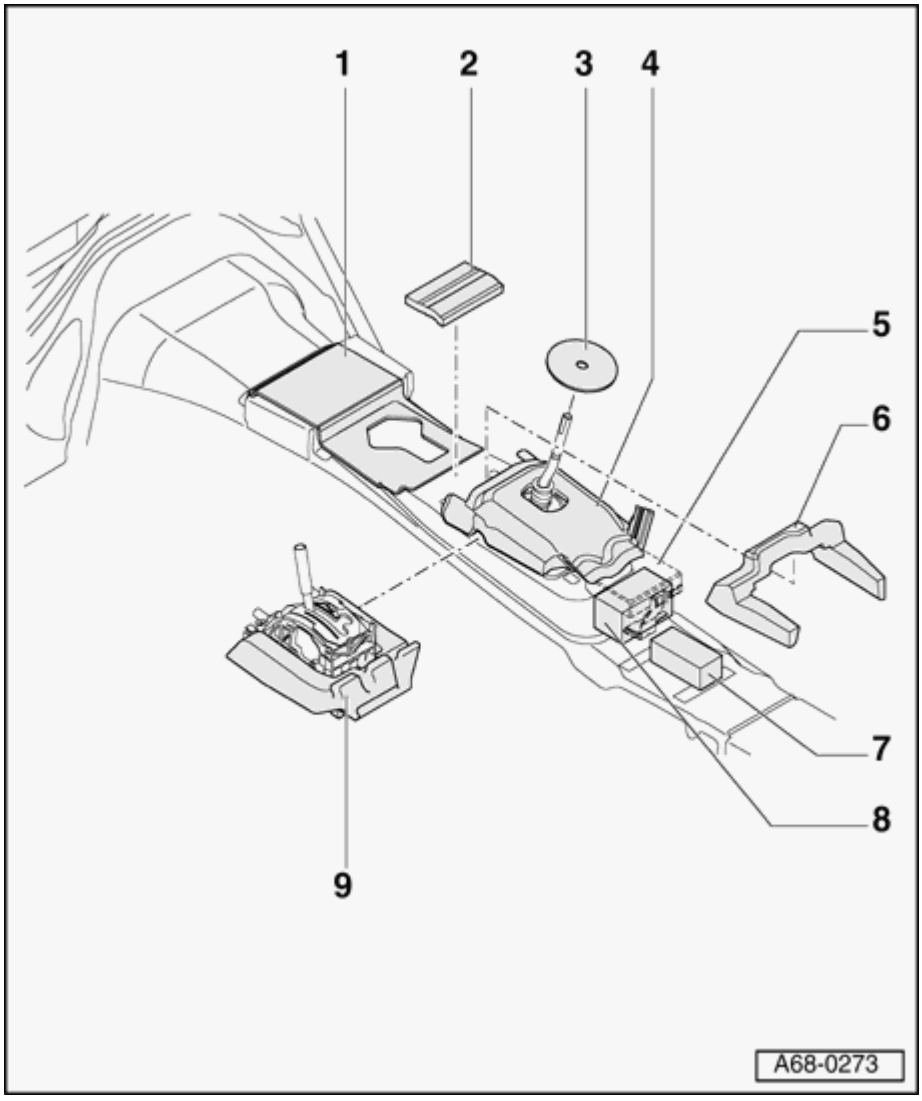


Fig. 23: Center Console Insulation
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Insulation, center console mount

2 - Glove compartment

3 - Bolts (3x)

- Only for 5-speed manual transmissions

4 - Insulation, gearshift

- For manual transmission

5 - Interior monitor control module

cardiagn.com

6 - Insulation, tunnel

7 - Parking brake lever filler piece

- Only with interior monitor

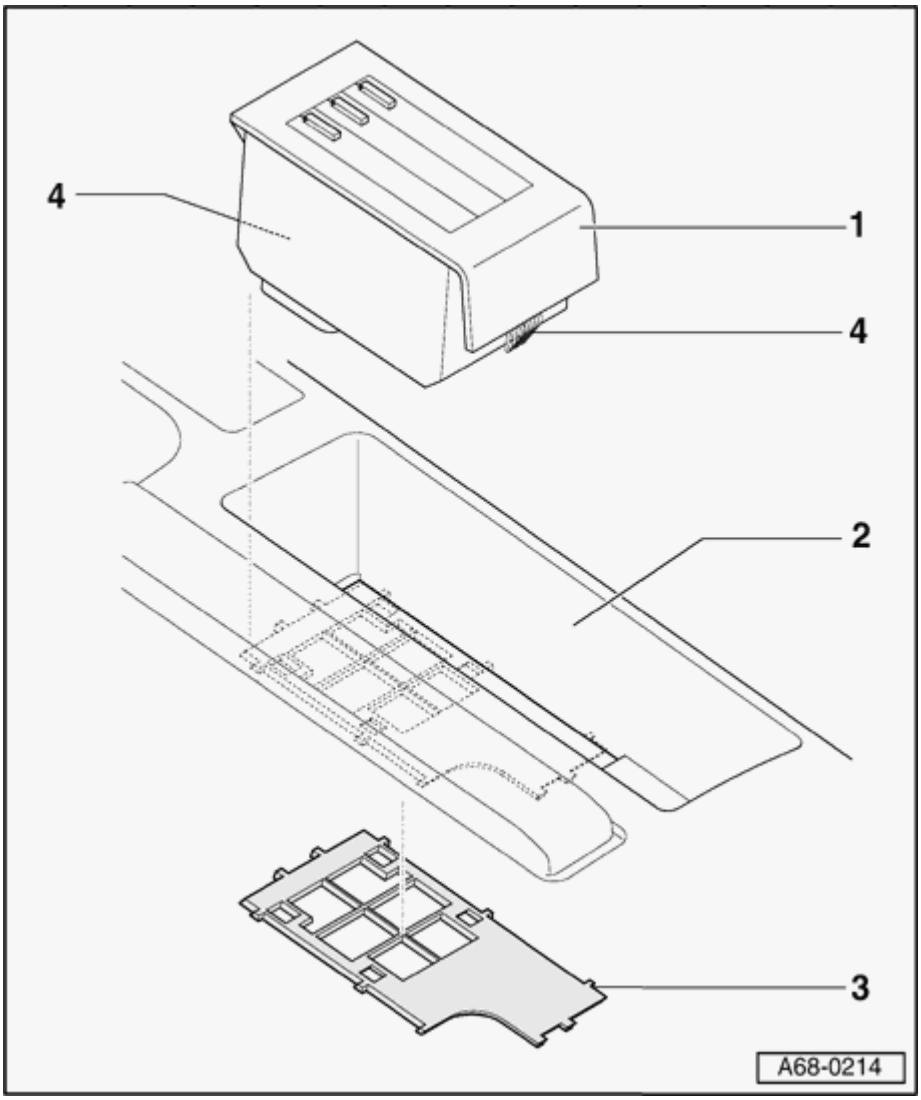
8 - Filler piece

- Only with interior monitor

9 - Insulation, gearshift

- For automatic transmission

Cassette tray, assembly overview



cardiagn.com

Fig. 24: Cassette Tray, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cassette tray

- **Removing**

  - Remove center console --> **Center console, assembly overview**.
  - Turn center console over.
  - Pry off catch - **3** -.
  - Press two spring clips - **4** - on cassette tray (danger of injury from sharp-edged spring clips. Proceed carefully).
  - Remove cassette tray - **1** - from recess - **2** -.

2 - Recess for cassette tray in center console

3 - Cassette tray catch

4 - Spring clips

Connector mount, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

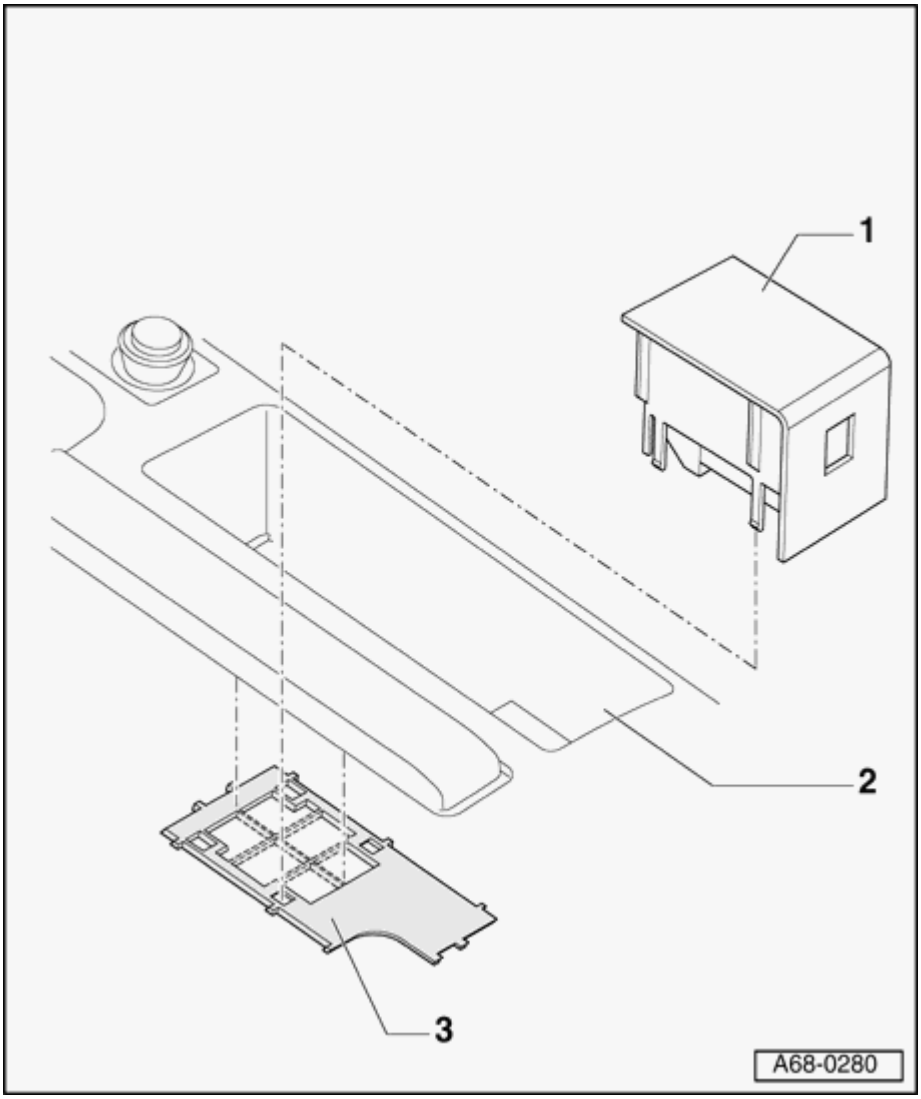


Fig. 25: Connector Mount, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Connector mount

- **Removing**

  - Remove center console --> **Center console, assembly overview**.
  - Turn center console over.
  - Pry off catch - **3** -.
  - Remove connector mount - **1** - from recess - **2** -.

2 - Recess for connector mount in center console

3 - Connector mount catch

cardiagn.com

Gear cover and boot, assembly overview

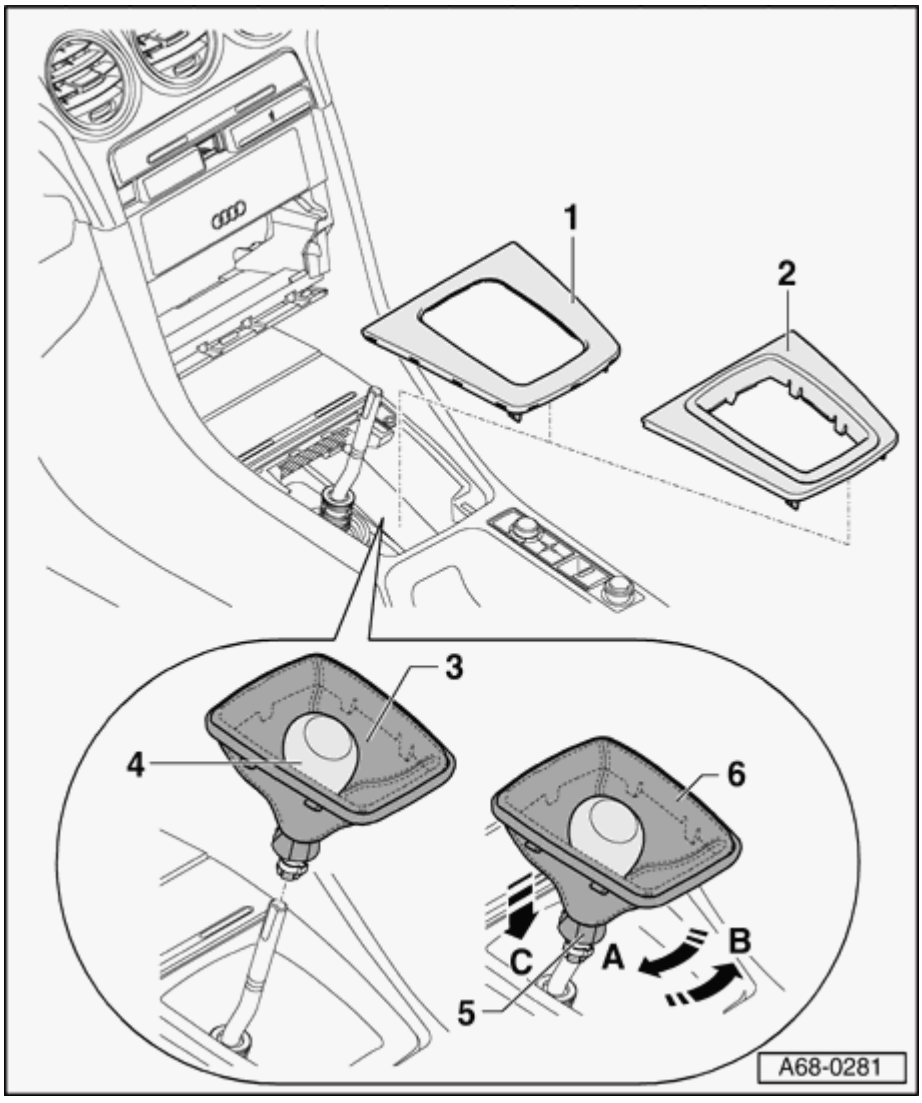


Fig. 26: Gear Cover And Boot, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Automatic transmission cover

- **Removing**
  - Pry off gear cover - **1** -.

2 - Manual transmission cover

- **Removing**
  - Pry off gear cover - **2** -.

cardiagn.com

3 - Boot

- **Removing**

  - Unclip mounting frame - **6** -.
  - Turn connecting piece - **5** - to right in direction of - **arrow A** - until it unlocks.
  - Remove selector lever knob - **4** -.

- **Installing**

  - Install selector lever knob - **4** -.
  - Turn connecting piece - **5** - to left in direction of - **arrow B** - until it locks.
  - Clip in mounting frame - **6** - in direction of - **arrow C** - arrow C.

4 - Selector lever knob

5 - Connecting piece

6 - Mounting frame

Navigation system operating unit in center console, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

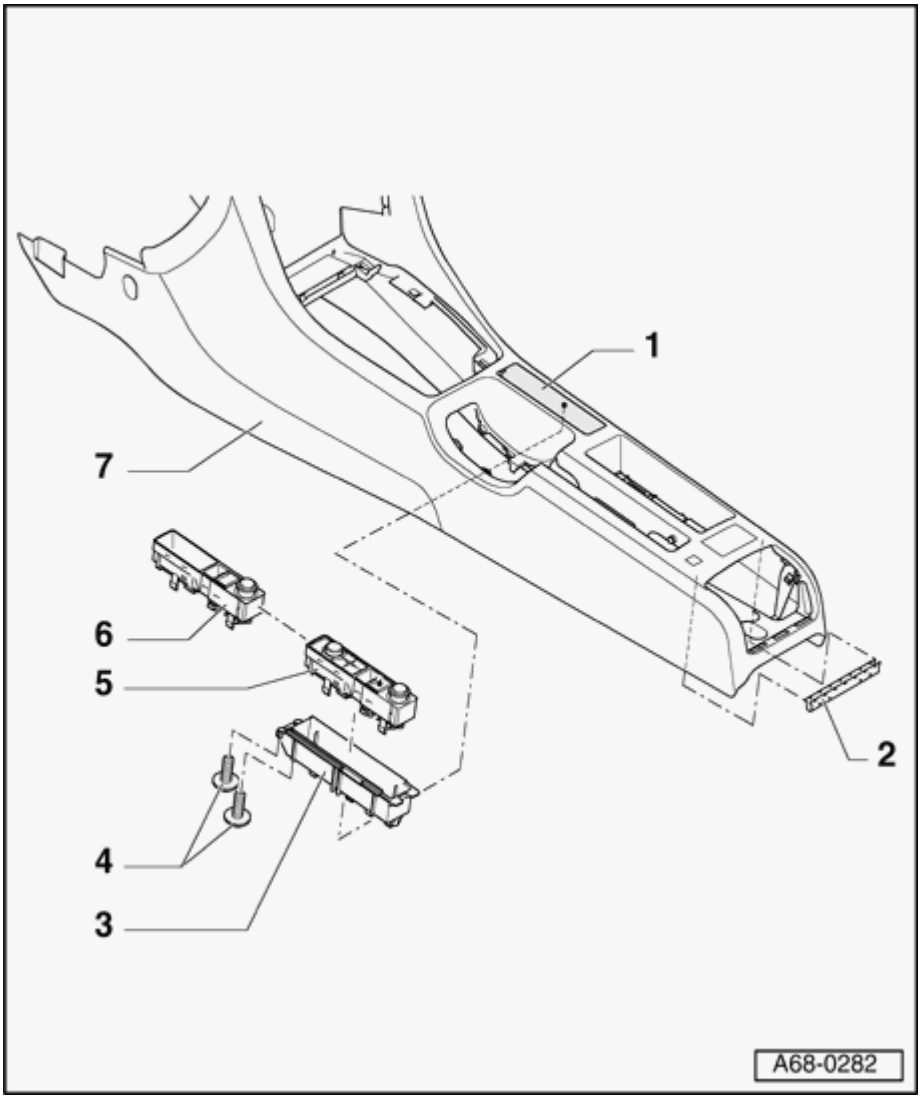


Fig. 27: Navigation System Operating Unit In Center Console, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Recess

2 - Clamp

- Only for vehicles with center armrest.

3 - Mounting frame

- **Removing**

  - Remove navigation system operating unit with cigarette lighter - **5** - or tray with cigarette lighter - **6** -.
  - Remove center console - **7** - --> **Center console, assembly overview**.
  - Turn center console over.

cardiagn.com

- Remove two bolts - **4** - on mounting frame - **3** -.
- Remove mounting frame - **3** - from recess - **1** -.

4 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

5 - Navigation system operating unit with cigarette lighter

- **Removing**

- Apply parking brake firmly.
- Pry out cover underneath parking brake lever :
- Reach into opening below the parking brake lever and press navigation system operating unit with cigarette lighter out of center console - **7** - from below.

6 - Tray with cigarette lighter

- **Removing**

- Apply parking brake firmly.
- Pry out cover underneath parking brake lever :
- Reach into opening below parking brake lever and press tray with cigarette lighter out of center console - **7** - from below.

7 - Center console

Footwell trim, removing and installing

- **Removing:**

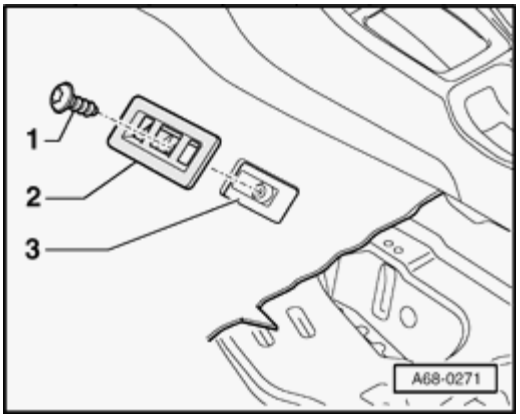


Fig. 28: Removing Bolt, Footwell Trim From Its Mount
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolt - **1** -.
- Remove footwell trim - **2** - from its mount - **3** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Parking brake lever trim, assembly overview

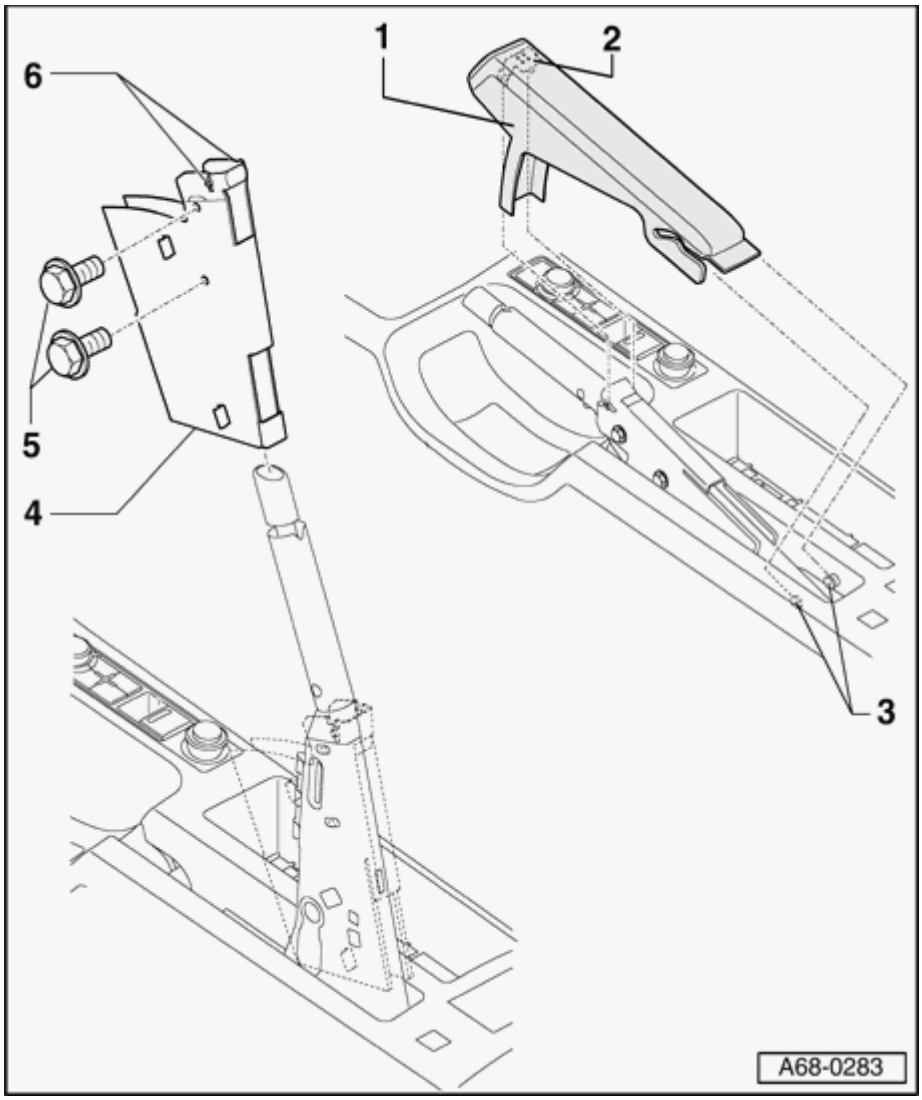


Fig. 29: Parking Brake Lever Trim, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Parking brake lever trim

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

- Apply parking brake firmly.
- Remove parking brake handle --> **Parking brake handle, removing and installing**.
- Using a small screwdriver, press fastener - **2** - outward at left and right and pull parking brake lever trim out of its retainer tabs - **6** - and its mounts - **3** -.

- **Installing**

- Engage parking brake lever trim - **1** - in its rear mounts - **3** -.
- Press parking brake lever trim - **1** - firmly, until fastener - **2** - engages in retainer tabs - **6** -.
- Install handle on parking brake lever.

2 - Fastener

3 - Mounts for trim

4 - Support bracket

- **Removing**

- Remove parking brake lever trim - **1** -.
- Apply parking brake firmly.
- Remove two bolts - **5** - at support bracket - **4** - and remove support bracket.

- **Installing**

- Apply parking brake firmly.
- Place support bracket to parking brake lever.
- Tighten bolts - **5** - by hand.
- Release parking brake.

- Tighten two bolts - **5** -.
- Install parking brake lever trim - **1** -.

5 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 4 Nm

6 - Retainer tabs

Parking brake handle, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

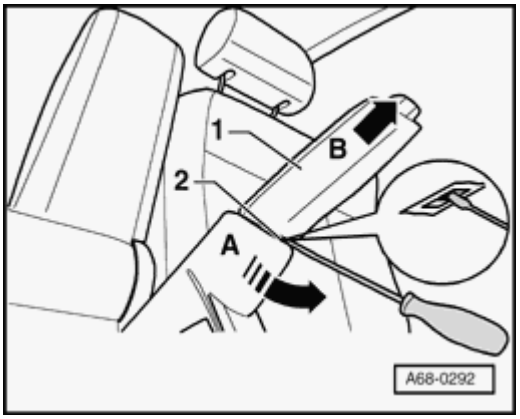


Fig. 30: Using Screwdriver To Pry Out Locking Pin & Detaching Parking Brake Lever Handle
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Use a screwdriver to pry out locking pin - **2** - in direction of arrow - **A** -.
- Detach parking brake lever handle - **1** - in direction of arrow - **B** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Mobile phone holder in center console, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

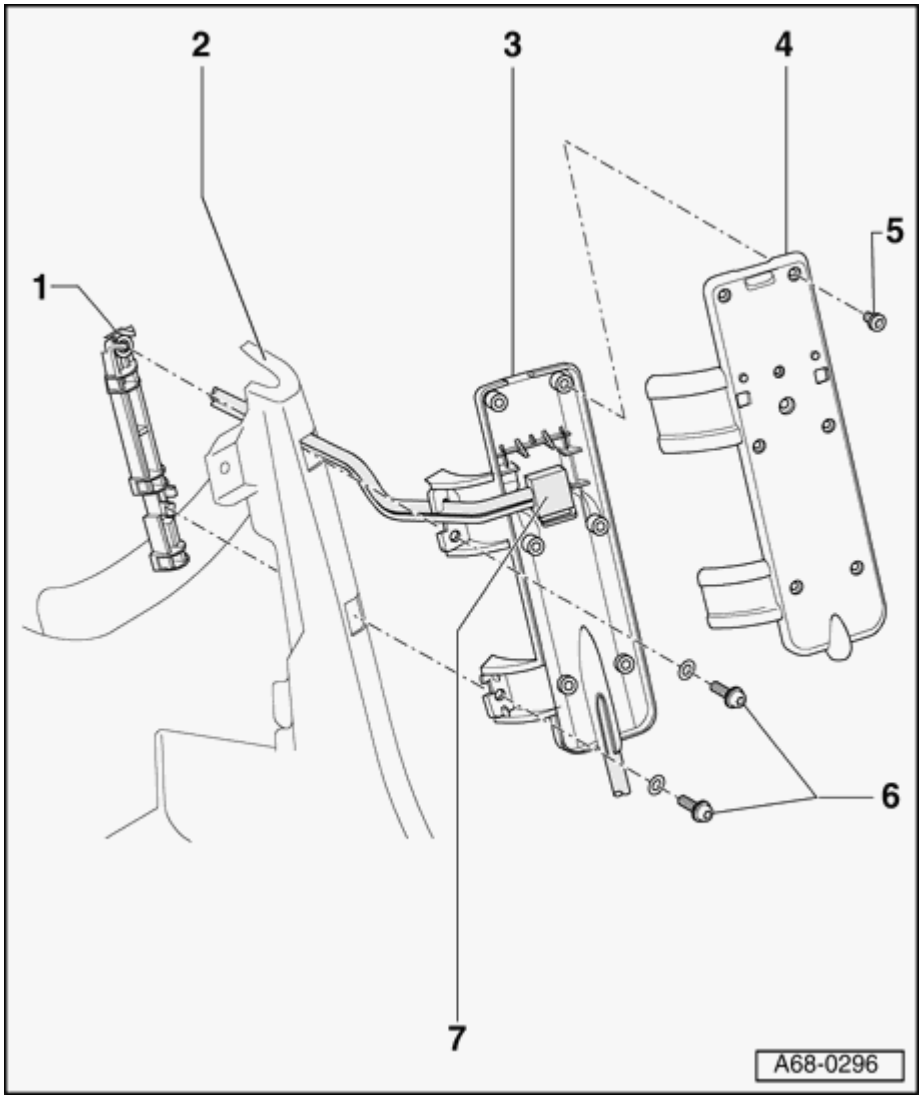


Fig. 31: Mobile Phone Holder In Center Console, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Threaded moulding

- Engaged in center console from rear

2 - Center console

- With mounting holes for base plate
- Retrofitting mounting holes --> **Making mounting holes for mobile phone holder on center console**

3 - Mounting plate

4 - Base plate

cardiagn.com

- For mobile phone handset holder

5 - Bolts (6x)

- Tightening torque 0.5 Nm

6 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 1.5 Nm

7 - Connector

NOTE:

- **Ensure correct seating of connector.**

Making mounting holes for mobile phone holder on center console

When supplied as a spare part, center console has no openings or mounting holes for mobile phone holder. Openings must be created.

- Remove center console --> **Center console, assembly overview**.

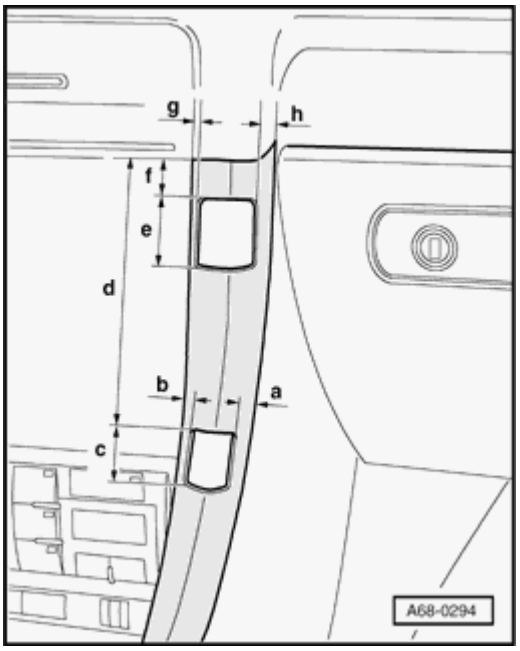


Fig. 32: Center Console Mounting Hole Dimensions
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Produce mounting holes of the following dimensions:

a - 10 mm

cardiagn.com

b - 6 mm

c - 20 mm

d - 100 mm

e - 31 mm

f - 8 mm

g - 5 mm

h - 9 mm

- Engage threaded molding in center console from rear and fasten the mobile phone holder with a torque of 1.5 Nm

NOTE:

- **After installation check that glove compartment lid will open.**

Bracket for telephone handset in center console, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

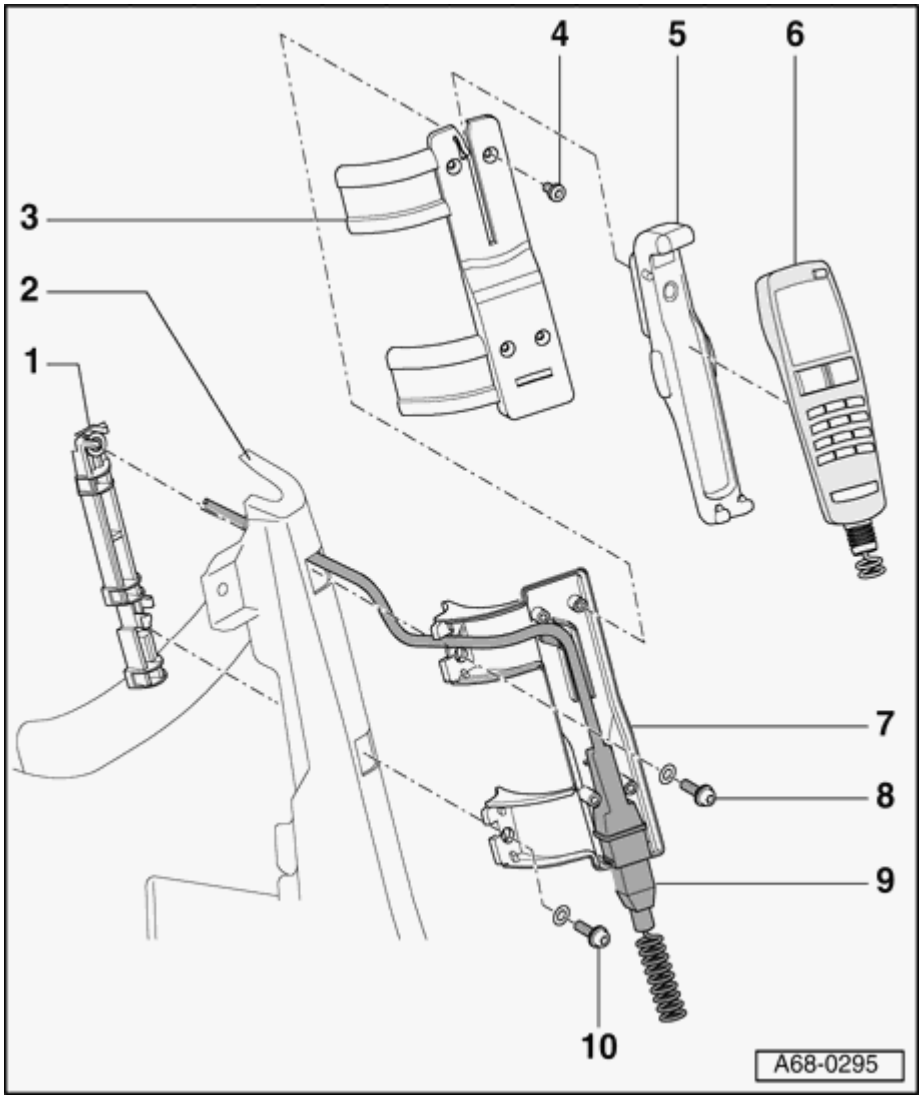


Fig. 33: Bracket For Telephone Handset In Center Console, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Threaded molding

- Engaged in center console from rear

2 - Center console

- With mounting holes for base plate
- Retrofitting mounting holes --> **Mounting holes for telephone handset bracket in center console, fabricating**

3 - Mounting plate

- For handset holder

cardiagn.com

4 - Bolts (4x)

- Tightening torque 0.5 Nm

5 - Receiver holder

6 - Telephone handset R37

7 - Base plate

8 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 1.5 Nm

9 - Connector

NOTE:

- **Ensure correct seating of connector.**

10 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 1.5 Nm

Mounting holes for telephone handset bracket in center console, fabricating

When supplied as a spare part, center console has no mounting holes for telephone handset bracket. Mounting holes must be created.

- Remove center console --> **Center console, assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

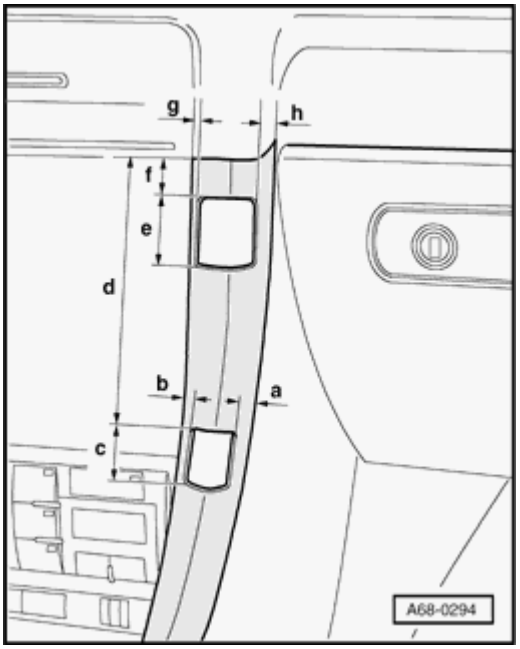


Fig. 34: Center Console Mounting Hole Dimensions
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fabricate mounting holes of the following dimensions:

a - 10 mm

b - 6 mm

c - 22 mm

d - 101 mm

e - 25 mm

f - 16 mm

g - 5 mm

h - 8 mm

- Engage threaded molding in center console from rear and fasten bracket with a torque of 1.5 Nm.

NOTE:

- **After installation check that glove compartment lid will open.**

Center section of instrument panel, assembly overview

Version for "Chorus" or "Concert" radio

cardiagn.com

Version of instrument panel center section for "symphony" radio/on-screen navigation system

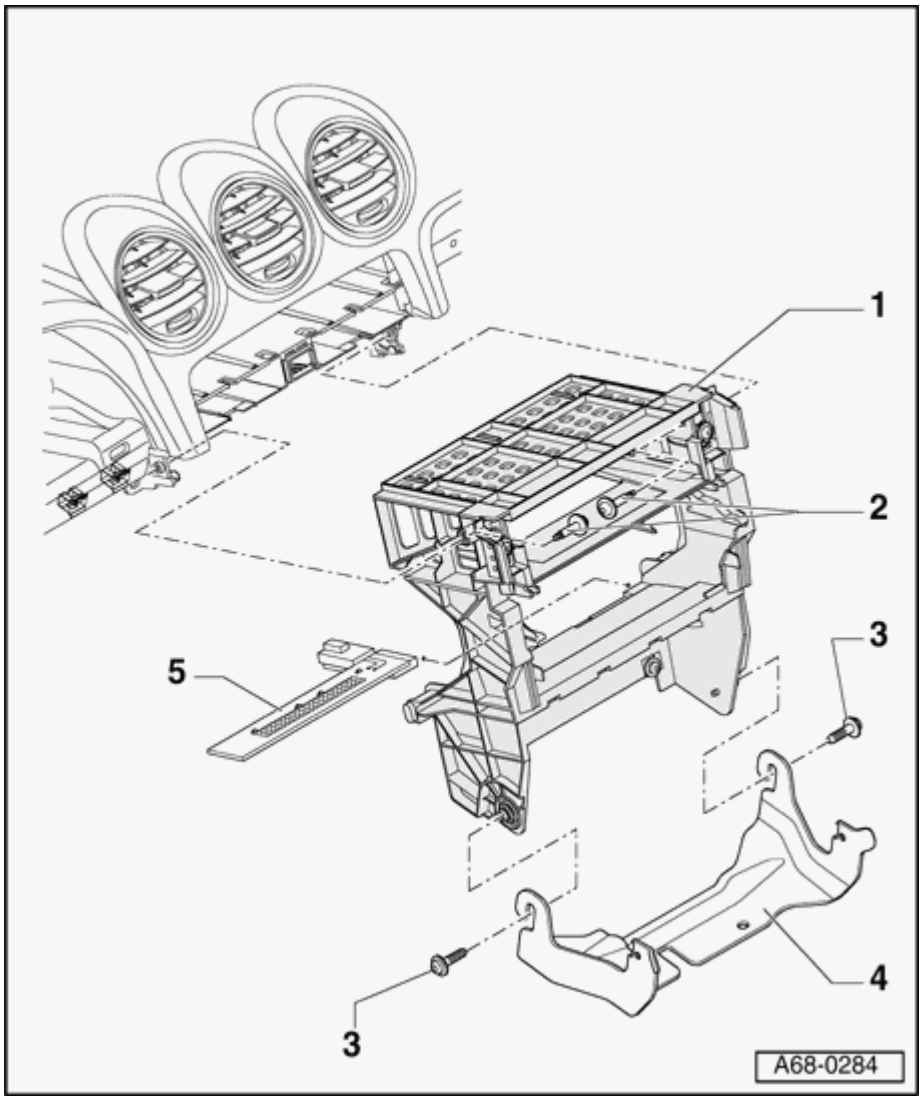


Fig. 35: Center Section Of Instrument Panel, Assembly Overview (Version For "Chorus" Or "Concert" Radio)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Center section of instrument panel

- **Removing**

  - Remove center console --> **Center console, assembly overview**.
  - Remove bolts - **2** - on instrument panel center section.
  - Remove bolts - **3** - on instrument panel center section.
  - Remove center section of the instrument panel.

2 - Bolts (2x)

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

3 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

4 - Center section securing bracket

5 - Light strip

Version for "symphony" radio/on-screen navigation system

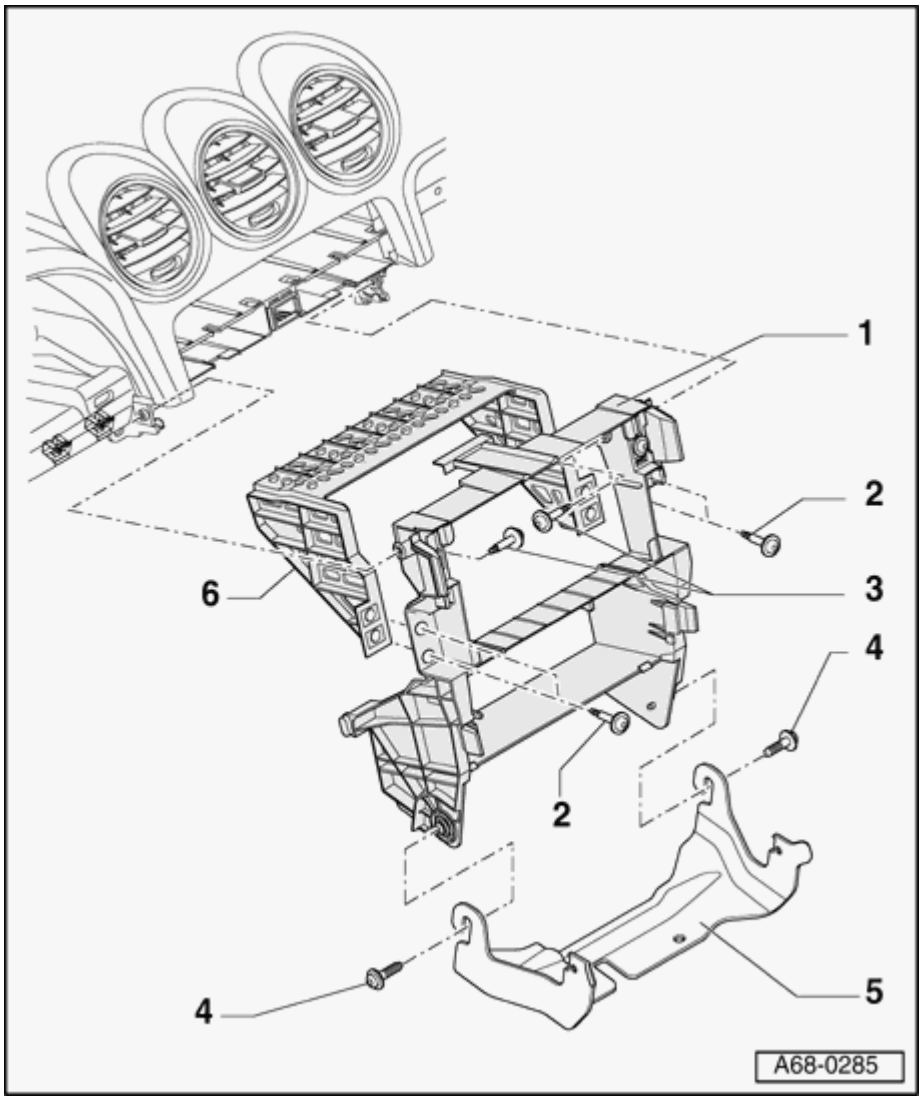


Fig. 36: Center Section Of Instrument Panel, Assembly Overview (Version For "Symphony" Radio/On-Screen Navigation System)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Center section of instrument panel

- **Removing**

  - Remove center console --> **Center console, assembly overview**.
  - Remove bolts - **3** - on instrument panel center section.
  - Remove bolts - **4** - on instrument panel center section.
  - Detach center section from instrument panel.

2 - Bolts (4x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

3 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

4 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

5 - Center section securing bracket

6 - Bracket

- **Removing**

  - Remove center console --> **Center console, assembly overview**.
  - Remove instrument panel center section - **1** -.
  - Remove bolts on instrument panel center section - **2** - (4x) and remove console.

Removing and installing storage compartment, cup holder and switch mount

cardiagn.com

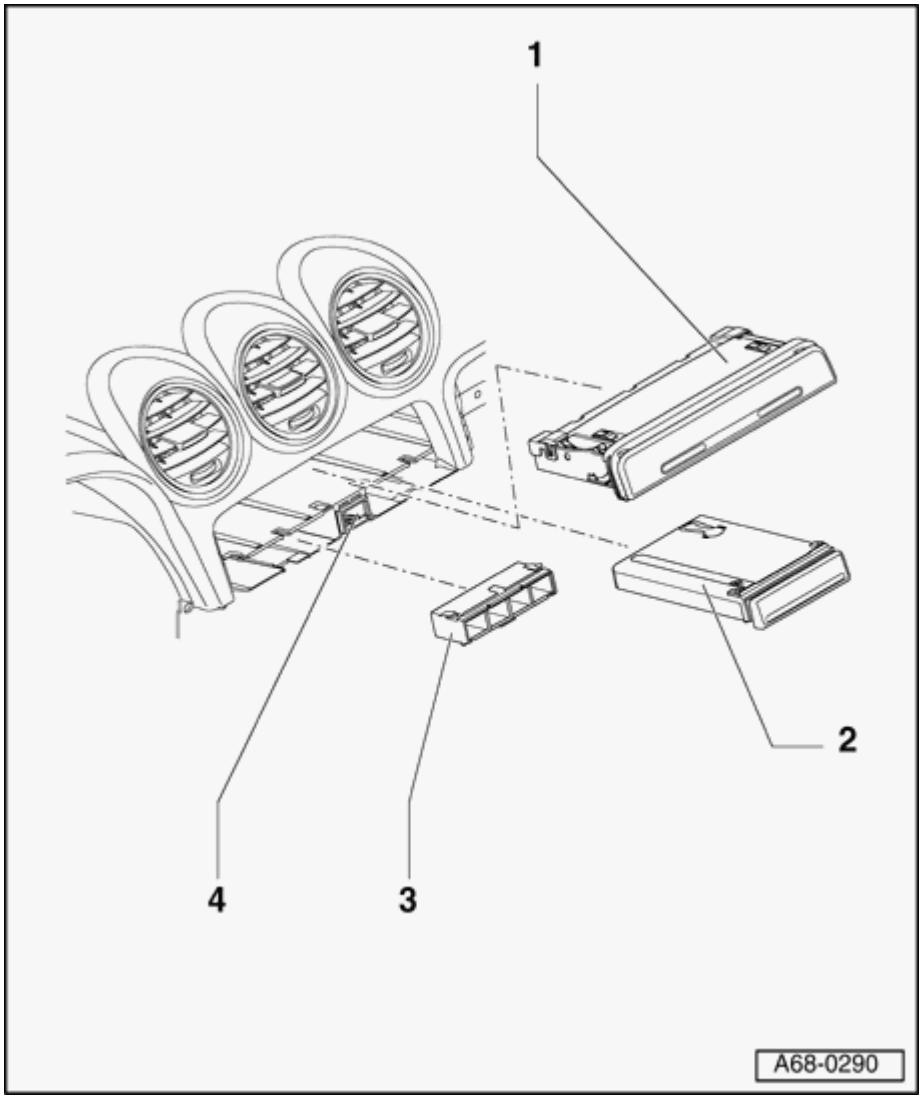


Fig. 37: Storage Compartment, Cup Holder And Switch Mount Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Storage compartment

- Removing and installing **Removing and installing storage tray**

2 - Cup holder

- Removing and installing **Removing and installing cup holder**

3 - Switch mounting

- Removing and installing **Removing and installing switch mount**

4 - Hazard warning switch mounting

cardiagn.com

- Removing and installing hazard warning switch: -->
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT**
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET

Removing and installing storage tray

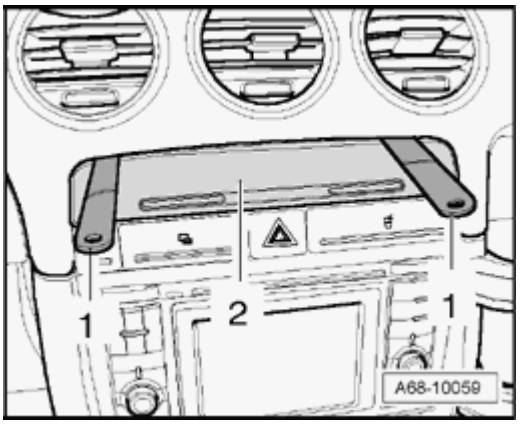


Fig. 38: Removing/Installing Storage Tray
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing:

- Insert two thing wedge like tools - **1** - or scrapers between the instrument panel and storage tray - **2** - in the position of the retaining tabs. See - **arrows** - in **Fig. 39** .

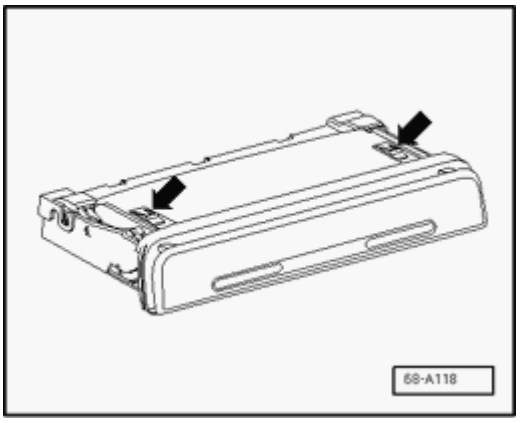


Fig. 39: Identifying Retaining Tabs
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Depress retaining tabs with thin wedge type tool and remove storage tray - **2** -

Installing

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

cardiagn.com

Removing and installing cup holder

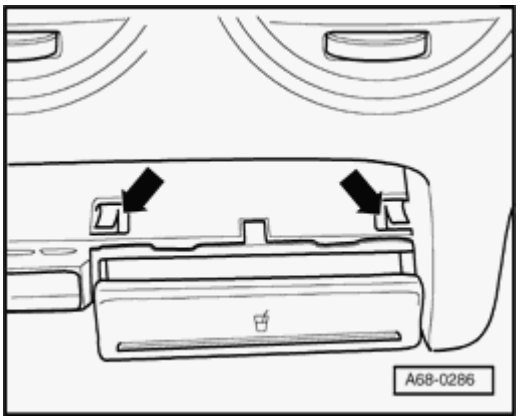


Fig. 40: Removing/Installing Cup Holder
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- **Removing**

- Remove tray **Removing and installing storage tray**.
- Using a screwdriver, push the retainer tabs - **arrows** - down while pulling the cup holder out.

Installing

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Removing and installing switch mount

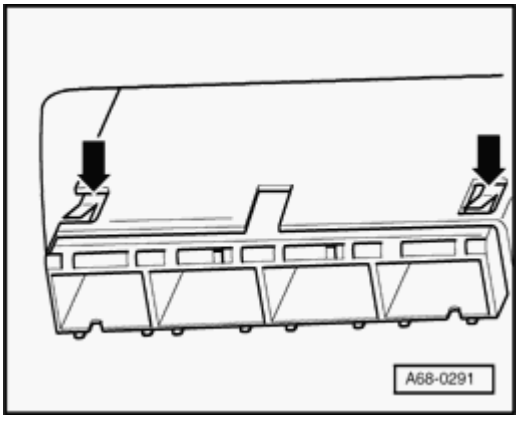


Fig. 41: Removing/Installing Switch Mount
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- **Removing**

- Remove tray **Removing and installing storage tray**.
- Remove switch in switch panel.

cardiagn.com

- Using a screwdriver, push the retainer tabs - **arrows** - down while pulling the switch mount out.

Installing

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Radio cover and trim, assembly overview

NOTE:

- **Radio cover and trim are only installed in instrument panel center section for "Chorus" and "Concert" radios.**

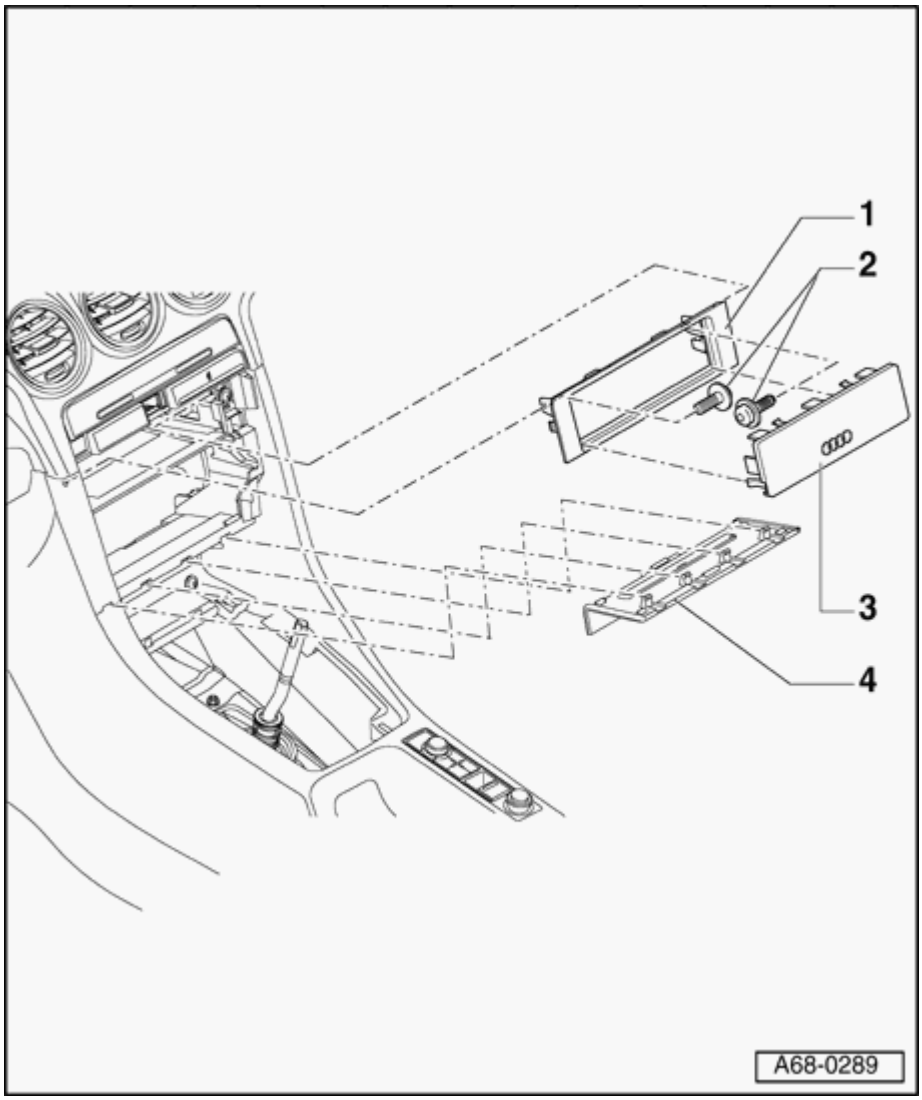


Fig. 42: Radio Cover And Trim, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Radio trim

cardiagn.com

- **Removing**

  - Carefully unclip radio cover - **3** - or
  - Remove radio. -->
    - **91 - COMMUNICATION**
    - **91 RADIO, TELEPHONE, NAVIGATION, TRIP COMPUTER** for COMMUNICATION, CABRIOLET
  - Remove bolts - **2** -.
  - Pull radio trim - **1** - out of instrument panel center section.

2 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 1.7 Nm

3 - Radio/radio cover

4 - Tray trim

- **Removing**

  - Carefully unclip tray trim.

Front ashtray, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

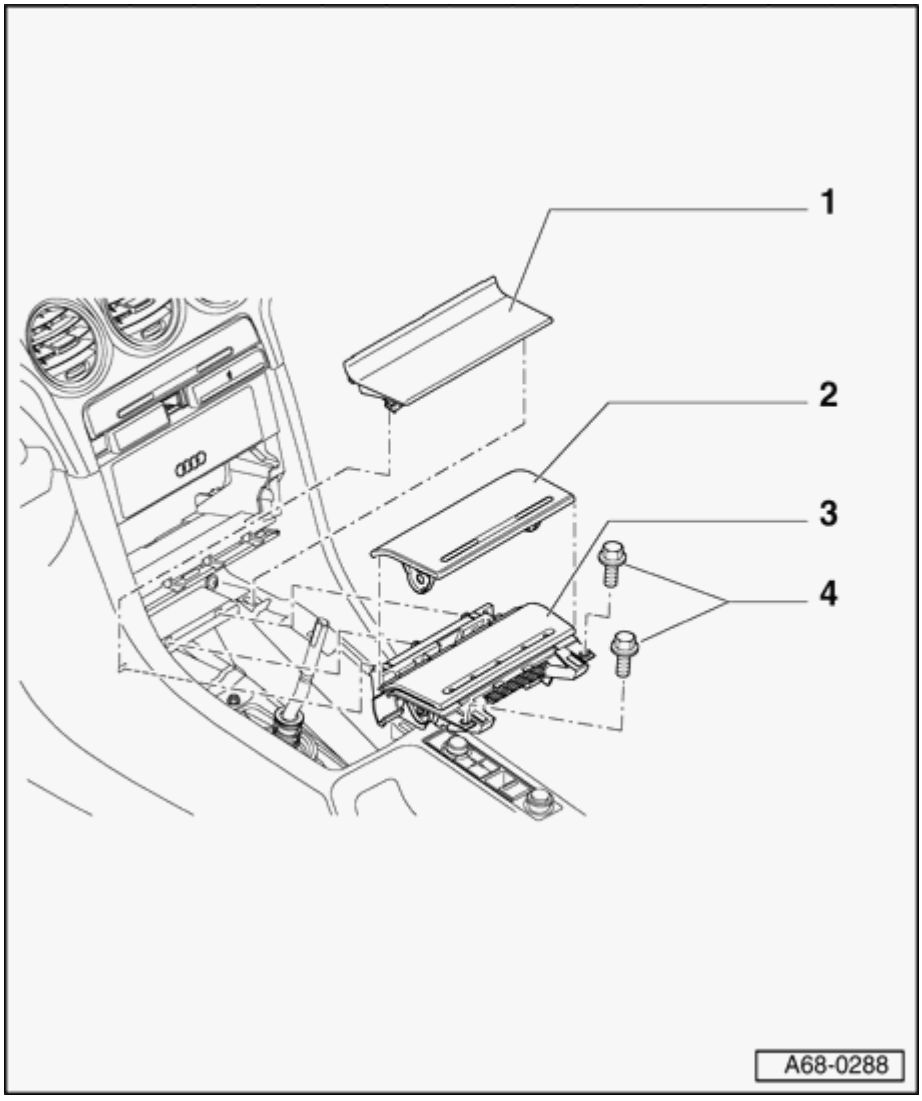


Fig. 43: Front Ashtray, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Tray trim

- Only on instrument panel center section for "Chorus" and "Concert" radios

2 - Ashtray trim

3 - Front ashtray

- **Removing**

  - Manual transmission: Pry gear cover upward and remove --> **Gear cover and boot, assembly overview**.
  - Automatic transmission: Pry gear cover off upward --> **Gear cover and boot, assembly overview**.
  - For vehicles with air conditioner and "Symphony" radio/on-screen navigation system: Remove A/C

cardiagn.com

Control Head E87 for air conditioner. --> **87 AIR CONDITIONING**

- Remove two bolts - **4** - from ashtray.
- Unclip tray trim - **1** -.
- Remove ashtray - **3** -.
- Disengage trim - **2** - from ashtray - **3** -.

4 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

INTERIOR REAR-VIEW MIRROR

Interior mirror with fixed base, removing and installing

- **Removing**

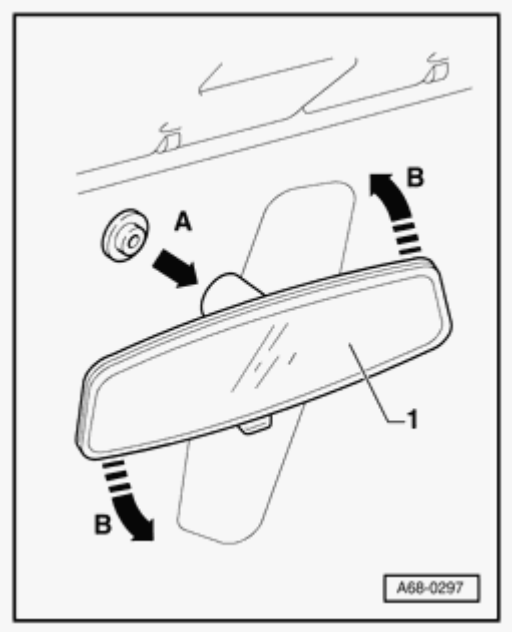


Fig. 44: Rotating Mirror Until Retaining Spring Releases And Removing Mirror
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- When removing, turn mirror - **1** - at an angle 60... 90° - **arrows B** - until locking spring disengages and detach mirror - **arrow A** -.

- **Installing**

cardiagn.com

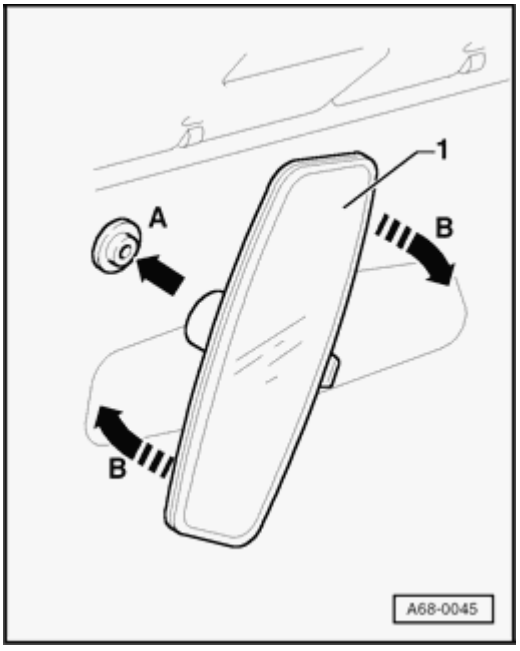
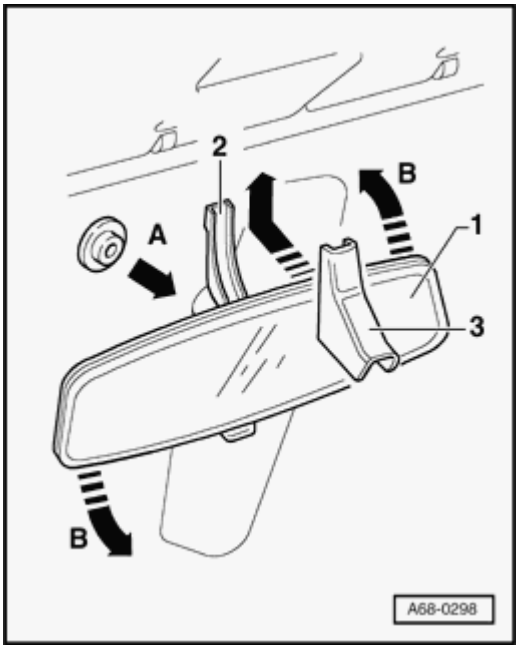


Fig. 45: Fitting Mirror To Final Position And Then Turning Mirror Until Locking Spring Clicks Into Place
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- When installing, install mirror - **1** - at an angle of 60... 90° at angle to attachment position - **arrow A** - and twist - **arrows B** - until locking spring engages.

Interior mirror (automatic anti-glare mirror, interior mirror with compass), removing and installing

- **Removing**



cardiagn.com

Fig. 46: Removing Rearview Mirror (Automatic Day/Night Mirror, Rearview Mirror With Compass)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Unclip cable duct cover - **3** -.
- Remove connector from fastener and disconnect.

NOTE:

- **Never grasp hold of cable duct - 2 - for twisting mirror.**
- **When removing, turn mirror - 1 - at an angle of 60... 90° - arrows B - until locking spring disengages and detach mirror - arrow A -.**

- **Installing**

NOTE:

- **Never grasp hold of cable duct - 2 - for twisting mirror.**

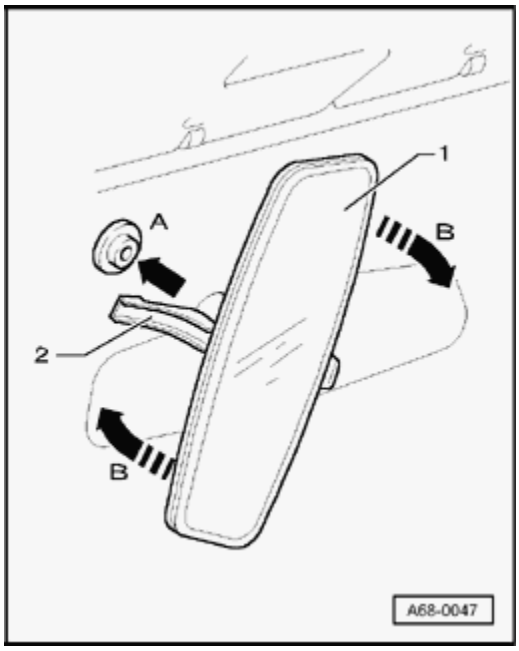


Fig. 47: Installing Rearview Mirror (Automatic Day/Night Mirror, Rearview Mirror With Compass)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- **When installing, install mirror - 1 - at an angle of 60... 90° at angle to attachment position - arrow A - and twist - arrows B - until locking spring engages.**

Function of automatic anti-glare interior rear-view mirror, testing

NOTE:

- **Interior mirror installed**
- **Ignition on**

cardiagn.com

- **Reverse gear not engaged**

Test sequence

- Cover (or mask) front of photosensor.
- Shine a light onto back of photo sensor.

- The interior mirror should darken quickly.

Interior mirror with compass (USA only), calibrating

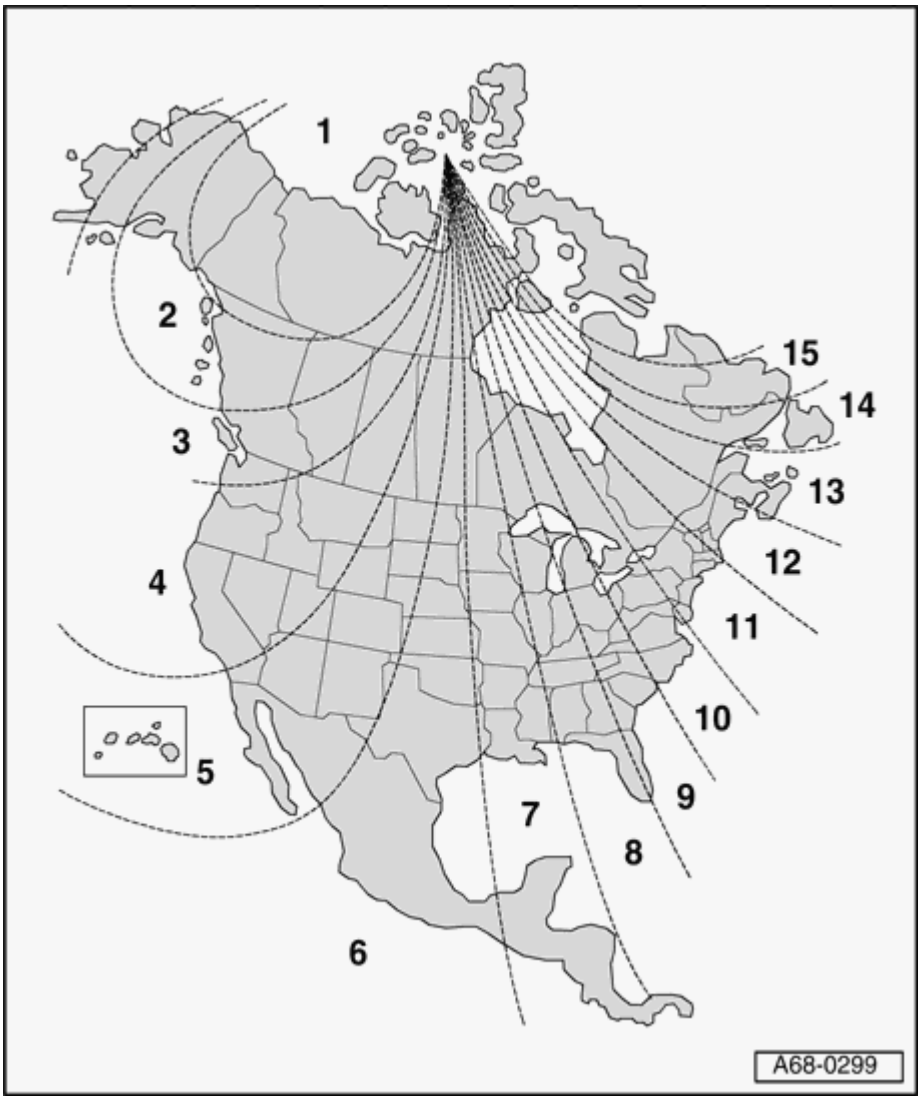


Fig. 48: North American Magnetic Field Graph
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

The interior mirror is permanently adjusted to world-zone-dependent North via an integrated magnetic field.

cardiagn.com

The digital display indicates the cardinal points N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W and NW.

Calibration is required for new interior mirrors or for mirrors which have been disconnected from the power supply for some time (no display or display indicates "C").

Calibrating new compass

- Switch ignition on.
- "C" must be display.
- If no "C" is displayed, then press adjustment switch on underside of mirror using a thin object (e.g. ballpoint pen) until "C" is displayed.

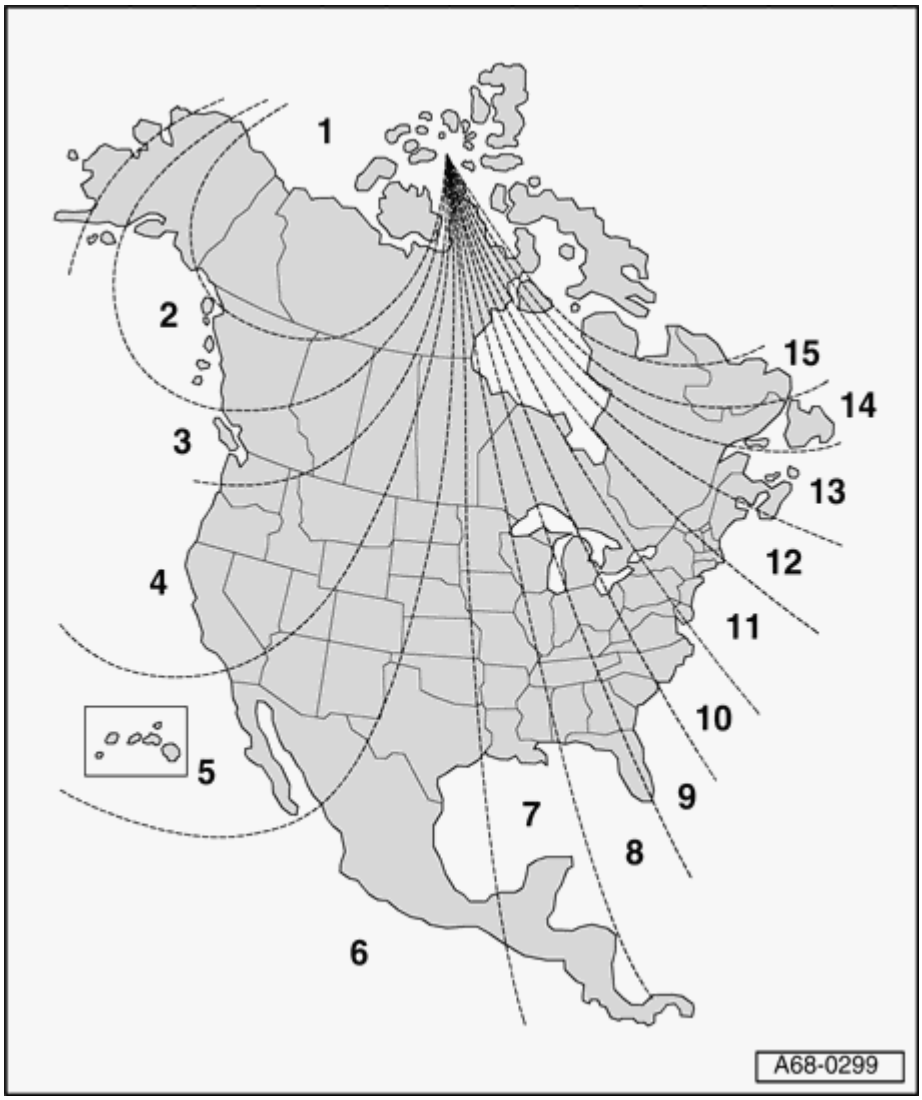


Fig. 49: North American Magnetic Field Graph
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Drive slowly 2 or 3 times in circles at approx. 10 km/h, until a cardinal point is displayed.

cardiagn.com

- Keep pressing adjustment switch on underside of mirror using a thin object (e.g. ballpoint pen) until the number of your zone is displayed.
- Refer to adjacent map for relevant zone.
- After a few seconds a cardinal point is displayed.

Calibrating existing compass

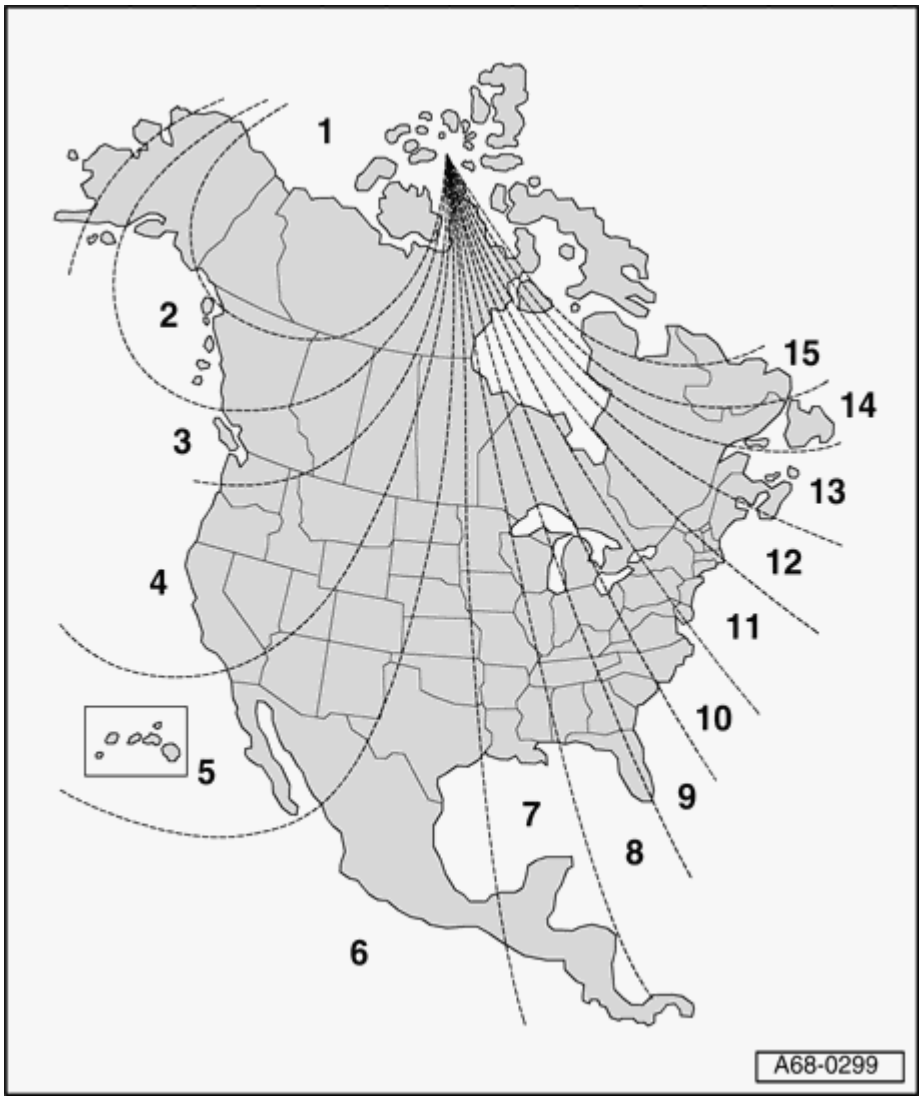


Fig. 50: North American Magnetic Field Graph
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Switch on ignition.
- "C" must appear on display.
- If "C" does not appear, press a thin object (e.g. ballpoint pen) against the adjuster switch on the underside of the mirror until "C" is displayed.
- Drive slowly 2 or 3 times in circles at approx. 10 km/h, until a cardinal point is displayed.

cardiagn.com

Zone adjustment

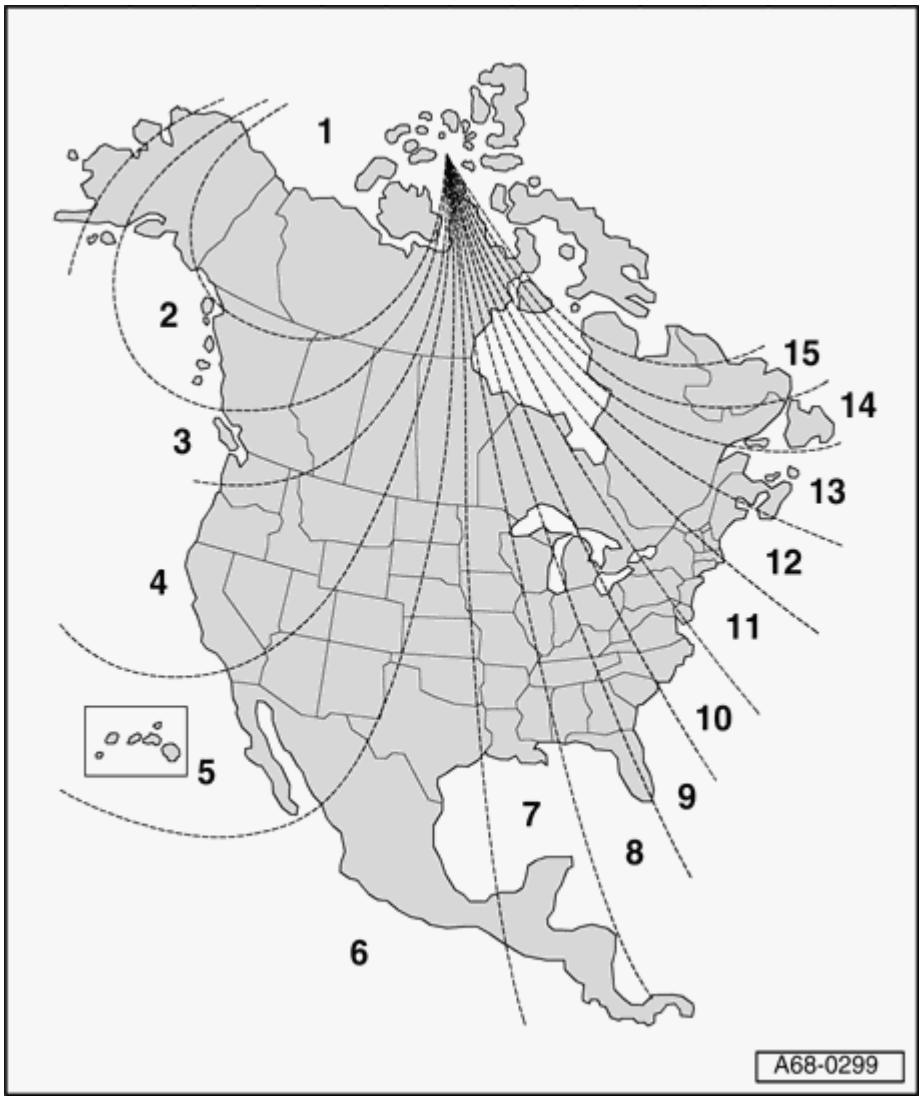


Fig. 51: North American Magnetic Field Graph
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Switch ignition on.
- Keep pressing adjustment switch on underside of mirror using a thin object (e.g. ballpoint pen) until the number of your zone is displayed.
- Refer to adjacent map for relevant zone.
- After a few seconds a cardinal point is displayed.

Retainer plate for interior mirror, cementing

Repair method using glass-metal-adhesive

Special tools and workshop equipment required

cardiagn.com

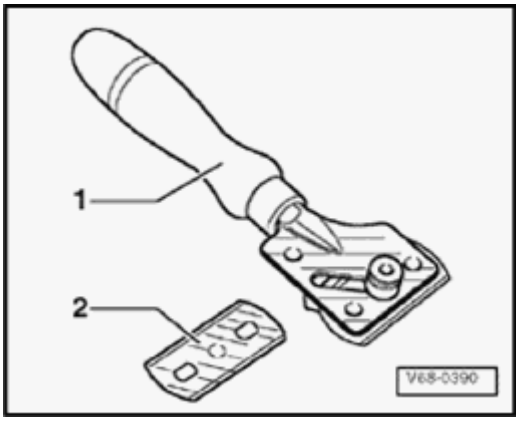


Fig. 52: Identifying Glass Scraper & Razor Blade
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Glass-Metal-Adhesive-Set D 000 703 A1

1 - Glass scraper (commercially available)

2 - Razor blade (commercially available)

CAUTION: Use adhesive at room temperature and observe manufacturers safety instructions and directions for use.

The material will harden fully after several hours.

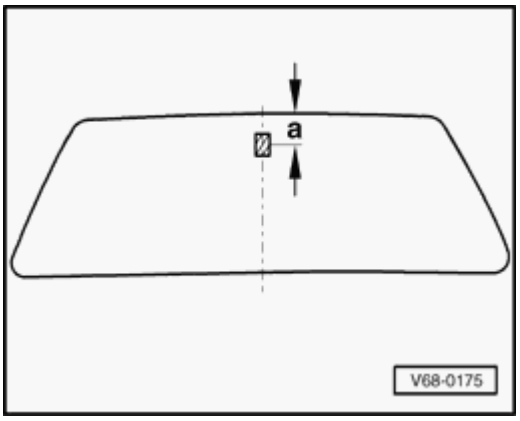


Fig. 53: Rearview Mirror Dimension
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Dimension for interior rear-view mirror a = 153 mm (top edge of trim strip to center of bonding surface of mirror base).

Procedure

- Take mirror plate out of mirror base.

cardiagn.com

- Use wire brush to remove PUR adhesive from mirror plate.
- Grind off three spacers on bonding surface. Use sandpaper (360/400 grain) on flat surface.
- Keep sanded surface clean and free from dirt and grease.

- Use glass scraper to remove PUR adhesive and primer from windscreen down to ceramic layer.

CAUTION: Do not damage ceramic coating. Scratches will remain permanently visible.

- Clean bonding area with adhesive remover D 002 000 10 or cleaning solution D 009 401 04.
- Cut nylon mesh fabric exactly to the size of the mirror base.

NOTE:

- **Wear hand protection (rubber glove).**

- Apply adhesive evenly and smoothly to base of mirror.
- Install nylon mesh fabric onto base of mirror.
- Apply further adhesive to nylon mesh fabric by dabbing with the tube.

30 seconds are available for applying the adhesive to the nylon mesh fabric before pressing it onto the windshield.

- Press base of mirror firmly (do not use force) against windshield for 15 seconds.
- Remove excess adhesive with a cloth.

NOTE:

- **Interior rear view mirror can be reinstalled after 15 minutes.**

cardiagn.com

68 - INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS AND COVERS

Glove compartment, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

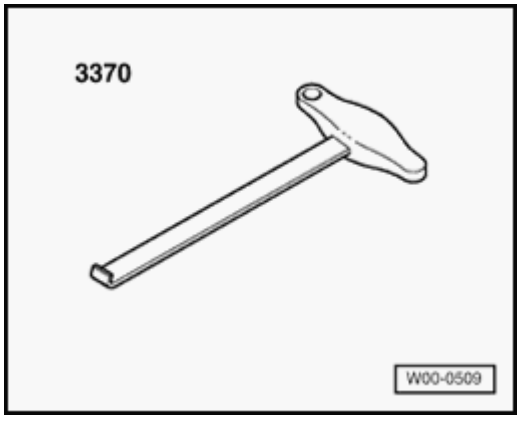


Fig. 1: Identifying Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special hook 3370

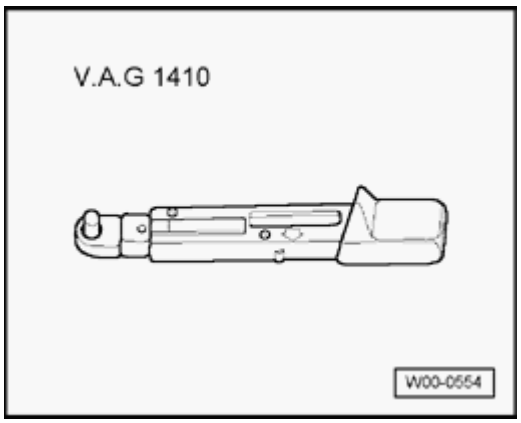


Fig. 2: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

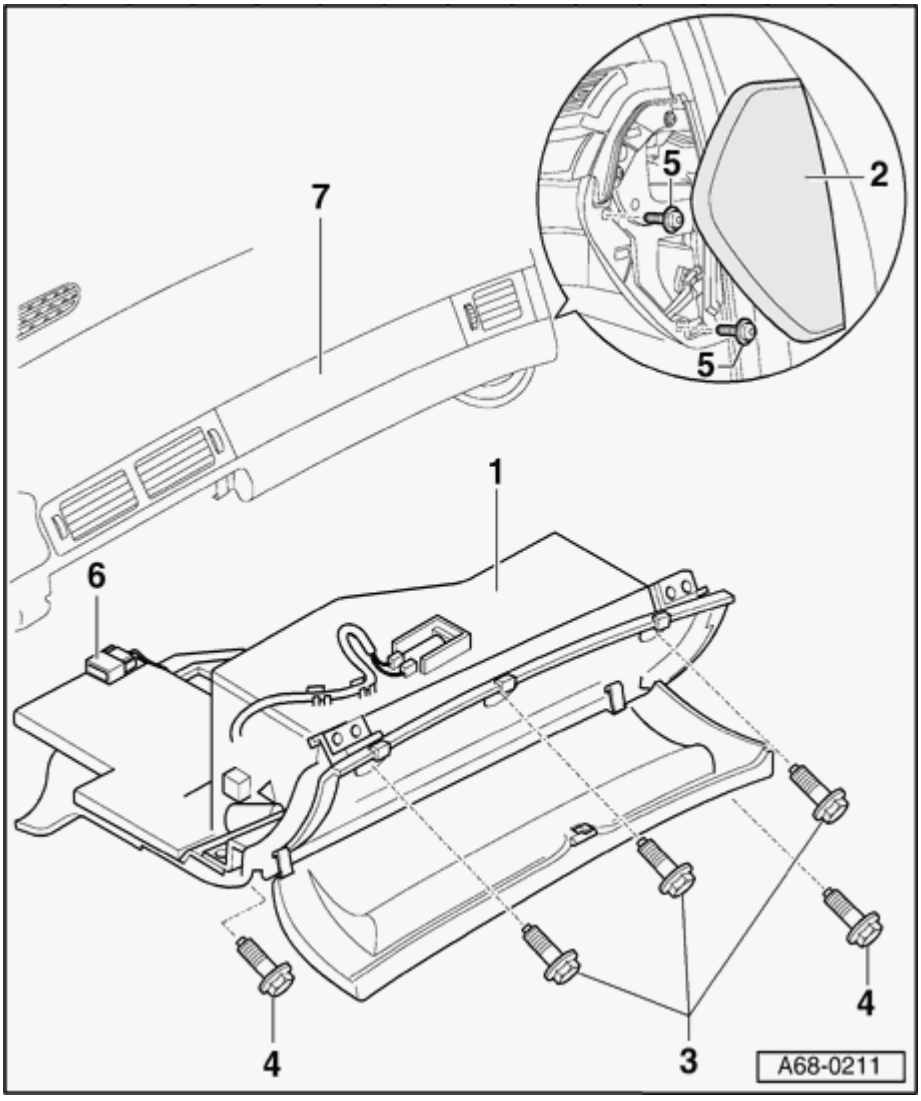


Fig. 3: Glove Compartment Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Glove compartment

- Removal:

  - Disconnect instrument panel cover - **2** -. **Removing right instrument panel cover**
  - Open glove compartment cover.
  - Remove three bolts - **3** - at top in depressions of glove compartment - **1** -.
  - Remove outside bolts - **5** - (2x) from the side.

  - Remove bolts - **4** - - (2x) from the footwell out from below.
  - Remove glove compartment downward.
  - Remove connector - **6** - of glove compartment light.

cardiagn.com

- Disconnect harness connectors to electrical components in glove compartment where applicable.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Instrument panel cover

- Removing **Removing right instrument panel cover**

3 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

4 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

5 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

6 - Electrical connection

7 - Instrument panel

Removing right instrument panel cover

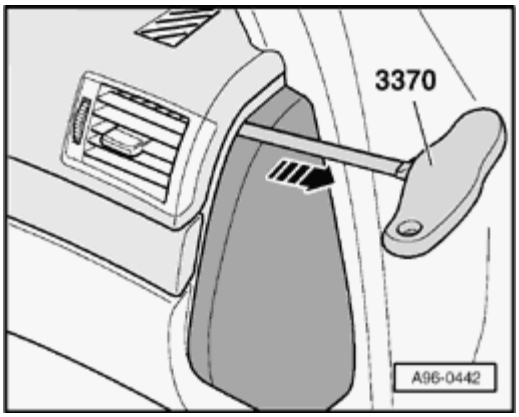


Fig. 4: Removing Right Instrument Panel Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull off right instrument panel cover - **arrow** - using special hook 3370.

Glove compartment lock, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

Removing

- Remove glove compartment --> **Storage compartments and covers** .
- Open glove compartment cover.

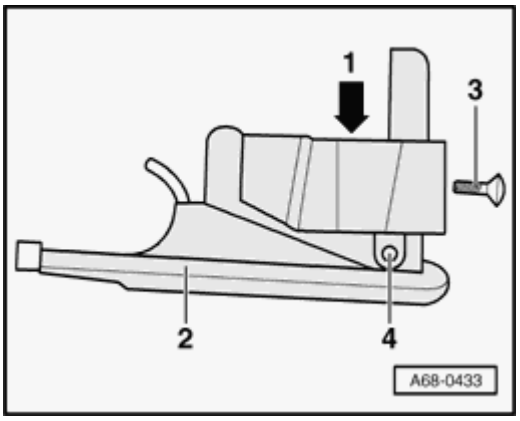


Fig. 5: Glove Compartment Lock, Removing/Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **3** - of handle - **2** - on the cover side.
- Pull handle - **2** - off from glove compartment cover.
- Push pin - **4** - through and remove the lock - **1** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Glove compartment cover, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove glove compartment --> **Storage compartments and covers**.

cardiagn.com

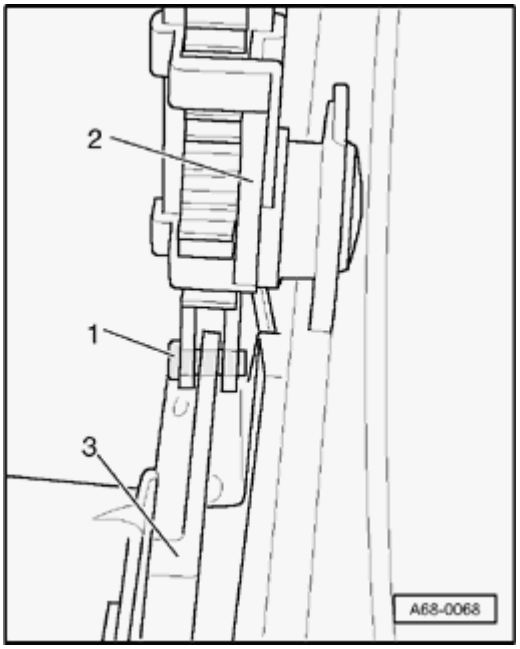


Fig. 6: Pressing Pin Out In At Connection Between Brake For Glove Compartment Cover And Glove Compartment Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press pin - **1** - out in - **direction of arrow** - at connection between brake for glove compartment cover - **2** - and glove compartment cover - **3** -.
- Open glove compartment cover.

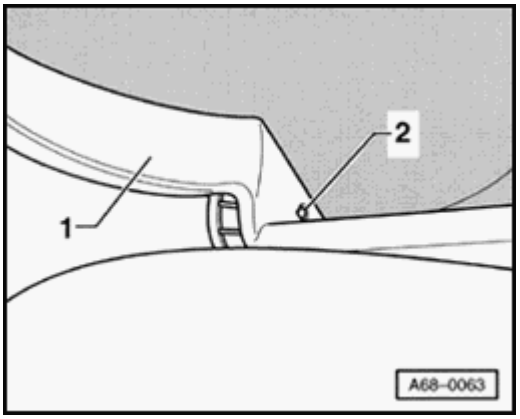


Fig. 7: Knocking Pins On Left/Right Out Of Glove Compartment Using A Drift
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

There are holes on the inside of the glove compartment at the left and right by the hinge.

- Knock the pins - **2** - on left and right out of the glove compartment - **1** - using a drift (4 mm).

If there is no hole, proceed as follows:

cardiagn.com

- Pull pin - **2** - inward on left and right inward and remove using a pliers.
- Remove glove compartment cover.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Brake for glove compartment cover, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

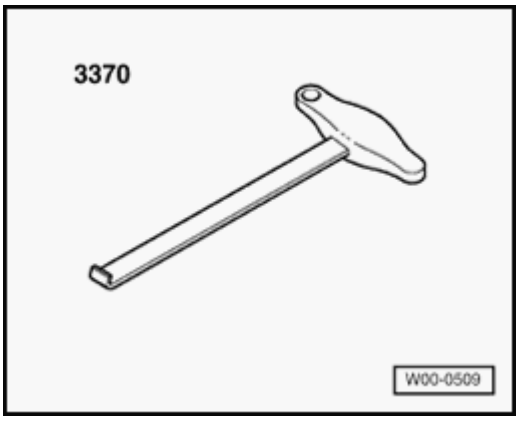


Fig. 8: Identifying Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special hook 3370

NOTE:

- **There are 2 versions of the glove compartment cover brake. Both versions are described in the following. Determine which version the vehicle has and performed the corresponding activities.**
- **Version 1 Version 1**
- **Version 2 Version 2**

Version 1

Removing

- Remove glove compartment --> **Storage compartments and covers**.

cardiagn.com

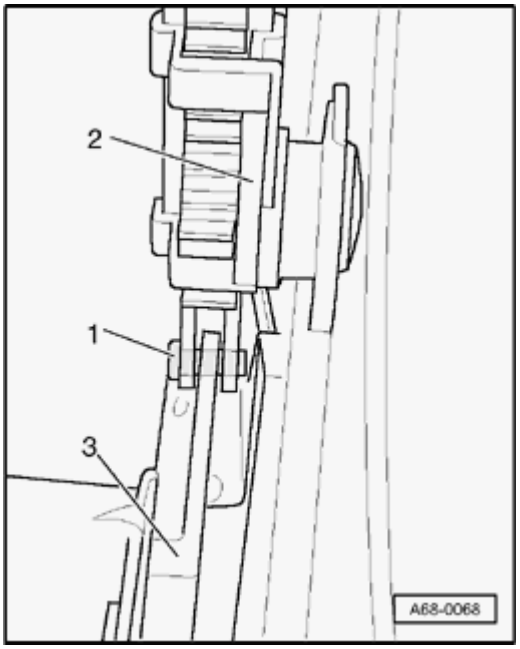


Fig. 9: Pressing Pin Out In At Connection Between Brake For Glove Compartment Cover And Glove Compartment Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press pin - **1** - out in direction of arrow at connection between brake for glove compartment cover - **2** - and glove compartment cover - **3** -.
- Loosen green connector.

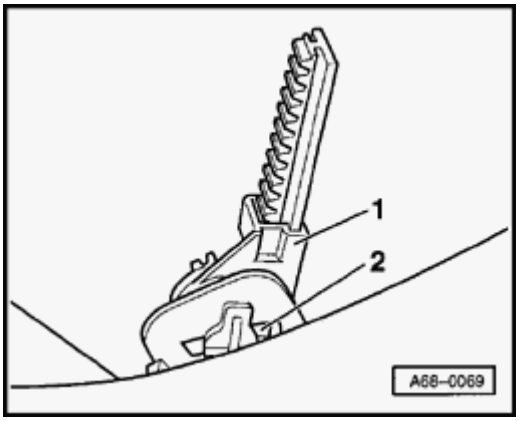


Fig. 10: Rotating Brake For Glove Compartment Cover In Opening And Removing Brake For Glove Compartment Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Rotate brake for glove compartment cover - **1** - approx. 90° in opening - **2** - and remove brake for glove compartment cover.

Installing

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

Version 2

Removing

- Open glove compartment.

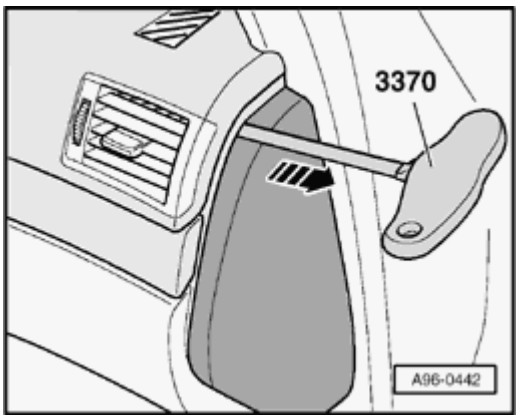


Fig. 11: Removing Right Instrument Panel Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull off right cover on instrument panel - **arrow** - using special tool 3370.

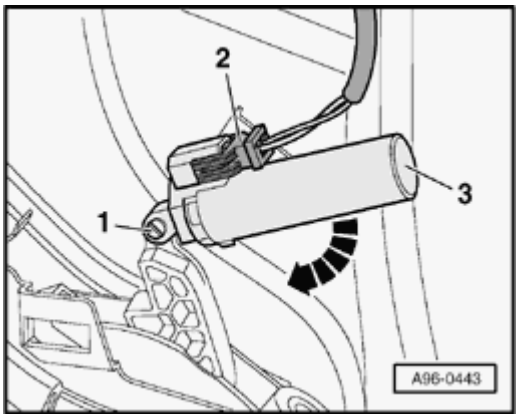


Fig. 12: Disconnecting Electrical Connector, Removing Joint Pin 1 & Disengaging Brake For Glove Compartment Cover In A Clockwise
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect electrical connector - **2** -.
- Remove joint pin 1 - **1** -.
- Disengage the brake for glove compartment cover - **3** - in a clockwise direction and remove it.

NOTE:

- **Depicted in illustration with glove compartment removed.**

cardiagn.com

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Glove compartment, removing and installing (vehicles with knee bolster)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

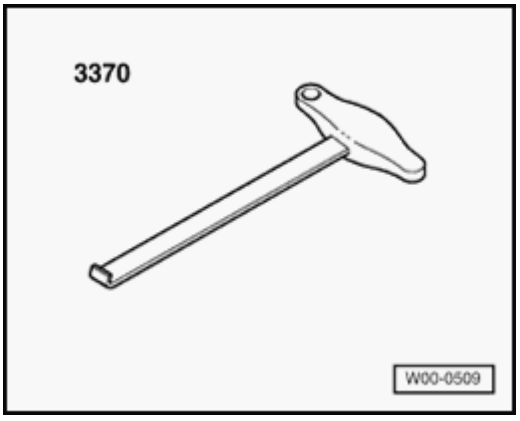


Fig. 13: Identifying Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special hook 3370

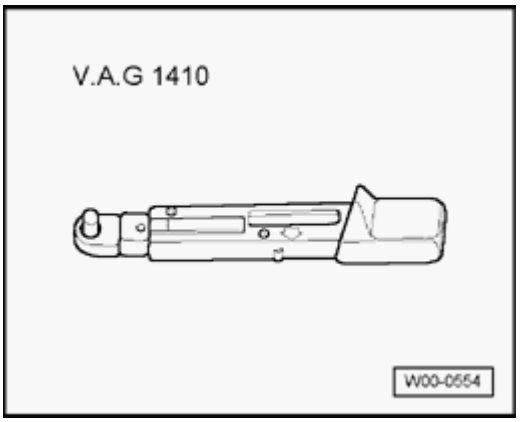


Fig. 14: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

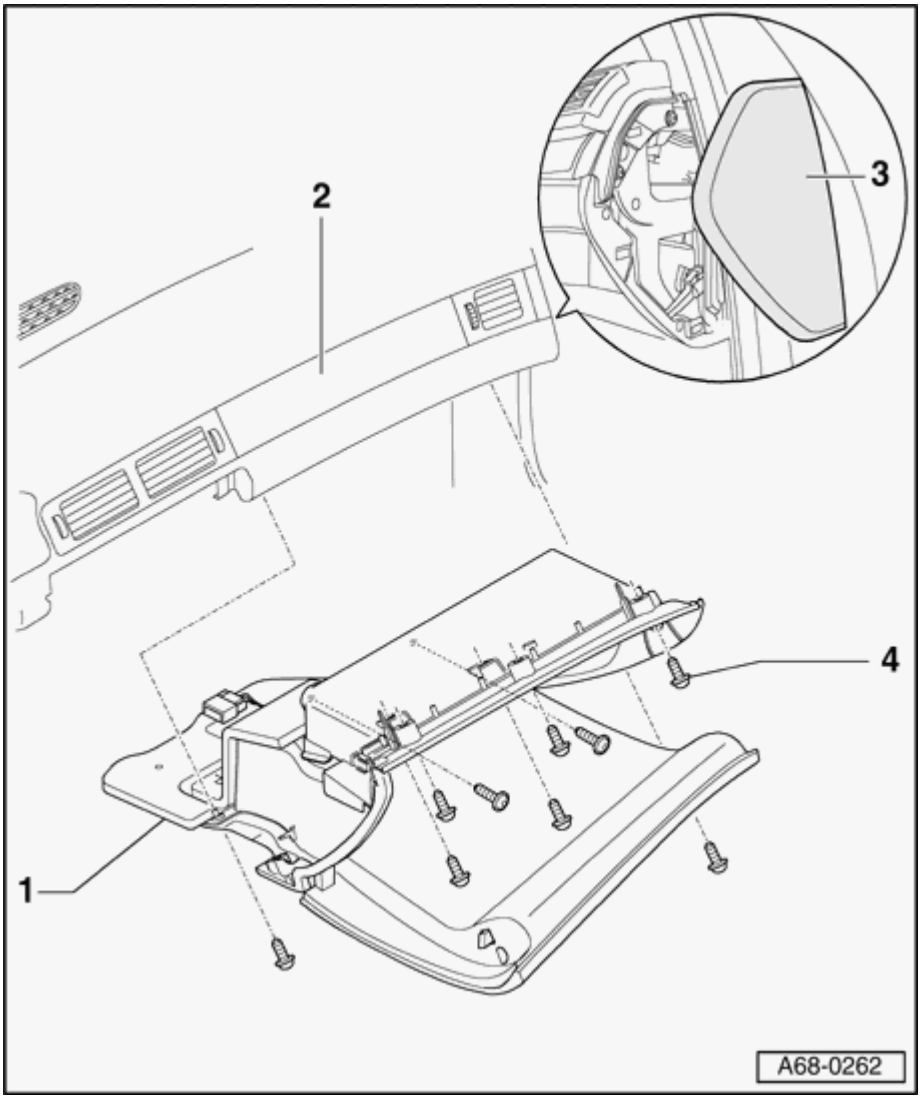


Fig. 15: Glove Compartment (Vehicles With Knee Bolster) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Glove compartment

- Removal:

  - Disconnect instrument panel cover - **3** -. **Removing right instrument panel cover**
  - Open glove compartment cover.
  - Remove bolts - **4** -.
  - Remove glove compartment downward.

  - Disconnect harness connectors to electrical components in glove compartment where applicable.

- **Installing:**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Instrument panel

3 - Instrument panel cover

- **Removing**

4 - Screws (9x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

Removing right instrument panel cover

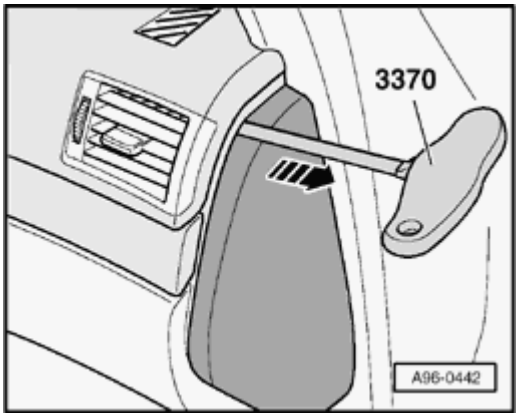


Fig. 16: Removing Right Instrument Panel Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull off right instrument panel cover - **arrow** - with hook for front end 3370.

Handle for glove compartment lock, removing and installing (vehicles with knee bolster)

Removing

- Open glove compartment cover.

cardiagn.com

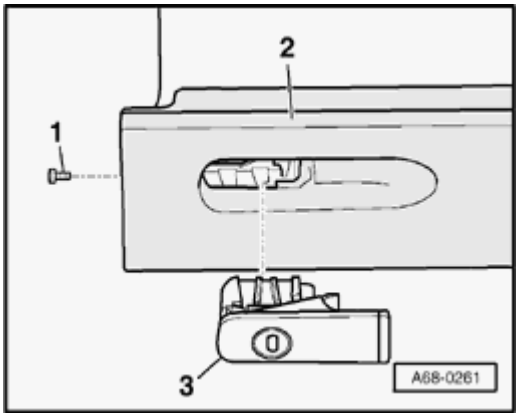


Fig. 17: Handle For Glove Compartment Lock (Vehicles With Knee Bolster) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **1** - of handle - **3** - on left side of glove compartment.
- Pull handle - **2** - off from glove compartment cover.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Drivers side storage compartment (with and without knee bolster), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

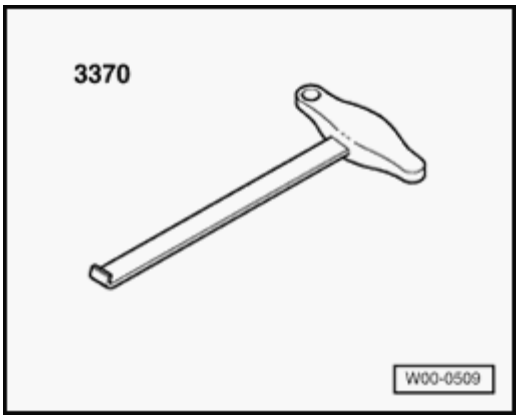


Fig. 18: Identifying Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special hook 3370

cardiagn.com

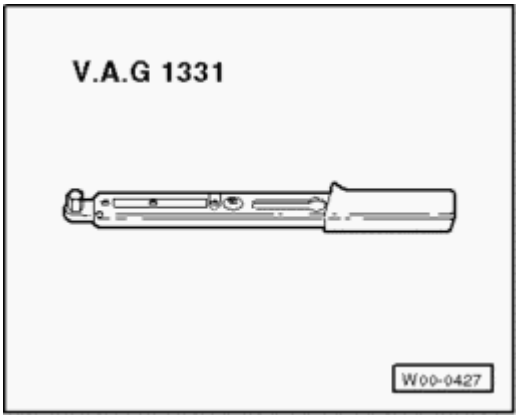
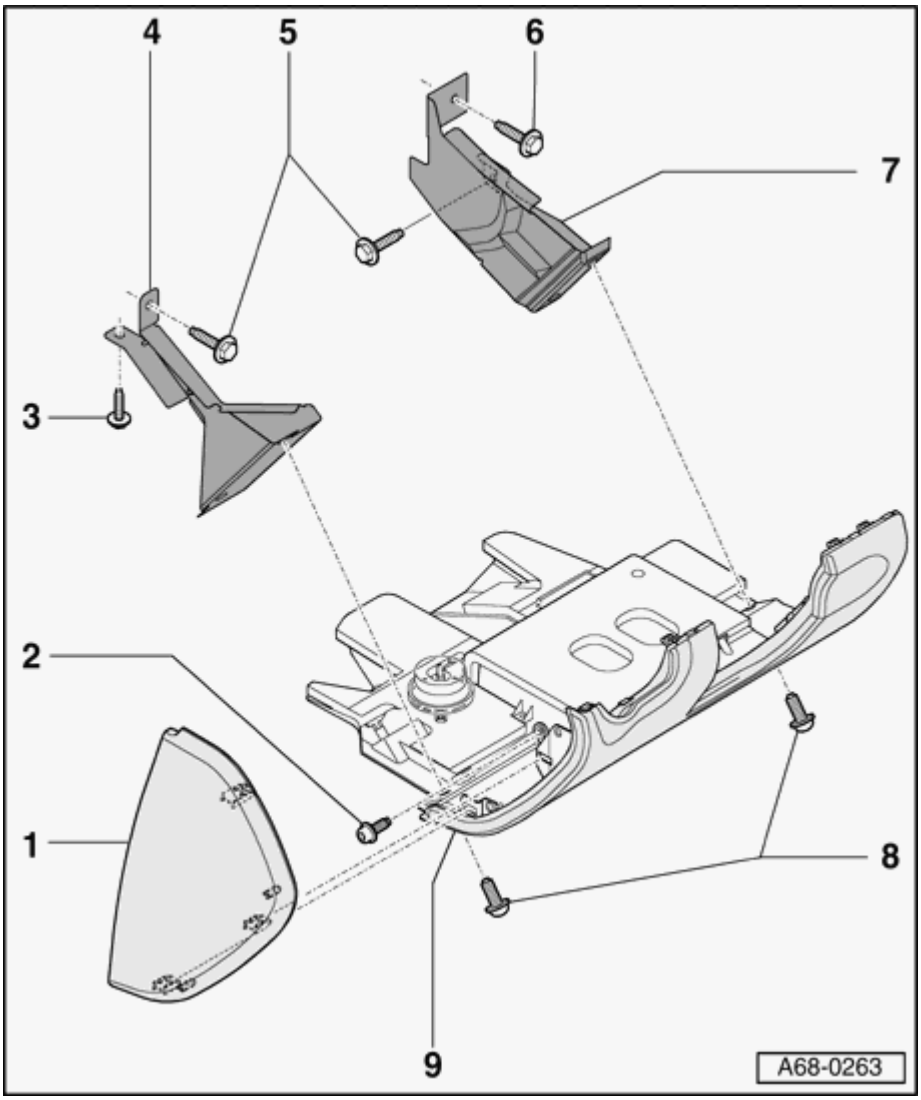


Fig. 19: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331



cardiagn.com

Fig. 20: Drivers Side Storage Compartment (With And Without Knee Bolster) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Instrument panel cover

2 - Screw

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

3 - Screw

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

4 - Left support

- Only on vehicles with knee bolster

5 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

6 - Screw

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

7 - Right support

- Only on vehicles with knee bolster

8 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

9 - Driver-side storage compartment

- Removal:

  - Remove instrument panel cover - **1** - **Removing right instrument panel cover**.
  - Remove bolts - **2** - and - **8** -.
  - Pull storage compartment at top of instrument panel back and remove.
  - Unclip diagnostic socket.

  - Disconnect electrical harness connector at footwell illumination and, if necessary, disconnect additional loudspeaker. **Auxiliary speaker, removing**

cardiagn.com

- **Installing:**

  - First engage drivers side storage compartment in guides at lower edge, then clip into top of instrument panel.

Removing right instrument panel cover

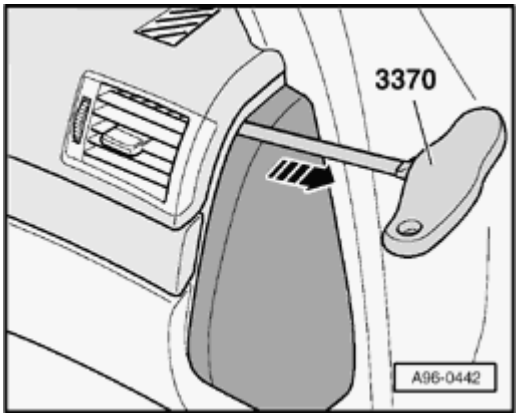


Fig. 21: Removing Right Instrument Panel Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

  - Pull off right instrument panel cover - **arrow** - with hook for front end 3370.

Auxiliary speaker, removing

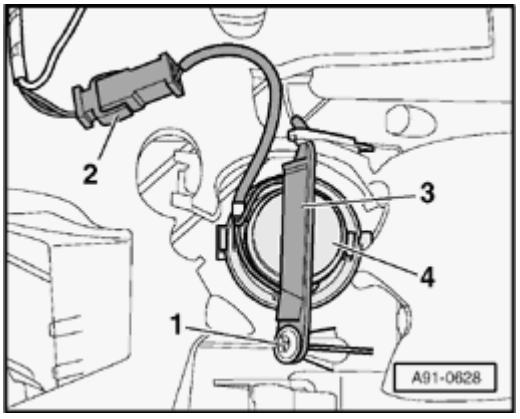


Fig. 22: Auxiliary Speaker, Removing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

  - Disconnect electrical connector - **2** -.
  - Unthread bolt - **1** - and remove angle bracket - **3** - and additional speaker - **4** -.

Instrument panel cover, removing and installing

Removing

cardiagn.com

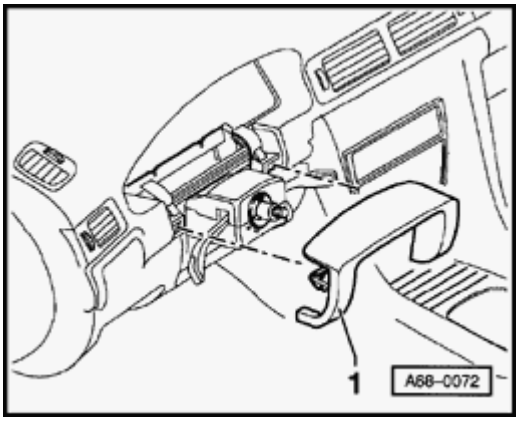


Fig. 23: Instrument Panel Cover Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove instrument panel cover - **1** - toward rear.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Center armrest, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

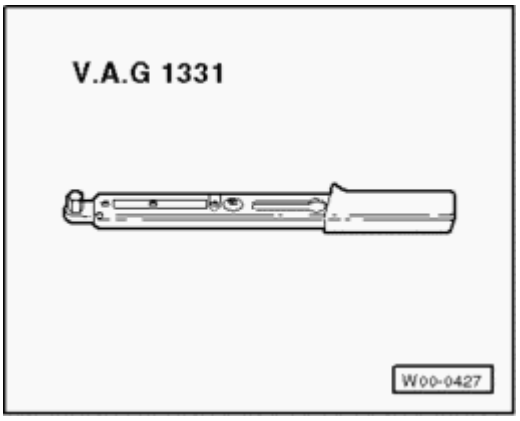


Fig. 24: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

cardiagn.com

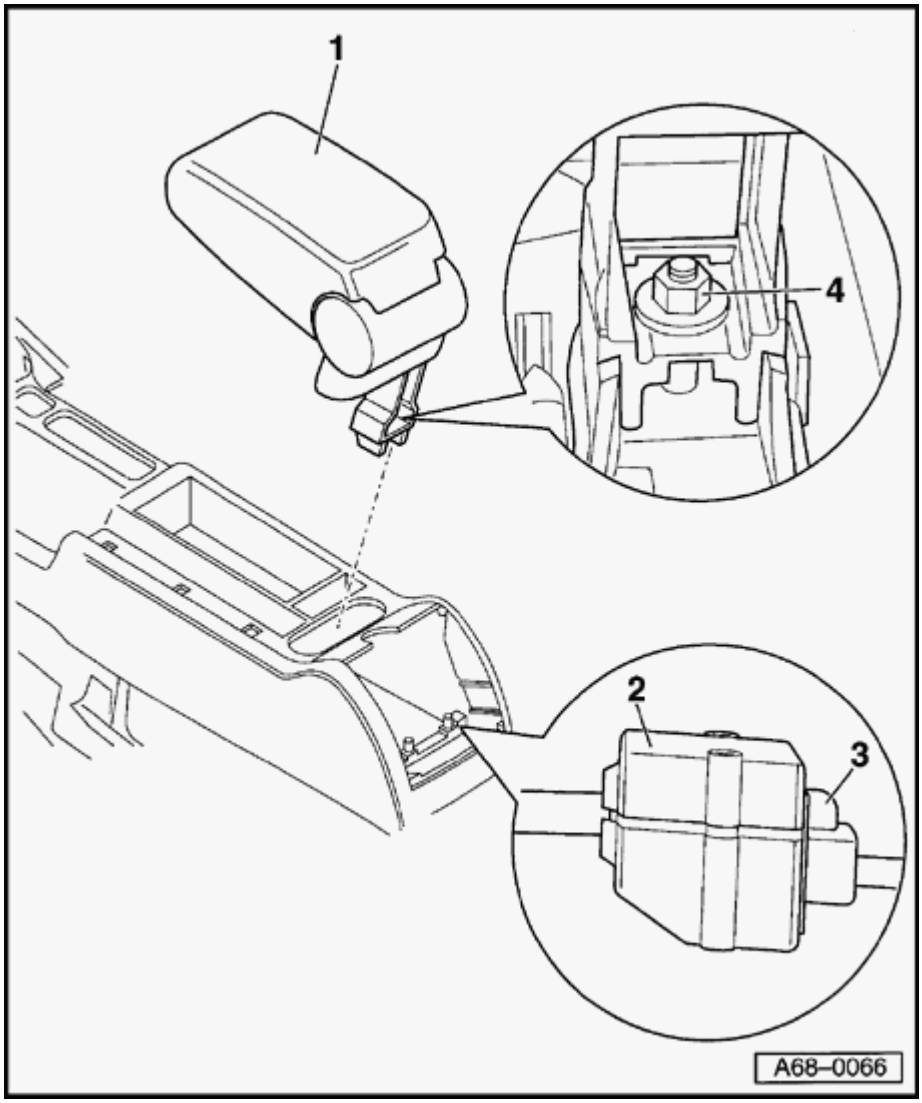


Fig. 25: Center Armrest Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Center armrest

- Removal:

  - Remove rear ash tray --> **Rear ashtray, removing and installing**.
  - Remove nut - **4** - in ash tray compartment.
  - For a center armrest with telephone, disconnect harness connector - **2** - by pressing the catch - **3** -.
  - Remove center armrest - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

2 - Connector

3 - Locking lugs

4 - Nut

- Tightening torque 26 Nm

Support bracket for center armrest, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

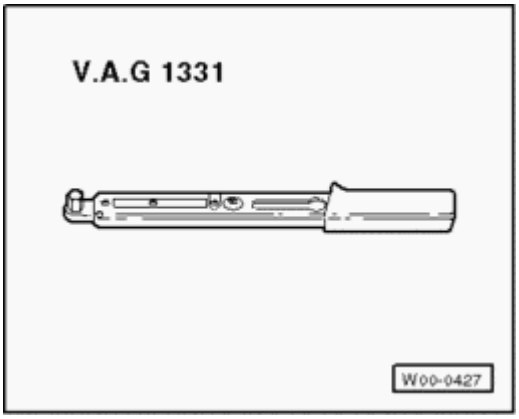


Fig. 26: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

Removing

- Remove center armrest. --> **Center armrest, removing and installing**
- Remove center console:

- Center console, removing and installing - USA and Canadian vehicles up to 10.04 --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)**
- Center console, removing and installing - USA and Canadian vehicles from 11.04 --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles from 11.04)**

cardiagn.com

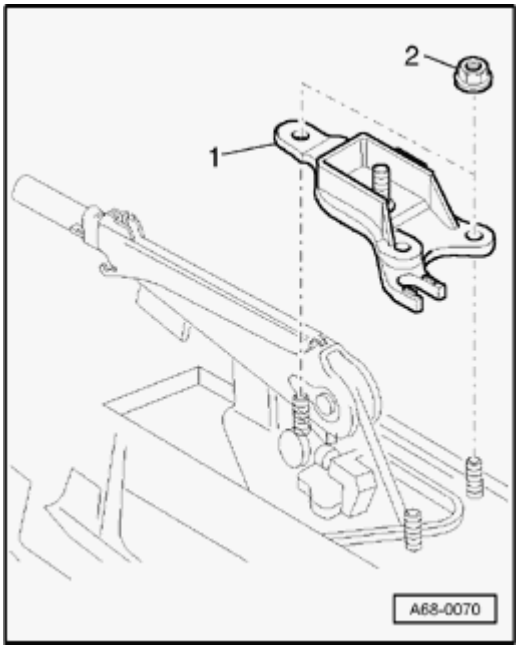


Fig. 27: Removing Nut & Support Foot
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove nut - **2** - (2x).

Tightening torque: 10 Nm.

- Remove support foot - **1** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Create cutout for armrest

To create cutout for armrest, center armrest must be cut out as depicted in illustration.

Broken line at dimension - **B** - as guide.

The cutout is 64 mm long.

cardiagn.com

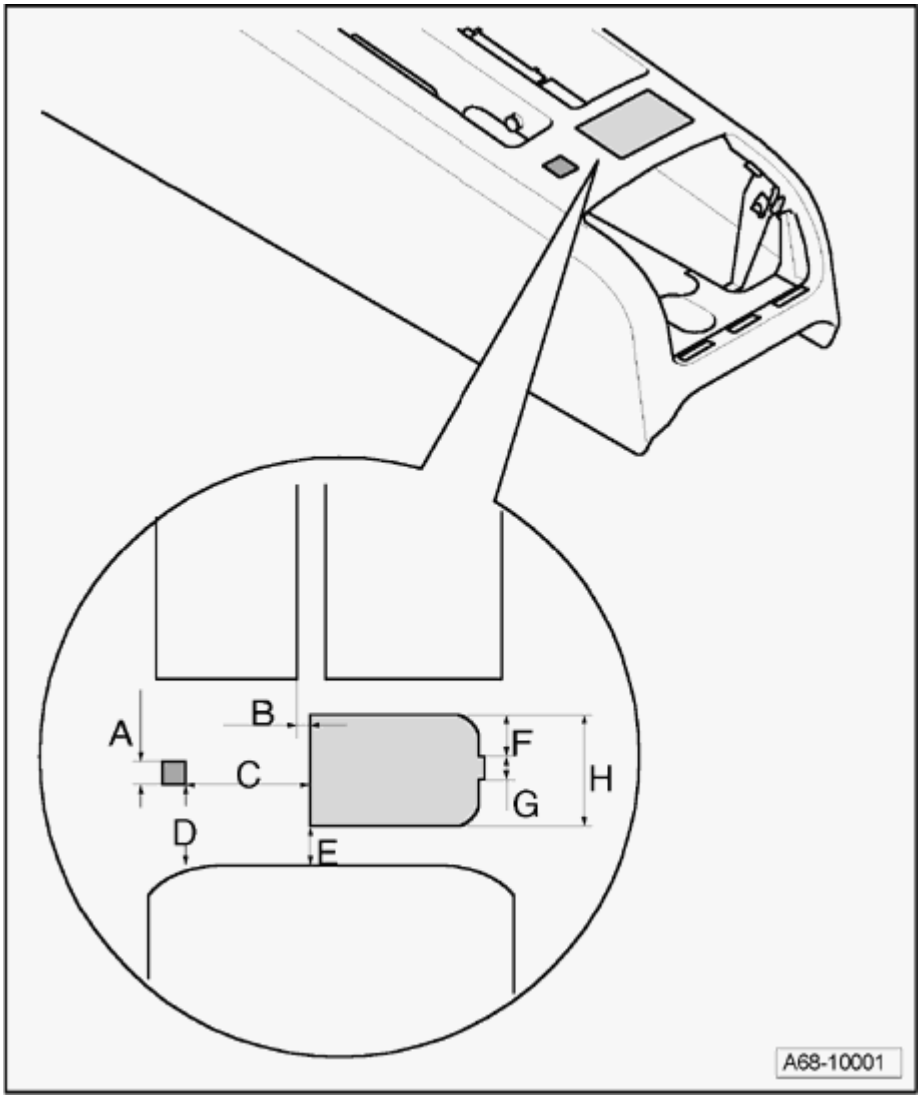


Fig. 28: Creating Cutout For Armrest
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

A - 9 mm

B - 5 mm

C - 39 mm

D - 31 mm

E - 15 mm

F - 16 mm

G - 9 mm

cardiagn.com

H - 43 mm

Center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

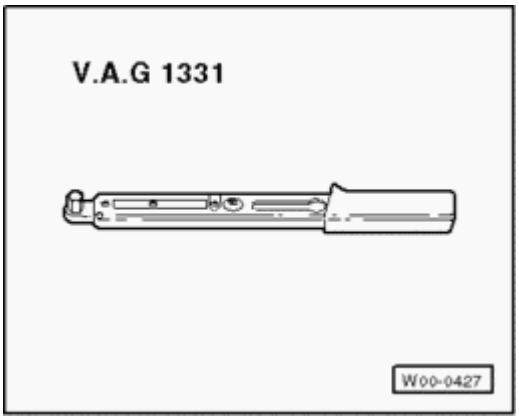


Fig. 29: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

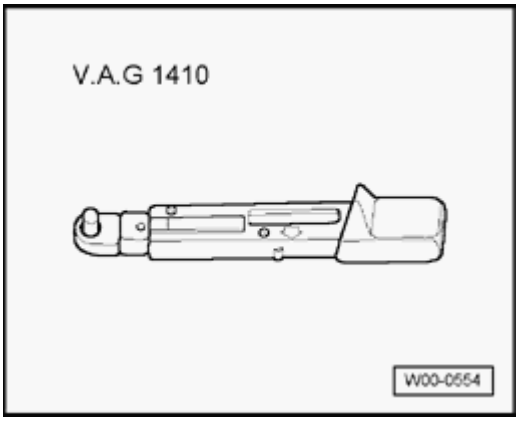


Fig. 30: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

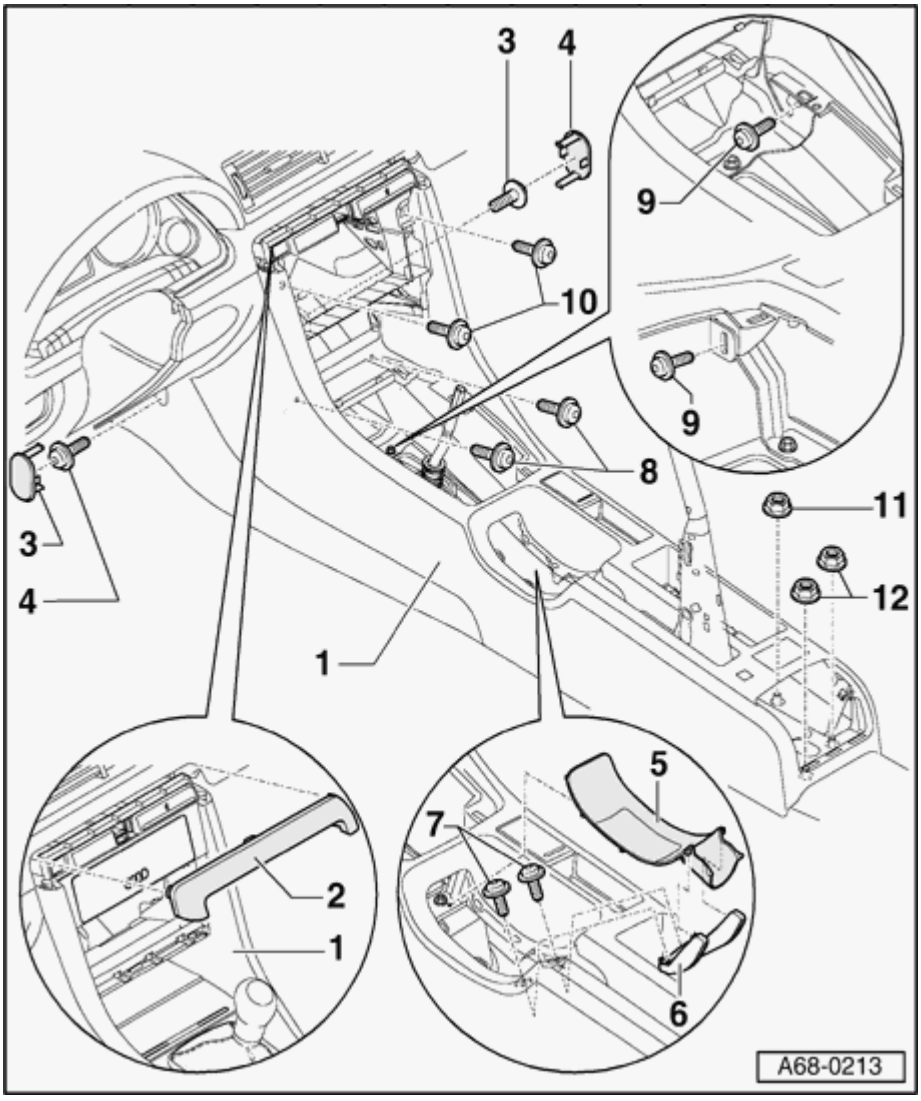


Fig. 31: Center Console (Vehicles Up To 10.04) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Center console

- Removal:

  - Remove center armrest --> **Center armrest, removing and installing**.
  - Remove cover at selector lever --> **Shift cover and shifter boot, removing and installing**.
  - Remove the radio -->
    - **91 - COMMUNICATION**
    - **91 RADIO, TELEPHONE, NAVIGATION, TRIP COMPUTER** for COMMUNICATION, CABRIOLET
  - Remove A/C control head E87 --> **87 AIR CONDITIONING** .

cardiagn.com

- Remove button trim - **2** -.
- Pull up parking brake firmly.
- With automatic transmissions, position selector lever all the way back.
- At the front inside footwell, remove the covers - **4** - on right and left sides at the center console side.

- Remove bolts - **3** - at the front inside footwell on right and left sides at the center console side.
- Remove parking brake lever handle --> **Parking brake lever handle, removing and installing**.
- Remove parking brake lever trim --> **Trim of parking brake lever, removing and installing**.
- Carefully remove cover - **5** - from center console, starting at front.

- Remove two Phillips-head screws - **7** - on connecting piece - **6** - and remove connecting piece. Otherwise, trim cannot be pulled away above parking brake lever.
- Remove front ashtray --> **Front ashtray, removing and installing**.
- Remove cigarette lighter --> **Cigarette lighter in center console, removing and installing (vehicles from 11.04)**.
- Remove navigation control head --> **Navigation control head in center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)**.

- Remove screws - **8 to 10** -.
- Vehicles with center armrest: Remove hex-combination nut - **11** -.
- Remove two hex-combination nuts - **12** -.
- Pull center console forcefully backward and remove it from vehicle.

NOTE:

- **Center console may be removed from the diecast part on the instrument panel only with difficulty.**
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Switch trim

3 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

4 - Cover (2x)

5 - Parking brake cover

6 - Connecting piece

7 - Screws, (2x)

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

8 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

9 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

10 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

11 - Hex combination nut (1x)

- Tightening torque 26 Nm

12 - Hex combination nut (2x)

- Tightening torque 26 Nm

Center console, removing and installing (vehicles from 11.04)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

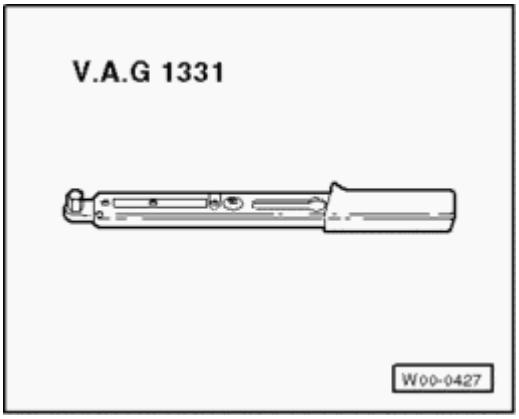


Fig. 32: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

cardiagn.com

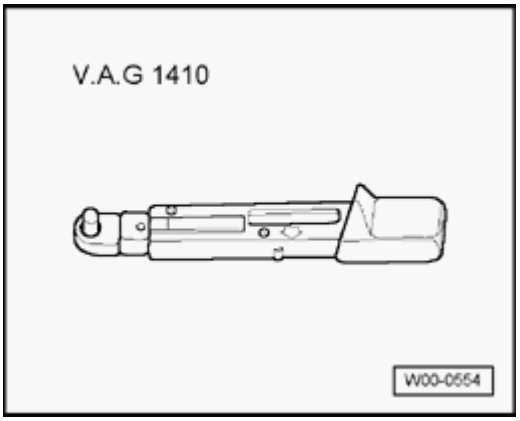
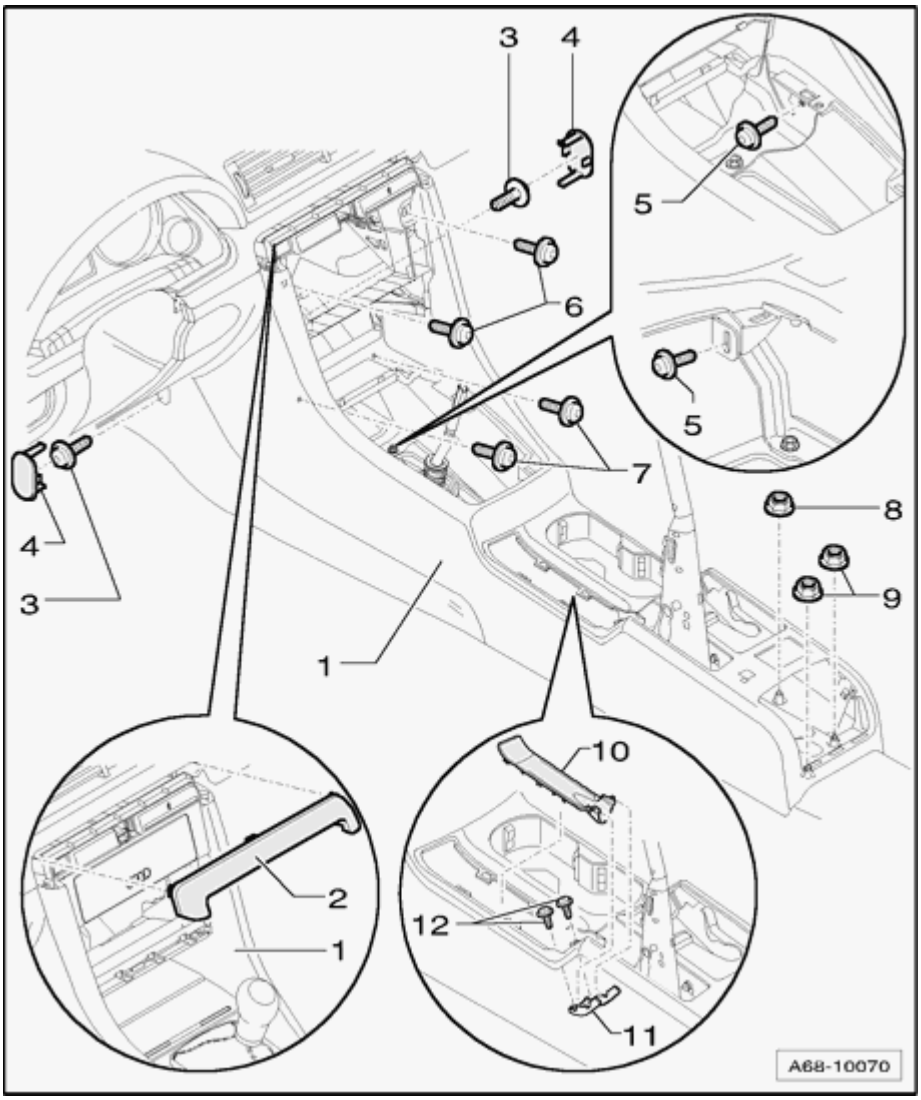


Fig. 33: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410



cardiagn.com

Fig. 34: Center Console (Vehicles From 11.04) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Center console

- Removal:

- Remove center armrest --> **Center armrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove cover at selector lever --> **Shift cover and shifter boot, removing and installing**.
- Remove the radio -->
  - **91 - COMMUNICATION**
  - **91 RADIO, TELEPHONE, NAVIGATION, TRIP COMPUTER** for COMMUNICATION, CABRIOLET
- Remove A/C control head E87 --> **87 AIR CONDITIONING** .

- Remove button trim - **2** -.
- Pull up parking brake firmly.
- With automatic transmissions, position selector lever all the way back.
- At the front inside footwell, remove the covers - **4** - on right and left sides at the center console side.

- Remove bolts - **3** - at the front inside footwell on right and left sides at the center console side.
- Remove parking brake lever handle --> **Parking brake lever handle, removing and installing**.
- Remove parking brake lever trim --> **Trim of parking brake lever, removing and installing**.
- Carefully remove cover - **10** - from center console, starting at front.

- Remove two Phillips-head screws - **12** - on connecting piece - **11** - and remove connecting piece. Otherwise, trim cannot be pulled away above parking brake lever.
- Remove front ashtray --> **Front ashtray, removing and installing**.
- Remove cigarette lighter --> **Cigarette lighter in center console, removing and installing (vehicles from 11.04)**.
- Remove screws - **5 to 7** -.

- Vehicles with center armrest: Remove hex-combination nut - **11** -.
- Remove two hex-combination nuts - **12** -.
- Pull center console forcefully backward and remove it from vehicle.

NOTE:

- **Center console may be removed from the diecast part on the instrument panel only with difficulty.**
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

2 - Switch trim

3 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

4 - Cover (2x)

5 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

6 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

7 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

8 - Hex combination nut (1x)

- Tightening torque 26 Nm

9 - Hex combination nut (2x)

- Tightening torque 26 Nm

10 - Parking brake cover

11 - Connecting piece

12 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 1 Nm

Center console storage compartment, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)

cardiagn.com

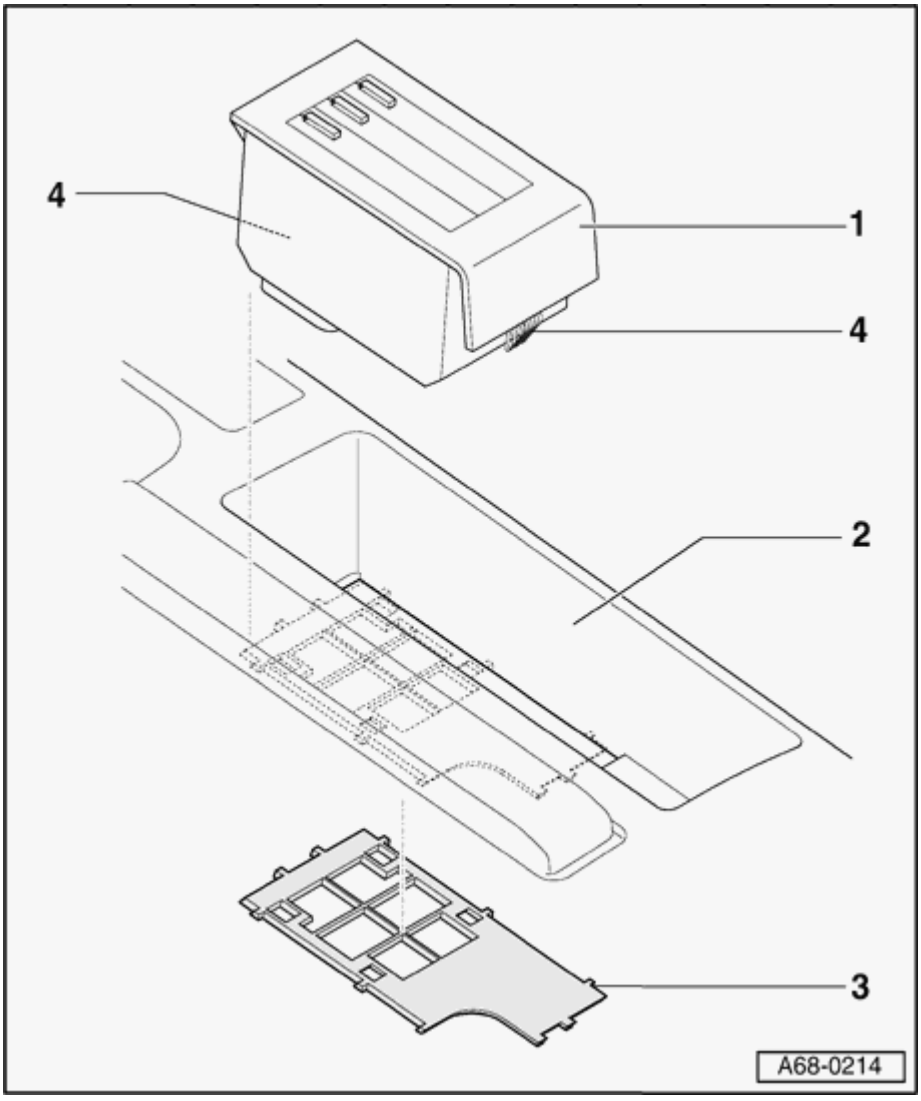


Fig. 35: Center Console Storage Compartment (Vehicles Up To 10.04) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cassette storage compartment

- Removal:
  - Remove center console:
- Center console, removing and installing - USA and Canadian vehicles up to 10.04 --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)**
- Center console, removing and installing - USA and Canadian vehicles from 11.04 --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles from 11.04)**
  - Rotate center console.
  - Pry off tab - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

- Press two spring clips - **4** - at cassette storage compartment.

CAUTION: Work with caution; danger of injury due to sharply-pointed spring clips.

- Remove cassette storage compartment - **1** - from recess - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Cassette storage compartment cut-out in center console

3 - Cassette storage compartment catch

4 - Spring clips

Shift cover and shifter boot, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

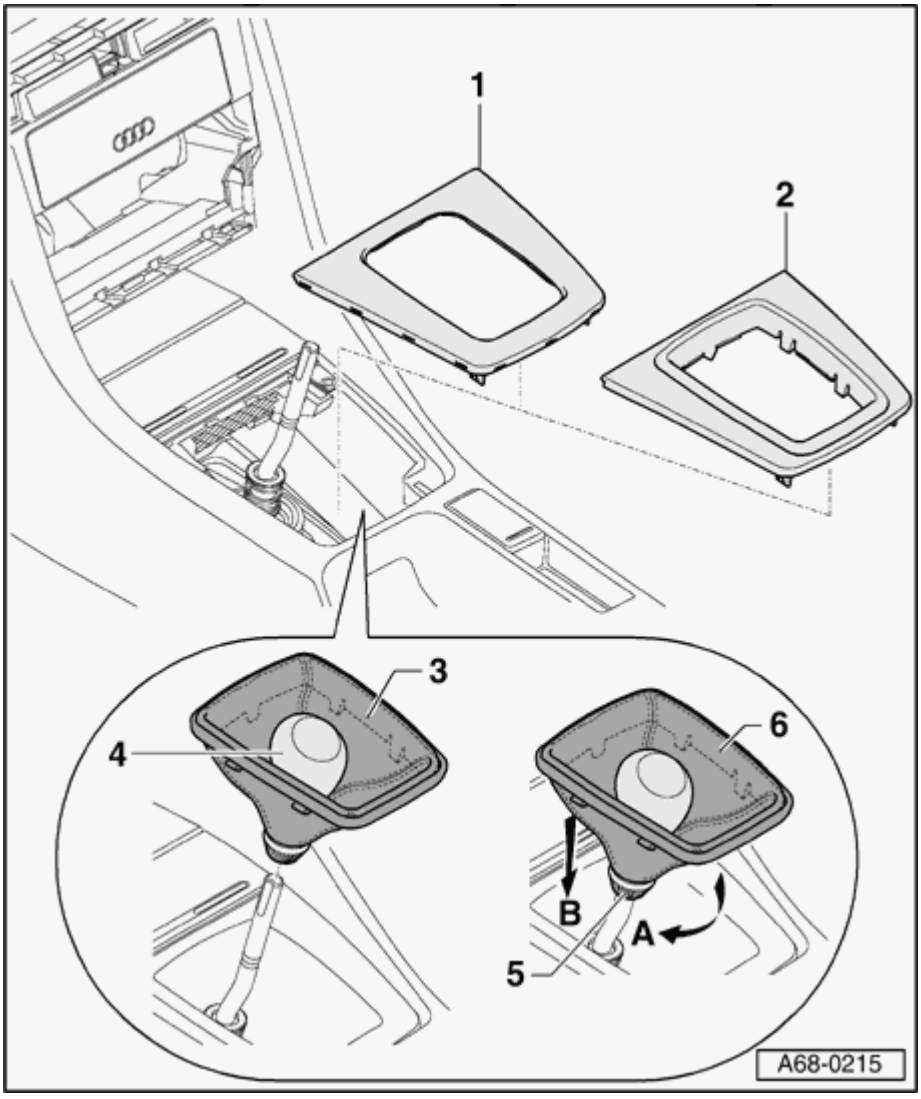


Fig. 36: Shift Cover And Shifter Boot Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Automatic transmission cover

- Pry off shift cover - **1** -.

2 - Manual transmission cover

- Pry off shift cover - **2** -.

3 - Selector lever boot

- Unclip securing frame - **6** -.
- Turn connecting part - **5** - to the right, until it disengages.
- Remove shift knob - **4** -.

cardiagn.com

4 - Shift knob

5 - Connecting part

6 - Securing frame

Navigation control head in center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

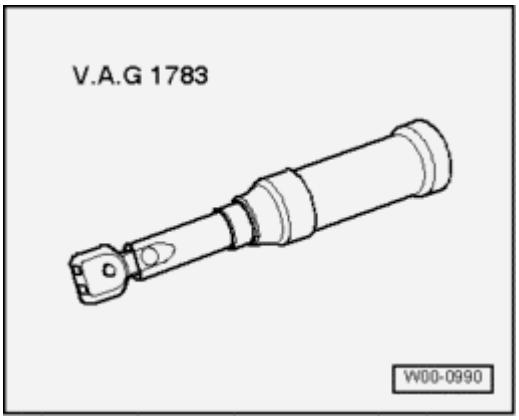


Fig. 37: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

cardiagn.com

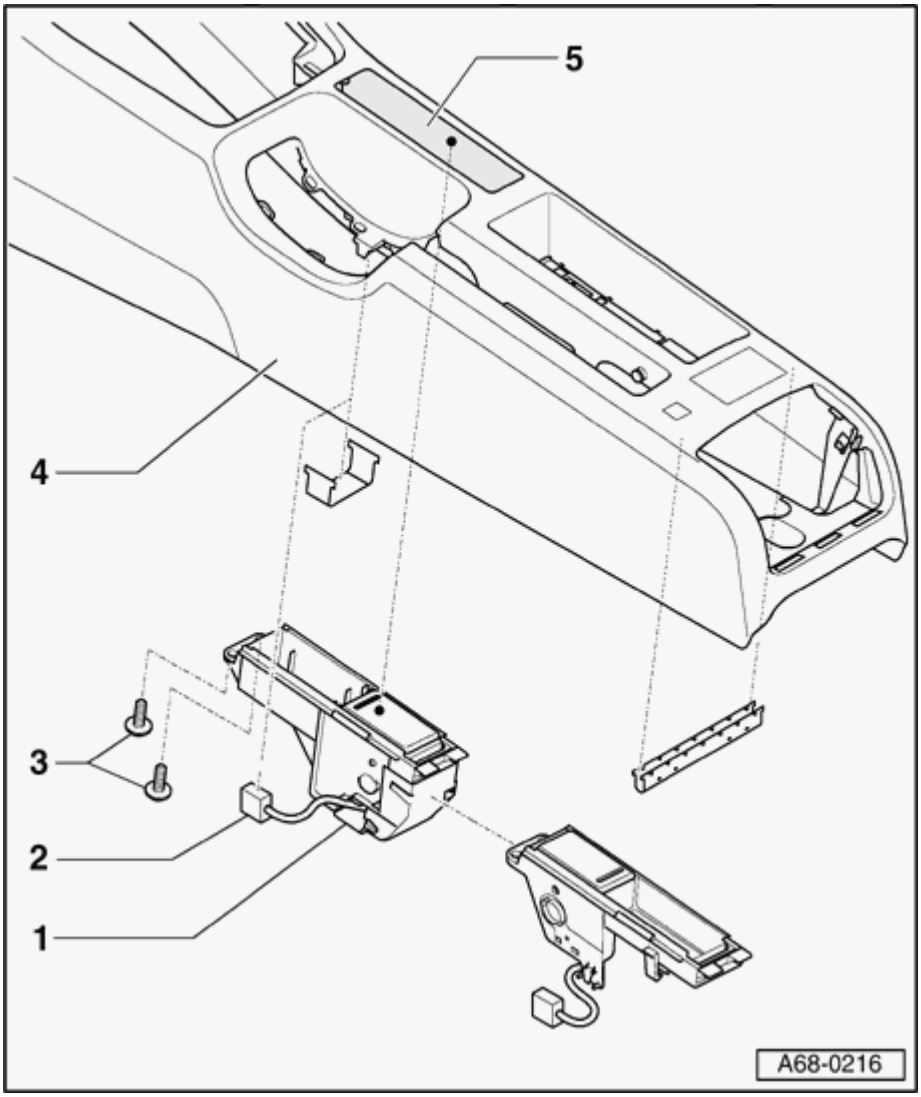


Fig. 38: Navigation Control Head In Center Console (Vehicles Up To 10.04) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Navigation operating unit

- Removal:

  - Remove center console --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)**.
  - Turn center console - **4** - around.
  - Remove two bolts - **3** - on navigation control head - **1** -.
  - Disconnect harness connector - **2** -.

  - Remove navigation control head - **1** - from recess - **5** -.

- **Installing:**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Connector

3 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

4 - Center console

5 - Cut-out

Cigarette lighter in center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

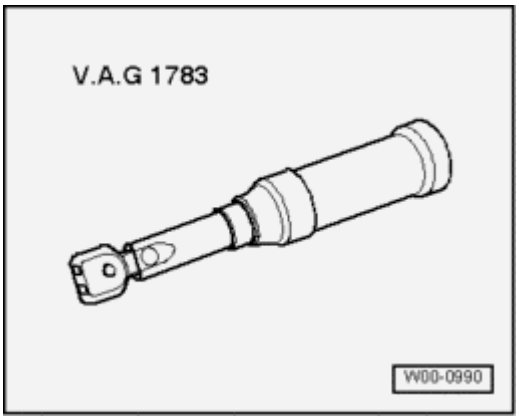


Fig. 39: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

cardiagn.com

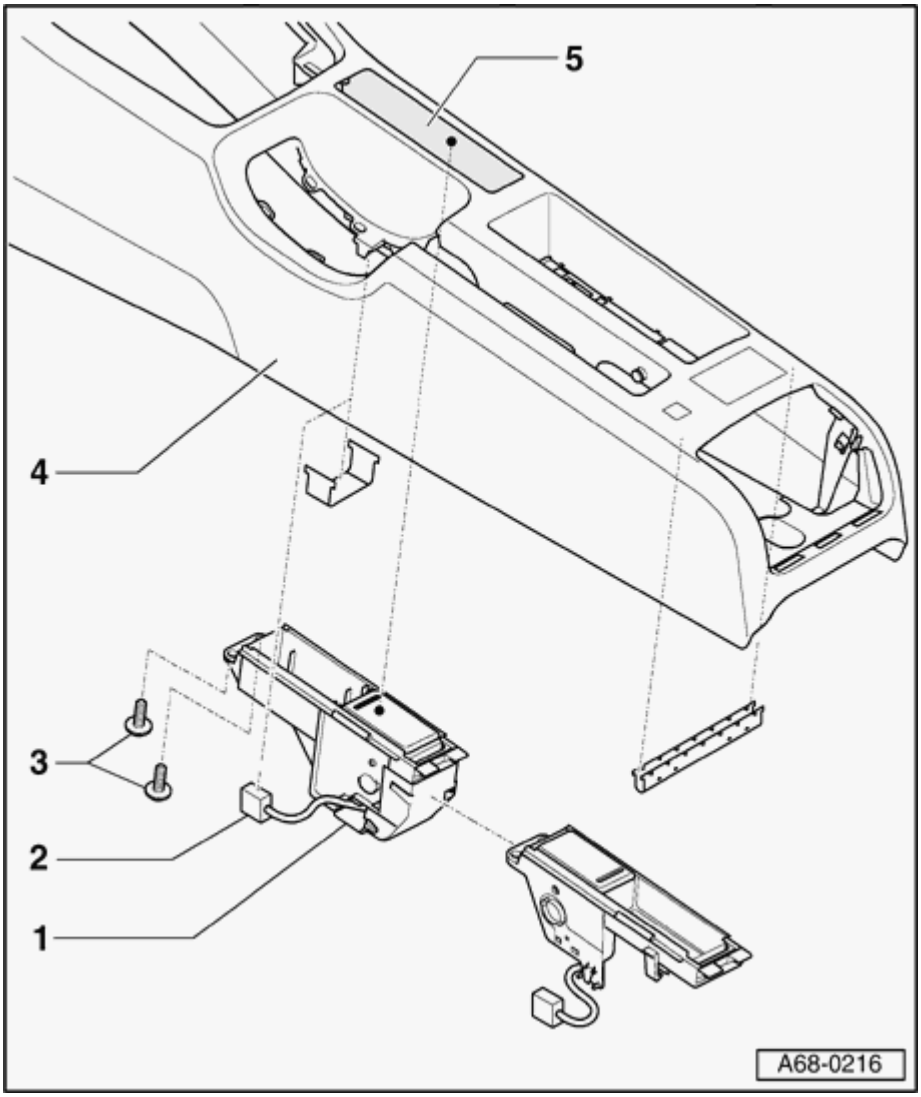


Fig. 40: Cigarette Lighter In Center Console (Vehicles Up To 10.04) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cigarette lighter

- Removal:

  - Remove center console --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)**.
  - Turn center console - **4** - around.
  - Remove two bolts - **3** - on cigarette lighter - **1** -.
  - Disconnect harness connector - **2** -.

  - Remove cigarette lighter - **1** - from recess - **5** -.

- **Installing:**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Connector

3 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

4 - Center console

5 - Cut-out

Cigarette lighter in center console, removing and installing (vehicles from 11.04)

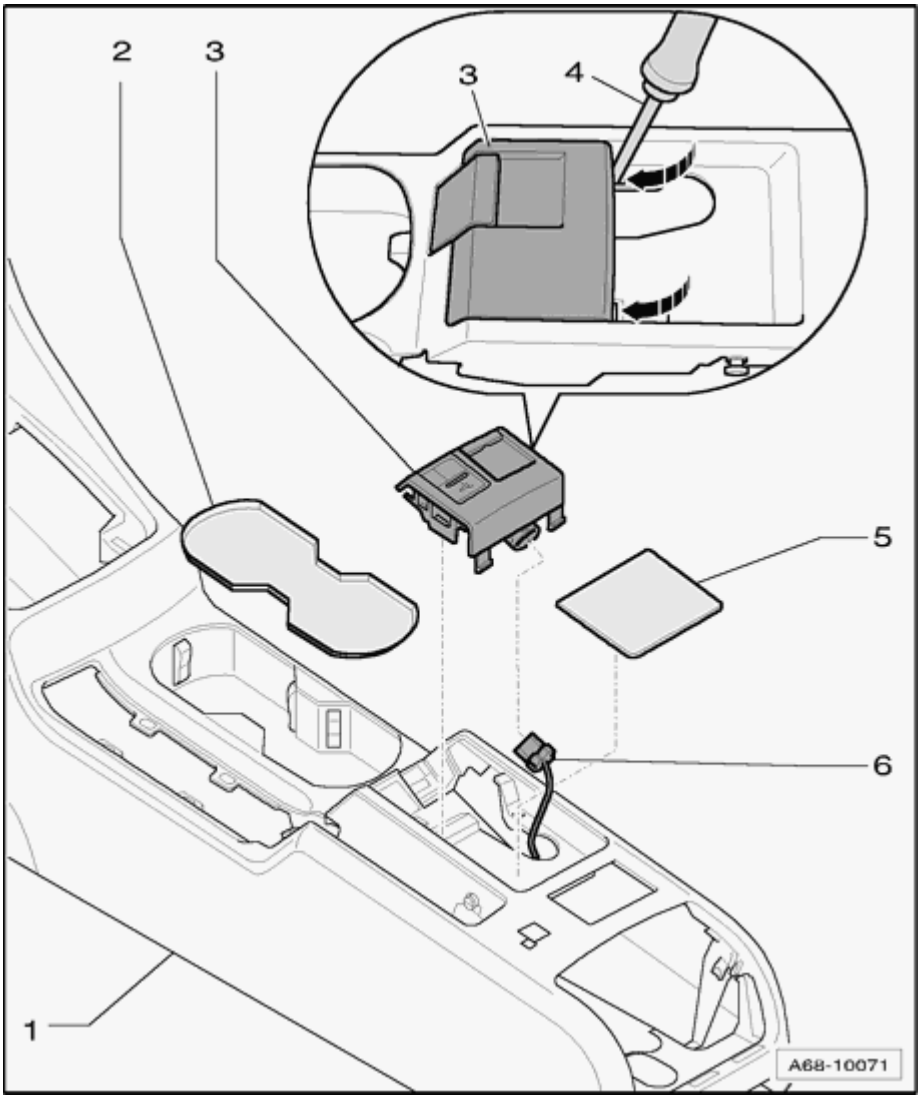


Fig. 41: Cigarette Lighter In Center Console (Vehicles From 11.04) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Center console

2 - Inlay mat for cup holder

3 - Trim with cigarette lighter

- Removal:

  - Remove inlay mat - **5** - for storage compartment.
  - Disconnect catches using a screwdriver - **4** - in - **direction of arrow** -.
  - Remove trim with cigarette lighter and disconnect electrical harness connector - **6** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is performed in reverse order of removal, noting the following:

  - Connect electrical harness connector to cigarette lighter and insert trim with front cigarette lighter into center console - **1** -.
  - Press in trim with rear cigarette lighter until audibly engaged into center console.

4 - Screwdriver

5 - Inlay mat for storage compartment

6 - Electrical connection

- For cigarette lighter

Footwell trim, removing and installing

Removing

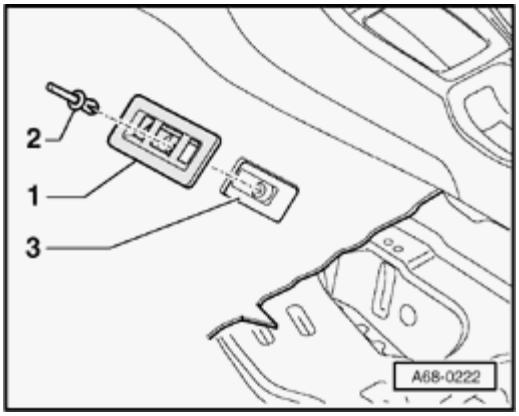


Fig. 42: Footwell Trim, Removing/Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Insert screwdriver beneath release ring on expanding rivet - **2** -. The lower part of the expanding rivet closes.
- Lever expanding rivet - **2** - from footwell trim - **1** -.
- Remove footwell trim from its mount - **3** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Parking brake lever handle, removing and installing

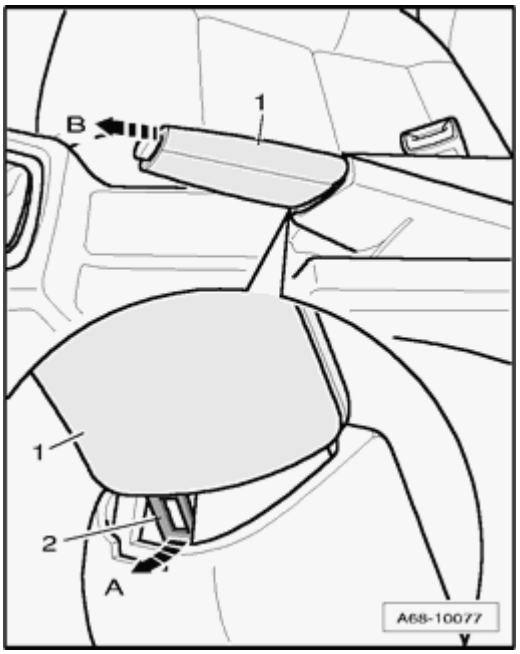


Fig. 43: Parking Brake Lever Handle, Removing/Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Pull up parking brake firmly.
- Adjust drivers seat as follows:

- Move seat fully back
- Move seat surface fully down

- Disengage retaining spring - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** -.
- At the same time, remove trim for parking brake lever handle - **1** - in - **direction of arrow B** -.

Installing

cardiagn.com

Installation is performed in reverse order of removal, noting the following:

- Trim for parking brake lever handle must engage audibly.

Trim of parking brake lever, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

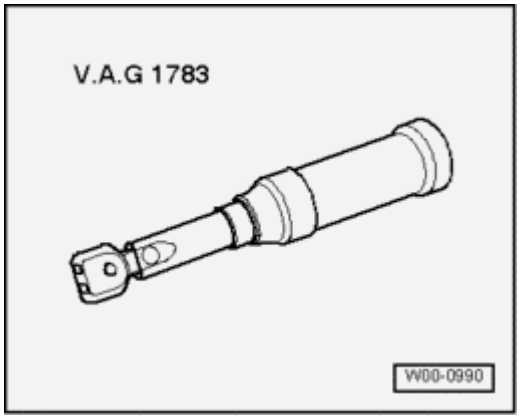


Fig. 44: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

cardiagn.com

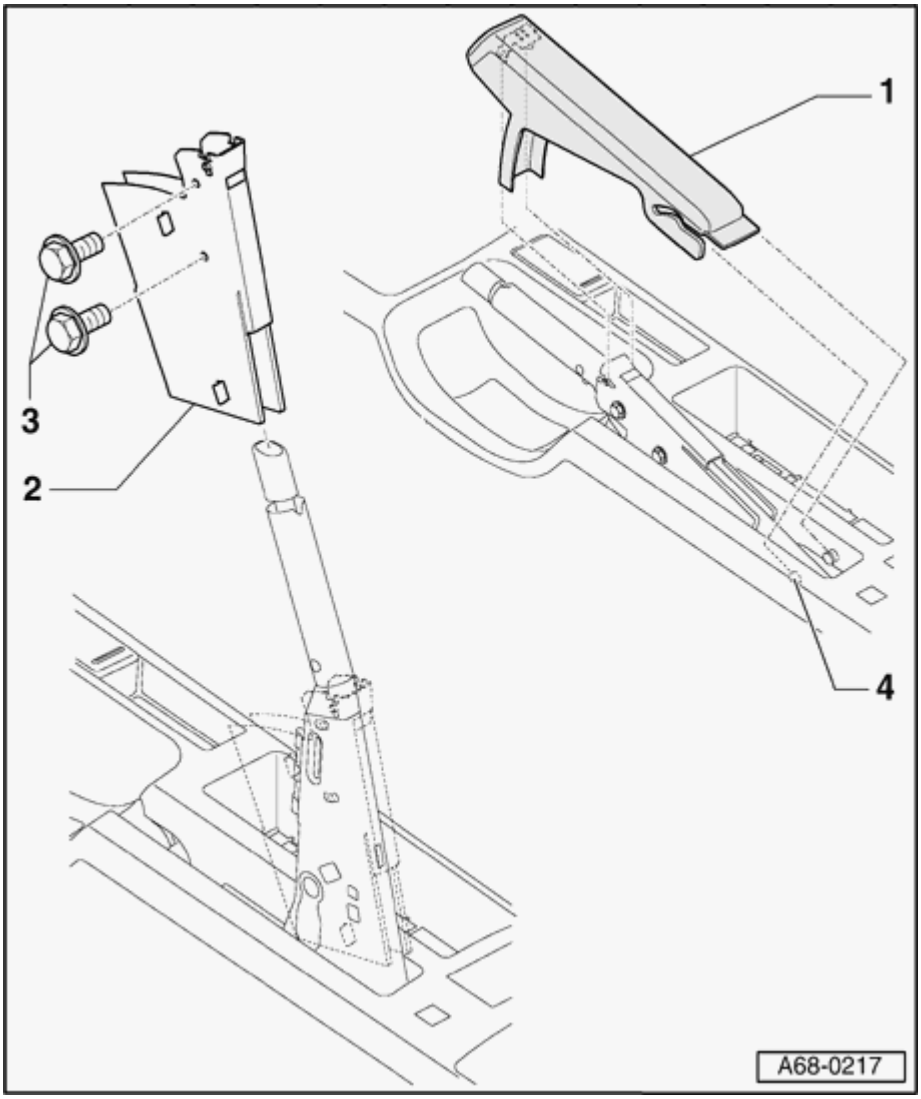


Fig. 45: Trim Of Parking Brake Lever, Removing/Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Parking brake trim

- Removal:

  - Disengage parking brake.
  - Disengage trim on parking brake - **1** - and remove it.
  - Pull up parking brake firmly.
  - Remove two bolts - **3** - on carrier - **2** - and remove carrier.

- **Installing:**

  - Pull up parking brake firmly.

cardiagn.com

- Place carrier on parking brake lever.
- Next tighten bolts - **3** - by hand.
- Disengage parking brake completely.

- Tighten both bolts - **3** -.
- Engage trim on parking brake - **1** - at rear in its mounts - **4** -.
- Press trim on parking brake 1- - **1** - firmly.

2 - Carrier

3 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 1 Nm

4 - Trim mounts

Cellular phone holder in center console, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

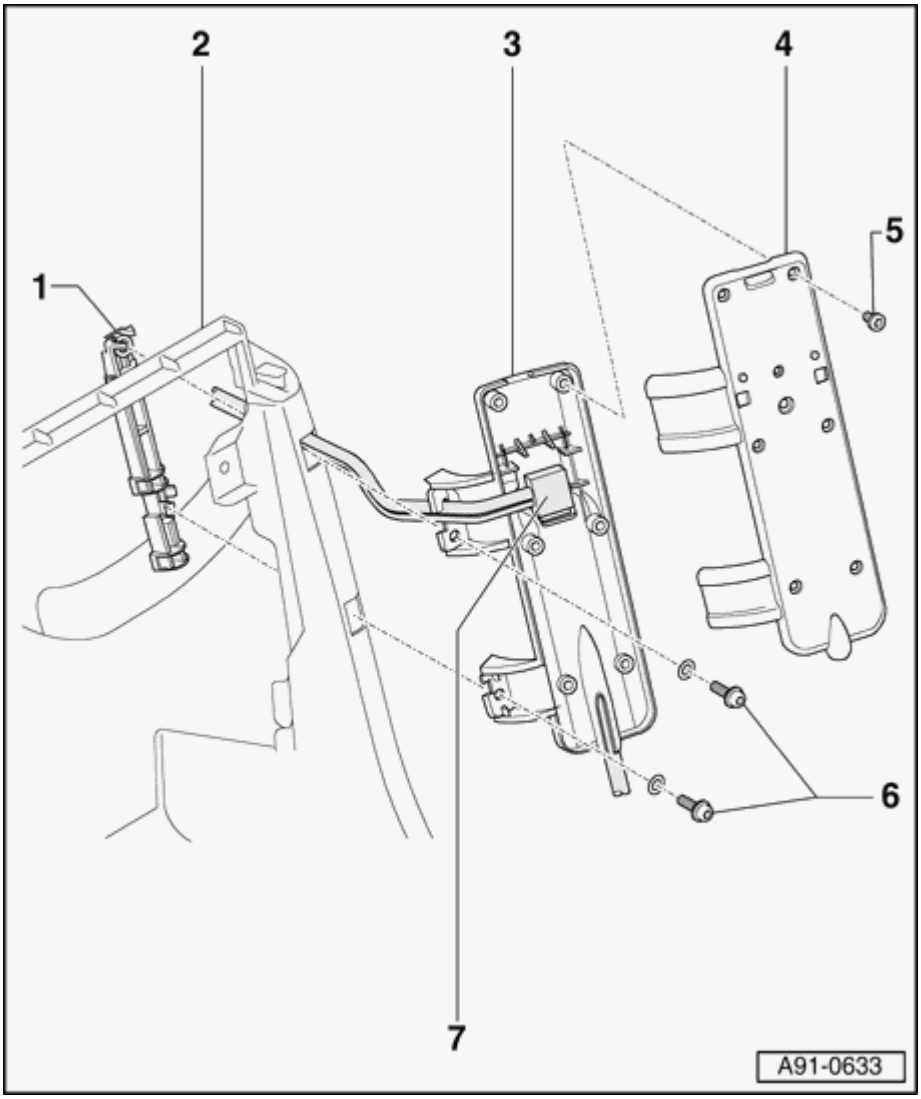


Fig. 46: Cellular Phone Holder In Center Console, Removing/Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Threaded hole piece

- Clipped into center console from behind

2 - Center console

- With holes for base plate
- Drilling holes afterward --> **Holes for cellular phone holder on center console, drilling**

3 - Mounting plate

- For cell phone receiver cradle

cardiagn.com

4 - Base plate

5 - Screws (6x)

- Tightening torque: 0.5 Nm.

6 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm.

7 - Connector

NOTE:

- **Ensure connector is seated correctly.**

Holes for cellular phone holder on center console, drilling

The center console is delivered as a replacement part without the holes for the cell phone retainer. The holes must be made later.

- Remove center console:

- Center console, removing and installing - USA and Canadian vehicles up to 10.04 --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)**
- Center console, removing and installing - USA and Canadian vehicles from 11.04 --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles from 11.04)**

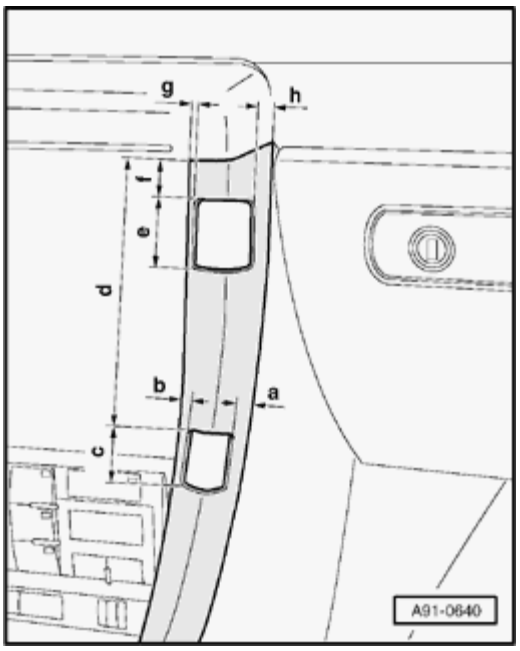


Fig. 47: Holes For Cellular Phone Holder On Center Console, Drilling
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Create holes with the following dimensions.

a - 10 mm

b - 6 mm

c - 20 mm

d - 100 mm

e - 31 mm

f - 8 mm

g - 5 mm

h - 9 mm

- Clip the threaded hole piece from behind into center console and tighten cellular phone holder to 1.5 Nm

NOTE:

- **After installation, check whether the glove compartment will open**

Telephone receiver cradle on center console, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

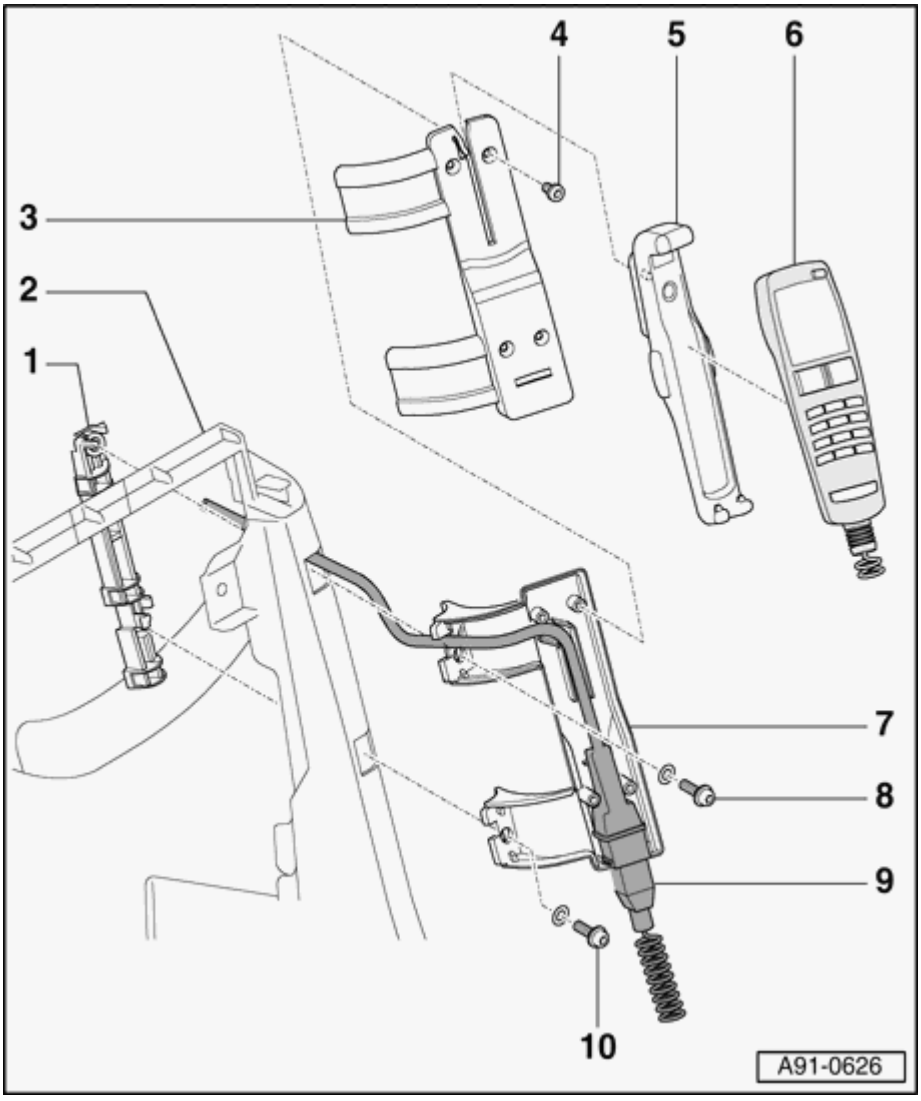


Fig. 48: Telephone Receiver Cradle On Center Console Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Threaded hole piece

- Clipped into center console from behind

2 - Center console

- With holes for base plate
- Drilling holes afterward --> **Holes for telephone handset holder on center console, drilling**

3 - Mounting plate

- For receiver cradle

cardiagn.com

4 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 0.5 Nm

5 - Receiver cradle

6 - Telephone handset R37

7 - Base plate

8 - Screw

- Tightening torque 1.5 Nm

9 - Connector

NOTE:

- **Ensure connector is seated correctly.**

10 - Screw

- Tightening torque 1.5 Nm

Holes for telephone handset holder on center console, drilling

The center console is delivered as a replacement part without holes for cell phone receiver cradle. The holes must be made later.

- Remove center console:

- Center console, removing and installing - USA and Canadian vehicles up to 10.04 --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)**
- Center console, removing and installing - USA and Canadian vehicles from 11.04 --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles from 11.04)**

cardiagn.com

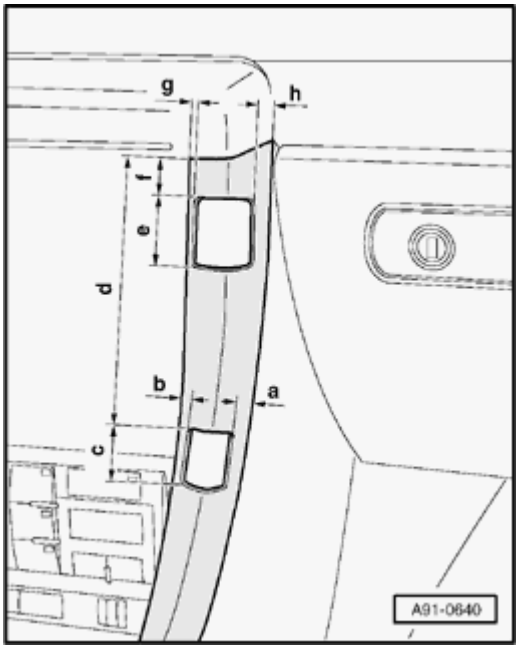


Fig. 49: Holes For Telephone Handset Holder On Center Console, Drilling
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Create holes with the following dimensions.

a - 10 mm

b - 6 mm

c - 22 mm

d - 101 mm

e - 25 mm

f - 16 mm

g - 5 mm

h - 8 mm

- Clip the threaded hole piece from behind into center console and tighten holder to 1.5 Nm

NOTE:

- **After installation, check whether the glove compartment will open**

Instrument panel center section, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

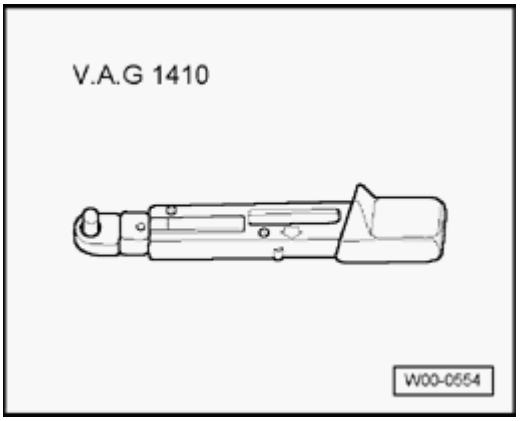
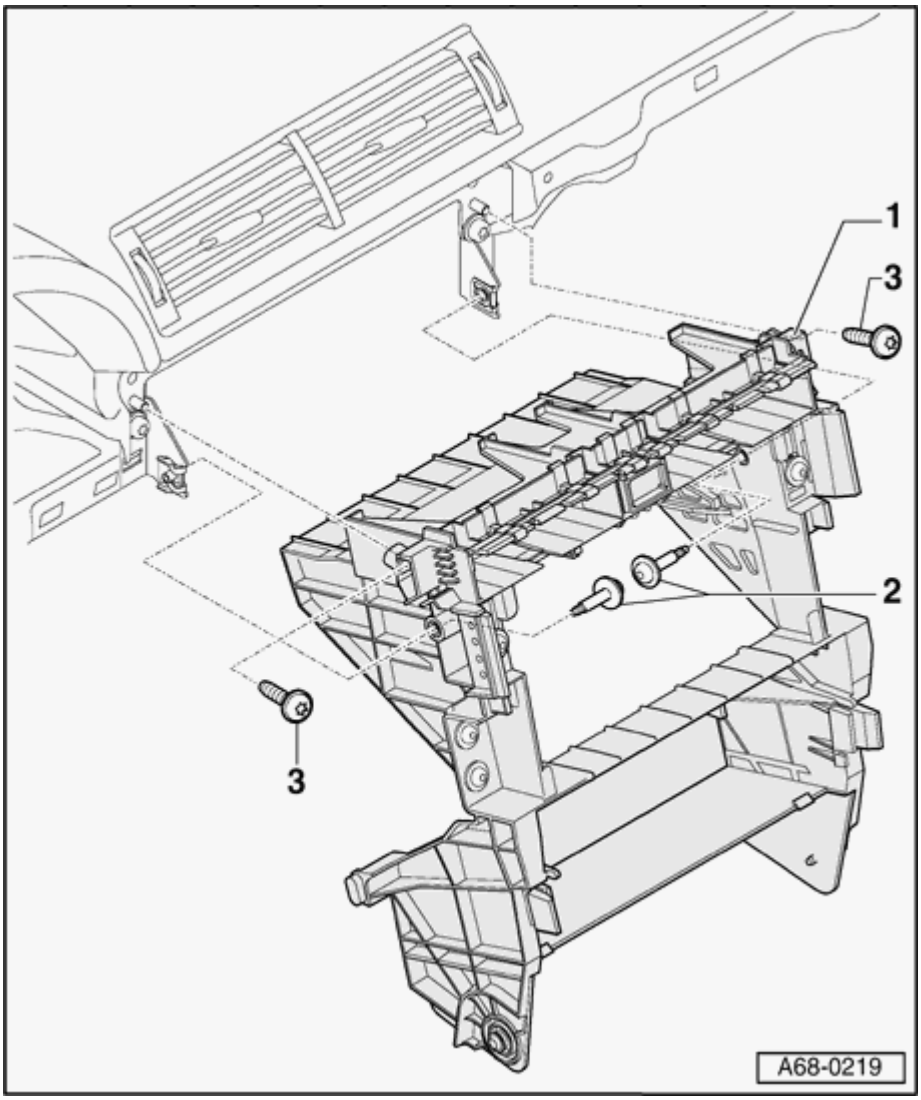


Fig. 50: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410



cardiagn.com

Fig. 51: Instrument Panel Center Section Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Instrument panel center section

- Removal:

  - Remove center console:

- Center console, removing and installing - USA and Canadian vehicles up to 10.04 --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)**
- Center console, removing and installing - USA and Canadian vehicles from 11.04 --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles from 11.04)**

  - Remove front ashtray --> **Front ashtray, removing and installing**.
  - Remove radio and radio trim -->
    - **91 - COMMUNICATION**
    - **91 RADIO, TELEPHONE, NAVIGATION, TRIP COMPUTER** for COMMUNICATION, CABRIOLET
  - Remove A/C control head or heater controls --> **87 AIR CONDITIONING** .
  - Remove trim from cup holder --> **Cupholder and storage compartment, removing and installing**.

  - Remove bolts - **2** - on center part of instrument panel.
  - Remove bolts - **3** - on center part of instrument panel.
  - Remove instrument panel center section.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

3 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

Cupholder and storage compartment, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

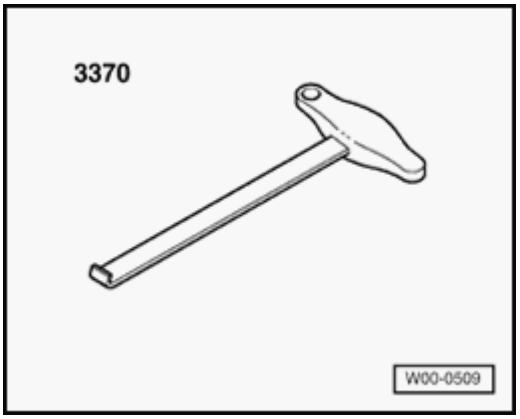


Fig. 52: Identifying Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special hook 3370

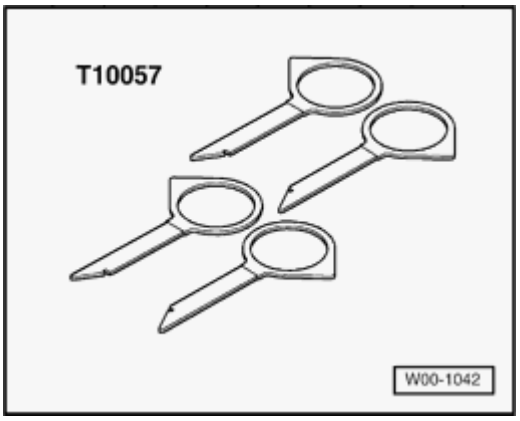


Fig. 53: Identifying Special Tools - Radio Removal Tool T10057
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Radio release tool T10057

Removing

- Open glove compartment.

cardiagn.com

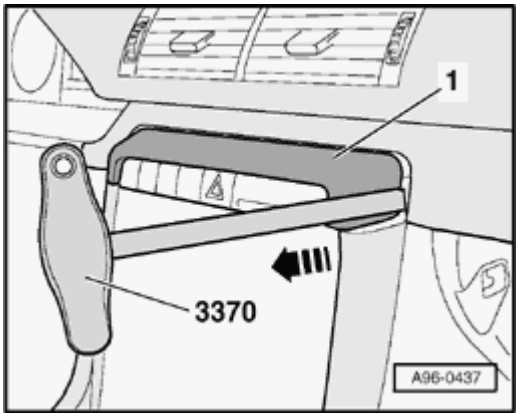


Fig. 54: Removing Trim Using Hook For Front End 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Carefully remove trim - **1** - using hook for front end 3370.
- Insert radio release tool T10057 at radio or navigation device and remove it 50 mm to relieve cup holder frame.

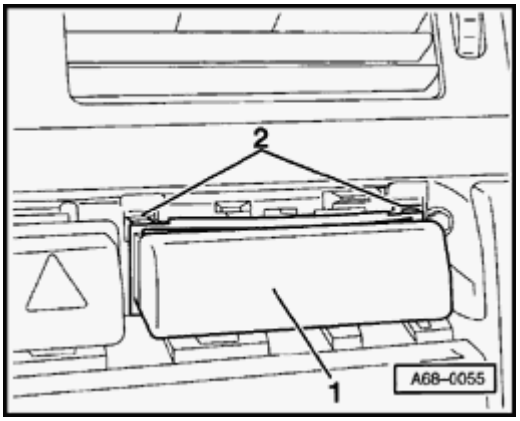


Fig. 55: Inserting Radio Release Tool T10057 At Catches (2X) And Removing Cup Holder Or Storage Compartment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Insert radio release tool T10057 at catches - **2** - (2x) and remove cup holder or storage compartment - **1** -.
- Disconnect harness connectors for storage compartment or cup holder.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Front ashtray, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

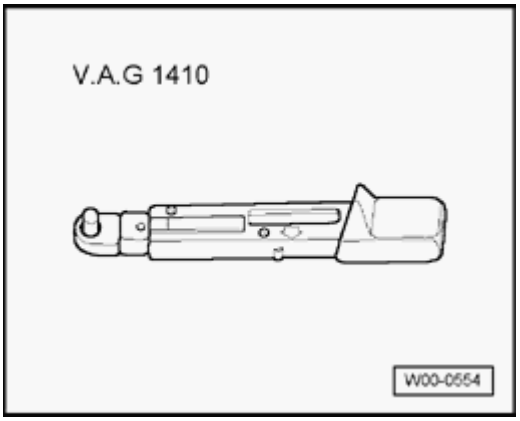
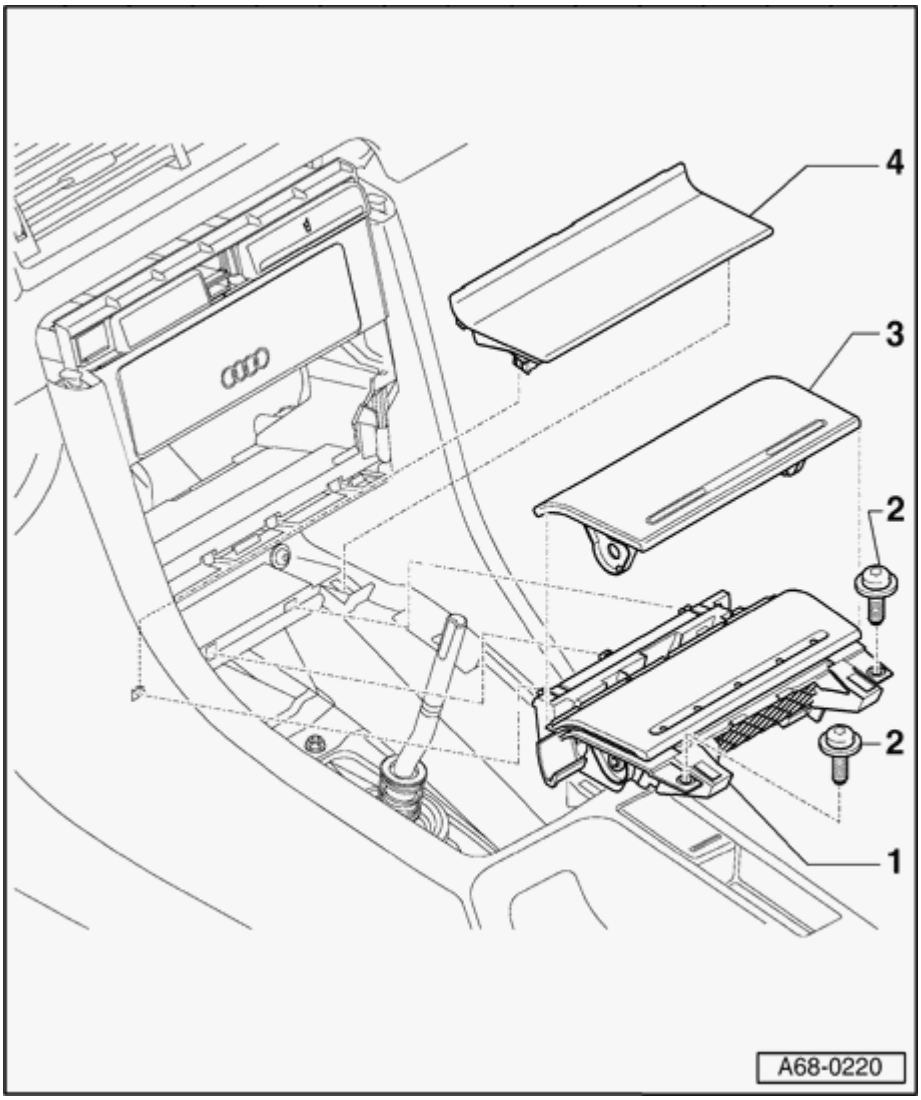


Fig. 56: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410



cardiagn.com

Fig. 57: Front Ashtray Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front ashtray

- Removal:

  - Remove radio about 10 mm out of radio installation opening -->
    - **91 - COMMUNICATION**
    - **91 RADIO, TELEPHONE, NAVIGATION, TRIP COMPUTER** for COMMUNICATION, CABRIOLET

    .
  - Remove A/C control head E87 --> **87 AIR CONDITIONING** .
  - Open front ashtray.
  - Remove front ashtray insert.

  - Vehicles with manual transmission: Pry shift cover up and remove selector lever boot --> **Shift cover and shifter boot, removing and installing**.
  - Vehicles with automatic transmission: Pry shift cover upward --> **Shift cover and shifter boot, removing and installing**.
  - Remove bolts - **2** - on ash tray.
  - Remove front ashtray upward.

  - Disconnect electrical connector.
  - Disengage trim - **3** - from ashtray.
  - Unclip storage compartment trim - **4** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

3 - Ashtray trim

4 - Storage compartment trim

Rear ashtray, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

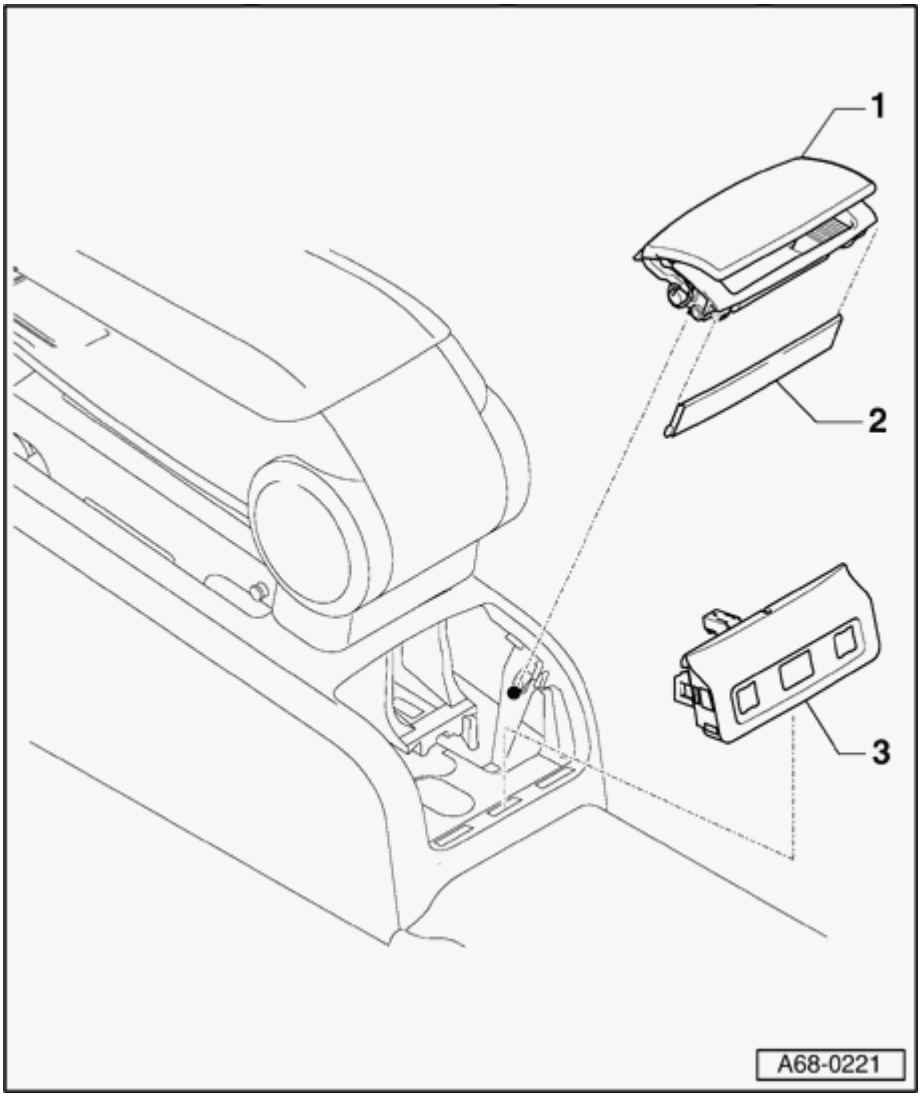


Fig. 58: Rear Ashtray Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear ashtray

- Removal:
  - Unclip cover - **2** -.
  - Disengage rear ashtray - **1** -.
  - If present, unclip seat heating switch mount - **3** -.
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Cover

cardiagn.com

3 - Switch mount

- Removing and installing **Switch mount, removing and installing**

Switch mount, removing and installing

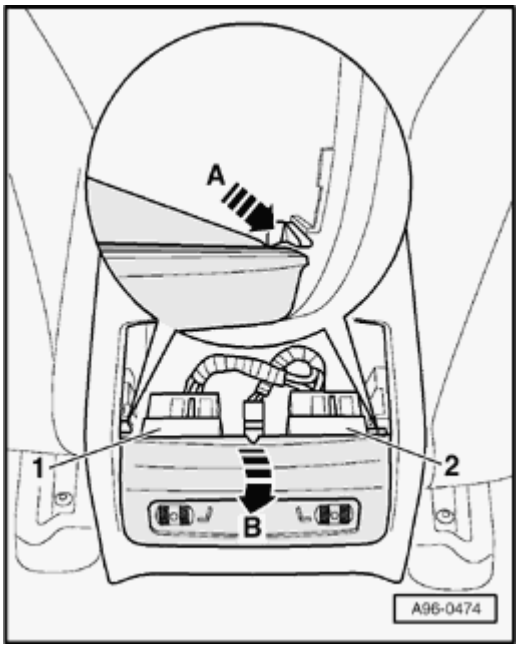


Fig. 59: Switch Mount Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove rear ashtray.
- Press catches - **arrow A** - on left and right to the outside and swivel switch mount to the rear - **arrow B** -.
- Disengage switch mount on bottom of rear center console.
- Disconnect electrical connectors.
- Unclip switch - **1** - and - **2** -.

REARVIEW MIRROR

Rearview mirror with fixed base, removing and installing

Removal

cardiagn.com

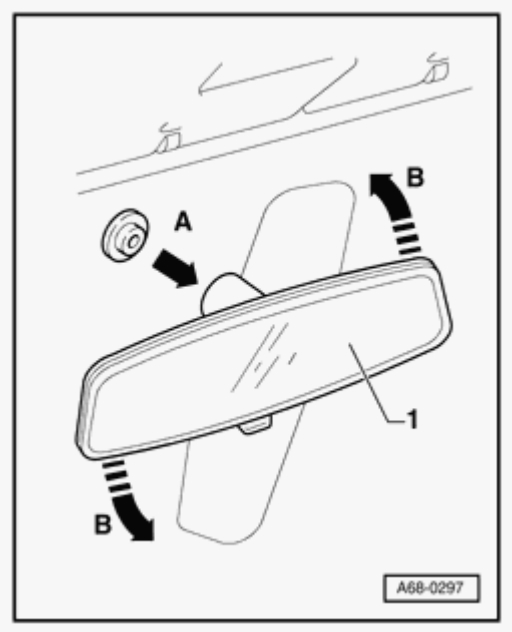


Fig. 60: Rotating Mirror Until Retaining Spring Releases And Removing Mirror
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- When removing, rotate mirror - **1** - 60 to 90° - **B arrows** - until retaining spring disengages and remove mirror - **arrow A** -.

Installing

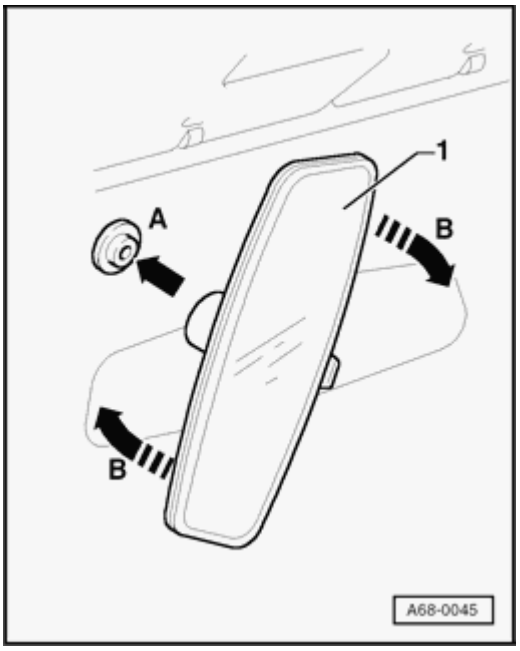


Fig. 61: Fitting Mirror To Final Position And Then Turning Mirror Until Locking Spring Clicks Into Place
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Install mirror - **1** - at a 60 to 90° offset to installation position - **arrow A** - and turn - **arrows B** - until retaining spring engages.

Rearview mirror, removing (Automatic-dimming mirror, rearview mirror with compass)

Removal

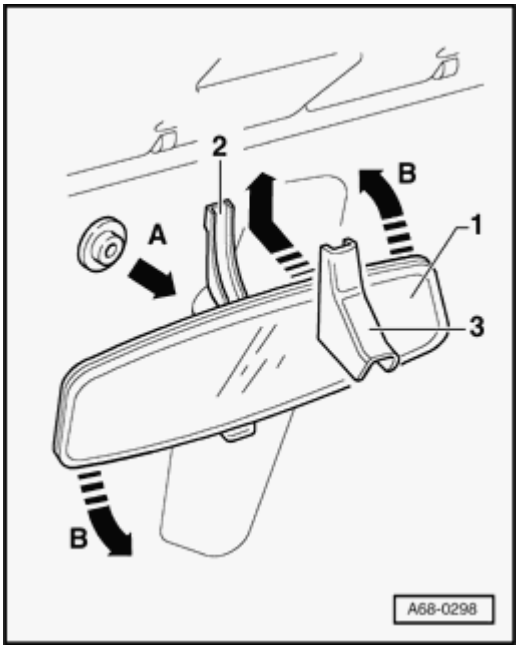


Fig. 62: Removing Rearview Mirror (Automatic Day/Night Mirror, Rearview Mirror With Compass)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Unclip cable channel cover - **3** -.
- Remove connector from retainer and disconnect.

NOTE:

- **The cable channel - 2 - should not be used for rotating.**

- When removing, rotate mirror - **1** - 60 to 90° - **B arrows** - until retaining spring disengages and remove mirror - **arrow A** -.

- **Installing:**

NOTE:

- **The cable channel - 2 - should not be used for rotating.**

cardiagn.com

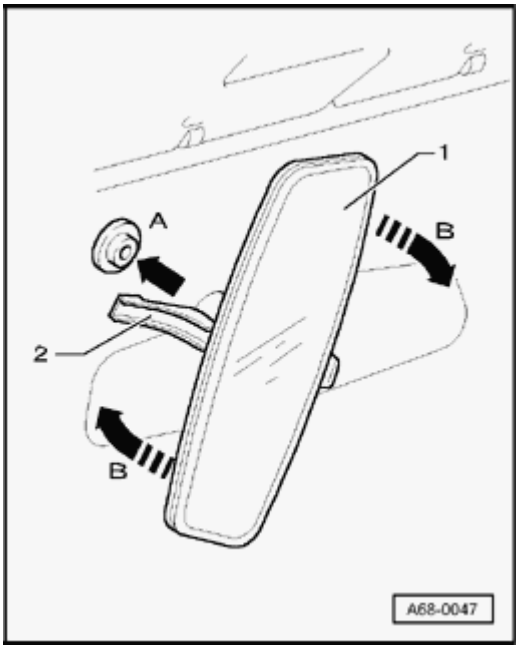


Fig. 63: Installing Rearview Mirror (Automatic Day/Night Mirror, Rearview Mirror With Compass)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Install mirror - **1** - at a 60 to 90° offset to installation position - **arrow A** - and turn - **arrows B** - until retaining spring engages.

Automatic day/night rearview mirror function, testing

Test requirements

- Inside mirror installed.
- Ignition switched on.
- Reverse gear not engaged.

Test sequence

- Close off photosensor on front side (or tape off).
- Shine a light source on the back side of the photosensor (flashlight).

- Inside mirror must dim within a short period of time.

Rearview mirror with compass, calibrating

- North America

cardiagn.com

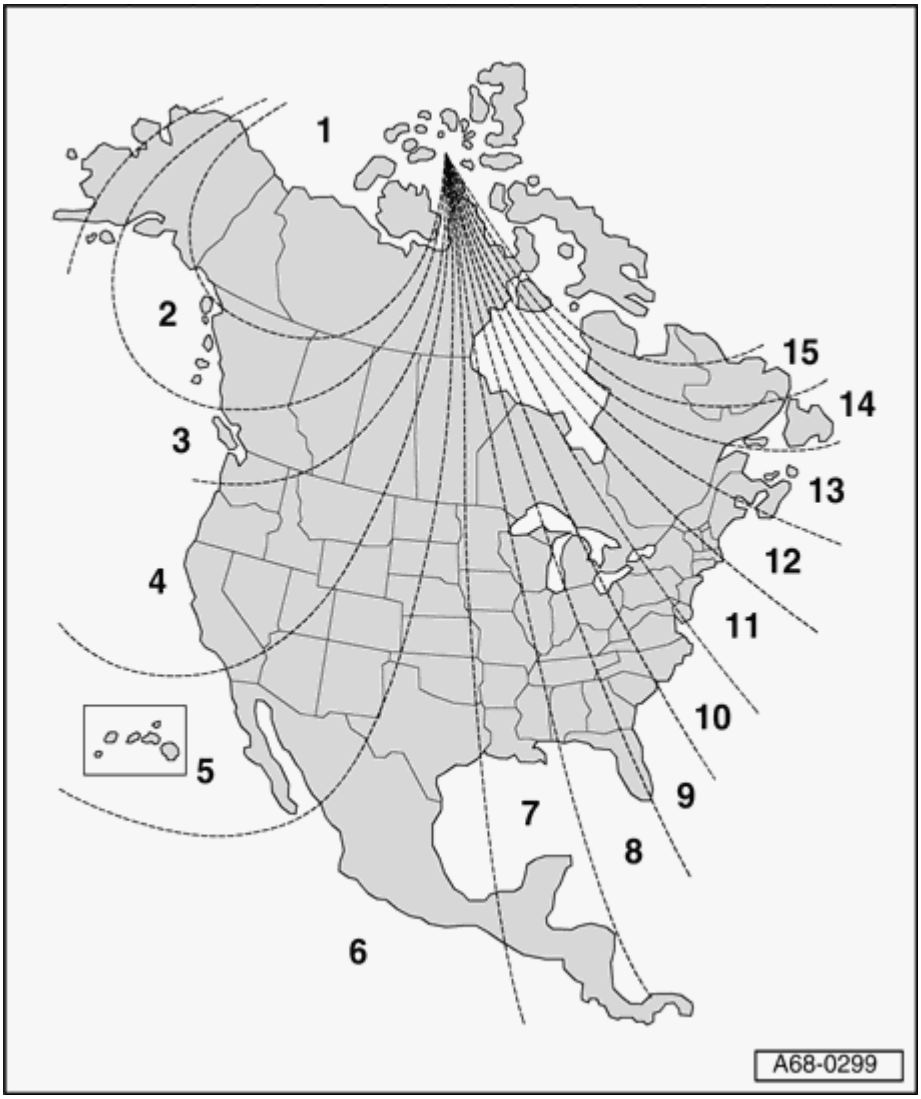


Fig. 64: North American Magnetic Field Graph
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Setting of North is integrated in rearview mirror via a world-zone dependent magnetic field.

The compass directions N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W and NW are shown in the digital display.

A new rearview mirror, or a rearview mirror which has had no current for a long period of time, must be calibrated anew (nothing or a "C" appears in display).

New compass, calibrating

- Switch on ignition.
- "C" must appear in the display.
- If there is no "C" , press adjustment switch on underside of mirror using a thin object (e.g. pencil) until it appears in display.

cardiagn.com

- Drive slowly at approx. 10 km/h around in a circle 2 to 3 times until a compass direction is displayed.

- Press adjustment switch on underside of mirror using a thin object (e.g. pencil) until the number of your zone appears in display.
- Refer to the adjacent card for your zone.
- A compass direction appears in the display after a few seconds.

Calibration of an already existing compass

- Switch on ignition.
- "C" must appear in the display.
- If there is no "C" , press adjustment switch on underside of mirror using a thin object (e.g. pencil) until it appears in display.
- Drive slowly at approx. 10 km/h around in a circle 2 to 3 times until a compass direction is displayed.

Zone adjustment

- Switch on ignition.
- Press adjustment switch on underside of mirror using a thin object (e.g. pencil) until the number of your zone appears in display.
- Refer to the adjacent card for your zone.
- A compass direction appears in the display after a few seconds.

Rearview mirror retaining plate, bonding

Repair method with glass-metal adhesive

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

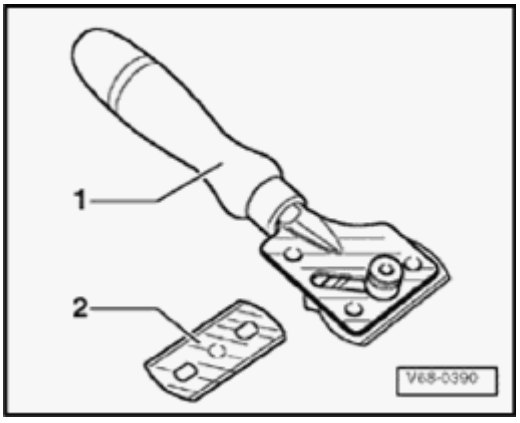


Fig. 65: Glass/Metal Adhesive Set D 000 703 A1
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- *Glass/metal adhesive set D 000 703 A1*

cardiagn.com

1. Window scraper (commercially available)
2. Blade (commercially available)

CAUTION: Work with adhesive material at room temperature and observe manufacturers safety and usage guidelines.

The material hardens completely after a few hours.

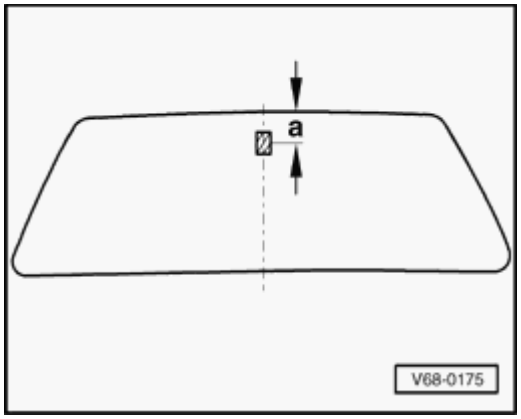


Fig. 66: Rearview Mirror Dimension
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Rearview mirror dimension a = 153 mm (upper edge of front window to center of mirror base adhesive plate).

Work procedure

- Remove mirror plate from mirror base.
- Remove PUR adhesive material from mirror plate with wire brush.
- Grind the three spacer knobs off of adhesive surface. To do this, lay sandpaper (360/400 grit) on flat surface.
- Keep sanded surface free of dirt and grease.
- Scrape off PUR adhesive and primer from windshield down to ceramic layer using glass scraper.

CAUTION: Do not damage ceramic layer. Scratches always remain visible.

- Clean adhesive surface with *adhesive remover D 002 000 10* or *cleaning solution D 009 401 04* .
- Cut nylon mesh to exact dimensions of mirror base.

NOTE:

- **Hand protection (rubber gloves) should be worn.**

cardiagn.com

- Spread thick layer of adhesive evenly on mirror base.
- Lay nylon mesh on mirror base.
- While continuing to apply adhesive with tube dab nylon mesh.

30 seconds are available from laying the nylon mesh on the adhesive to pressing on the windshield.

- Press mirror base (without force) onto windshield and hold for 15 seconds.
- Use a rag to remove excess adhesive.

NOTE:

- **Rearview can be installed after 15 minutes.**

.

cardiagn.com

69 - PASSENGER PROTECTION - AIRBAGS, SEAT BELTS

SEAT BELTS

Seat belts

CAUTION: Before beginning repairs on the electrical system:

- **Obtain the anti-theft radio security code.**
- **Switch the ignition off.**
- **Disconnect the battery Ground (GND) strap.**
- **On vehicles equipped with Audi Telematics by OnStar, switch-off the emergency (back-up) battery for the Telematic/Telephone Control Module prior to disconnecting vehicle battery -->**
  - **91 - COMMUNICATION**
  - **91 RADIO, TELEPHONE, NAVIGATION, TRIP COMPUTER for COMMUNICATION, CABRIOLET**
- **After reconnecting vehicle battery, re-code and check operation of anti-theft radio. Also check operation of clock and power windows according to article and/or Owners Manual.**
- **After reconnecting vehicle battery on vehicles equipped with Audi Telematics by OnStar, switch-on the emergency (back-up) battery for the Telematic/Telephone Control Module -->**
  - **91 - COMMUNICATION**
  - **91 RADIO, TELEPHONE, NAVIGATION, TRIP COMPUTER for COMMUNICATION, CABRIOLET**

Safety rules for handling pyrotechnic belt tensioners

- Testing, removing, installing and repair work may ONLY be performed by qualified personnel.
- When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical parts (including those of the three-point seat belt) must be properly attached.
- Only the person carrying out repairs to belt tensioner is allowed to be in vehicle.
- Belt tensioner components may neither be opened nor repaired; always use new parts.
- Belt tensioner units which have been dropped from a height of more than 50 cm must not be installed in a vehicle.
- Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) must be replaced.
- The belt tensioner unit must be installed IMMEDIATELY after removal from transport container.
- If the work is interrupted, the belt tensioner unit should again be placed in its transport container.
- Never point open end of belt tensioner at another person.

cardiagn.com

- Always wash hands after handling belt tensioners which have been activated.
- Storage and transportation are subject to the legislation for explosive substances.
- It is not permitted to leave the belt tensioner unit unattended.

- The belt tensioner unit must not be treated with grease, cleaning or similar agents, nor may it be exposed to temperatures above 100° C, even for short periods.

Disposal of pyrotechnic belt tensioners

- Make sure that your dealership complies with federal, state and local regulations for explosive substances.
- Deployed airbags and pyrotechnic seatbelts can be disposed of as normal scrap.
- Undeployed airbags and pyrotechnic seatbelts are considered to be hazardous materials.
- When disposing of an undeployed airbag or pyrotechnic seatbelt that is either defective or expired, use the appropriate repair information and Airbag Deployment Device J-44210.

- Do NOT deploy airbags and pyrotechnic seatbelts in the vehicle
- All airbags and pyrotechnic seatbelts of a vehicle scheduled to be scrapped must be deployed using the Airbag Deployment Device J-44210.
- When using Airbag Deployment Device J-44210, wear appropriate eye and ear protection.
- If the airbag or pyrotechnic seatbelt cannot be safely deployed or removed from the vehicle, contact the Audi Dealer Technicians Helpline.

- Shipment of active airbag gas generators and pyrotechnic seatbelt retractors must be in accordance with the regulations published in the latest edition of the Code of Federal Regulations #49 (49 CFR). Shipment must be initiated and received by certified individuals. The penalties for noncompliance are severe. Civil penalties range the $250 to $27,500 per violation, per day. Criminal penalties, for willfully violating the regulations, range up to $250,000 for individuals and $500,000 for corporations.
- Undeployed pyrotechnic components (such as airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery components) must be disposed of in an orderly manner in their original packaging, according to national legislation. If questions arise, contact Audi of America!
- Pyrotechnic components deployed in an actual accident can be disposed of as industrial waste

Front pyrotechnic belt tensioners, triggering

NOTE:

- **Observe safety regulations for handling pyrotechnic belt tensioners --> Disposal of pyrotechnic belt tensioners.**
- **Belts can be disposed of with commercial refuse after removal.**
- **Always wash hands after handling ignited belt tensioners.**

- Remove rear bench seat --> **Rear seat bench, assembly overview**.
- Remove rear seat backrest --> **Rear seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove side trim --> **Rear side trim, assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove floor panel anchorage point --> **Front anchorage point for outer floor panel**.

- Cut off belt above latch plate approx. 20 cm below belt reel.
- Disconnect connector from belt reel and connect wiring harness (part no. 8D1 971 259).
- Cut connector off at other end and insulate both cable ends.
- Slit cable sheath until ends of cables are at least 30 cm apart.

- Make sure there is no-one in the vehicle.
- Close doors and open windows.
- Trigger gas generator using wiring harness and external battery, which is positioned outside of vehicle.
- Ventilate vehicle adequately.

Rear pyrotechnic belt tensioners, triggering

NOTE:

- **Observe safety rules for handling pyrotechnic belt tensioners --> Disposal of pyrotechnic belt tensioners.**
- **Belts can be disposed of with commercial refuse after removal.**
- **Always wash hands after handling belt tensioners which have been activated.**

- Remove rear bench seat --> **Rear seat bench, assembly overview**.
- Remove rear seat backrest --> **Rear seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Except USA: Cut off belt above latch plate approx. 20 cm below belt reel.
- In USA: Pull belt out completely and prevent belt rolling up with a knot which is as close as possible to the belt reel (because of the belt-fastened sensor).

- Disconnect connector from belt reel and connect wiring harness (part no. 8D1 971 259).
- Cut connector off at other end and insulate both cable ends.
- Slit cable sheath until ends of cables are at least 30 cm apart.
- Make sure there is no-one in the vehicle.

- Close doors and open windows.
- Trigger gas generator using wiring harness and external battery, which is positioned outside of vehicle.
- Ventilate vehicle adequately.

Seat belt anchorage points, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

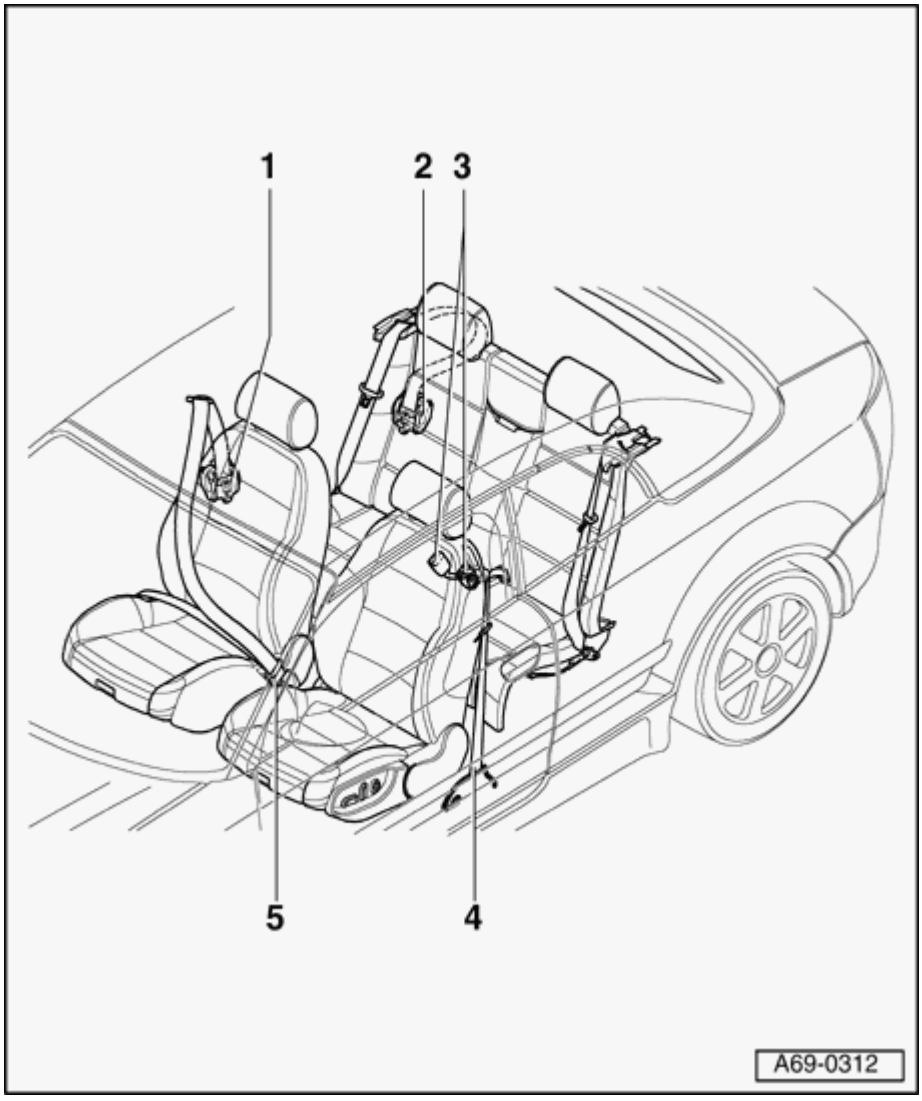


Fig. 54: Seat Belt Anchorage Points, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Three-point seat belt with belt tensioner, front left and right

- Refer to --> **Front 3-point seat belt with belt tensioner, assembly overivew**

2 - Three-point seat belt with belt tensioner, rear left and right

- Refer to --> **Rear 3-point seat belt with belt tensioner, assembly overview**

3 - Rear anchorage point for center floor panel

- Refer to --> **Anchorage points for center floor panel, assembly overview**

4 - Front anchorage point for outer floor panel

cardiagn.com

- Refer to --> **Front anchorage point for outer floor panel**

5 - Front anchorage point for belt buckle

- Refer to --> **Front anchorage point for belt buckle**

Front 3-point seat belt with belt tensioner, assembly overivew

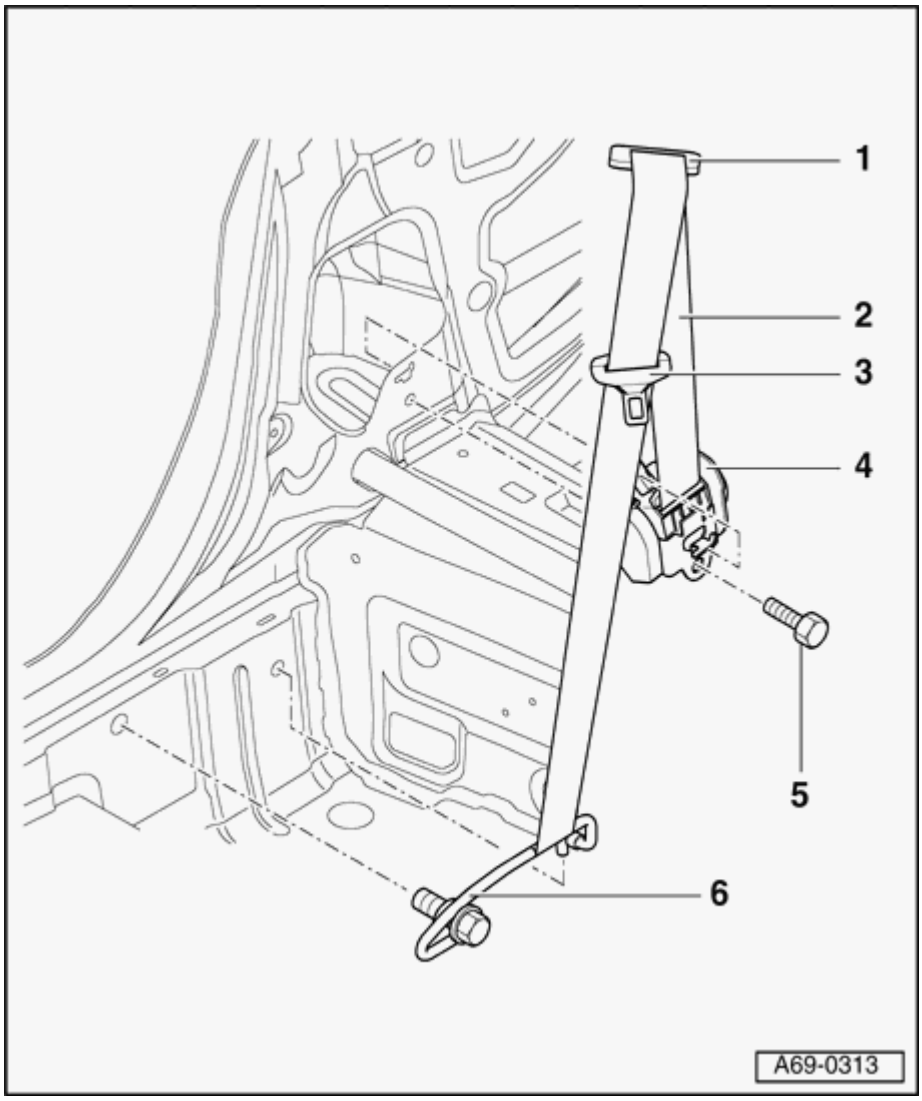


Fig. 55: Front 3-Point Seat Belt With Belt Tensioner, Assembly Overivew
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Belt guide

2 - Belt

3 - Latch plate

cardiagn.com

4 - Belt reel/belt tensioner

- **Removing**

CAUTION: Observe the necessary measures when disconnecting battery. -->

- **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
- **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**

- Disconnect battery.
- Remove rear bench seat --> **Rear seat bench, assembly overview**.
- Remove rear seat backrest --> **Rear seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove side trim --> **Rear side trim, assembly overview**.

- Remove bolt - **5** -.
- Disconnect belt tensioner connector **Disconnecting connector for front seat belt tensioner**.
- Remove anchorage point for outer floor panel - **6** - --> **Front anchorage point for outer floor panel**.
- Unclip belt guide - **1** -.

- Pull belt - **2** - out of guide - **1** -.
- Remove belt reel - **4** -.

- **Installing**

- Install front seat belt in reverse order of removal.

5 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 55 Nm

6 - Anchorage point: Outer floor panel

Disconnecting connector for front seat belt tensioner

cardiagn.com

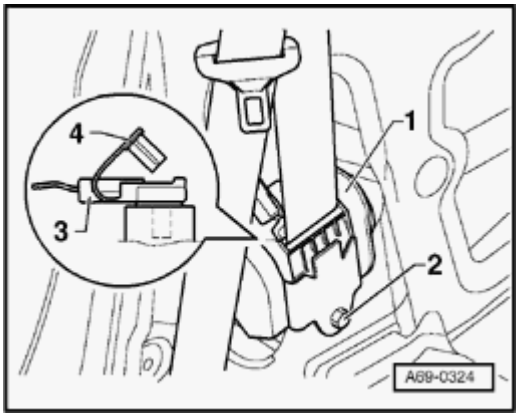


Fig. 56: Disconnecting Connector For Front Seat Belt Tensioner
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Detach catch - **4** -.
- Disconnect connector - **3** -.

Rear 3-point seat belt with belt tensioner, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

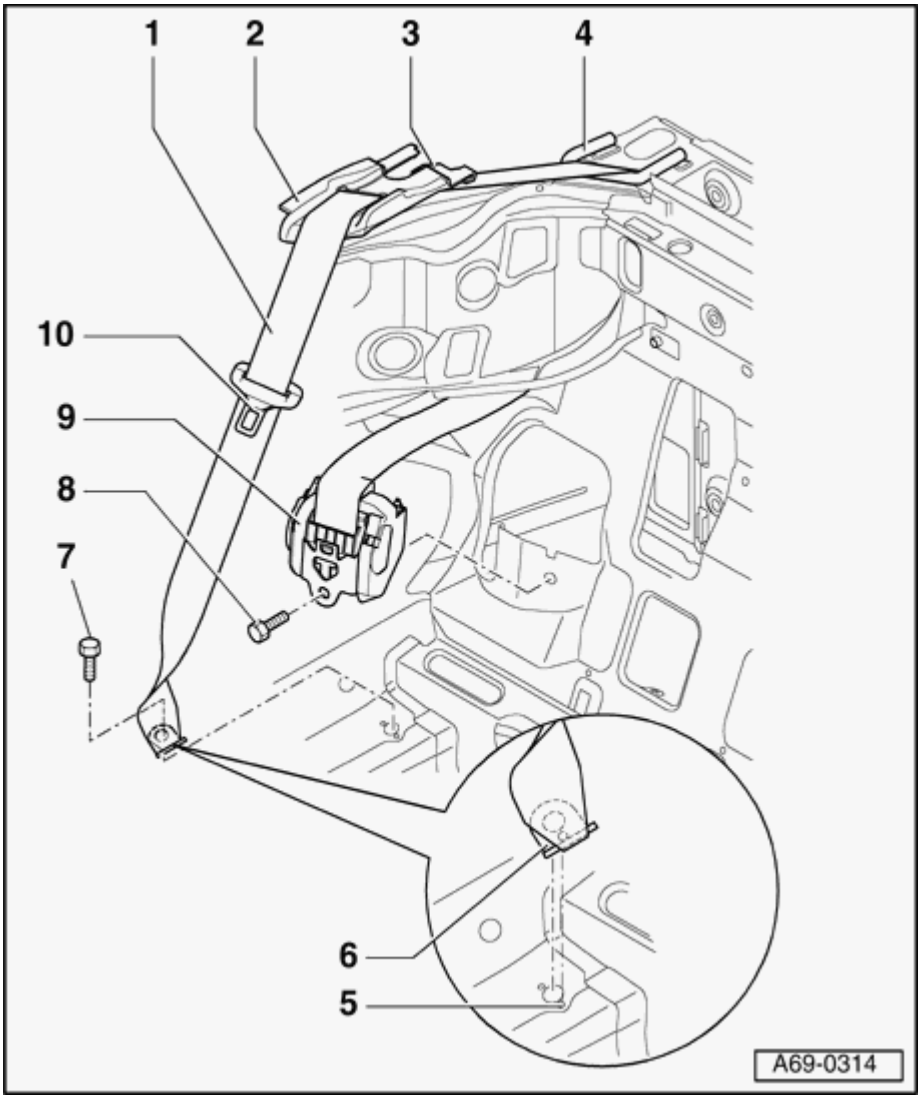


Fig. 57: Rear 3-Point Seat Belt With Belt Tensioner, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Belt

2 - Belt guide

3 - Connecting bar

4 - Idler roller

5 - Locating projection

6 - Anchorage point: Outer floor panel

7 - Bolt

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque 55 Nm

8 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 55 Nm

9 - Belt reel/belt tensioner

- **Removing**

CAUTION: Observe the necessary measures when disconnecting battery. -->

- **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
- **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**

- Disconnect battery.
- Remove rear bench seat --> **Rear seat bench, assembly overview**.
- Remove rear seat backrest --> **Rear seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Open convertible top compartment.

- Remove bolt - **8** -.
- Disconnect belt tensioner connector **Disconnect connector for rear seat belt tensioner**.
- Remove belt reel - **9** -.
- Remove bolt - **7** -.

- Unclip front belt guide - **2** - and detach - **2** -.
- Open connecting bar - **3** - on belt guide - **2** -.
- Pull belt - **1** - out of belt guide - **2** - and Idler roller - **4** -.

- **Installing**

- Plug in connector to belt tensioner **Disconnect connector for rear seat belt tensioner**.
- Screw belt reel - **9** - with bolt - **8** -.
- Feed belt - **1** - into idler roller - **4** -.
- Feed belt - **1** - into belt guide - **2** - with connecting bar - **3** - open.

- Close connecting bar - **3** -.
- Attach belt guide - **2** - at rear and press on belt guide - **2** - at front.
- Make sure belt guide - **2** - is engaged at front in side trim.
- Make sure outer floor panel anchorage point - **6** - is engaged in locating projection - **5** -.

cardiagn.com

- Screw outer floor panel anchorage point - **6** - with bolt - **7** -.
- Install rear seat belt in reverse order of removal.

10 - Latch plate

Disconnect connector for rear seat belt tensioner

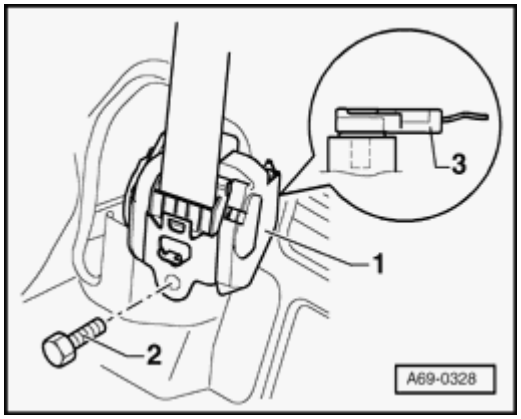


Fig. 58: Disconnect Connector For Rear Seat Belt Tensioner
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector - **3** -.

Anchorage points for center floor panel, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

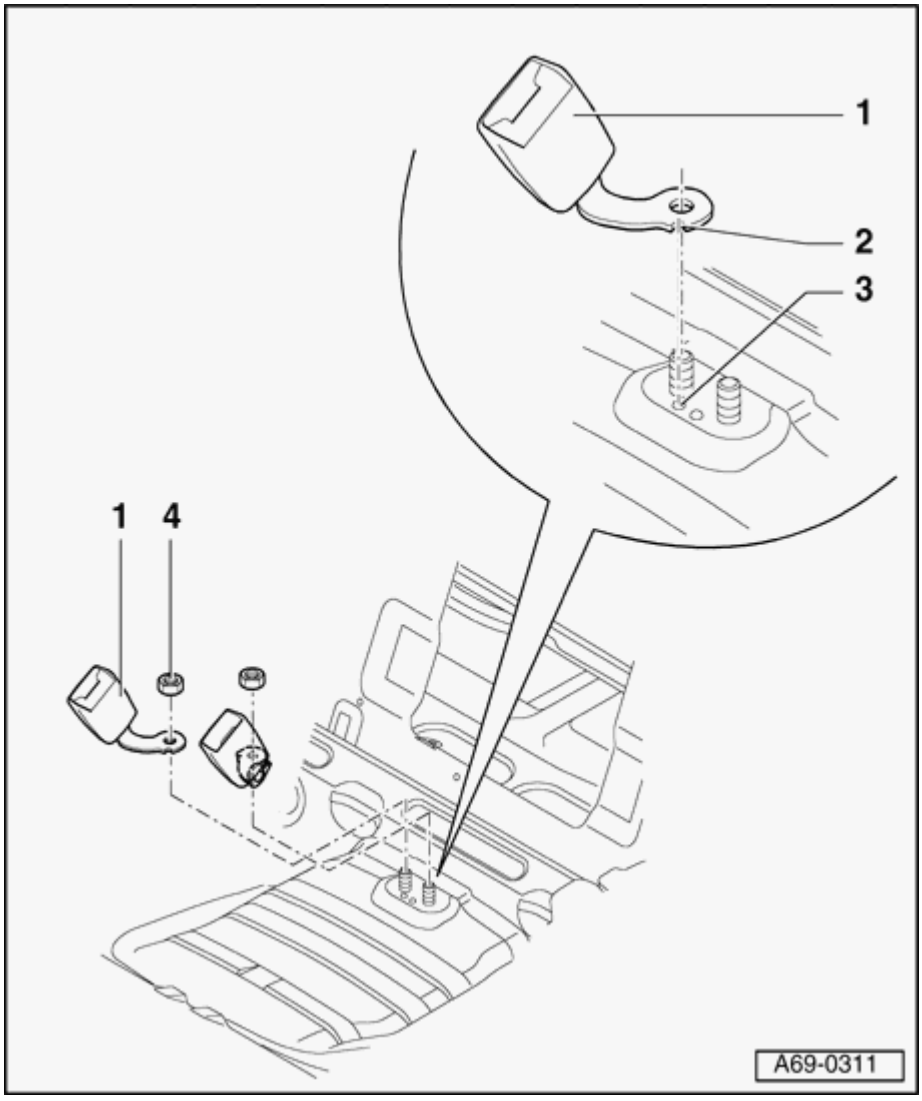


Fig. 59: Anchorage Points For Center Floor Panel, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Belt buckle

- **Removing**

  - Remove rear bench seat --> **Rear seat bench, assembly overview**.
  - Remove nut - **4** -.
  - Remove belt buckle - **1** -.

- **Installing**

  - Make sure that mounting - **2** - engages in locating projection - **3** -.
  - Continue installing belt buckle - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

cardiagn.com

2 - Mounting

3 - Locating projection

4 - Nut

- Tightening torque 55 Nm

Front anchorage point for outer floor panel

- **Removing**

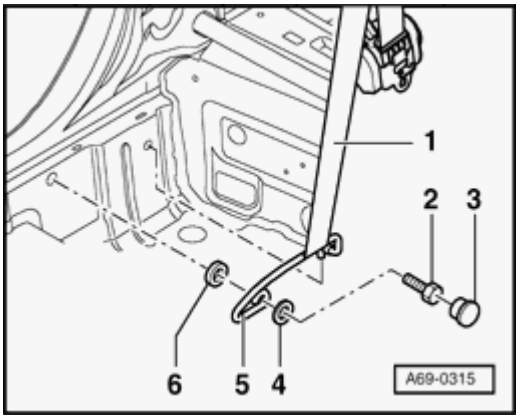


Fig. 60: Identifying Trim Cap, Bolt, Washers, Clips & Belt
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Detach trim cap - **3** -.
- Remove bolt - **2** -.

- Tightening torque 55 Nm

- Remove washer - **4** -.
- Swing clip - **5** - upward.
- Remove belt - **1** - from clip - **5** -.

- **Installing**

- Install washer - **6** - under clip - **5** -.
- Continue installing anchorage point for outer floor panel in reverse order of removal.

Front anchorage point for belt buckle

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

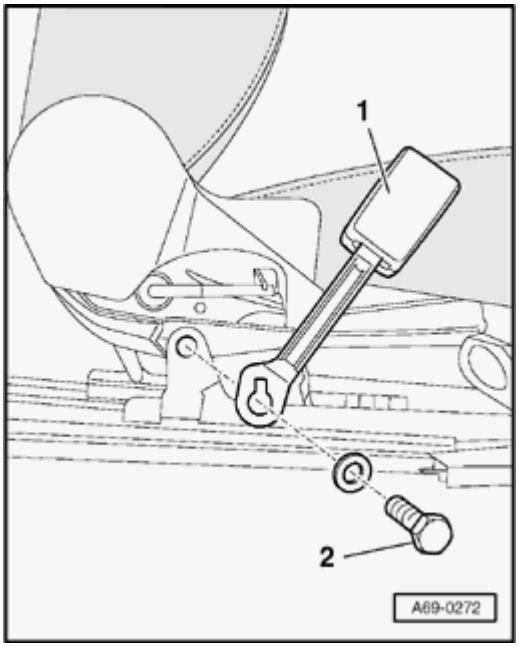


Fig. 61: Removing Bolt For Belt Latch
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **2** - from buckle - **1** -.

- Tightening torque 24 Nm
- For vehicles with "belt fastened" detector and belt buckle switch (only on drivers side, country-specific) remove wires from red connector housing.

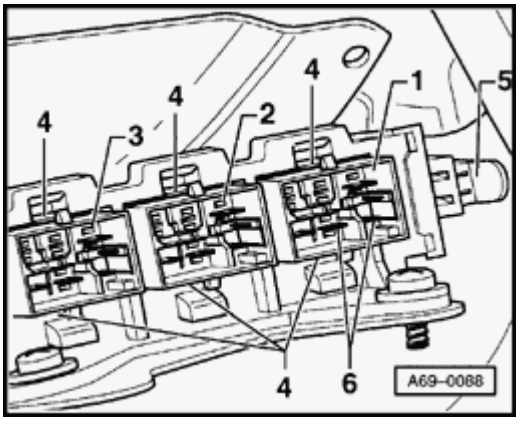


Fig. 62: Using Screwdriver To Pry Out Retaining Hooks On Red Connector Housing, Pressing Red Connector Housing Back & Cable Pin (2X) For Belt Fasten Sensor
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Use a screwdriver to pry out retaining hooks - **4** - of red connector housing - **1** -.
- Push red connector housing - **1** - through toward the rear.
- Wire pin - **6** - (2x) for "belt fastened" detector.

cardiagn.com

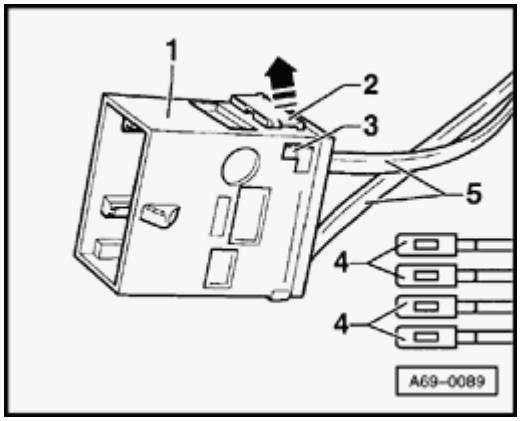


Fig. 63: Identifying Red Connector Housing, Cable Retainer, Cut-Out & Cable
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Red connector housing - **1** - for belt buckle interrogation and main power supply.
- Release cable retainer - **2** - in direction of arrow by prying out at cut-out - **3** -.

- Illustration shows cable retainer - **2** - in released position.

- Remove wires - **4** - for "belt fastened" detector from terminals 5 and 6; on drivers side (country-specific) also remove wires - **4** - for belt buckle switch from terminals 1 and 2.
- Open cable ties.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

REMOVING AND INSTALLING ISOFIX HOLDER

Removing and installing ISOFIX holder (front)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

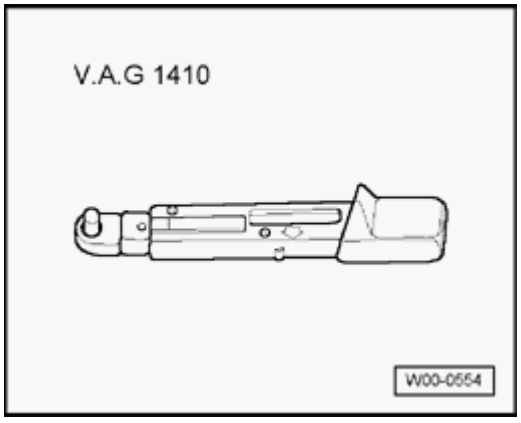


Fig. 64: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

- Remove front passengers seat --> **Seat, assembly overview** (manual adjustment) or --> **Front seat, assembly overview** (electrical adjustment).

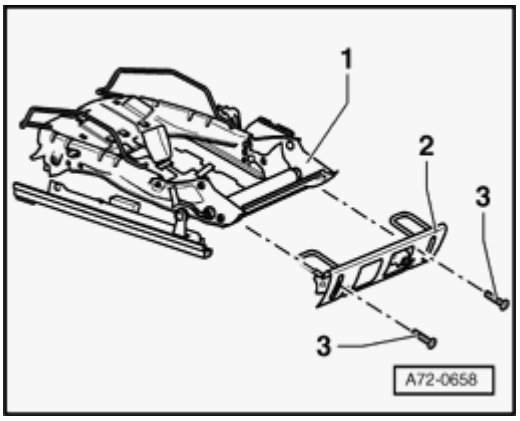


Fig. 65: Removing/Installing ISOFIX Holder (Front)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove upholstery from front passengers seat --> **Seat pan cover and padding (standard seat), removing and installing** (manual adjustment) or --> **Cover and padding for seat pan (standard seat), assembly overview** (electrical adjustment).
- Remove bolts - **3** - (2x). Tightening torque 7 Nm
- Remove ISOFIX holder - **2** -.

1 - Frame, front seat

SEAT BELTS, CHECKING

Seat belts, checking

CAUTION: After every accident the seat belt system must be inspected systematically. If damage is determined when inspecting the check points, customer must be informed regarding necessity of changing belts.

Check points:

- Check belt strap.
- Check belt retractor (locking action).
- Visual inspection of belt buckle
- Functional test of belt buckle

- Check belt guides and latch plate

cardiagn.com

- Check securing parts and anchorage points

NOTE:

- **If customer refuses to have a damaged seat belt replaced, appropriate note should be made.**

Seat belts

Checking belt

- Pull belt as far as it will go out of belt retractor or lap belt adjuster.
- Check belt for dirt and wash if necessary with a mild soap solution --> Refer also to Owners Manual.

- If either of the following types of damage (1 and 2) illustrated below is found on a vehicle following an accident, replace seat belt complete with buckle.

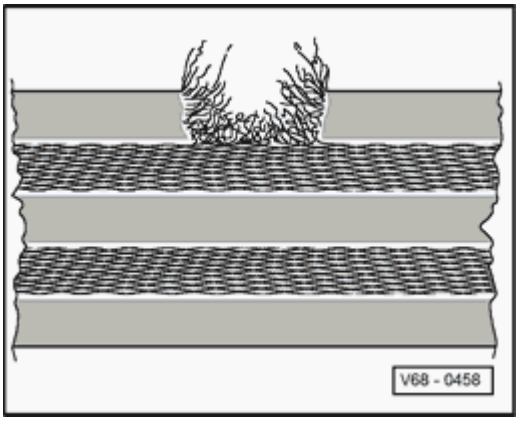


Fig. 66: Checking Belt Webbing - Belt Webbing Cut, Torn Or Chafed
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- If damage such as illustrated by items 1, 2 or 3 is found on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, only the damaged seat belt has to be replaced.

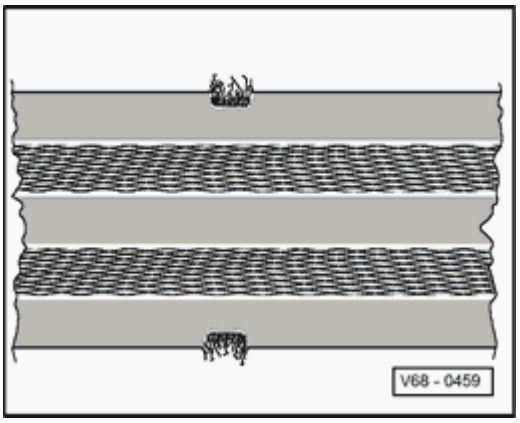


Fig. 67: Checking Belt Webbing - Webbing Loops On Belt Edge Torn
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- 1 Belt cut, torn or chafed

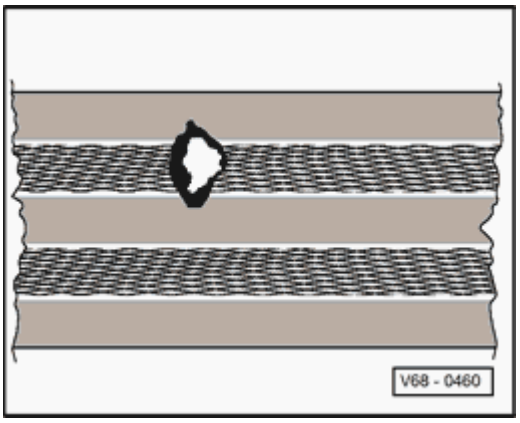


Fig. 68: Checking Belt Webbing - Burned Spots From Cigarettes Or Something Else
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- 2 Frayed fabric at edge of belt
- 3 Burn marks caused by cigarettes or the like

Belt retractor (locking action), checking

The belt retractor has two locking functions.

- The first locking function is triggered by pulling belt quickly out of belt retractor (accelerated belt unwinding).

Checking

- Pull belt firmly out of belt retractor.

- If there is no locking effect, replace seat belt complete with buckle.
- In the event of problems with belt unwinding or retraction, start by checking whether position of belt retractor has changed.
- The second locking function is triggered by altering vehicle motion (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Checking

- Fasten seat belt.
- Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then press foot brake to implement emergency braking.

- If braking does not cause belt to lock by locking mechanism, replace seat belt complete with buckle.

CAUTION: For safety reasons, test drive is to be performed on a road with no traffic so as not to endanger other road users.

cardiagn.com

Visual inspection of buckle

- Examine buckle for cracks and chipping.
- If damage, replace seat belt complete with buckle.

Checking operation of buckle

Checking buckle:

- Insert latch plate in buckle until it is audibly engage. Pull firmly on belt to check whether locking mechanism has engaged.
- If latch plate fails to lock even once in the course of at least 5 test operations, replace seat belt complete with buckle.

Checking release function:

- Release seat belt by pressing buckle button with finger.
- Latch plate must be automatically ejected from buckle when webbing is loose.
- Check at least 5 times. If latch plate fails to be ejected even once, replace seat belt complete with buckle.

CAUTION: Never use lubricant to eliminate noise or stiffness at buckle buttons.

Checking guide fittings and latch plate

If belt system has been subjected to load (seat belt fastened in an accident), plastic-coated fittings will reveal fine parallel score marks (in contrast, wear induced by frequent use can be seen from a smooth surface with no score marks).

- Examine plastic for deformation, chipping and cracks.
- In the event of score marks and/or damage, replace seat belt complete with buckle.

Checking attachment components and anchorage points

- Latch plate deformed (elongated)
- Height adjuster not working
- Anchorage points (seat, pillar, floor) deformed or thread damaged
- If component is damage, replace seat belt complete with buckle.
- Replace anchorage points.

cardiagn.com

NOTE:

- **Only the damaged component has to be replaced in the event of damage not resulting from an accident (e.g. wear).**

Child-seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for drivers seat belt), checking

- The complete belt assembly (including side panel trim) must be installed when checking this function.
- Activation of restraint function:
- Pull out webbing as far as possible.
- Correct function:

- The belt should retract with an audible noise.
- If the belt retraction is stopped, it should not be possible to pull the belt out again until the function is deactivated.
- Deactivation:
- Allow the belt to retract as far as the last 100 mm (approx.).

- Restraint function must be deactivated at the latest when the last 100 mm are reached. The belt then re-assumes its normal function.

Belt-fastened sensor for rear 3-point belts with belt tensioner, checking

- Switch ignition on.
- Connect vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A or vehicle diagnostic and service information system VAS 5052 and select vehicle system "15 - Airbag" on.
- Read measured value block, display group 004.



Fig. 69: Diagnostic System VAS 5051: Display - Display Fields
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Belt fully retracted, display on vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A or vehicle diagnostic and service information system VAS 5052 : - no -

Latch plate engaged in belt buckle and belt pulled out by dimension - L -, display on vehicle diagnostic, testing

cardiagn.com

and information system VAS 5051 A or vehicle diagnostic and service information system VAS 5052 : - yes -

- Pull out belt as far as possible. For this purpose, display on vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A or vehicle diagnostic and service information system VAS 5052 must remain - yes -.
- Retract belt as far as dimension - L - without releasing latch plate, display on vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A or vehicle diagnostic and service information system VAS 5052 must remain - yes -.
- Release latch plate and slowly retract belt; at the latest when the belt has retracted as far as the last 100 mm, display must switch from -yes- to -no-.

Belt fully retracted, display on vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A or vehicle diagnostic and service information system VAS 5052 : - no -

- Dimension - L - is 300 mm for left and right belt.

SAFETY REQUIREMENTS FOR AIRBAGS

Safety precautions when working on airbag

CAUTION:

- **Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.**
- **Never perform tests with a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.**
- **Airbag system must only be tested with vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 when in its installed position.**
- **Always disconnect power supply when working on the airbag system.**
- **When disconnecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**
- **Detach battery ground (GND) strap/disconnect cable, cover over negative terminal. No waiting period is required after disconnecting the battery.**
- **There must be no one in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.**
- **After connecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**

CAUTION:

- **The airbag units should be installed immediately after removing them from their transport containers.**

cardiagn.com

- **If work is interrupted, the airbag unit should be replaced in its transport container.**
- **The airbag units must not be left unattended.**
- **Airbag units which have been removed should be stored so that the padded side is facing upward.**
- **Never open or repair airbag components. Always use new components only.**
- **Airbag units which are dropped on a hard surface or are damaged must not be used.**

Always observe the following sequence when replacing an airbag unit:

1 - Remove old airbag unit and place down with padding facing upward; with head airbag observe procedure for head airbag --> **Additional safety precautions for head airbag**.

2 - Take new airbag unit from transport container and store with padding facing upward; with head airbag observe procedure for head airbag --> **Additional safety precautions for head airbag**.

3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in transport container.

4 - Install new airbag unit into vehicle.

CAUTION:

- **The airbag units have an expiration date. If airbag units are replaced, the replacement must be entered in the service record. Airbag units must be replaced on expiration of 14 years.**
- **Airbag units which were not triggered must be marked and be sent back to manufacturer for disposal (use transport containers for airbag units).**
- **Never treat airbag units with grease, cleaning agents or similar; never expose an airbag unit (even for brief periods) to temperatures in excess of 100° C.**

Additional safety precautions for side airbag

CAUTION:

- **Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.**
- **The side airbags are subject to the same safety precautions as the drivers and front passengers airbags.**
- **Only install genuine seat and back seat covers approved for use with side airbag (identifiable by airbag label stitched on fabric).**
- **No extra covers should be installed over the backrests, as this would impair the function of the side airbags.**

cardiagn.com

- **Seat cushions, mats or similar which would impair the function of the seat occupied sensor and airbags must not be used.**

NOTE:

- **Seat-occupied sensor mat is not installed in drivers seat.**
- **In vehicles with no seat heating, the seats are installed with dummy seat heating elements (heating element with no wire).**
- **The foam upholstery in the backrest must not be cut away in the vicinity of the side airbag.**
- **When installing, ensure seam for side airbag is straight.**
- **When installing, fit all upholstery staples in same positions as on removal.**
- **Use only genuine upholstery staples.**
- **When installing, all upholstery staples must be installed in the same positions as the original ones.**
- **If the seat cover fabric is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the vicinity of the side airbag, the cover must be replaced for safety reasons, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.**
- **No repairs may be performed on the backrest cover fabric near the side airbag (original fabric has special thread and exactly defined seams).**
- **Always replace backrest padding after side airbag has been triggered.**
- **All damaged components must be replaced after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.**
- **The airbag units have an expiration date. If airbag units are replaced, the replacement must be entered in the service record. Airbag units must be replaced on expiration of 14 years.**
- **If side airbag units are replaced, remove airbag number sticker from the new unit and stick it over the old one on the seat pan.**
- **Never use upholstery needles or poke any other sharp objects through the seat cover fabric in the vicinity of the airbag and sensor mat.**

Additional safety precautions for head airbag

- The head airbags are subject to the same safety precautions as the drivers and front passengers airbags.
- Before installing a visual check for damage on the trims must be carried out.
- Trim repairs (upper A-pillar, upper B-pillar, upper C-pillar and D-pillar trim) are not permitted.
- When installing, ensure that trims are installed securely.

- The head airbag module may only be bent at the intended location (roof to A-pillar transition).
- When carrying out repairs behind the head airbag always remove complete module.
- Store removed head airbag module in transport container or on a clean, level surface (place on blanket or in luggage compartment).
- After body repairs in the vicinity of the head airbag the body must be checked for welding splashes,

cardiagn.com

deformation or abrasion (compare to opposite side).

- Always hold head airbag module securely.
- Always fold removed head airbag modules and grasp at gas generator (thumb in direction of E-connection).
- Always keep one hand on the gas generator.
- Do not twist, turn, knot, throw, pull, hang, pinch, press or clamp head airbag module.
- Contamination such as oil, grease, paint and solvents is absorbed into fabric always replace module.

Additional safety precautions for roll-over protection

- Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- Always disconnect power supply when working on the rollover protection.
- The rollover protection must only be removed and installed when extended. The rollover protection can be extended using the vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A. Refer to guided fault-finding, body, general body repairs, 01 systems with self-diagnosis capability, Airbag 8.4E, Functions-Airbag 8.4E J234-Airbag Control Module, output DTM.
- After pushing in, the rollover protection must have approx. 1-2 mm downward play.
- There must be no one in the vicinity of the rollover protection when battery is being connected (approx. 1 m distance).
- The rollover protection should be installed immediately after removing from its transport container.
- Leaving the rollover protection unattended is not permitted.
- The rollover protection must be stored horizontally when not installed.
- The rollover protection must be neither dismantled nor repaired. Always use new components only.
- Rollover protection which is dropped on a hard surface or is damaged (particularly at the solenoid switch) must not be installed.
- All damaged components must be replaced after an accident. The rollover protection can be reused if no signs of damage to rollover protection are found. Perform a functional test on rollover protection, using vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A. Refer to guided fault-finding, body, general body repairs, 01 systems with self-diagnosis capability, Airbag 8.4E, Functions-Airbag 8.4E J234-Airbag Control Module, output DTM.
- During control element test the flap for rollover protection must be clipped in and no items must be positioned on the flap.
- No repair work must be carried out on convertible top compartment lid in area of cover and on flap for rollover protection.
- Install necessary shims when installing.
- During body repairs in area of rollover protection, always remove rollover protection.
- After body repairs in the vicinity of rollover protection the body must be checked for welding splashes, deformation or abrasion (compare to opposite side).

cardiagn.com

Airbag units after an accident, replacing

NOTE:

- **The control unit for the airbag can be used for up to three side/head airbag and/or belt tensioner deployments.**
- **The malfunction display "Control module defective" will appear after third deployment.**

Airbag control module must be replaced:

- If driver/passenger airbag is deployed.
- After three side and/or head airbag deployments
- If housing is damaged
- In the event of tunnel deformation within 200 mm radius of control unit

Always replace the following:

- All triggered airbag units

Additionally, if front passengers airbag has been triggered:

- Instrument panel
- Supports for passengers airbag module which have been bent out of shape (must not be bent back into shape).
- Both front airbag sensors on front end
- Lateral acceleration sensor if floor pan around sensor has been deformed

Additionally, if drivers airbag has been triggered:

- Self-cancelling ring with slip ring.
- Both front airbag sensors on front end
- Lateral acceleration sensor if floor pan around sensor has been deformed

Additionally, if side airbag has been triggered:

- Lateral acceleration sensor on side where airbag has been triggered.
- With folding backrests: Side padding.
- Non-triggered lateral acceleration sensor if floor pan around sensor has been deformed.

Additionally, if head airbag has been triggered:

- Lateral acceleration sensor on side where airbag has been triggered.
- A, B, C and D-pillar trim
- Non-triggered lateral acceleration sensor if floor pan around sensor has been deformed

cardiagn.com

Additionally:

- All seat belts with triggered belt tensioners

A - Airbag control module triggered:

- Connect vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A and select vehicle system "15 - Airbag". For this purpose, the ignition must be switched on.

Front belt tensioner:

- Read measured value block, display group 001.



Fig. 70: Diagnostic System VAS 5051: Display - Display Fields
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

A triggered belt tensioner is indicated by the display "too great".

Rear belt tensioner (USA):

- Read measured value block, display group 002.

A triggered belt tensioner is indicated by the display "too great".

B - Airbag control module replaced:

- Connect vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A and select vehicle system "15 - Airbag". For this purpose, the ignition must be switched on.
- Interrogate DTC memory.

cardiagn.com

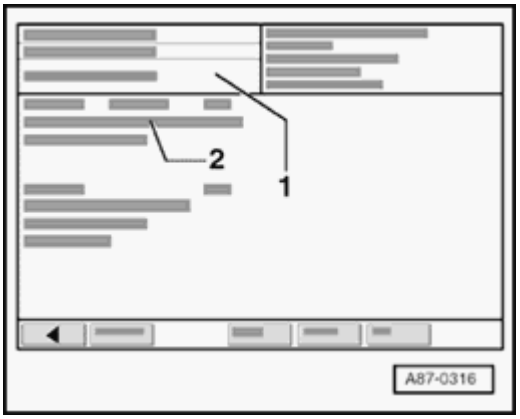


Fig. 71: Identifying Content Of DTC Memory & Identification Of Fault On Diagnostic System VAS 5051 Display
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

A triggered belt tensioner is identified by the fault message "Belt tensioner igniter - Resistance value too great".

- In addition, the following must also be replaced, if necessary (visual check): all faulty components

Accident not involving activation of airbag

- If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 does not indicate a malfunction, it is not necessary to replace the airbag components. The seat belts should be checked separately.

After replacing the airbag units or the control module, affix stickers (only tear-off strips) to the registration card and return the registration card to the relevant Sales Department or to the Importer for registration. .

Storage and transportation of airbag units

- The airbag unit is a class PT 1 pyrotechnic device. Storage and transport are subject to safety legislation relating to hazardous materials (explosives).

In Germany: Small quantities of materials and articles may be kept in lockable rooms without special storage permission. Dispatch and transportation is only permitted in officially approved transport containers.

- Airbag units are not to be stored for more than 3 months.

Disposal of airbag units

- In Germany airbag units must be rendered unusable prior to scrapping by means of electrical ignition, in accordance with accident prevention regulations, as pyrotechnic devices can cause injury if activated improperly (e.g. with a cutting torch during scrapping).
- The airbag unit must only be electrically ignited when installed in the vehicle. Proceed as follows:

  - Disconnect connector from airbag unit and connect wiring harness, Part No. 8D1 971 259, to airbag unit.
  - Install airbag unit.

cardiagn.com

- Cut off connector at other end of wiring harness, Part No. 8D1 971 259, strip the ends of the two wires and slit cable sheath until ends of wires are at least 30 cm apart.

CAUTION:
- **There must not be anyone in the vehicle.**
- **Minimum distance from vehicle: 10 m**

- Ignite airbag with doors closed and windows open using wiring harness and external battery (outside vehicle).

- Ensure adequate vehicle ventilation after triggering.
- Airbags can be disposed of with commercial refuse after removal.
- Always wash hands after touching airbags which have been ignited.
- Observe safety rules for handling airbags --> **Safety precautions when working on airbag**.

AIRBAGS

Component locations, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

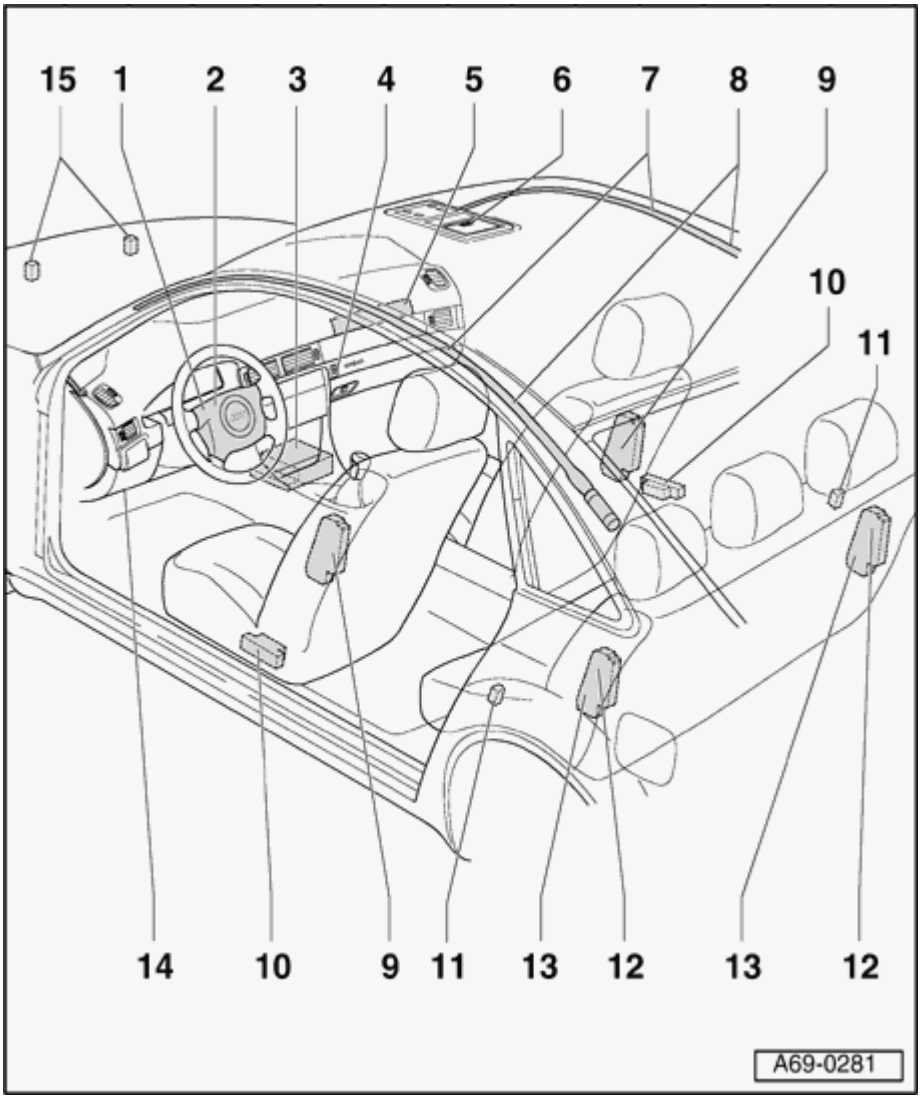


Fig. 72: Airbags Component Locations, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Drivers airbag unit

- Removing and installing --> **Airbag unit (standard steering wheel), assembly overview**

2 - Drivers airbag unit (sports steering wheel)

- Removing and installing --> **Steering wheel (sports steering wheel), assembly overview**

3 - Airbag Control Module J234

- Removing and installing --> **Airbag Control Module -J234-, assembly overview**

4 - Key switch for switching off passenger side airbag E224

cardiagn.com

- Not applicable for this market

5 - Passengers airbag unit

- Removing and installing --> **Front passenger airbag, assembly overview**

6 - Warning light for airbag off, passenger side K145 "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF"

- Not applicable for this market

7 - Head airbag (Sedan)

8 - Head airbag (Avant)

9 - Front side airbag

- Removing and installing --> **Side airbag (electric seat), assembly overview**

10 - Lateral acceleration sensor on B-pillar

- Removing and installing --> **Front side airbag crash sensor, removing and installing**

11 - Lateral acceleration sensor on C-pillar

12 - Rear side airbag (folding backrest)

13 - Rear side airbag (fixed backrest)

14 - Diagnostic connector

15 - Lateral acceleration sensor on front end

- Removing and installing --> **Front airbag crash sensor, removing and installing**

Airbag Control Module -J234-, assembly overview

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for working on airbag --> Safety precautions when working on airbag.

cardiagn.com

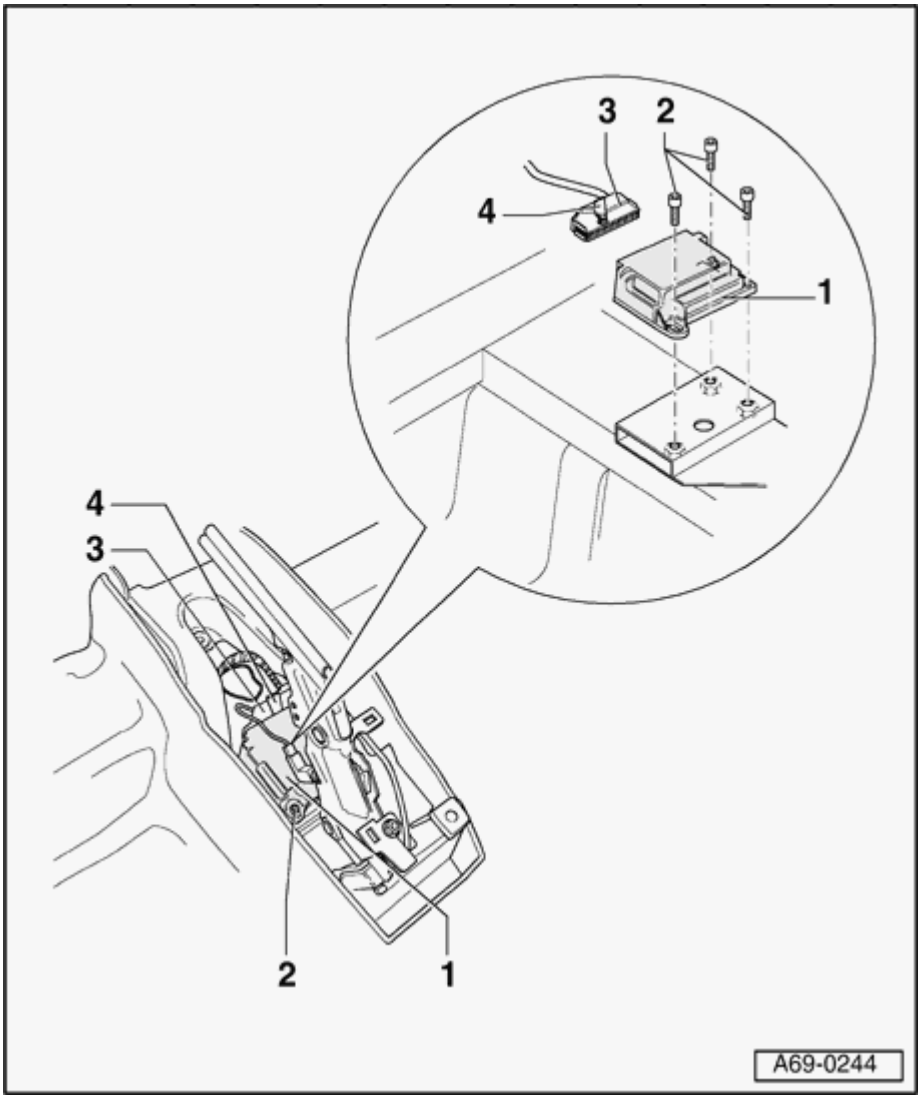


Fig. 73: Airbag Control Module -J234- Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Airbag Control Module J234

- **Removing**

- Disconnect battery Ground (GND) strap.
- Remove center console --> **Center console, assembly overview**.
- Release catch - **4** - at connector - **3** -.
- Pull connector - **3** - out of control unit - **1** -.

- Remove bolts - **2** - (3x).
- Detach control unit.

cardiagn.com

2 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

3 - Connector

4 - Securing clip

NOTE:

- **After connecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**
- **If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 signals a malfunction after assembly, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A to interrogate, erase and then again interrogate DTC memory.**
- **The control module must be recoded after replacement.**

Refer to guided fault-finding, body, general body repairs, 01 systems with self-diagnosis capability, Airbag 8.4E, Functions-Airbag 8.4E J234-Airbag Control Module, output DTM.

DRIVERS AIRBAG

Airbag unit (standard steering wheel), assembly overview

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for working on airbag --> Safety precautions when working on airbag.

cardiagn.com

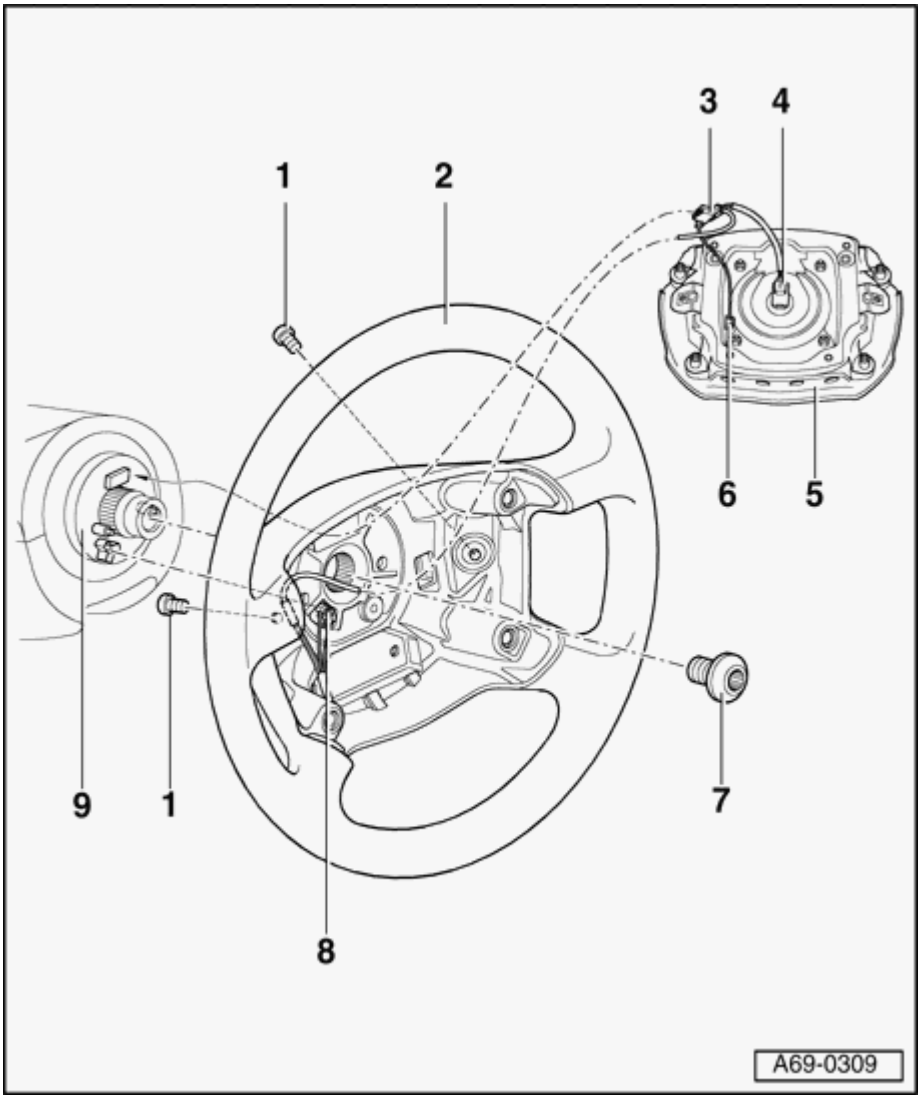


Fig. 74: Airbag Unit (Standard Steering Wheel), Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Torx bolts T30 (2x)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

2 - Steering wheel

3 - Connector for coil r

4 - Connector for airbag unit

5 - Airbag unit

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

- Disconnect battery Ground (GND) strap.
- Release steering column adjuster.
- Pull steering wheel - **2** - outward and upward as far as possible.
- Move steering wheel - **2** - to vertical position.

- Remove Torx bolt T30 - **1** -.
- Turn steering wheel half a turn back and unscrew second Torx bolt T 30 - **1** -.
- Disconnect connector for airbag unit - **4** -.
- Unplug connector for horn - **6** -.

- Put airbag unit down - **5** - with impact cushion facing upward.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.
- Ensure that connector and catch engage fully (i.e. audibly).
- Ensure that no cable is on gas generator.
- Ensure that airbag cable is not trapped. Lay airbag cable in a loop to the left.

- Lay horn cable in a loop to the outside.
- Tighten bolts - **1** - (2x) to a torque of 7 Nm.
- Switch ignition on.

CAUTION: There must be no one in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

- Connect battery Ground (GND) strap.

6 - Horn connector

7 - Multi-point socket head bolt

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

8 - Connector for heated steering wheel

9 - Self-cancelling ring with slip ring

NOTE:

- **After connecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**

cardiagn.com

- **If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 signals a malfunction after assembly, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A to interrogate, erase and then again interrogate DTC memory.**

Steering wheel (standard steering wheel), assembly overview

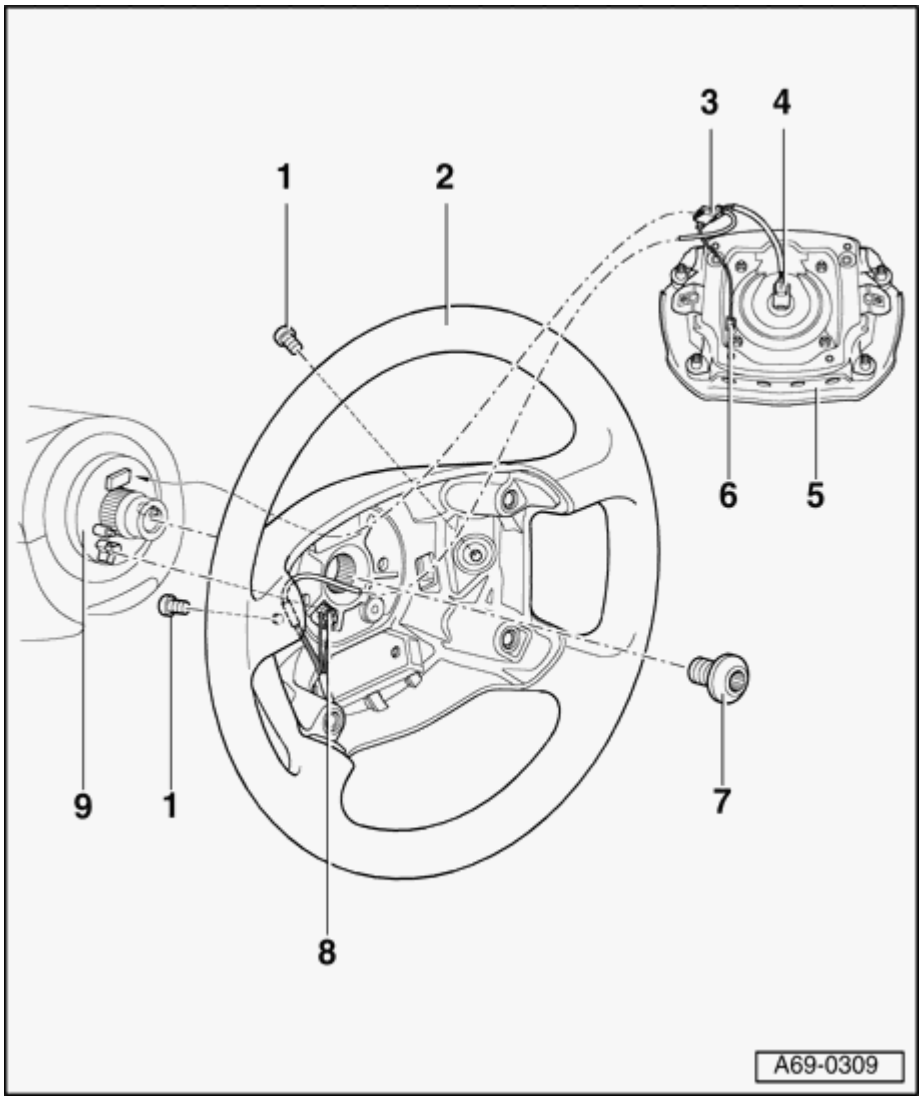


Fig. 75: Steering Wheel (Standard Steering Wheel), Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Torx bolts T30 (2x)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

2 - Steering wheel

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

- Remove airbag unit (standard steering wheel) --> **Airbag unit (standard steering wheel), assembly overview**.
- Center steering wheel (wheels in straight-ahead position).
- Remove bolt - **7** -.
- Disconnect connector for coil - **3** -.
- Heated steering wheel: Disconnect connector for heated steering wheel - **8** -.
- Remove steering wheel - **2** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.
- Ensure that connector and catch engage fully (i.e. audibly).
- Attach steering wheel in center position (wheels in straight-ahead position).
- Replace bolt - **7** - and tighten to 50 Nm.

3 - Connector for coil

4 - Connector for airbag unit

5 - Airbag unit

6 - Horn connector

7 - Multi-point socket head bolt

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

8 - Connector for heated steering wheel

9 - Self-cancelling ring with slip ring

Airbag unit (sports steering wheel), assembly overview

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for working on airbag --> Safety precautions when working on airbag.

cardiagn.com

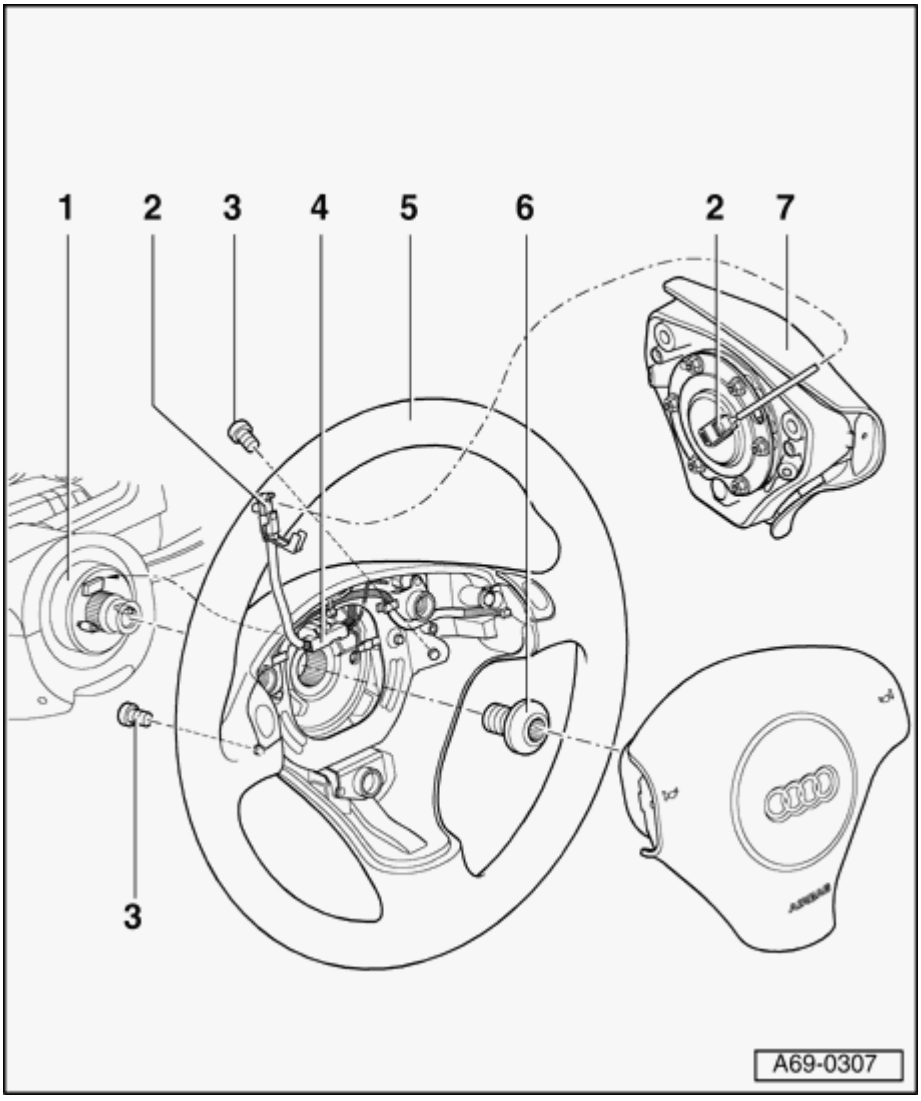


Fig. 76: Airbag Unit (Sports Steering Wheel), Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Self-cancelling ring with slip ring

2 - Connector for airbag unit

3 - Torx bolts T30 (2x)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

4 - Connector for coil

5 - Steering wheel

6 - Multi-point socket head bolt

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

7 - Airbag unit

- **Removing**

  - Disconnect battery Ground (GND) strap.
  - Release steering column adjuster.
  - Pull steering wheel - **5** - outward and upward as far as possible.
  - Move steering wheel - **5** - to vertical position.

  - Remove Torx bolt T30 - **3** -.
  - Turn steering wheel half a turn back and unscrew second Torx bolt T 30 - **3** -.
  - Disconnect connector for airbag unit - **2** -.
  - Put airbag unit down - **7** - with impact cushion facing upward.

- **Installing**

  - Installation is in reverse order of removal.
  - Ensure that connector and catch engage fully (i.e. audibly).
  - Ensure that no cable is on gas generator.
  - Ensure that airbag cable is not trapped. Lay airbag cable in a loop to the left.

  - Tighten bolts - **3** - (2x) to a torque of 7 Nm.
  - Switch ignition on.

CAUTION: There must be no one in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

  - Connect battery Ground (GND) strap.

NOTE:

- **After connecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**
- **If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 signals a malfunction after assembly, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A to interrogate, erase and then again interrogate DTC memory.**

Steering wheel (sports steering wheel), assembly overview

cardiagn.com

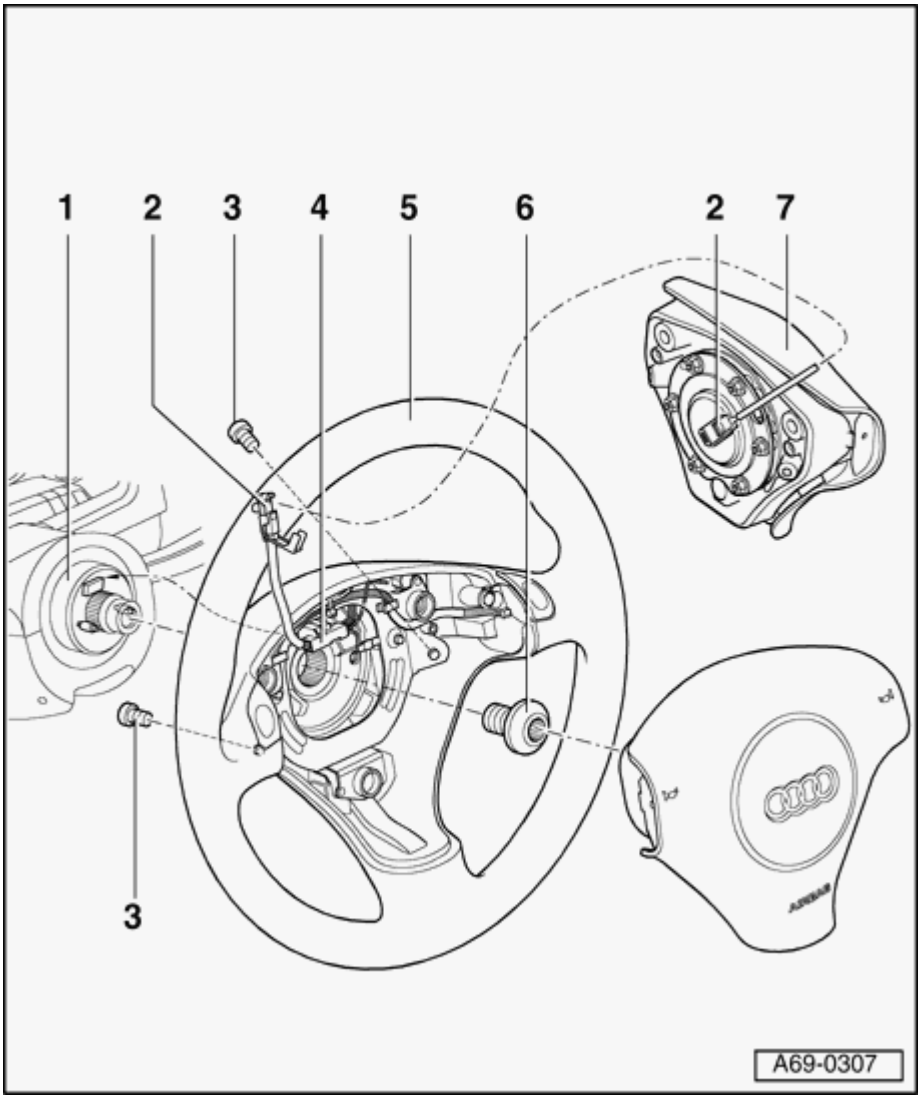


Fig. 77: Steering Wheel (Sports Steering Wheel), Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Self-cancelling ring with slip ring

2 - Connector for airbag unit

3 - Torx bolts T30 (2x)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

4 - Connector for coil

5 - Steering wheel

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

- Remove airbag unit (sports steering wheel) --> **Airbag unit (sports steering wheel), assembly overview**.
- Center steering wheel (wheels in straight-ahead position).
- Remove bolt - **6** -.
- Disconnect connector for coil - **4** -.
- Remove steering wheel - **5** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.
- Ensure that connector and catch engage fully (i.e. audibly).
- Attach steering wheel in center position (wheels in straight-ahead position).
- Replace bolt - **6** - and tighten to 50 Nm.

6 - Multi-point socket head bolt

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

7 - Airbag unit

Airbag unit (multi-function steering wheel), assembly overview

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for working on airbag --> Safety precautions when working on airbag.

cardiagn.com

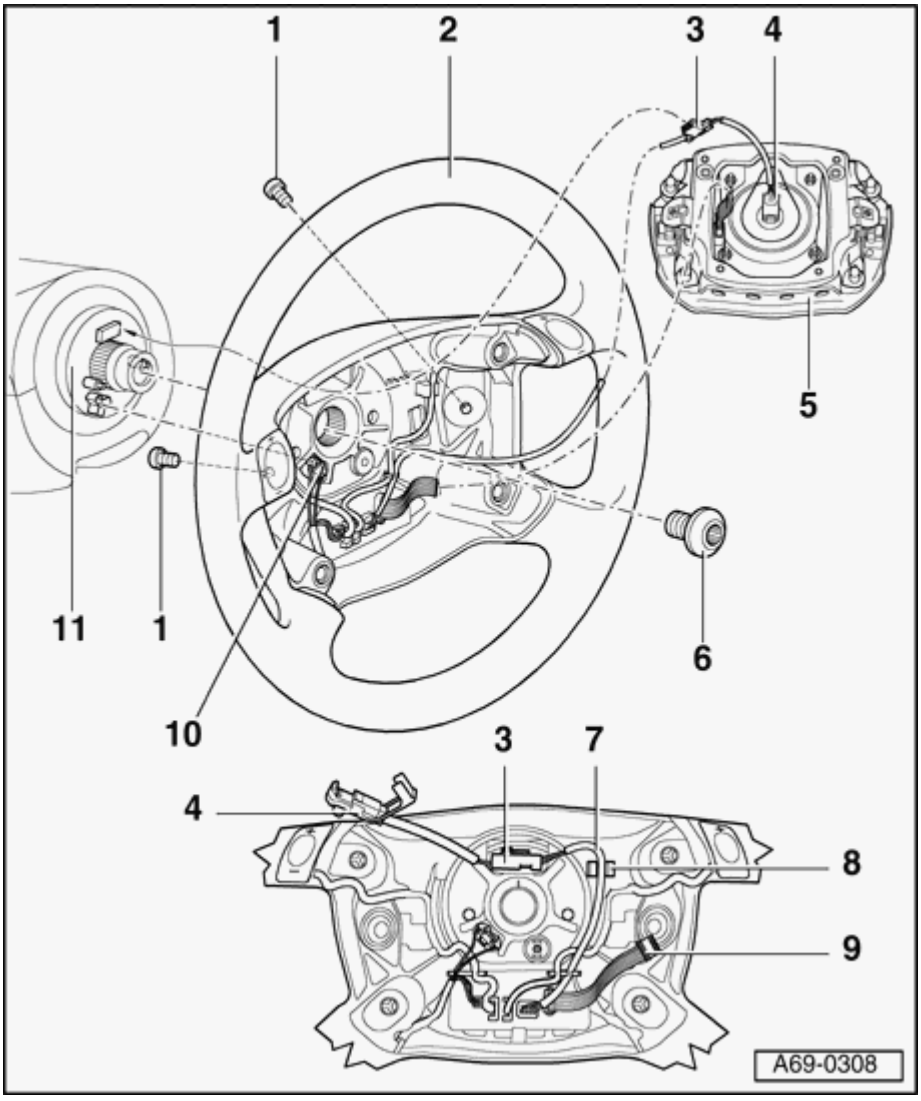


Fig. 78: Airbag Unit (Multi-Function Steering Wheel), Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Torx bolts T30 (2x)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

2 - Steering wheel

3 - Connector for coil

4 - Connector for airbag unit

5 - Airbag unit

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

- Disconnect battery Ground (GND) strap.
- Release steering column adjuster.
- Pull steering wheel - **2** - outward and upward as far as possible.
- Move steering wheel - **2** - to vertical position.

- Remove Torx bolt T30 - **1** -.
- Turn steering wheel half a turn back and release second Torx bolt T 30 - **1** -.
- Disconnect connector for airbag unit - **4** -.
- Put airbag unit down - **5** - with impact cushion facing upward.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.
- Ensure that connector and catch engage fully (i.e. audibly).
- Ensure that no cable is on gas generator.
- Ensure that airbag cable is not trapped. Lay airbag cable in a loop to the left.

- Tighten bolts - **1** - (2x) to a torque of 7 Nm.
- Switch ignition on.

CAUTION: There must be no one in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

- Connect battery Ground (GND) strap.

6 - Multi-point socket head bolt

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

7 - Supply cable

8 - Clip

9 - Connector for multi-function steering wheel

10 - Connector for heated steering wheel

11 - Self-cancelling ring with slip ring

NOTE:

- **After connecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for**

cardiagn.com

ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET

- **If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 signals a malfunction after assembly, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A to interrogate, erase and then again interrogate DTC memory.**

Steering wheel (multi-function steering wheel), assembly overview

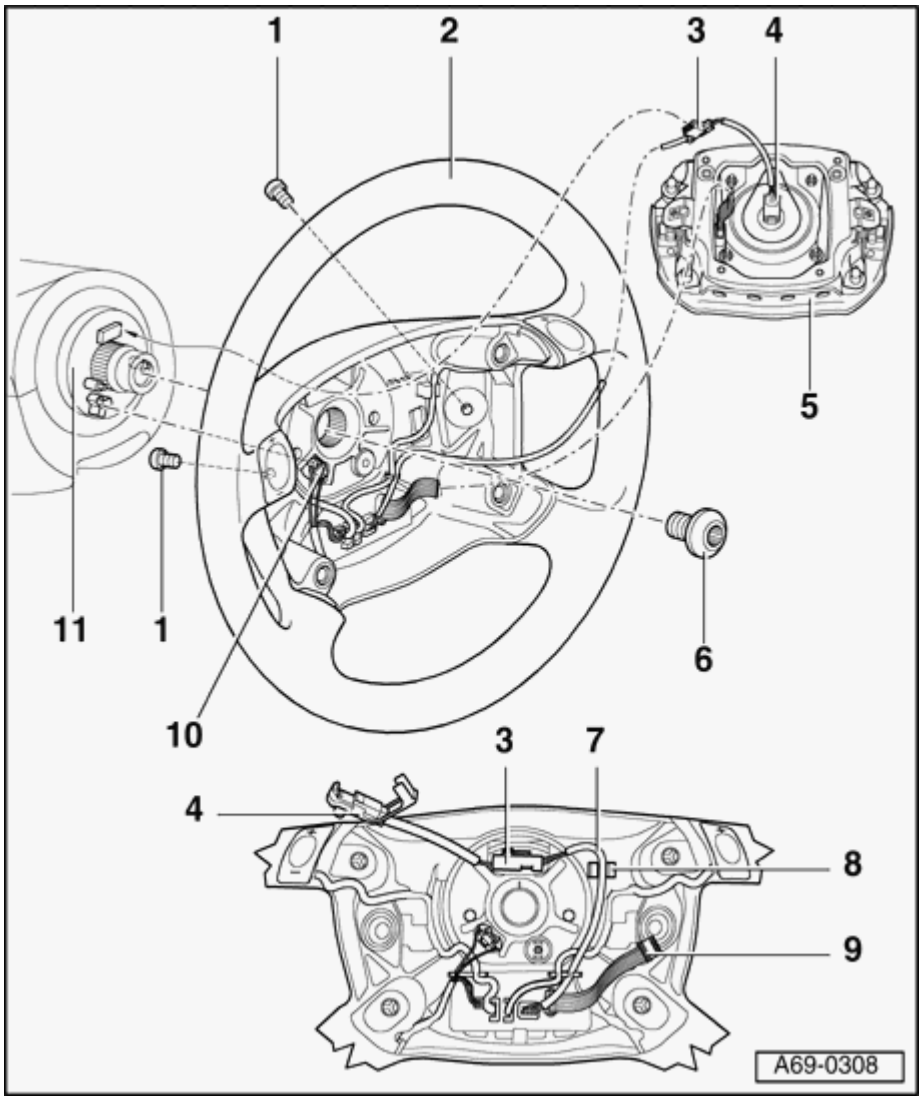


Fig. 79: Steering Wheel (Multi-Function Steering Wheel), Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Torx bolts T30 (2x)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

2 - Steering wheel

cardiagn.com

- **Removing**

  - Remove airbag unit (multi-function steering wheel) --> Refer to --> **Airbag unit (multi-function steering wheel), assembly overview**.
  - Center steering wheel (wheels in straight-ahead position).
  - Remove bolt - **6** -.
  - Disconnect connector for coil - **3** -.
  - Disconnect multi-function cable connector - **9** -.
  - Heated steering wheel: Unplug connector for heated steering wheel - **10** -.
  - Remove steering wheel - **2** -.

- **Installing**

  - Installation is in reverse order of removal.
  - Ensure that connector and catch engage fully (i.e. audibly).
  - Insert supply cable - **7** - in clip - **8** -.
  - Attach steering wheel in center position (wheels in straight-ahead position).
  - Replace bolt - **4** - and tighten to 50 Nm.

3 - Connector for coil

4 - Connector for airbag unit

5 - Airbag unit

6 - Multi-point socket head bolt

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

7 - Supply cable

8 - Clip

9 - Connector for multi-function steering wheel

10 - Connector for heated steering wheel

11 - Self-cancelling ring with slip ring

Self-cancelling ring with slip ring (coil connector/ESP sensor), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

- Screwdriver T8 T40056
- **Removing:**

- Remove drivers airbag unit (standard steering wheel) --> **Airbag unit (standard steering wheel), assembly overview**.
- Remove drivers airbag unit (sports steering wheel) --> **Airbag unit (sports steering wheel), assembly overview**.
- Remove drivers airbag unit (multi-function steering wheel) --> **Airbag unit (multi-function steering wheel), assembly overview**.
- Remove steering wheel (standard steering wheel) --> **Steering wheel (standard steering wheel), assembly overview**.

- Remove steering wheel (sports steering wheel) --> **Steering wheel (sports steering wheel), assembly overview**.
- Remove steering wheel (multi-function steering wheel) --> **Steering wheel (multi-function steering wheel), assembly overview**.
- Pull steering column out and down as far as possible.

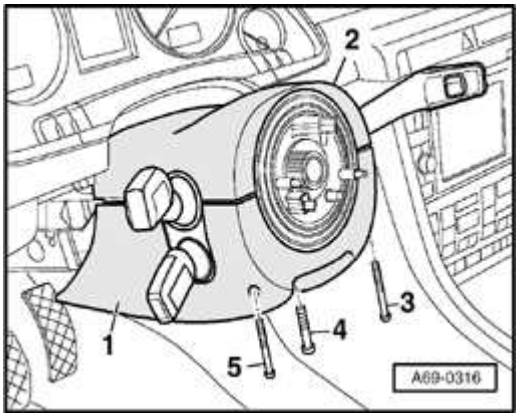


Fig. 80: Removing Torx Bolts With Screwdriver T8 T40056 As Well As Hex Socket Head Bolt & Separating Upper Trim For Steering Column Switch From Lower Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove Torx bolts with screwdriver T8 T40056 - **3** - and - **5** - as well as hex socket head bolt - **4** -.
- Tightening torque 1 Nm
- Separate upper trim - **2** - for steering column switch from lower trim - **1** - and remove both sections.

To install, insert the upper trim into the hooks of the lower trim, press both sections together and screw in place.

cardiagn.com

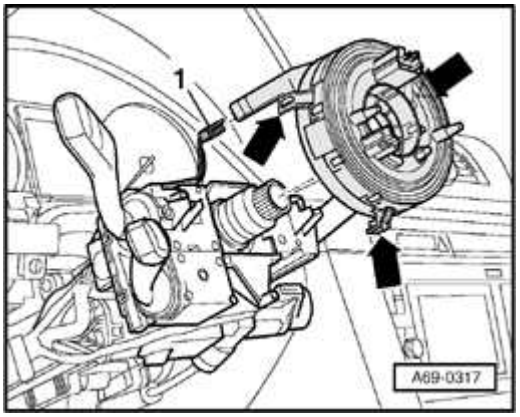


Fig. 81: Disconnecting Connector, Release Catch And Pulling Return Spring With Slip Ring From Steering Column Switches
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector - **1** -.
- Carefully release locking tabs - **arrows** - and pull self-cancelling ring with slip ring off steering column switch.

- **Installing:**

- Make sure that all 3 locking tabs and connector are correctly engaged.

NOTE:

- **The steering must be in the center position (wheels in straight-ahead position) when the self-cancelling ring with slip ring are removed and installed.**
- **Self-cancelling ring with slip ring is secured as a new part in the center position with a cable tie or tear ring.**
- **The ESP sensor must be adjusted in vehicles with ESP sensor in self-cancelling ring with slip ring.**

Refer to guided fault-finding, running gear, brake system, 01 systems_with self-diagnosis capability_ Bosch_5_7, anti-locking brake system_ABS_EDL_TCS_ESP, SYS45_ basic setting_ steering angle sensor.

PASSENGERS AIRBAG

Front passenger airbag, assembly overview

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for working on airbag --> Safety precautions when working on airbag.

cardiagn.com

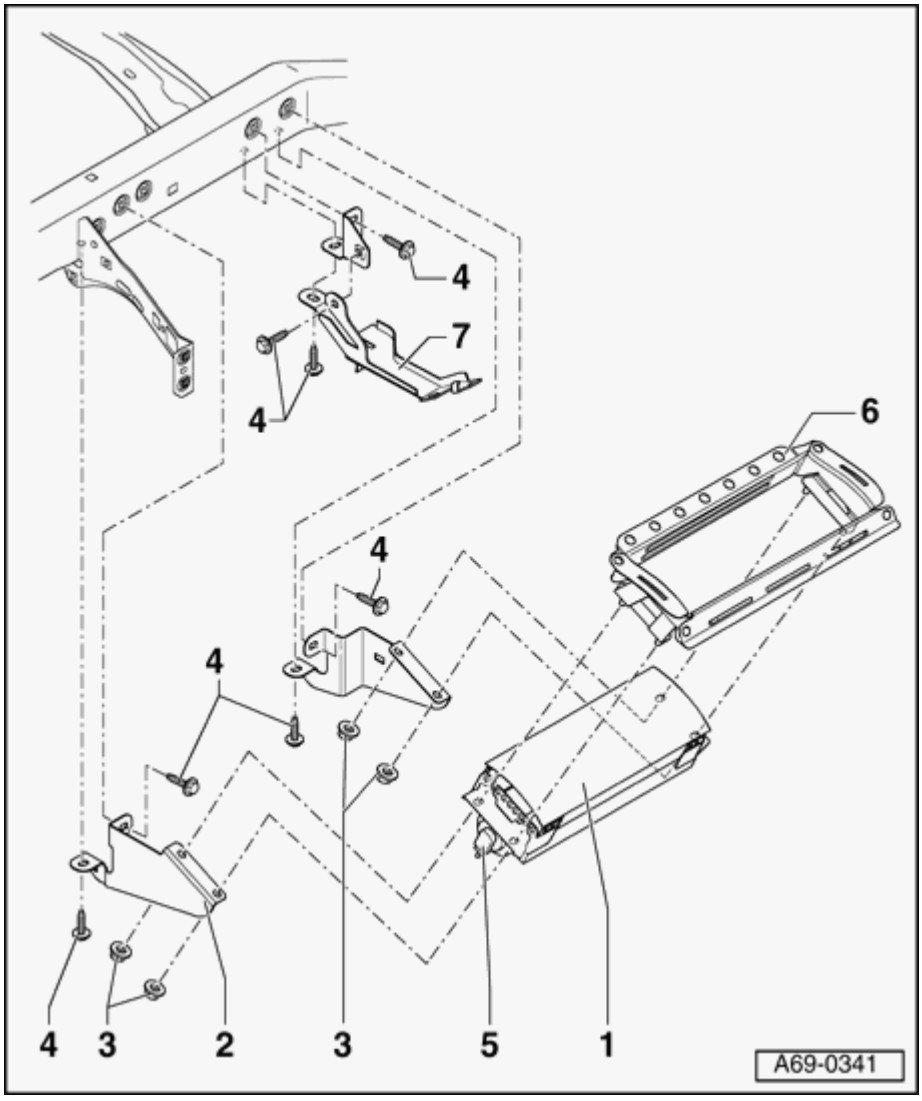


Fig. 82: Front Passenger Airbag, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Passengers airbag unit

- **Removing**

- Disconnect battery Ground (GND) strap.
- Remove glove compartment --> **Glove compartment, assembly overview**.
- Disconnect connector behind airbag unit **Disconnecting airbag connector**.

CAUTION: Never unplug connector - 5 - (2-pin) at front passengers airbag unit.

- Remove brace - **7** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove supports - **2** - behind airbag unit.
- Remove nut - **3** - (4x).
- Remove airbag unit.

- Put airbag unit down with impact cushion facing upward.

- **Installing**

- Install airbag unit.
- Ensure connector behind airbag unit engages properly (audibly) **Disconnecting airbag connector**.
- Switch ignition on.

CAUTION: There must be no one in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

- Connect battery Ground (GND) strap.

2 - Support

- Must be replaced after airbag triggering.
- Remove front passengers airbag unit.
- Remove bolts - **4** - (4x).

3 - Nut (4x)

- Must be replaced after airbag triggering
- Tightening torque 9 Nm

4 - Bolts (4x)

- Must be replaced after airbag triggering
- Tightening torque 9 Nm

5 - Connector

6 - Frame for airbag unit

- Must be replaced after airbag triggering
- Remove front passengers airbag unit.

7 - Brace

Disconnecting airbag connector

cardiagn.com

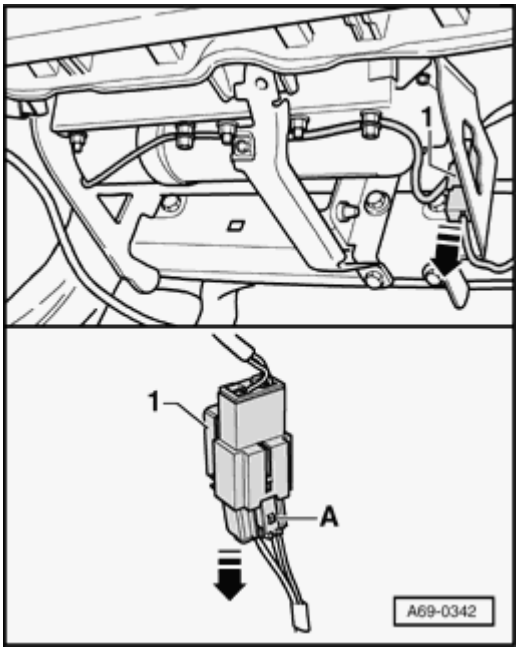


Fig. 83: Disconnecting Airbag Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

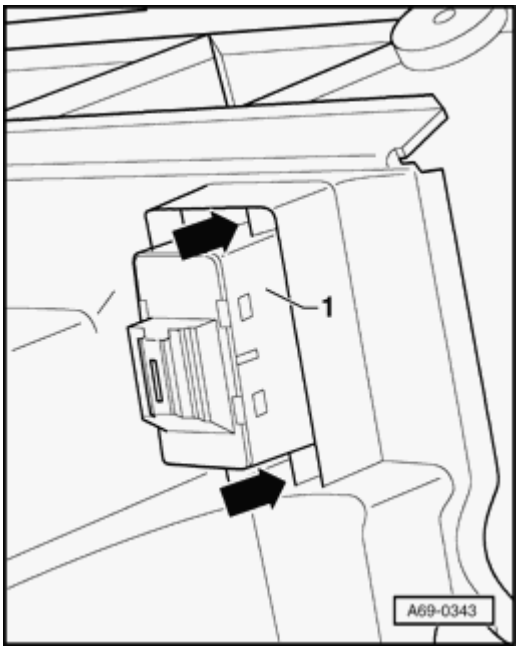


Fig. 84: Pressing Release And Disconnecting Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press release - **A** - and disconnect connector in direction of - **arrow** -.

1 - Retainer for connector

NOTE:

cardiagn.com

- **After connecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**
- **If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 signals a malfunction after assembly, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A to interrogate, erase and then interrogate again DTC memory.**

SIDE AIRBAGS

Tools

Special tools, workshop equipment, testers, measuring instruments and other items required

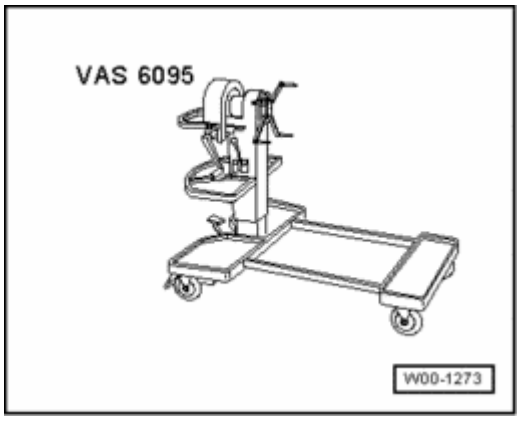


Fig. 85: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

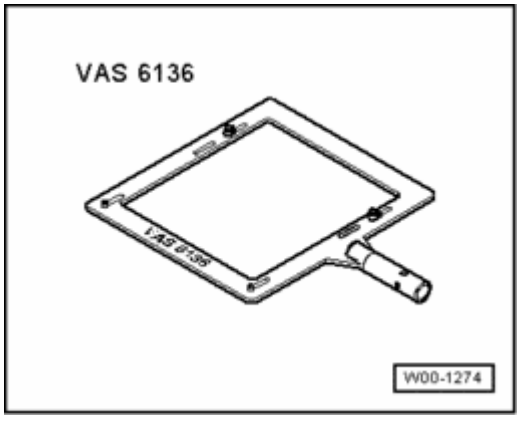


Fig. 86: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

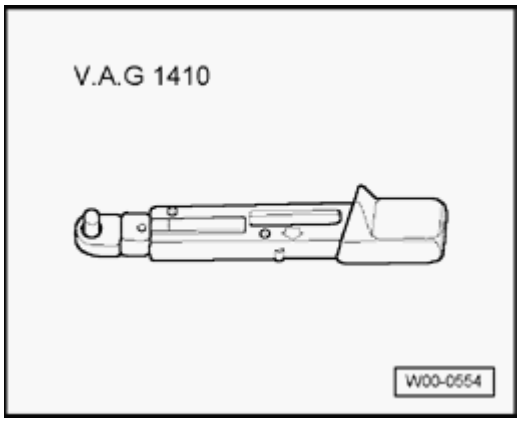


Fig. 87: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

Side airbag (sports seat, standard seat), removing and installing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for repairs to airbag --> Safety precautions when working on airbag and side airbags --> Additional safety precautions for side airbag.

cardiagn.com

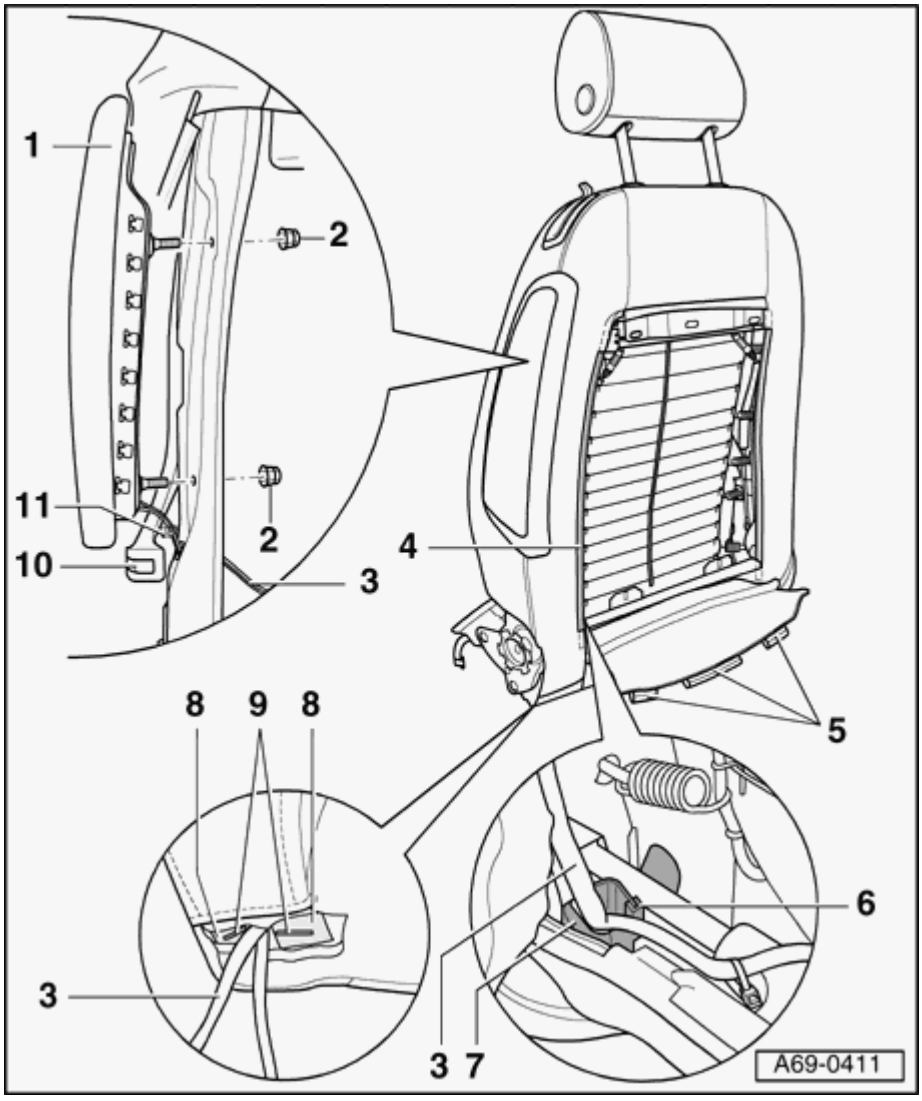


Fig. 88: Side Airbag (Sports Seat, Standard Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Side airbag, drivers/front passengers

- **Removing**

- Disconnect battery Ground (GND) strap.
- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.

- Remove backrest adjuster --> **Backrest adjuster, removing and installing**.
- Remove seat height adjuster --> **Seat height adjuster, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on sill panel side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Side trim on tunnel side, removing and installing**.

- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Pry out staples - **9** - (2x).
- Remove Velcro strips - **8** - (2x).

- Disengage piping on side - **4** -.
- Pry out piping at bottom - **5** - (3x).
- Unfasten clip - **6** - at cable guide - **7** -.
- Lift out airbag cable - **3** -.

- Remove nuts - **2** - (2x) of side airbag - **1** -.
- Remove side airbag - **1** -.
- Remove clip -11- and carefully pull out airbag cable - **3** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.
- Make sure airbag cable - **3** - is routed between backrest frame and plastic guide - **10** - and that airbag cable - **3** - is not stretched.
- Secure clip -11-.
- Switch ignition on.

CAUTION: There must be no one in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

- Connect battery Ground (GND) strap.

2 - Nuts (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm
- Always replace

3 - Airbag cable

4 - Side piping

5 - Bottom piping (3x)

6 - Clip

7 - Cable guide

cardiagn.com

8 - Velcro strips (2x)

9 - Staples (2x)

- Commercially available.
- Only use upholstery stapler.

10 - Plastic guide

11 - Clip

NOTE:

- **After connecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**
- **If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 signals a malfunction after assembly, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A to interrogate, erase and then again interrogate DTC memory.**

Side airbag (electric seat), assembly overview

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for repairs to airbag --> Safety precautions when working on airbag and side airbags --> Additional safety precautions for side airbag.

cardiagn.com

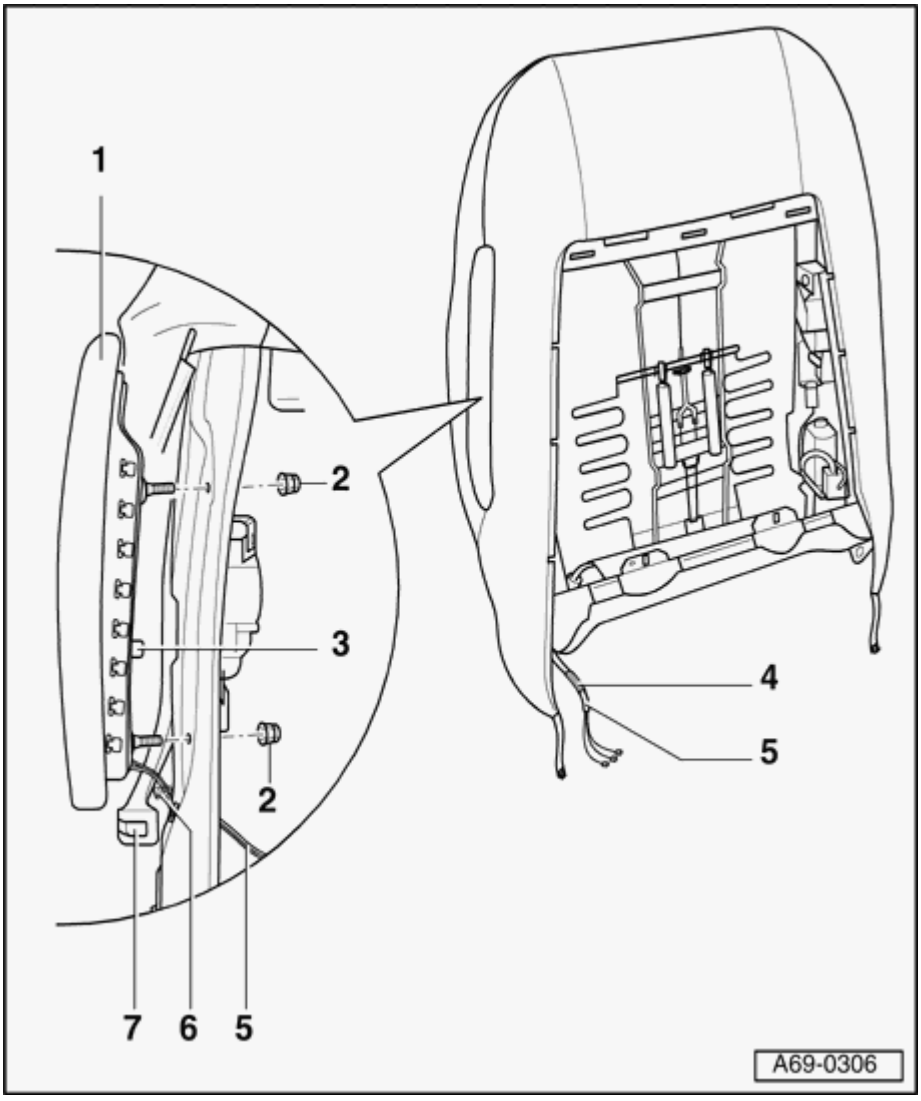


Fig. 89: Side Airbag (Electric Seat), Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Side airbag drivers/front passengers

- **Removing**

- Disconnect battery Ground (GND) strap.
- Remove seat --> **Front seat, assembly overview**.
- Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.

- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover panel, assembly overview**.
- Release sealing collar - **4** -.
- Remove wiring harness - **5** - upward.

cardiagn.com

- Remove nuts - **2** - (2x) of side airbag - **1** -.
- Pry off metal tab - **3** -.
- Remove side airbag - **1** -.
- Remove clip - **6** - and carefully remove wiring harness - **5** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.
- Make sure wiring harness - **5** - runs between seat frame and plastic guide - **7** - and that cables are not subject to strain.
- Fasten clip - **6** -.
- Switch ignition on.

CAUTION: There must be no one in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

- Connect battery Ground (GND) strap.

2 - Nuts (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm
- Always replace

3 - Metal tab

4 - Sealing collar

5 - Wiring harness

6 - Clip

7 - Plastic guide

NOTE:

- **After connecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**
- **If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 signals a malfunction after assembly, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A to interrogate, erase and then again interrogate DTC memory.**

AIRBAG CRASH SENSORS

cardiagn.com

Front airbag crash sensor, removing and installing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for working on airbag --> Safety precautions when working on airbag.

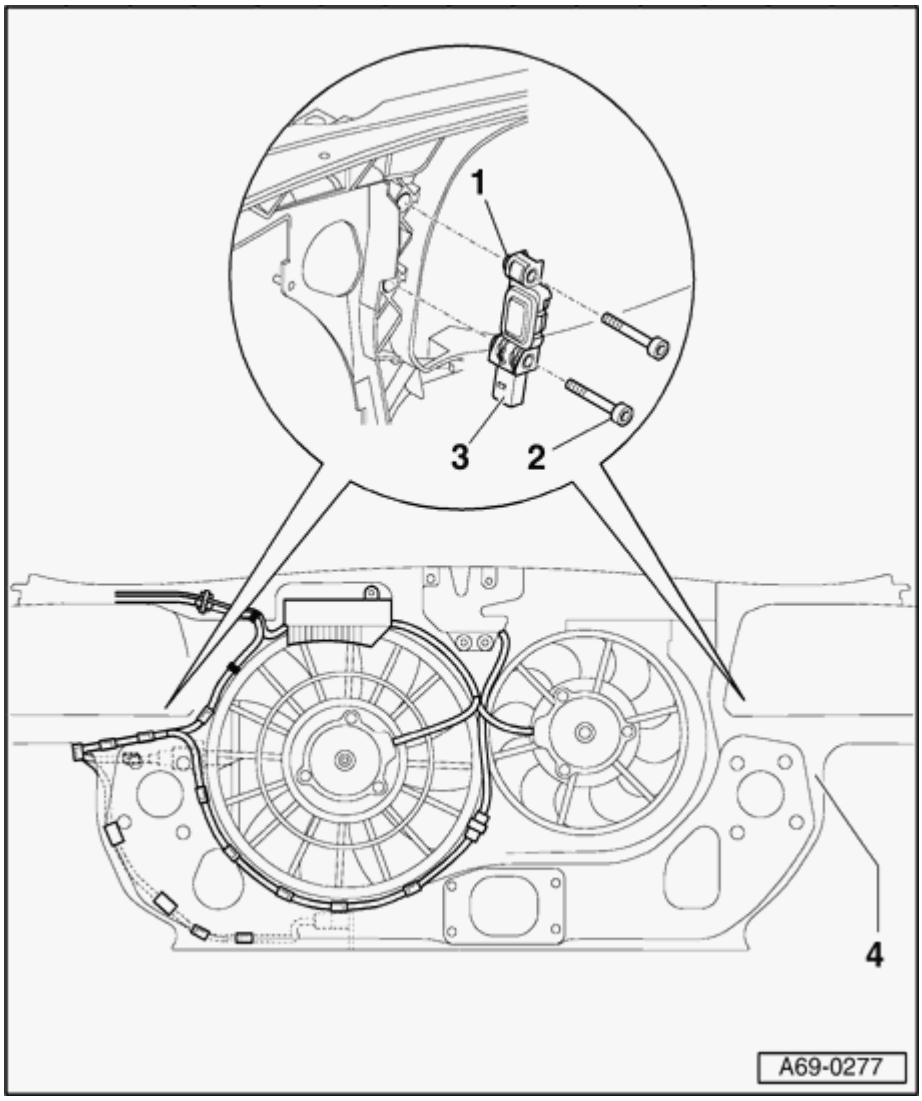


Fig. 90: Front Airbag Crash Sensor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front airbag crash sensor

- **Removing**

- Disconnect battery Ground (GND) strap.
- Depending on engine version, remove air duct, if necessary.
- Release tab at yellow connector - **3** - and disconnect connector.

cardiagn.com

- Remove two bolts - **2** - on crash sensor - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Switch ignition on.

CAUTION: There must be no one in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

- Connect battery Ground (GND) strap.

2 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

3 - Connector

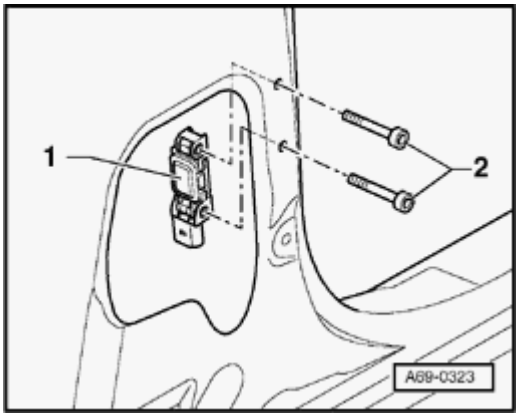
4 - Lock carrier

NOTE:

- **After connecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**
- **If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 signals a malfunction after assembly, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A to interrogate, erase and then again interrogate DTC memory.**

Front side airbag crash sensor, removing and installing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for working on airbag --> Safety precautions when working on airbag.



cardiagn.com

Fig. 91: Identifying Connector On Crash Sensor And Crash Sensor
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- **Removing**

- Disconnect battery Ground (GND) strap.
- Remove side trim --> **Left side trim, assembly overview**.
- Remove belt reel of front seat belt --> **Front 3-point seat belt with belt tensioner, assembly overivew**.
- Remove belt reel insulation --> **Insulation, assembly overview**.

- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

- Disconnect connector on crash sensor - **1** - and remove crash sensor - **1** -.

- **Installing**

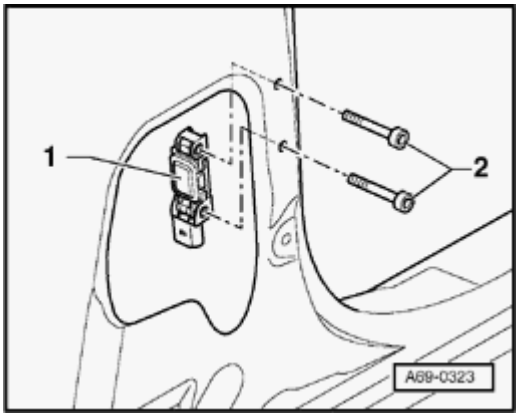


Fig. 92: Identifying Connector On Crash Sensor And Crash Sensor
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Install crash sensor - **1** - in reverse order of removal.
- Switch ignition on.

CAUTION: There must be no one in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

- Connect battery Ground (GND) strap.

NOTE:

- **After connecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for**

cardiagn.com

ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET

- **If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 signals a malfunction after assembly, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A to interrogate, erase and then again interrogate DTC memory.**

ROLLOVER PROTECTION

Rollover protection, assembly overview

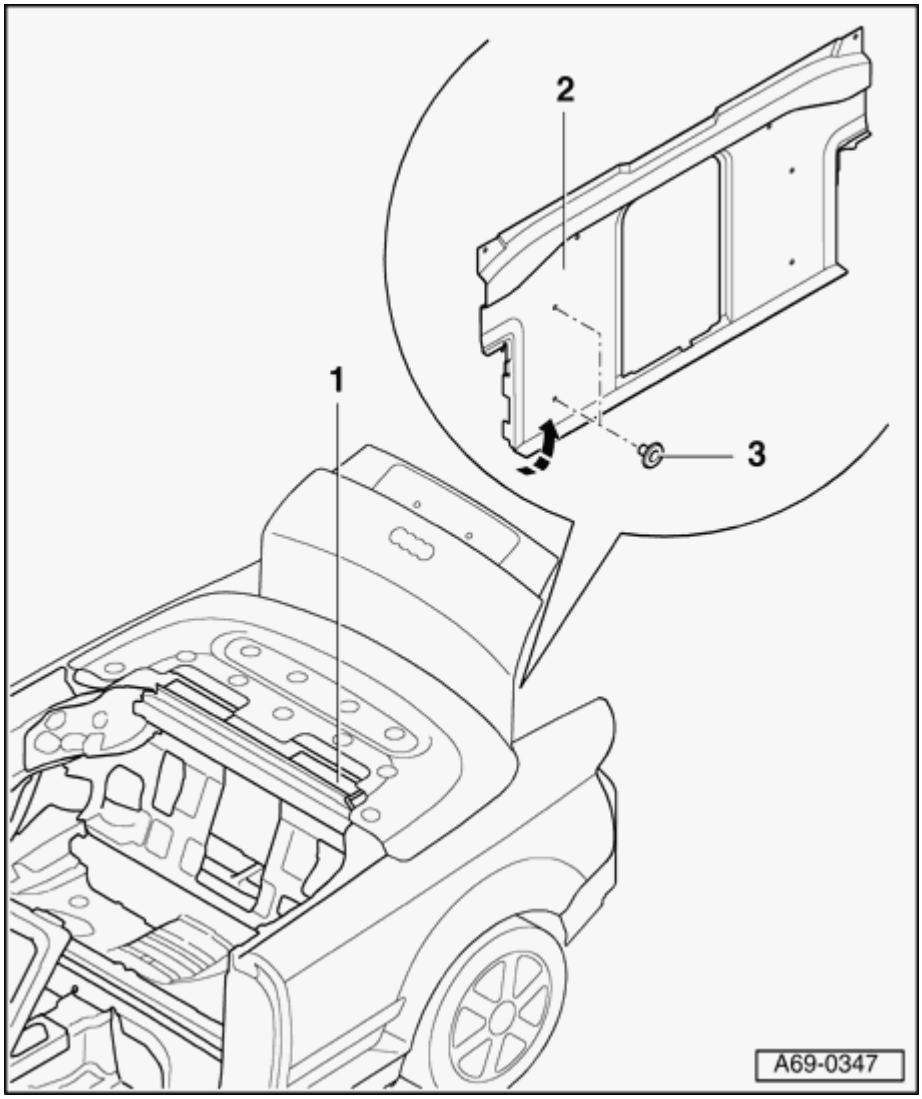


Fig. 93: Rollover Protection, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rollover protection

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

- Remove rear bench seat --> **Rear seat bench, assembly overview**.
- Remove rear seat backrest --> **Rear seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove trim for ski bag --> **Removing and installing trim for through-load bag**.
- Close convertible top and fold convertible top compartment upward.

- Unclip clips - **3** - (2x) on back panel trim - **2** -.
- Fold back panel trim - **2** - aside in direction of - **arrow** -.

2 - Luggage compartment back panel trim

3 - Clips (2x)

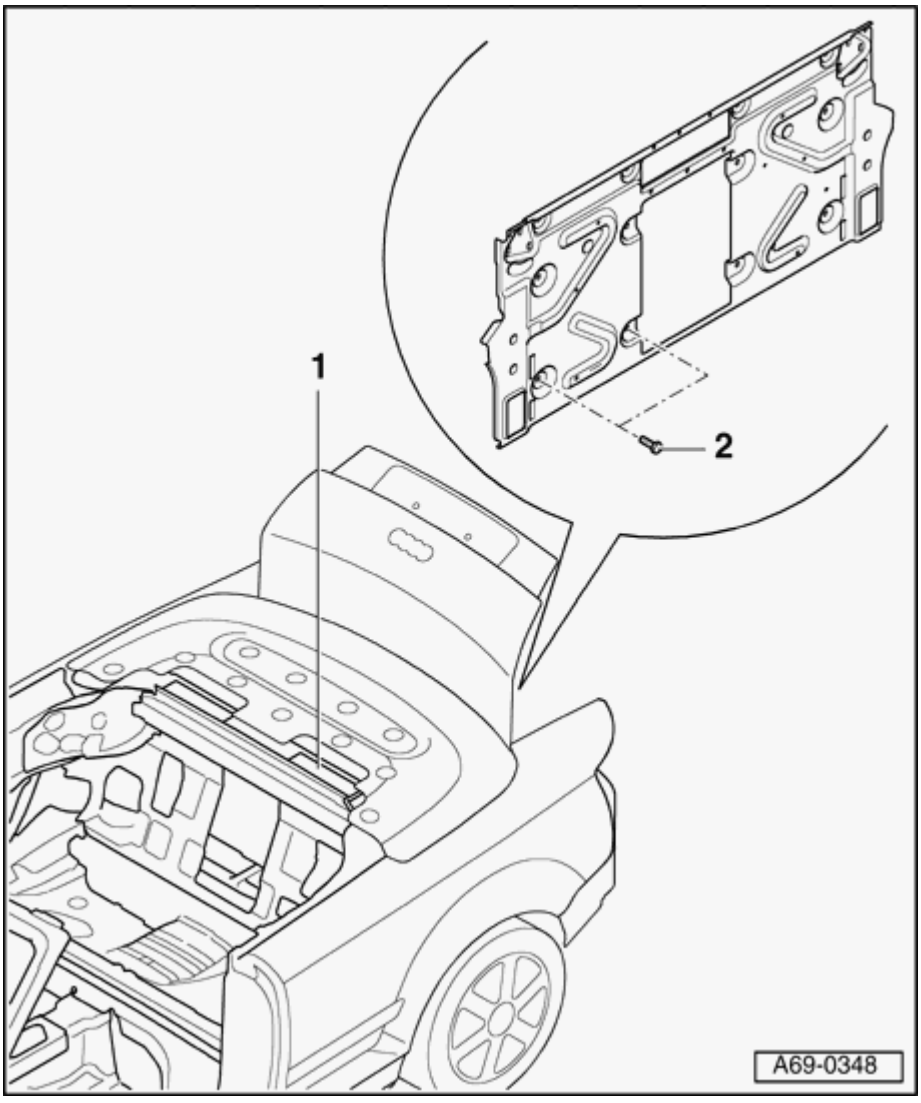


Fig. 94: Identifying Bolts & Rollover Bar
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Rollover bar

- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).
- Fold convertible top compartment downward.

2 - Bolts (2x)

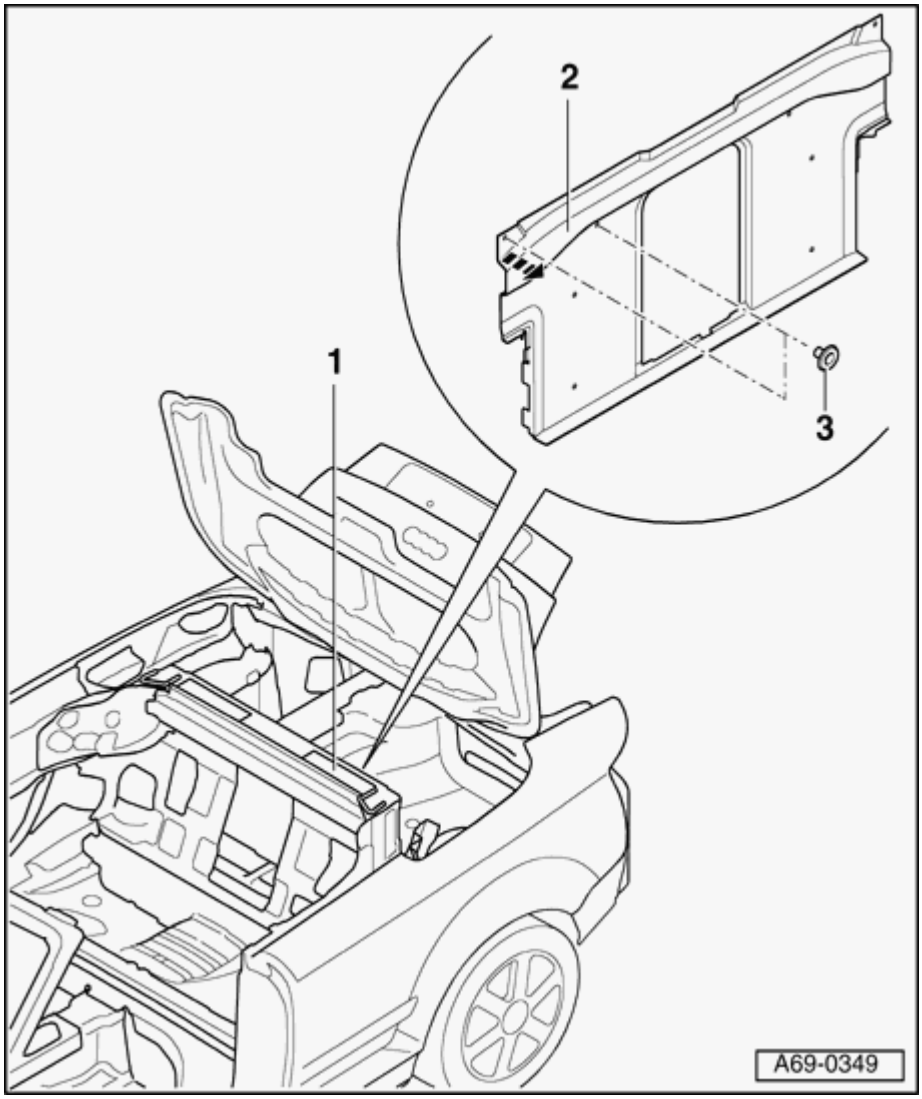


Fig. 95: Identifying Rollover Protection, Clips & Luggage Compartment Back Panel Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rollover protection

- Actuate convertible top far enough to allow access to convertible top compartment.
- Extend rollover protection - **1** - Refer to guided fault-finding, body, general body repairs, 01 systems with self-diagnosis capability, Airbag 8.4E, Functions-Airbag 8.4E J234-Airbag Control Module, output DTM.
- Unclip clips - **3** - (2x) on back panel trim - **2** -.

cardiagn.com

- Fold back panel trim - **2** - aside in direction of arrow.

2 - Luggage compartment back panel trim

3 - Clips (2x)

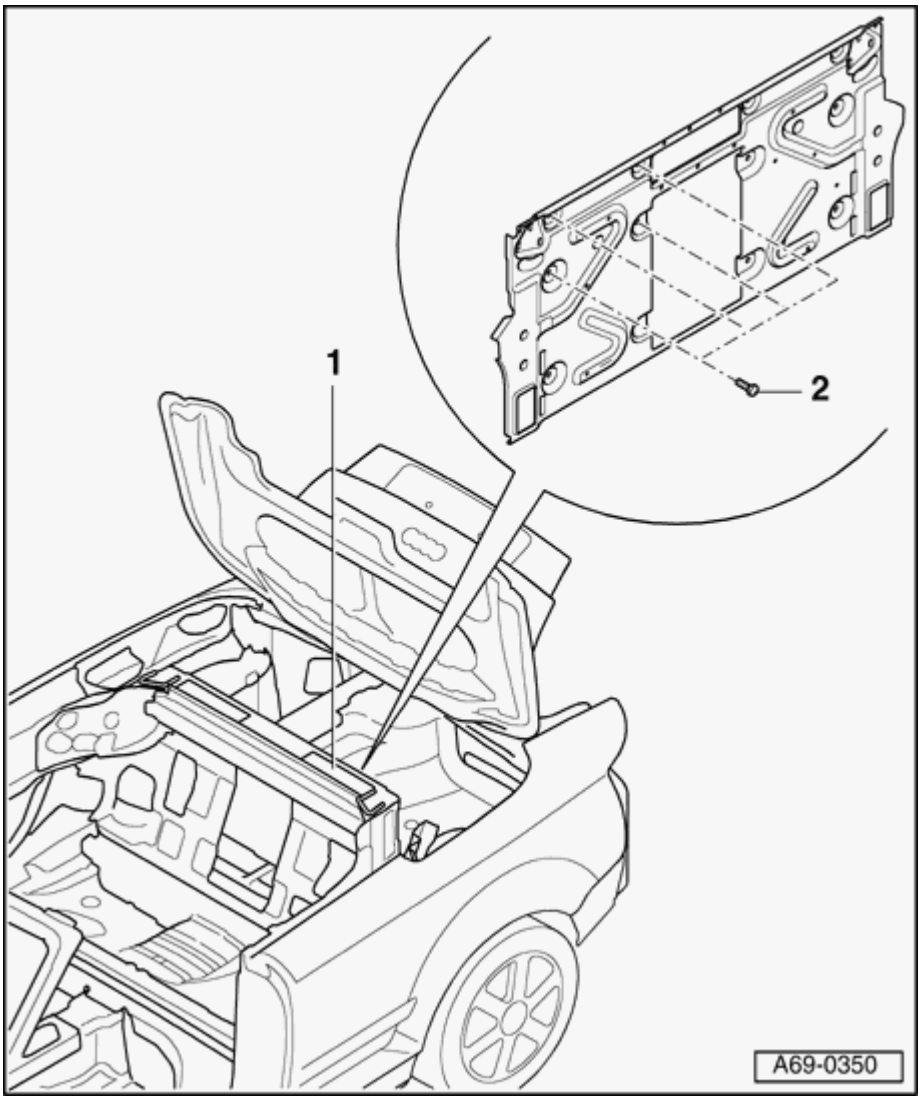


Fig. 96: Identifying Rollover Protection & Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rollover protection

- Check if and where shims are installed on rollover protection - **1** -.
- Mark the points where the shims were removed.
- Remove bolts - **2** - (4x).

2 - Bolts (4x)

cardiagn.com

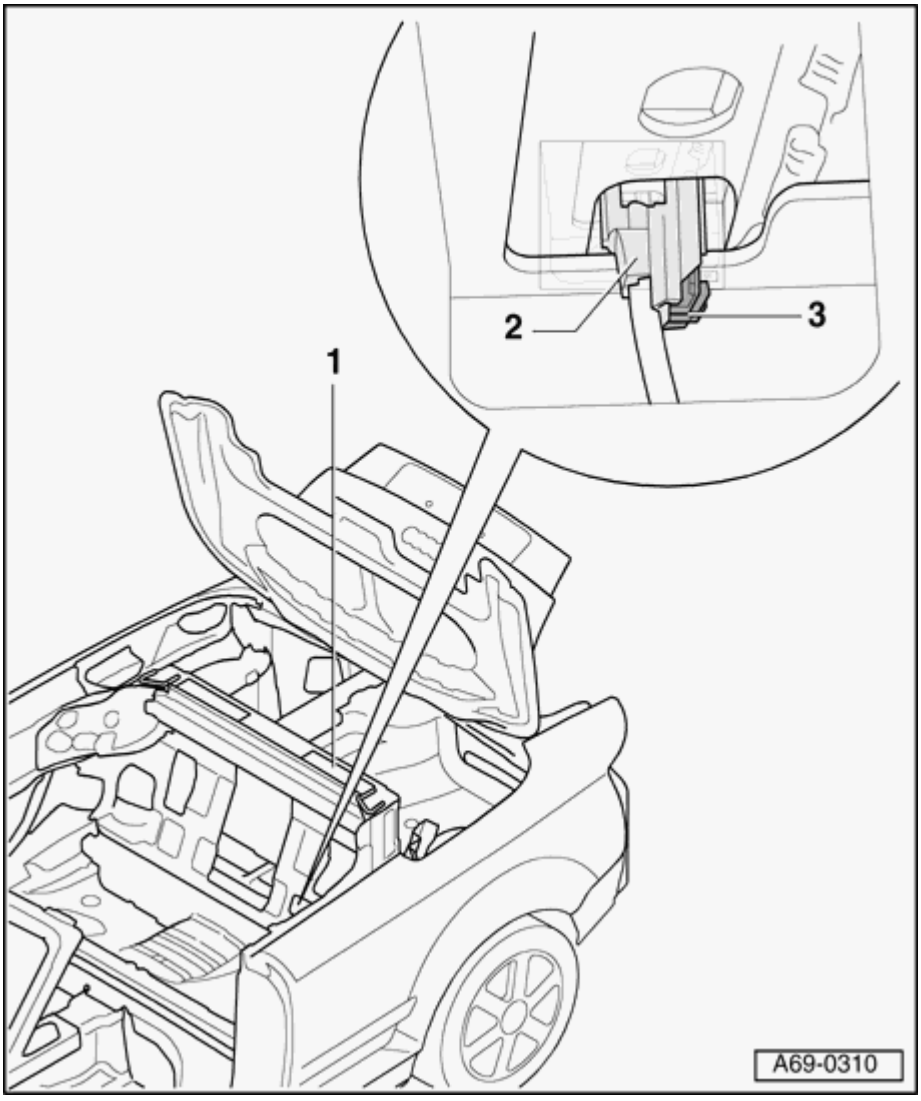


Fig. 97: Identifying Catch, Solenoid Valve & Rollover Protection
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rollover protection

- Press catch - **3** - and detach connector for solenoid valve - **2** -.
- Pull out rollover protection - **1** -.
- **Installing**

  - If installed, install shims in same places on rollover protection - **1** -.
  - Retract rollover protection - **1** - **Retracting rollover protection**.
  - Ensure that connector for solenoid valve - **2** - engages audibly.
  - Install rollover protection - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

  - Check function of rollover protection with control element test. Refer to guided fault-finding, body,

cardiagn.com

general body repairs, 01 systems with self-diagnosis capability, Airbag 8.4E, Functions-Airbag 8.4E J234-Airbag Control Module, output DTM.

2 - Connector for solenoid valve

3 - Release

Retracting rollover protection

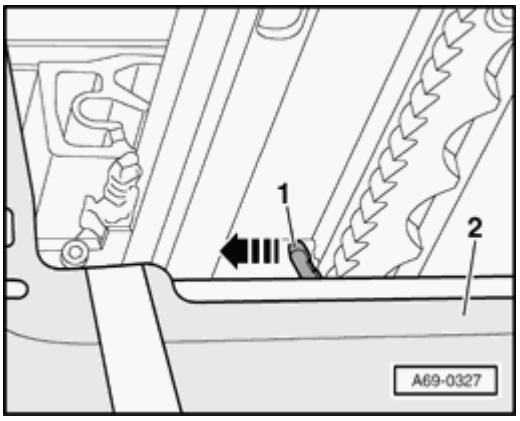


Fig. 98: Retracting Rollover Protection
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

CAUTION: Ensure that hands do not become trapped when retracting rollover protection.

- Press release lever - **1** - in direction of - **arrow** -.
- Retract rollover protection.

Rollover protection impact bar, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

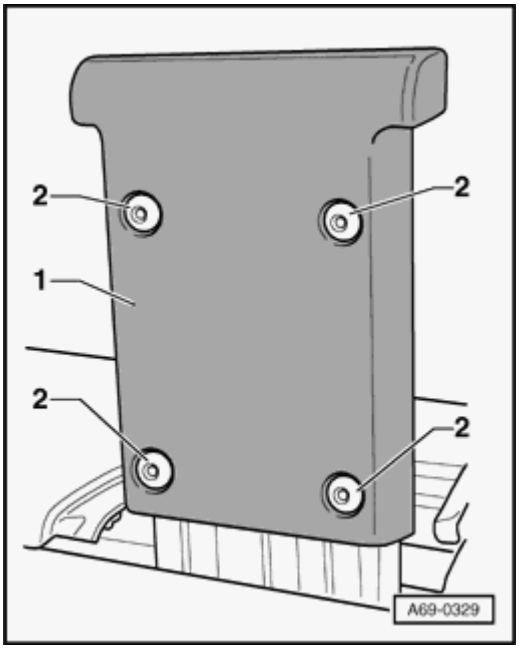


Fig. 99: Rollover Protection Impact Bar Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Extend rollover bar. Refer to guided fault-finding, body, general body repairs, 01 systems with self-diagnosis capability, Airbag 8.4E, Functions-Airbag 8.4E J234-Airbag Control Module, output DTM.
- Remove bolts - **2** - (4x). Tightening torque 5 Nm
- Remove impact bar - **1** - upward.
- When installing, push the back of the impact bar under the guide.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

cardiagn.com

69 - PASSENGER PROTECTION - AIRBAGS, SEAT BELTS

SEAT BELTS

Pyrotechnic belt tensioners, safety and handling instructions

CAUTION:

- **Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.**
- **Do not check with test light, voltmeter or ohmmeter under any circumstances.**
- **You can only check belt tensioners when installed and with vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems (such as Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B) intended for that purpose.**
- **Before handling belt tensioner units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must electrostatically discharge. For example, by briefly touching door striker.**
- **Voltage must be disconnected during all work on belt tensioners.**
- **Conventional ignition lock: Observe safety precautions with disconnecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

  .
- **Electronic ignition lock (e.g. A6 as of model year 2005; A8 as of model year 2003): To remove belt tensioner unit, battery must be disconnected with the ignition switched on, this deviates from the description "disconnecting and connecting battery" (-->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

).
- **Disconnect battery ground (GND) strap, cover negative battery post. No waiting time is required after disconnecting the battery.**
- **Follow measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **When connecting belt tensioner, all mechanical parts including those in three-point seat belt, must be secured correctly.**

cardiagn.com

- **Only those carrying this out should be in vehicle interior.**
- **Belt tensioner components may not be opened nor repaired; always use new parts.**

- **Belt tensioners that have fallen onto a hard surface or show signs of damage must not be installed in vehicle.**
- **Belt tensioners that are mechanically damaged (dents, cracks) must always be replaced.**
- **Belt tensioners must be installed immediately after removing from shipping package.**
- **Belt tensioner is to be returned to shipping package when work is interrupted.**

- **Open end of belt tensioner should never be pointed at anyone.**
- **Wash hands after touching belt tensioners that have deployed.**
- **Storage and transport must conform to national legislation.**
- **It is not acceptable to leave belt tensioner unattended.**

- **Belt tensioner should not be treated with grease, cleaning solutions or other materials.**
- **Belt tensioners must not be exposed to temperatures over 100° , even for a short period of time.**

Caring for pyrotechnic belt tensioners

- Undeployed pyrotechnic components (such as airbags, seat belts with belt tensioners, pyrotechnic battery components) must be disposed of in an orderly manner in their original packaging, according to national legislation. If questions arise, contact the distributor or importer.
- Pyrotechnic components deployed in an actual accident can be disposed of as industrial waste.

CAUTION: This does not apply to belt tensioners that function according to the Wankelstraffer principle. These are to be treated like undeployed pyrotechnic components (such as airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery components).

Reason: Workshop equipment cannot determine if Wankelstraffer belt tensioners have deployed all pyrotechnic materials.

Disposing of pyrotechnic belt tensioners

When storing or Disposing of Airbags and Pyrotechnic Seatbelts:

- Make sure that your dealership complies with federal, state and local regulations for explosive substances.

cardiagn.com

- Deployed airbags and pyrotechnic seatbelts can be disposed of as normal scrap.
- Undeployed airbags and pyrotechnic seatbelts are considered to be hazardous materials. When disposing of an undeployed airbag or pyrotechnic seatbelt that is either defective or expired, use the appropriate repair information and Airbag Deployment Device J-44210. Do NOT deploy airbags and pyrotechnic seatbelts in the vehicle
- All airbags and pyrotechnic seatbelts of a vehicle scheduled to be scrapped must be deployed using the Airbag Deployment Device J-44210.

- When using Airbag Deployment Device J-44210, wear appropriate eye and ear protection.
- If the airbag or pyrotechnic seatbelt cannot be safely deployed or removed from the vehicle, contact the Audi Dealer Technicians Helpline.
- Shipment of active airbag gas generators and pyrotechnic seatbelt retractors must be in accordance with the regulations published in the latest edition of the Code of Federal Regulations #49 (49 CFR). Shipment must be initiated and received by certified individuals. The penalties for noncompliance are severe. Civil penalties range the $250 to $27,500 per violation, per day. Criminal penalties, for willfully violating the regulations, range up to $250,000 for individuals and $500,000 for corporations.

CAUTION: This does not apply to belt tensioners operating under the Wankel rotary tensioner principle. These must not be treated like pyrotechnic units that have already ignited (e.g. airbags, seatbelts with belt tensioners, pyrotechnic battery-cutoff elements). The reason: Whether all ignition stages have ignited on belt tensioners with Wankel rotary tensioner principle cannot be checked using workshop tools.

Seat belts - anchorage points (overview)

cardiagn.com

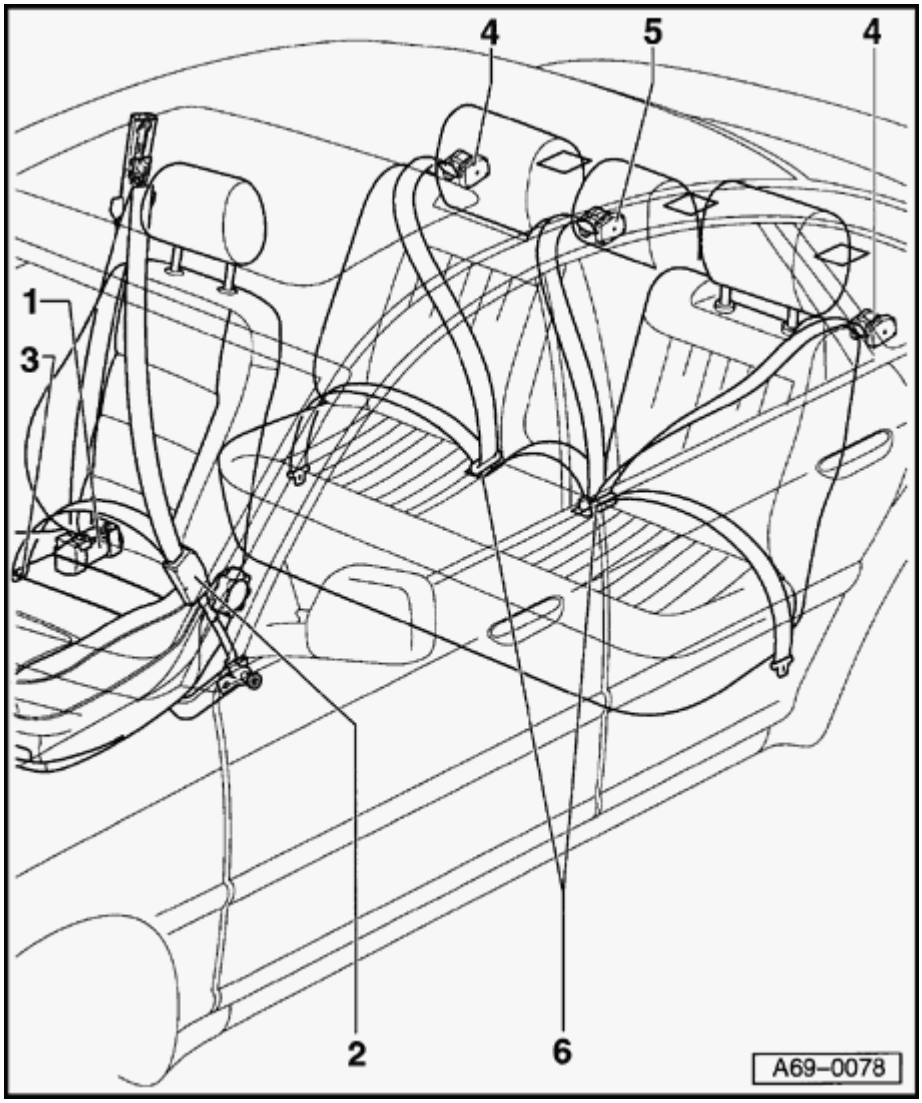


Fig. 67: Seat Belts - Anchorage Points (Overview)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Three-point seat belts with belt height adjuster

- Removing and installing --> **Three-point seat belt with belt height adjuster, removing and installing**

2 - Belt buckle anchorage point

- Belt buckle anchorage point
- Removing and installing --> **Belt buckle anchorage point**
- Seat Occupied Recognition passenger airbag deactivation belt latch (USA only), replacing
- Removing and installing --> **Passive Occupant Detection System (PODS) passenger airbag deactivation belt latch (USA only), replacing**

3 - Outside floor assembly anchorage point

cardiagn.com

- Removing and installing --> **Seat belt anchor, removing and installing**

4 - Left and right rear three-point seat belt

- Removing and installing --> **Rear three-point seat belt, removing and installing**

5 - Rear center three-point seat belt

Fixed rear seat backrest:

- Removing and installing --> **Third rear three-point seat belt (fixed rear seat backrest), removing and installing**

Folding rear seat backrest:

- Removing and installing --> **Third rear three-point seat belt (folding rear seat backrest), removing and installing**

6 - Center floor assembly anchorage point

- Removing and installing --> **Center floor assembly anchorage points**

Three-point seat belt with belt height adjuster, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

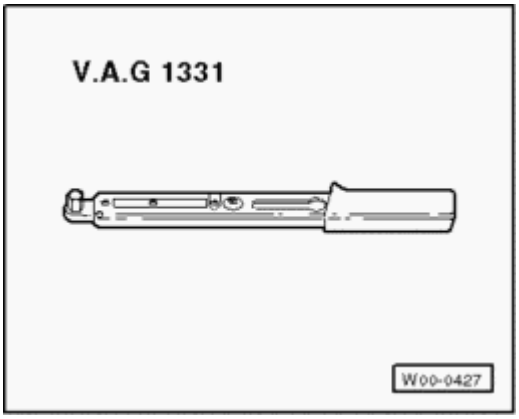


Fig. 68: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

cardiagn.com

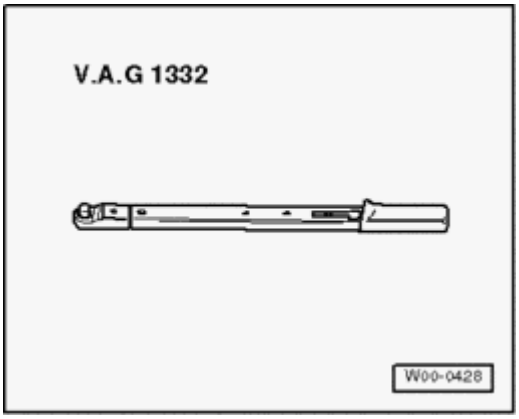
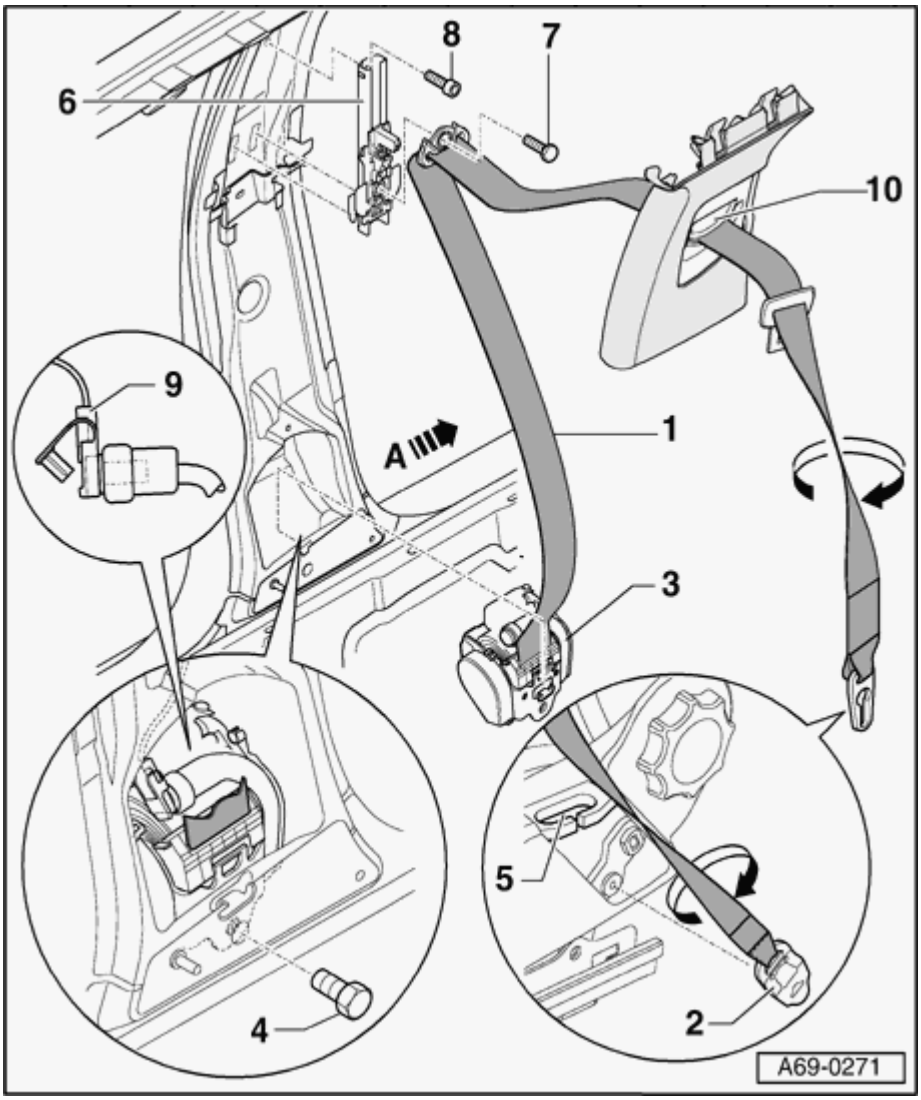


Fig. 69: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1332
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1332



cardiagn.com

Fig. 70: Three-Point Seat Belt With Belt Height Adjuster Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Belt

- Removal:

CAUTION: Observe measures when disconnecting battery. -->

- **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
- **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

- Disconnect battery -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

- Loosen upper A-pillar trim to B-pillar trim --> **Upper A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
- Loosen upper D-pillar trim to B-pillar trim --> **D-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove upper B-pillar trim --> **Upper B-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove lower B-pillar trim --> **Lower B-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
- Loosen seat belt eyes - **2** - on outer seat anchorage point.
- Loosen belt - **1** - from guide - **5** -.
- Note anti-twist mechanism, loosen bolt - **4** - and remove belt tensioner - **3** -.
- Remove bolt - **7** - on top of belt height adjuster - **6** - and loosen belt - **1** - from height adjuster.
- If complete remove of the belt height adjuster - **6** - is desired, loosen bolt - **8** - on height adjuster.
- Open yellow retainer on yellow-blue connector - **9** - with a screwdriver and disconnect connector.

- **Installing:**

- Install belt webbing rotated by 180° - **arrow** - -as shown in **Fig. 70**-.
- Arrow - **A** - faces in direction of travel.
- Ensure connector - **9** - is engaged correctly.
- Remaining installation is in reversed sequence.

NOTE:

- **After installing passenger side three-point seatbelt, check belt function for child seat --> Checking child seat anchorage function for supplemental child seats (not for drivers seat belt).**
- **The three-point seat belt must not be impeded by cables, wires, insulation,**

cardiagn.com

etc.

- **Follow measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

2 - Eyes on outer seat belt end anchorage point

3 - Belt tensioner

4 - Screw

- Tightening torque 55 Nm

5 - Guide

6 - Belt height adjustment

- Removal:

  - Remove upper B-pillar trim - **5** - --> **Upper B-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove bolt - **7** - and bolt - **8** -.
  - Remove belt height adjuster - **6** - upward.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

NOTE:

- **Button - 10 - must not be pressed during installation.**
- **Function test after installing trim:**
- **Height adjuster must audibly engage into all five possible positions (even top position).**
- **Button must return by itself to upper position after being actuated.**

7 - Screw

- Tightening torque 55 Nm
- Belt relay must swivel by itself in carrier direction after tightening screw.

8 - Screw

- Tightening torque 23 Nm

cardiagn.com

9 - Connector

10 - Height adjustment button

Belt buckle anchorage point

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

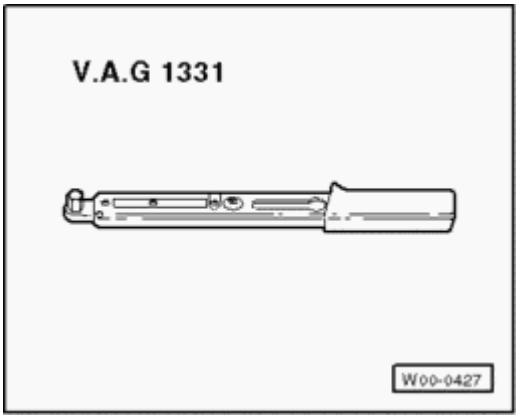


Fig. 71: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

CAUTION: Observe:

- **Airbag safety precautions --> Airbag safety precautions**
- **Safety precautions for working with pyrotechnic belt tensioners --> Pyrotechnic belt tensioners, safety and handling instructions**
- **Seat belt inspection --> Seat belts, inspecting.**

- Remove seat:

- Standard seat: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**
- Electric seat: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**
- RS sport seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**

NOTE:

- **There are 2 versions of the seat belt latch. Both versions are described in the following. Determine which version the vehicle has and performed the corresponding activities.**
- **Version 1 Version 1**
- **Version 2 Version 2**

cardiagn.com

Version 1

Removing

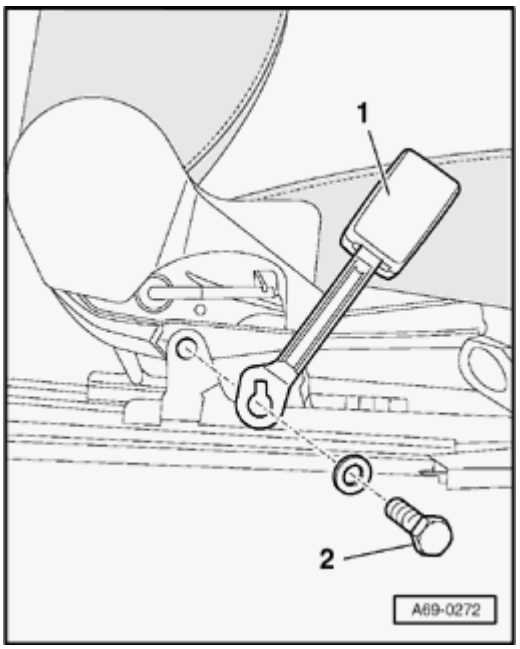


Fig. 72: Removing Bolt For Belt Latch
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **2** - for belt latch - **1** -.

Tightening torque: 24 Nm

Vehicles with seatbelt fasten sensor and switch in belt latch (drivers side only, for certain countries):

- Remove cable from red connector housing.

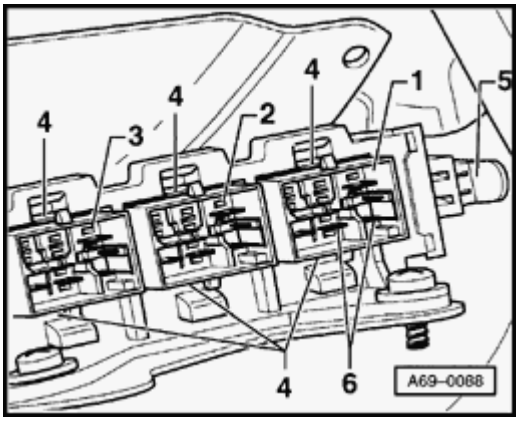


Fig. 73: Using Screwdriver To Pry Out Retaining Hooks On Red Connector Housing, Pressing Red Connector Housing Back & Cable Pin (2X) For Belt Fasten Sensor

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, pry out retaining hooks - **4** - on red connector housing - **1** -.
- Press red connector housing - **1** - back.
- Cable pin - **6** - (2x) for belt fasten sensor.

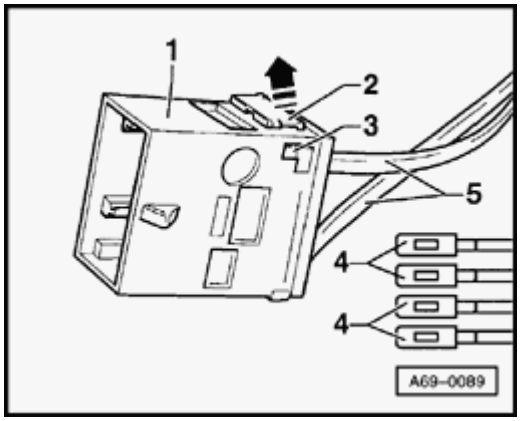


Fig. 74: Identifying Red Connector Housing, Cable Retainer, Cut-Out & Cable
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Red connector housing - **1** - for belt fasten sensor and main voltage supply.
- Release cable retainer - **2** - in direction of arrow by prying out at cut-out - **3** -.

The illustration shows the released cable retainer - **2** -.

- Remove cable - **4** - for belt fasten sensor from sockets 5 and 6 and on the drivers side (in certain countries), the cable - **4** - for the switch in belt latch socket 1 and 2 as well.
- Open cable ties.

Installing

CAUTION: Observe:

- **Airbag safety precautions --> Airbag safety precautions**
- **Safety precautions for working with pyrotechnic belt tensioners --> Pyrotechnic belt tensioners, safety and handling instructions**
- **Seat belt inspection --> Seat belts, inspecting.**

Installation is reverse of removal.

Version 2

CAUTION: Observe:

cardiagn.com

- **Airbag safety precautions --> Airbag safety precautions**
- **Safety precautions for working with pyrotechnic belt tensioners --> Pyrotechnic belt tensioners, safety and handling instructions**
- **Seat belt inspection --> Seat belts, inspecting.**

Removing

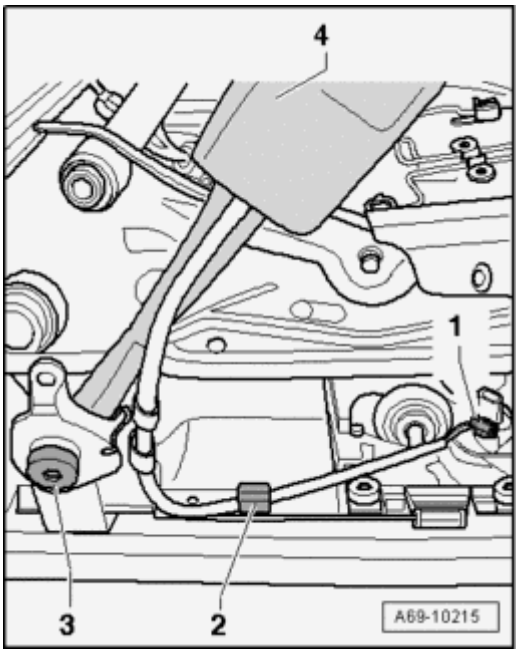


Fig. 75: Identifying Connector, Clip, Bolt & Belt Latch
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- If present, disconnect connector - **1** - under seat equipment versions.
- If equipped, remove cable from clip - **2** -.
- Remove bolt - **3** -.
- Remove belt latch - **4** -.

Installing

CAUTION: Observe:

- **Airbag safety precautions --> Airbag safety precautions**
- **Safety precautions for working with pyrotechnic belt tensioners --> Pyrotechnic belt tensioners, safety and handling instructions**
- **Seat belt inspection --> Seat belts, inspecting.**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Belt latch to seat	34

Passive Occupant Detection System (PODS) passenger airbag deactivation belt latch (USA only), replacing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

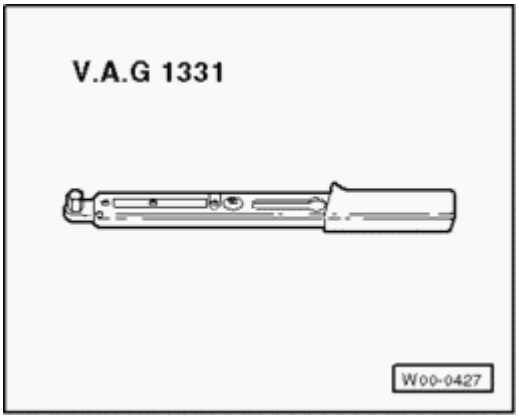


Fig. 76: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

CAUTION: Observe:

- **Airbag safety precautions --> Airbag safety precautions**
- **Safety precautions for working with pyrotechnic belt tensioners --> Pyrotechnic belt tensioners, safety and handling instructions**
- **Seat belt inspection --> Seat belts, inspecting.**

- Remove seat:

- Standard seat: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**
- Electric seat: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**

Removing

NOTE:

- **The seat occupied recognition passenger airbag deactivation belt latch is only installed on passenger side.**

cardiagn.com

CAUTION: The seat occupied recognition passenger airbag deactivation belt latch must be replaced each time passenger belt tensioner deploys.

Removing

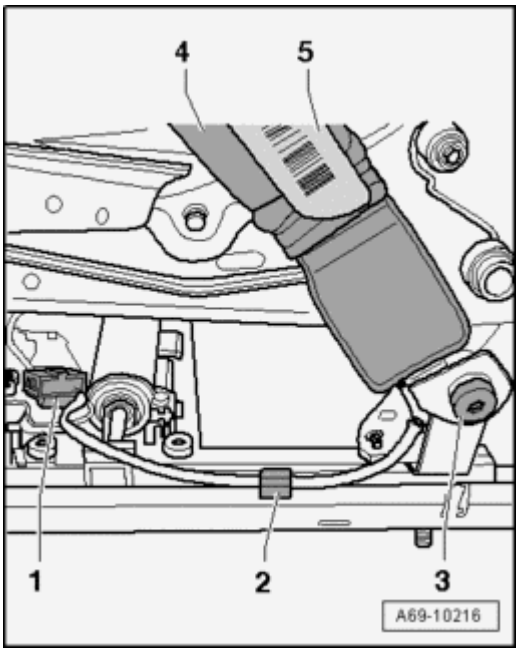


Fig. 77: Identifying Connector, Clip, Bolt & Belt Latch
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector - **1** - under seat.
- If present, remove cable from clip - **2** - equipment versions.
- Remove bolt - **3** -.
- Remove belt latch - **4** -.

Installing

CAUTION: The seat occupied recognition passenger airbag deactivation belt latch must be replaced each time passenger belt tensioner deploys.

Observe:

- **Airbag safety precautions --> Airbag safety precautions**
- **Safety precautions for working with pyrotechnic belt tensioners --> Pyrotechnic belt tensioners, safety and handling instructions**
- **Seat belt inspection --> Seat belts, inspecting.**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

NOTE:

- **If seat occupied recognition passenger airbag deactivation belt latch is replaced, seat occupied recognition registration sheet must be filled out with serial number and bar code sticker from new belt latch and sent to importer.**

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Belt latch to seat	34

Seat belt anchor, removing and installing

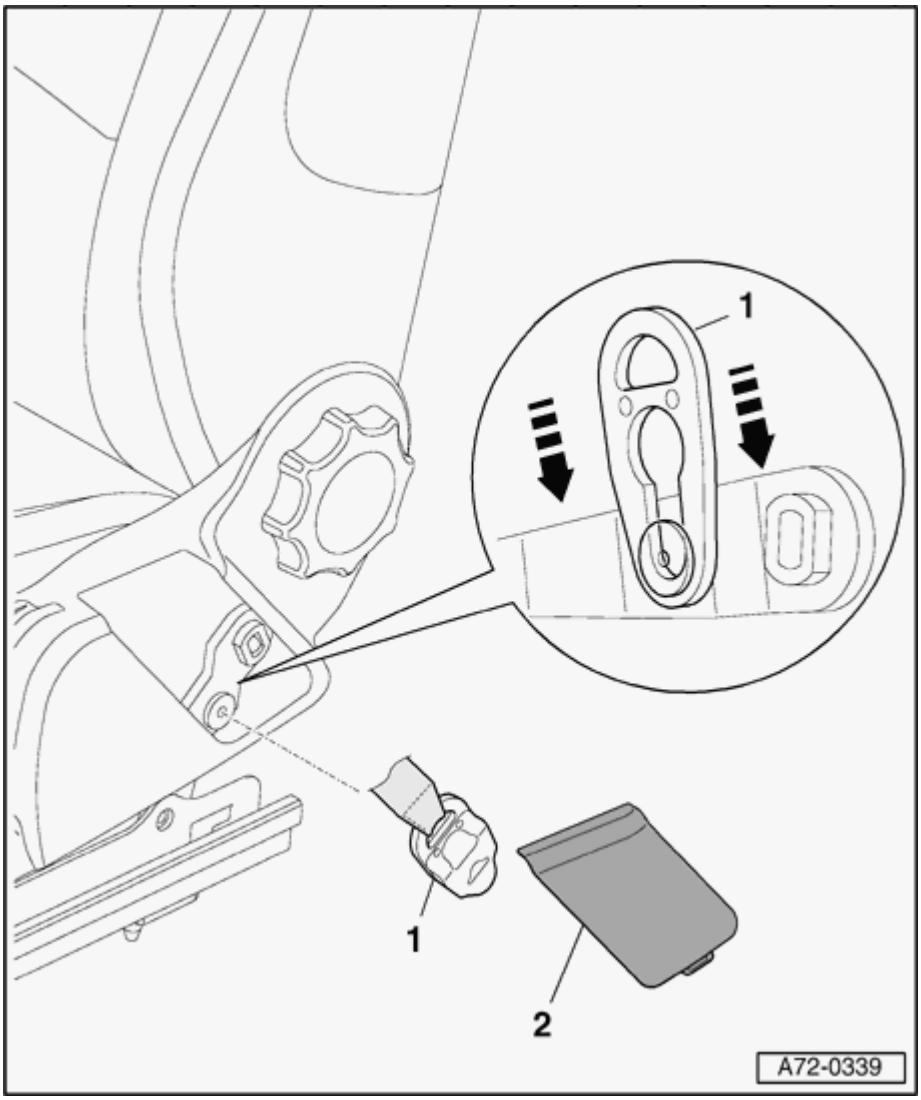


Fig. 78: Seat Belt Anchor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Seat belt anchor

- Removal:

  - On height-adjustable seat: Move seat up.
  - Pull assembly cover - **2** - up and remove.
  - Pull seat belt anchor - **1** - down in direction of arrow and remove.

2 - Assembly cover

Rear three-point seat belt, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

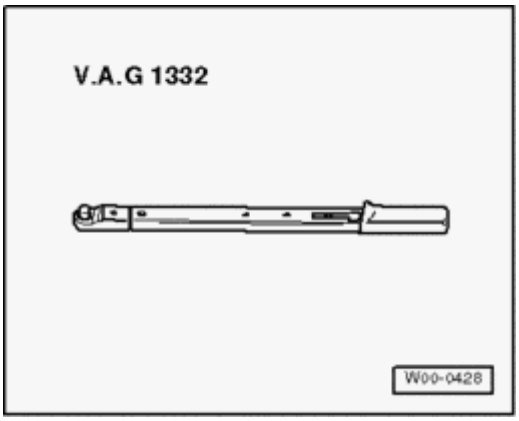


Fig. 79: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1332
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1332

cardiagn.com

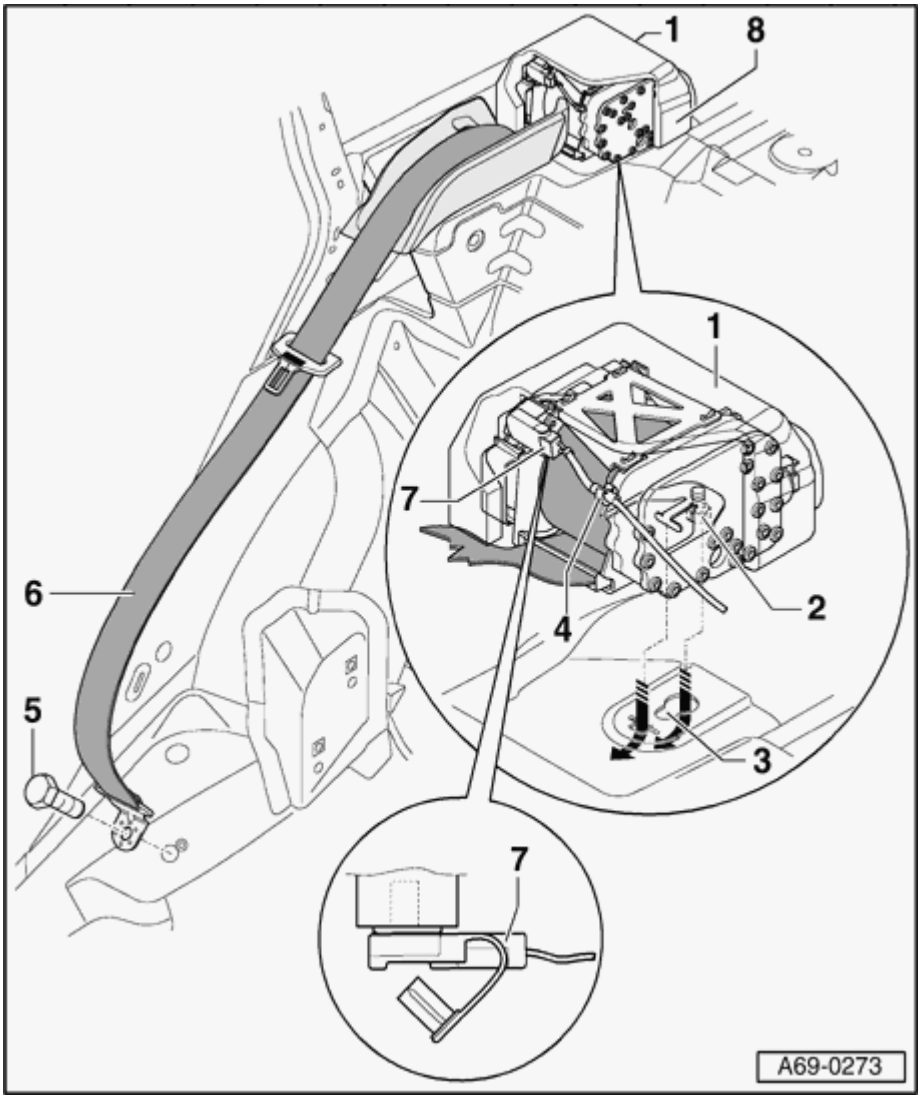


Fig. 80: Rear Three-Point Seat Belt Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Belt module/belt tensioner

- Removal - Sedan:

  - Remove upper C-pillar trim --> **C-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove rear shelf --> **Rear shelf, removing and installing**.
  - Remove insulation part under rear shelf.
  - Remove luggage compartment side trim --> **Luggage compartment side trim, removing and installing**.

- Removal - Avant:

  - Remove luggage compartment side trim --> **Side luggage compartment trim**.

cardiagn.com

- All:

  - Remove bolt - **2** - on belt module/belt tensioner - **1** - from luggage compartment from below.
  - Loosen bolt - **5** - on outer seat anchorage point (eyes on end of belt).
  - To disconnect harness connector - **7** - , open retainer using a screwdriver (USA).
  - Loosen cable with clip.

- **Installing:**

  - When installing belt module - **1** - , ensure bolt - **2** - is in small diameter hole in retainer - **3** - both during and after tightening.
  - Ensure noise protection cap - **8** - on belt module - **1** - is seated correctly.
  - Ensure the belt tensioner wire - **4** - is clipped in and not in belt area.
  - Ensure connector - **7** - (USA) is engaged correctly.

  - Perform further installation in sequence opposite of removal.

2 - Screw

- Tightening torque 55 Nm

3 - Belt module/belt tensioner locking holes

4 - Belt tensioner cable with clip

5 - Screw

- Tightening torque 55 Nm

6 - Seat belt

7 - Belt tensioner connector

8 - Noise protection cap

Right and left rear belt guide piece, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

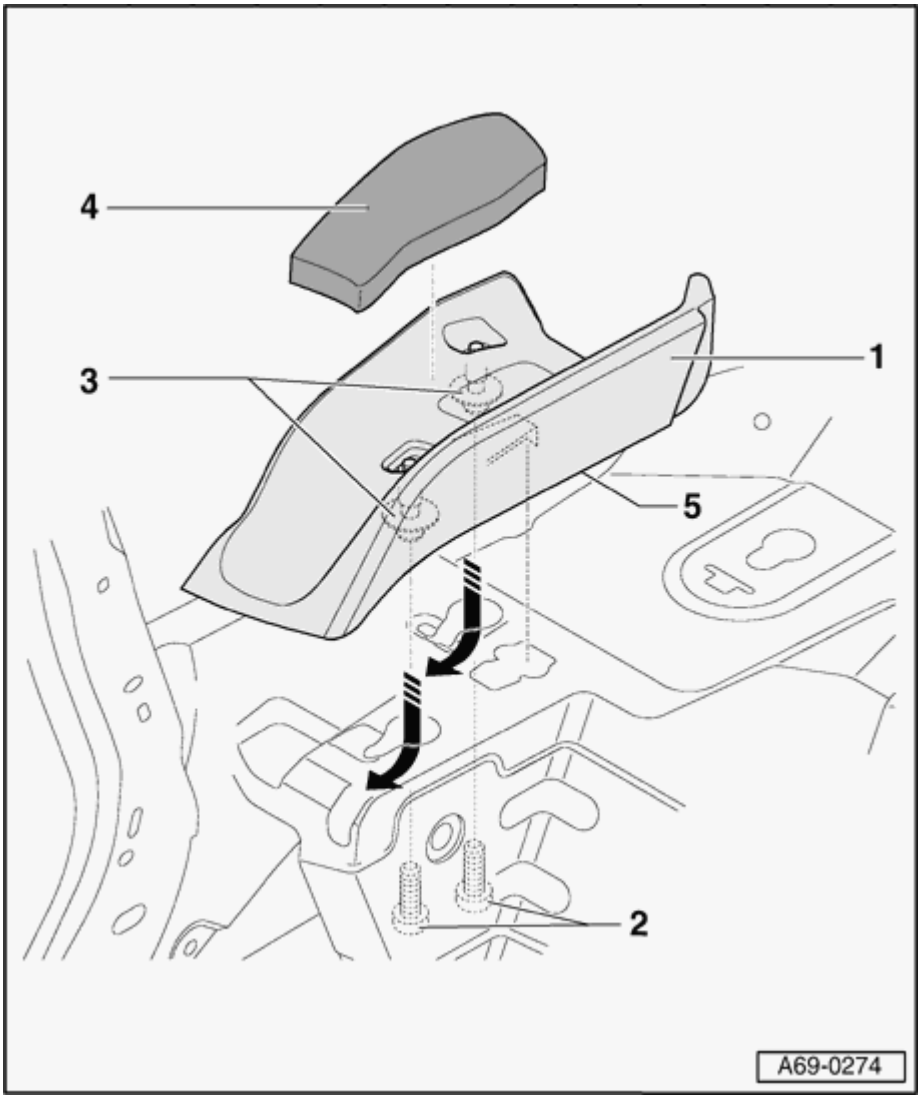


Fig. 81: Right And Left Rear Belt Guide Piece Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear belt guide piece

- Removal:

  - Remove side upholstery --> **Rear seat side padding, removing and installing**.
  - Remove C-pillar trim --> **C-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove rear 3-point seat belt --> **Third rear three-point seat belt (folding rear seat backrest), removing and installing**.
  - If present, remove foam piece - **4** - from lower part of guide.

  - Remove two Phillips-head bolts - **2** - from below.
  - Remove belt guide piece - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing:**

  - When installing belt guide piece - **1** - , ensure both washers - **3** - lie below belt guide piece.
  - Press belt guide piece into retainer so retaining tabs - **5** - engage audibly.
  - Re-install Phillips-head bolts - **2** -.
  - Lay foam piece - **4** - back into belt guide piece - **1** -.
  - Re-install all additional removed parts.

2 - Phillips-head screws (Qty. 2)

3 - Washers (Qty. 2)

4 - Foam piece

- Depending on version

5 - Retaining tab

Third rear three-point seat belt (fixed rear seat backrest), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

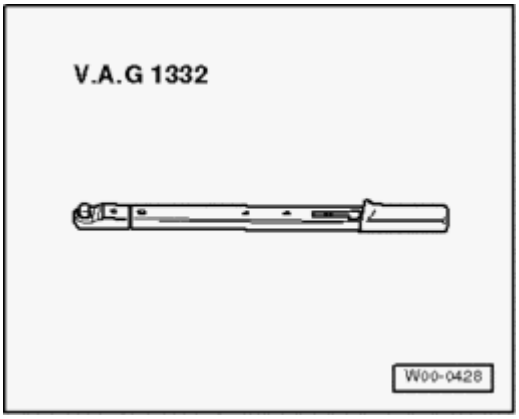


Fig. 82: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1332
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1332

cardiagn.com

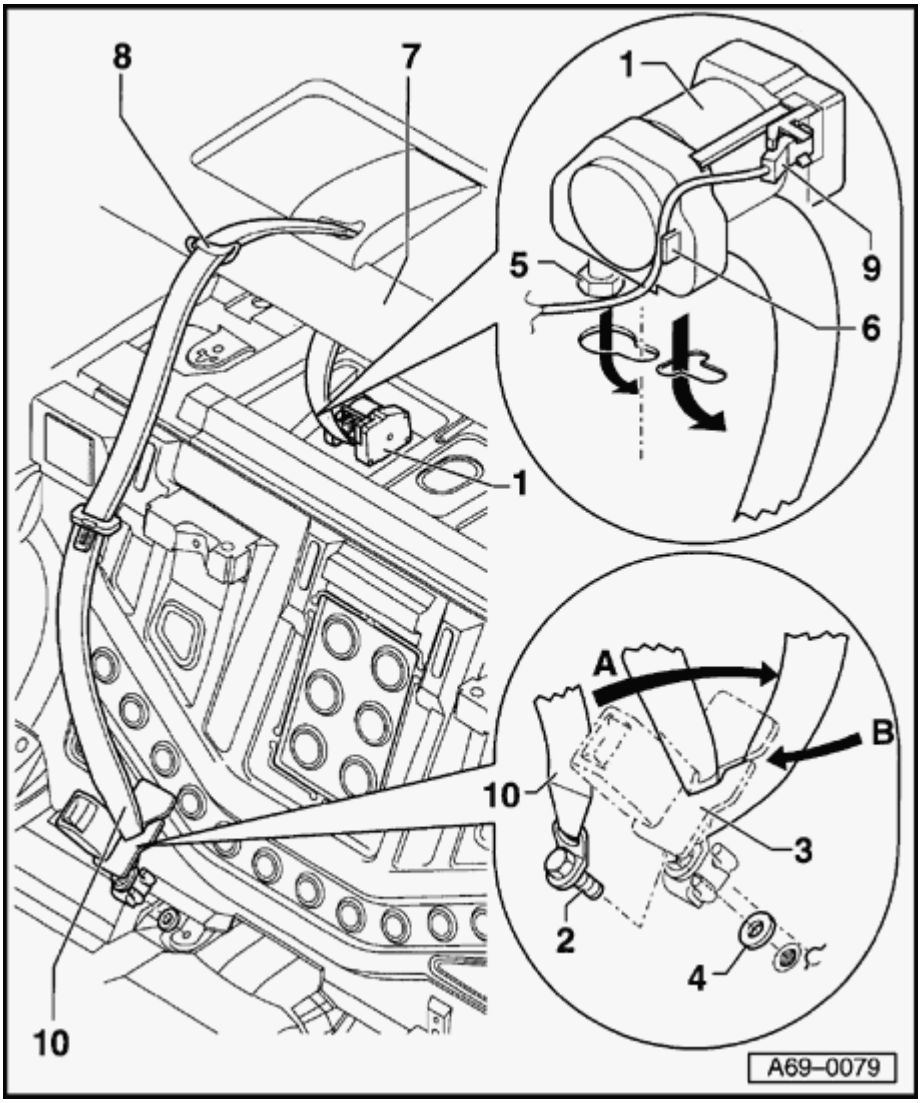


Fig. 83: Third Rear Three-Point Seat Belt (Fixed Rear Seat Backrest) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Belt tensioner

2 - Screw

- Tightening torque 55 Nm
- With sealing ring
- The sealing ring - **4** - must always be replaced.

3 - Latch trim

4 - Seal

- Must be replaced

cardiagn.com

5 - Screw

- Tightening torque 55 Nm

6 - Retaining tab

7 - Rear shelf

8 - Belt guide

9 - Belt tensioner connector

10 - Belt webbing

- Removal:

- Remove rear seat bench: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles up to 10.04** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.
- Remove rear seat backrest --> **Fixed backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove bolts - **2** -.
- Unclip belt guide cover - **8** -.

- With fixed rear seat backrest, remove rear shelf --> **Rear shelf, removing and installing**.
- To disconnect harness connector - **9** - , open retainer using a screwdriver (USA).
- Remove bolt - **5** - (Qty. 1).
- Remove belt tensioner - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

- With belt tensioner - **1** - removed, install bolt - **5** - 1-2 threads.
- Insert belt tensioner - **1** - with bolt - **5** - in mounts and press belt tensioner - **1** - all the way forward.
- Tighten bolts - **5** -.
- Tighten bolts - **2** -.

- Thread belt webbing - **10** - into latch trim - **3** - without twisting.
- Guide belt webbing - **10** - in direction of arrow - **A** - around latch trim - **3** - and thread in direction of arrow - **B** -.
- Ensure connector - **9** - (USA) is engaged correctly.
- Clip stretched belt tensioner ignition wire into retaining tab - **6** -.

- Clip belt guide - **8** - into rear shelf - **7** -.
- On vehicles with belt tensioners, belt wear detection must be checked --> **Checking belt holding sensor for rear three-point seatbelt with belt tensioner**.

cardiagn.com

Third rear three-point seat belt (folding rear seat backrest), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

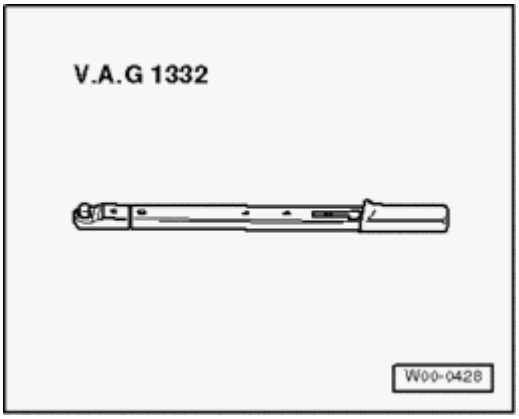


Fig. 84: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1332
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1332

cardiagn.com

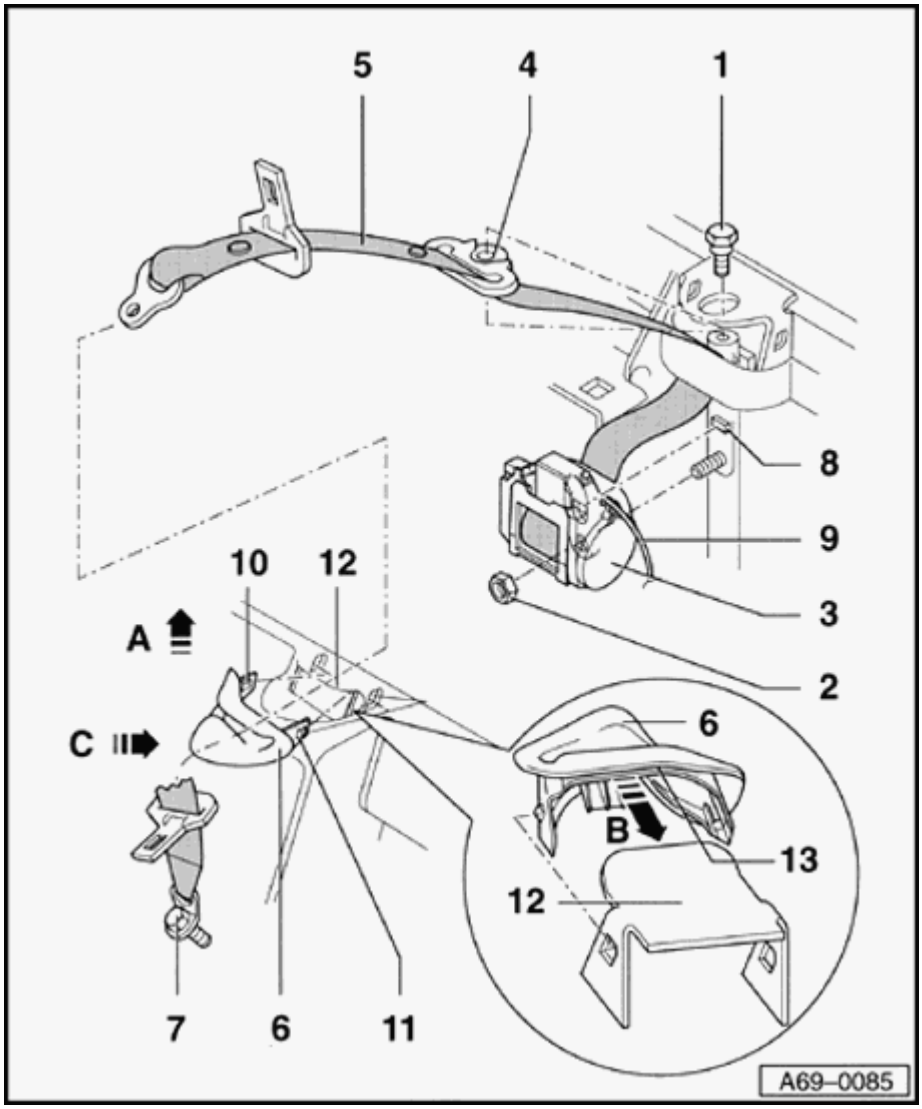


Fig. 85: Third Rear Three-Point Seat Belt (Folding Rear Seat Backrest) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Screw

- Tightening torque 55 Nm

2 - Nut

- Tightening torque 55 Nm

3 - Belt tensioner

4 - Belt relay

5 - Belt webbing

cardiagn.com

6 - Belt guide cover

7 - Screw

- Tightening torque 55 Nm

8 - Retaining tab

9 - Belt tensioner connector

10 - Retaining tab

11 - Retaining tab

12 - Bracket to rear seat backrest

13 - Cut-out

- Removal:

  - Remove rear seat bench: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles up to 10.04** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.
  - Remove bolts - **7** -.
  - Remove 2/3 rear seat backrest --> **2/3 right backrest, removing and installing**.
  - Press cover with belt guide cover - **6** - to side and pry retaining tab - **11** - out with a screwdriver.
  - Remove cover - **6** - in direction of arrow - **A** -.
  - Remove 2/3 rear seat backrest upholstery until you can remove anchor with upholstery.
  - Remove bolt - **1** - (Qty. 1).
  - To disconnect harness connector - **9** - , open retainer using a screwdriver (USA).
  - Remove nut - **2** - (Qty. 1).
  - Remove third rear three-point seat belt - **3** -.

- **Installing:**

  - To install belt guide cover - **6** - , retaining tab - **10** - must first be positioned and inserted, then retaining tab - **11** - must be rotated inward while panel - **12** - is guided into cut-out - **13** - on belt guide cover - **6** - - **arrow B** - (magnified area).
  - Ensure connector - **9** - (USA) is engaged correctly.
  - Clip belt guide cover - **6** - in by tapping lightly with hand in direction of arrow - **C** -.
  - On vehicles with belt tensioners, belt wear detection must be checked --> **Checking belt holding sensor for rear three-point seatbelt with belt tensioner**.

cardiagn.com

NOTE:

- **The belt relay - 4 - and belt webbing - 5 - must not touch or graze foam pieces or anchor pieces.**
- **Belt relay - 4 - must follow each belt webbing movement.**
- **Belt webbing - 5 - must move freely in all directions.**

Center floor assembly anchorage points

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

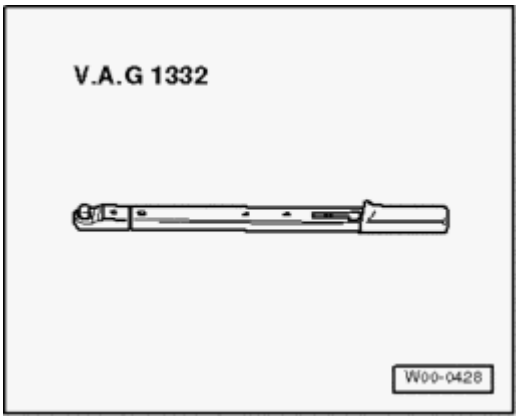


Fig. 86: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1332
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1332

cardiagn.com

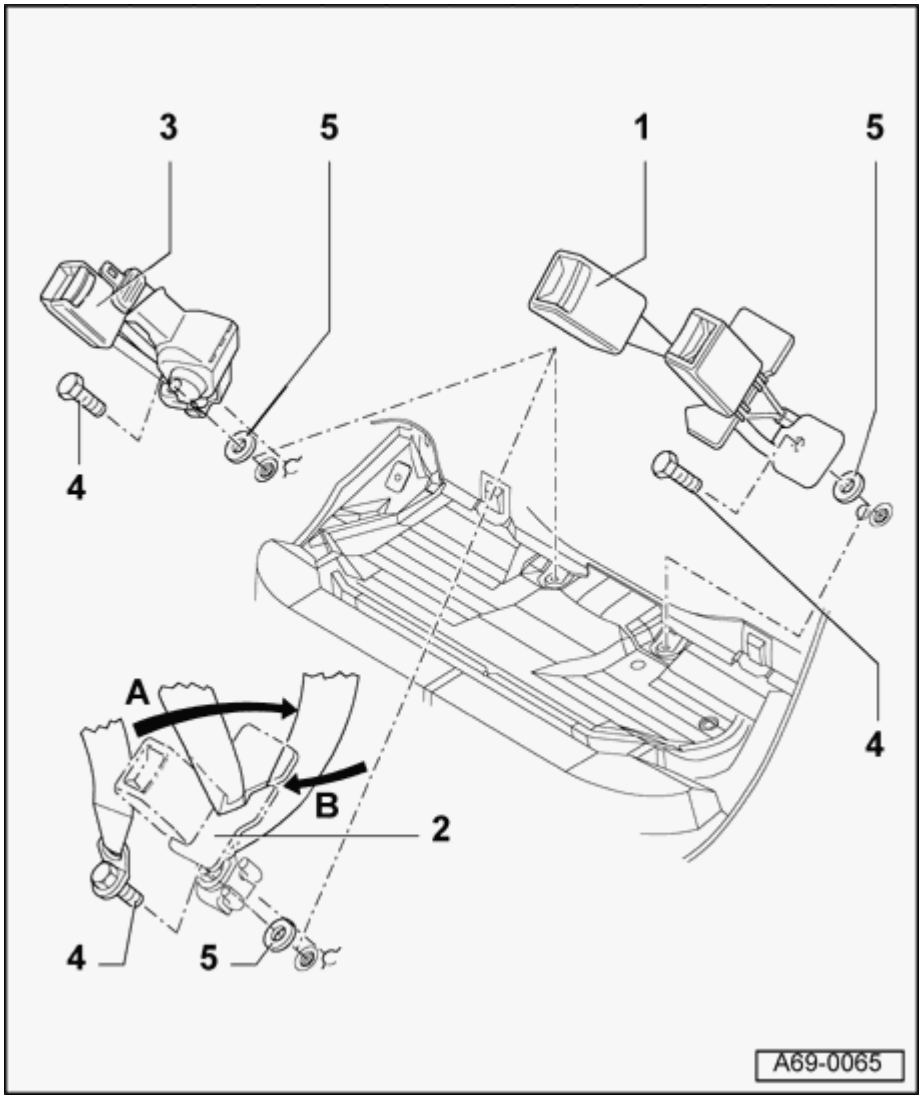


Fig. 87: Center Floor Assembly Anchorage Points
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Belt latch

- Remove rear seat bench: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles up to 10.04** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.
- Remove bolt - **4** - (Qty. 1).

- The sealing ring - **5** - must always be replaced.
- When installing, ensure belt latch and/or lap belt engages in rotating knobs.
- The narrow side of the belt latch and/or lap belt must face in direction of travel.

2 - Lap belt

3 - Lap belt with retractor

cardiagn.com

4 - Screw

- Tightening torque 55 Nm
- Only use original bolt

5 - Seal

- Must be replaced

Rear seat child seat anchorage (Sedan)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

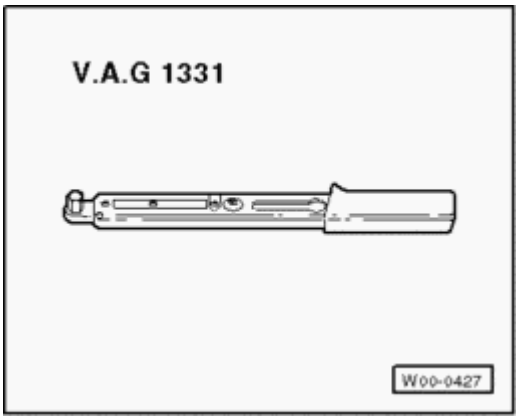


Fig. 88: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

NOTE:

- **Mounts for 3 child seat anchorages can be installed.**

cardiagn.com

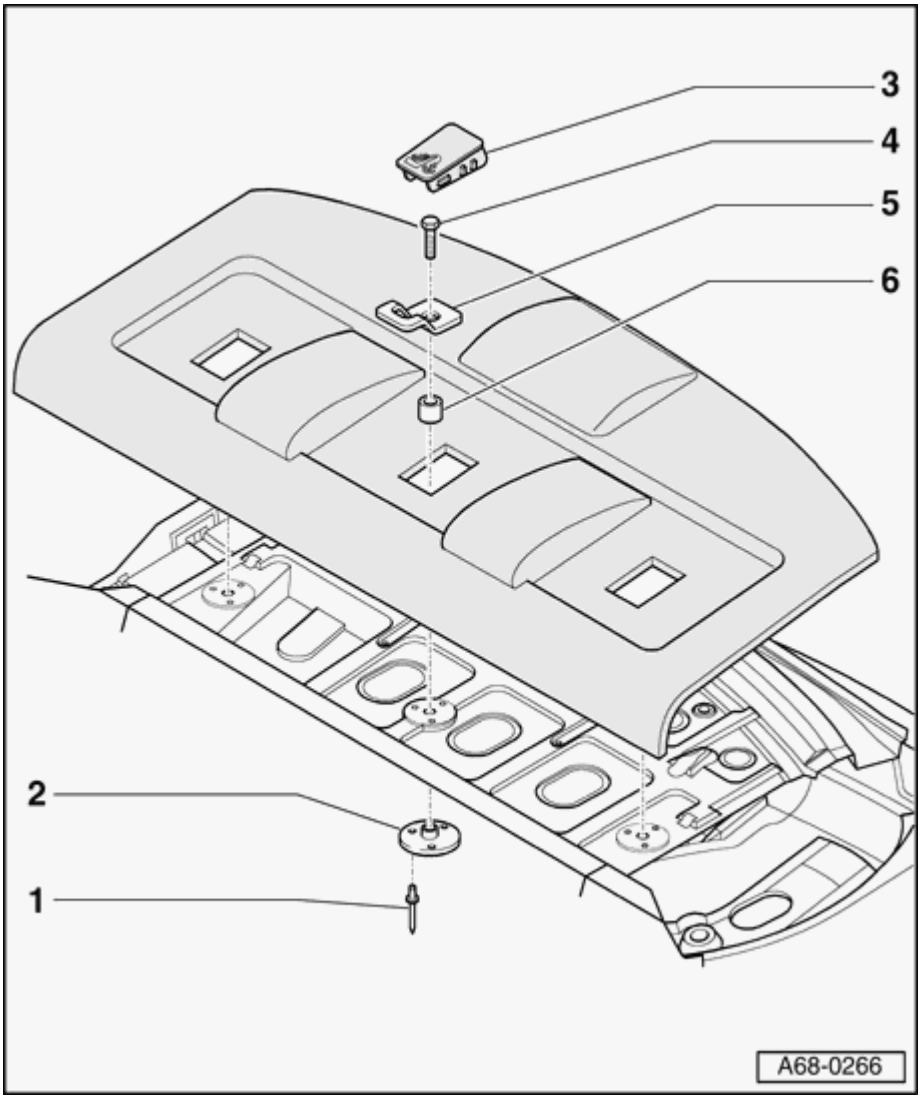


Fig. 89: Rear Seat Child Seat Anchorage (Sedan) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove rear shelf --> **Rear shelf, removing and installing**.

1 - Pop rivet

- Qty. 3 per plate
- For securing threaded washer - **2** - to plate

NOTE:

- **The threaded plate must always be installed from below (luggage compartment side)**

2 - Threaded plate

cardiagn.com

- Threaded insert points upward

3 - Cover cap

- To install, position rear and press front down (symbol faces toward front).

4 - Screw

- Tightening torque 23 Nm

5 - Anchorage

6 - Spacer sleeve

Child seat anchorage bracket (Avant), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

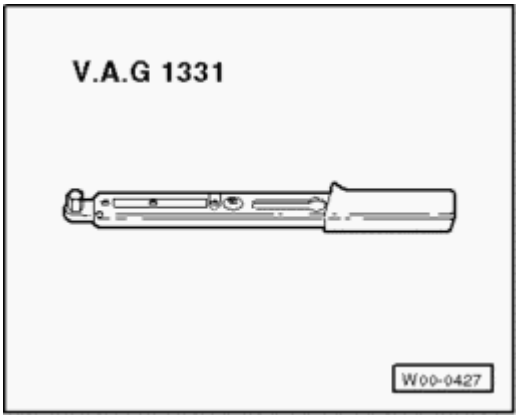


Fig. 90: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

cardiagn.com

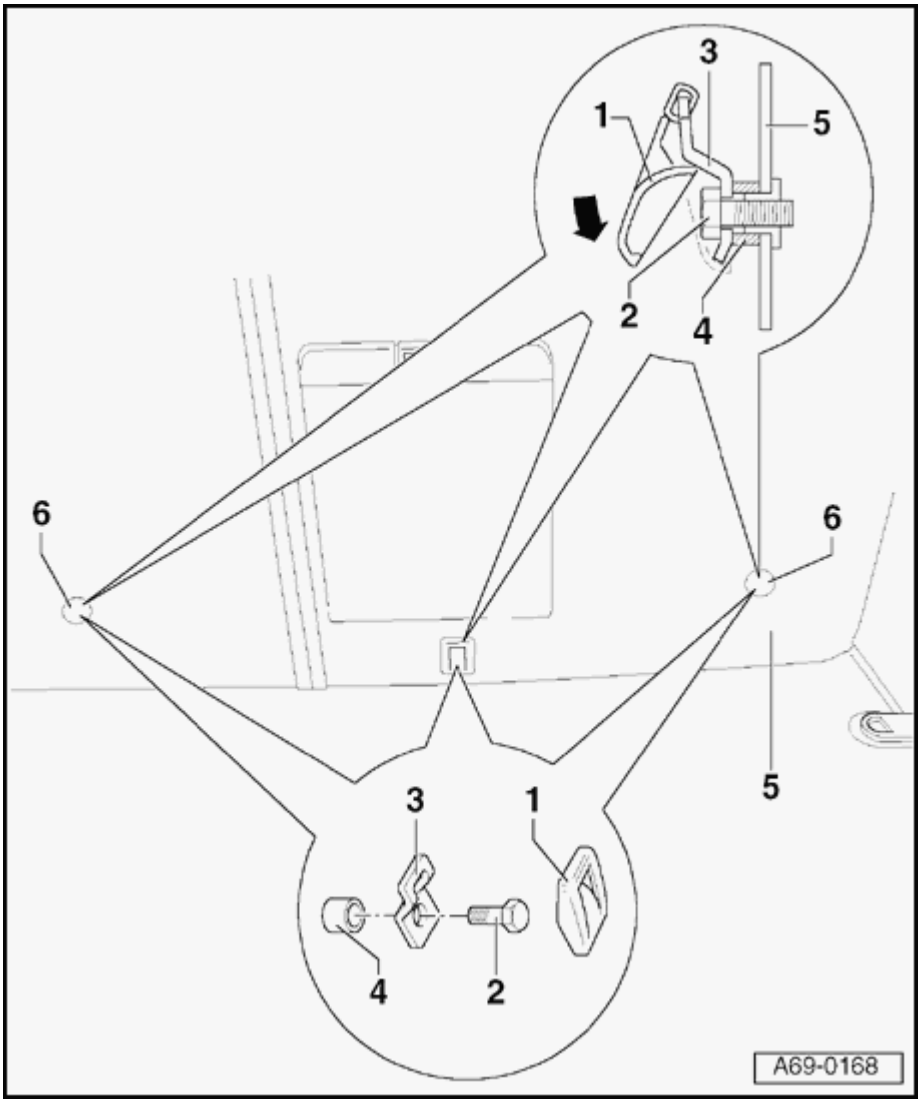


Fig. 91: Child Seat Anchorage Bracket (Avant) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover cap

- To install, position top and press down in **- direction of arrow -**.

2 - Screw

- Tightening torque 23 Nm

3 - Anchorage

4 - Spacer sleeve

5 - Rear seat backrest

cardiagn.com

6 - Plugs

- Remove if necessary and install -items 1 through 4-.

LATCH LOWER ANCHOR AND TETHERS FOR CHILDREN BRACKET, REMOVING AND INSTALLING

Front LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

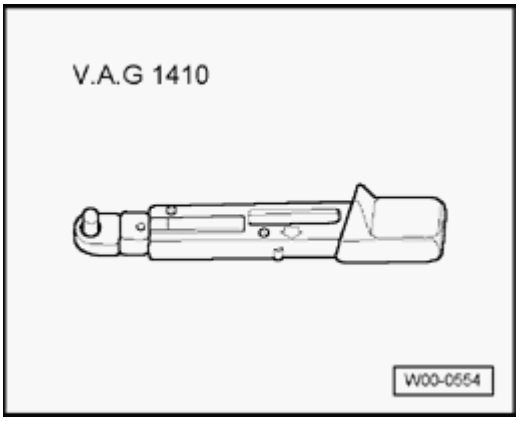


Fig. 92: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

- Remove seat:

- Standard seat: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**
- Electric seat: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**
- Recaro seat through 10.04 --> **Seat, removing and installing**
- Recaro seat from 11.04 --> **Seat, removing and installing**

cardiagn.com

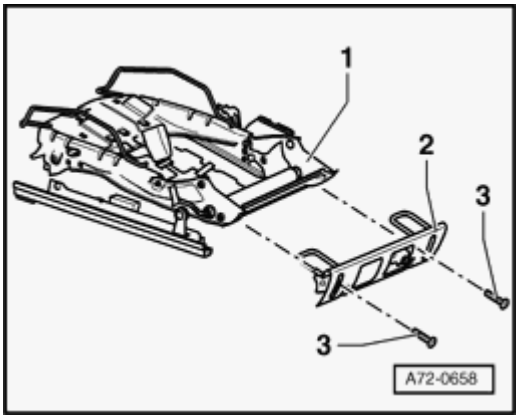


Fig. 93: Front Latch "Lower Anchor And Tethers For Children" Bracket Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove upholstery from passenger seat, on standard seat --> **Seating area cover and upholstery, removing and installing (standard seat)** ; on electric seat ; on Recaro seat
- Remove bolts - **3** - (2x). Tightening torque: 7 Nm.
- Remove LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket - **2** -.

1 - Front seat frame

Rear LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

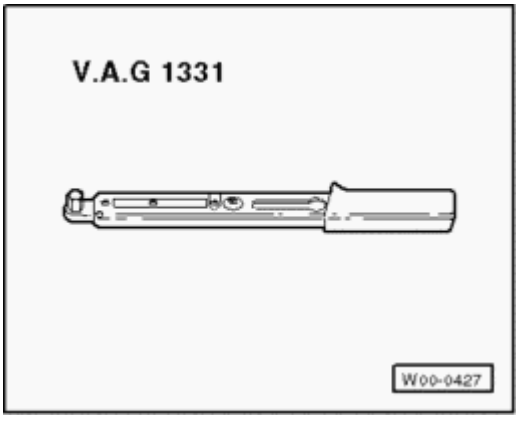


Fig. 94: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

cardiagn.com

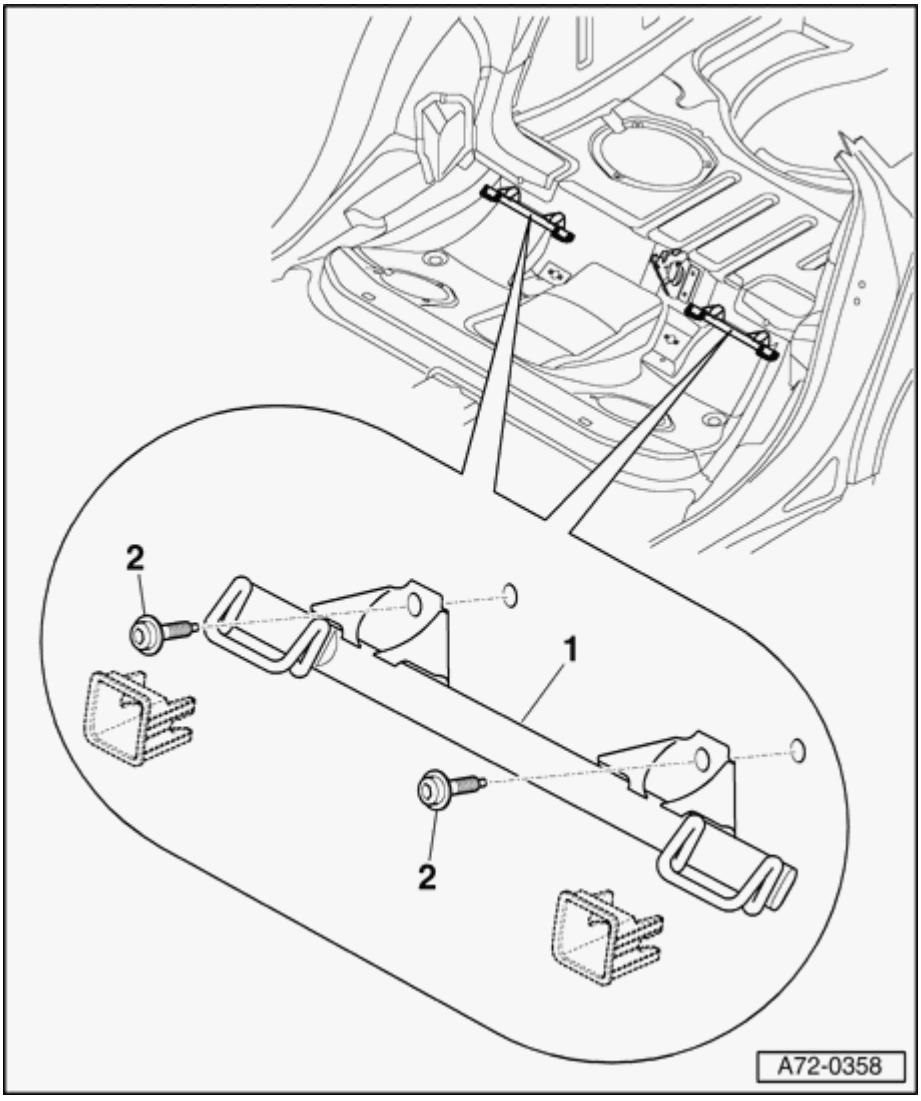


Fig. 95: Rear Latch "Lower Anchor And Tethers For Children" Bracket Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket

- Removal:

  - Remove rear seat bench: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles up to 10.04** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.
  - Remove bolts - **2** - (Qty. 2).

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

  - When installing fixed rear seat backrest, slide securing tabs behind the LATCH "Lower Anchor and

cardiagn.com

Tethers for Children" bracket - **1** -.

- On some vehicles, when installing LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket later, the securing tabs must be pressed flat in a vise to about 3 mm.
- When installing, ensure there is enough clearance to lap belt with retractor, rotate lap belt with retractor if necessary.

2 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 30 Nm

SEAT BELTS, INSPECTING

Seat belts, inspecting

CAUTION: After every accident the seat belt system must be inspected systematically! If damage is determined when inspecting the check points, customer must be informed regarding necessity of changing belts.

Check points:

- Check belt webbing
- Check retractor (locking function)
- Visual inspection of belt buckle
- Belt buckle function test

- Check belt guide rings and locking tongue
- Check securing components and anchorage points

NOTE:

- **If customer refuses to have a damaged seat belt replaced, appropriate note should be made in service book.**

Seat belts

Check belt webbing

- Pull belt completely out of retractor or lap belt adjustment tongue.
- Inspect belt webbing for contamination and, if necessary, wash with mild soap solution --> also refer to Operating Manual.

- If one of the types of damage (1 and 2) shown in the following is detected on a vehicle which has been in an accident - seatbelt must be replaced completely with belt latch.
- If damage as illustrated under points 1, 2 or 3 is determined on vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to replace damaged belt only.

cardiagn.com

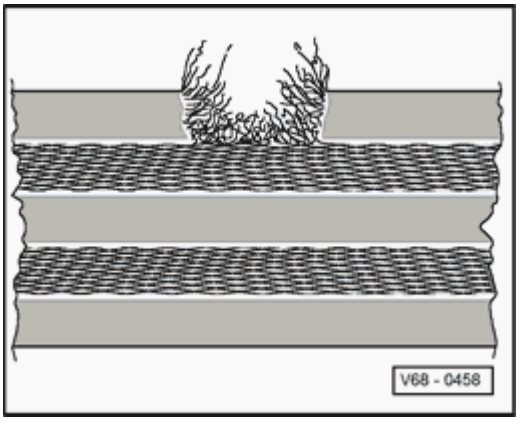


Fig. 96: Checking Belt Webbing - Belt Webbing Cut, Torn Or Chafed
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- 1 - Belt webbing cut, torn or chafed.

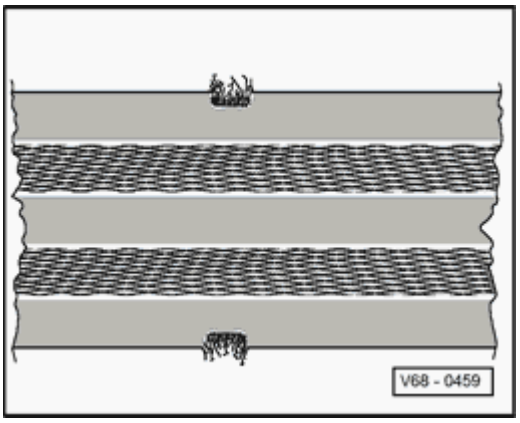


Fig. 97: Checking Belt Webbing - Webbing Loops On Belt Edge Torn
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- 2 - Webbing loops on belt edge torn.

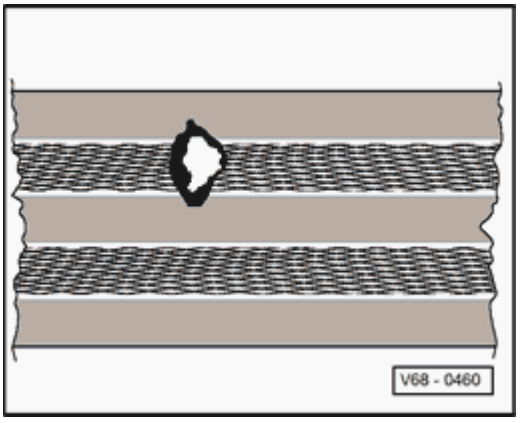


Fig. 98: Checking Belt Webbing - Burned Spots From Cigarettes Or Something Else
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- 3 - Burn marks from cigarettes or similar.

Check retractor (locking function)

The belt retractor has two locking functions.

- The first locking function is initiated by belt being jerked out of the retractor (belt extraction acceleration).

Checking

- Pull belt webbing out of retractor with a firm jerk.

- No locking function - replace compete seat belt with belt latch.
- If difficulties are experienced when pulling out or retracting belt, first check whether position of retractor has been altered.
- The second locking function is initiated by change in vehicle velocity (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Checking

- Fasten seat belt.
- Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then perform a full braking maneuver with foot brake.

- If the locking mechanism does not lock the seat belt during the braking maneuver, the complete seat belt with belt latch must be replaced.

CAUTION: For safety reasons, road test should be carried out on traffic-free stretch to ensure that other motorists/pedestrians etc. are not endangered.

Visually check belt latch

- Inspect belt buckle for cracks and chipping.

- If damage is discovered, replace complete seat belt with belt latch.

Check belt latch function

Check belt latch:

- Push locking tongue into belt buckle until it engages audibly. Check whether locking mechanism is properly engaged by giving belt webbing a firm jerk.

- If belt tongue fails even only once to engage properly in belt buckle during at least 5 tests, complete seat belt with belt buckle must be replaced.

cardiagn.com

Check release mechanism:

- Release seat belt by pressing button on belt latch with finger pressure.
- When belt is slack, locking tongue must spring out of belt buckle on its own.

- Perform test at least 5 times. If belt tongue fails even only once to spring out of buckle, complete seat belt with belt buckle must be replaced.

CAUTION: Under no circumstances may grease be used to eliminate noise or stiffness at belt buckle buttons.

Check belt guides and locking tongue

The plastic-covered guides show fine parallel scoring after straining belt system (belt was fastened during accident). (Wear which has been brought about by frequent belt use can be recognized by smooth signs of wear which are free of scoring).

- Inspect for deformation, chipping and cracks in plastic.

- If scoring and/or damage is discovered, replace complete seat belt with belt latch.

Check securing components and anchorage points

- Latch bracket deformed (stretched)
- Height adjuster not functional
- Anchorage points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) distorted or thread damaged
- If damage is discovered on these components, replace complete seat belt with belt latch.

- Replace anchorage points.

NOTE:

- **In damage is discovered that is not accident-related, e.g. wear, replace the particular part which is damaged.**

Checking child seat anchorage function for supplemental child seats (not for drivers seat belt)

The entire belt system, including the B-pillar trim, must be installed for the function test.

Switching hold function on:

- Pull belt webbing out completely up to stop.

Function:

- Belt must retract with a chattering sound.
- If retracting process is stopped, belt cannot be pulled out anymore.

cardiagn.com

Switching off:

- Belt retraction to about 100 mm remaining
- Hold function must switch off with a remainder of 100 mm, at the latest. Belt functions normally again.

Checking belt holding sensor for rear three-point seatbelt with belt tensioner

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

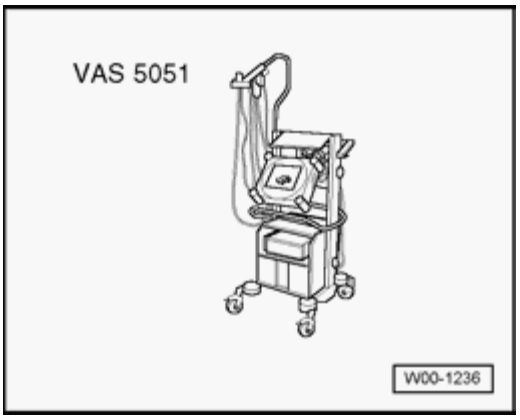


Fig. 99: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

  - Close Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A and tap "15 - Airbag" in vehicle system selection. Ignition must be switched on.
  - Read out display group 004 measured value block.



Fig. 100: Diagnostic System VAS 5051: Display - Display Fields
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

The belt is completely extended, display on Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A - no -.

cardiagn.com

The locking tongue is engaged in belt latch and belt has been pulled out to dimension -L-, display on Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A - yes -.

- Then pull belt out completely as far as stop. While pulling the belt, the display on the Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A must remain on - yes -.
- Now unroll belt to dimension -L- without releasing the locking tongue. The display on the Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A must remain on - yes -.
- Release locking tongue and slowly roll belt webbing up, the display must change from - yes - to - no - at a remaining length of 100 mm at the latest.

The belt is completely extended, display on Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A - no -.

Length - L:

- Length -L- on the sedan is 250 mm for the left and right belt. The belt diagonal adjuster is at the center.
- Length -L- on the Avant is 220 mm for the left and right belt. The belt diagonal adjuster is at the center.
- Length -L- on sedan and Avant is 500 mm for center belt.

AIRBAG SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Airbag system, general safety precautions

CAUTION:

- **Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must electrostatically discharge. For example, by briefly touching door striker.**
- **Do not check with test light, voltmeter or ohmmeter under any circumstances.**
- **You can only check airbags when installed and with vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems (such as Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B) intended for that purpose.**
- **Current supply must be disconnected before any work is performed on airbag system.**
- **Follow measures for disconnecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

  .
- **Disconnect battery ground strap/cable, cover negative terminal. No**

cardiagn.com

waiting time is necessary after disconnecting battery.

- **Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.**

- **Follow measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

.

- **Airbag units should be installed immediately upon removal from shipping package.**
- **Airbag unit is to be returned to shipping package when there is an interruption in work.**
- **It is not acceptable to leave airbag unit unattended.**

- **Airbag units which have been removed should be stored so that padded side is facing up.**
- **Do not open or repair airbag components. Use new parts only.**
- **Airbag units that have fallen onto a hard surface or show signs of damage must not be installed in vehicle.**
- **Wash hands after touching components from deployed airbags.**

- **Storage and transport must conform to national legislation.**
- **Replacing airbag units**

When replacing airbag units, following sequence must be followed exactly:

1. Remove old airbag unit and lay down with upholstered side facing up. Note exception for side curtain airbag.
2. Remove new airbag unit from shipping container and lay with upholstered side up. Note exception for side curtain airbag.
3. Place old airbag unit in shipping container immediately.
4. Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

- There is no change interval for airbag units.
- Do not treat airbag units with grease, cleaning solutions or anything similar.
- Airbag units must not be exposed to temperatures over 100° C, even for a short time.
- In case of any contaminant that penetrates fabric, such as oil, grease, paint, color or solvent, module must be replaced.

cardiagn.com

Side airbag, additional safety precautions

CAUTION:

- **We recommend using original equipment seat covers.**
- **Seat covers or extra covers that are not approved specially for use on Audi seats with side airbags must not be used.**
- **Do not cut backrest material in side airbag region.**
- **When installing, seam in side airbag region must run straight.**
- **All upholstery clips must be replaced (metal and plastic clips).**
- **We recommend using original upholstery clips.**
- **When installing, all upholstery clips must be placed in same places as when removed.**
- **If cover is damaged (with rips, burned holes, etc.) in side airbag region, it must be replaced for safety reasons so that airbag deploys correctly.**
- **Do not make repairs to backrest cover in side airbag region (due to special materials and strictly defined seams).**
- **After side airbag deploys, backrest upholstery must be replaced.**
- **After an accident, all damaged parts must be replaced. If there is no damaged detected to airbag unit, unit can still be used.**
- **If side airbag units are replaced, new side airbag number sticker should be removed and placed over old sticker on seat pan.**
- **Do not poke cover with upholstery needle or other sharp objects in airbag and sensor mat region.**

Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions

CAUTION:

- **Visually check trim for damage before installing.**
- **Do not make any repairs to trim (upper A-pillar trim, upper B-pillar trim, upper C-pillar trim, D-pillar trim).**
- **Ensure secure trim seating when installing.**
- **Side curtain airbag module must only be kinked in place designed for this purpose (transition from roof to A-pillar).**
- **Replace entire module when making repairs behind side curtain airbag.**
- **Place removed airbag modules in shipping containers or on a clean, level surface (under a cover or in luggage compartment).**
- **After servicing body in vicinity of side curtain airbag, check body for welding beads, deformations and chafe marks (compare with**

cardiagn.com

opposite side of vehicle if necessary).

- **Always hold side curtain airbag module securely.**
- **Always fold up removed side curtain airbag modules and grasp on gas generator (toggle direction electrical connector).**
- **Always keep one hand on gas generator.**
- **Never rotate, coil, knot, throw, slide, push, hang, squeeze, press, pinch or clamp side curtain airbag module.**

Additional safety precautions for working on Passive Occupant Detection System (PODS) (USA only)

CAUTION:

- **After each repair to the passenger seat where the seat or backrest cover was remove , a RE-ZERO of the seat occupied recognition control module must be done.**
- **The seat occupied recognition mat must not be kinked.**
- **A leaking mat must be replaced (service kit).**
- **The seat occupied recognition pressure hose must not be kinked.**
- **Make sure components of seat occupied recognition system do not fall onto hard surfaces, do not come into contact with grease and do not risk damage by resting against sharp objects.**
- **The mat, the crease and various covers must be fitted to be free of folds.**
- **When installing, make sure seat cushion and seat cover are positioned correctly.**
- **Replace the various upholstery clamps and clips and verify their correct positioning on seat.**
- **After every repair on front passenger seat, basic setting for Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module must be performed.**
- **Basic setting of the system is only possible between temperatures of 0° C and +40° C.**
- **Make sure that no objects are placed on seat when performing basic setting.**
- **The use of additional seat cushions - such as pillows etc. - impairs the function of the seat occupied recognition system and thereby the operation of the airbag system.**

Passive Occupant Detection System (PODS), passenger airbag deactivation procedure after a crash (USA only)

CAUTION:

- **A RE-ZERO must be performed on seat occupied recognition control module after each airbag or passenger belt tensioner deployment.**

cardiagn.com

- **If seat rails or seat pan are replaced after an accident due to deformation, seat occupied recognition must be replaced by service kit. Then basic setting and RE-ZERO must be carried on seat occupied recognition control module.**

Airbag units, replacing after an accident

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

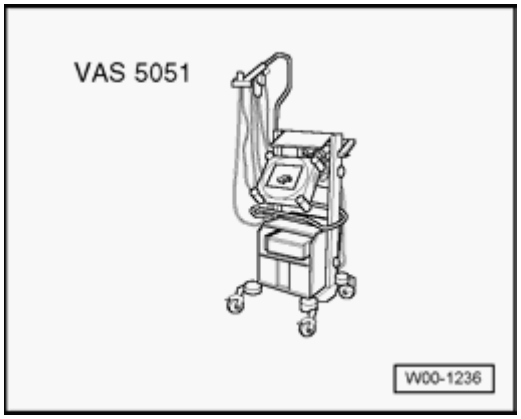


Fig. 101: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Suitable vehicle diagnostic tool, e.g. Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A.

NOTE:

- **With the airbag generation 8.* not 8.R , the airbag control module can be used for up to two deployments of side/curtain airbags and/or belt tensioners.**
- **Airbag control module can be used with airbag generation 9.* and 9.R for up to two side airbag, side curtain airbag, drivers airbag, passengers airbag and/or belt tensioner deployments.**
- **After the third deployment, the malfunction display "Control module defect" appears.**

Airbag control module must be replaced:

- If driver/passenger airbag has deployed "does not apply for airbag generation 9.* and 8.R". *Airbag control module can be used with airbag generation 9.* and 9.R for up to two side airbag, side curtain airbag, drivers airbag, passengers airbag and/or belt tensioner deployments.* under **Airbag units, replacing after an accident**
- After three deployments of drivers/passengers side/curtain airbags or belt tensioners
- If housing is damaged
- If there is deformation on tunnel in 200 mm circumference around control module

cardiagn.com

Always replace the following:

- All deployed airbag units
- Battery Switch-off Relay - J655- or Battery Interrupt Igniter -N253- (depending on vehicle equipment).

Also with passenger airbag deployment:

- Instrument panel
- Deformed passenger module supports (cannot be reformed)
- All sensors for front airbag on front end
- Remaining cross acceleration sensors if anchorage point is deformed in sensor region

Also with driver airbag deployment:

- Coil connector with slip ring
- All sensors for front airbag on front end
- Remaining cross acceleration sensors if anchorage point is deformed in sensor region

Also with side airbag deployment:

- Pressure sensors on deployed side
- Cross acceleration sensors on deployed side
- Cover
- Upholstery

- With foldable rear seat backrests: Side upholstery
- Remaining cross acceleration sensors if anchorage point is deformed in sensor region

Also with side curtain airbag deployment:

- Cross acceleration sensors on deployed side
- Trim on A-pillar, B-pillar, C-pillar, D-pillar
- Remaining cross acceleration sensors if anchorage point is deformed in sensor region

In addition:

- All seat belts with triggered belt tensioners

A - with deployed airbag control module

- Connect a suitable vehicle diagnostic tool, e.g. Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A and tap "15 - airbag" in vehicle system selection. Ignition must be switched on.

Front belt tensioner:

cardiagn.com

- Read measuring value block display group 001:

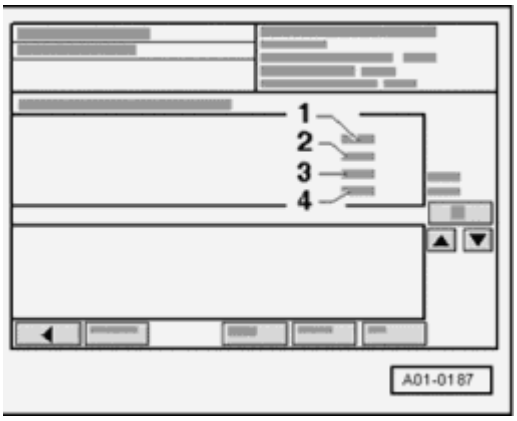


Fig. 102: Diagnostic System VAS 5051: Display
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

You can recognize deployed belt tensioners by display "too great".

Rear belt tensioner (versions depending on equipment/country):

- Read measuring value block display group 002:

You can recognize deployed belt tensioners by display "too great".

B - with replaced airbag control module:

- Connect a suitable vehicle diagnostic tool, e.g. Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A and tap "15 - airbag" in vehicle system selection. Ignition must be switched on.
- Retrieve DTC memory:

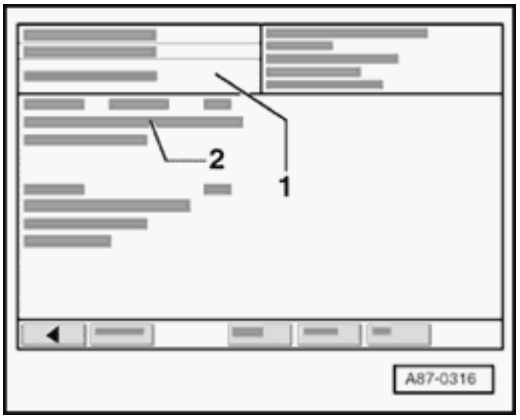


Fig. 103: Identifying Content Of DTC Memory & Identification Of Fault On Diagnostic System VAS 5051 Display
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

You can recognized deployed belt tensioners by malfunction message "Belt tensioner - resistance value too great".

- If needed (visual inspection), the following must also be replaced: All damaged components.

After replacing airbag units or control module, Attach stickers (only tear-off strips) to registration card and return registration card to relevant Sales Center or to Importer for registration.

Testing of anchoring components after an accident

All damaged securing pieces must be replaced, you cannot reshape components or make them fit.

Following components must be checked after every airbag deployment.

With a passenger airbag deployment:

- Instrument panel central tube, passenger airbag supports and passenger airbag must be installed free of tension. Central tube should be replaced.
- Check glove compartment for damage, replace if damage is present.

With a driver airbag deployment:

- Steering wheel, remove steering wheel and lay with steering wheel rim on a level surface. Otherwise, steering wheel should be replaced.
- Check steering wheel for smoke residue; replace if present.

Accident where airbag did not deploy

- If airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 does not indicate a DTC, airbag components do not need to be replaced. Seat belts must be inspected separately.

Caring for pyrotechnic airbag units

- Undeployed pyrotechnic components (such as airbags, seat belts with belt tensioners, pyrotechnic battery components) must be disposed of in an orderly manner in their original packaging, according to national legislation. If questions arise, contact the distributor or importer.
- Pyrotechnic components deployed in an actual accident can be disposed of as industrial waste.

CAUTION: This does not apply to belt tensioners that function according to the Wankelstraffer principle. These are to be treated like undeployed pyrotechnic components (such as airbags, seat belts with belt tensioners, pyrotechnic battery components). Reason: Workshop equipment cannot determine if Wankelstraffer belt tensioners have deployed all pyrotechnic materials.

Disposing of airbag units

cardiagn.com

When storing or Disposing of Airbags and Pyrotechnic Seatbelts:

- Make sure that your dealership complies with federal, state and local regulations for explosive substances.
- Deployed airbags and pyrotechnic seatbelts can be disposed of as normal scrap.
- Undeployed airbags and pyrotechnic seatbelts are considered to be hazardous materials. When disposing of an undeployed airbag or pyrotechnic seatbelt that is either defective or expired, use the appropriate repair information and Airbag Deployment Device J-44210. Do NOT deploy airbags and pyrotechnic seatbelts in the vehicle
- All airbags and pyrotechnic seatbelts of a vehicle scheduled to be scrapped must be deployed using the Airbag Deployment Device J-44210.
- When using Airbag Deployment Device J-44210, wear appropriate eye and ear protection.
- If the airbag or pyrotechnic seatbelt cannot be safely deployed or removed from the vehicle, contact the Audi Dealer Technicians Helpline.
- Shipment of active airbag gas generators and pyrotechnic seatbelt retractors must be in accordance with the regulations published in the latest edition of the Code of Federal Regulations #49 (49 CFR). Shipment must be initiated and received by certified individuals. The penalties for noncompliance are severe. Civil penalties range the $250 to $27,500 per violation, per day. Criminal penalties, for willfully violating the regulations, range up to $250,000 for individuals and $500,000 for corporations.

SERVICING AIRBAG

Location overview

cardiagn.com

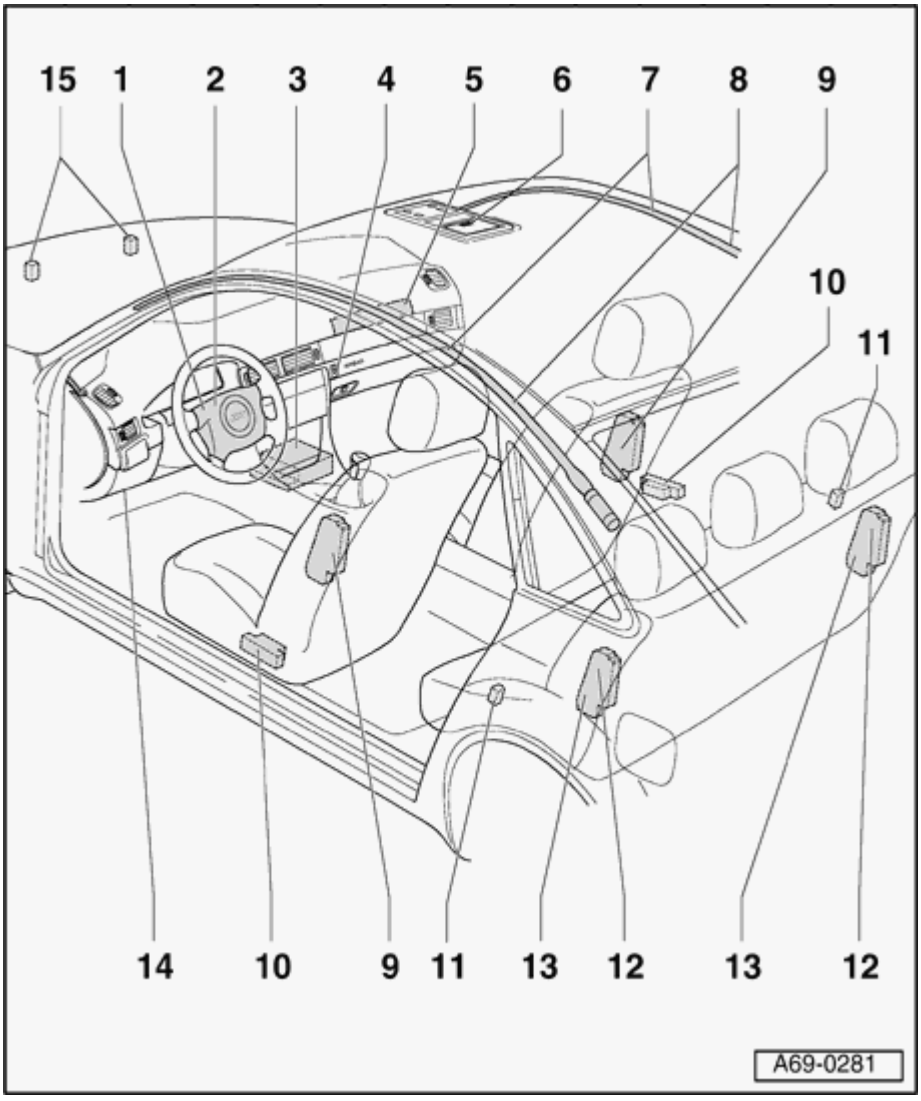


Fig. 104: Servicing Airbag Location Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Driver airbag unit

- Removing and installing --> **Airbag unit, removing and installing (standard steering wheel)**

2 - Drivers side airbag unit (sport steering wheel)

- Removing and installing --> **Steering wheel, removing and installing (sport steering wheel)**

3 - Airbag Control Module

- Removing and installing --> **Airbag control module -J234-, removing and installing**

4 - Key switch for passenger airbag shut-off

cardiagn.com

- Not Applicable

5 - Front passenger airbag unit

- Removing and installing --> **Passenger airbag, removing and installing**

6 - Pasenger-side airbag malfunction indicator lamp out K145

- Vehicles through 10.04: Removing and installing --> **Front Passenger s Airbag Disabled Indicator Lamp K145 , removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.2003)**
- Vehicles from 11.04: Removing and installing --> **Front Passenger s Airbag Disabled Indicator Lamp K145 , removing and installing (vehicles from 11.2003)**

7 - Sedan side curtain airbag

- Removing and installing --> **Side curtain airbag (Sedan), removing and installing**

8 - Avant side curtain airbag

- Removing and installing --> **Side curtain airbag (Avant), removing and installing**

9 - Front side airbag

- Removing and installing --> **Side airbags, servicing**
- Locking and activating Electrical

10 - Transverse acceleration sensor

- Vehicles up to 10.2004 at B-pillar: Removing and installing --> **Crash sensor for front side airbag, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.2004)**
- Vehicles from 11.2004 in front doors: Removing and installing --> **Crash sensor for front side airbag (pressure sensors), removing and installing (vehicles from 11.2004)**

11 - Transverse acceleration sensor on C-pillar

- Removing and installing --> **Crash sensor for rear side airbag (side curtain airbag), removing and installing**

12 - Rear side airbag (foldable backrest)

- Removing and installing --> **Rear side airbag (foldable backrest), removing and installing**

13 - Rear side airbag (non-foldable backrest)

- Removing and installing --> **Rear side airbag (non-foldable backrest), removing and installing**

cardiagn.com

14 - Diagnostic connector

15 - Transverse acceleration sensor on front end

- Removing and installing --> **Front airbag crash sensor, removing and installing**

Airbag control module -J234-, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

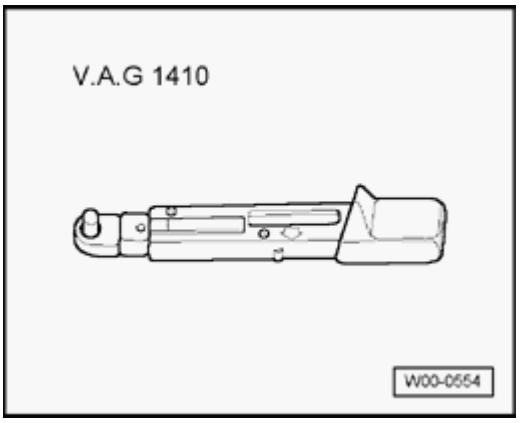


Fig. 105: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

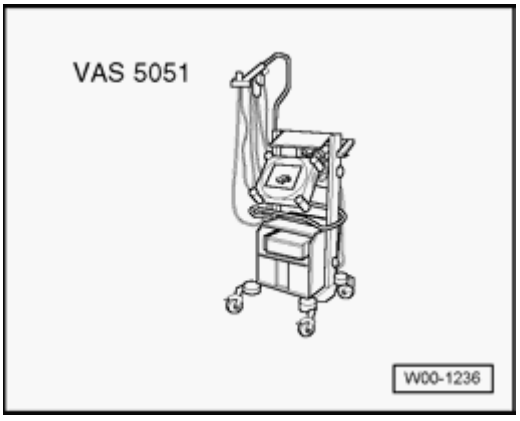


Fig. 106: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

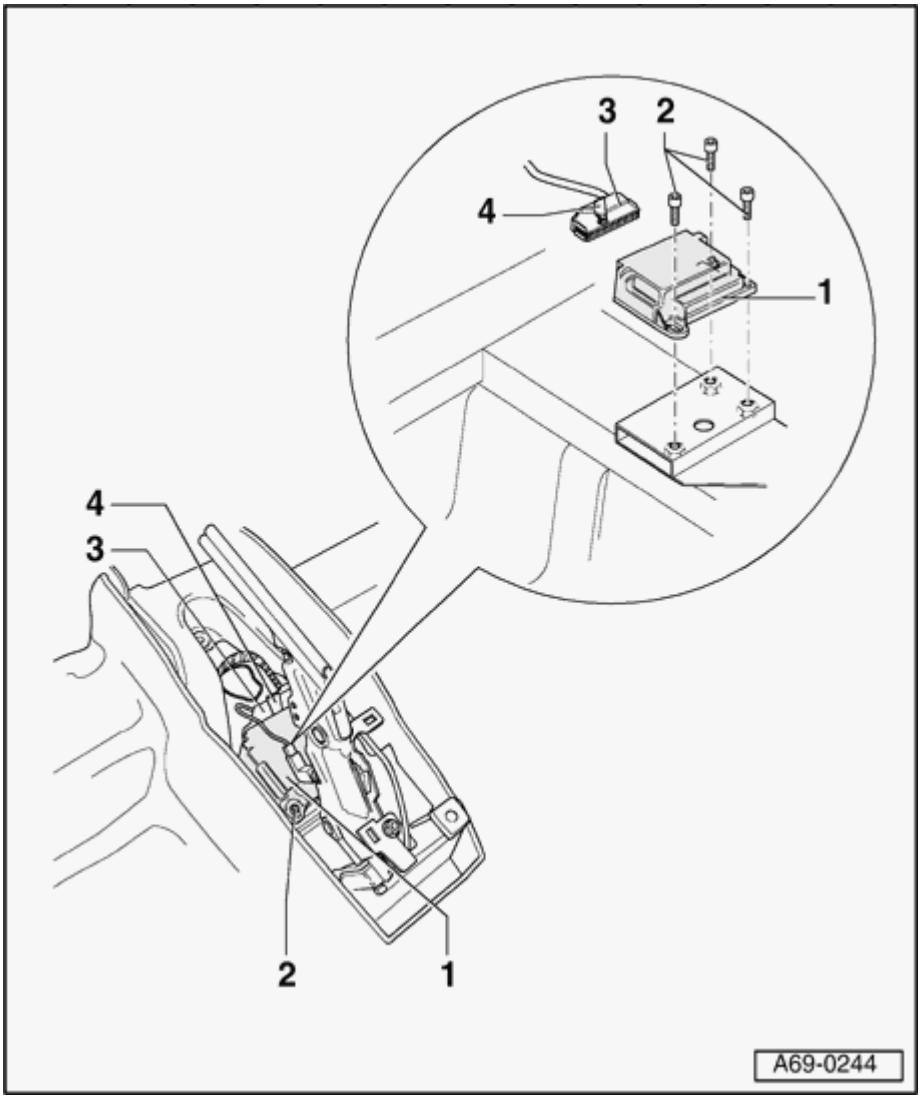


Fig. 107: Airbag Control Module -J234- Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Airbag Control Module

- Removal:

  - Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
    - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

    .
  - Remove center console --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)**.
  - Position securing clip - **4** - on connector - **3** -.
  - Remove connector - **3** - from control module - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolts - **2** - (Qty. 3).
- Remove control module.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

  .
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**
- **After replacing control module, it must be coded.**

See Guided Fault Finding, Body, 69 Passenger Protection, Airbag 8.4E, Electrical Components, J234 Airbag Control Module, J234 Airbag Control Module, coding.

2 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

3 - Connector

4 - Securing bracket

Battery Interrupt Igniter N253 , removing and installing (depending on vehicle equipment)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

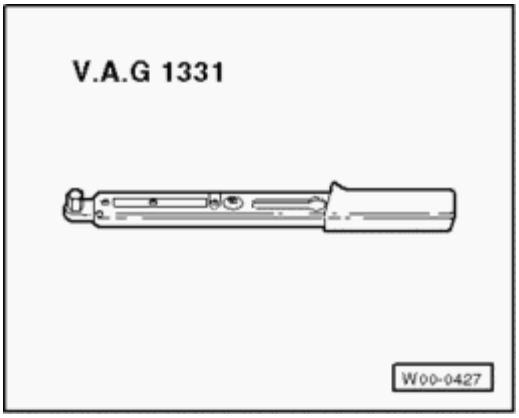


Fig. 108: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

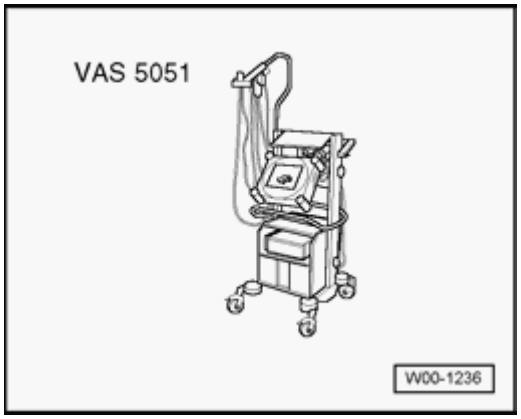


Fig. 109: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B

CAUTION: Battery Interrupt Igniters -N253 are pyrotechnic components. The same safety measures apply as with airbags. Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

NOTE:

- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 lights up after an accident, check using whether crash data have been stored. If this is the case, check in DTC memory whether for Battery Interrupt Igniter -N253 there is entered the DTC 001 Resistance too large. If this is the case, Battery Interrupt Igniter -N253 must be replaced.**

cardiagn.com

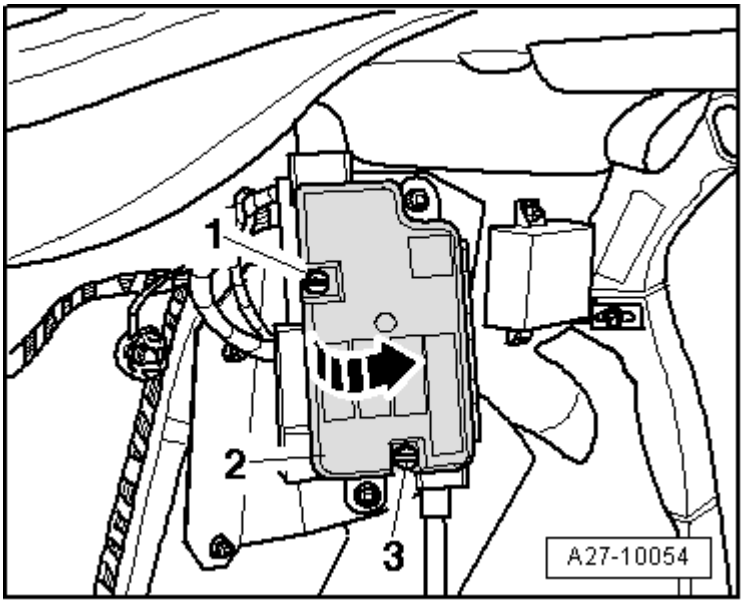


Fig. 110: Battery Interrupt Igniter N253 (Depending On Vehicle Equipment) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Clamp off ground wire at battery with ignition switched off -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- Remove left luggage compartment side trim --> **Luggage compartment side trim, removing and installing**.
- Loosen quick-release screws - **1** - and - **3** - and open flap - **2** - of main fuse box in luggage compartment - **arrow** -.

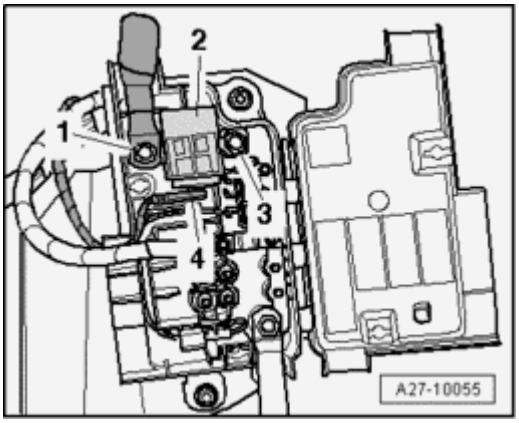


Fig. 111: Removing Nuts From B+ Wires, Battery Interrupt Igniter N253 From Retainer

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove nuts - **1** - and - **3** - from B+ wires.
- Remove Battery Interrupt Igniter N253 - **item 2** - from retainer.

CAUTION: Before disconnecting electrical connection, technician must discharge electrostatic energy. To do this, briefly touch door lock, for example.

- Disconnect electrical connector - **4** -.

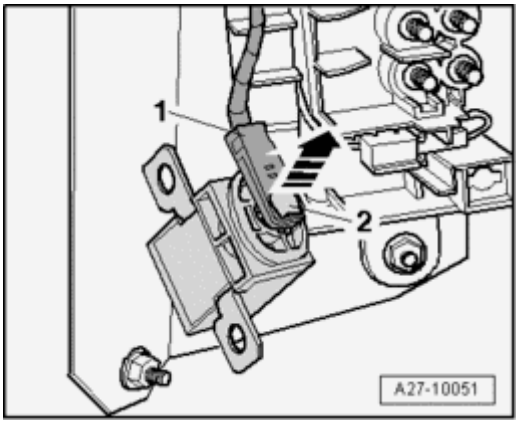


Fig. 112: Releasing Connector Lock Using A Screwdriver Until It Stops To Disengages Electrical Harness Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- To do so, release connector lock - **2** - using a screwdriver until it stops - **arrow** - , this disengages the electrical harness connector - **1** - and it can be disconnected.

NOTE:

- **Observe disposal of pyrotechnic airbag units --> Caring for pyrotechnic airbag units**

Installing

CAUTION: Battery Interrupt Igniters -N253 are pyrotechnic components. The same safety measures apply as with airbags. Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

Installation is reverse of removal, but note the following:

- When connecting electrical connector, ensure it engages securely and locking mechanism is OK.
- Follow the specified tightening torques --> **Tightening torques** .
- Switch on ignition.

cardiagn.com

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect battery. Necessary measures -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- Follow measures after connecting battery -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- Finally, check DTC memory for airbag control module using and process if necessary.

Tightening torques

Component	Nm
Battery Interrupt Igniter N253 to current bar	9
B+ wire to Battery Interrupt Igniter N253	15

DRIVER AIRBAG, SERVICING

Airbag unit, removing and installing (standard steering wheel)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

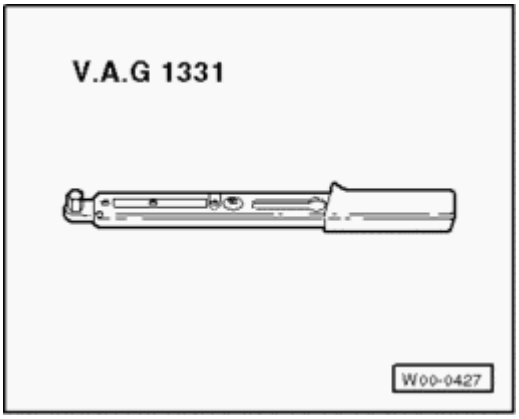


Fig. 113: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

cardiagn.com

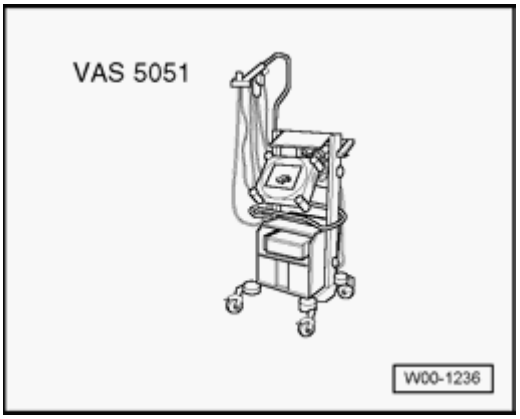


Fig. 114: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

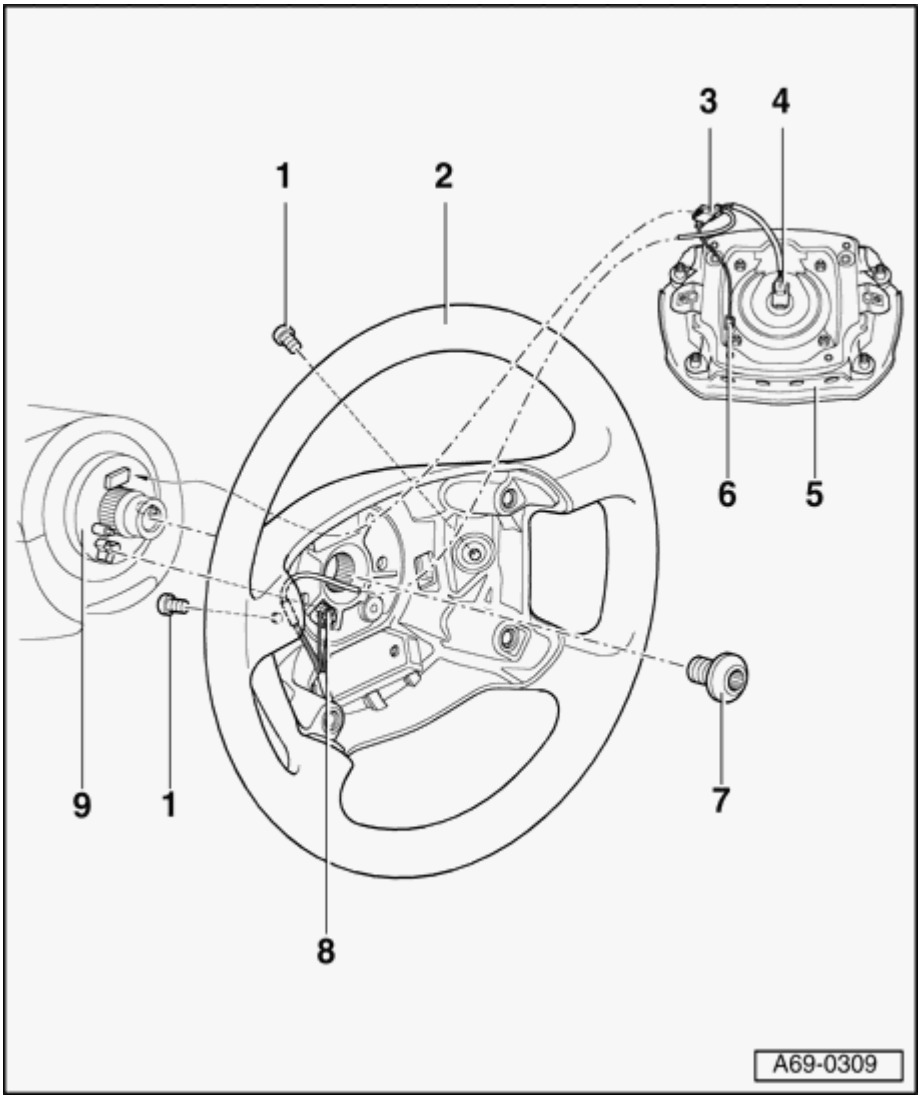


Fig. 115: Airbag Unit (Standard Steering Wheel) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Torx bolts T30 (Qty. 2)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

2 - Steering wheel

3 - Spiral spring connector

4 - Airbag unit connector

5 - Airbag unit

- Removal:

cardiagn.com

- Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- Release steering column adjuster.
- Pull steering wheel - **2** - as far out as possible and up.
- Position steering wheel - **2** - vertically.

- Remove one Torx bolt T30 - **1** -.
- Turn steering wheel back a half turn and loosen second Torx bolt T30 - **1** -.
- Remove airbag unit connector - **4** -.
- Remove horn connector - **6** -.

- Place airbag unit - **5** - so padding faces upward.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Ensure connector and securing clip engage completely (audibly).
- Ensure no wires are in contact with gas generator.
- Ensure airbag wiring is not kinked. Route airbag wiring in a loop to the left.
- Route horn wiring in a loop toward outside.

- Tighten bolts - **1** - (Qty. 2) to a tightening torque of 7 Nm.
- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for**

cardiagn.com

ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

6 - Horn connector

7 - Socket head bolt

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

8 - Steering wheel heating connector

9 - Coil connector with slip ring

Steering wheel, removing and installing (standard steering wheel)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

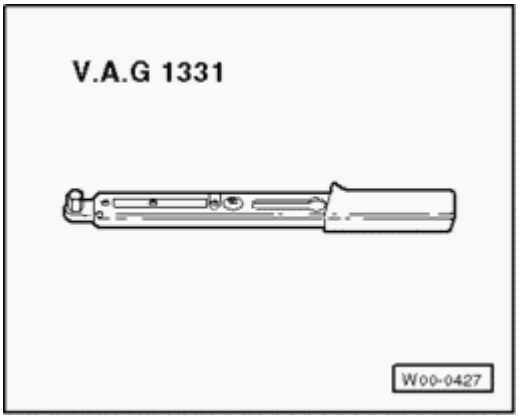


Fig. 116: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

cardiagn.com

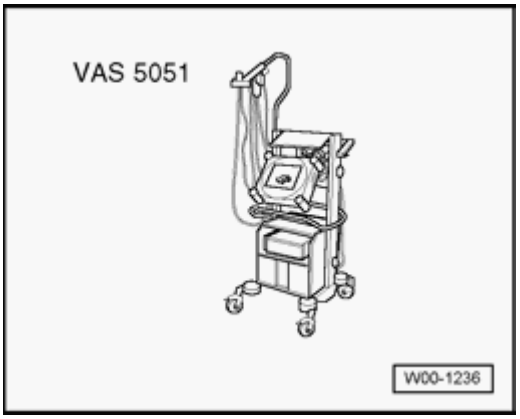
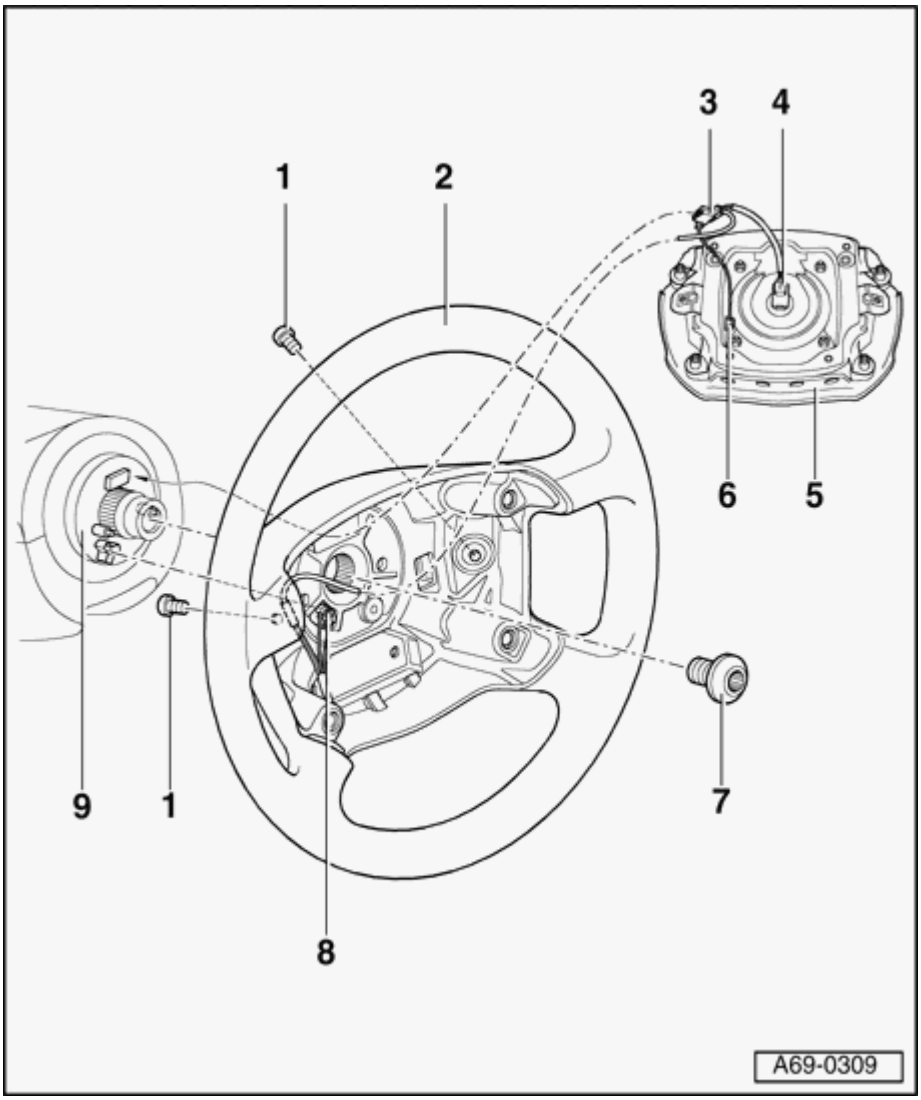


Fig. 117: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A



cardiagn.com

Fig. 118: Steering Wheel (Standard Steering Wheel) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - bolts T30 (Qty. 2)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

2 - Steering wheel

- Removal:

  - Remove airbag unit (standard steering wheel) --> **Airbag unit, removing and installing (standard steering wheel)**.
  - Bring steering wheel to center position (wheels straight).
  - Remove screw - **7** -.
  - Remove spiral spring connector - **3** -.
  - With steering wheel heating: Remove steering wheel heating connector - **8** -.
  - Remove steering wheel - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

  - Ensure connector and securing clip engage completely (audibly).
  - Attach steering wheel in center position (wheels straight).
  - Replace bolt - **7** - and tighten it to 50 Nm.

3 - Spiral spring connector

4 - Airbag unit connector

5 - Airbag unit

6 - Horn connector

7 - Socket head bolt

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

8 - Steering wheel heating connector

9 - Coil connector with slip ring

Airbag unit, removing and installing (sport steering wheel)

cardiagn.com

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

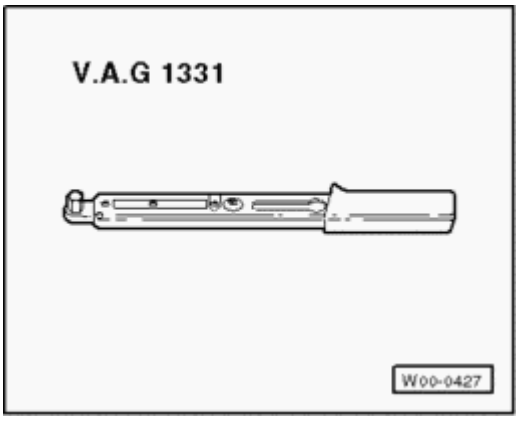


Fig. 119: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

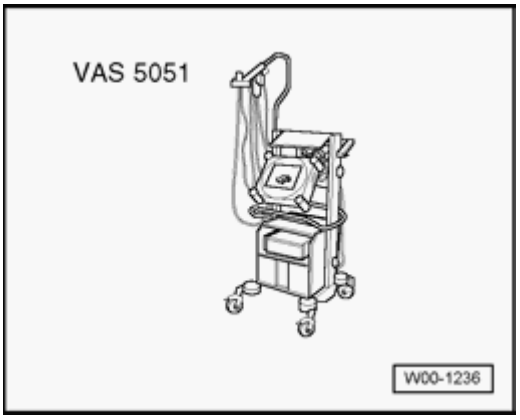


Fig. 120: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

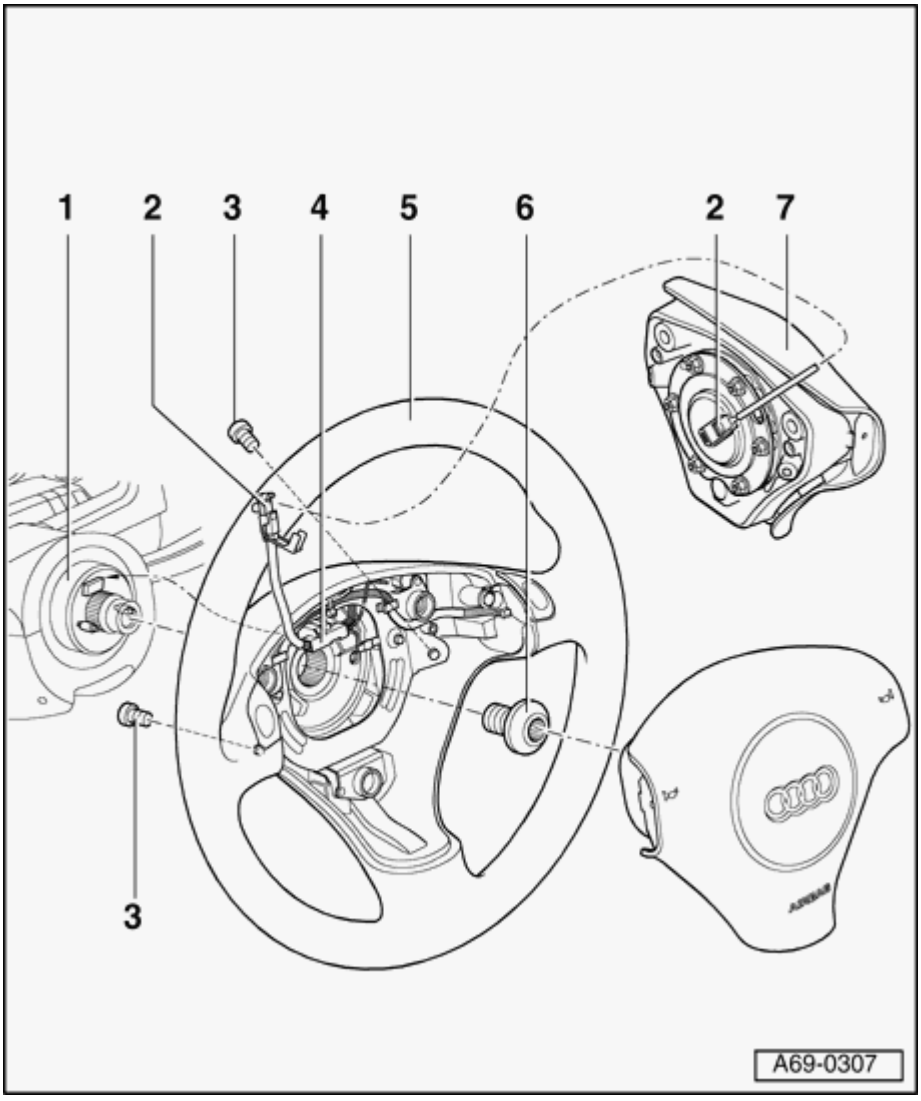


Fig. 121: Airbag Unit (Sport Steering Wheel) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Coil connector with slip ring

2 - Airbag unit connector

3 - Torx bolts T30 (Qty. 2)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

4 - Spiral spring connector

5 - Steering wheel

6 - Socket head bolt

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

7 - Airbag unit

- Removal:

  - Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
    - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

    .
  - Release steering column adjuster.
  - Pull steering wheel - **5** - as far out as possible and up.
  - Position steering wheel - **5** - vertically.

  - Remove one Torx bolt T30 - **3** -.
  - Turn steering wheel back a half turn and loosen second Torx bolt T30 - **3** -.
  - Remove airbag unit connector - **2** -.
  - Place airbag unit - **7** - so padding faces upward.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

  - Ensure connector and securing clip engage completely (audibly).
  - Ensure no wires are in contact with gas generator.
  - Ensure airbag wiring is not kinked. Route airbag wiring in a loop to the left.
  - Tighten bolts - **3** - (Qty. 2) to a tightening torque of 7 Nm.

  - Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

  - Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
    - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

    .

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**

cardiagn.com

- **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
- **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

Steering wheel, removing and installing (sport steering wheel)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

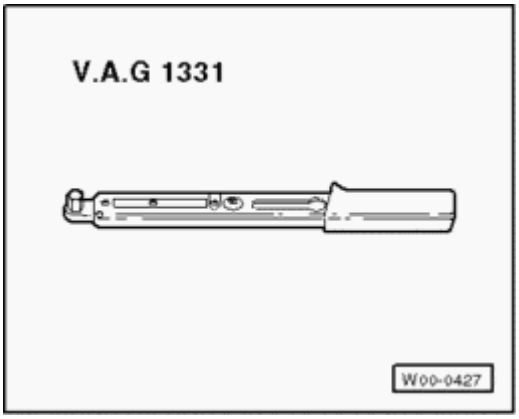


Fig. 122: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

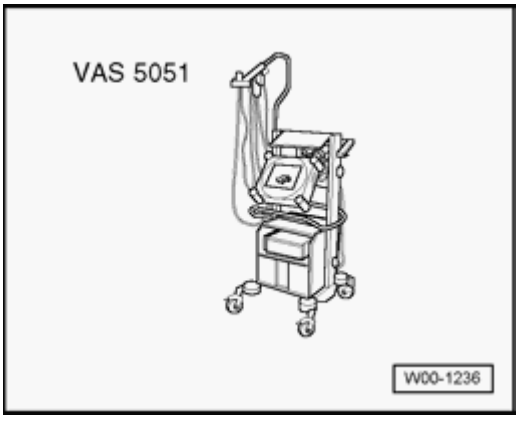


Fig. 123: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

cardiagn.com

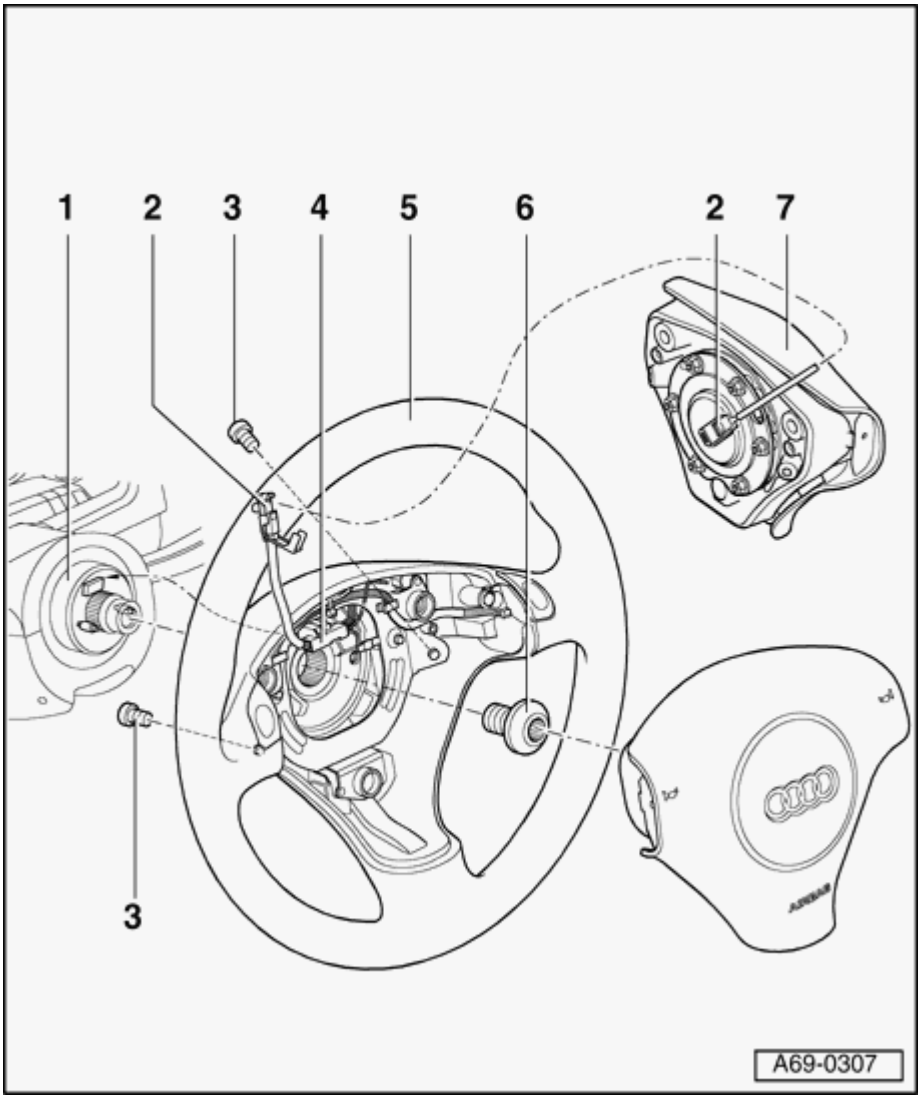


Fig. 124: Steering Wheel (Sport Steering Wheel) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Coil connector with slip ring

2 - Airbag unit connector

3 - Torx bolts T30 (Qty. 2)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

4 - Spiral spring connector

5 - Steering wheel

- Removal:

cardiagn.com

- Remove airbag unit (sport steering wheel) --> **Airbag unit, removing and installing (sport steering wheel)**.
- Bring steering wheel to center position (wheels straight).
- Remove screw - **6** -.
- Remove spiral spring connector - **4** -.
- Remove steering wheel - **5** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Ensure connector and securing clip engage completely (audibly).
- Attach steering wheel in center position (wheels straight).
- Replace bolt - **6** - and tighten it to 50 Nm.

6 - Socket head bolt

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

7 - Airbag unit

Airbag unit, removing and installing (multi-function steering wheel)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

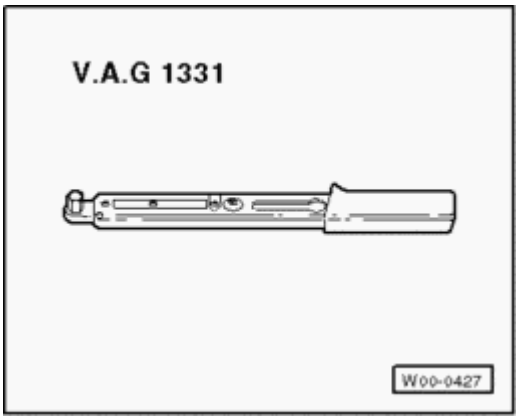


Fig. 125: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

cardiagn.com

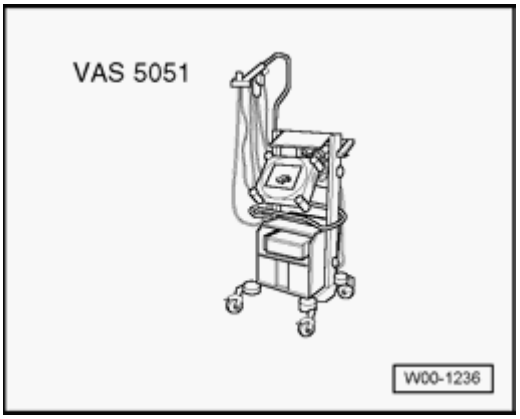


Fig. 126: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

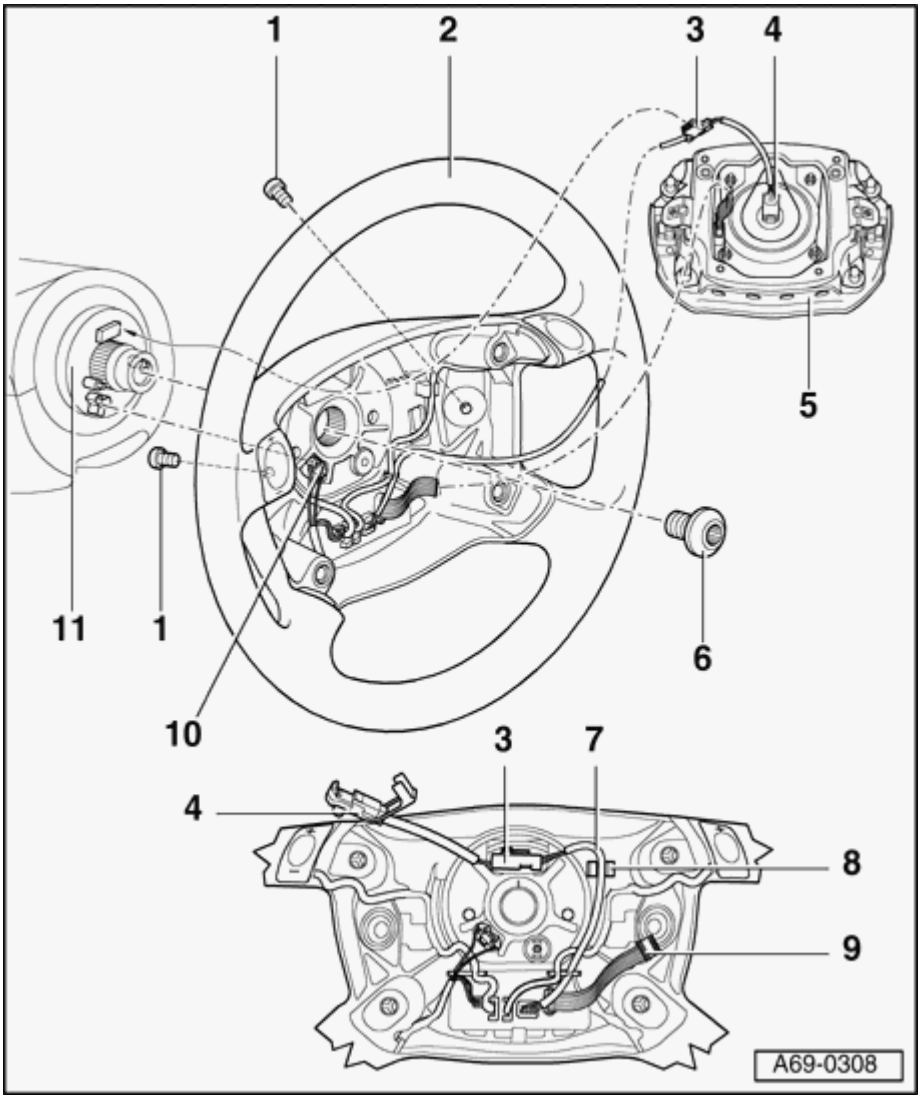


Fig. 127: Airbag Unit (Multi-Function Steering Wheel) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Torx bolts T30 (Qty. 2)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

2 - Steering wheel

3 - Spiral spring connector

4 - Airbag unit connector

5 - Airbag unit

- Removal:

cardiagn.com

- Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- Release steering column adjuster.
- Pull steering wheel - **2** - as far out as possible and up.
- Position steering wheel - **2** - vertically.

- Remove one Torx bolt T30 - **1** -.
- Turn steering wheel back a half turn and loosen second Torx bolt T30 - **1** -.
- Remove airbag unit connector - **4** -.
- Place airbag unit - **5** - so padding faces upward.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Ensure connector and securing clip engage completely (audibly).
- Ensure no wires are in contact with gas generator.
- Ensure airbag wiring is not kinked. Route airbag wiring in a loop to the left.
- Tighten bolts - **1** - (Qty. 2) to a tightening torque of 7 Nm.

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic,**

cardiagn.com

Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.

6 - Socket head bolt

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

7 - Supply cable

8 - Clip

9 - Multi-function steering wheel connector

10 - Steering wheel heating connector

11 - Coil connector with slip ring

Steering wheel, removing and installing (multi-function steering wheel)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

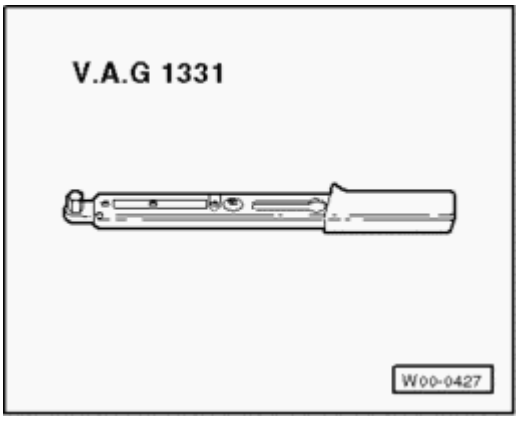


Fig. 128: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

cardiagn.com

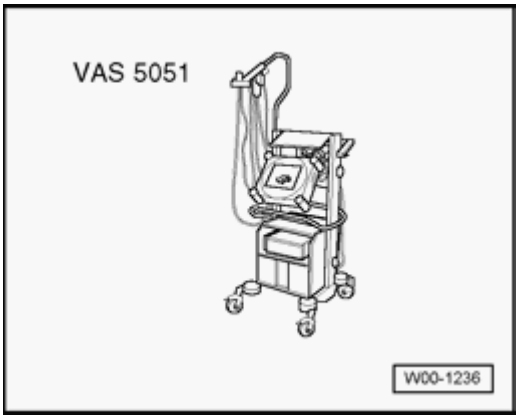
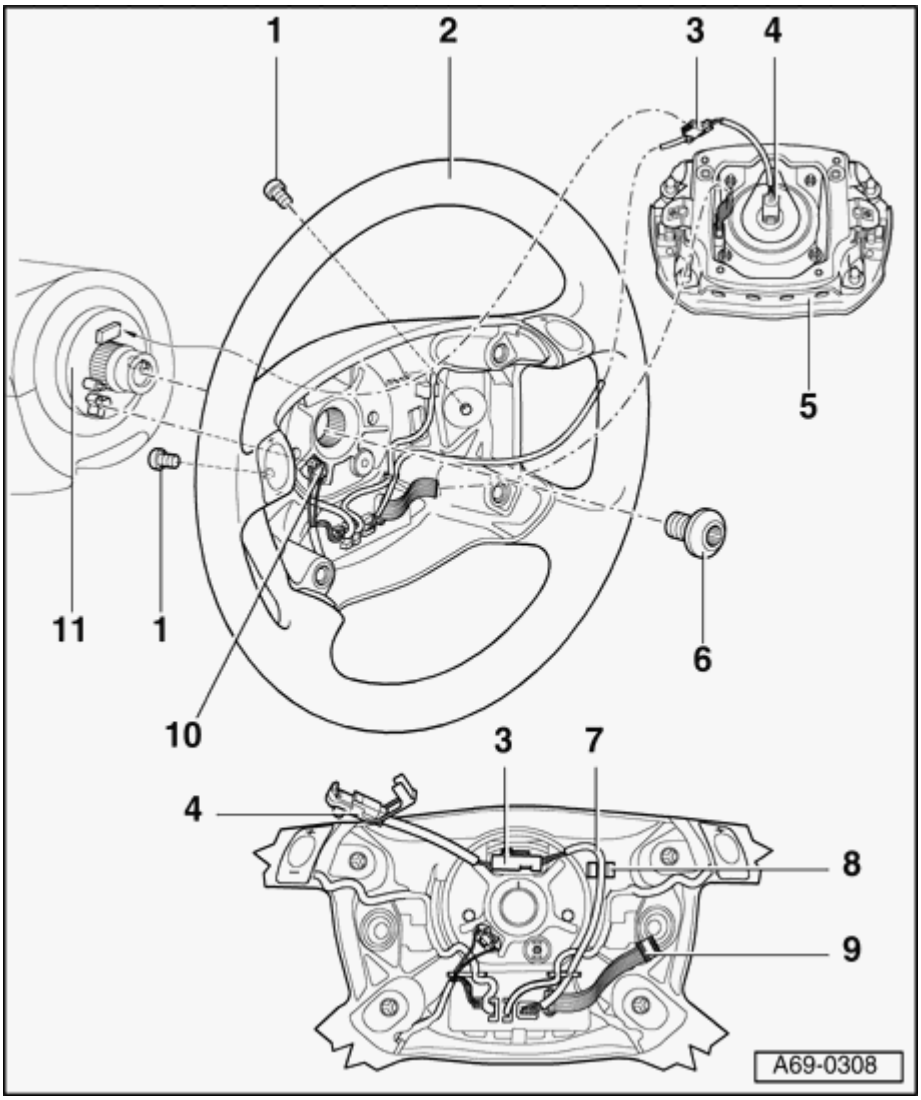


Fig. 129: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A



cardiagn.com

Fig. 130: Steering Wheel (Multi-Function Steering Wheel) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Torx bolts T30 (Qty. 2)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

2 - Steering wheel

- Removal:

  - Remove airbag unit (multi-function steering wheel) --> **Airbag unit, removing and installing (multi-function steering wheel)**.
  - Bring steering wheel to center position (wheels straight).
  - Remove screw - **6** -.
  - Remove spiral spring connector - **3** -.
  - Remove multi-function cable connector - **9** -.
  - With steering wheel heating: Remove steering wheel heating connector - **10** -.
  - Remove steering wheel - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

  - Ensure connector and securing clip engage completely (audibly).
  - Insert supply wire - **7** - in clip - **8** -.
  - Attach steering wheel in center position (wheels straight).
  - Replace bolt - **4** - and tighten it to 50 Nm.

3 - Spiral spring connector

4 - Airbag unit connector

5 - Airbag unit

6 - Socket head bolt

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

7 - Supply cable

8 - Clip

9 - Multi-function steering wheel connector

cardiagn.com

10 - Steering wheel heating connector

11 - Coil connector with slip ring

Return spring with slip ring, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

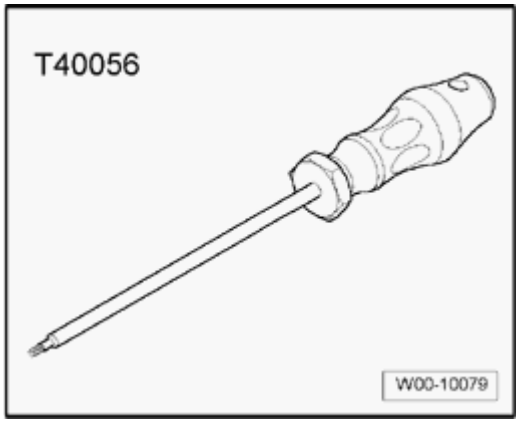


Fig. 131: Torx Screwdriver T8 T 40056
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torx screwdriver T8 T 40056

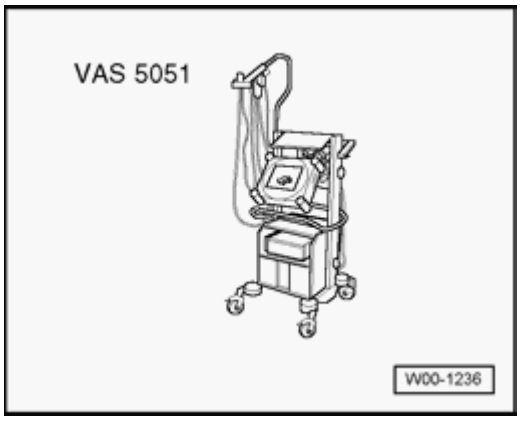


Fig. 132: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

Removing

- Drivers side airbag unit (standard steering wheel), removing --> **Airbag unit, removing and installing (standard steering wheel)**.
- Drivers side airbag unit (sport steering wheel), removing --> **Airbag unit, removing and installing**

cardiagn.com

(sport steering wheel).

- Drivers side airbag unit (multi-function steering wheel), removing --> **Airbag unit, removing and installing (multi-function steering wheel)**.
- Steering wheel, standard, removing --> **Steering wheel, removing and installing (standard steering wheel)**.
- Steering wheel, sport, removing --> **Steering wheel, removing and installing (sport steering wheel)**.
- Steering wheel, multi-function, removing --> **Steering wheel, removing and installing (multi-function steering wheel)**.
- Pull steering column all the way out and down.

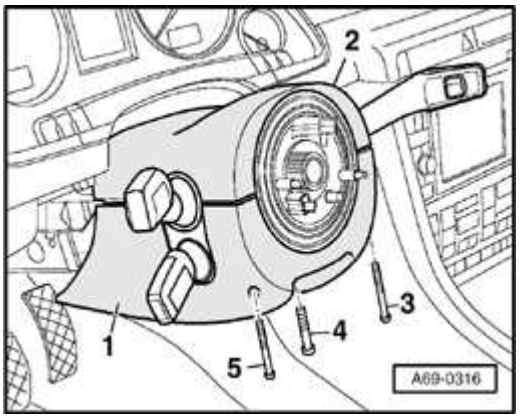


Fig. 133: Removing Torx Bolts With Torx Screwdriver T 40056 As Well As Hex Socket Head Bolt
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove Torx bolts - **3** - and - **5** - with Torx Screwdriver T 40056 as well as hex socket head bolt - **4** -.

Tightening torque: 1 Nm

- Disconnect upper steering column switch trim - **2** - from lower trim - **1** - and remove both parts.

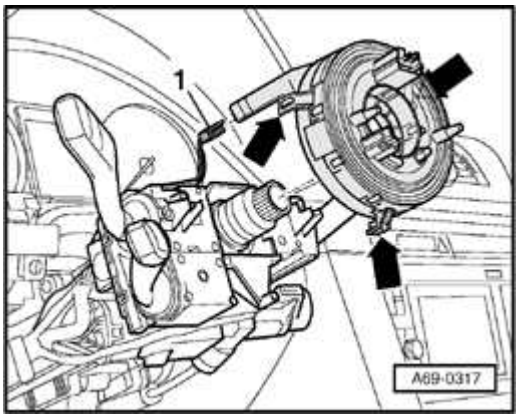


Fig. 134: Disconnecting Connector, Release Catch And Pulling Return Spring With Slip Ring From Steering Column Switches
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Disconnect connector - **1** -.
- Carefully release catch - **arrows** - and pull return spring with slip ring from steering column switches.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Ensure all catches and the connection engage cleanly.
- When installing, guide upper trim into lower trim hooks, press both parts together and bolt.

NOTE:

- **Wheels must be in straight-ahead position when removing or installing return spring with slip ring.**
- **Return spring with slip ring is secured as a new part in center position with a cable tie or shear ring.**
- **On vehicles with ESP sensor in return spring with slip ring, ESP sensor must be adapted.**

PASSENGER AIRBAG, SERVICING

Passenger airbag, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

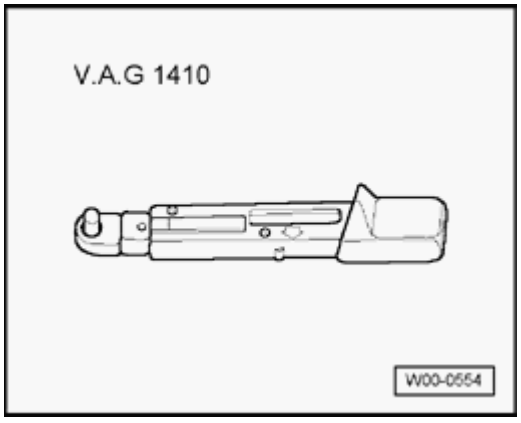


Fig. 135: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

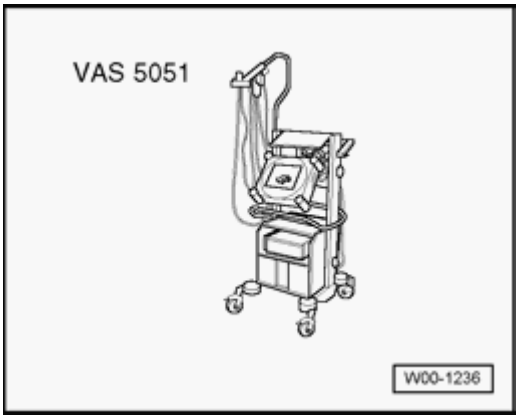


Fig. 136: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

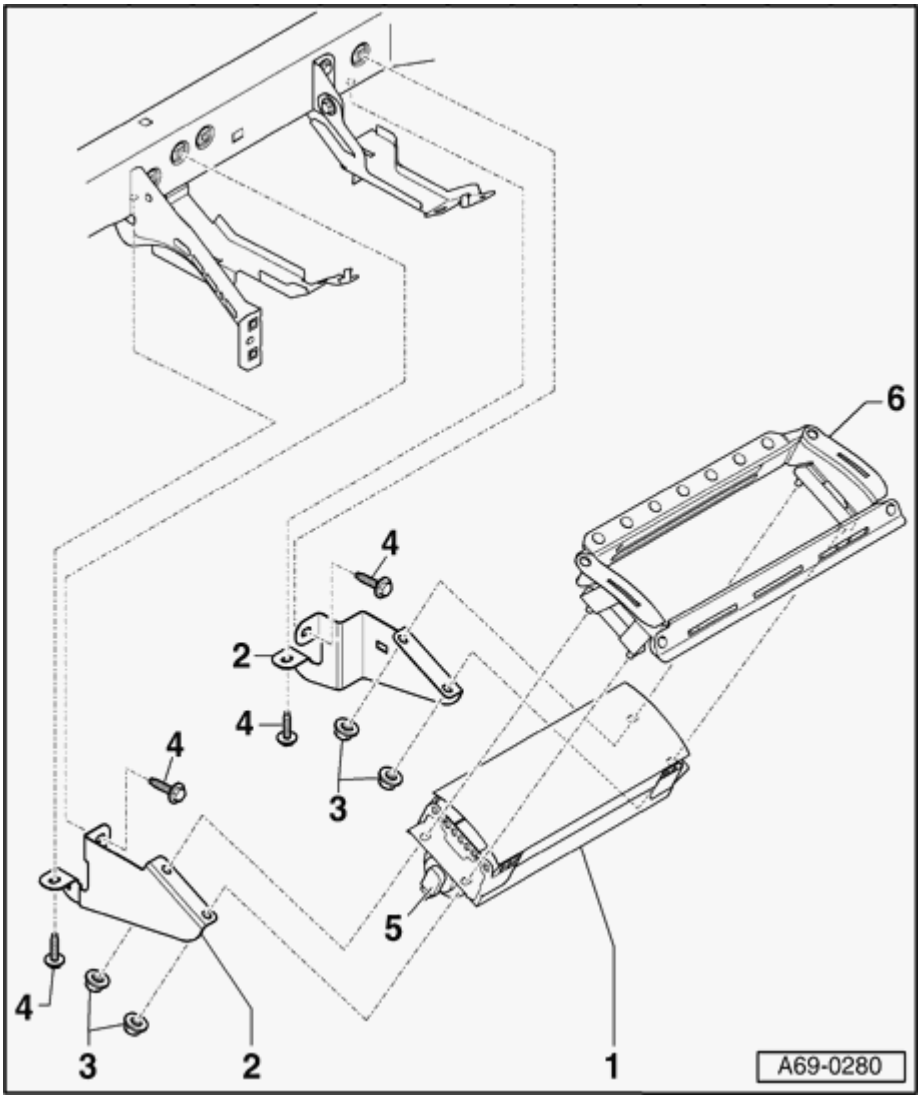


Fig. 137: Passenger Airbag Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front passenger airbag unit

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

CAUTION: Note assignment of airbag unit to instrument panel .

- Removal:

  - Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**

cardiagn.com

- **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

- Remove glove compartment --> **Storage compartments and covers** .
- Disconnect connector behind airbag unit **Disconnect airbag connector**

CAUTION: Connector - 5 - (2-pin, red) on passenger airbag unit must not be disconnected under any circumstances!

- Remove brace behind airbag unit.
- Remove nut - **3** - (Qty. 4).
- Remove airbag unit.
- Lay airbag unit so padding faces upward.

- **Installing:**

CAUTION: Note assignment of airbag unit to instrument panel .

- Install airbag unit.
- Ensure connector behind airbag unit engages completely (audibly) **Disconnect airbag connector**
- Turn on ignition.

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

.

- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

cardiagn.com

2 - Supports

- Always replace after airbag has deployed.
- Remove passenger airbag unit
- Remove bolts - **4** - (Qty. 4).

3 - Nuts (Qty. 4)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm
- Always replace after airbag has deployed

4 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm
- Always replace after airbag has deployed

5 - Connector

6 - Airbag unit frame

- Always replace after airbag has deployed.
- Remove passenger airbag unit

Disconnect airbag connector

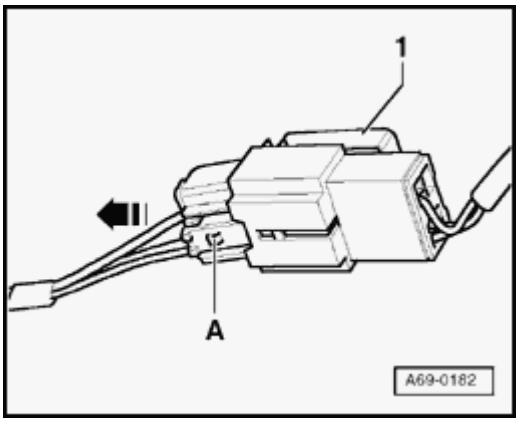


Fig. 138: Disconnect Airbag Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press retainer - **A** - and disconnect connector in - **direction of arrow** -.

1. Connector retaining base

Front Passenger s Airbag Disabled Indicator Lamp K145 , removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.2003)

cardiagn.com

If the Front Passengers Airbag Disabled Indicator Lamp K145 , entire interior light/reading light must be replaced -->

- **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT**
- **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET

.

Front Passenger s Airbag Disabled Indicator Lamp K145 , removing and installing (vehicles from 11.2003)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

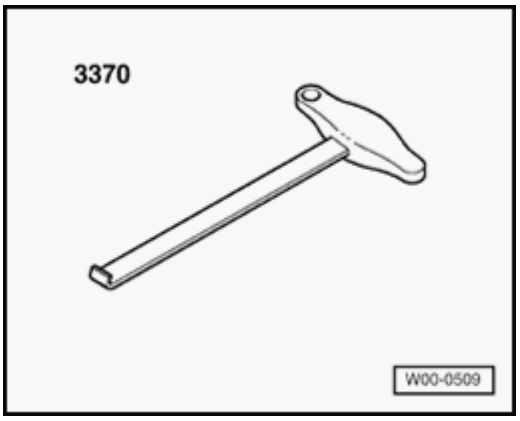


Fig. 139: Identifying Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special hook 3370

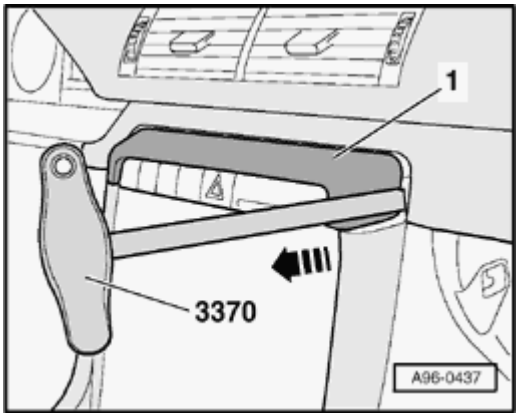


Fig. 140: Removing Trim Using Hook For Front End 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Open glove compartment.

cardiagn.com

- Carefully remove trim - **1** - using hook for front end 3370.

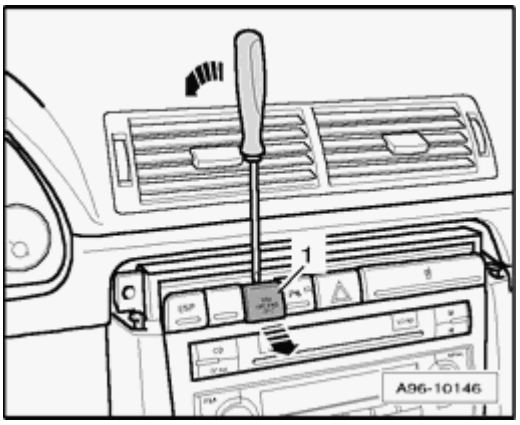


Fig. 141: Pulling Out Front Passenger S Airbag Disabled Indicator Lamp K145 Of Switch Mount Using Flat Screwdriver
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Carefully pull out Front Passenger s Airbag Disabled Indicator Lamp K145 - **item 1** - of switch mount using a flat screwdriver - **arrows** -.
- Disconnect electrical connector.

Installing

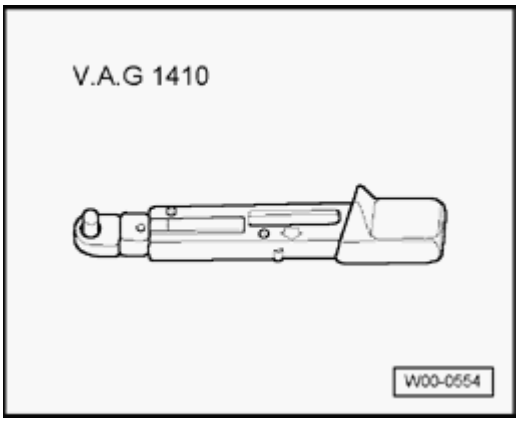
Installation is reverse of removal, but note the following:

- Press switch into instrument panel mount and engage.

SIDE AIRBAGS, SERVICING

Driver Side Airbag Igniter N199 and Front Passenger Side Airbag Igniter N200 (top-mounted airbag), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required



cardiagn.com

Fig. 142: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

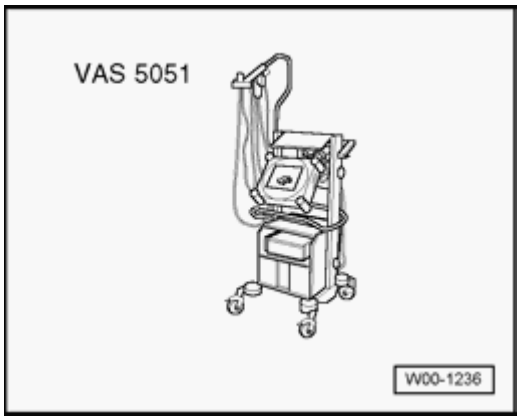


Fig. 143: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

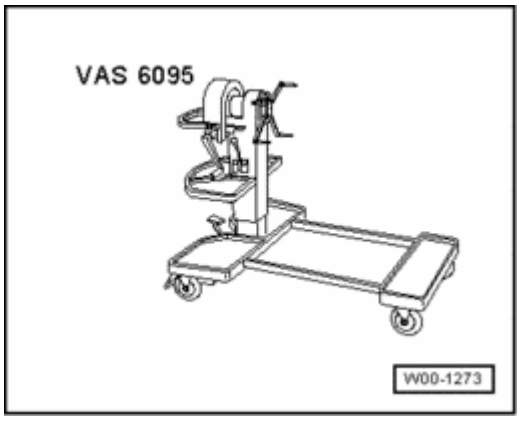


Fig. 144: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

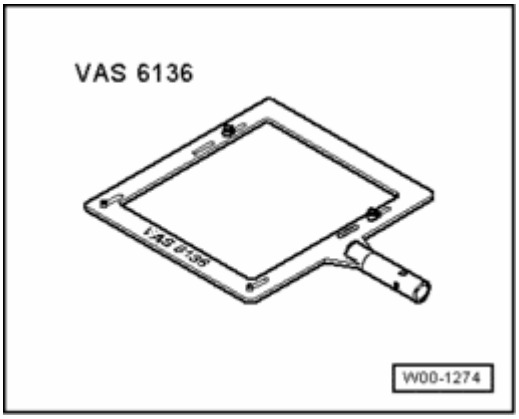


Fig. 145: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

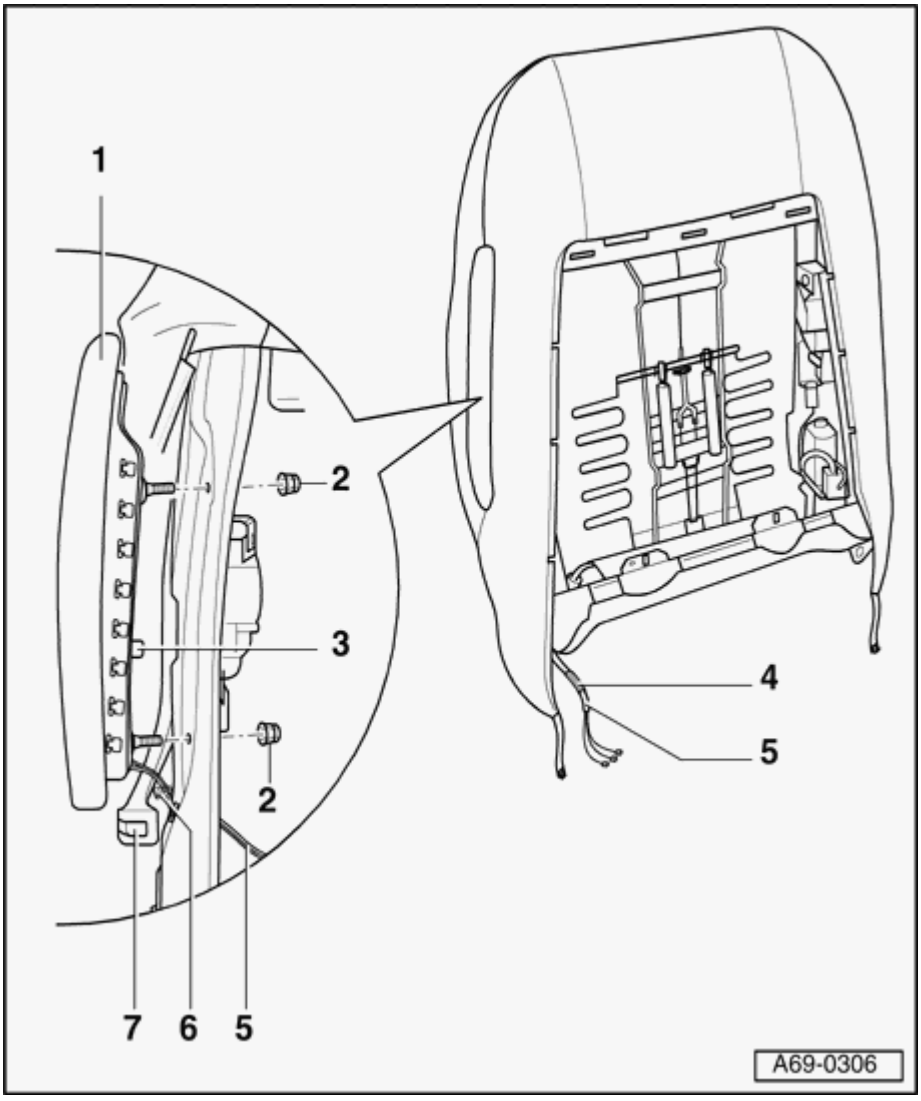


Fig. 146: Driver Side Airbag Igniter N199 And Front Passenger Side Airbag Igniter N200 (Top-Mounted Airbag) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Drivers and passengers side airbags

- Removal:

  - Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
    - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

    .
  - Remove seat:

cardiagn.com

- Standard seat: Vehicles up to 10.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**
- Electric seat: Vehicles up to 10.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**
- Recaro seat through 10.04 --> **Seat, removing and installing**

- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove backrest panel:

- Standard seat: Vehicles up to 10.04 --> **Front backrest (standard seat), removing and installing**
- Electric seat: Vehicles up to 10.04 --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**
- Recaro seat through 10.04 --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**

- Loosen boot - **4** -.
- Remove wiring harness - **5** - upward.
- Remove nuts - **2** - (2x) of side airbag - **1** -.
- Pry out metal strap - **3** -.

- Remove side airbag - **1** -.
- Remove clip - **6** - and carefully remove wiring harness - **5** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing this, note the following:

- Ensure that the wiring harness - **5** - runs between seat frame and plastic guide - **7** - and that no tension is applied to the cable.
- Secure clip - **6** -.
- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for**

cardiagn.com

ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

2 - Nuts (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm
- Replace after each disassembly

3 - Metal tab

4 - Boot

5 - Cable harness

6 - Clip

7 - Plastic guide

Driver Side Airbag Igniter N199 and Front Passenger Side Airbag Igniter N200 (normal seat, power seat, interior-mounted airbag), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

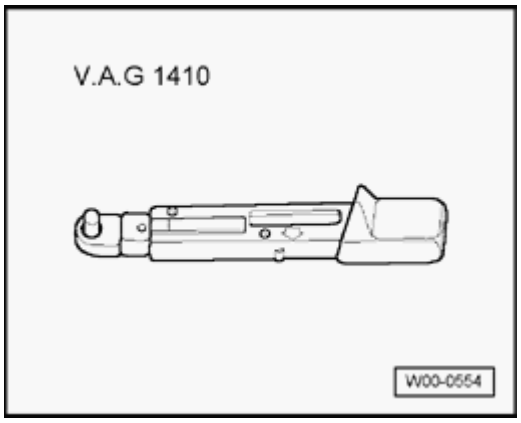


Fig. 147: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

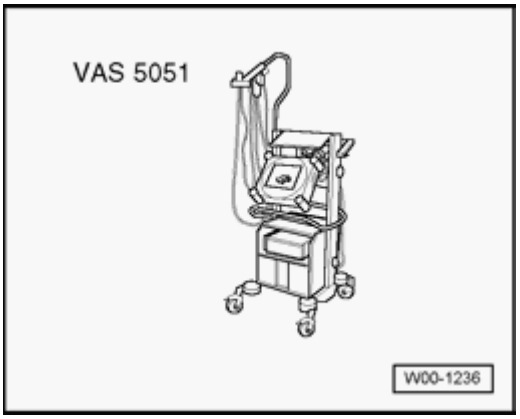


Fig. 148: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

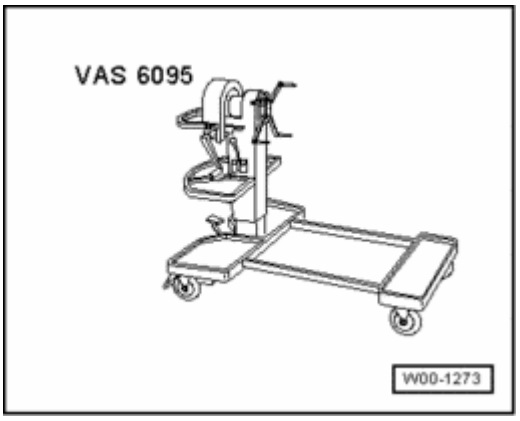


Fig. 149: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

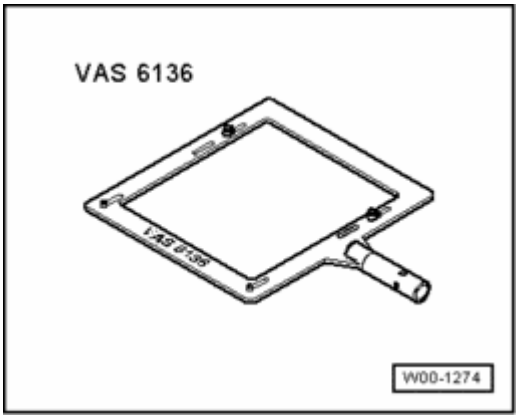


Fig. 150: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

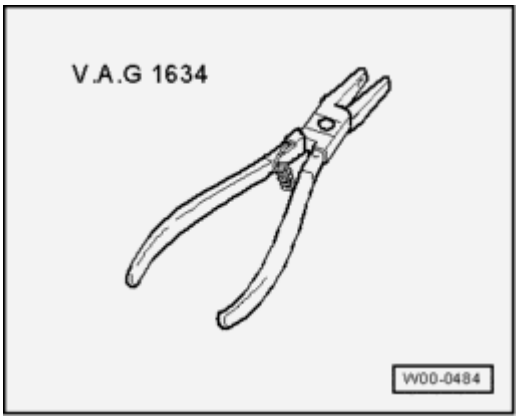


Fig. 151: Upholstery Clip Pliers V.A.G 1634
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Upholstery clip pliers V.A.G 1634

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

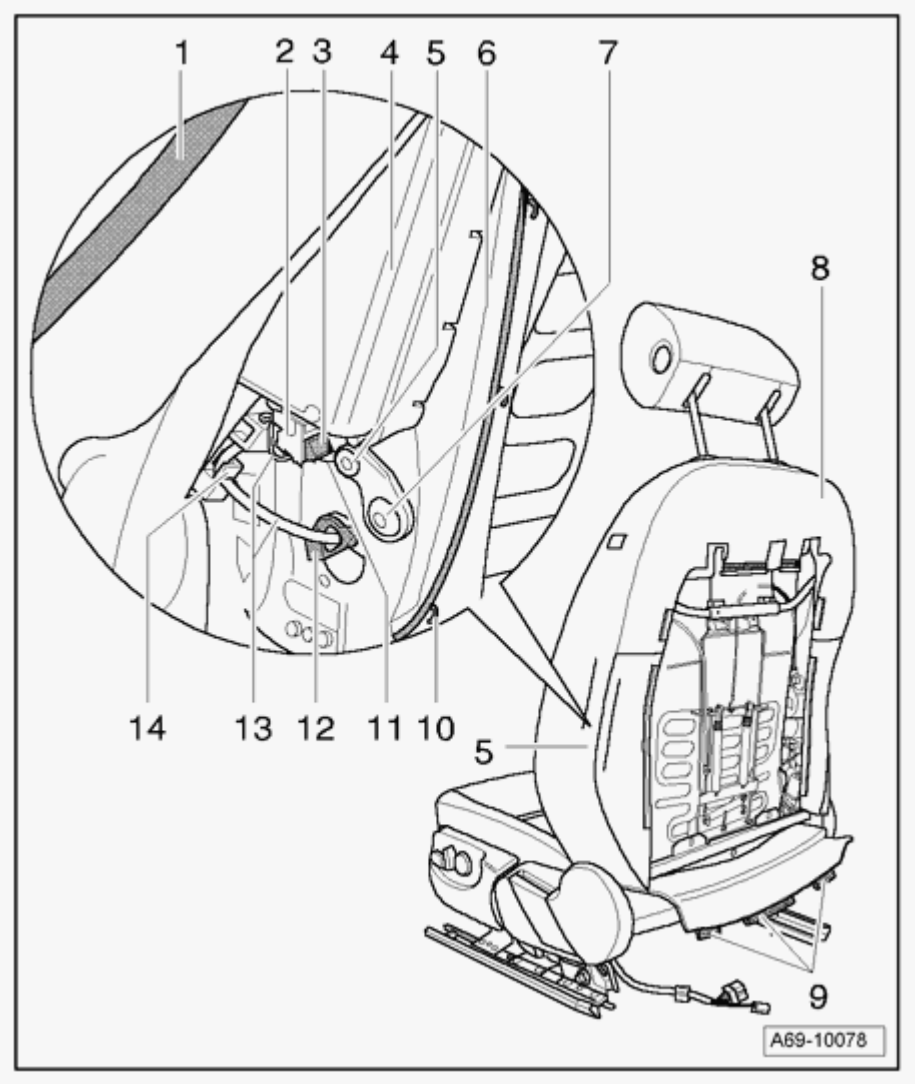


Fig. 152: Driver Side Airbag Igniter N199 And Front Passenger Side Airbag Igniter N200 (Normal Seat, Power Seat, Interior-Mounted Airbag) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Side fastening strip

2 - Side airbag connector

3 - Locking tab

4 - Drivers and passengers side airbags

- Removal
  - Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**

cardiagn.com

- **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

- Remove seat:

- Standard seat: Vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**
- Electric seat: Vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**
- Recaro seat from 11.04 --> **Seat, removing and installing**

- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove backrest panel:

- Standard seat: Vehicles from 11.04 --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**
- Electric seat: Vehicles from 11.04 --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**
- Recaro seat from 11.04 --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**

- Pry off lower fastening strips - **9** - (3x) with a screwdriver.
- Pry off side retainer strips - **1** - with a screwdriver and fold cover forward.
- Cut upholstery clips - **10** - (4x) at protective cover for side airbag - **6** -.
- Press latch - **3** - downward and disconnect electrical harness connector for side airbag - **2** -.

- Remove screw - **7** -.
- Drill out rivet - **5** -.
- Press side airbag - **4** - upward and remove it.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

- Engage side airbag - **4** - into backrest frame.
- Press side airbag - **4** - downward until it stops.
- Place eye of Ground (GND) cable - **11** - between backrest frame and side airbag - **4** -.
- Secure ground cable - **11** - with a rivet.

- Replace screw - **7** -.
- Bolt side airbag - **4** - on with bolt - **7** -.
- Make sure that airbag cable - **13** - runs through cable guide - **14** - and is secured by clip - **12** - to backrest frame.
- Use upholstery clip pliers V.A.G 1634 to install new upholstery clips on protective cover for side airbag.

- Switch on ignition.

cardiagn.com

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

5 - Rivet

6 - Protective cover for side airbag

7 - Screw

- Tightening torque 10 Nm
- Replace after each disassembly

8 - Front seat

9 - Lower fastening strips (3x)

10 - Upholstery clips (4x)

11 - Ground cable

12 - Clip

13 - Airbag cable

14 - Cable guide

Rear side airbag (non-foldable backrest), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

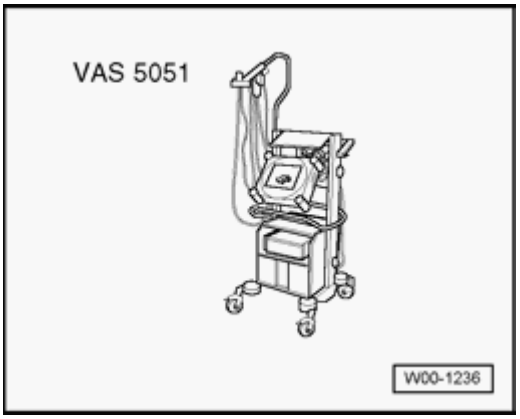


Fig. 153: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A
- Closing pliers VAS 6273

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

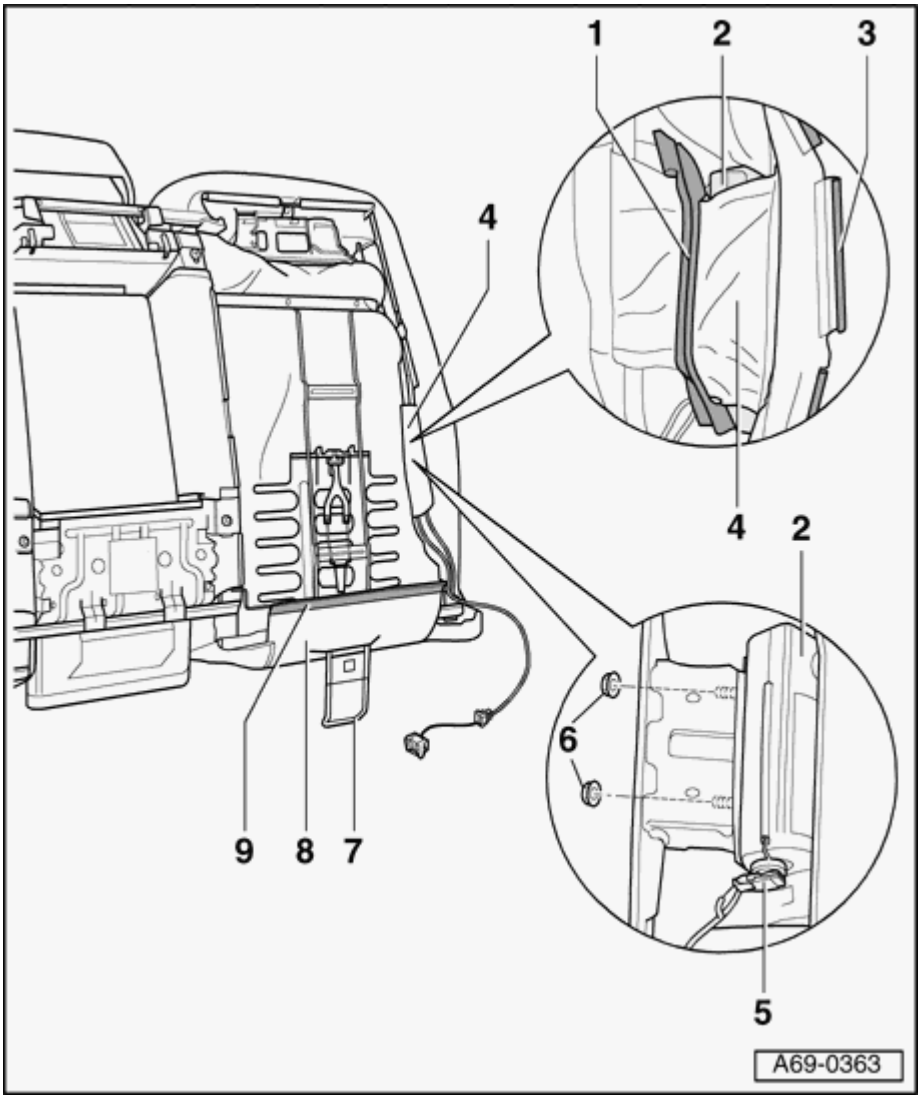


Fig. 154: Rear Side Airbag (Non-Foldable Backrest) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Zip fastener

2 - Driver-side and passenger-side rear side airbags

- Removal:

  - Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
    - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

    .
  - Remove rear seat bench: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles up**

cardiagn.com

to 10.04 , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.

- Remove rear seat backrest --> **Fixed backrest, removing and installing**.
- Pry out side clamping strips - **3** - using a screwdriver.
- Pry out lower clamping strip - **9** - using a screwdriver.
- Slide cover - **8** - at bottom over bracket - **7** -.
- Turn back cover in area of side airbag - **2** -.
- Unzip - **1** - protective cover of side airbag - **4** -.
- Open securing clip at side airbag connector - **5** - and disconnect connector.
- Turn back cover and upholstery in area of side airbag - **2** - far enough so the back side of the side airbag is accessible.
- Remove nuts - **6** - (2x).
- Remove side airbag - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

- Install side airbag - **2** - in reverse order of removal.
- Fasten zip - **1** - at protective cover for side airbag - **4** - , using closing pliers VAS 6273.
- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

3 - Side retaining strips

4 - Protective cover for side airbag

cardiagn.com

5 - Connector for side airbag

6 - Nuts (2x)

7 - Support

8 - Cover

9 - Lower retaining strip

Rear side airbag (foldable backrest), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

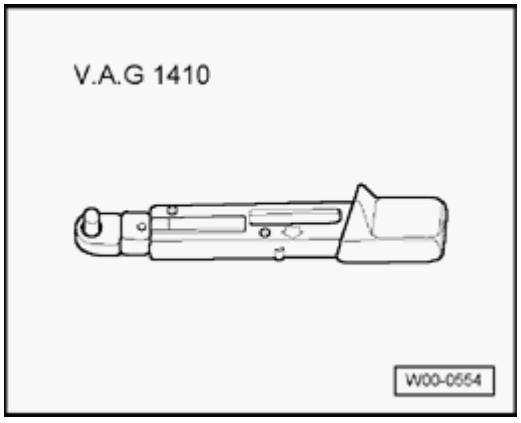


Fig. 155: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

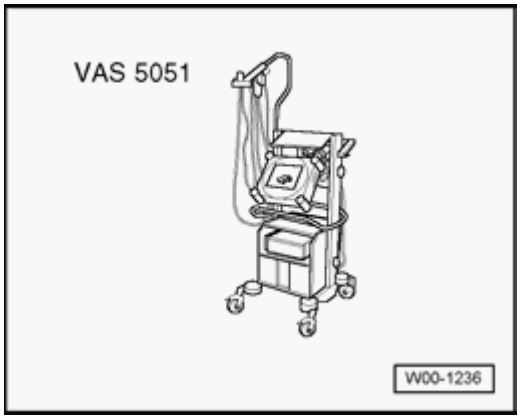


Fig. 156: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

cardiagn.com

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

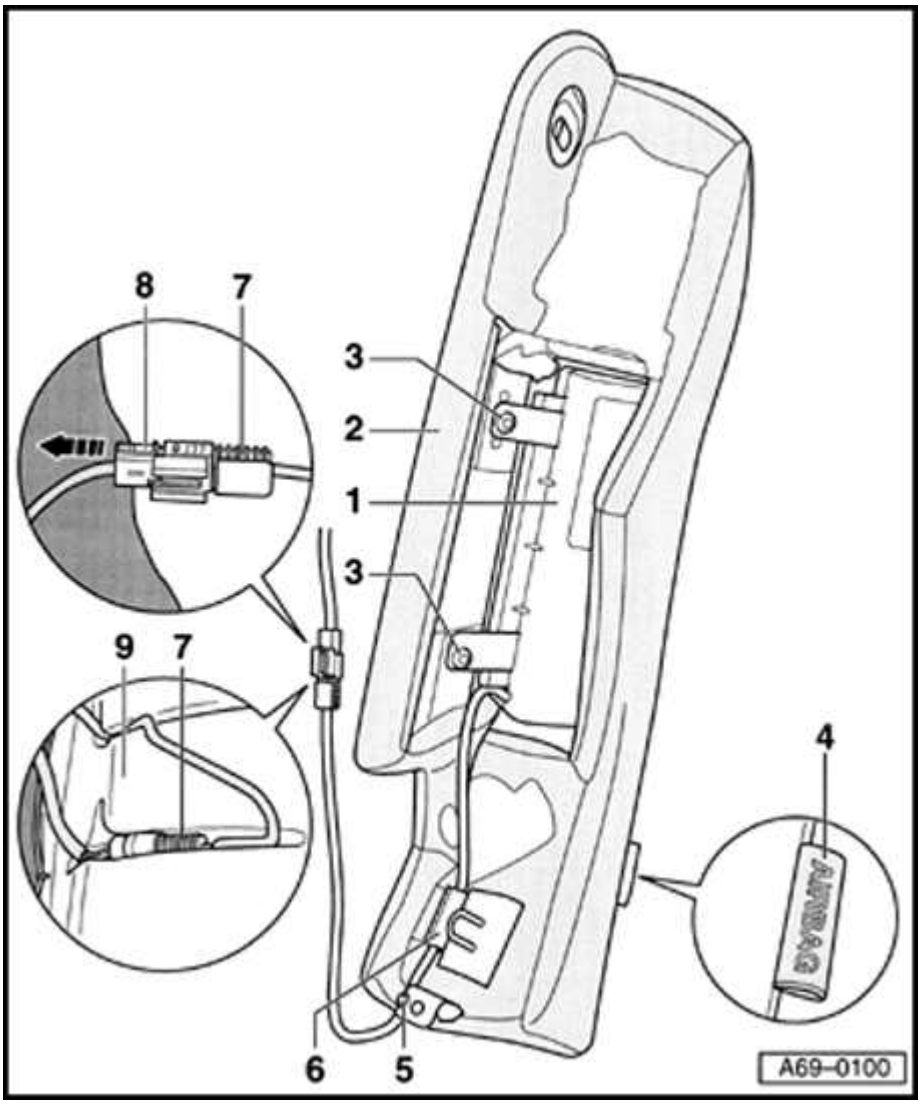


Fig. 157: Rear Side Airbag (Foldable Backrest) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Driver-side and passenger-side rear side airbags

- Removal:

  - Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
    - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

cardiagn.com

- Remove rear seat bench: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles up to 10.04** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.
- Remove connector for airbag - **7** - from groove of rear seat upholstery - **9** -.
- Disconnect connector for airbag - **7** - by pressing catch - **8** -.
- Remove left or right rear side bolsters --> **Rear seat side padding, removing and installing**.
- Cut cable tie - **5** -.
- Open cable channel - **6** -.
- Remove bolts - **3** - (Qty. 2).
- Remove side airbag module - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

- Install airbag unit.
- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

2 - Side upholstery

3 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

4 - Airbag label

cardiagn.com

- Indicates a side panel for side airbag.

5 - Cable tie

6 - Cable channel

7 - Airbag unit connector

8 - Retaining tab

9 - Rear seat upholstery

SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG, SERVICING

Side curtain airbag (Sedan), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

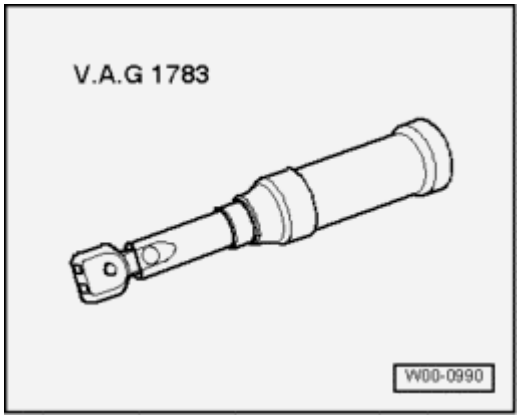
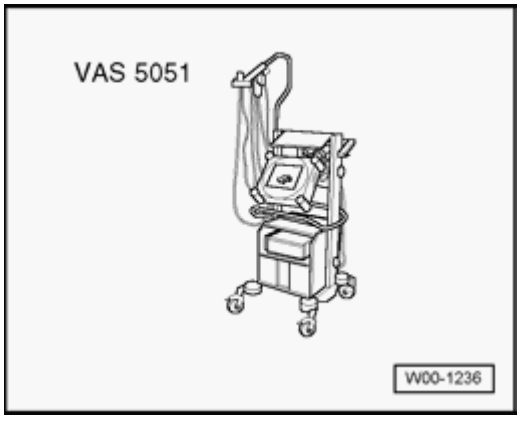


Fig. 158: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783



cardiagn.com

Fig. 159: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

NOTE:

- **There are 2 airbag versions. Both versions are described in the following. Determine which version the vehicle has and performed the corresponding activities.**
- **Version 1 Version 1**
- **Version 2 Version 2**

Version 1

cardiagn.com

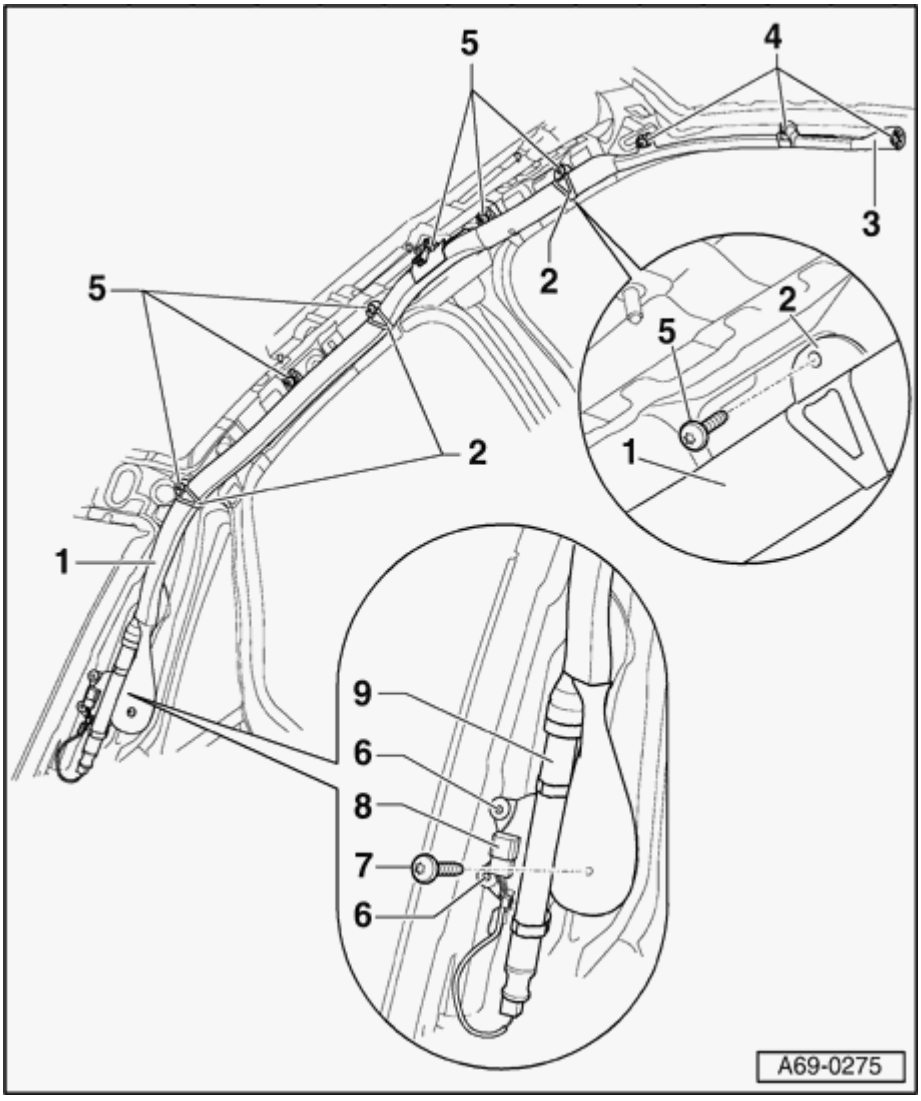


Fig. 160: Side Curtain Airbag (Sedan) Remove/Install Components (Version 1)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Side curtain airbag

- Removal:

  - Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
    - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

    .
  - Remove sun visor --> **Sun visor, removing and installing**.
  - Remove upper trim on A-pillar --> **Upper A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove upper B-pillar trim --> **Upper B-pillar trim, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove roof end --> **Roof end trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove D-pillar trim --> **D-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
- Disconnect harness connectors **Disconnect side curtain airbag connector**.
- Loosen three bolts - **4** -.
- Loosen six bolts - **5** -.
- Remove screw - **7** -.
- Remove three brackets - **2** - from roof frame.
- Place front part of side curtain airbag module on seats.
- Loosen two bolts - **6** -.
- Remove head-level airbag - **1** - from vehicle.

- **Installing:**

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

CAUTION: Always follow side curtain airbag installation procedure.

- Insert center bracket - **2** -.
- Insert remaining brackets - **2** -.
- Install two bolts - **6** -.
- Tighten bolt - **7** -.
- Secure airbag module to B-pillar with two bolts - **5** - **Side curtain airbag fastener to B-pillar**.
- Secure three brackets - **2** - using three bolts - **5** -.
- Install last bolt - **5** -.
- Install outer bolts - **4** -.
- Install center bolt - **4** -.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

cardiagn.com

- Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

2 - Bracket (Qty. 5)

3 - Tab

4 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 4 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

5 - Screws (6x)

- Tightening torque 4 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

6 - Bolts (Qty. 2)

- Tightening torque 4 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

7 - Screw

- Tightening torque 4 Nm

cardiagn.com

- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

8 - Side curtain airbag connector

9 - Gas generator

Side curtain airbag fastener to B-pillar

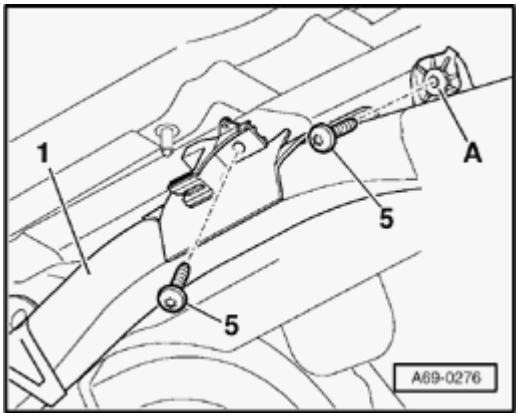


Fig. 161: Side Curtain Airbag Fastener To B-Pillar
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1. Side curtain airbag

   - Screw in bolts - **5** -.

Tightening torque: 4 Nm

Disconnect side curtain airbag connector

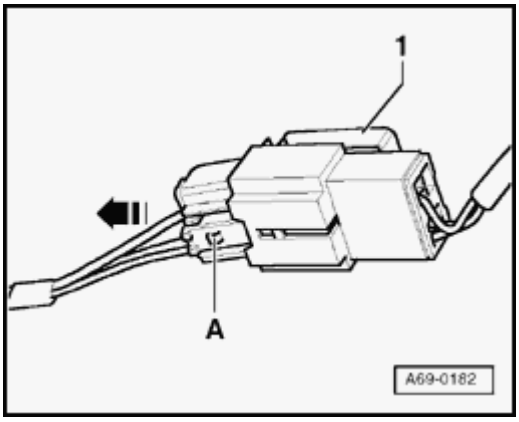


Fig. 162: Disconnect Side Curtain Airbag Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Press catch - **A** - and disconnect connector in direction of arrow.

1. Connector retaining base

Version 2

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

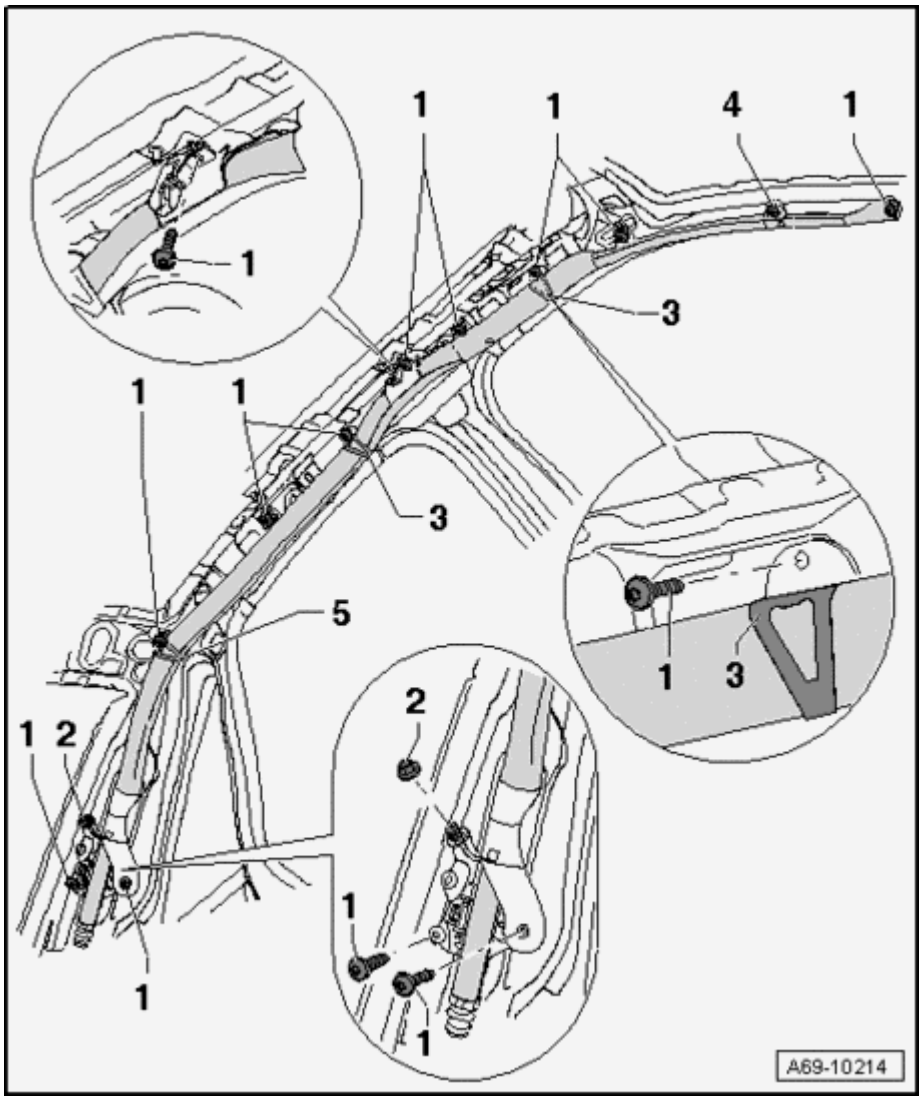


Fig. 163: Side Curtain Airbag (Sedan) Remove/Install Components (Version 2)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Bolt (Qty. 10)

- Tightening torque 4 Nm

cardiagn.com

- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

2 - Cap nut

- Tightening torque --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations

3 - Retainers (2x)

4 - Bolt (Qty. 1)

- Tightening torque 4 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

5 - Bracket (Qty. 1)

- Removal:

  - Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
    - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

    .

  - Remove sun visor --> **Sun visor, removing and installing**.
  - Remove upper trim on A-pillar --> **Upper A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove upper B-pillar trim --> **Upper B-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove roof end --> **Roof end trim, removing and installing**.

  - Remove D-pillar trim --> **D-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Disconnect connector on side curtain airbag **Side curtain airbag connector, disconnecting**
  - Remove bolt - **4** -.
  - Remove bolts (Qty. 2) - **1** - in area of gas generator.

  - Loosen cap nut - **2** - in area of gas generator.
  - Remove bolts - **1** -.
  - Unclip bracket - **3** - and remaining brackets up to bracket - **5** - from roof frame.
  - Remove cap nut - **2** - in area of gas generator.

cardiagn.com

- Firmly hold side curtain airbag, unclip bracket - **5** - from roof frame and remove airbag from vehicle.

Side curtain airbag connector, disconnecting

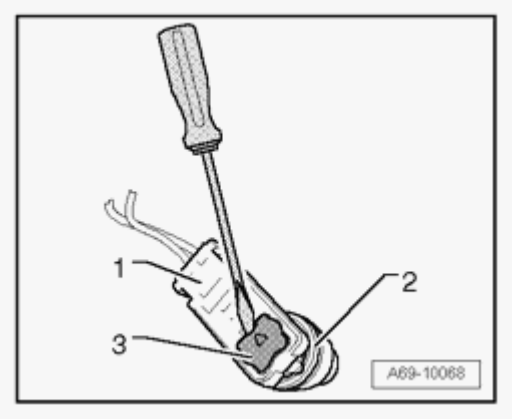


Fig. 164: Unlocking Connector Lock With Small Screwdriver & Disconnecting Connector From Ignition Pill
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- **Removing:**

- Unlock connector lock with a small screwdriver - **3** -.
- Disconnect connector - **1** - from ignition pill - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

CAUTION: Always follow side curtain airbag installation procedure.

- Clip bracket - **5** - into roof frame.

cardiagn.com

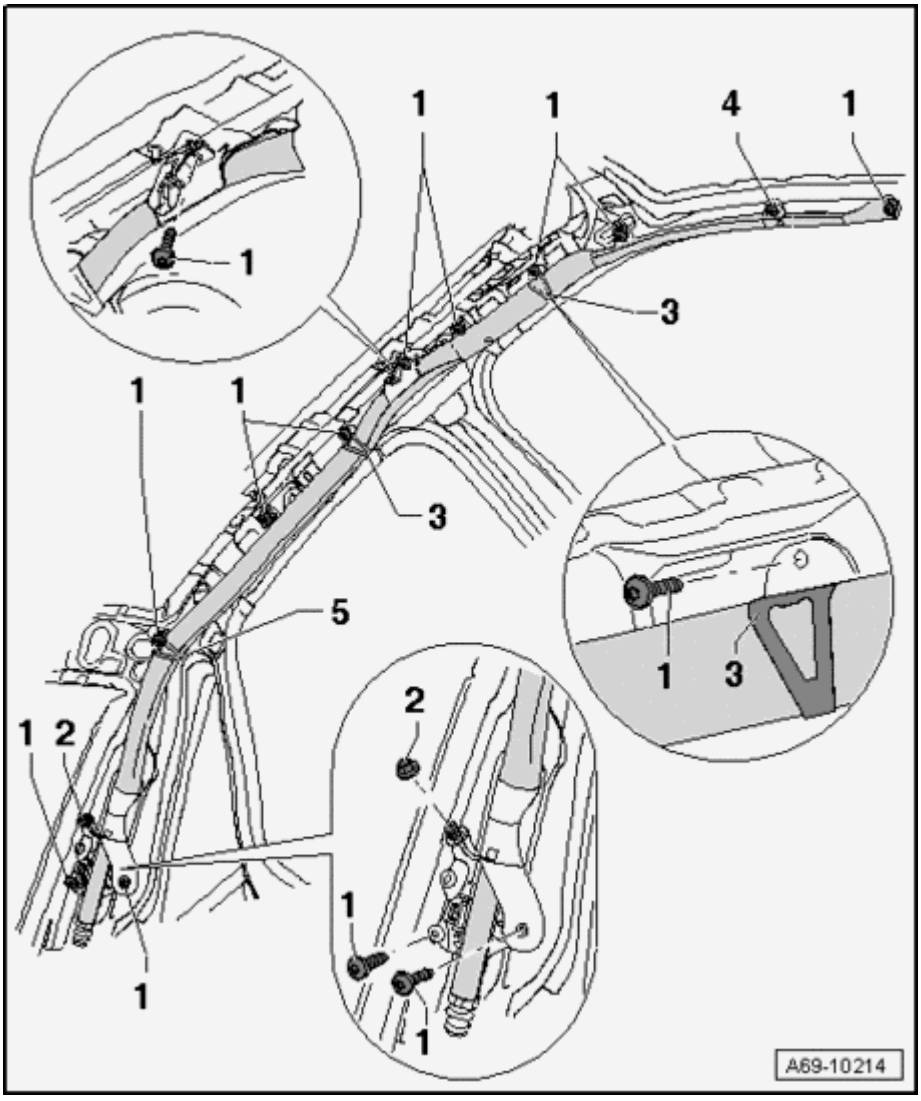


Fig. 165: Side Curtain Airbag (Sedan) Remove/Install Components (Version 2)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engage side curtain airbag by threaded pins - **2** - and tighten nut by hand.
- Clip in bracket - **3** - and remaining brackets.
- Tighten bolt - **1** - on bracket - **5** -.
- Tighten remaining bolts - **1** -.

- Tighten bolt - **4** -.
- Tighten nut 2.

Installation is reverse of removal, noting the following:

- Switch on ignition.

cardiagn.com

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

Side curtain airbag (Avant), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

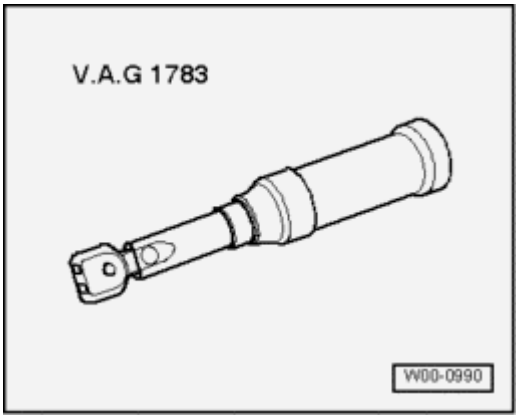


Fig. 166: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

cardiagn.com

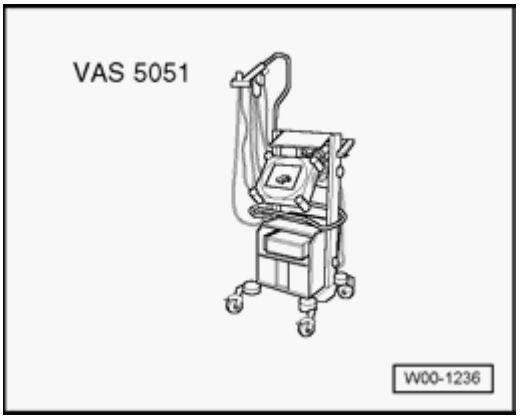


Fig. 167: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

NOTE:

- **There are 2 airbag versions. Both versions are described in the following. Determine which version the vehicle has and performed the corresponding activities.**
- **Version 1 Version 1**
- **Version 2 Version 2**

Version 1

cardiagn.com

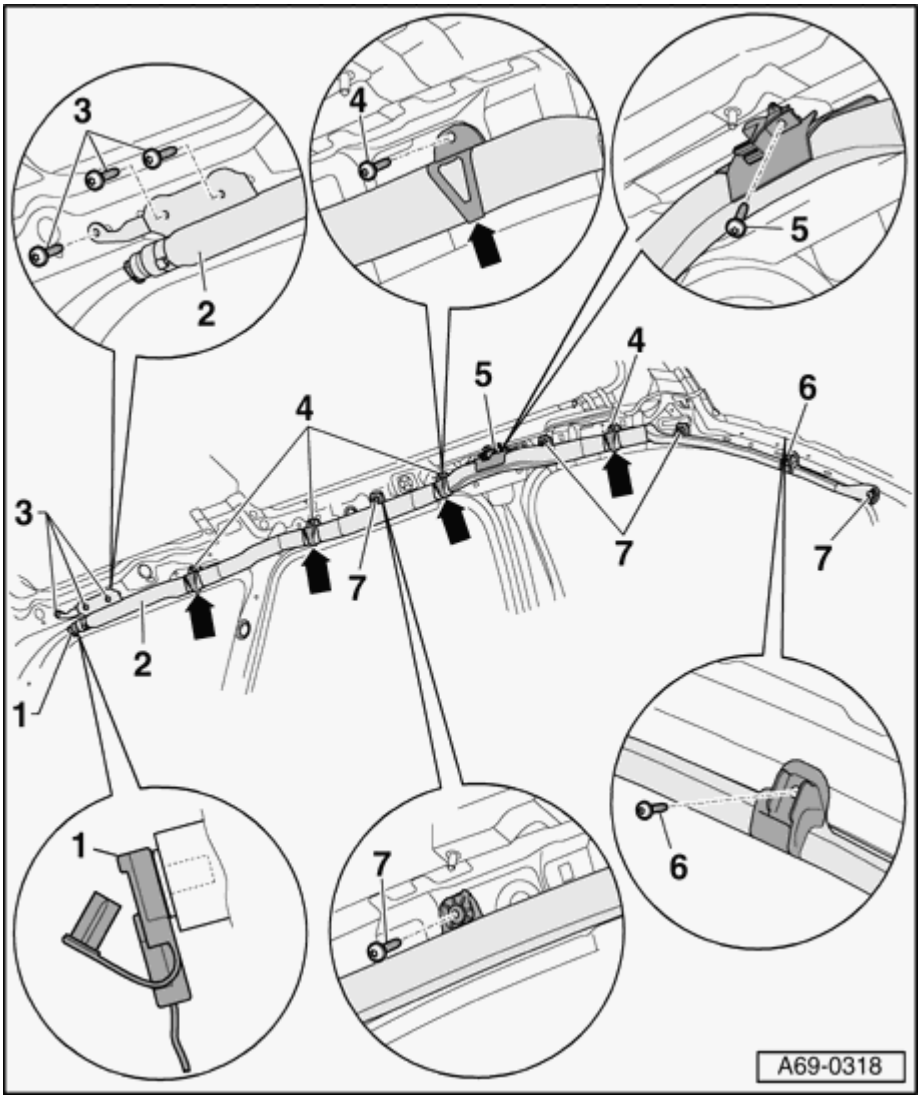


Fig. 168: Side Curtain Airbag (Avant) Remove/Install Components (Version 1)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Side curtain airbag connector

2 - Side curtain airbag

- Removal:

  - Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
    - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

    .
  - Remove sun visor --> **Sun visor, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove upper trim on A-pillar --> **Upper A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove D-pillar trim --> **D-pillar trim, removing and installing**.

- Remove trim above rear door --> **Trim above rear door, removing and installing**.
- To disconnect harness connector - **1** - , open fuse using a screwdriver.
- Remove screw - **6** -.
- Loosen four bolts - **7** -.

- Remove screw - **5** -.
- Place front part of side curtain airbag module on seats.
- Loosen three bolts - **3** -.
- Remove four bolts - **4** - and remove brackets - **arrows** - from roof frame.

- Remove head-level airbag - **2** - from vehicle.

- **Installing:**

CAUTION: Always follow side curtain airbag installation procedure.

- Insert brackets - **arrows** -.
- Secure four brackets -arrows- beginning from behind with four bolts - **4** -.
- Install three bolts - **3** -.
- Install last bolt - **5** -.

- Install four bolts - **7** -.
- Install bolt - **6** -.
- When connecting harness connector - **1** - , make sure that it is firmly engaged.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

cardiagn.com

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

3 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

4 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

5 - Screw

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

6 - Screw

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

7 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly

cardiagn.com

- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

Version 2

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

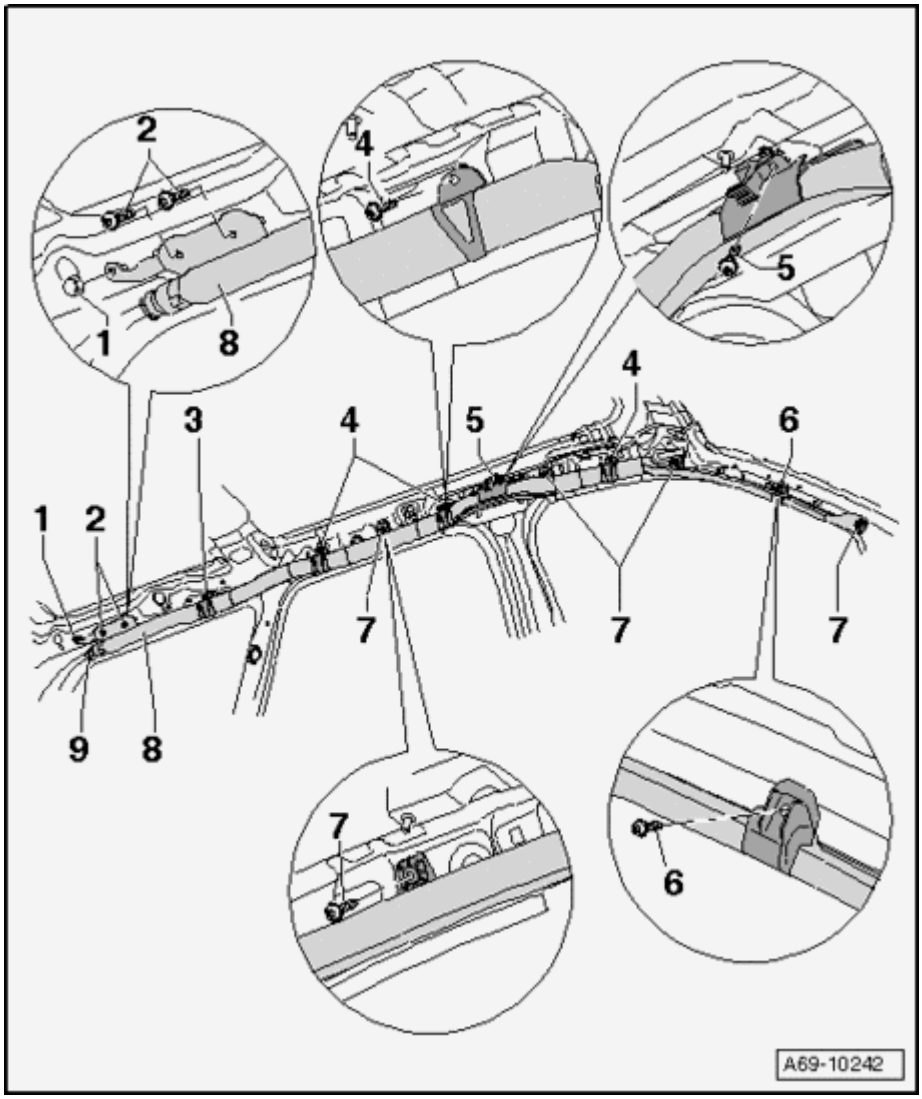


Fig. 169: Side Curtain Airbag (Avant) Remove/Install Components (Version 2)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cap nut

- Tightening torque --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations

2 - Screws, (2x)

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

3 - Screw

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

4 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm
- self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

5 - Screw

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

6 - Screw

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

7 - Screw

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm
- Self-locking
- Qty. 4
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

cardiagn.com

8 - Side curtain airbag

9 - Side curtain airbag connector

- Removal:

  - Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
    - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

    .

  - Remove sun visor --> **Sun visor, removing and installing**.
  - Remove upper trim on A-pillar --> **Upper A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove D-pillar trim --> **D-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove trim above rear door --> **Trim above rear door, removing and installing**.

  - Disconnect connector - **9** - on side curtain airbag **Side curtain airbag connector, disconnecting**
  - Remove bolt - **6** -.
  - Remove bolts - **2** - (Qty. 2) in area of gas generator.
  - Remove cap nut - **1** - in area of gas generator.

  - Remove bolts - **4** - , - **5** - and - **7** -
  - Remove bolt - **3** -.
  - Unclip bracket - **6** - and remaining brackets up to bracket - **3** - from roof frame. Firmly hold side curtain airbag.
  - Unclip bracket - **3** - from roof frame and remove side curtain airbag from vehicle.

Side curtain airbag connector, disconnecting

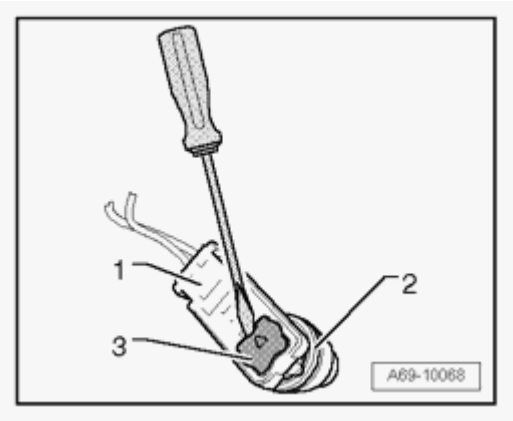


Fig. 170: Unlocking Connector Lock With Small Screwdriver & Disconnecting Connector From Ignition Pill

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- **Removing:**

- Unlock connector lock with a small screwdriver - **3** -.
- Disconnect connector - **1** - from ignition pill - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

CAUTION: Always follow side curtain airbag installation procedure.

- Clip bracket - **3** - into roof frame.

cardiagn.com

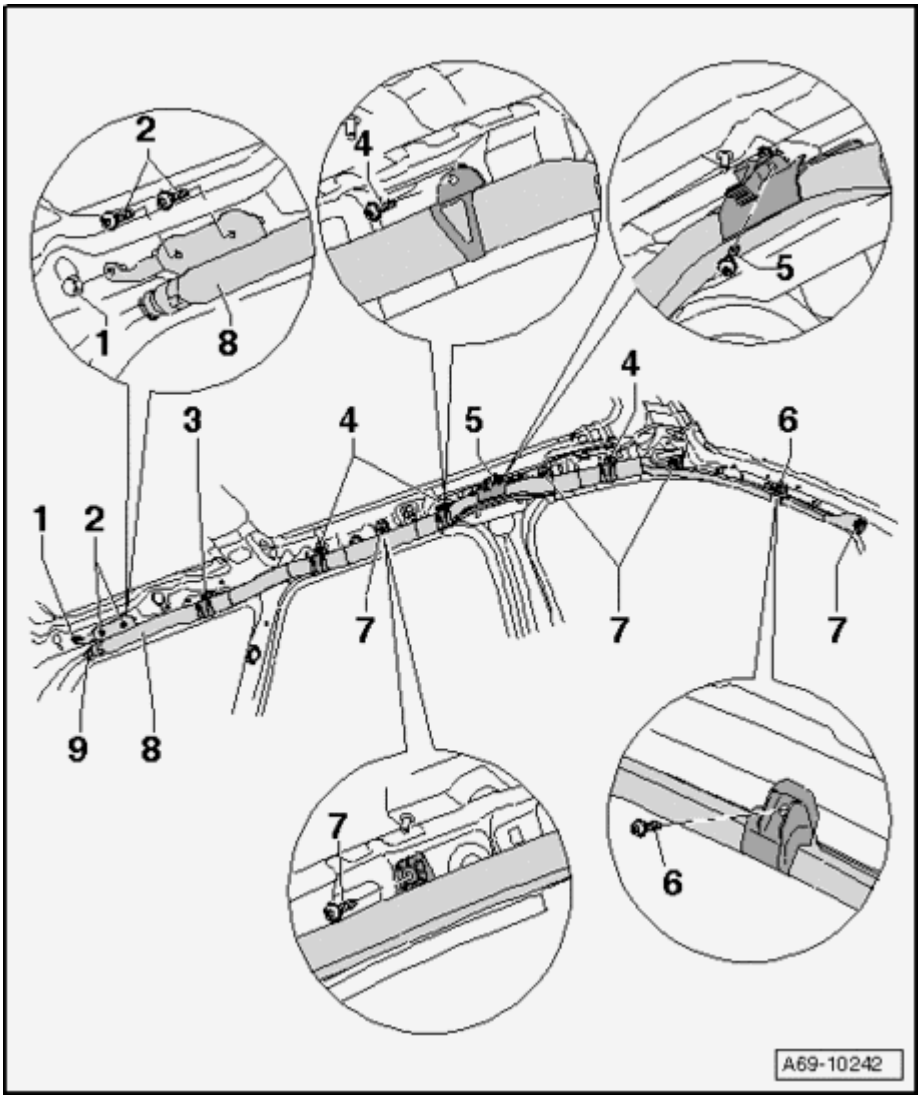


Fig. 171: Side Curtain Airbag (Avant) Remove/Install Components (Version 2)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Clip in brackets - **4** - , - **5** - , - **6** - and - **7** -.
- Tighten bolt - **3** -.
- Engage side curtain airbag at threaded pins and tighten nut - **1** - by hand.
- Tighten bolts - **2** -.

- Tighten bolts - **4** - , - **5** - and - **7** - and and.
- Tighten bolt - **6** -.
- Tighten nuts - **1** -.

Installation is reverse of removal, noting the following:

- Switch on ignition.

cardiagn.com

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

AIRBAG CRASH SENSORS, SERVICING

Front airbag crash sensor, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

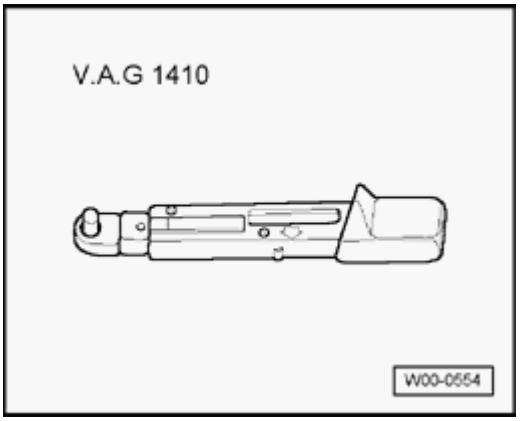


Fig. 172: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

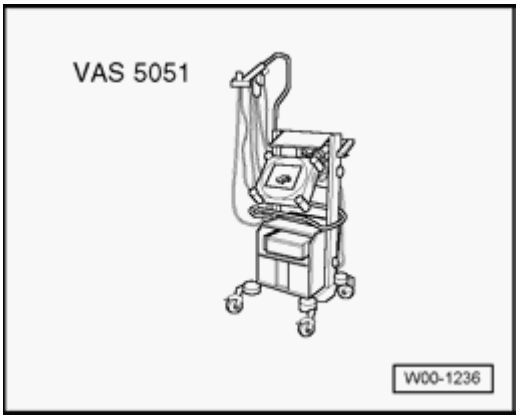


Fig. 173: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

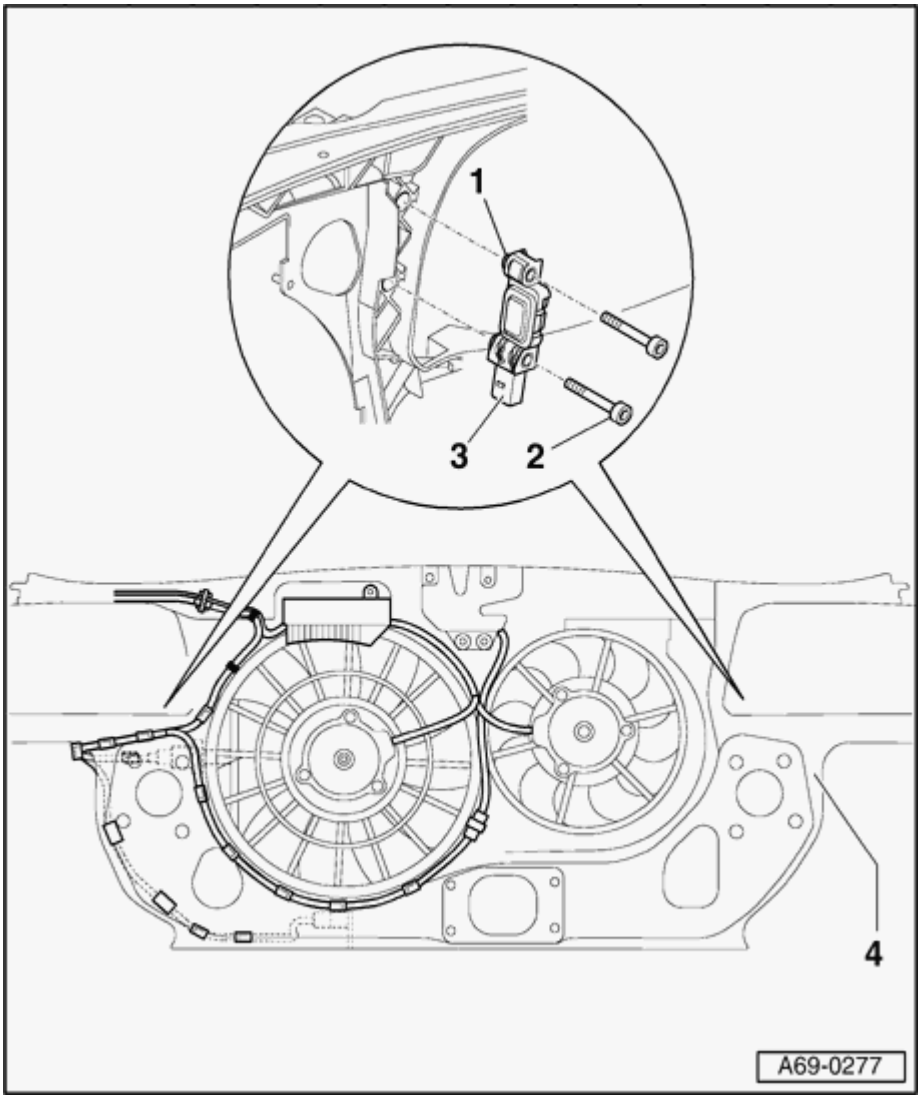


Fig. 174: Front Airbag Crash Sensor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front airbag crash sensor

- Removal:

  - Disconnect battery Ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
    - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

    .
  - Depending on engine version, remove air duct if necessary.
  - Disengage tab on yellow connector - **3** - and disconnect connector.
  - Remove two bolts - **2** - on crash sensor - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

2 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

3 - Connector

4 - Lock carrier

Crash sensor for front side airbag, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.2004)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

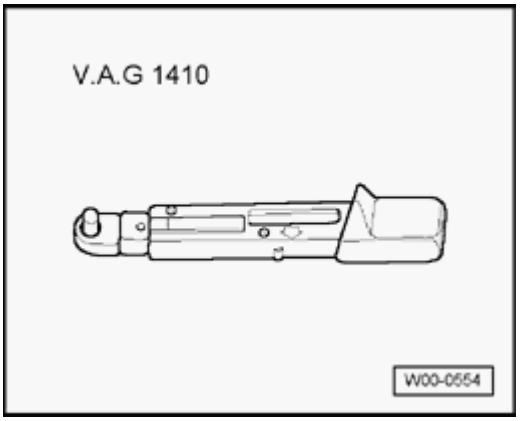


Fig. 175: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

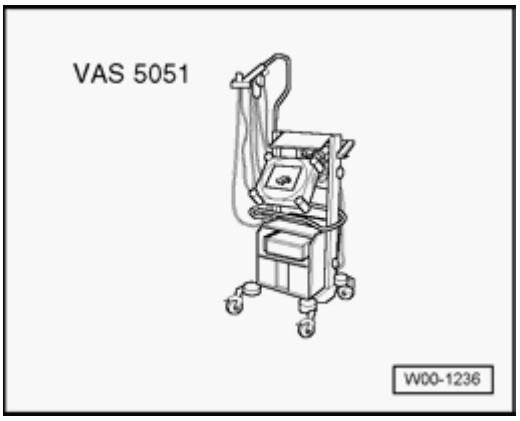


Fig. 176: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

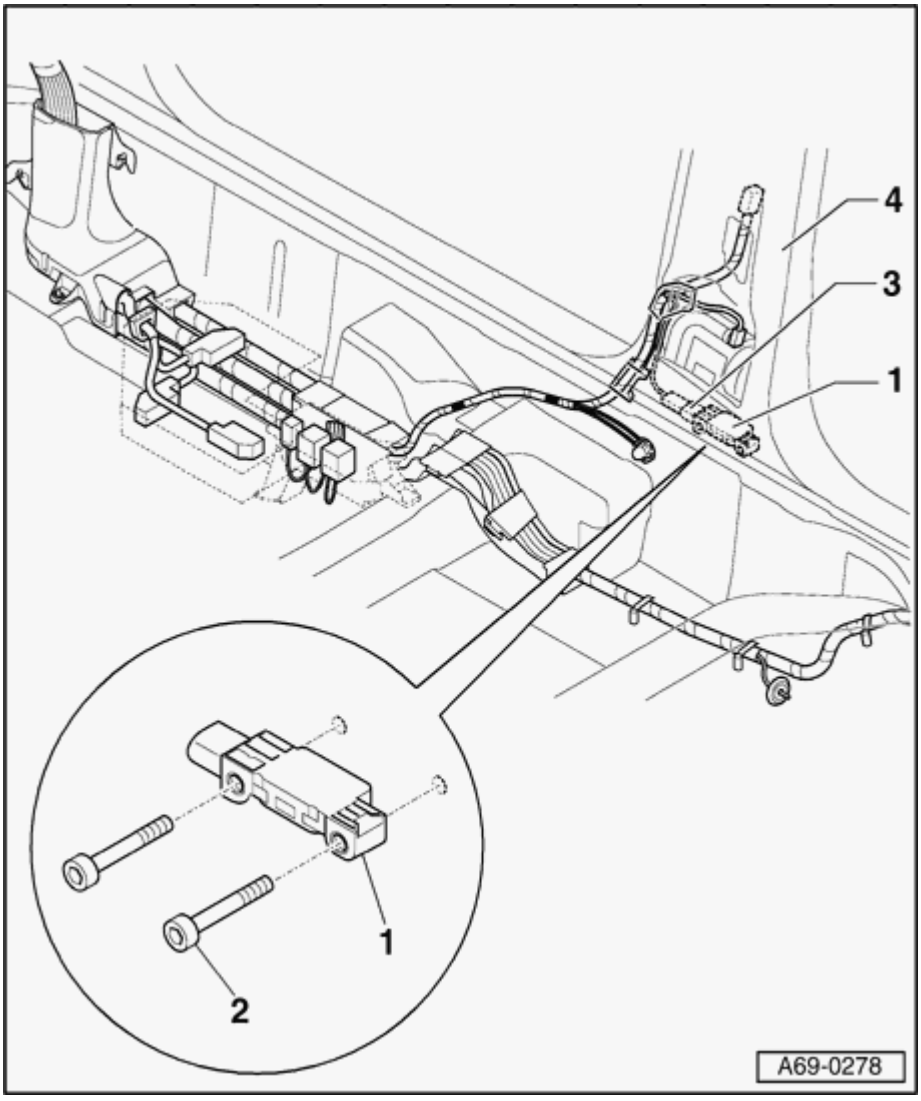


Fig. 177: Crash Sensor For Front Side Airbag (Vehicles Up To 10.2004) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Crash sensor for front side airbag

- Removal:

NOTE:

- **In the illustration, crash sensor for front side airbag is depicted on the passenger side. The removal and installation on the drivers side is done in the same way.**

  - Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
    - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

cardiagn.com

.

- Remove lower B-pillar trim --> **Lower B-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
- Loosen seatbelt, complete removal is not necessary --> **Three-point seat belt with belt height adjuster, removing and installing**.
- Remove lower B-pillar foam piece.

- Remove two bolts - **2** - at crash sensor from outside.
- Disengage tab on yellow connector - **3** - and disconnect connector.

- **Installing:**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

2 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

3 - Connector

4 - B-pillar

Precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag (vehicles from 11.2004)

Crash sensors for side airbags react to changes in pressure and therefore must be handled extremely carefully. Note the following points:

cardiagn.com

CAUTION:

- **Always follow correct installation position: Install only in designation location in door.**
- **Protect crash sensor from blows and impact: Do not use a crash sensor that has fallen to the floor. Remove crash sensor when doing body work on door.**
- **The crash sensor is adjusted to the air volume in the door interior. A deformity to the door that reduces air space in the door hinders the function of the crash sensor.**
- **Avoid heavy soiling to the crash sensor. Do not use compressed air around crash sensor. Protect crash sensor from filings or shavings (e.g. when installing door speakers later). Do not use cavity sealant or spray lubricant in the area of the crash sensor.**
- **Protection from heat/cold: Avoid effects of heat, e.g when painting or performing other body work. Crash sensors should be subject to temperatures below 40° C (for example, in non-climatized airplane cargo holds).**
- **Protect crash sensor from moisture when storing and installing.**

For failure-free crash sensor function, effective door seal must be guaranteed after installation. Note the following points:

- All components (e.g. cover, speaker, door trim) must be installed correctly.
- The door trim clips seal the system. Replace door trim clip if necessary.

Crash sensor for front side airbag (pressure sensors), removing and installing (vehicles from 11.2004)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

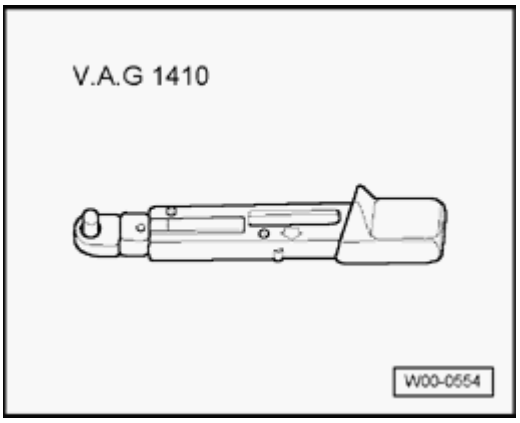


Fig. 178: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

Removing and installing

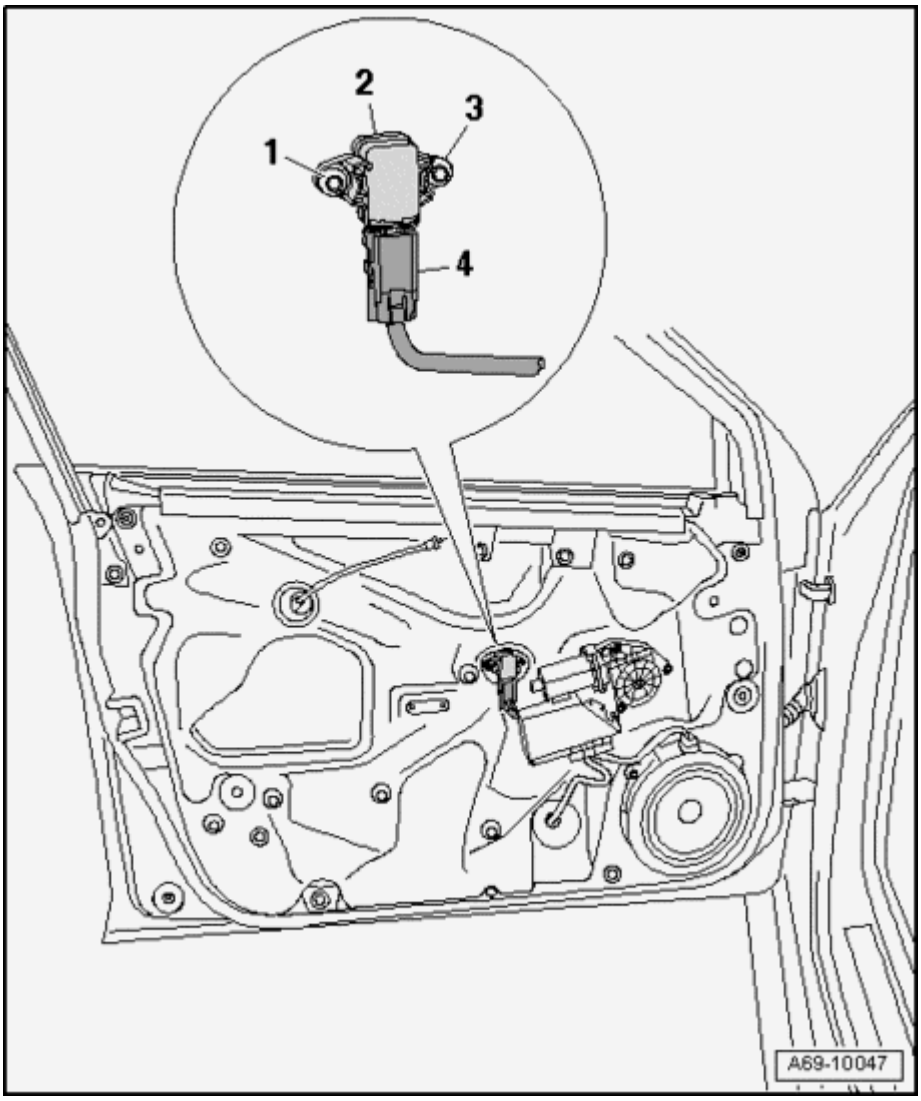


Fig. 179: Crash Sensor For Front Side Airbag (Pressure Sensors) (Vehicles From 11.2004) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Bolt (5 Nm)

2 - Crash sensor for front side airbag

- Drivers side: Driver-side side airbag crash sensor G179
- Passengers side: Passenger-side side airbag crash sensor G180

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions and precautionary measures for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag --> Precautionary measures for handling

cardiagn.com

crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag (vehicles from 11.2004).

Removing

- Clamp off ground wire at battery with ignition switched off -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- Remove door trim --> **Front door trim, removing and installing**.
- Disconnect electrical connector - **4** - on crash sensor.
- Remove screws - **1** - and - **3** -.
- Remove crash sensor for front side airbag.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal, but note the following:

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect battery ground strap.
- Follow measures after connecting battery -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .

NOTE:

- **If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and then checked again.**

3 - Bolt (5 Nm)

4 - Electrical connection

Crash sensor for rear side airbag (side curtain airbag), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

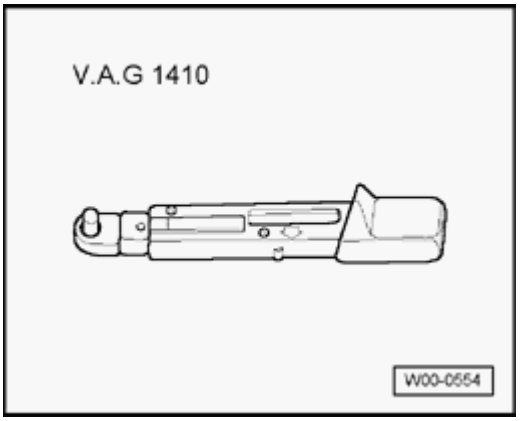


Fig. 180: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

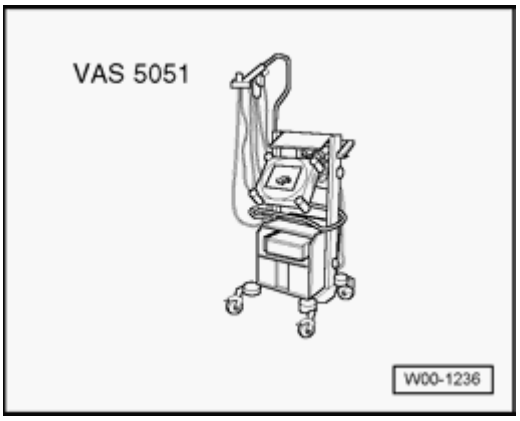


Fig. 181: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

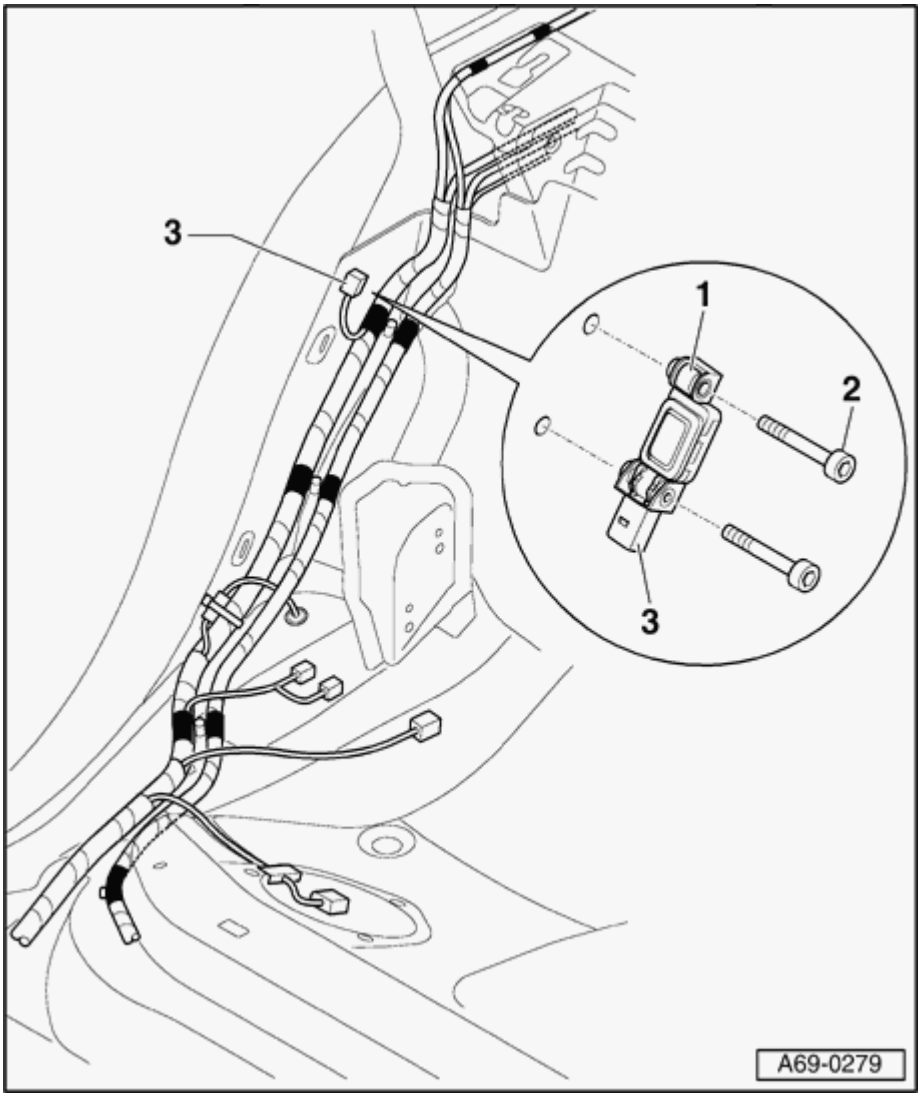


Fig. 182: Crash Sensor For Rear Side Airbag (Side Curtain Airbag) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Crash sensor for rear side airbag

- Removal:

NOTE:

- **In the illustration, crash sensor for rear side airbag is depicted on the passenger side. The removal and installation on the drivers side is done in the same way.**

  - Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
    - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
    - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

cardiagn.com

.

- Remove side upholstery.
- Disengage tab on yellow connector - **3** - and disconnect connector.
- Remove two bolts - **2** - on crash sensor.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: No one should be in vehicle when connecting battery.

- Connect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

2 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

3 - Acceleration sensor connector

SEAT BELT LATCH DETECTION

Seat belt latch detection

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

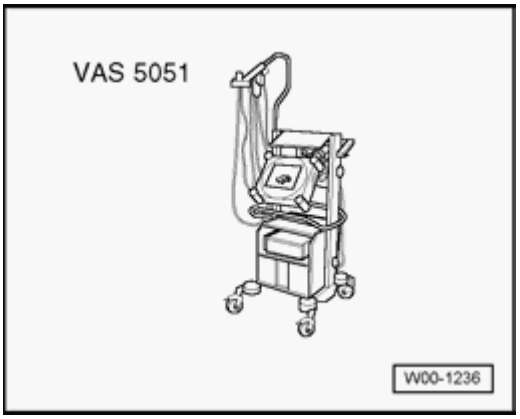


Fig. 183: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 B

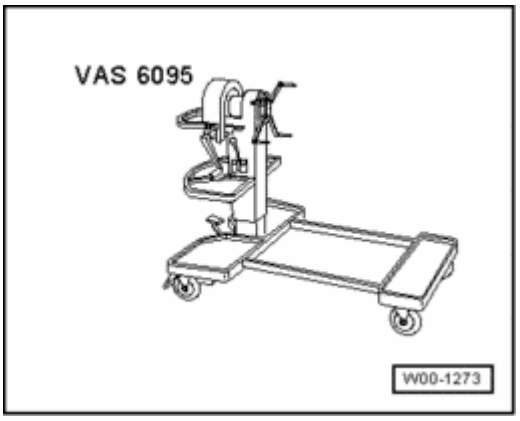


Fig. 184: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

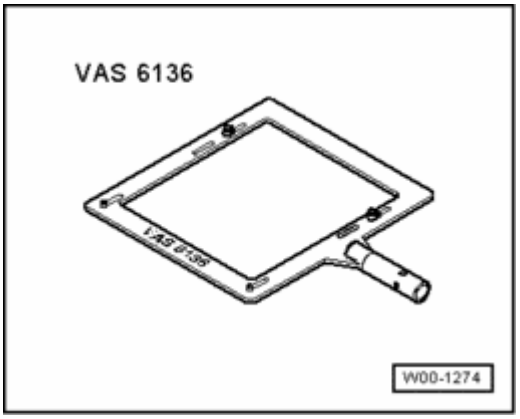


Fig. 185: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

Removing

NOTE:

- **The Front Passenger s Seat Occupied Sensor G128 is only installed on passengers side.**

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

- Remove passenger seat:

- Front seats (standard seat) - vehicles through 10.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**
- Front seats (standard seat) - vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat) - vehicles from 11.04**
- Front seats (power seat with memory) - vehicles through 10.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**
- Front seats (power seat with memory) - vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**

- Front Recaro seats - vehicles through 10.04 --> **Seat, removing and installing**
- Front Recaro seats - vehicles from 11.04 --> **Seat, removing and installing**

- Remove seat pan cover and padding:

- 1.1. Seating area (standard seat) cover and upholstery, removing and installing --> **Seating area cover and upholstery, removing and installing (standard seat)**
- 1.2. Seat pan cover and upholstery (sport seat), removing and installing --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**
- 2.1. Seat pan cover and upholstery (standard seat), removing and installing --> **Cover and upholstery for seat pan, removing and installing (standard seat)**
- 2.2. Seat pan cover and upholstery (sport seat), removing and installing --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**

- 3.1 Seat pan cover and padding, removing and installing --> **Seat pan cover and padding, removing and installing**

NOTE:

- **Remove padding only until Front Passengers Seat Occupied Sensor G128 - 2 - has been freed up!**

cardiagn.com

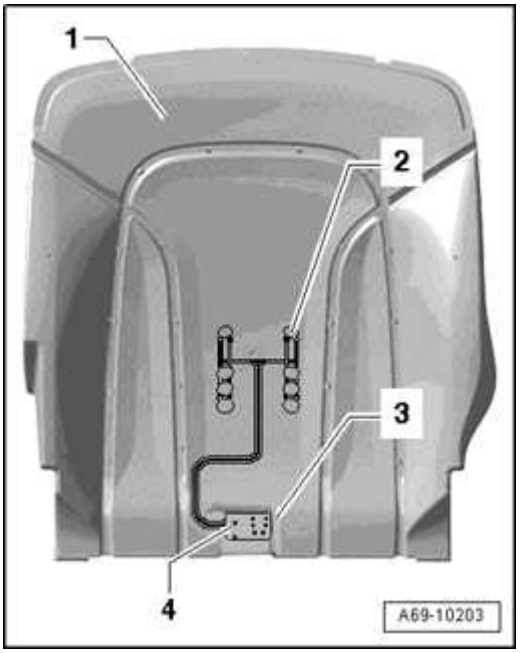


Fig. 186: Removing/Installing Front Passengers Seat Occupied Sensor G128 Connector & Front Passengers Seat Occupied Sensor G128
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove Front Passengers Seat Occupied Sensor G128 connector - **2** -.
- Carefully remove Front Passengers Seat Occupied Sensor G128 - **2** - from seat padding - **1** -.

Installing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

cardiagn.com

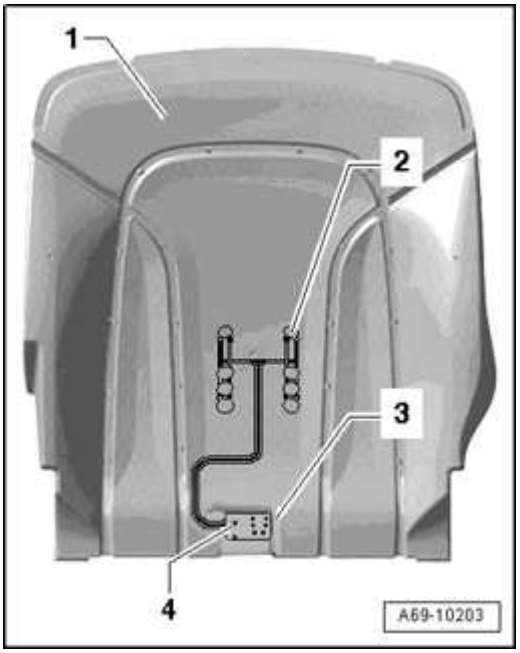


Fig. 187: Removing/Installing Front Passengers Seat Occupied Sensor G128 Connector & Front Passengers Seat Occupied Sensor G128
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Position circuit board - **4** - from Front Passengers Seat Occupied Sensor G128 - **2** - in cut-out - **3** - in seat padding - **1** -.
- Align Front Passenger s Seat Occupied Sensor G128 - **2** - on seat padding - **1** - as shown in illustration.
- Remove protective foil and adhere Front Passenger s Seat Occupied Sensor G128 - **2** - to seat padding - **1** -.

PASSIVE OCCUPANT DETECTION SYSTEM (PODS) (USA), SERVICING

Passive Occupant Detection System (PODS), removing and installing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

CAUTION: The replacement part (service kit) for the seat occupied recognition system is already precalibrated and must not be separated under any circumstances. The service kit consists of:

- **Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706**
- **Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452**
- **Seat Occupied Recognition Mat**
- **Seat cushion**

cardiagn.com

- **Wiring harness between Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module - J706 and Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452.**

NOTE:

- **The seat occupied recognition system is only equipped on the front passenger seat.**

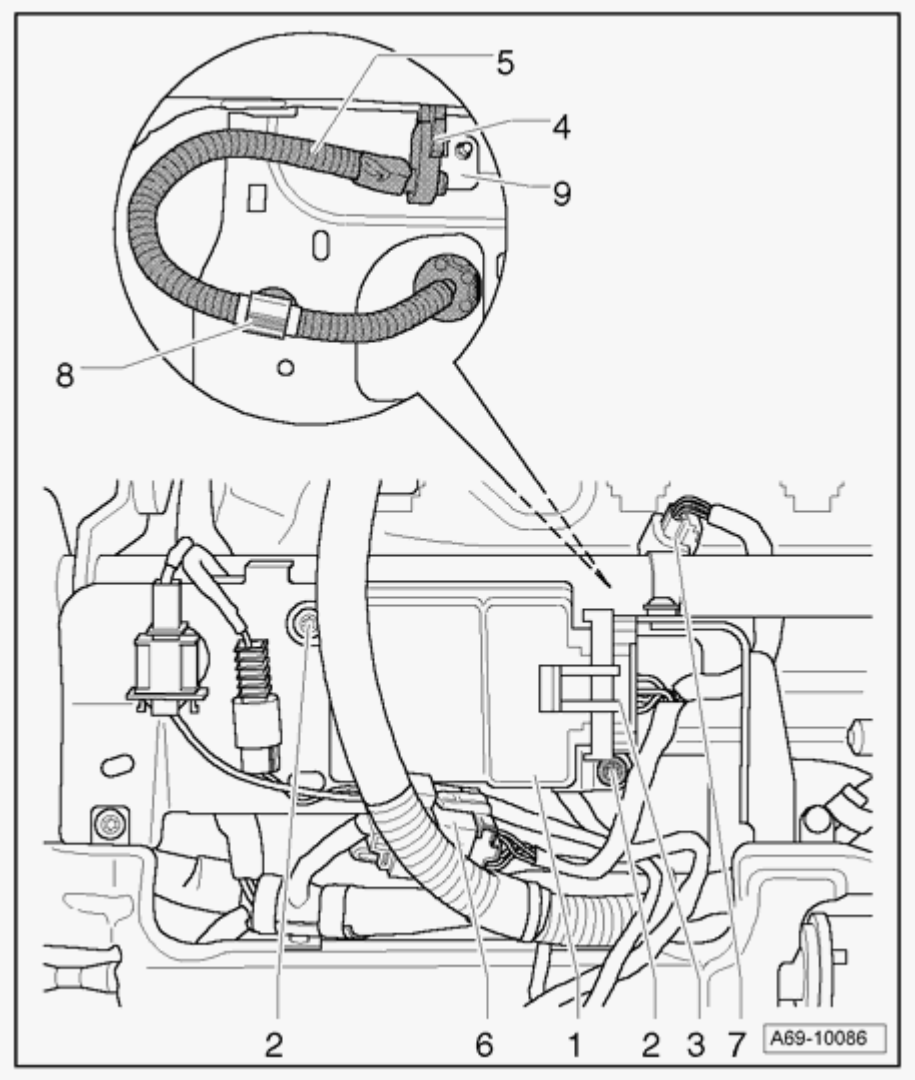


Fig. 188: Passive Occupant Detection System (PODS) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706

Removing

- Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**

cardiagn.com

- **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

- Remove the passenger seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Disconnect connector - **6** -.
- Remove bolts - **2** - (Qty. 2).
- Remove cover upholstery --> **Front seat covers and upholstery** , for power seat --> **Cover and upholstery for seat pan, removing and installing (standard seat)**.
- Open the guide clip - **8** -.

CAUTION: Connectors - 3 - and - 7 - must not be separated.

- Slide pressure sensor -G452- - **4** - along the side of the bracket - **9** -.

2 - Bolts

- 2.5 Nm

3 - Connector on Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706

- Must not be separated under any circumstances.

4 - Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452

5 - Pressure hose

6 - Harness connector between service kit and seat wiring harness

7 - Connector on Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452

- Must not be separated under any circumstances.

8 - Guide clip

9 - Retaining bracket

cardiagn.com

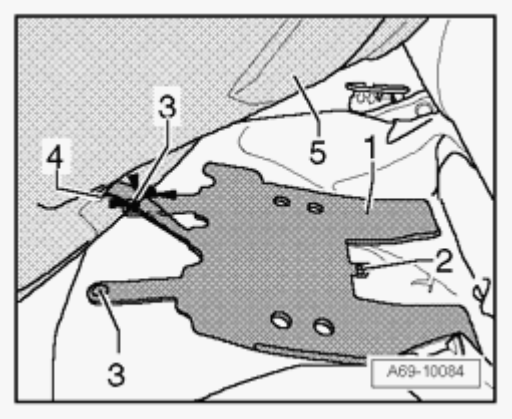


Fig. 189: Service Kit, Removing/Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Service kit, removing

- Fold the cushion - **5** - upward.

NOTE:

- **The cushion is included as part of the service kit.**
- **Clip - 4 - must not be separated.**
- **The hard foam insert in the crease is not included in the service kit.**

- Remove clips - **2** - and - **3** - (Qty. 2).
- Carefully pull mat for seat occupied recognition - **1** - with upholstery - **5** - upward, when doing this guide Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452- and Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706- through seat pan without disconnecting harness connectors.
- Remove the complete service kit.

CAUTION: The pressure hose and the Seat Occupied Recognition Mat - 1 - must not be kinked under any circumstances during repairs.

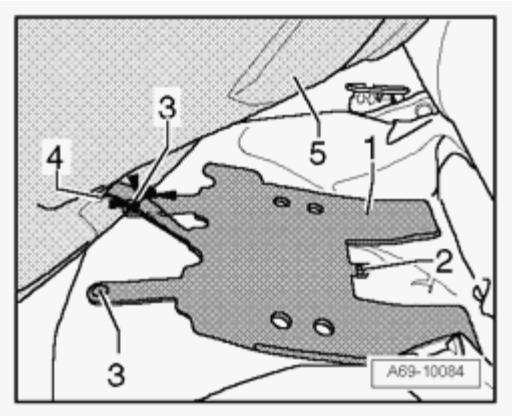


Fig. 190: Service Kit, Removing/Installing

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Service kit, installing

NOTE:

- **The hard foam insert in the crease is not included in the service kit. Therefore, reuse the hard foam insert again in the seat crease.**

- Guide the Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452 and Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706 from above through the seat pan without separating the electrical connections.
- Pull the crease between seat pan and Seat Occupied Recognition Mat - **1** - so that it is smooth (free of folds).
- Secure the Seat Occupied Recognition Mat - **1** - with the clips - **2** - and - **3** - (Qty. 2).

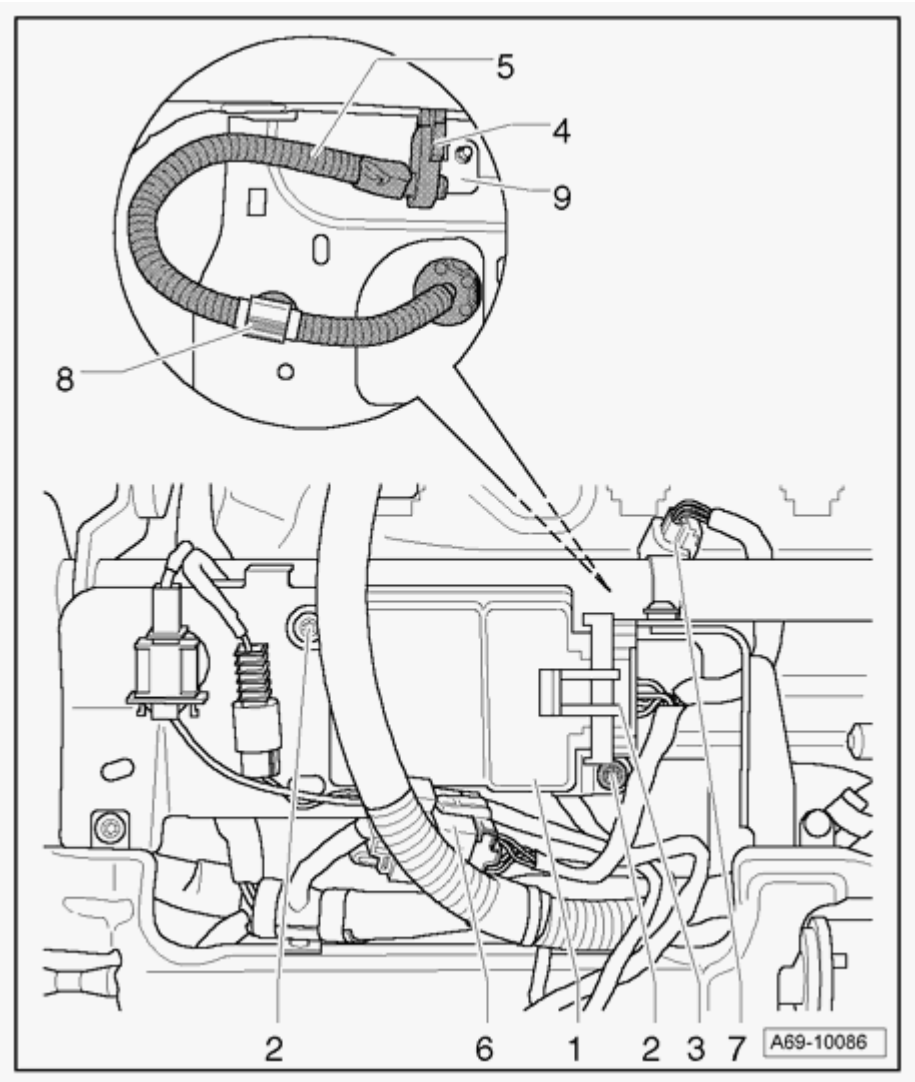


Fig. 191: Passive Occupant Detection System (PODS) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706

Installing

- Secure Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452- - **4** -.
- Secure the Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706 with the bolts - **2** - (Qty. 2) to 2.5 Nm.
- Connect harness connector - **6** -.
- Upholster the seat pan, thereby all upholstery clips must be attached and be installed at the original position --> **Front seat covers and upholstery** , for electric seat --> **Front seat covers and upholstery (seat memory, electrical seat adjustment)**.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.

- After installing the passenger seat in the vehicle, the following program must be performed under "Airbag" in Guided Fault Finding.

When installing a new service kit and after every repair on the front passenger seat:

- -J706 Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module basic setting

2 - Bolts

- 2.5 Nm

3 - Connector on Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706

- Must not be separated under any circumstances.

4 - Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452

5 - Pressure hose

CAUTION: The pressure hose - 5 - and the Seat Occupied Recognition Mat must not be kinked under any circumstances during repairs.

- Secure pressure hose at guide clip - **8** - at specified marking.

6 - Harness connector between service kit and seat wiring harness

7 - Connector on Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452

- Must not be separated under any circumstances.

8 - Guide clip

cardiagn.com

9 - Retaining bracket

cardiagn.com

70 - INTERIOR TRIM

FRONT DOOR TRIMS

Component locations, assembly overview

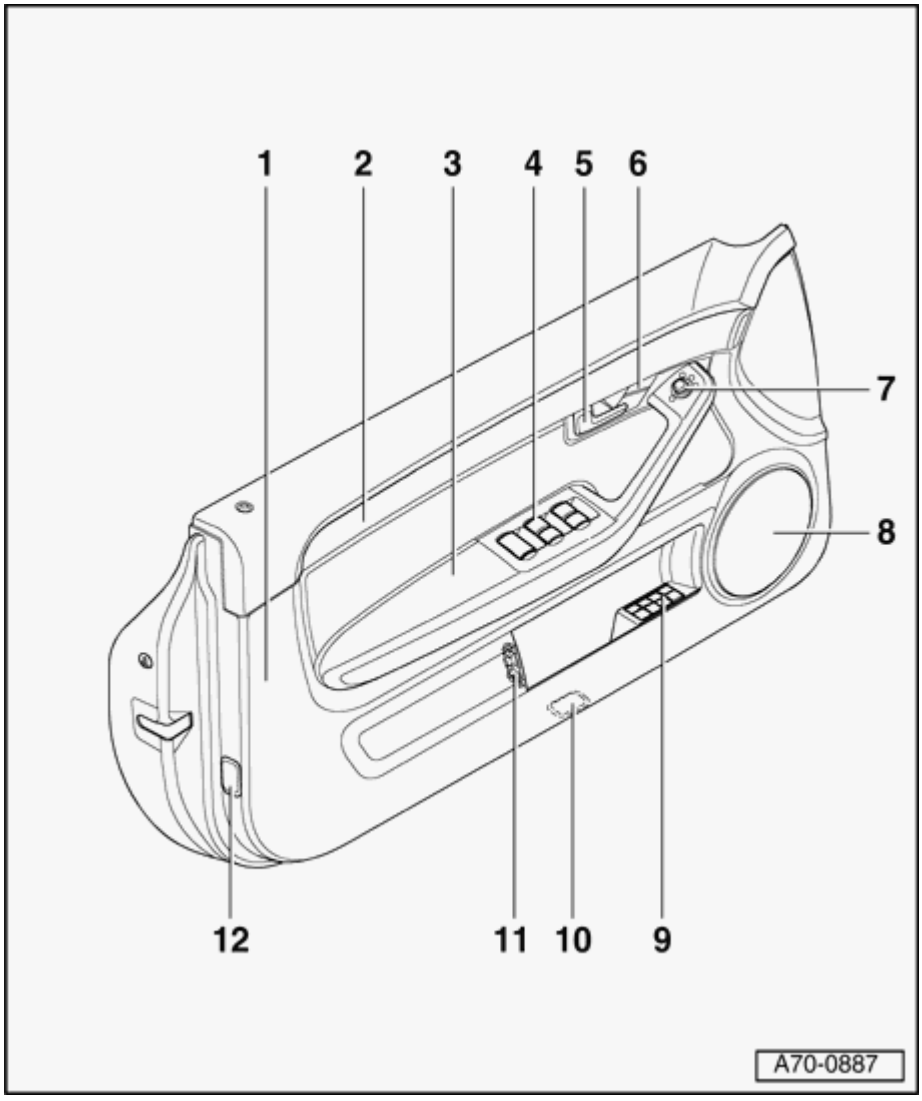


Fig. 100: Front Door Trims Component Locations, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Removing and installing door trim --> **Door trim, assembly overview**

2 - Removing and installing trim panel --> **Trim, removing and installing**

3 - Removing and installing armrest --> **Armrest, removing and installing**

4 - Removing and installing window regulator switch module --> **Switch panel for window regulator,**

cardiagn.com

removing and installing

5 - Removing and installing interior door handle --> **Interior door handle, removing and installing**

6 - Removing and installing central locking switch --> **Central locking switch, removing and installing**

7 - Removing and installing mirror adjustment switch --> **Mirror adjustment switch, removing and installing**

8 - Removing and installing bass speaker trim --> **Bass speaker trim, removing and installing**

9 - Removing and installing memory seat switch panel --> **Switch panel for memory seat, removing and installing**

10 - Removing and installing courtesy light --> **Door warning light and courtesy light, removing and installing**

11 - Removing and installing switch panel for tailgate release and/or anti-theft alarm --> **Switch panel for tailgate release and/or deactivation of anti-theft alarm, assembly overview**

12 - Removing and installing door warning light --> **Door warning light and courtesy light, removing and installing**

Door trim, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

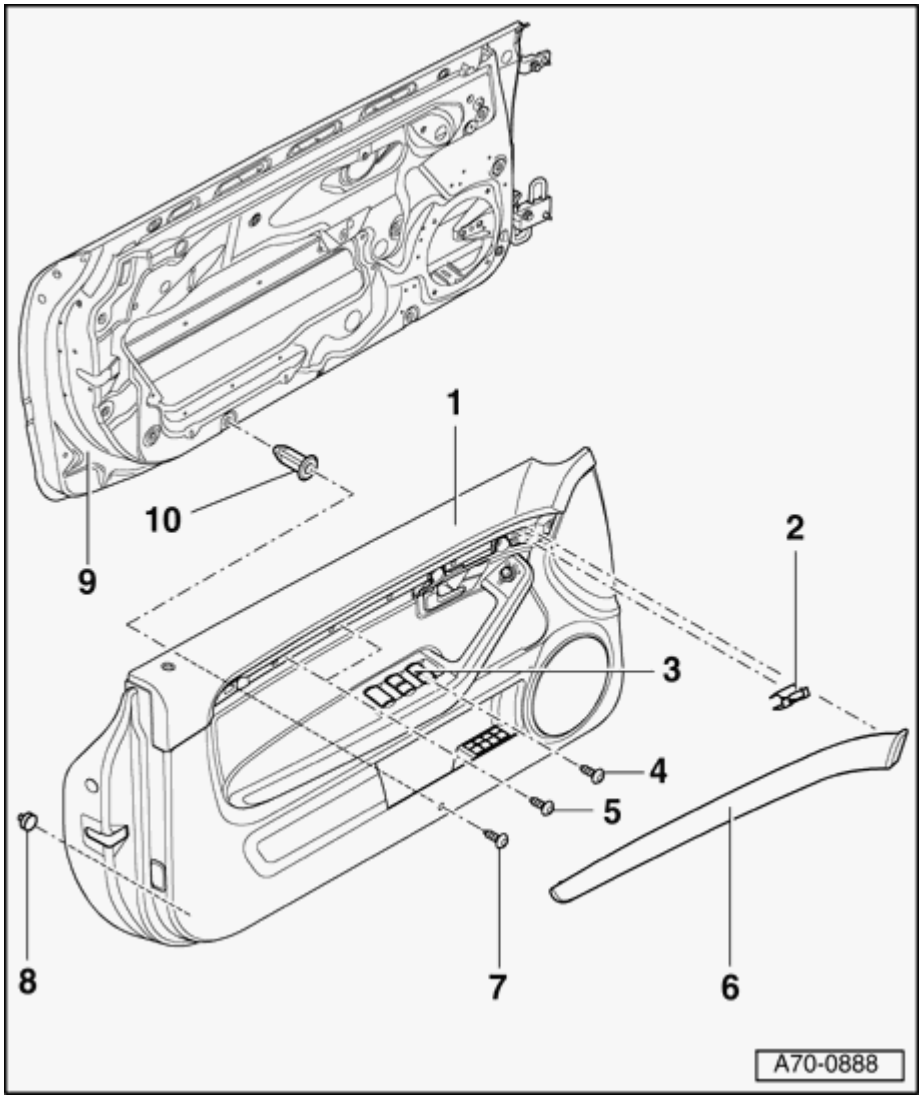


Fig. 101: Door Trim, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Door trim

- **Removing**

- Remove triangular treble speaker trim --> **Treble speaker, removing and installing**.
- Remove trim panel - **6** - --> **Trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove bolts - **5** - (2x).
- Using a screwdriver, pry out switch panel of window regulator - **3** - from below through hole.

- Remove bolt - **4** -.
- Remove bolt - **7** -.
- Unclip door trim - **1** - starting at bottom.

cardiagn.com

- Detach door trim - **1** - upward.
- Disconnect connector to window regulator control unit **Disconnecting connector at window regulator control unit**
- Disengage Bowden cable for interior door handle --> **Disengaging Bowden cable for interior door handle**

- **Installing**

- Make sure expanding nut - **10** - is clipped into door shell - **9** -.
- Make sure all clips - **8** - (8x) are in position on inside of door trim. Replace damaged clips - **8** - **Replacing door trim securing clip**
- Make sure all clips - **2** - (6x) are clipped in on inside of door trim - **1** -.
- Install door trim - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

2 - Clips (6x)

3 - Window regulator switch panel

4 - Bolt

5 - Bolts (2x)

6 - Trim strip

7 - Bolt

8 - Clips (8x)

9 - Door shell

10 - Expanding nut

Disengaging Bowden cable for interior door handle

cardiagn.com

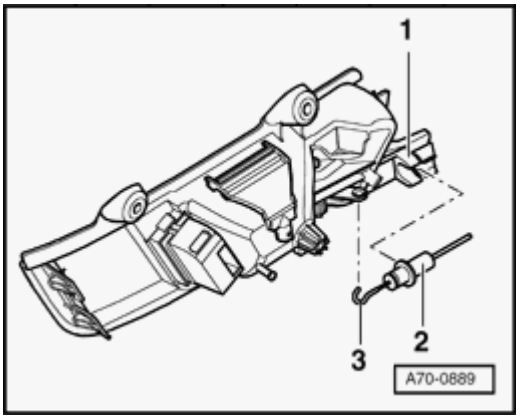


Fig. 102: Disengaging Bowden Cable For Interior Door Handle
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull Bowden cable - **2** - out of guide - **1** -.
- Detach hook - **3** -.

NOTE:

- **When installing, make sure hook - 3 - is facing upward.**

Disconnecting connector at window regulator control unit

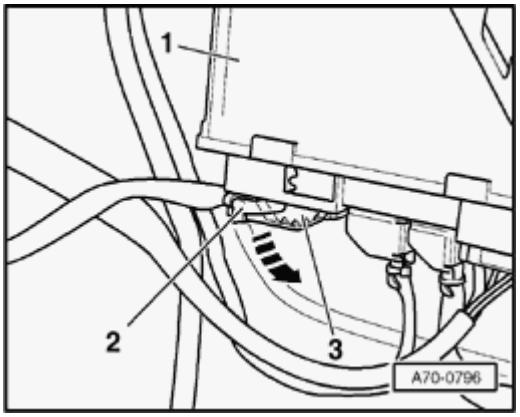


Fig. 103: Disconnecting Connector At Window Regulator Control Unit
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Detach catch - **2** -.
- Disconnect connector - **3** - from control unit - **1** - in direction of - **arrow** -.

Replacing door trim securing clip

cardiagn.com

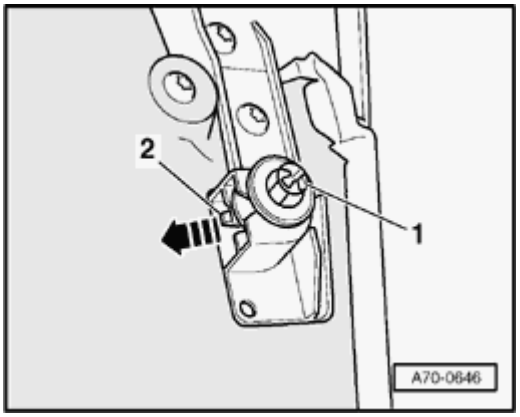


Fig. 104: Replacing Door Trim Securing Clip
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press retainer tab - **2** - and pull out clip - **1** - in direction of arrow.

Trim, removing and installing

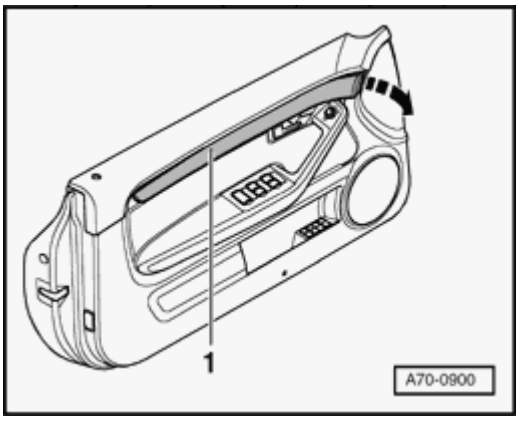


Fig. 105: Removing Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Carefully pry out trim - **1** - at front end in direction of - **arrow** -.
- Unclip trim panel - **1** -.

Insulation, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

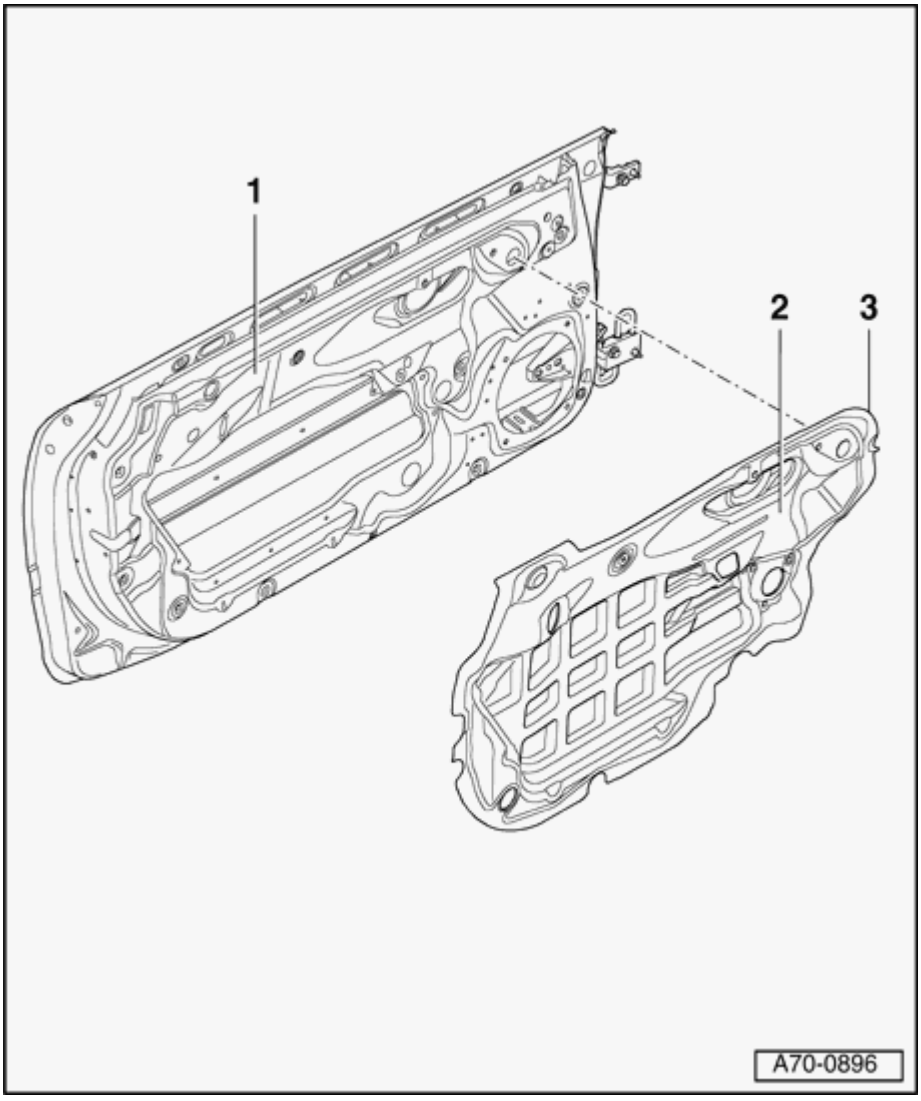


Fig. 106: Insulation, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Door shell

2 - Insulation

- **Removing**
  - When removing insulation - **2** - , ensure that insulation - **2** - is not damaged.
- **Installing**
  - Make sure adhesive bead - **3** - is not dirty or damaged.
  - Ensure that insulation - **2** - is not damaged.
  - Press adhesive bead - **3** - tightly all around door shell - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

3 - Adhesive bead

Exploded view of door trim cable routing

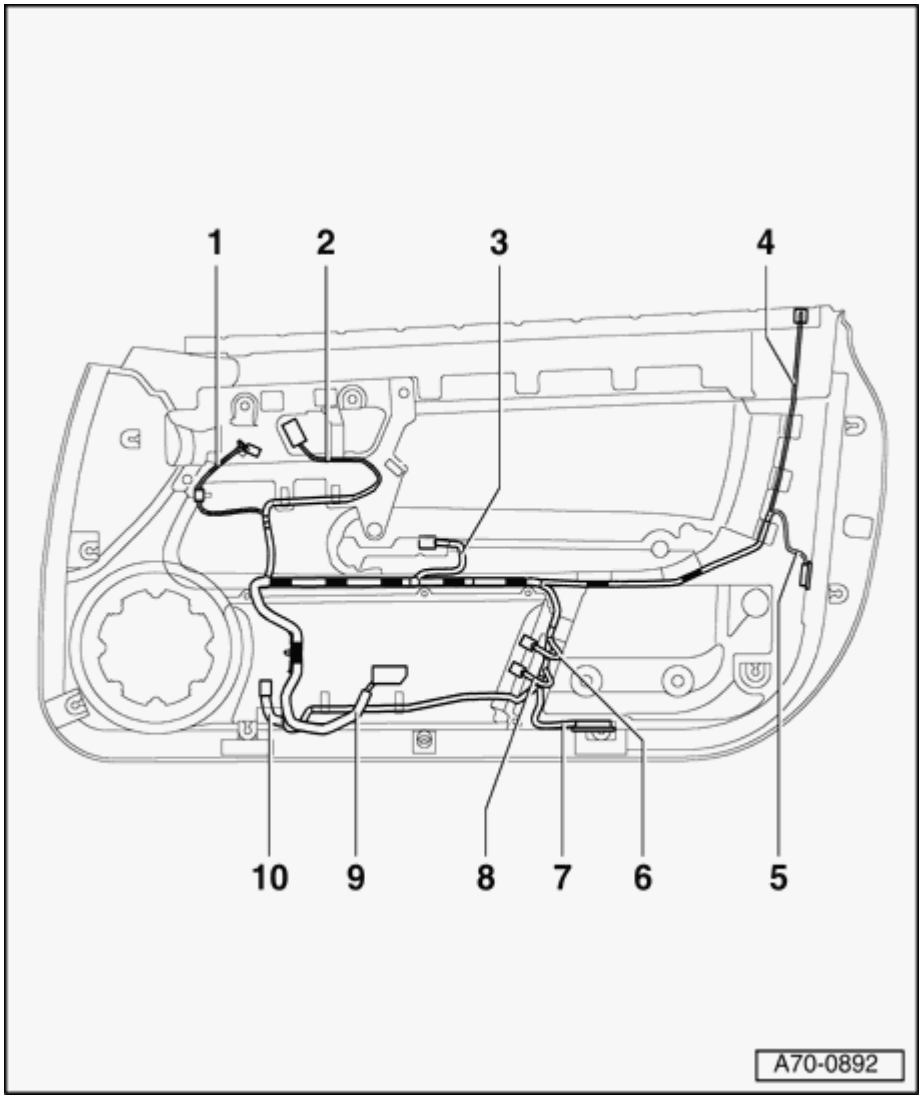


Fig. 107: Exploded View Of Door Trim Cable Routing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable to mirror adjustment switch

2 - Cable to central locking system switch

3 - Cable to switch panel for window regulator

4 - Cable to display of anti-theft alarm

5 - Cable to door warning light

cardiagn.com

6 - Cable to anti-theft alarm deactivation switch

7 - Cable to courtesy light

8 - Cable to tailgate release switch

9 - Cable to window regulator control unit connector

10 - Cable to memory seat switch panel

Armrest, removing and installing

- Remove door trim --> **Door trim, assembly overview**.

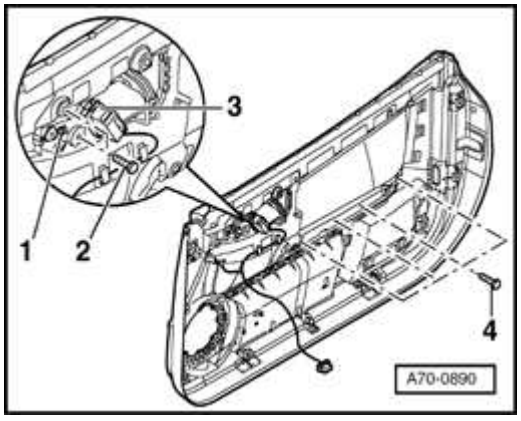


Fig. 108: Armrest Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).
- Disconnect connector - **3** -.
- Remove bolts - **4** - (8x).
- Unclip armrest at retainer tab - **1** -.

NOTE:

- **Figure shows armrest without cover.**

cardiagn.com

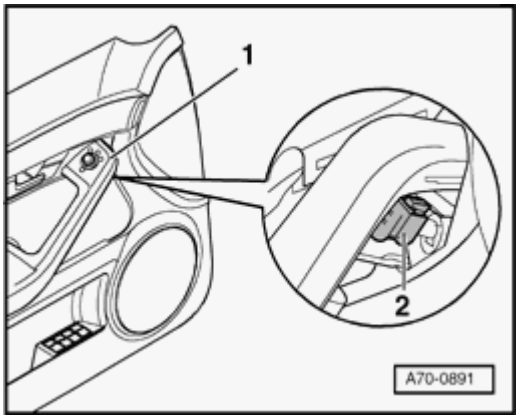


Fig. 109: Removing Armrest & Unplugging Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove armrest - **1** -.
- Detach cover on underside of armrest - **1** -.
- Unplug connector - **2** -.

Central locking switch, removing and installing

- Remove door trim --> **Door trim, assembly overview**.

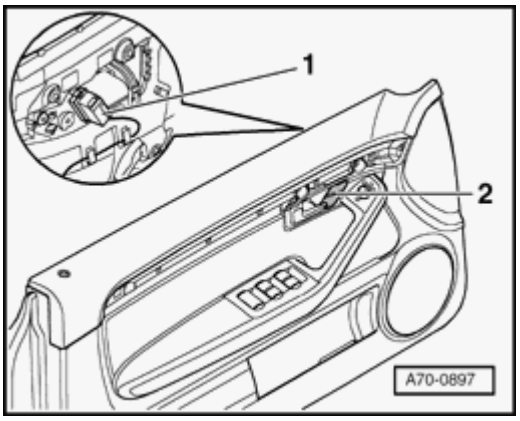


Fig. 110: Disconnecting Connector & Prying Out Central Locking Switch
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector - **1** -.
- Using a screwdriver, pry out central locking switch - **2** -.

Mirror adjustment switch, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **Figure shows armrest without cover.**

- Remove door trim --> **Door trim, assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove armrest --> **Armrest, removing and installing**.

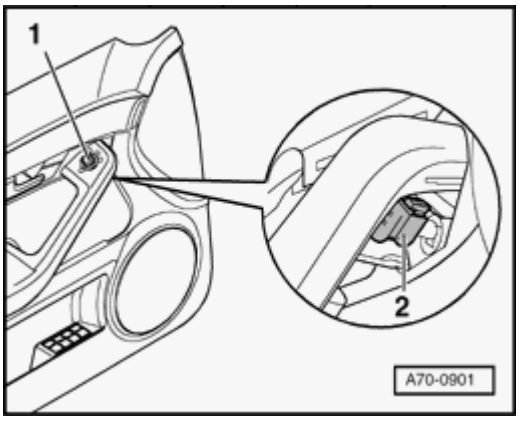


Fig. 111: Prying Out Mirror Adjustment Switch & Disconnecting Connector At Mirror Adjustment Switch
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, pry out mirror adjustment switch - **1** -.
- Disconnect connector at mirror adjustment switch - **2** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Interior door handle, removing and installing

- **Removing**

- Remove door trim --> **Door trim, assembly overview**.
- Remove central locking switch --> **Central locking switch, removing and installing**.

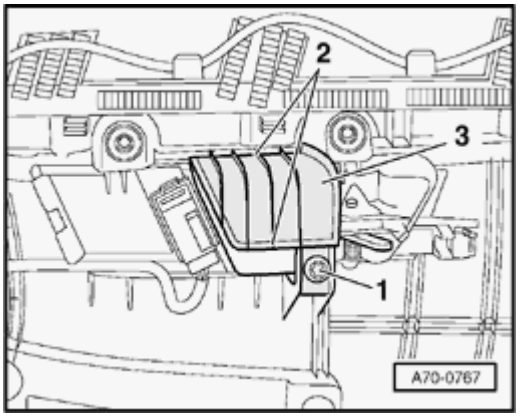


Fig. 112: Interior Door Mechanism Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolt - **1** -.
- Press retaining tabs - **2** - (2x) and remove interior door handle - **3** - to front.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Switch panel for window regulator, removing and installing

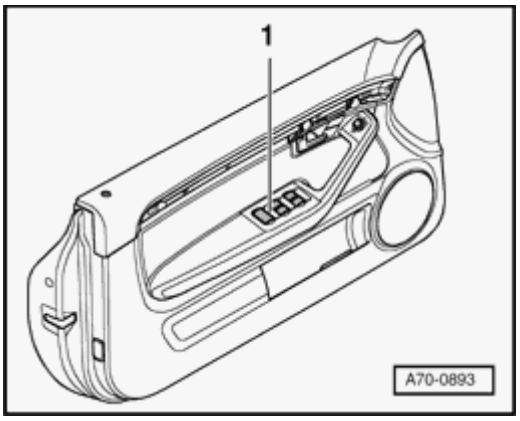


Fig. 113: Identifying Switch Panel Of Window Regulator
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, pry out switch panel of window regulator - **1** - from below through hole.
- Disconnect connector.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Switch panel for memory seat, removing and installing

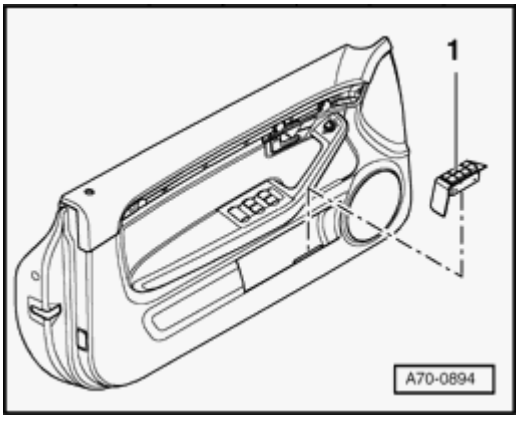


Fig. 114: Prying Out Switch Panel For Memory Seat
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Using a screwdriver, pry out switch panel for memory seat - **1** -.
- Disconnect connector.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Switch panel for tailgate release and/or deactivation of anti-theft alarm, assembly overview

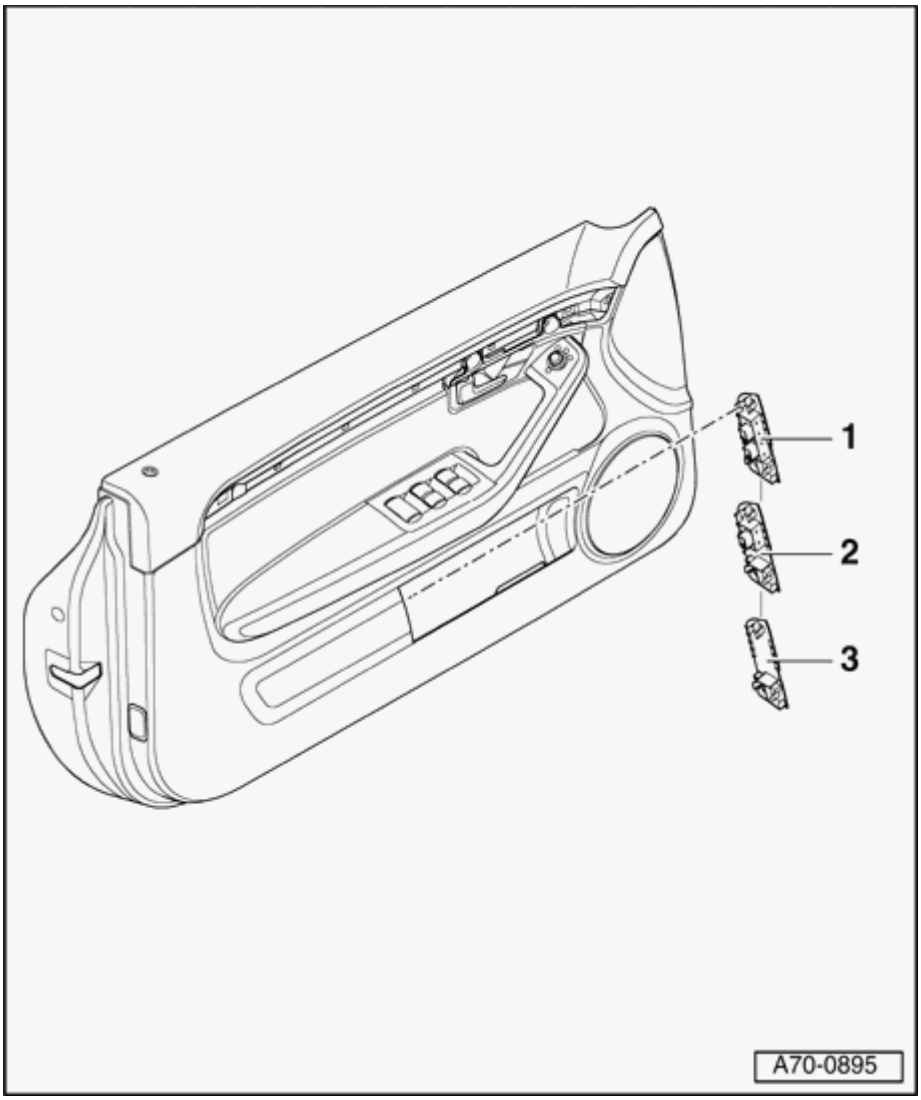


Fig. 115: Switch Panel For Tailgate Release And/Or Deactivation Of Anti-Theft Alarm, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Switch panel for tailgate release and deactivation of anti-theft alarm

2 - Switch panel for tailgate release or deactivation of anti-theft alarm

cardiagn.com

3 - Dummy cover

- **Removing**

  - Using a screwdriver, carefully pry out switch panel.
  - Disconnect connector(s) from switch panel

- **Installing**

  - Install switch module in reverse order of removal.

Door warning light and courtesy light, removing and installing

- Remove door trim --> **Door trim, assembly overview**.

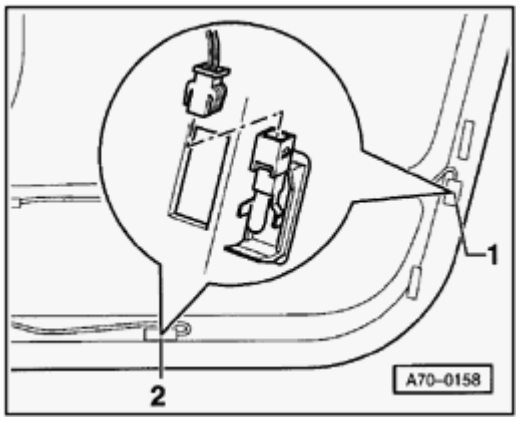


Fig. 116: Door Warning Lights And Footwell Lighting Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, pry door warning light - **1** - out from below and pull door warning light - **1** - out with cable.
- Disconnect connector on door warning light - **1** -.
- Using a screwdriver, pry out courtesy light - **2** - at front and pull courtesy light - **2** - out with cable.
- Disconnect connector on courtesy light - **2** -.

Treble speaker, removing and installing

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

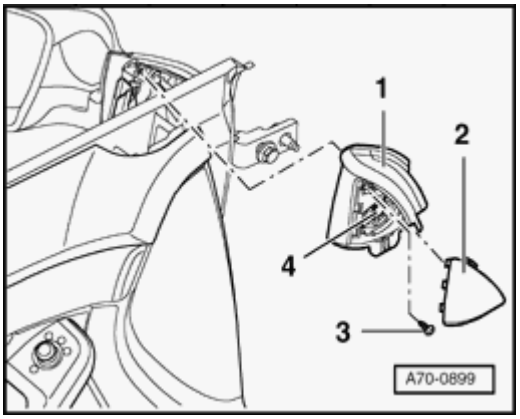


Fig. 117: Identifying Grille, Bolt, Triangular Trim Of Treble Speaker & Connector From Triangular Treble Speaker Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Unclip grille - **2** -.
- Remove bolt - **3** -.
- Remove triangular trim of treble speaker - **1** - upward.
- Disconnect connector from triangular treble speaker trim - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Unclip grille - **2** - from triangular treble speaker trim - **1** -.
- Install triangular treble speaker trim - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

Bass speaker trim, removing and installing

- Remove door trim --> **Door trim, assembly overview**.

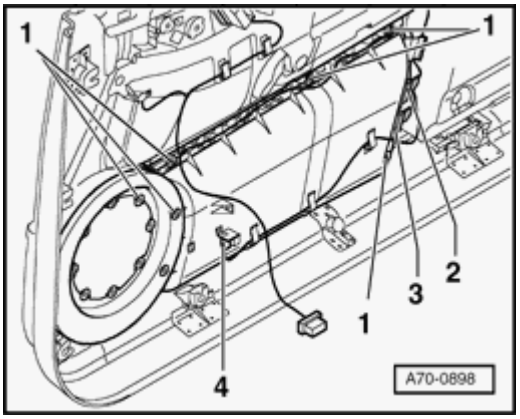


Fig. 118: Bass Speaker Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, pry out circlips - **1** - (14x).

cardiagn.com

- On deactivation of anti-theft alarm: Disconnect connector - **2** -.
- On tailgate release: Detach connector - **3** -.
- Disconnect memory seat connector - **4** -.

- Remove bass speaker trim.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

REAR SIDE TRIM

Rear side trim, assembly overview

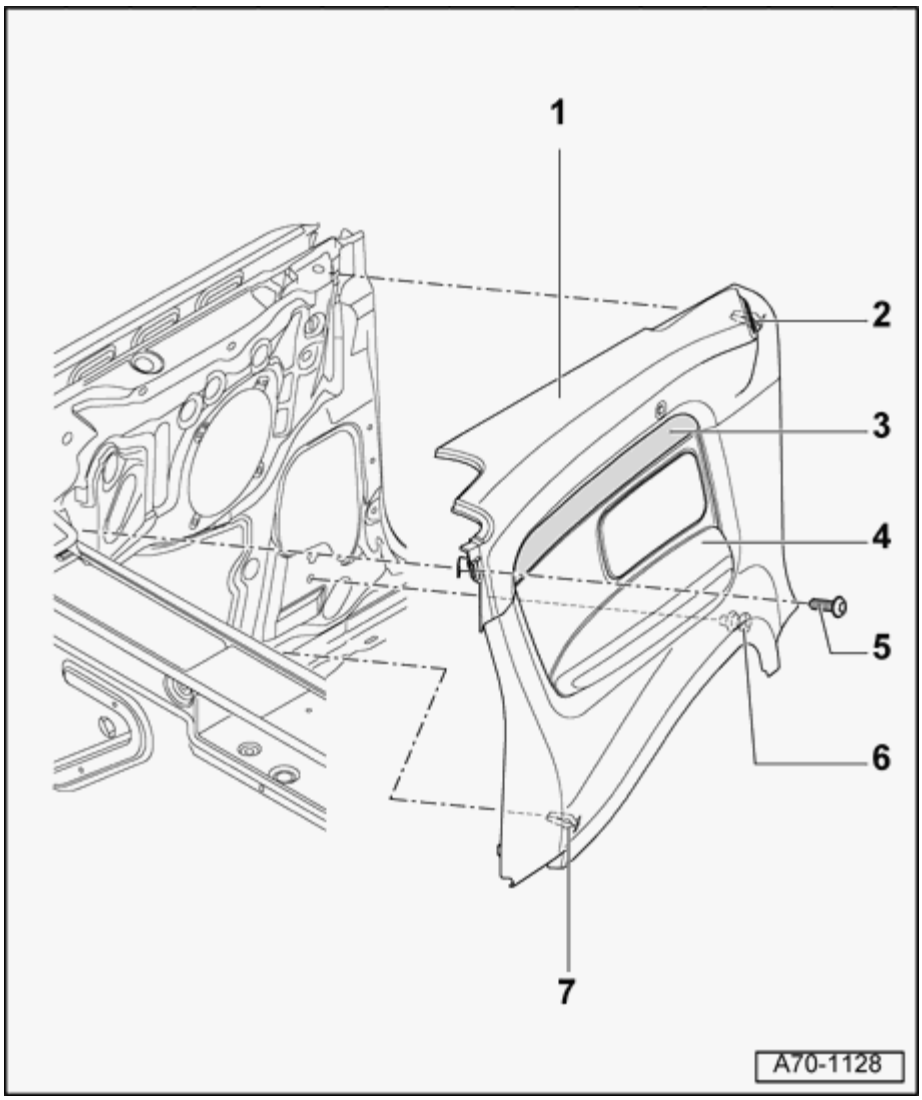


Fig. 119: Rear Side Trim, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Side trim

- **Removing**

  - Remove rear bench seat --> **Rear seat bench, assembly overview**.
  - Remove rear seat backrest --> **Rear seat backrest, assembly overview**.
  - Remove decorative panel --> **Decorative panel, removing and installing**.
  - Unclip center piece - **4** -.
  - Remove bolt - **5** -.
  - Reach into side trim - **1** - and unclip side trim - **1** - at clips - **2** - , - **7** - and - **6** -.
  - Remove side trim - **1** -.

- If side trim - **1** - is to be replaced:

  - Remove anchorage point for outer floor panel --> **Front anchorage point for outer floor panel**.

- **Installing**

NOTE:

- **After installation ensure that seal is pulled correctly over side trim.**

  - Pull back clip - **6** - to loosen clip - **6** -.
  - Install side trim - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

2 - Clip

3 - Decorative panel

4 - Center piece

5 - Bolt

6 - Clip

7 - Clip

Decorative panel, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

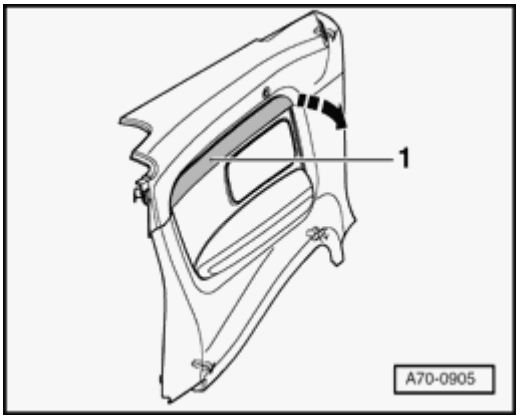


Fig. 120: Removing Decorative Panel
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Carefully pry off decorative panel - **1** - in direction of - **arrow** -.
- Unclip decorative panel - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Insulation, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

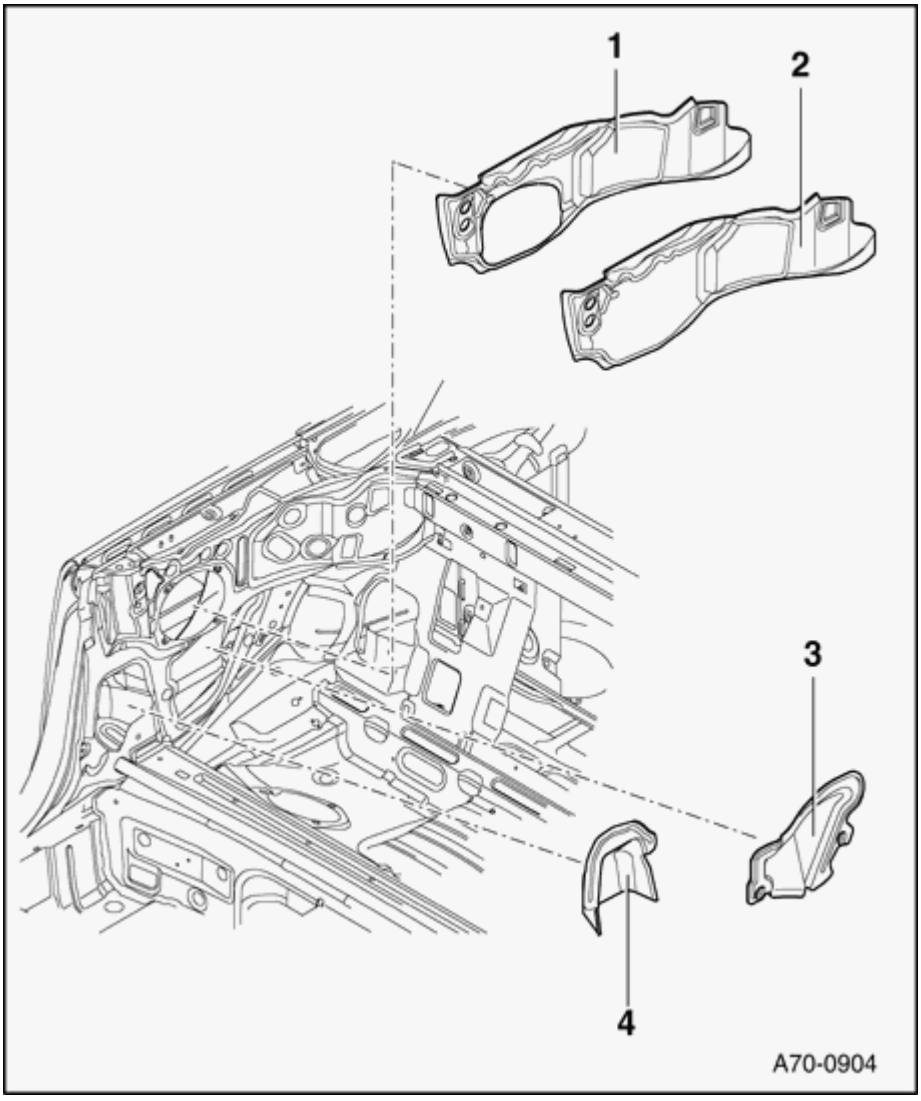


Fig. 121: Insulation, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Insulation with loudspeaker installed

2 - Insulation with loudspeaker not installed

3 - Insulation

4 - Belt reel insulation

- **Removing**

  - Remove rear bench seat --> **Rear seat bench, assembly overview**.
  - Remove rear seat backrest --> **Rear seat backrest, assembly overview**.
  - Remove decorative panel --> **Rear side trim, assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

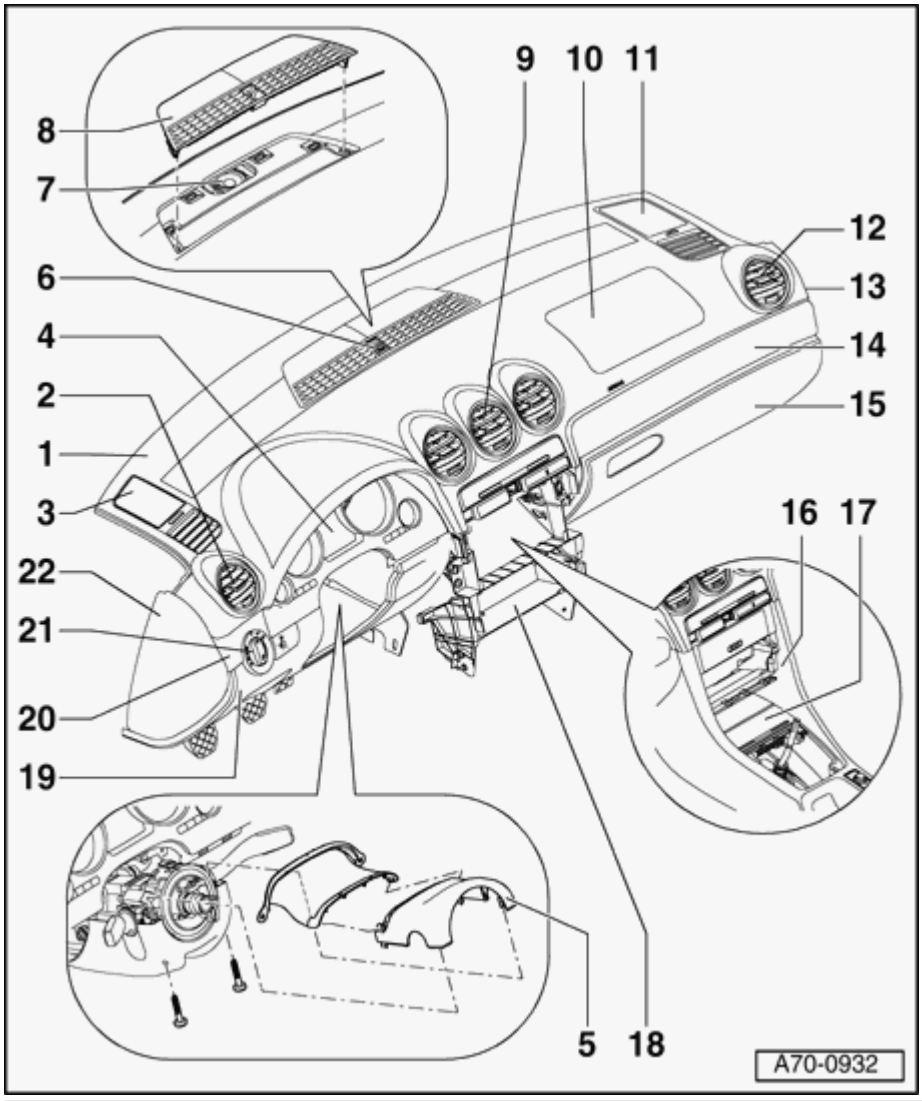
- For belt reel insulation: Remove belt reel of front seat belt --> **Front 3-point seat belt with belt tensioner, assembly overivew**.
- For all insulation: When removing insulation, ensure that insulation does not become damaged.
- Remove insulation.

- **Installing**

- Press insulation evenly and firmly onto body.
- For belt reel insulation: Install belt reel --> **Front 3-point seat belt with belt tensioner, assembly overivew**.

INSTRUMENT PANEL

Component locations, assembly overview



cardiagn.com

Fig. 122: Instrument Panel Component Locations, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Instrument panel

- Removing --> **Instrument panel, removing and installing**

2 - Left instrument panel vent

- **Removing**

3 - Left instrument panel speaker

- **Removing**

4 - Instrument cluster -->

- **90 INSTRUMENTS**
- **90 INSTRUMENTS** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET

5 - Upper trim for steering column switch

- **Removing**

6 - Sunlight Photo Sensor G107

- **Removing**

7 - Center instrument panel speaker

- **Removing**

8 - Trim for center defroster vent

- **Removing**

9 - Center instrument panel vent

- **Removing**

10 - Front passengers airbag unit

- Removing --> **Front passenger airbag, assembly overview**

11 - Right instrument panel speaker

cardiagn.com

- **Removing**

12 - Right instrument panel vent

- **Removing**

13 - Instrument panel cover, right

- **Removing**

14 - Right instrument panel trim

- **Removing**

15 - Glove compartment

- Removing --> **Glove compartment, assembly overview**

16 - Center console

- Removing --> **Center console, assembly overview**

17 - Front ashtray

- Removing --> **Front ashtray, assembly overview**

18 - Removing instrument panel center section --> **Center section of instrument panel, assembly overview**

- Removing --> **Center section of instrument panel, assembly overview**

19 - Drivers storage compartment

- Removing --> **Drivers storage compartment (without knee protection), removing and installing**

20 - Left instrument panel trim

- **Removing**

21 - Light switch and adjuster for headlight range control

- **Removing**

22 - Instrument panel cover, left

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

Instrument panel, removing and installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

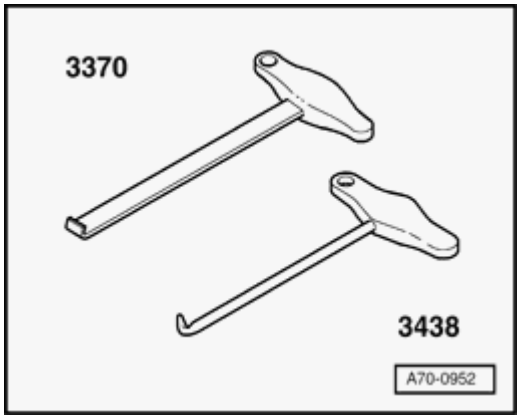


Fig. 123: Front End Hook 3370 & Hook 3438
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Front end hook 3370
- Hook 3438
- Screwdriver T8 T40056

CAUTION: When disconnecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->

- **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
- **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**

- **Removing:**

- Disconnect battery Ground (GND) strap at battery.
- Remove drivers airbag unit (standard steering wheel) --> **Airbag unit (standard steering wheel), assembly overview**.
- Remove drivers airbag unit (sports steering wheel) --> **Airbag unit (sports steering wheel), assembly overview**.
- Remove drivers airbag unit (multi-function steering wheel) --> **Airbag unit (multi-function steering wheel), assembly overview**.

- Remove steering wheel (standard steering wheel) --> **Steering wheel (standard steering wheel), assembly overview**.
- Remove steering wheel (sports steering wheel) --> **Steering wheel (sports steering wheel), assembly overview**.
- Remove steering wheel (multi-function steering wheel) --> **Steering wheel (multi-function steering wheel), assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove drivers storage compartment --> **Drivers storage compartment (without knee protection), removing and installing**.
- Remove instrument cluster. -->
  - **90 INSTRUMENTS**
  - **90 INSTRUMENTS** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET
- Remove glove compartment --> **Glove compartment, assembly overview**.
- Remove front passengers airbag unit --> **Front passenger airbag, assembly overview**.
- Remove center console --> **Center console, assembly overview**.
- Remove instrument panel center section --> **Center section of instrument panel, assembly overview**.

Removing left instrument panel cover

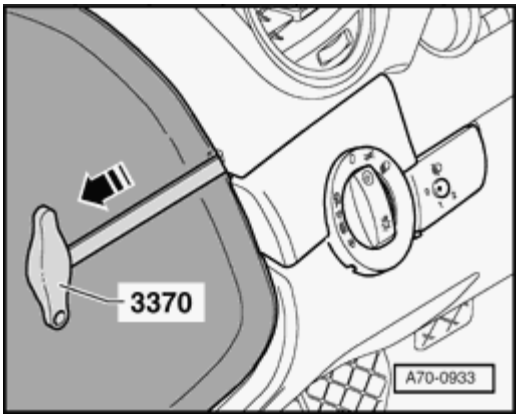


Fig. 124: Removing Left Instrument Panel Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Detach left instrument panel cover - **arrow** - using front end hook 3370.

Removing left outer instrument panel fastener

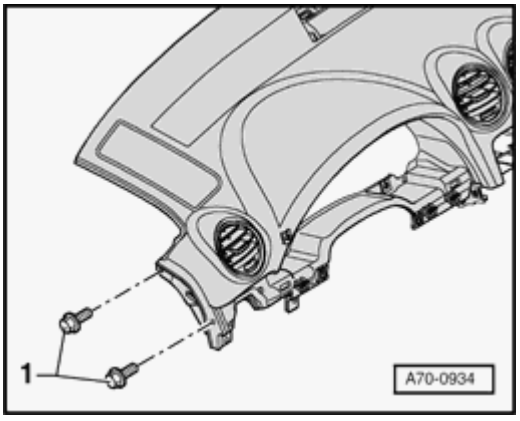


Fig. 125: Removing Left Outer Instrument Panel Fastener

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Unscrew bolts - **1** - (2x). Tightening torque 4 Nm

Disconnecting connectors for left and right vent temperature sensors G150 and G151

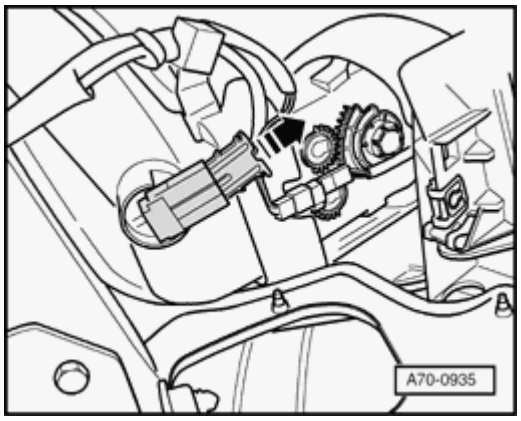


Fig. 126: Disconnecting Connectors For Left And Right Vent Temperature Sensors G150 And G151
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector - **arrow** - at left and right vent temperature sensors G150 and G151.

NOTE:

- **The illustration shows right vent temperature sensor -G151- on passenger side.**

Removing instrument panel vent

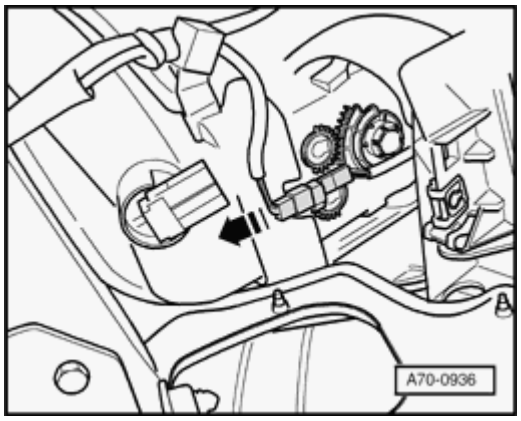


Fig. 127: Disconnecting Connector For Instrument Panel Vent Light
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector for instrument panel vent light.

NOTE:

- **The illustration shows instrument panel vent on passenger side.**

cardiagn.com

- **The center instrument panel vents must be pulled out to detach connector for light.**

- Move rear air flaps of instrument panel vent into central position by turning adjustment wheel - **1** -.

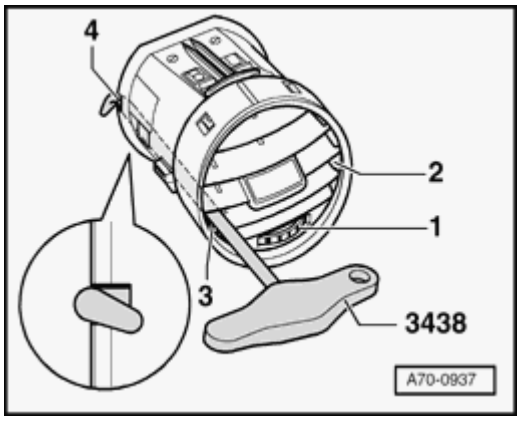


Fig. 128: Guiding Tool 3438 In Position Into Instrument Panel Vent & Hooking Tool 3438 By Slightly Moving It Into Recesses At Rear End Of Instrument Panel Vent
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Guide tool 3438 in position - **2** - or - **3** - into instrument panel vent.
- Hook tool 3438 by slightly moving it into recesses - **4** - at rear end of instrument panel vent.

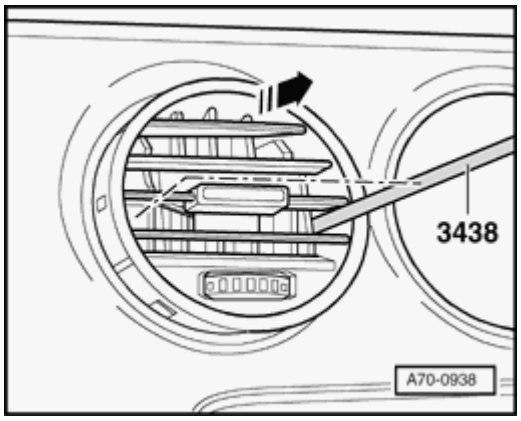


Fig. 129: Detaching Instrument Panel Vent Carefully To Rear Alternating Between Left/Right Using Special Tool 3438
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Detach instrument panel vent carefully to rear alternating between left and right using special tool 3438.

Removing left and right instrument panel speaker

cardiagn.com

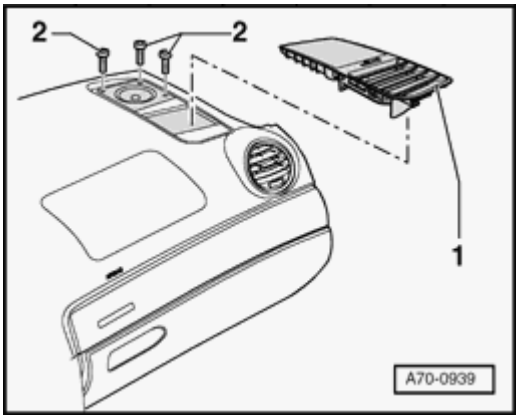


Fig. 130: Removing Left/Right Instrument Panel Speaker
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Carefully pry out loudspeaker trim - **1** -.
- Remove bolts - **2** -.
- Take out speaker and disconnect connectors.

Removing and installing tray, switch and cup holder

- Remove tray **Removing and installing storage tray**.
- Remove cup holder **Removing and installing cup holder** .
- Position a small flat-bladed screwdriver on top at the switch.

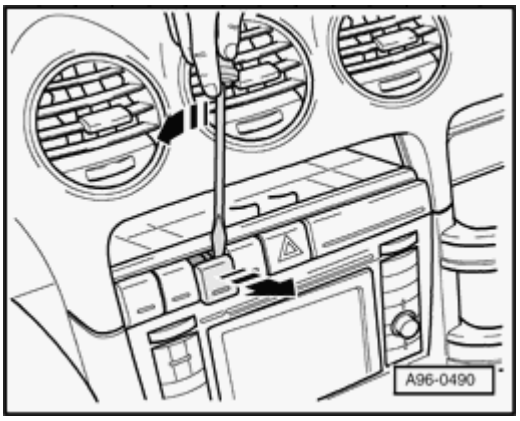


Fig. 131: Prying Appropriate Switch Out Of Switch Mount
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Carefully pry appropriate switch out of switch mount - **arrows** -.
- Disconnect connectors.

Removing light switch and adjuster for headlight range control

cardiagn.com

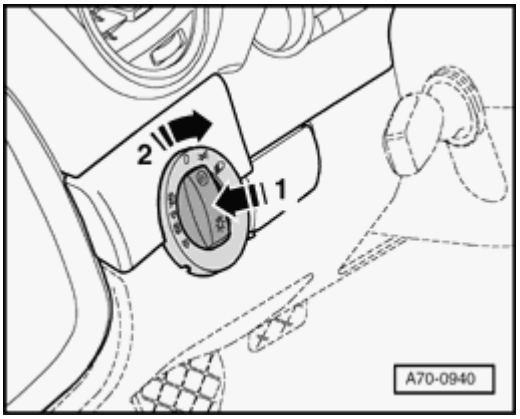


Fig. 132: Pressing Light Switch And Turning Clockwise
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press light switch - **arrow 1** - and turn clockwise at same time - **arrow 2** -.
- Keep switch in this position...

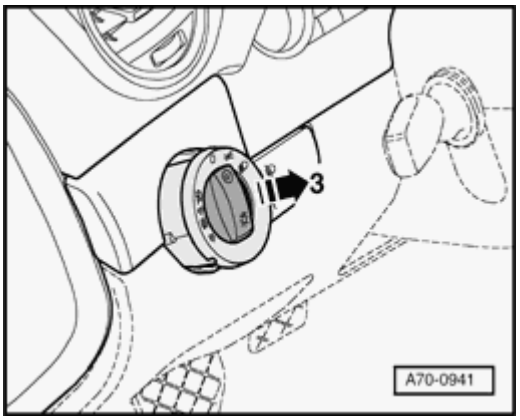
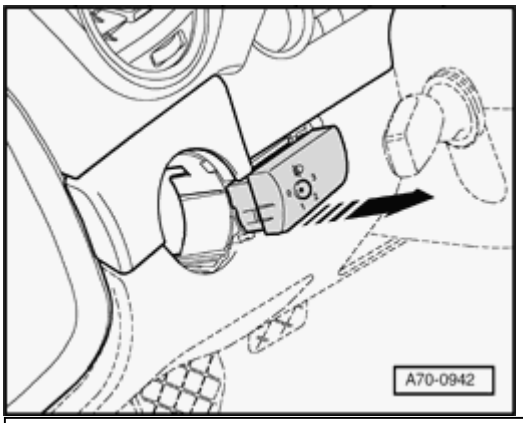


Fig. 133: Pulling Light Switch Out Of Switch Housing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- ... and pull light switch out of switch housing - **3** -.
- Disconnect connector.



cardiagn.com

Fig. 134: Pressing Headlight Range Control Adjuster Out Of Switch Housing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press headlight range control adjuster out of switch housing.
- Disconnect connector.

Removing left instrument panel trim

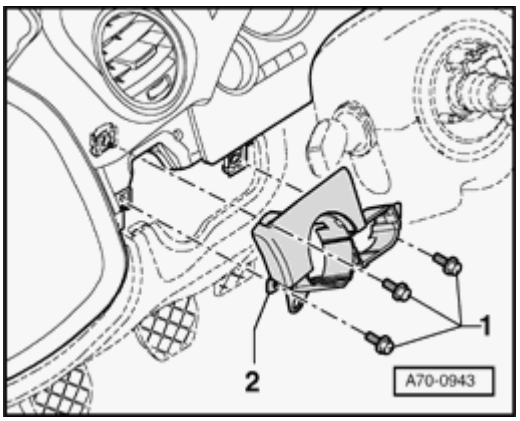


Fig. 135: Removing Left Instrument Panel Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (3x). Tightening torque 3 Nm
- Remove trim - **2** - for instrument panel.

Removing instrument panel mountings drivers side

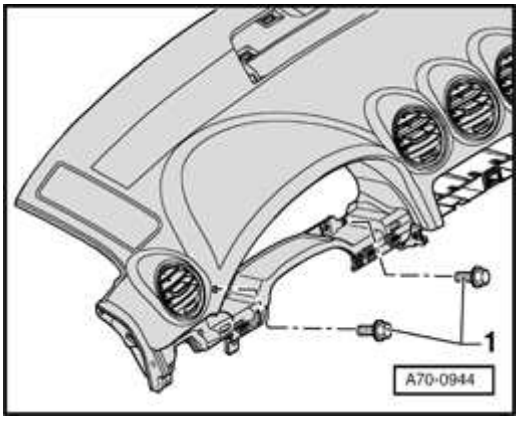


Fig. 136: Removing Instrument Panel Mountings Drivers Side
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x). Tightening torque 4 Nm

Removing upper steering column switch trim

Drivers airbag unit and steering wheel removed

cardiagn.com

- Pull steering column out and downward as far as possible.

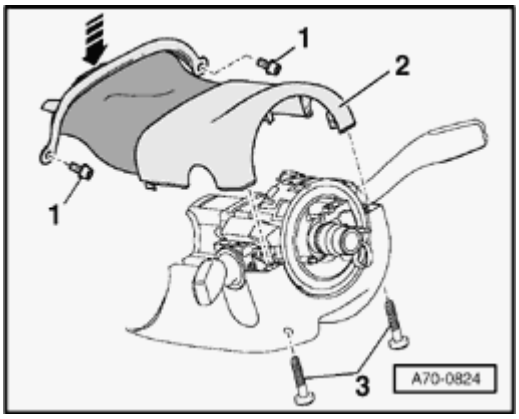


Fig. 137: Removing Upper Trim For Steering Column Switch
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x). Tightening torque 3 Nm
- Remove Torx bolts - **3** - with screwdriver T8 T40056. Tightening torque 0.6 Nm
- Unclip surround from instrument panel downward - **arrow** -.
- Remove upper steering column switch trim - **2** -.

Removing sunlight photo sensor G107

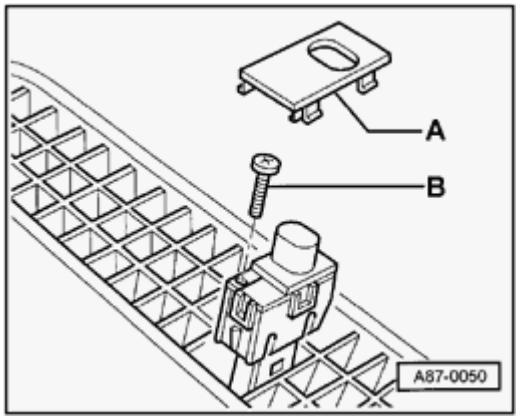


Fig. 138: Removing Sunlight Photo Sensor G107
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Carefully pry off cover - **A** -.
- Remove bolt - **B** -.
- Remove photo sensor.
- Disconnect cable connector.

Removing center defroster vent trim

cardiagn.com

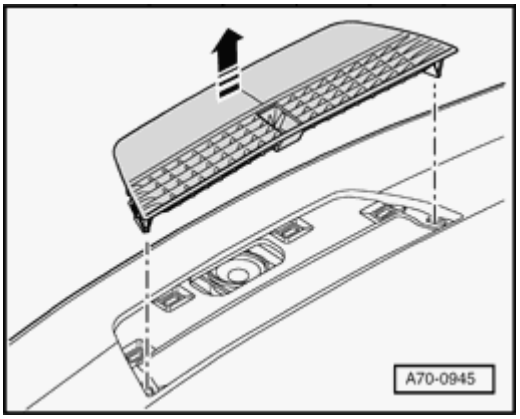


Fig. 139: Removing Center Defroster Vent Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove defroster vent bolt - **1** -. Tightening torque 0.8 Nm

Removing center instrument panel speaker

Center defroster vent removed

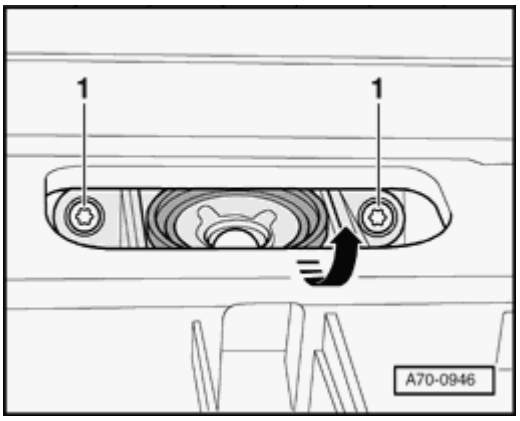


Fig. 140: Removing Center Instrument Panel Speaker
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x). Tightening torque 2 Nm
- Swivel out speaker and disconnect connector.

Removing right instrument panel cover

cardiagn.com

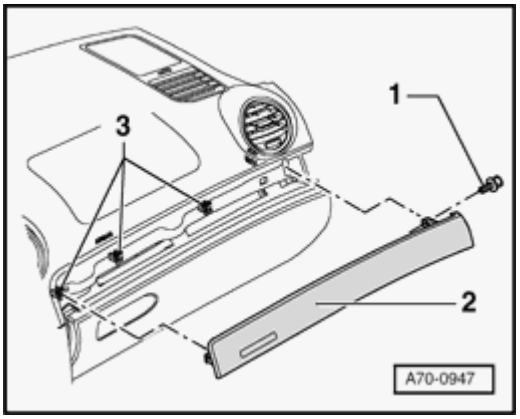


Fig. 141: Removing Right Instrument Panel Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **1** - and detach trim - **2** - to rear. Tightening torque 3 Nm

NOTE:

- **When installing trim for instrument panel cover, replace fasteners - 3 -.**

Removing right instrument panel cover

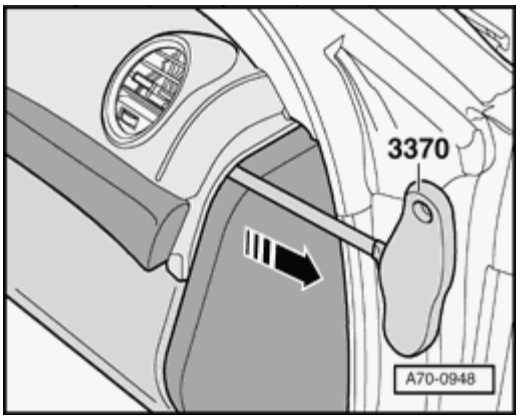


Fig. 142: Removing Right Instrument Panel Cover Using Front End Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove right instrument panel cover - **arrow** - using front end hook 3370.

Removing right instrument panel end mountings

cardiagn.com

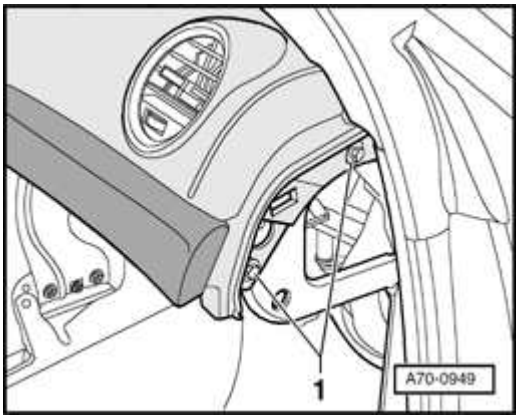


Fig. 143: Removing Right Instrument Panel End Mountings
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x). Tightening torque 4 Nm

Removing center instrument panel mountings

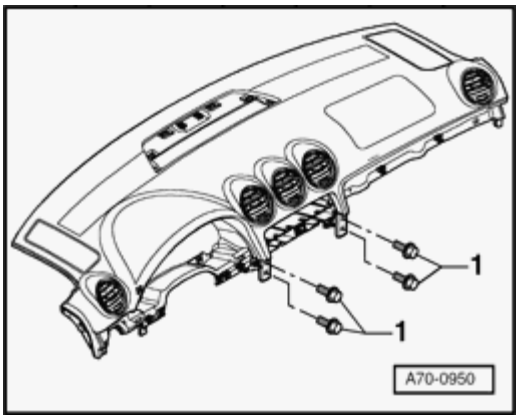


Fig. 144: Removing Center Instrument Panel Mountings
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Unscrew bolts - **1** - (4x). Tightening torque 4 Nm
- Pull out instrument panel toward the rear.

- **Installing**

cardiagn.com

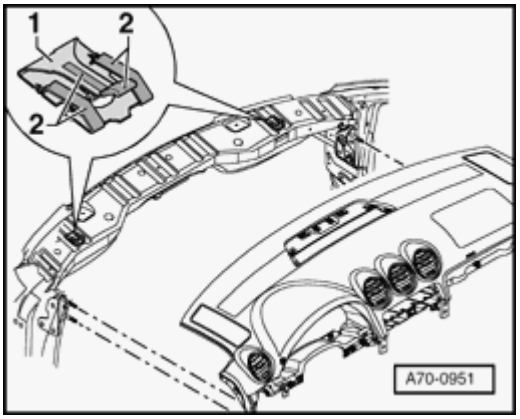


Fig. 145: Checking Felt Pad Is Present On Left/Right Of Clip
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Check that felt pad - **2** - is present on left and right of clip - **1** -.
- Insert instrument panel into clip pressing it down slightly at the same time.
- Test that the instrument panel is located correctly in the clip at the front by pulling up lightly.
- Carry out remainder of installation in reverse order of removal.

Left and/or right instrument panel air duct, removing and installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

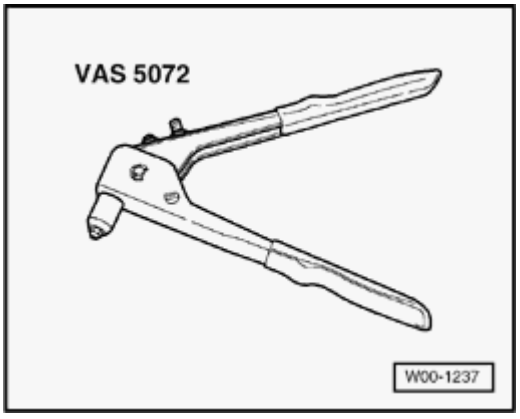


Fig. 146: Pop Rivet Pliers VAS 5072
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pop rivet tool VAS 5072
- **Removing**

- Remove instrument panel --> **Instrument panel, removing and installing**.
- Remove damaged left or right vent temperature sensor G150 or G151.

cardiagn.com

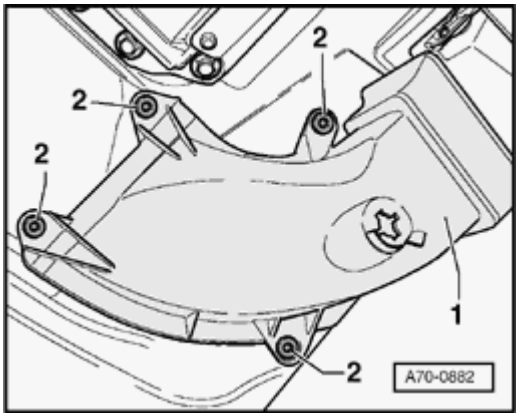


Fig. 147: Identifying Weld Points
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a sharp knife, cut off weld points - **2** - (4x) flush with air duct.

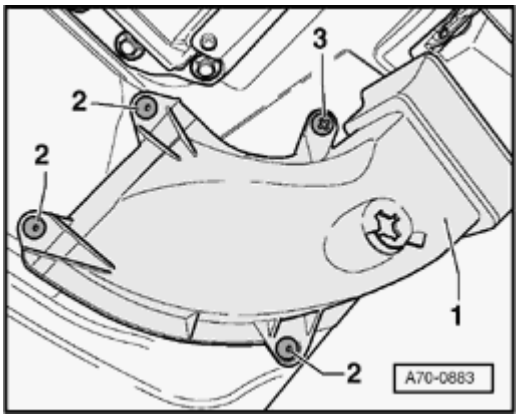


Fig. 148: Identifying Air Duct, Holes & Bolt
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove damaged air duct.
- Drill 5 mm holes at - **2** - (3x).

- **Installing:**

- Install new air duct, ensuring that no parts remain inside it.
- Install blind rivets supplied with air duct at - **2** - (3x).
- Screw in bolt - **3** - supplied with air duct.

CENTRAL TUBE, REMOVING AND INSTALLING

Components locations, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

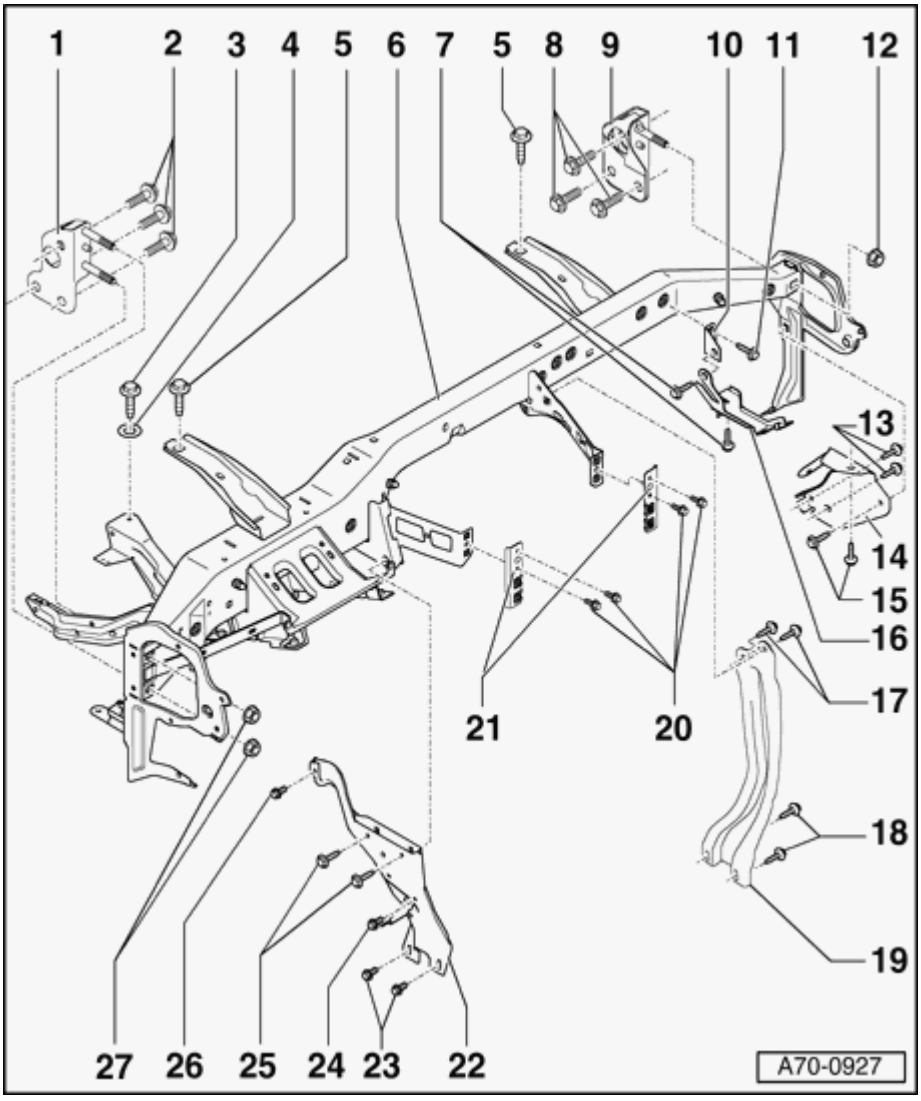


Fig. 149: Central Tube Components Locations, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Angle bracket, left

- For central tube

2 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 23 Nm

3 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

4 - Sealing washer

cardiagn.com

5 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 6 Nm

6 - Central tube

7 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

8 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 23 Nm

9 - Angle bracket, right

- For central tube

10 - Angle bracket

11 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

12 - Nut

- Tightening torque 35 Nm

13 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

14 - Bracket

- For air conditioner unit

15 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

16 - Brace

17 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

cardiagn.com

18 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

19 - Support

20 - Bolts (4x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

21 - Adapter center section

22 - Support

23 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

24 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

25 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

26 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

27 - Nut

- Tightening torque 35 Nm

Instrument panel central tube, removing and installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

cardiagn.com

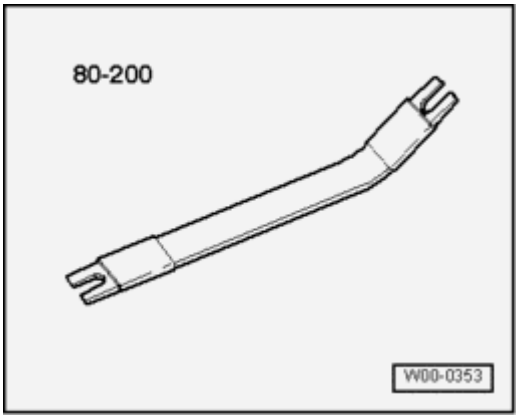


Fig. 150: Identifying Pry Lever 80-200
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry bar 80-200
- **Removing**

- Remove instrument panel --> **Instrument panel, removing and installing**.
- Remove instrument panel center section --> **Center section of instrument panel, assembly overview**.

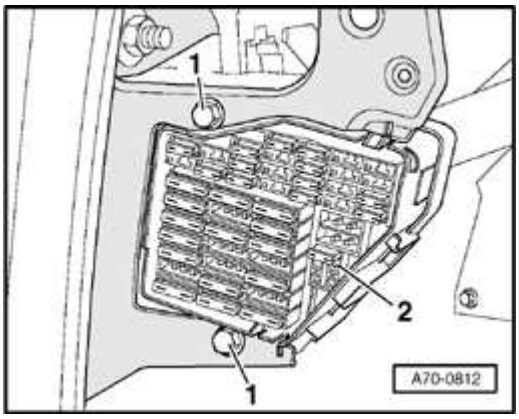


Fig. 151: Removing Bolts From Fuse Carrier
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x) from fuse carrier - **2** -. Tightening torque 3 Nm
- Lay the fuse carrier with attached wiring downward.
- Disconnect wiring harness from instrument panel subframe and set aside.

cardiagn.com

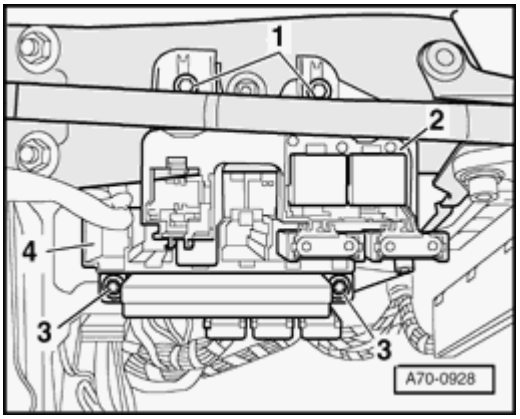


Fig. 152: Unscrewing Bolts Of 3-Position Relay Carrier & Removing Nuts Of 6-Position Relay Carrier On Vehicles Electrical System Control Unit
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Unscrew bolts - **1** - (2x) of 3-position relay carrier - **2** -. Tightening torque 3 Nm
- Remove nuts - **3** - (2x) of 6-position relay carrier - **4** - on vehicles electrical system control unit. Tightening torque 2.4 Nm
- Lay the relay carrier with attached wiring downward.
- Disconnect wiring harness behind relay carriers from central tube and set aside.

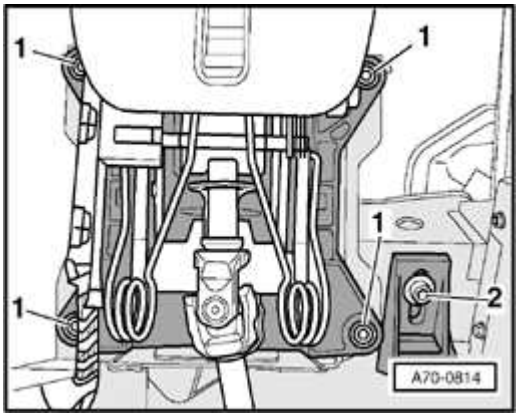


Fig. 153: Removing Pedal Bracket Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **2** - of pedal bracket. Tightening torque 23 Nm
- Remove bolts - **1** - (4x). Tightening torque 22 Nm
- Lay steering column down in drivers footwell.

cardiagn.com

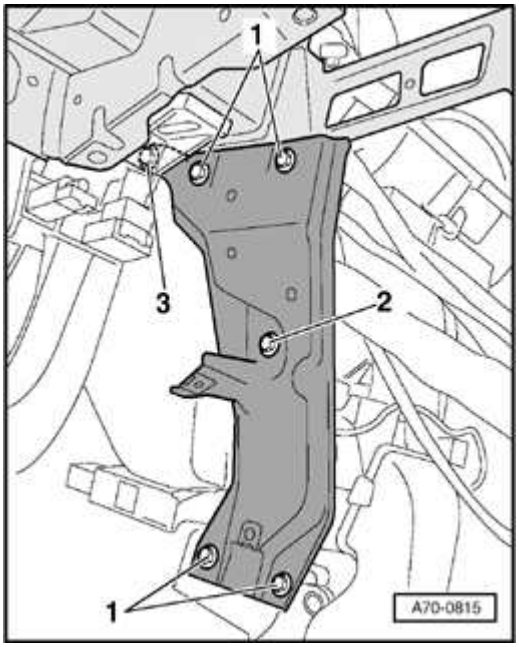


Fig. 154: Identifying Left Brace Bolts & Screw
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (4x) of left support. Tightening torque 9 Nm
- Remove bolt - **2** -. Tightening torque 8 Nm

NOTE:

- **If support does not have to be removed, simply loosen bolt - 3 - and swing support downward.**

- Loosen or remove bolt - **3** - (front attachment of support to air conditioner unit). Tightening torque 8 Nm
- Remove support or swing downward.

cardiagn.com

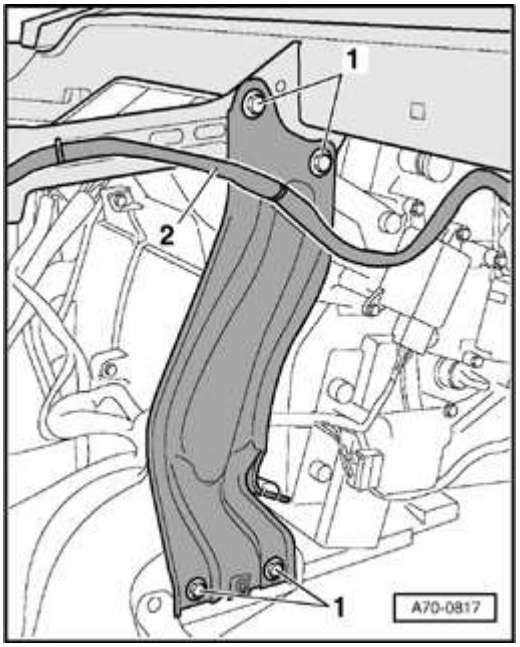


Fig. 155: Removing Screws & Expose Cable
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (4x). Tightening torque 9 Nm
- Lay wiring aside - **2** -.
- Remove right support.

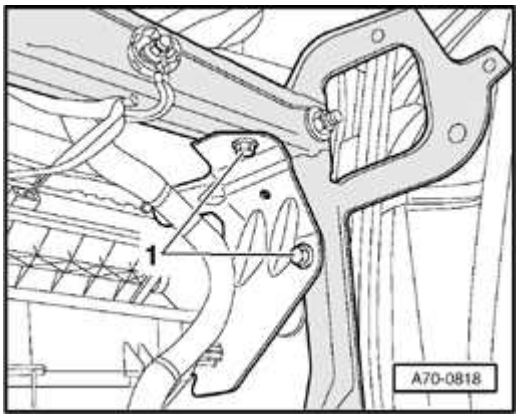


Fig. 156: Removing Bolts Of Bracket For Air Conditioner
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x) of air conditioner unit bracket. Tightening torque 9 Nm

cardiagn.com

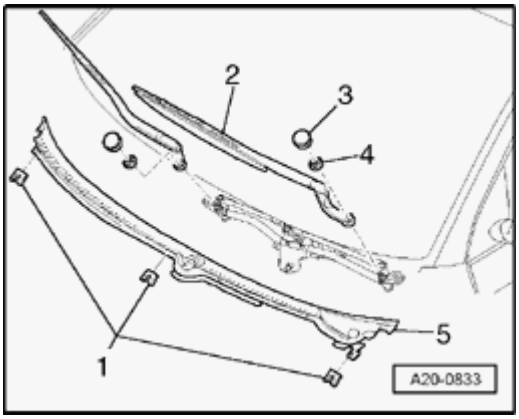


Fig. 157: Removing Securing Clips And Cowl
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver pry off both trim caps - **3** -.
- Loosen the hex nuts - **4** - a few turns.
- Remove wiper arms - **2** - from the pivot shaft by tilting them slightly.
- Remove hex nuts completely and remove wiper arms.

- Remove retaining clips - **1** - and remove air cowl grille - **5** -.

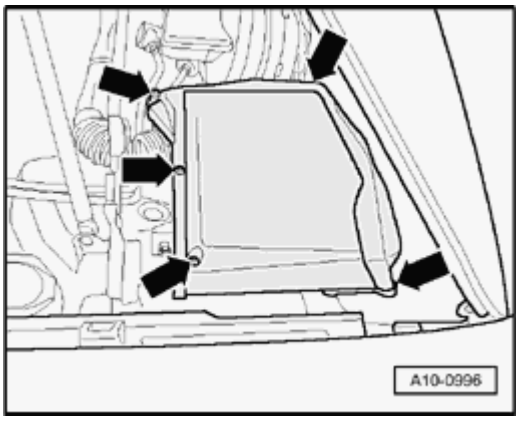


Fig. 158: Removing Screws And Cover From E-Box In Plenum Chamber
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove cover for electronics box (plenum chamber) - **arrow** -.

cardiagn.com

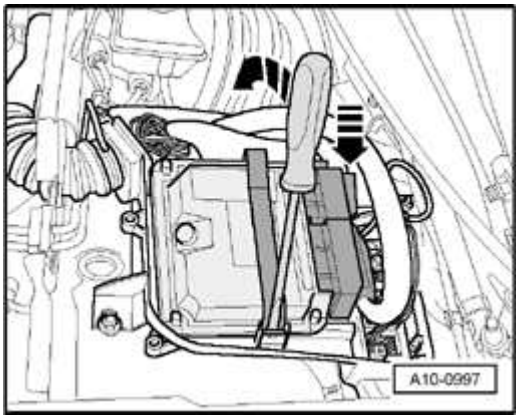


Fig. 159: Using Screwdriver To Remove Retainer Bar And Engine Control Module (ECM) J623
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, carefully lever off retainer - **arrow** - and place engine control module with connected wiring on one side.
- Unclip retaining clip.
- If present, place transmission control module with connected wiring on one side.

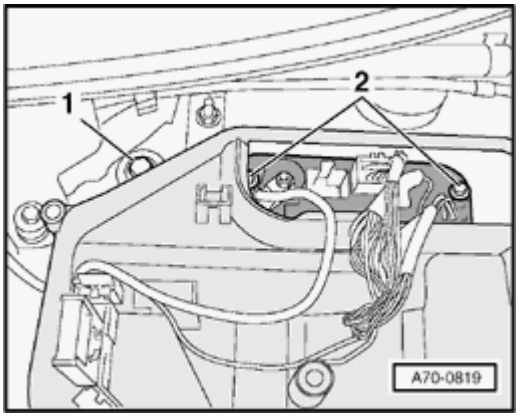


Fig. 160: Removing Bolts Of Connector Station
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x) of connector point. Tightening torque 3 Nm
- In plenum chamber, remove bolt - **1** - from instrument panel central tube. Tightening torque 6 Nm

cardiagn.com

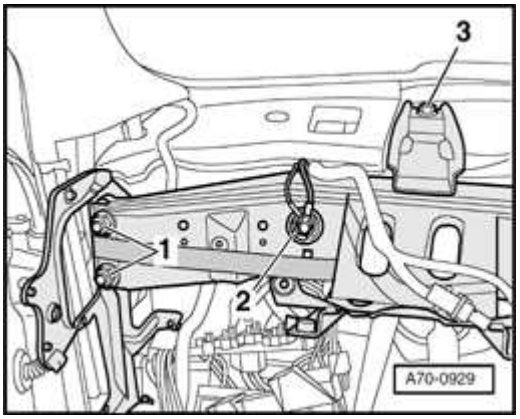


Fig. 161: Removing Nuts, Bolts & Ground (GND) Wires - Left
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove nuts - **1** - (2x) on left. Tightening torque 35 Nm
- Remove bolt - **3** - at top. Tightening torque 6 Nm
- Remove Ground (GND) wires - **2** -.

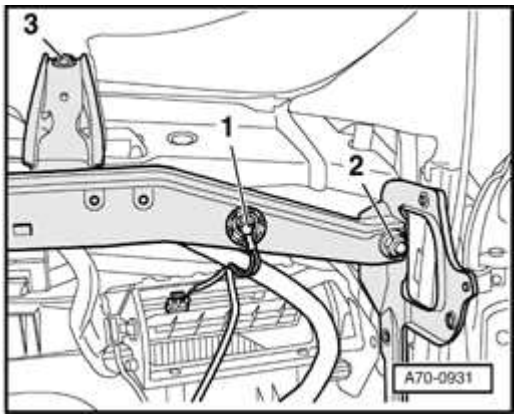


Fig. 162: Removing Nuts, Bolts & Ground (GND) Wires - Right
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove nut - **2** - on right. Tightening torque 35 Nm
- Remove bolt - **3** - at top. Tightening torque 6 Nm
- Remove Ground (GND) wires - **1** -.
- Pull instrument panel central tube a few mm forward.

cardiagn.com

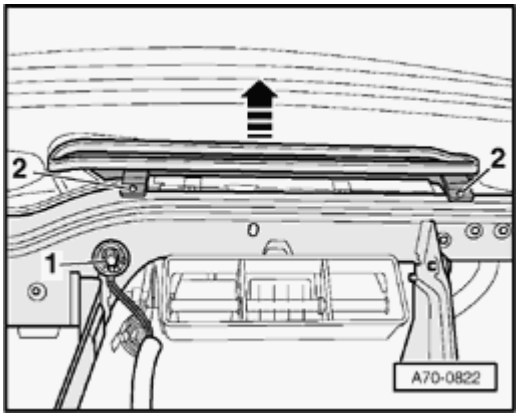


Fig. 163: Pulling Out Pins Upward, Removing Air Guide Upward & Unscrewing Ground (GND) Wires
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a small screwdriver pull out pins - **2** - (2x) upwards as far possible.
- Set electrical wiring harness aside behind vent.
- Remove air duct - **arrow** - upward.
- Remove Ground (GND) wires - **1** -.

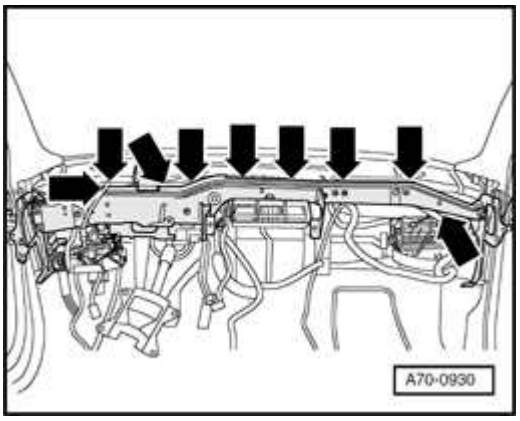


Fig. 164: Disconnecting Wiring Harness Behind Instrument Panel Central Tube From Instrument Panel Central Tube
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect wiring harness behind instrument panel central tube from instrument panel central tube - **arrows** -...

cardiagn.com

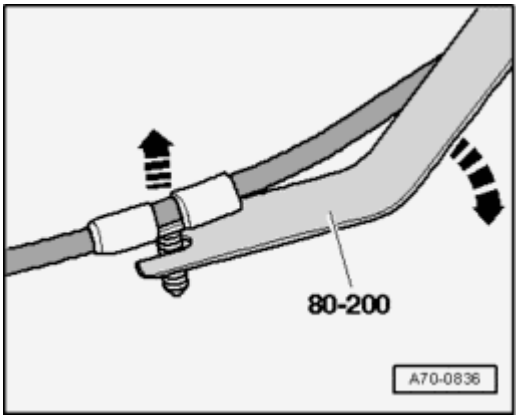


Fig. 165: Using Pry Lever 80 - 200 To Remove Instrument Panel Central Tube
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- ... Pry bar 80-200
- Remove instrument panel central tube.

TRIMS

Upper A-pillar trim, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

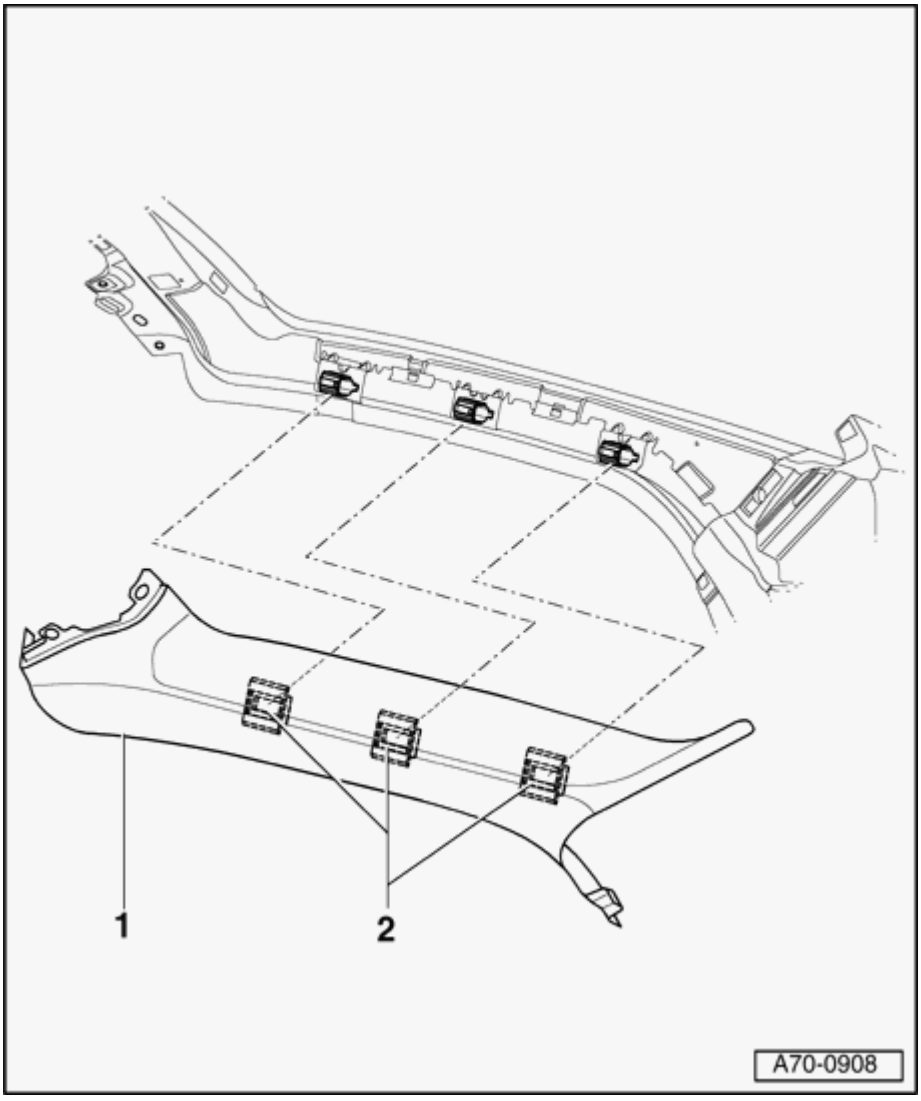


Fig. 166: Identifying Upper A-Pillar Trim & Clips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Upper A-pillar trim

- **Removing**

  - Remove windshield trim --> **Windshield trim, assembly overview**.
  - Unclip lower A-pillar trim in upper area.
  - Pry out upper A-pillar trim - **1** - at clips - **2** - (3x).
  - Detach upper A-pillar trim - **1** -.

- **Removing**

  - When installing, ensure that rubber door surround is in full contact with upper A-pillar trim - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- Install upper A-pillar trim - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

2 - Clips (3x)

Lower A-pillar trim, assembly overview

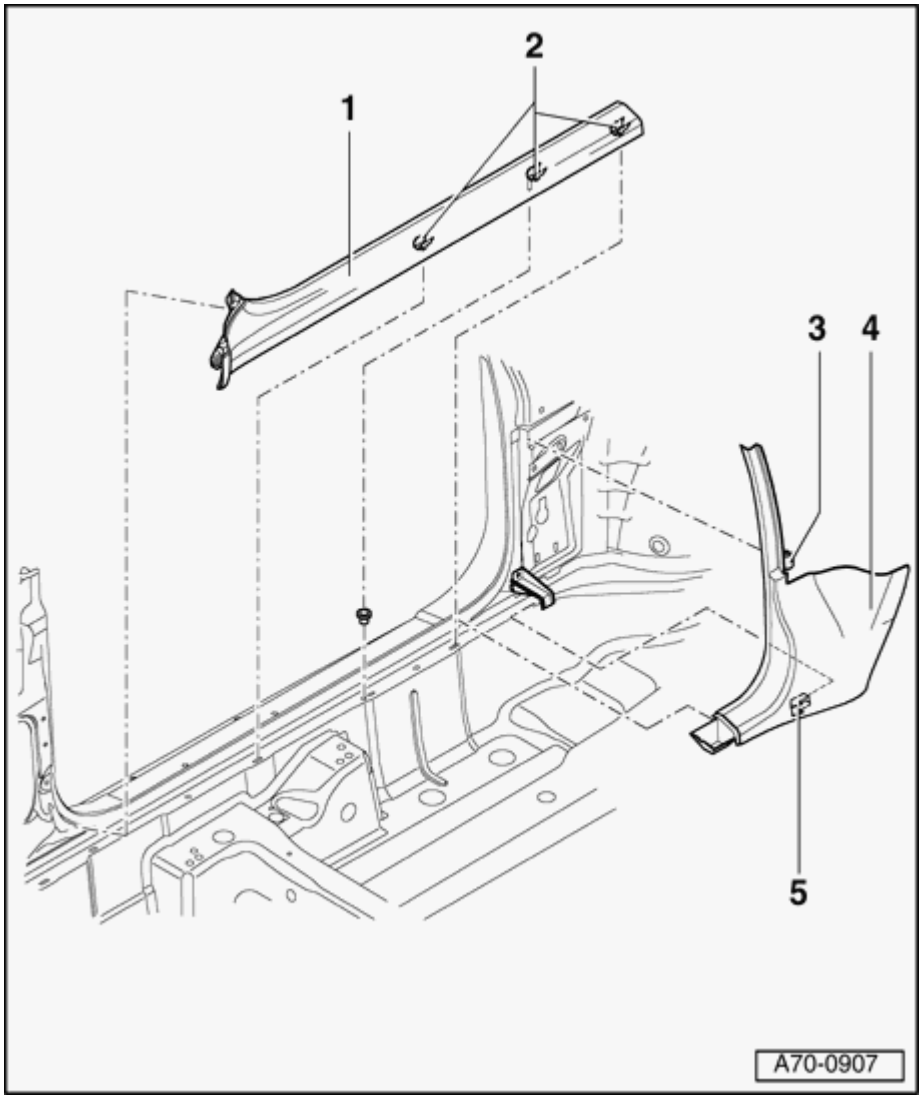


Fig. 167: Lower A-Pillar Trim, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Sill panel trim

2 - Clips (3x)

3 - Clip

4 - Lower A-pillar trim

cardiagn.com

- **Removing**

  - Unclip sill panel trim - **1** - at clips - **2** - (3x).
  - Lift front sill panel trim - **1** -.
  - Unclip lower A-pillar trim - **4** - at clip - **5** -.
  - Press retainer tab on clip - **3** - and remove lower A-pillar trim - **4** -.

- **Installing**

  - When installing, ensure that rubber door surround is in full contact with lower A-pillar trim - **1** -.
  - Install lower A-pillar trim - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

5 - Clip

Floor covering, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

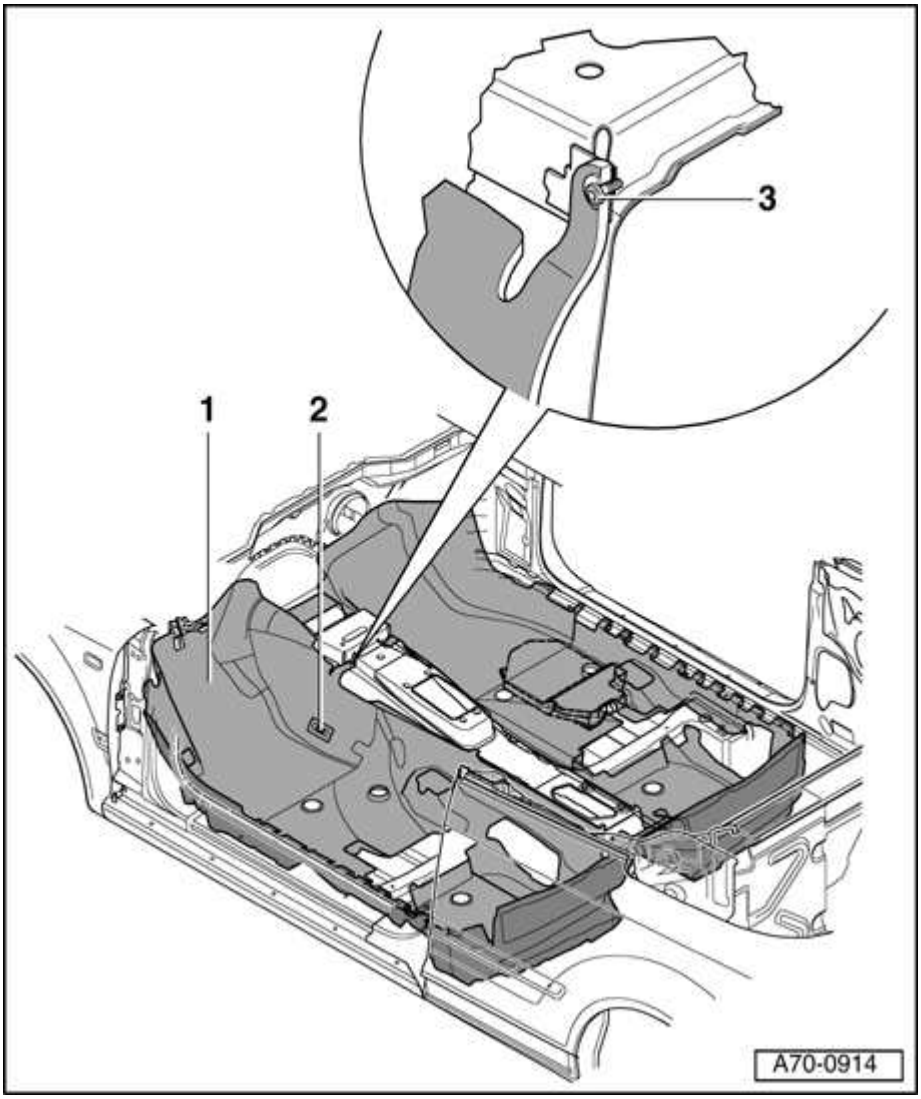


Fig. 168: Floor Covering, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Floor mat

- **Removing**

- Remove front seats --> **Front seat, assembly overview**.
- Remove rear seat backrest --> **Rear seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove rear bench seat --> **Rear seat bench, assembly overview**.
- Remove sill panel trims --> **Sill panel trim, removing and installing**.

- Remove lower A-pillar trims --> **Lower A-pillar trim, assembly overview**.
- Remove foot rest --> **Removing and installing foot rest**.
- Remove foot rest holder --> **Foot rest holder, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove center console --> **Center console, assembly overview**.

- Detach wiring harness under center console.
- Remove bolts (2x) at air ducts - **2** - (2x) and remove both air ducts - **2** - (2x).
- Unscrew bolts - **3** - (2x).
- Fold floor mat - **1** - length ways and remove floor mat - **1** - from vehicle.

- **Installing**

NOTE:

- **Floor covering is liable to tear slightly at cut-outs. Install floor mat carefully.**

- Install floor mat - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

2 - Air ducts (2x)

3 - Bolts (2x)

Sill panel trim, removing and installing

- **Removing**

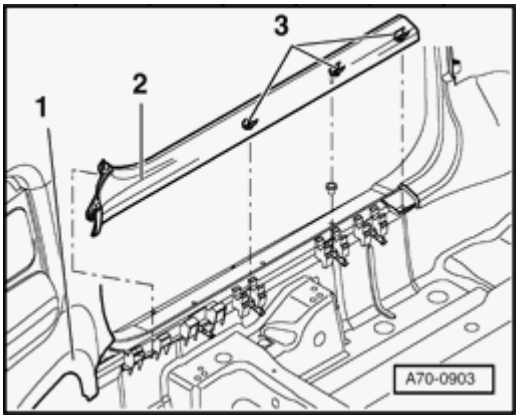


Fig. 169: Sill Panel Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Unclip side trim - **1** - in bottom area.
- Unclip sill panel trim - **2** - at clips - **3** - (3x).
- Remove sill panel trim - **2** -.

- **Installing**

- After installation ensure that seal is pulled correctly over sill panel trim - **2** -.
- Install sill panel trim - **2** - in reverse order of removal.

cardiagn.com

Removing and installing foot rest

- **Removing**

  - Remove drivers storage compartment --> **Drivers storage compartment (without knee protection), removing and installing** , USA vehicles --> **Drivers storage compartment (vehicles with knee bolster), assembly overview**
  - Remove lower A-pillar trim --> **Lower A-pillar trim, assembly overview**.

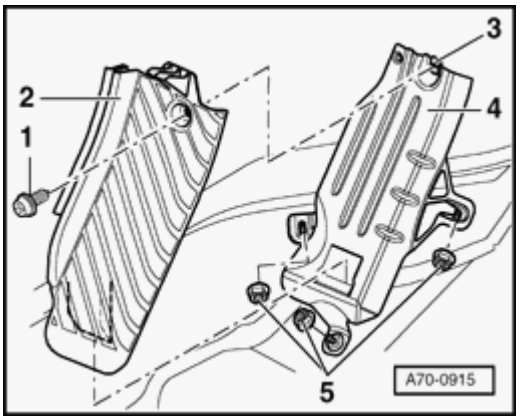


Fig. 170: Identifying Foot Rest Holder, Nuts, Snap-On Nut, Bolt & Foot Rest
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

  - Remove bolt - **1** -.
  - Push foot rest - **2** - upward and remove foot rest - **2** -.

- **Installing**

  - Install foot rest - **2** - in reverse order of removal.

Foot rest holder, removing and installing

- **Removing**

  - Remove foot rest.

cardiagn.com

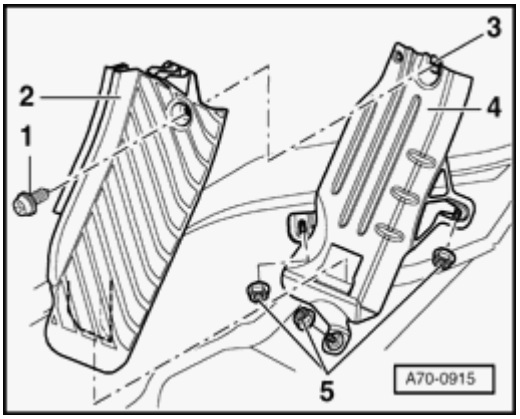


Fig. 171: Identifying Foot Rest Holder, Nuts, Snap-On Nut, Bolt & Foot Rest
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fold back floor covering in area of foot rest holder - **4** -.
- Remove nuts - **5** - (3x).

- Tightening torque 4 Nm

- Remove foot rest holder - **4** -.

- **Installing**

- Ensure that - **3** - is installed to foot rest holder - **4** -.

Sun visor, removing and installing

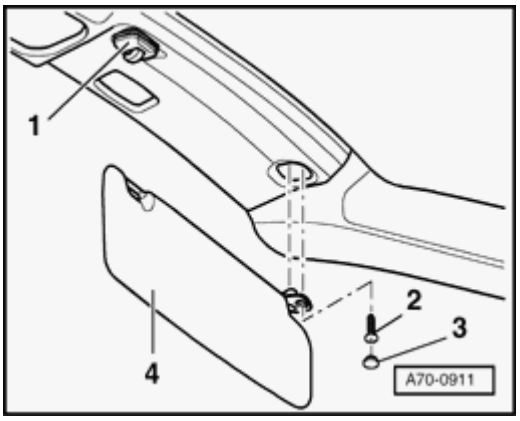


Fig. 172: Sun Visor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove sun visor - **4** - from mount - **1** - and fold sun visor - **4** - aside.
- Using a screwdriver, pry out trim cap - **3** -.
- Remove bolt - **2** -.

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque 4 Nm
  - Remove sun visor - **4** -.
- **Installing**
  - Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Sun visor mount, removing and installing

- **Removing**

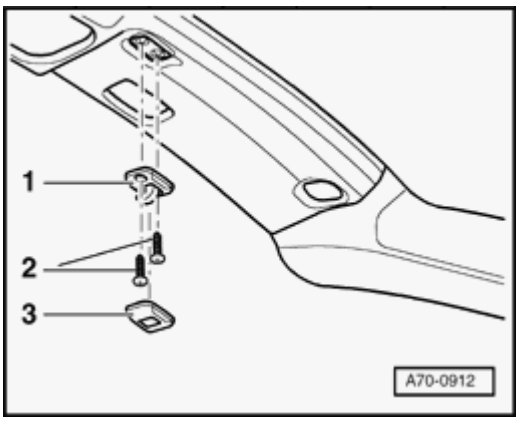


Fig. 173: Sun Visor Mount Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

  - Using a screwdriver, pry out trim cap - **3** -.
  - Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).
- Tightening torque 4 Nm
  - Remove mount - **1** -.
- **Installing**
  - Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Center sun visor, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

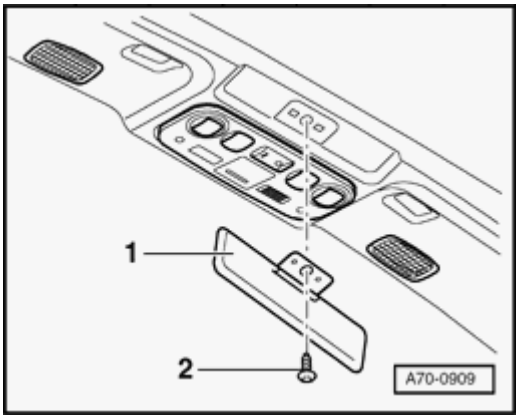


Fig. 174: Center Sun Visor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **2** -.
- Remove center sun visor - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Windshield trim, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

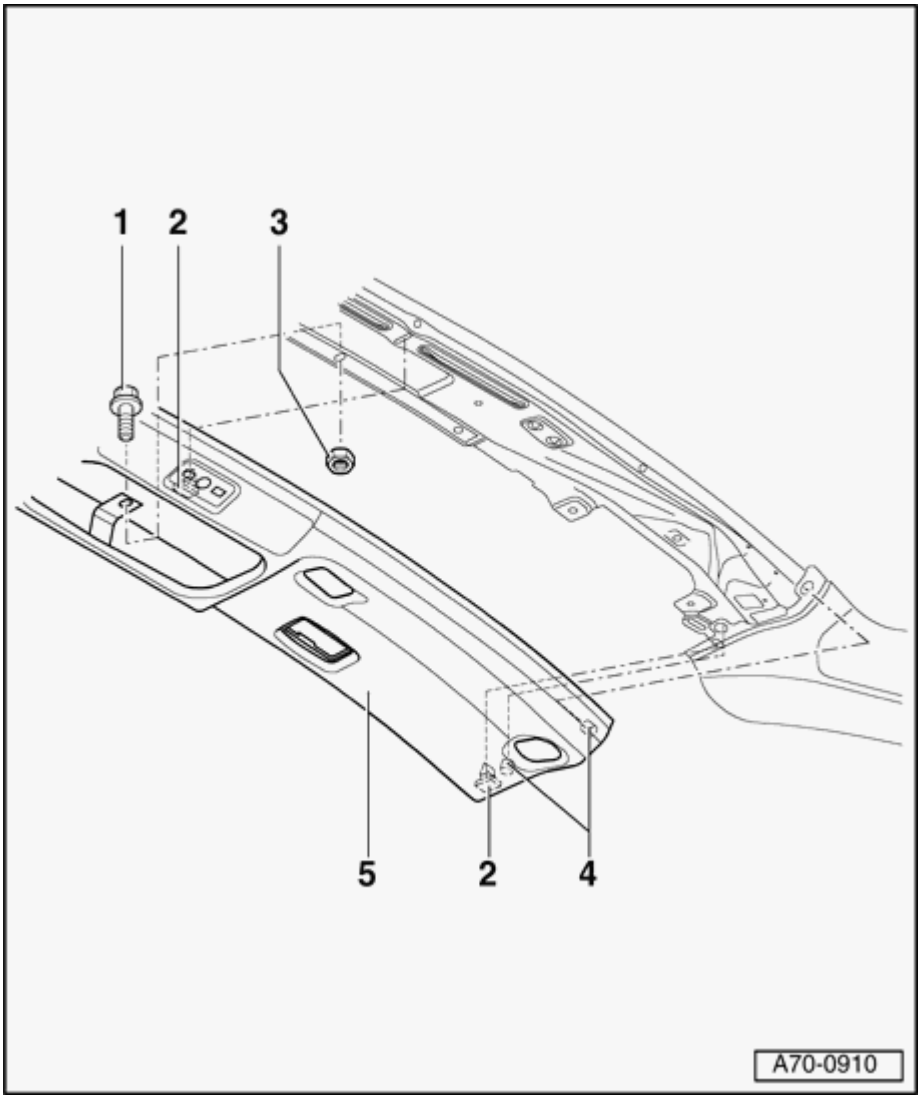


Fig. 175: Windshield Trim, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

2 - Clips (2x)

3 - Nut

4 - Tabs (2x)

5 - Windshield trim

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

- Remove interior light/reading light --> **Lower A-pillar trim, assembly overview** and --> **Lower A-pillar trim, assembly overview** and --> **Interior light/reading light, removing and installing**.
- Remove make-up mirror light --> **Lower A-pillar trim, assembly overview** and --> **Lower A-pillar trim, assembly overview** and --> **Removing and installing make-up mirror light**.
- Remove sun visors --> **Lower A-pillar trim, assembly overview** and --> **Lower A-pillar trim, assembly overview** and --> **Sun visor, removing and installing**.
- Remove sun visor mounts --> **Lower A-pillar trim, assembly overview** and --> **Lower A-pillar trim, assembly overview** and --> **Sun visor mount, removing and installing**.
- Remove center sun visor --> **Lower A-pillar trim, assembly overview** and --> **Lower A-pillar trim, assembly overview** and --> **Center sun visor, removing and installing**.
- Remove nut - **3** -.
- Pry out windshield trim - **5** - at clips - **2** - (2x) and tabs - **4** - (2x).
- Carefully remove windshield trim - **5** - downward.

- **Installing**

- Install windshield trim - **5** - in reverse order of removal.

Removing and installing make-up mirror light

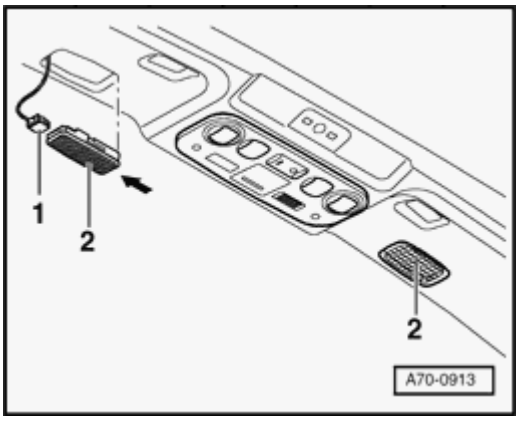


Fig. 176: Removing/Installing Make-Up Mirror Light
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, pry out make-up mirror light - **2** - in direction of - **arrow** -.
- Disconnect connector - **1** -.
- Remove make-up mirror light - **2** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Interior light/reading light, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

Special tools and workshop equipment required

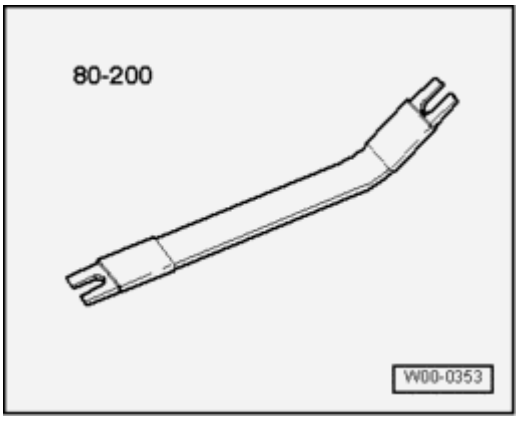


Fig. 177: Identifying Pry Lever 80-200
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry bar 80-200
- **Removing**

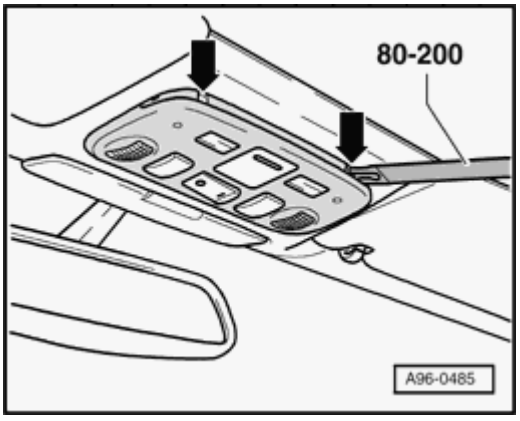


Fig. 178: Using Pry Bar 80-200 To Carefully Pry Out Interior Light At Rear Edge
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using Pry bar 80-200 , carefully pry out interior light at rear edge. Watch for the two retaining tabs - **arrows** -.
- Disconnect connectors.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT TRIM

Tailgate trim, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

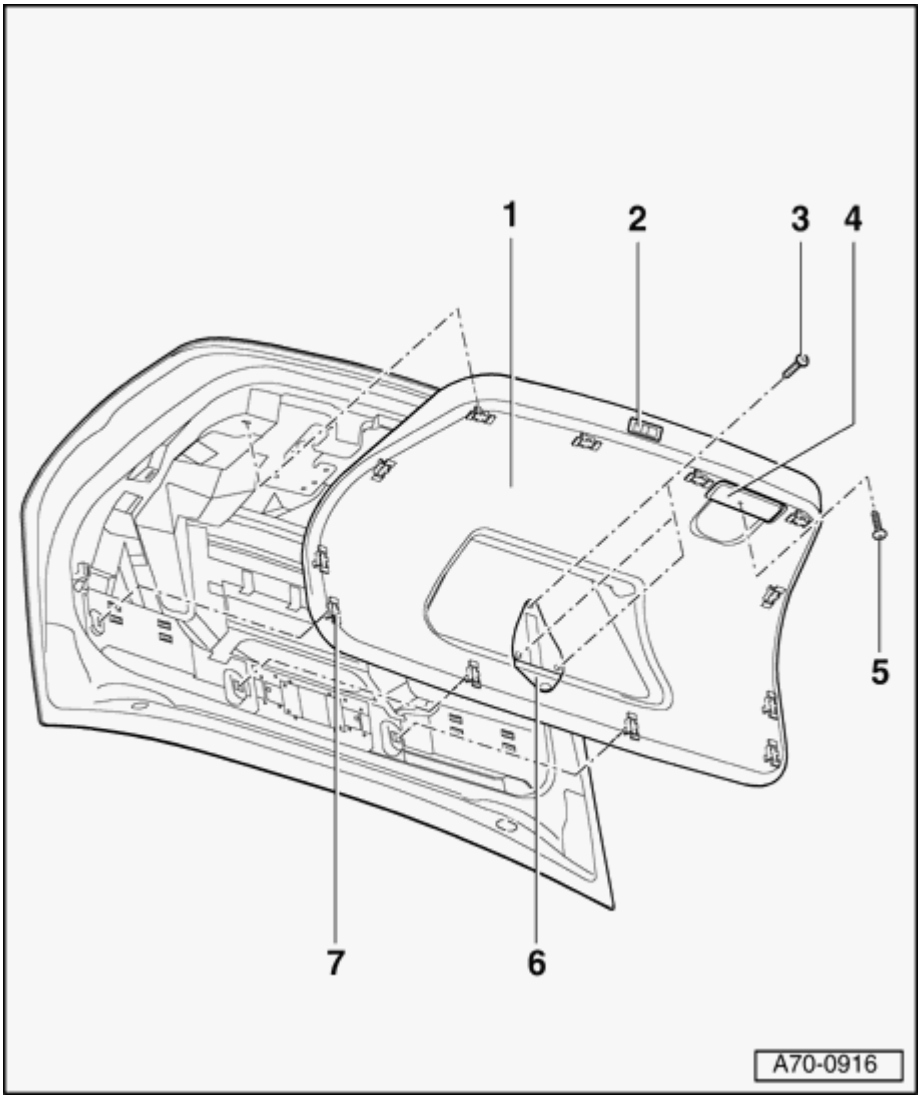


Fig. 179: Tailgate Trim, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Tailgate trim

- **Removing**

  - Remove warning triangle.
  - Remove bolts - **3** - (3x).
  - Remove warning triangle holder - **6** -.
  - Remove lock cover - **2** -.
  - Remove bolt - **5** - in handle - **4** -.
  - Vehicles with emergency release handle: Remove emergency release handle **Removing emergency release handle**

cardiagn.com

- Unclip tailgate trim - **1** - at clips - **7** - (12x).
- Remove tailgate trim - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Install tailgate trim in reverse order of removal.

2 - Lock cover

3 - Bolts (3x)

4 - Handle

5 - Bolt

6 - Bracket for warning triangle.

7 - Clips (12 x)

Removing emergency release handle

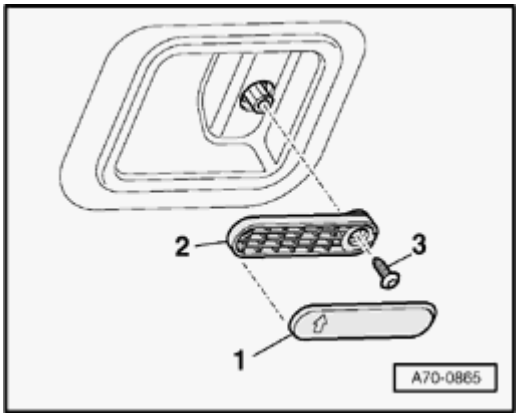


Fig. 180: Removing Emergency Release Handle
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Unclip cover - **1** -.
- Remove bolt - **3** -.
- Remove handle - **2** -.

Luggage compartment light, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

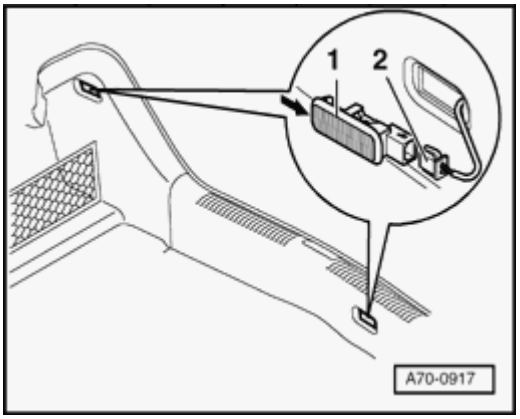


Fig. 181: Luggage Compartment Light Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, pry out luggage compartment light - **1** - in direction of - **arrow** -.
- Disconnect connector - **2** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Rear cross panel trim, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

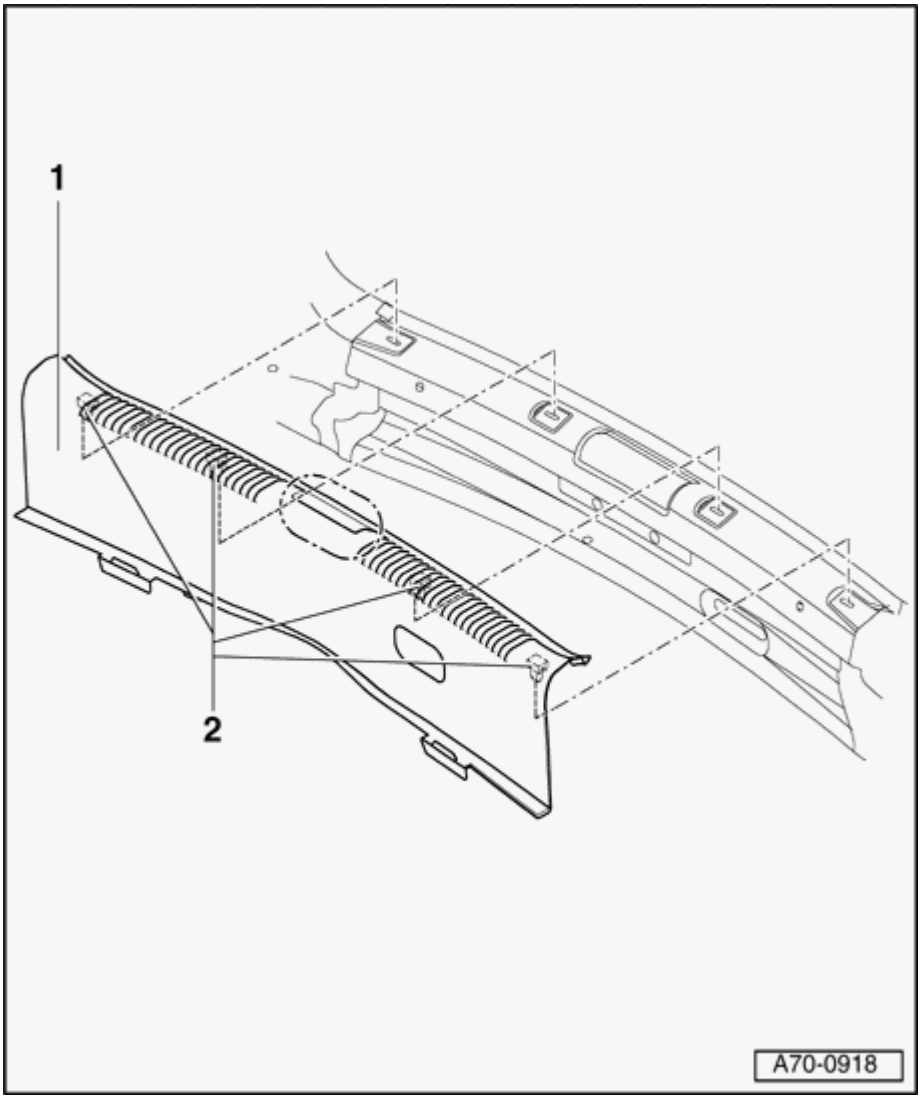


Fig. 182: Rear Cross Panel Trim, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear cross panel trim

- **Removing**

  - Remove luggage compartment floor covering from luggage compartment
  - Remove luggage compartment light --> **Luggage compartment light, removing and installing**.
  - Unclip rear cross panel trim - **1** - upward from clips - **2** - (4x).

- **Installing**

NOTE:

- **After installation ensure that seal is pulled correctly over trim.**

cardiagn.com

- Install rear cross panel trim in reverse order of removal.

2 - Clips (4x)

Right side trim, assembly overview

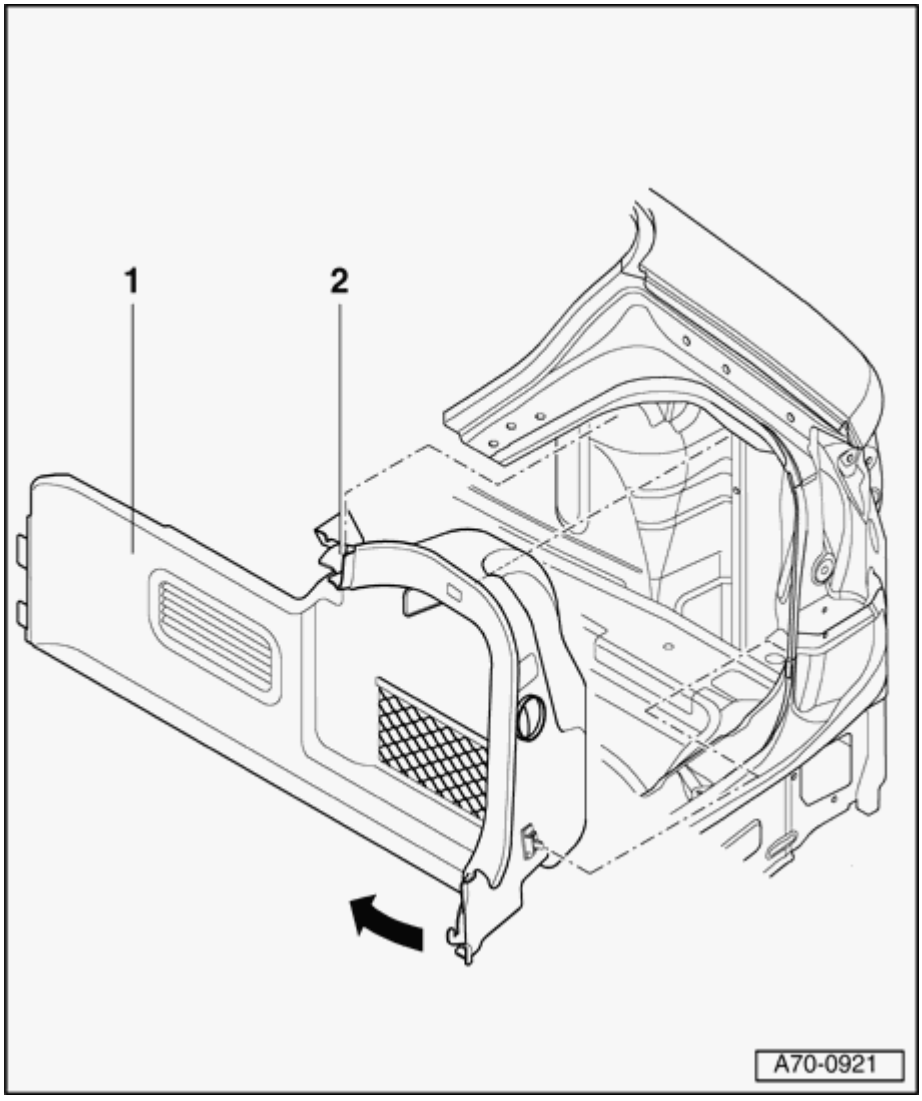


Fig. 183: Right Side Trim, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Right side trim

- **Removing**

- Remove luggage compartment floor covering.
- Remove rear panel trim --> **Rear cross panel trim, assembly overview**.
- Remove luggage compartment light --> **Luggage compartment light, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Unclip clip - **2** -.
- Detach right side trim - **1** - in direction of - **arrow** -.

- **Installing**

NOTE:

- **After installation ensure that seal is pulled correctly over trim.**

- Install trim in reverse order of removal.

2 - Clip

Left side trim, assembly overview

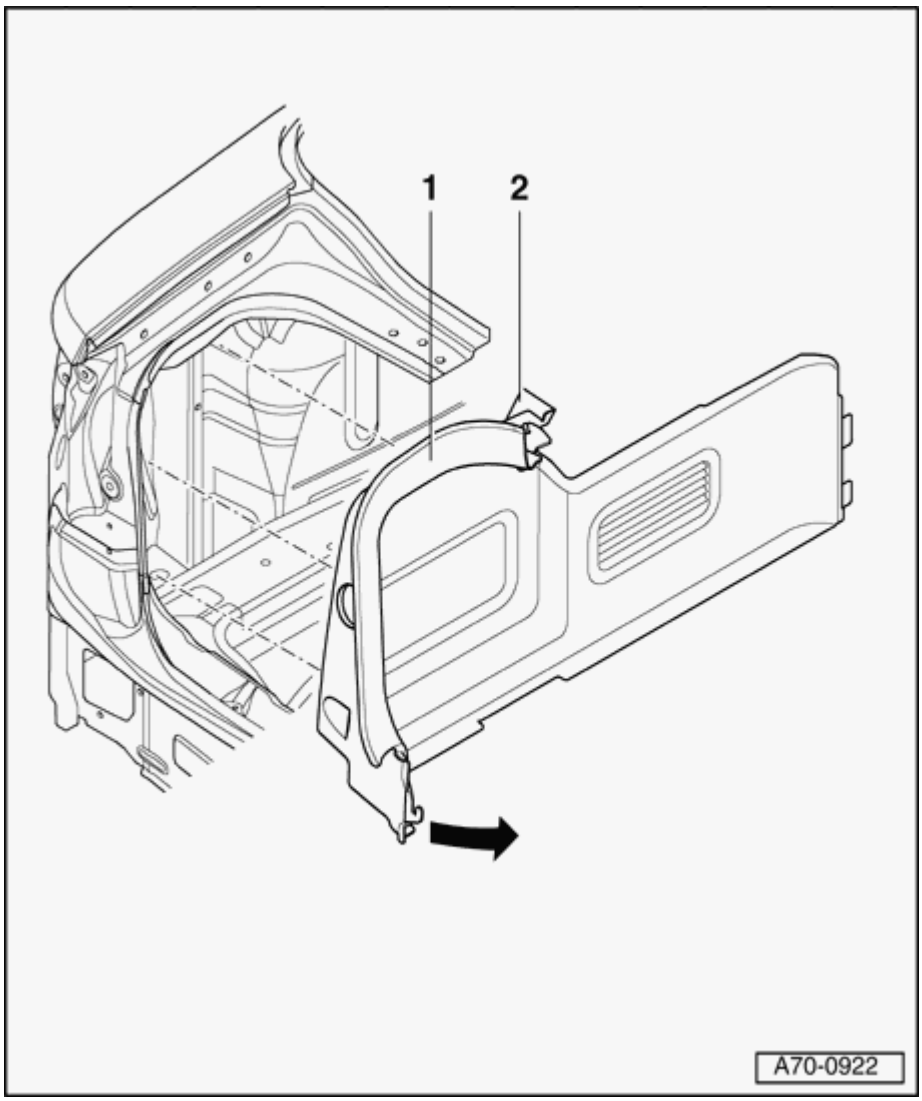


Fig. 184: Left Side Trim, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Left side trim

- **Removing**

  - Remove luggage compartment floor covering.
  - Remove rear panel trim --> **Rear cross panel trim, assembly overview**.
  - Unclip clip - **2** -.
  - Detach left side trim - **1** - in direction of - **arrow** -.

- **Installing**

NOTE:

- **After installation ensure that seal is pulled correctly over trim.**

  - Install trim in reverse order of removal.

2 - Clip

Back panel trim, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

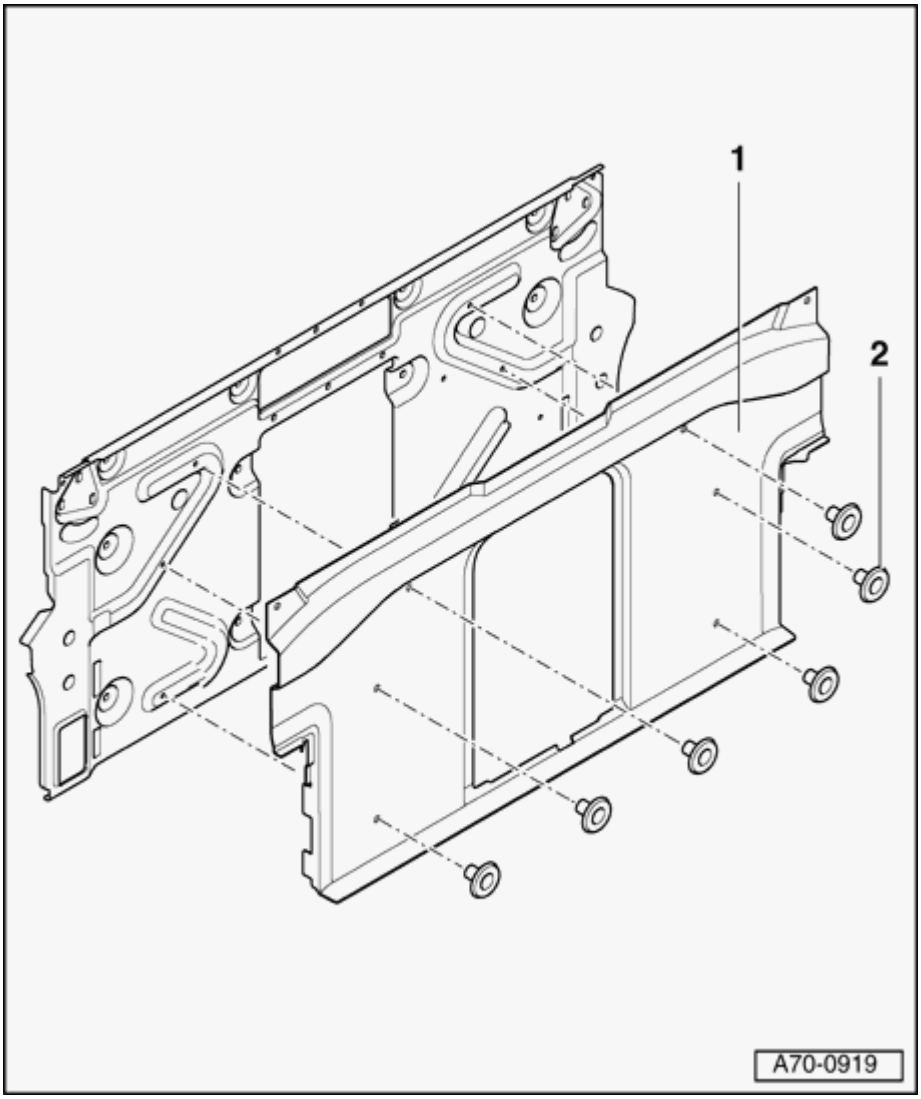


Fig. 185: Back Panel Trim, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Back panel trim

- **Removing**

- Remove right side trim --> **Right side trim, assembly overview**.
- Remove left side trim --> **Left side trim, assembly overview**.
- Remove luggage compartment floor covering.
- If installed, remove frame for ski bag --> **Removing and installing trim for through-load bag**.

- Ensure that convertible top is closed and convertible top compartment folded up.
- Unclip back panel trim - **1** - at clips - **2** - (6x).

cardiagn.com

2 - Clips (6x)

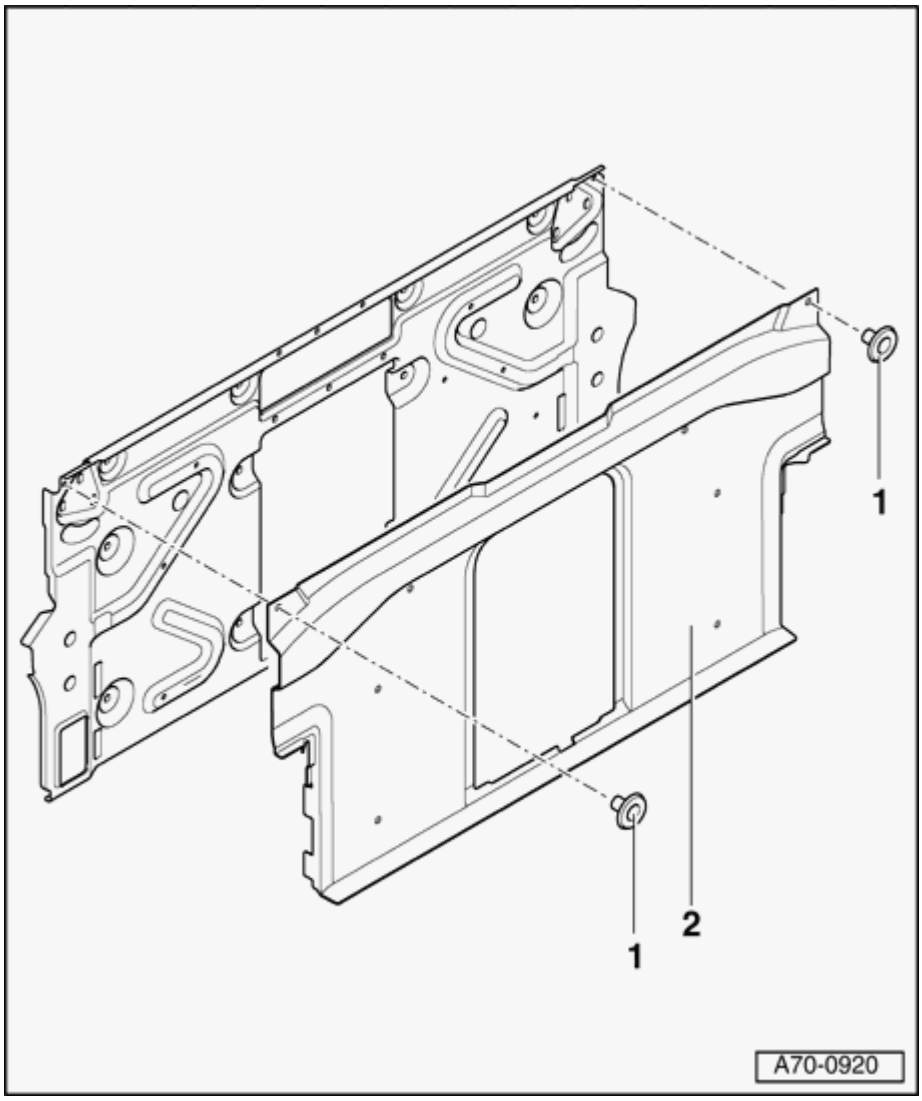


Fig. 186: Identifying Back Panel Trim & Clips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Clips (2x)

2 - Back panel trim

- Fold convertible top compartment down.
- Open convertible top.
- Unclip back panel trim - **2** - at clips - **1** - (2x).
- Lift out back panel trim - **2** -.

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

- Install back panel trim - **2** - in reverse order of removal.

Floor covering holder, removing and installing

- Remove floor covering - **2** -.

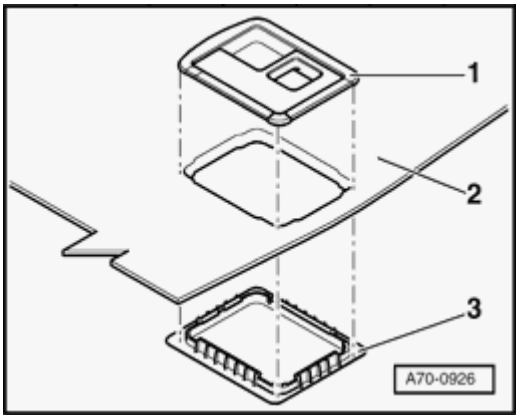


Fig. 187: Removing Floor Covering & Uncliping Holder From Fastener
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Unclip holder - **1** - from fastener - **3** -.

TRIM FOR CONVERTIBLE TOP COMPARTMENT

Rear trim, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

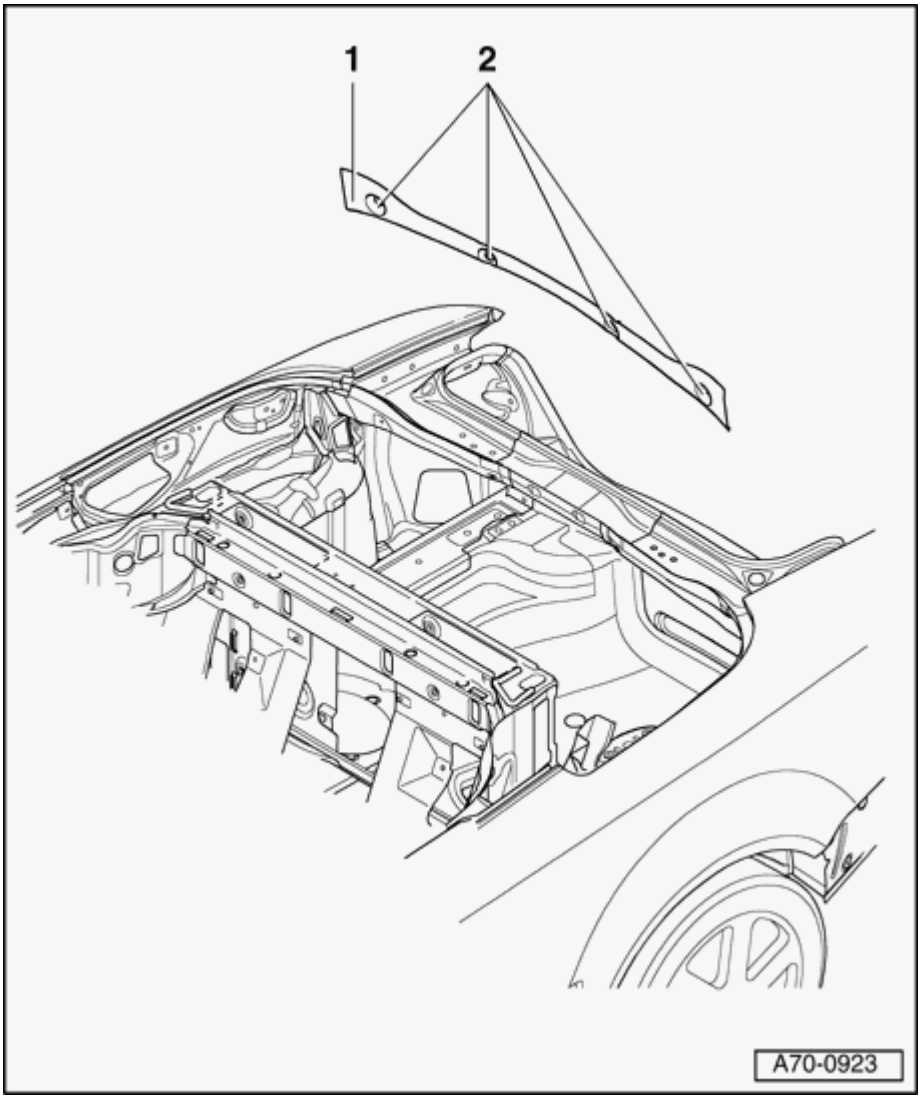


Fig. 188: Identifying Rear Trim & Clips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear trim

- **Removing**

  - Open convertible top.
  - Fold convertible top compartment down.
  - Unclip clips - **2** - (4x).
  - Fold away seal and pull out rear trim - **1** -.

- **Installing**

  - After installation ensure that seal is installed correctly.

cardiagn.com

- Install rear trim - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

2 - Clips (4x)

Side trim, removing and installing

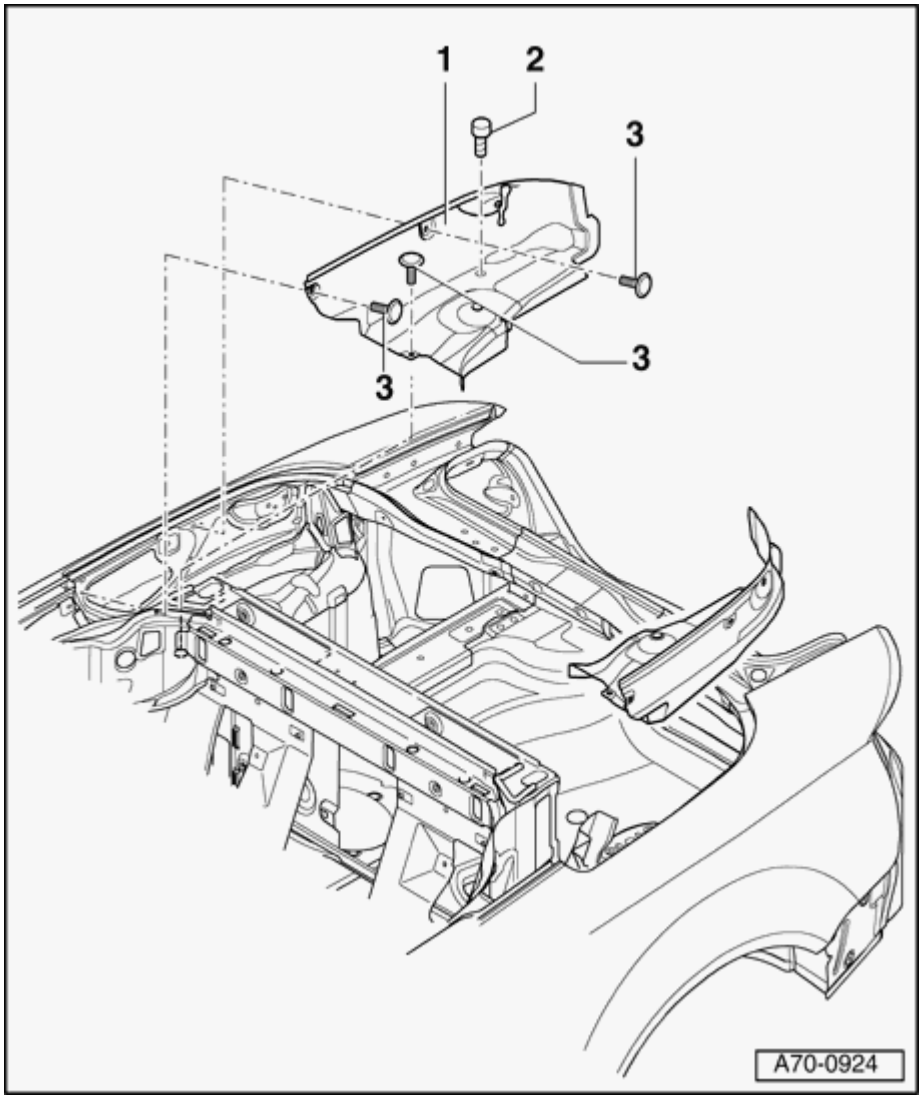


Fig. 189: Identifying Side Trim, Clips & Buffer
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Side trim

- **Removing**

- Open convertible top.
- Fold convertible top compartment down.
- Unclip clips - **3** - (3x).

cardiagn.com

- Remove stop buffer - **2** -.
- Fold seal aside and pull out side trim - **1** -.

- **Installing**

NOTE:

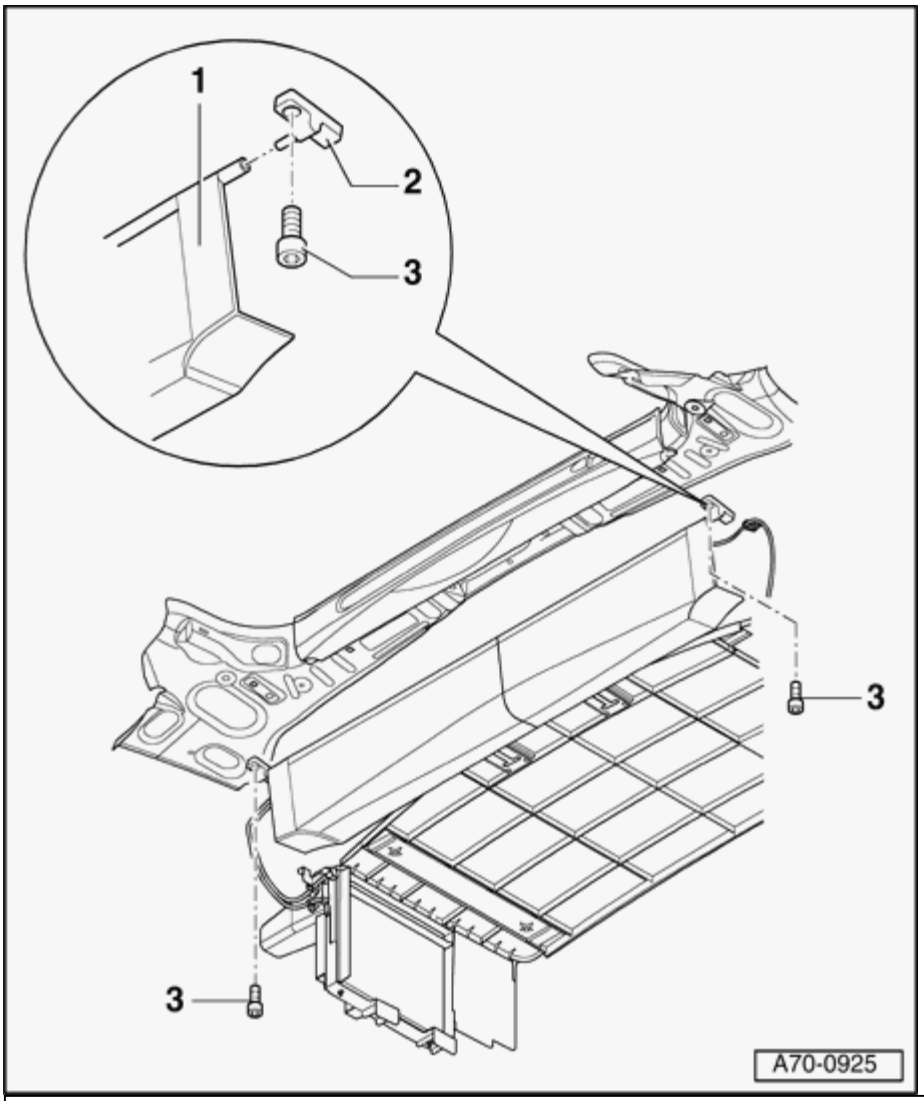
- **After installation ensure that seal is pulled correctly over trim.**

- Install side trim - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

2 - Stop buffer

3 - Clips (3x)

Flap, removing and installing



cardiagn.com

Fig. 190: Identifying Flap, Bolts & Mountings
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Flap

- **Removing**

  - Remove bolts - **3** - (2x) on mountings - **2** - (2x).
  - Push flap - **1** - forward and detach flap - **1** - downward.

- **Installing**

  - Install flap in reverse order of removal.

2 - Mounting (2x)

3 - Bolts (2x)

VARIABLE CONVERTIBLE TOP COMPARTMENT

Variable convertible top compartment, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

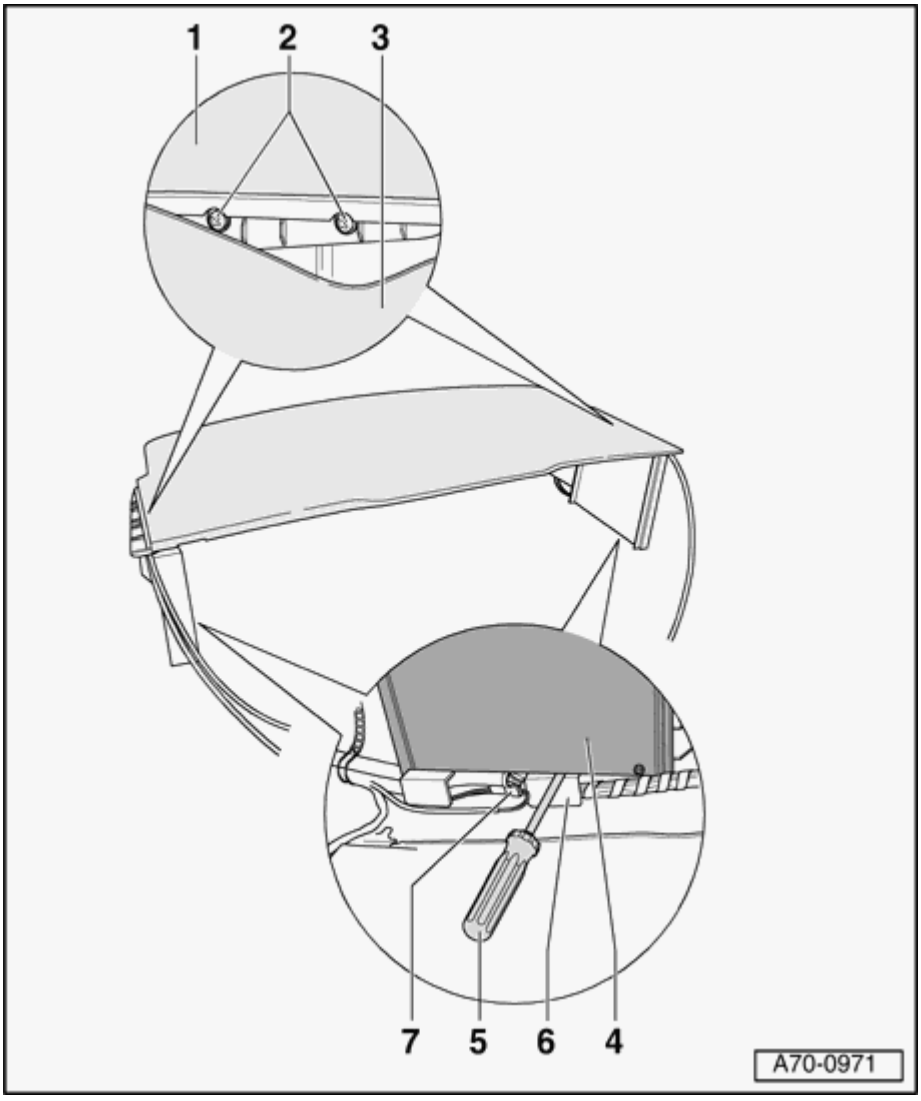


Fig. 191: Variable Convertible Top Compartment Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Variable convertible top compartment

- **Removing**
- Move convertible top into such a position that convertible top compartment is open.
- Lift up side lining in convertible top compartment.
- Remove bolts left and right - **2** - (2x).

- Close convertible top.
- Open luggage compartment lid.
- Remove lid of convertible top compartment --> **Convertible top compartment lid, assembly overview**.
- Remove handle mount trim --> **Handle mount trim, assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

- Detach Bowden cables from clips.
- Using a large, flat screwdriver - **6** - , work along between convertible top compartment side section - **4** - and console - **3** - and carefully detach convertible top compartment from console - **5** - (secured with adhesive tape)
- Disconnect connector to microswitch - **7** - on right side.
- Detach Bowden cables from clips.

- Close luggage compartment lid.
- Move convertible top back into position "Convertible top compartment open".
- Second mechanic is required to lift out.
- Position handle mount trim on variable convertible top compartment.

- Remove luggage compartment side trim on left --> **Left side trim, assembly overview** and right --> **Right side trim, assembly overview**.

NOTE:

- **The variable convertible top compartment must be lifted at sides of frame section, do not hold convertible top compartment in center and extend mechanism.**
- **Lift out variable convertible top compartment - 1 - at both sides on side sections - 4 -.**
- **Make sure Bowden cables do not catch.**

2 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

3 - Convertible top compartment side lining

4 - Convertible top compartment side section

5 - Flat screwdriver

6 - Console

7 - Microswitch connector

Convertible top compartment lid, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

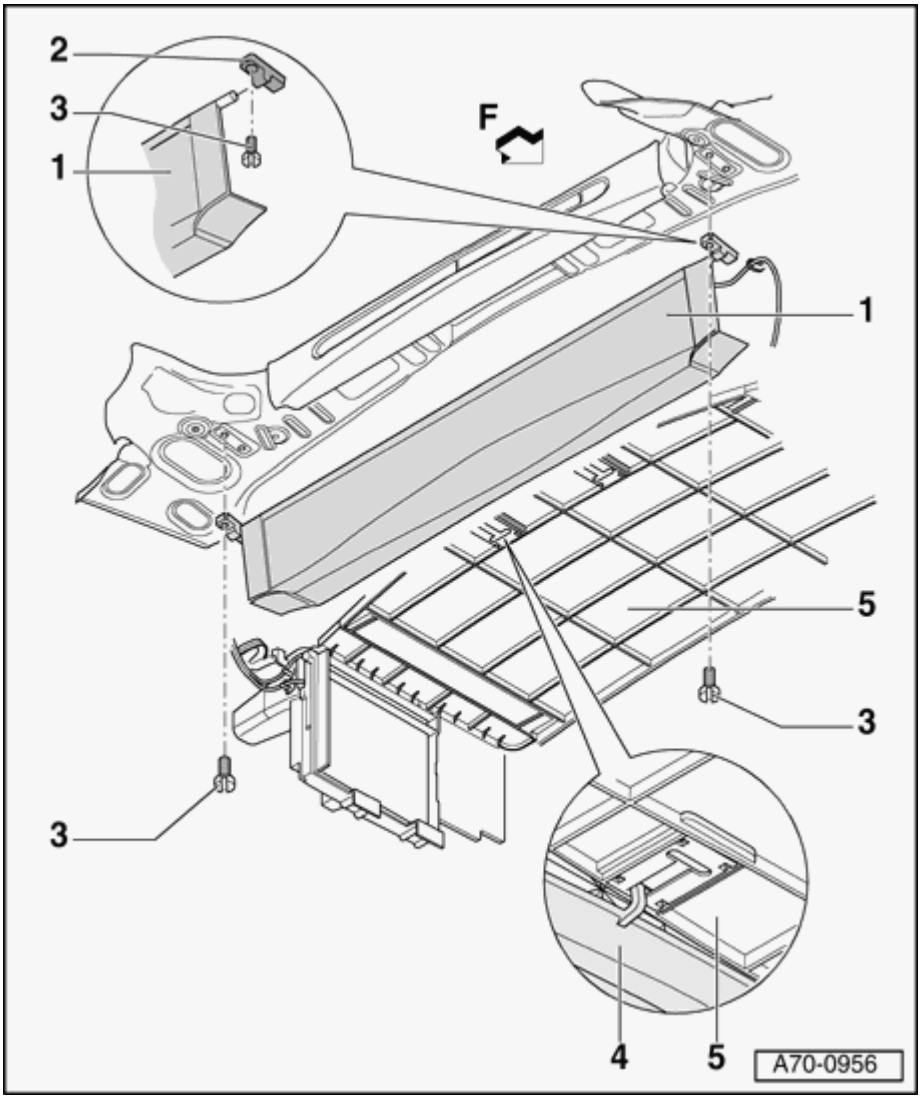


Fig. 192: Convertible Top Compartment Lid, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Convertible top compartment lid

NOTE:

- **The variable convertible top compartment must be in the lowest position.**
- **The hinges - 2 - must not be unscrewed to remove convertible top compartment lid - 1 -.**
- **Arrow faces in direction of travel.**

- **Removing**
- Bend convertible top compartment lid - **1** - back on one side on hinge and detach convertible top compartment lid - **1** - from hinges.
- Fold convertible top compartment lid - **1** - downward.
- Detach lid on hooks - **4** - (2x) by pushing forward.

cardiagn.com

2 - Hinge (2x)

- Bend convertible top compartment lid - **1** - back on one side on hinge and detach convertible top compartment lid - **1** - from hinges.
- Remove bolt - **3** -.
- Detach hinge - **2** - from body.

3 - Bolt (2x)

4 - Hook

5 - Variable convertible top compartment

Handle mount trim, assembly overview

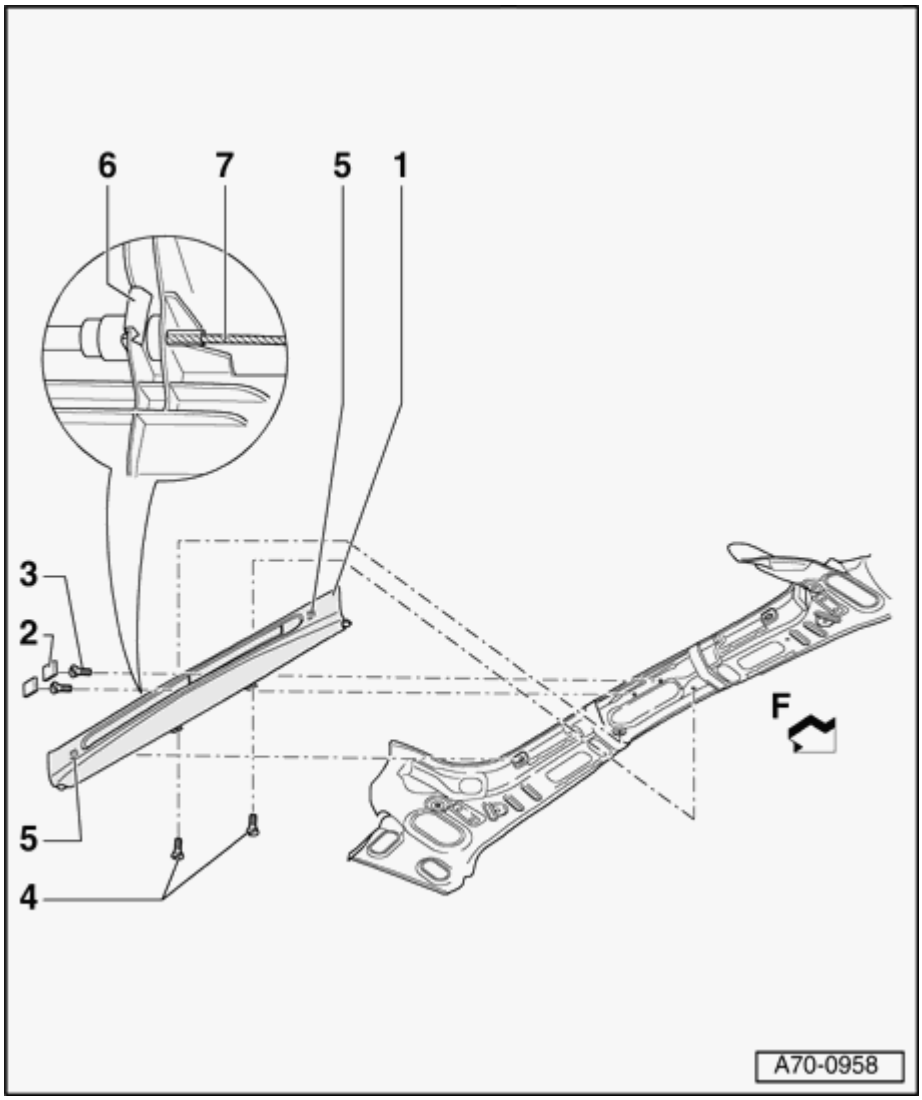


Fig. 193: Handle Mount Trim, Assembly Overview

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Handle mount trim

NOTE:

- **Convertible top must be closed.**

- **Removing**
- Pry out cover - **2** - using a small flat screwdriver.
- Remove bolt - **3** -.

- Turn handle.
- Pry out cover - **2** - on other side, using a small flat screwdriver.
- Remove second bolt - **3** -.
- Remove bolts - **4** - from underneath.

- Unclip handle mount trim - **1** - from clips - **5** - (2x).
- Pry out clamp - **6** - (always replace clamp - **6** -).
- Detach Bowden cable - **7** - from handle.

2 - Cover (2x)

3 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

4 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 7 Nm

5 - Clips (2x)

6 - Fastener

- Always replace

7 - Bowden cable

Handle for variable convertible top compartment, removing and installing

- **Removing**

  - Remove handle mount trim --> **Handle mount trim, assembly overview**.

NOTE:

- **Illustration shown from rear for greater clarity.**

cardiagn.com

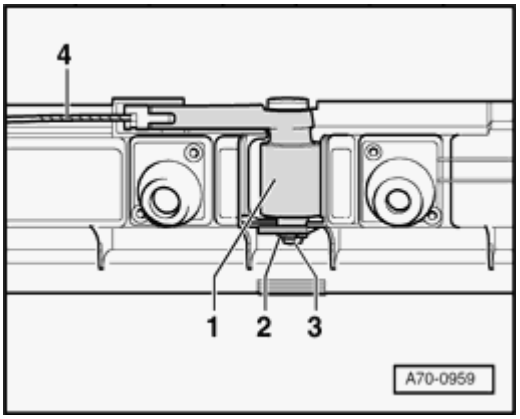


Fig. 194: Identifying Fuse, Pin, Handle & Bowden Cable
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a small flat screwdriver, pry out fuse - **2** - (always replace fuse - **2** -).
- Press out pin - **3** -.
- Remove handle - **1** -.

1 - Handle

2 - Fuse

- Always replace

3 - Pin

4 - Bowden cable

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Microswitch for variable convertible top compartment, removing and installing

- Remove variable convertible top compartment --> **Variable convertible top compartment, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

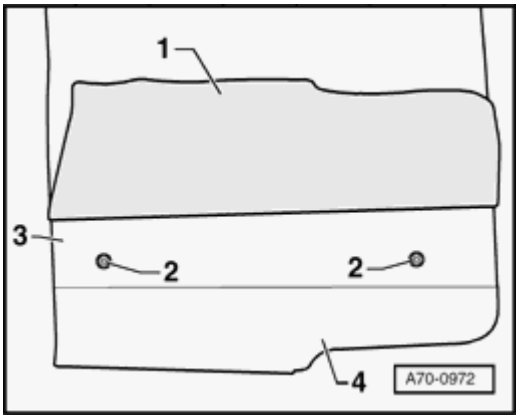


Fig. 195: Identifying Carpet, Bolts, Convertible Top Compartment Center Section & Right Side Section
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull carpet - **1** - back (convertible top compartment lining) on right side until both bolts - **2** - are accessible.
- Bond carpet with D 001 200.
- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).
- Tightening torque 4 Nm
- Detach convertible top compartment center section - **3** - from right side section - **4** -.

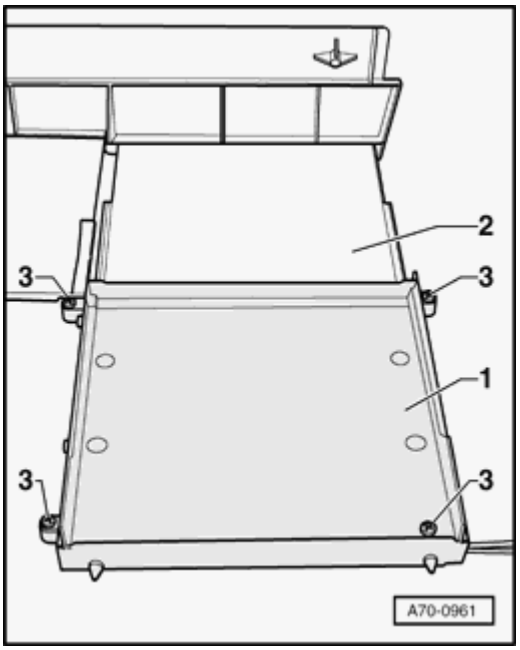


Fig. 196: Identifying Side Sections & Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Pull side sections - **1** - and - **2** - apart.
- Remove bolts - **3** - (4x) from inner lid.

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

- Detach inner lid - **1** -.
- Carefully drill off microswitch weld on outside.

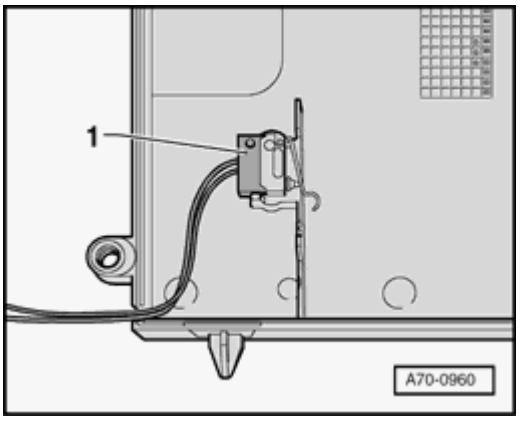


Fig. 197: Removing Microswitch
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove microswitch - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Attach new microswitch - **1** - using soldering iron on outside.
- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Toothed segment of variable convertible top compartment, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove variable convertible top compartment --> **Variable convertible top compartment, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

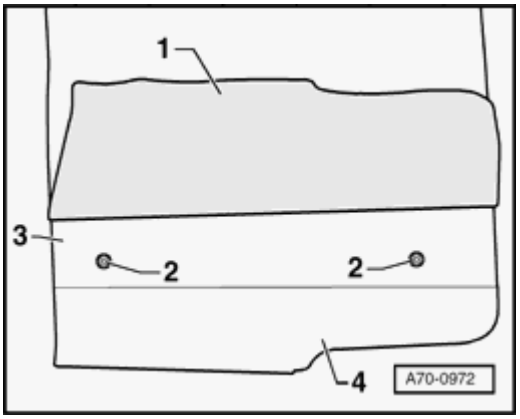


Fig. 198: Identifying Carpet, Bolts, Convertible Top Compartment Center Section & Right Side Section
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull carpet - **1** - back (convertible top compartment lining) on side to be changed until both bolts - **2** - are accessible.
- Bond carpet with D 001 200.
- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).
- Tightening torque 4 Nm
- Detach convertible top compartment center section - **3** - from right side section - **4** -.

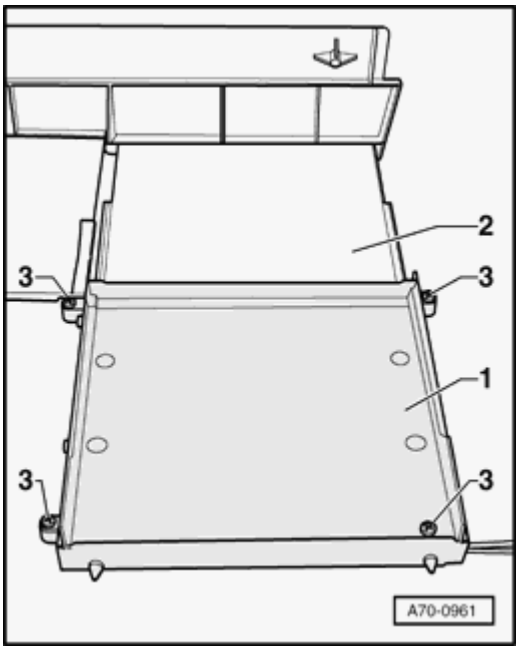


Fig. 199: Identifying Side Sections & Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Pull side sections - **1** - and - **2** - apart.
- Remove bolts - **3** - (4x) from inner lid.

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

- Detach inner lid - **1** -.

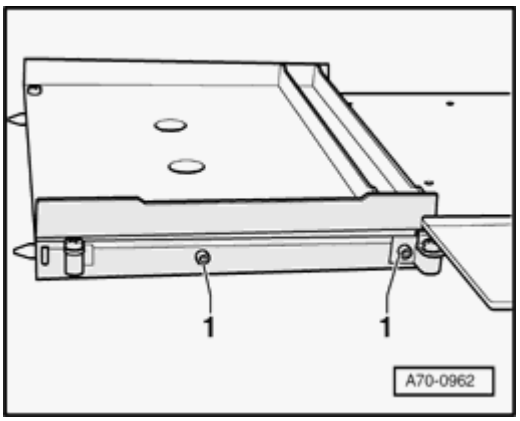


Fig. 200: Removing Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (4x) on both sides.

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

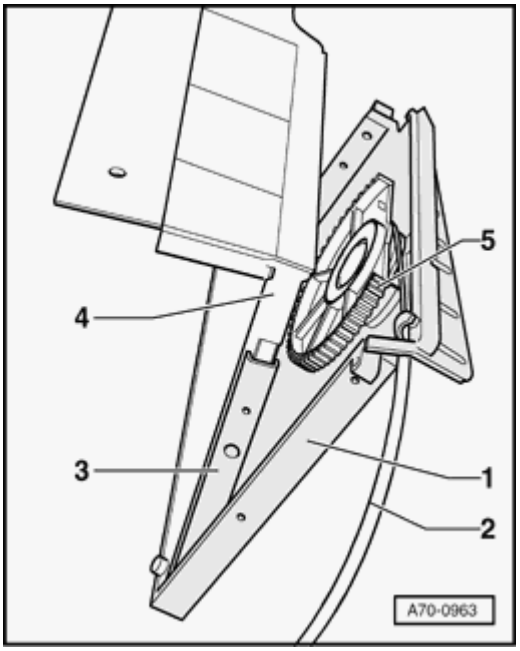


Fig. 201: Identifying Sections, Guide Rails, Holder & Toothed Segment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Pull sections - **1** - and - **4** - apart upward.
- Pry guide rails - **3** - out of catch of section - **1** -.
- Separate sections - **1** - and - **4** -.
- Release holder - **1** - at rear.

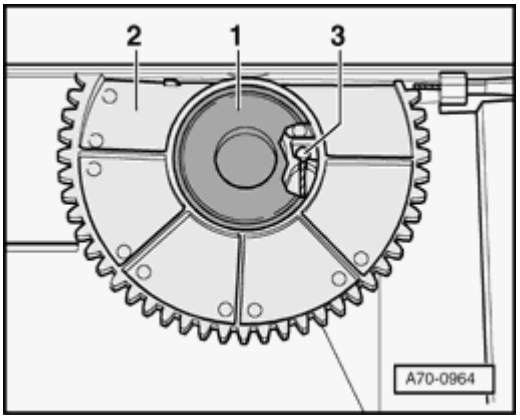


Fig. 202: Identifying Holder, Toothed Segment & Bowden Cable
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry out holder - **1** - using a flat screwdriver..
- Always replace holder - **1** -.
- Remove toothed segment - **2** -.
- Detach Bowden cable - **3** -.

Installing

Toothed segment with Bowden cable for right side

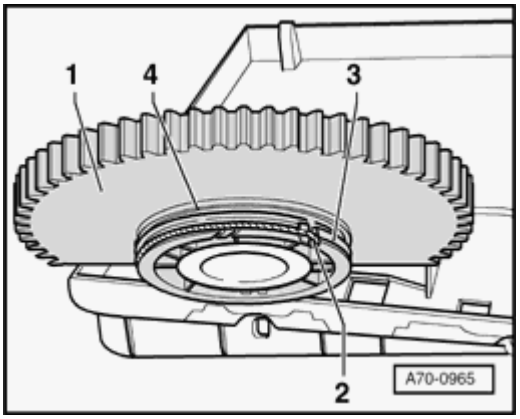


Fig. 203: Identifying Bowden Cables & Grooves
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engage Bowden cable - **2** - in long groove and lay Bowden cable - **2** - in groove - **3** -.
- Groove - **4** - not used.

cardiagn.com

Toothed segment with Bowden cable for left side

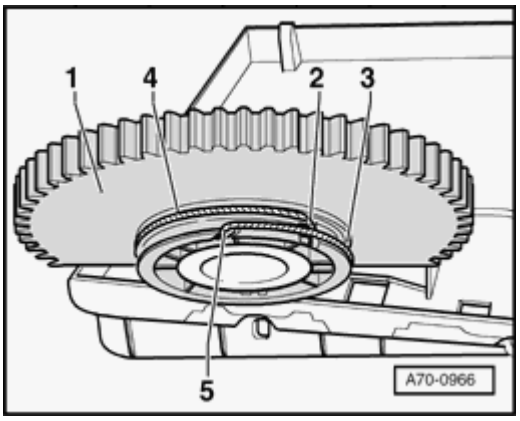


Fig. 204: Identifying Bowden Cables & Grooves
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engage Bowden cable - **2** - in long groove and lay Bowden cable - **2** - in groove - **4** -.
- Engage Bowden cable for right side in short groove and lay Bowden cable - **5** - in groove - **3** - (Bowden cables routed in opposite directions).

All models continued

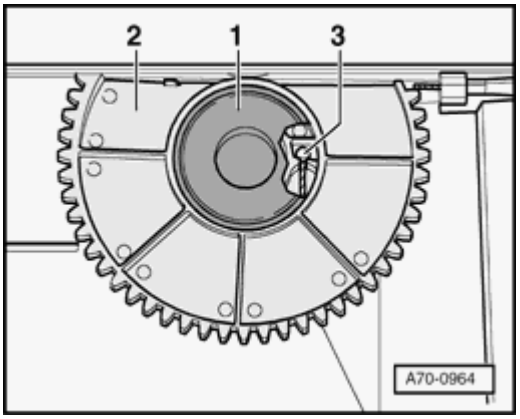


Fig. 205: Identifying Holder, Toothed Segment & Bowden Cable
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press toothed segment - **2** - onto guide.
- Engage new holder - **1** -.
- Toothed segment - **2** - must be horizontal on installation.

cardiagn.com

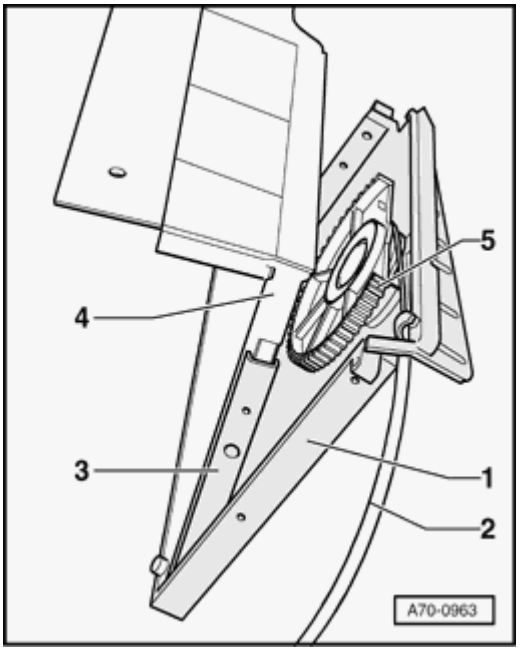


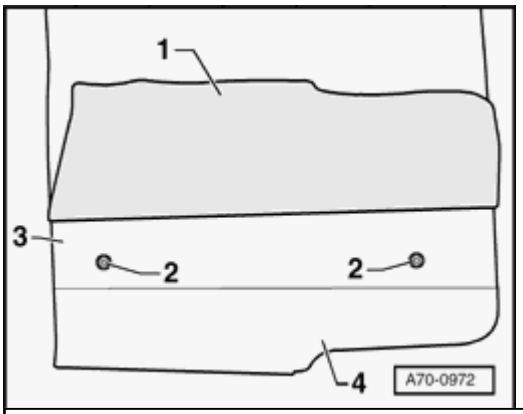
Fig. 206: Identifying Sections, Guide Rails, Holder & Toothed Segment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- On assembly, section - **4** - must be positioned with guide rails - **3** - on rubber buffers at bottom.
- Ensure that microswitch on right side is not crushed. For this pull section - **4** - slightly upward.
- Press section - **4** - back down again.
- The toothed segment - **5** - must be horizontal when folding together. Fold sections in lowest position together.

- In folded position, push guide rail outer section - **3** - upward and engage it in tabs.
- Carry out remainder of installation in reverse order of removal.

Rack of variable convertible top compartment, removing and installing

- Remove variable convertible top compartment --> **Variable convertible top compartment, removing and installing**.



cardiagn.com

Fig. 207: Identifying Carpet, Bolts, Convertible Top Compartment Center Section & Right Side Section
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull carpet - **1** - back (convertible top compartment lining) on side to be changed until both bolts - **2** - are accessible.
- Bond carpet with D 001 200.
- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).
- Tightening torque 4 Nm
- Detach convertible top compartment center section from side section - **4** - on right.

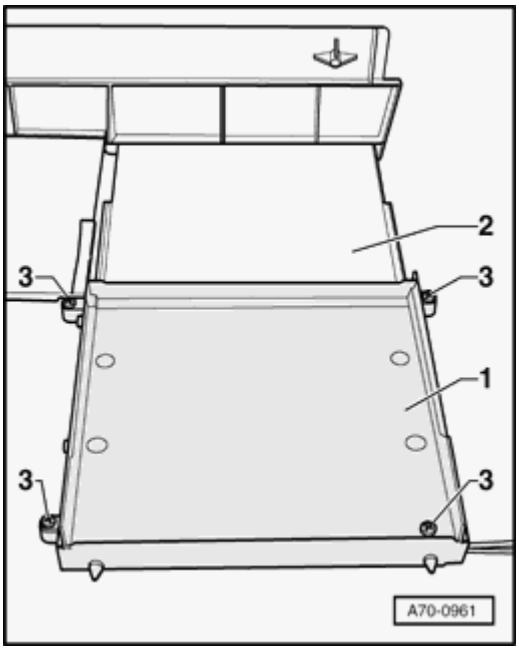


Fig. 208: Identifying Side Sections & Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull apart side sections - **1** - and - **2** -.
- Remove bolts - **3** - (4x) from inner lid.
- Tightening torque 2 Nm
- Detach inner lid - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

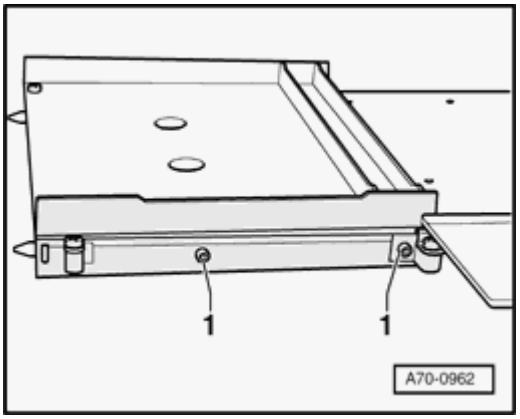


Fig. 209: Removing Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (4x) on both sides.

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

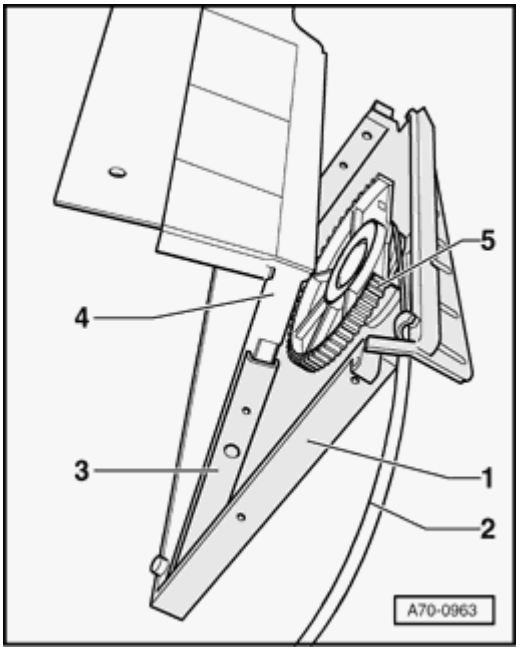


Fig. 210: Identifying Sections, Guide Rails, Holder & Toothed Segment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull sections - **1** - and - **4** - apart upward.
- Pry guide rails - **3** - out of catch of section - **1** -.
- Separate sections - **1** - and - **4** -.

cardiagn.com

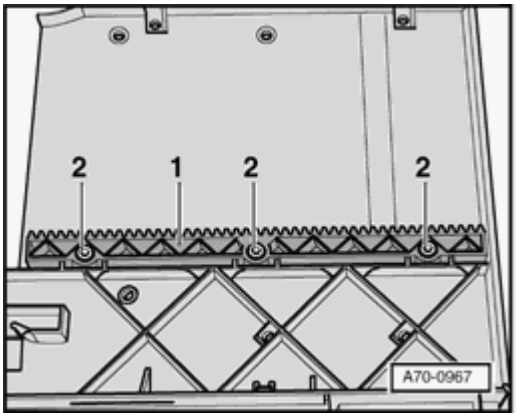


Fig. 211: Removing Bolts & Rack
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **2** - (3x).
- Tightening torque 2.5 Nm
- Remove rack - **1** -.

Guide rail of variable convertible top compartment, removing and installing

- Remove variable convertible top compartment --> **Variable convertible top compartment, removing and installing**.

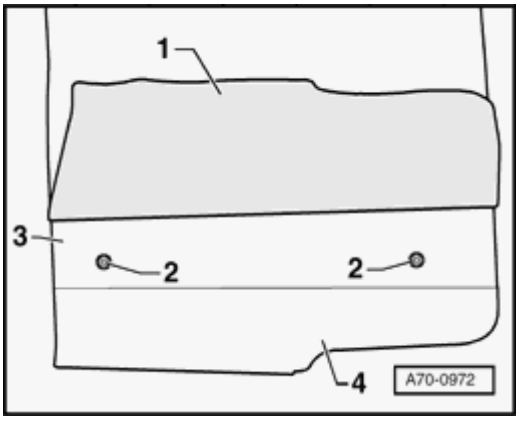


Fig. 212: Identifying Carpet, Bolts, Convertible Top Compartment Center Section & Right Side Section
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull carpet - **1** - back (convertible top compartment lining) on side to be changed until both bolts - **2** - are accessible.
- Bond carpet with D 001 200.
- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque 4 Nm

  - Detach convertible top compartment center section - **3** - from side section - **4** - on right.

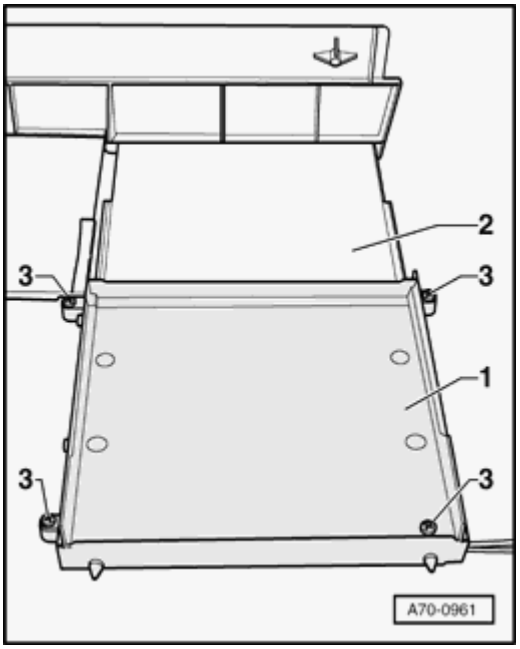


Fig. 213: Identifying Side Sections & Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

  - Pull side sections - **1** - and - **2** - apart.
  - Remove bolts - **3** - (4x) from inner lid.

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

  - Detach inner lid - **1** -.

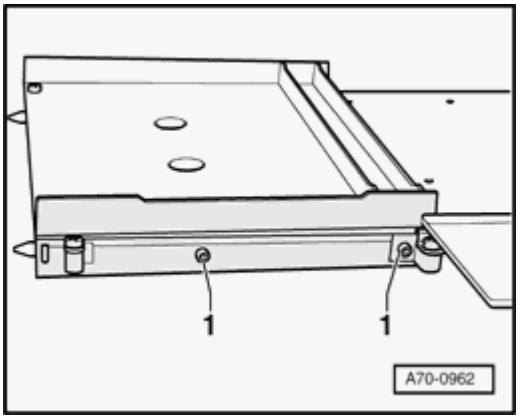


Fig. 214: Removing Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolts - **1** - (4x) on both sides.

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

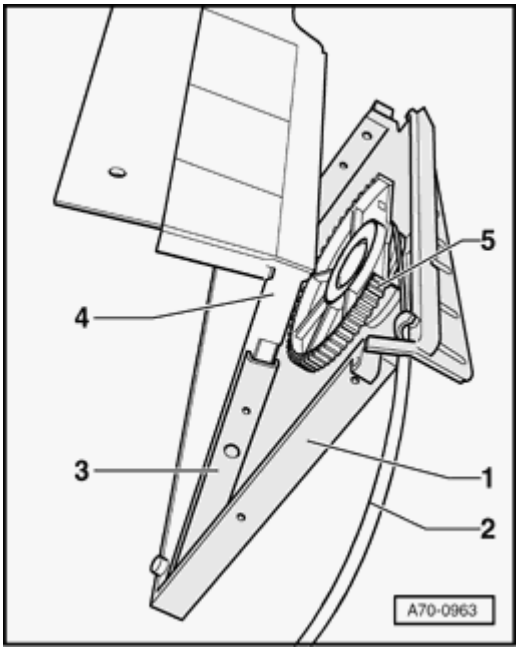


Fig. 215: Identifying Sections, Guide Rails, Holder & Toothed Segment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull sections - **1** - and - **4** - apart upward.
- Pry guide rail - **3** - out of catch of section - **1** -.
- Separate sections - **1** - and - **4** -.

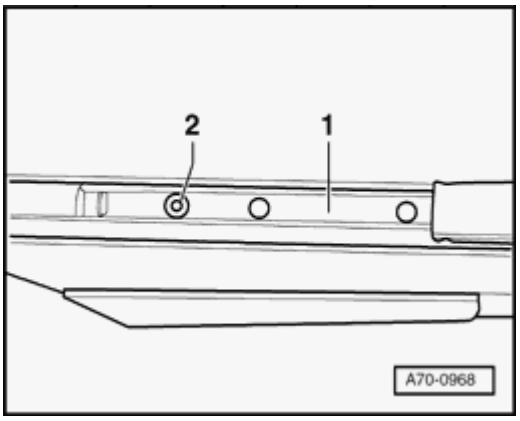


Fig. 216: Removing Bolts & Guide Rail
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **2** - on left and right.

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque 1 Nm

- Push guide rail - **1** - downward and out of locking tabs.
- Remove guide rail - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Console of variable convertible top compartment, assembly overview

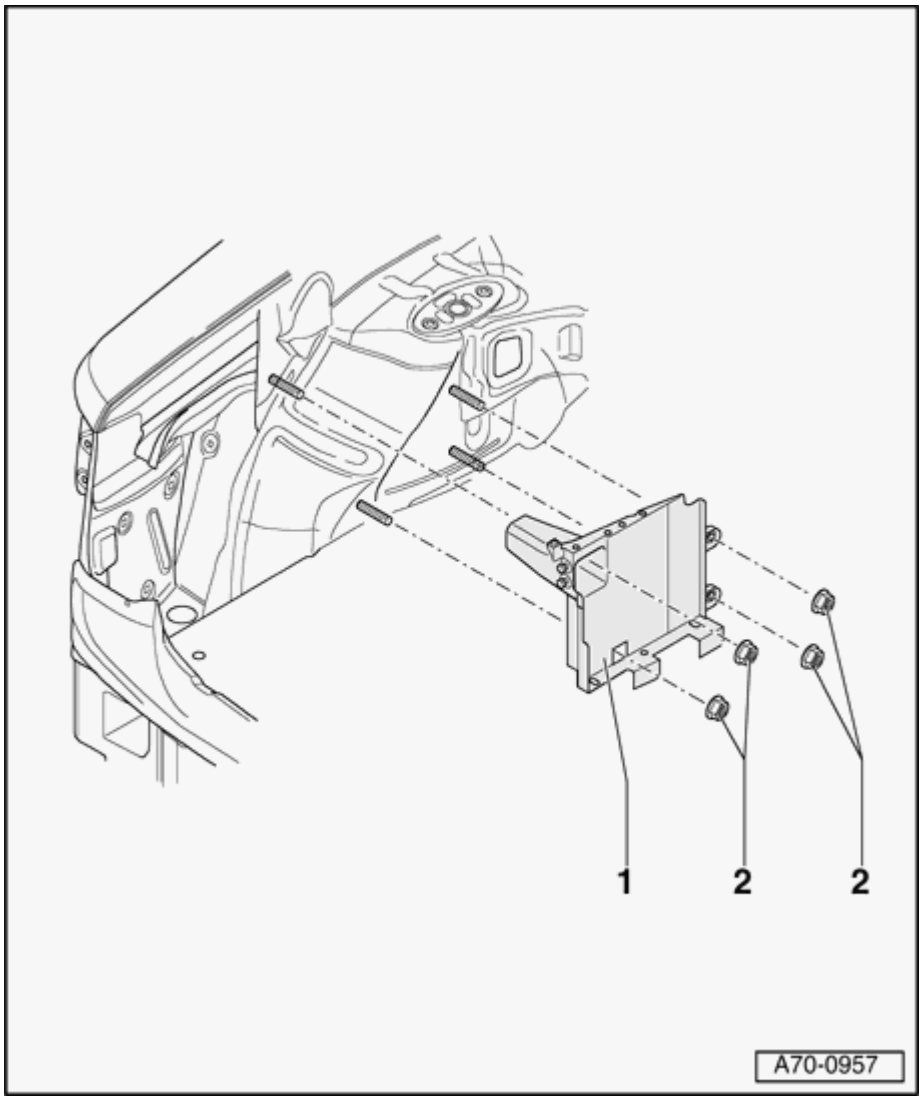


Fig. 217: Console Of Variable Convertible Top Compartment, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Console

cardiagn.com

- Remove variable convertible top compartment --> **Variable convertible top compartment, removing and installing**.
- Remove nuts - **2** - (4x).
- Lift console - **1** - upward out of body.

2 - Nuts (4x)

cardiagn.com

.

70 - INTERIOR TRIM

FRONT DOOR TRIM

Component locations, overview

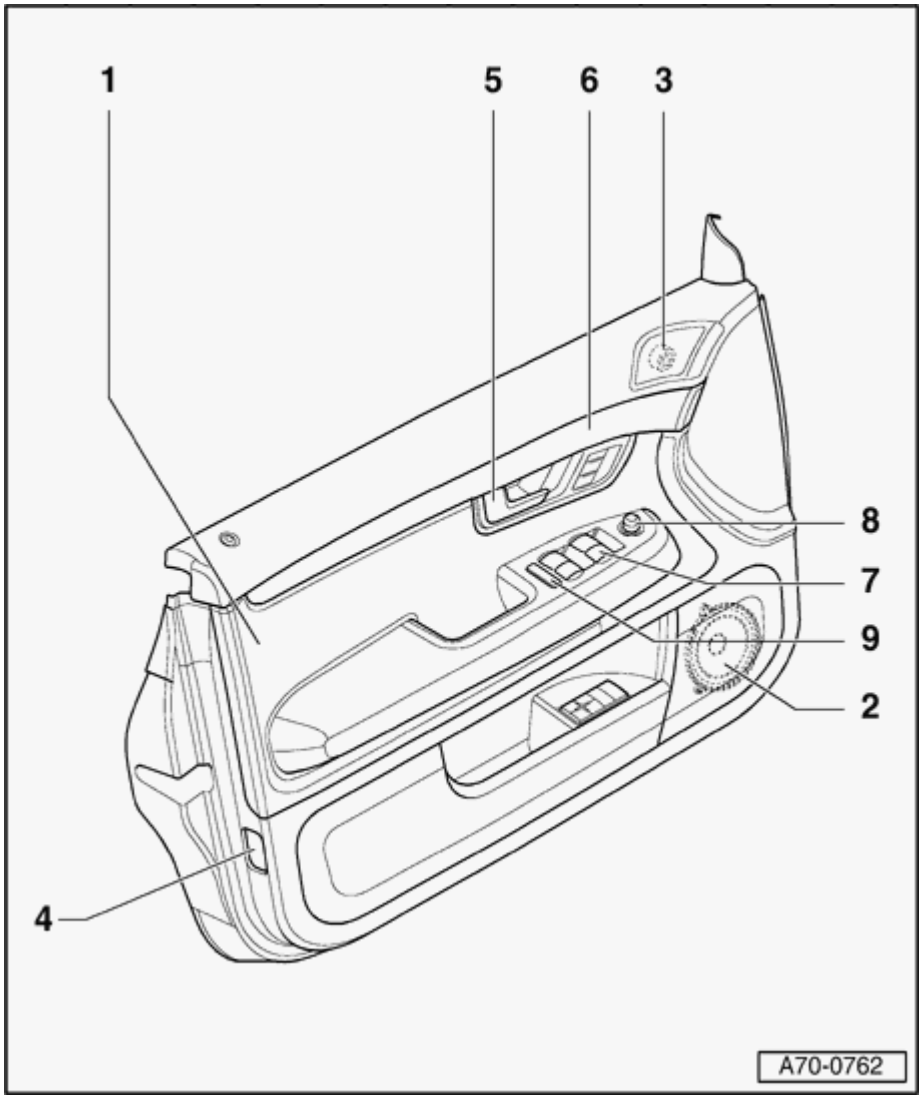


Fig. 192: Front Door Trim Component Locations, Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Door trim, removing and installing --> **Front door trim, removing and installing**

2 - Bass speaker, removing and installing --> **Bass speaker, removing and installing**

3 - Tweeter, removing and installing --> **Treble speaker, removing and installing**

cardiagn.com

4 - Door warning light, removing and installing --> **Door warning lights and footwell lighting, removing and installing**

5 - Interior door mechanism, removing and installing --> **Interior door mechanism, removing and installing**

6 - Decorative panel, removing and installing --> **Front door trim, removing and installing**

7 - Power window switch, removing and installing

8 - Mirror adjustment switch, removing and installing

9 - Central locking switch, removing and installing

Front door trim, removing and installing

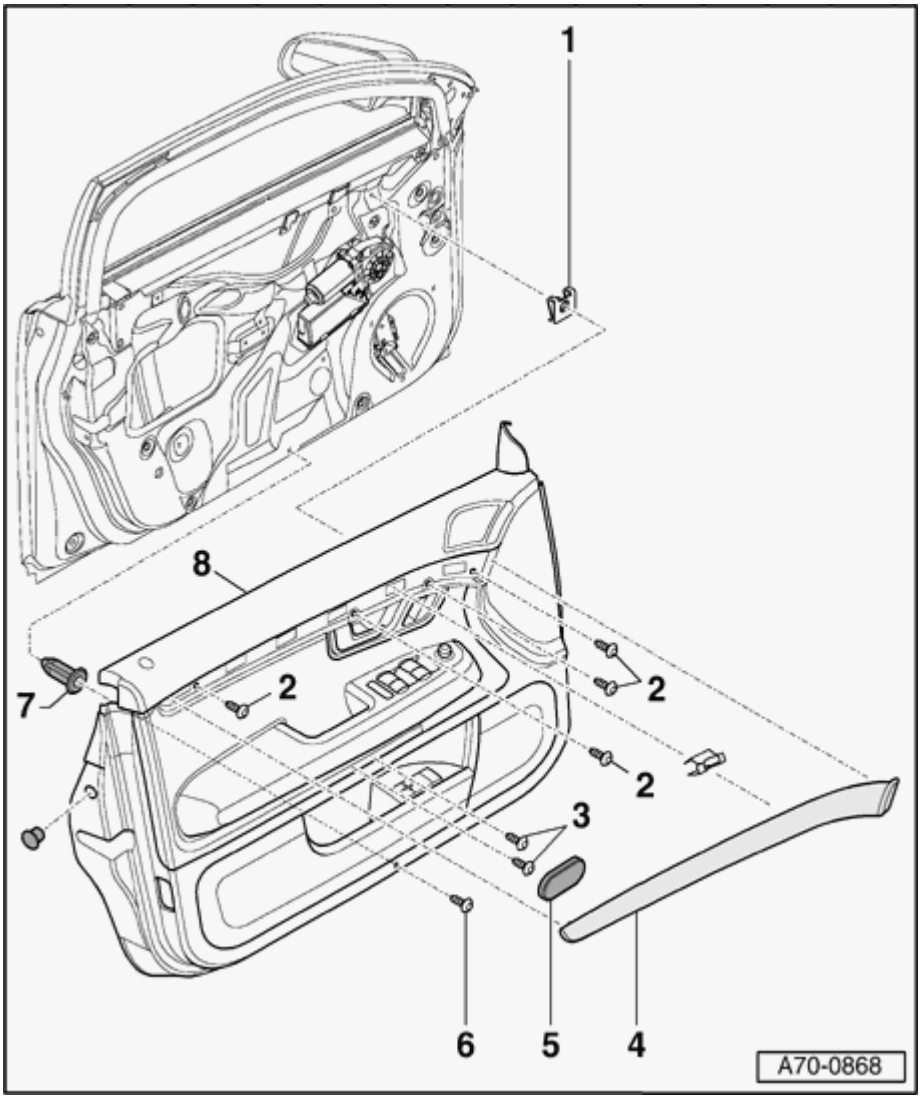


Fig. 193: Front Door Trim Remove/Install Components

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Spring nut (Qty. 4)

2 - Bolt (Qty. 4)

3 - Bolts (Qty. 2)

4 - Trim panel

5 - Armrest, lower part

6 - Screw

7 - Expanding nut (Qty. 4)

8 - Door trim

- Removal:

  - Remove lower part of armrest - **5** -.
  - Remove bolt - **3** - (2x) from door trim - **8** -.
  - Remove bolt - **6** - from door trim - **8** -.
  - Unclip decorative panel - **4** -.

  - Remove decorative panel - **4** - toward front.
  - Remove bolt - **2** - (4x) from door trim - **8** -.
  - Unclip door trim - **8** - **Door trim securing clip**.
  - Raise door trim - **8** - upward approx. 20 cm out from door shell.

  - Disengage release for interior door mechanism **Disengage release**
  - Disconnect electrical harness connectors **Connector on window regulator control module**

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Note the following:

- When installing, speed nuts - **1** - (4x) for expanding nuts - **7** - (4x) must be clipped in.
- When installing, door trim must be pressed in center toward door shell.

Disengage release

cardiagn.com

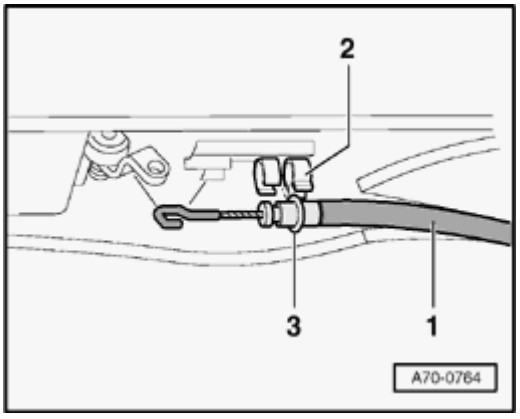


Fig. 194: Identifying Circlip, Release & Guide
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove circlip - **3** -.
- Pull release - **1** - out of guide - **2** - and disengage.

NOTE:

- **When installing make sure that catch - 3 - faces upward.**

Connector on window regulator control module

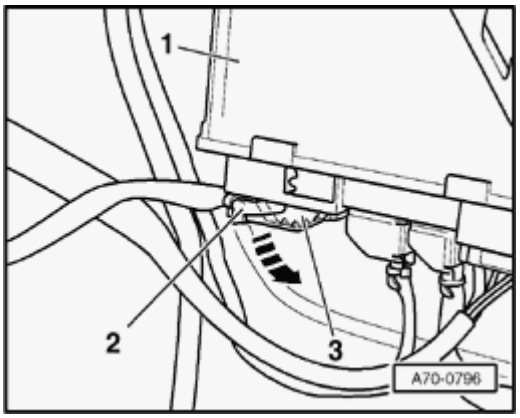


Fig. 195: Connector On Window Regulator Control Module
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press catch - **2** - and remove harness connector - **3** - from control module in direction of arrow.
- Disconnect connector to bass speaker.

Door trim securing clip

cardiagn.com

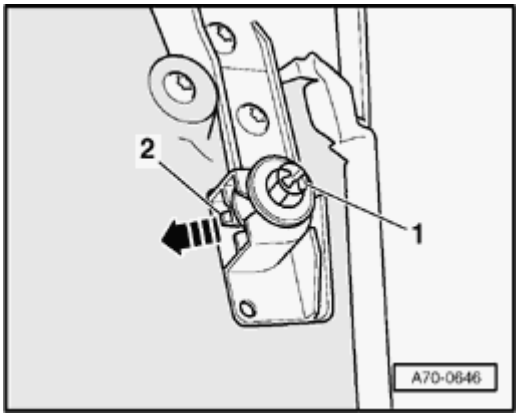


Fig. 196: Pressing Catch And Removing Clip
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press catch - **2** - and remove clip - **1** - in direction of arrow.

Armrest, removing and installing

Window regulator switch/mirror adjustment and central locking switch, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

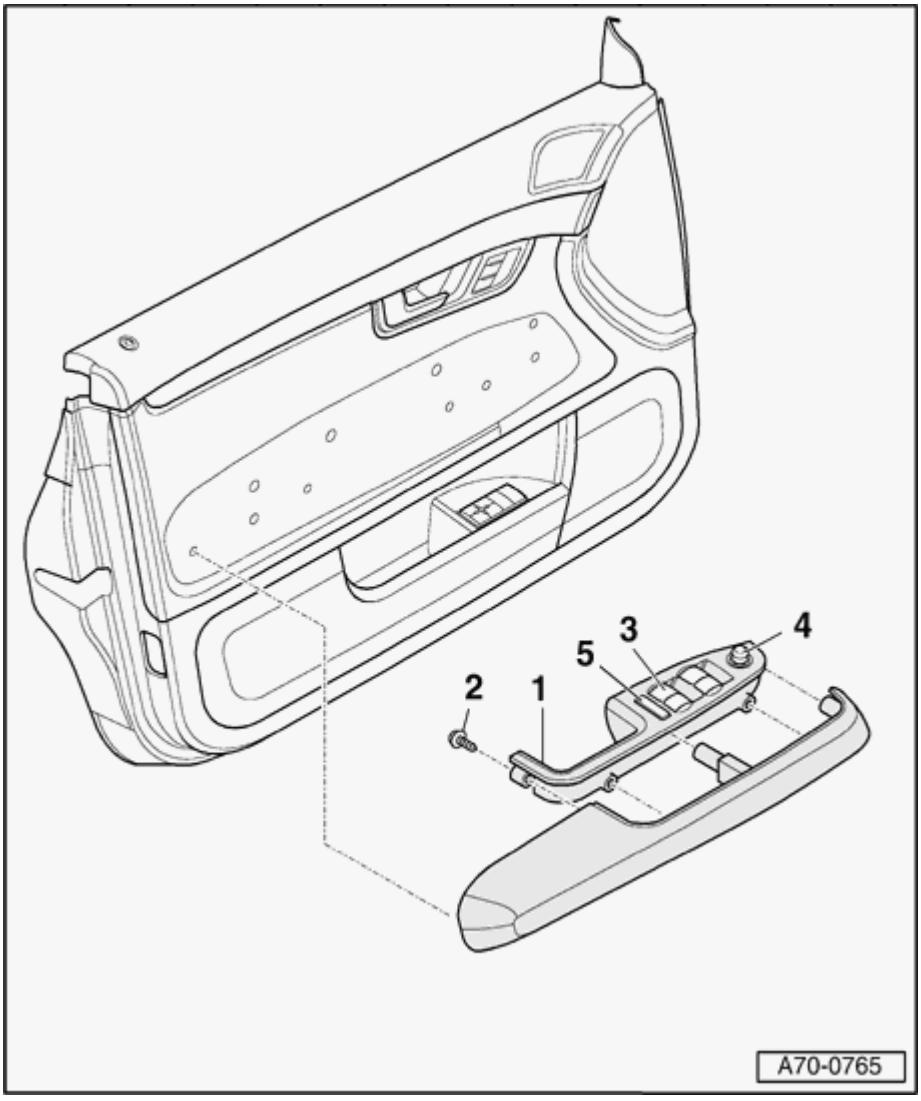


Fig. 197: Armrest Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Armrest

- Removal:

  - Remove door trim --> **Front door trim, removing and installing** and --> **Front door trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove bolts - **2** - (11x).
  - Remove armrest - **1** - to side.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

2 - Bolt (Qty. 11)

3 - Window regulator switch

- On vehicles with electrical window regulators:
  - Remove window regulator switch --> **Power window switch, removing and installing**.

4 - Mirror adjustment switch

- Removal:
  - Press in tab on connector for mirror adjustment switch - **4** - and remove it.
  - Pry off mirror adjustment switch - **4** - using a screwdriver.
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

5 - Central locking switch

- Removal:
  - Press in tab on connector for central locking switch - **5** - and remove it.
  - Pry off central locking switch - **5** - using a screwdriver.
  - Raise door trim - **1** - upward approx. 20 cm out from door shell.
  - Disengage release for interior door mechanism **Disengage release**
  - Disconnect electrical harness connectors **Connector on window regulator control module**
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

Disengage release

cardiagn.com

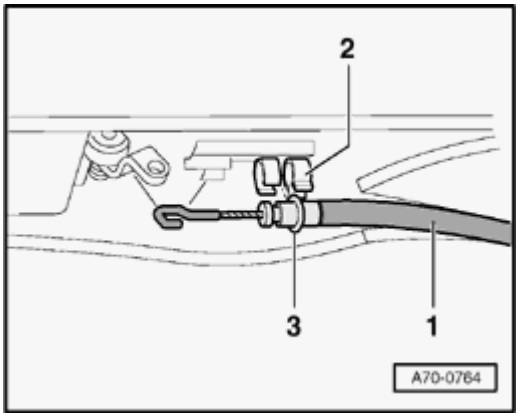


Fig. 198: Identifying Circlip, Release & Guide
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove circlip - **3** -.
- Pull release - **1** - out of guide - **2** - and disengage.

NOTE:

- **When installing make sure that catch - 3 - faces upward.**

Connector on window regulator control module

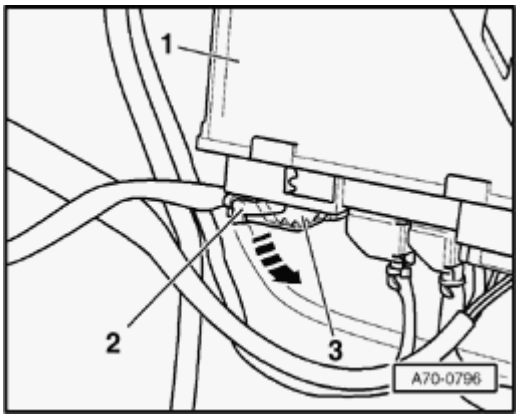


Fig. 199: Connector On Window Regulator Control Module
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press catch - **2** - and remove harness connector - **3** - from control module in direction of arrow.
- Disconnect connector to bass speaker.

Manual window crank, removing and installing

Removing

cardiagn.com

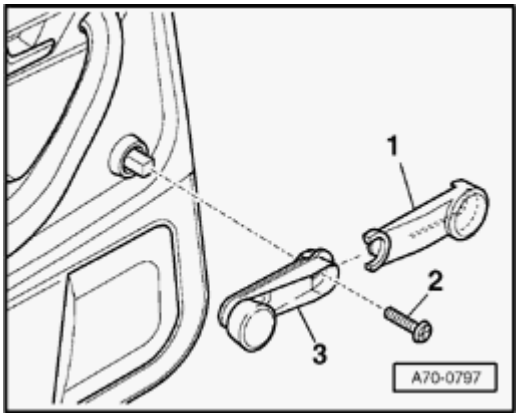


Fig. 200: Manual Window Crank Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull off cover - **1** - of manual window crank - **3** - upward.
- Remove bolt - **2** - of manual window crank - **3** -.
- Remove manual window crank - **3** - upward.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

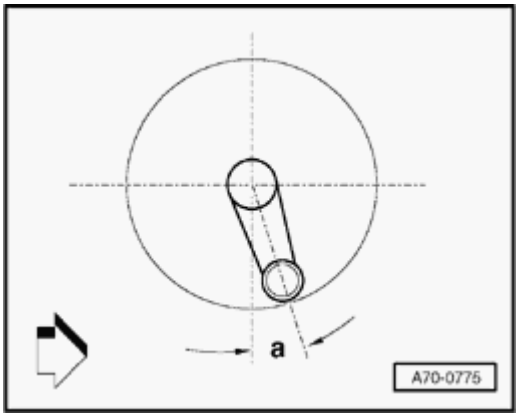


Fig. 201: Identifying Installation Position With Window Closed
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Installation position - **a** - must be adjusted by 5° ± 20° with window closed.

Power window switch, removing and installing

Removing

cardiagn.com

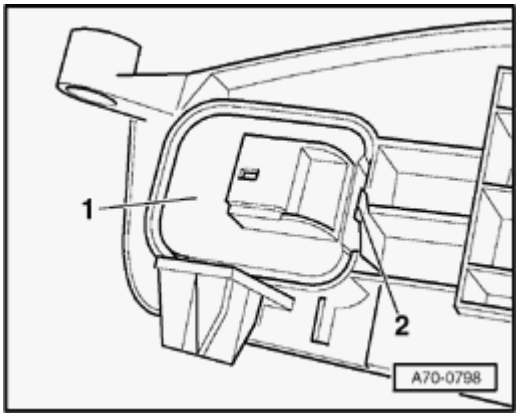


Fig. 202: Power Window Switch Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press in tab - **2** - on connector for power window switch - **1** - and remove it.
- Pry out window regulator switch - **1** - using a screwdriver.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Door trim wiring harness overview

cardiagn.com

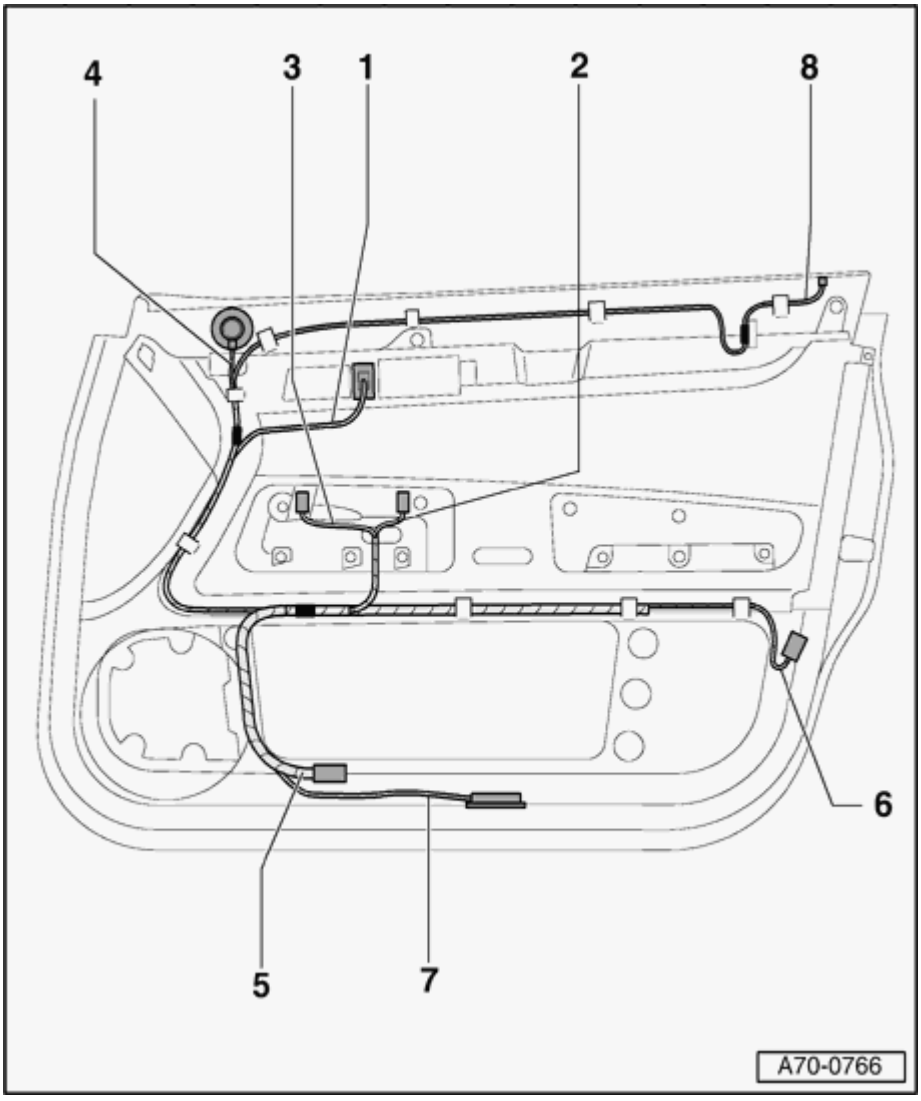


Fig. 203: Door Trim Wiring Harness Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable to central locking switch, only driver-side

2 - Cable to window regulator switch

3 - Cable to window adjustment switch

4 - Cable to treble speaker

5 - Cable to bass speaker

6 - Cable to door warning lights

7 - Footwell illumination cable

cardiagn.com

8 - Anti-theft warning system light cable

Door warning lights and footwell lighting, removing and installing

Removing

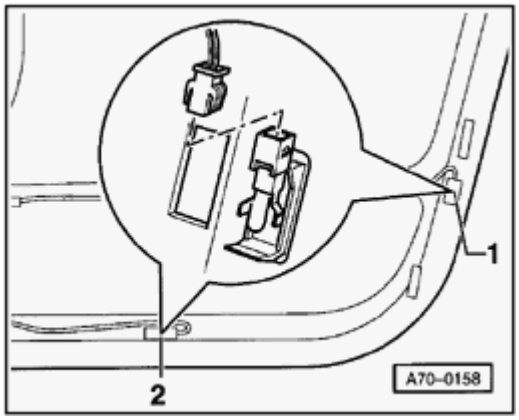


Fig. 204: Door Warning Lights And Footwell Lighting Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry out door warning light - **1** - from below using a screwdriver and remove toward outside together with cable.
- Disconnect door warning light - **1** -.
- Pry off front footwell lighting - **2** - using a screwdriver and remove toward outside together with cable.
- Disconnect footwell lighting - **2** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Treble speaker, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove door trim --> **Front door trim, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

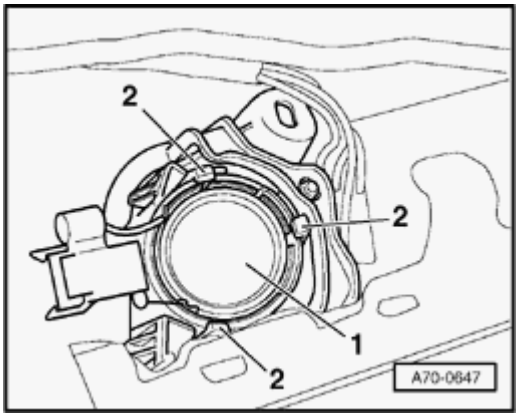


Fig. 205: Treble Speaker Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press back catch - **2** - (3x) using a flat-head screwdriver.
- Remove tweeter - **1** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Bass speaker, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove door trim --> **Front door trim, removing and installing**.

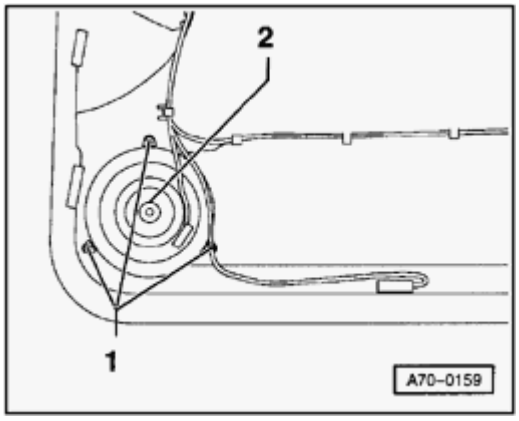


Fig. 206: Bass Speaker Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **1** - (3x), tightening torque 1.5 Nm.
- Remove bass speaker - **2** - and disconnect electrical connection.

Installing

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

Interior door mechanism, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove door trim --> **Front door trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove central locking switch.

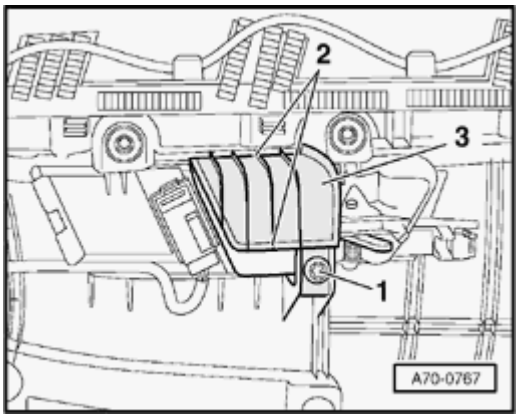


Fig. 207: Interior Door Mechanism Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** -.
- Press retaining tabs - **2** - (2x) and remove interior door mechanism - **3** - toward front.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

REAR DOOR TRIM

Component locations, overview

cardiagn.com

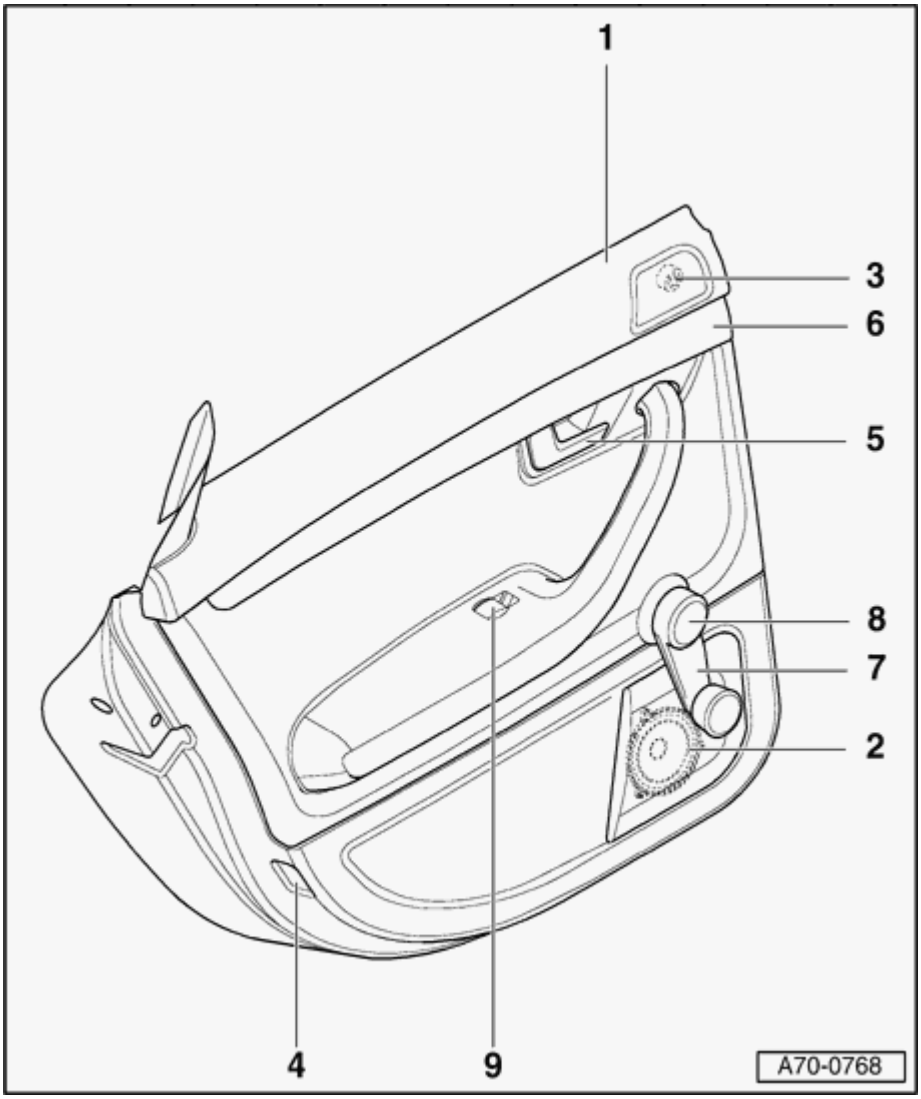


Fig. 208: Rear Door Trim Component Locations, Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Door trim, removing and installing --> **Rear door trim, removing and installing**

2 - Bass speaker, removing and installing --> **Bass speaker, removing and installing**

3 - Tweeter, removing and installing --> **Treble speaker, removing and installing**

4 - Door warning light, removing and installing --> **Door warning light, removing and installing**

5 - Interior door mechanism, removing and installing --> **Interior door mechanism, removing and installing**

6 - Decorative panel, removing and installing --> **Rear door trim, removing and installing**

7 - Manual window crank, removing and installing --> **Rear door trim, removing and installing**

cardiagn.com

8 - Removing and installing cover --> **Rear door trim, removing and installing**

9 - Power window switch, removing and installing --> **Power window switch, removing and installing**

Rear door trim, removing and installing

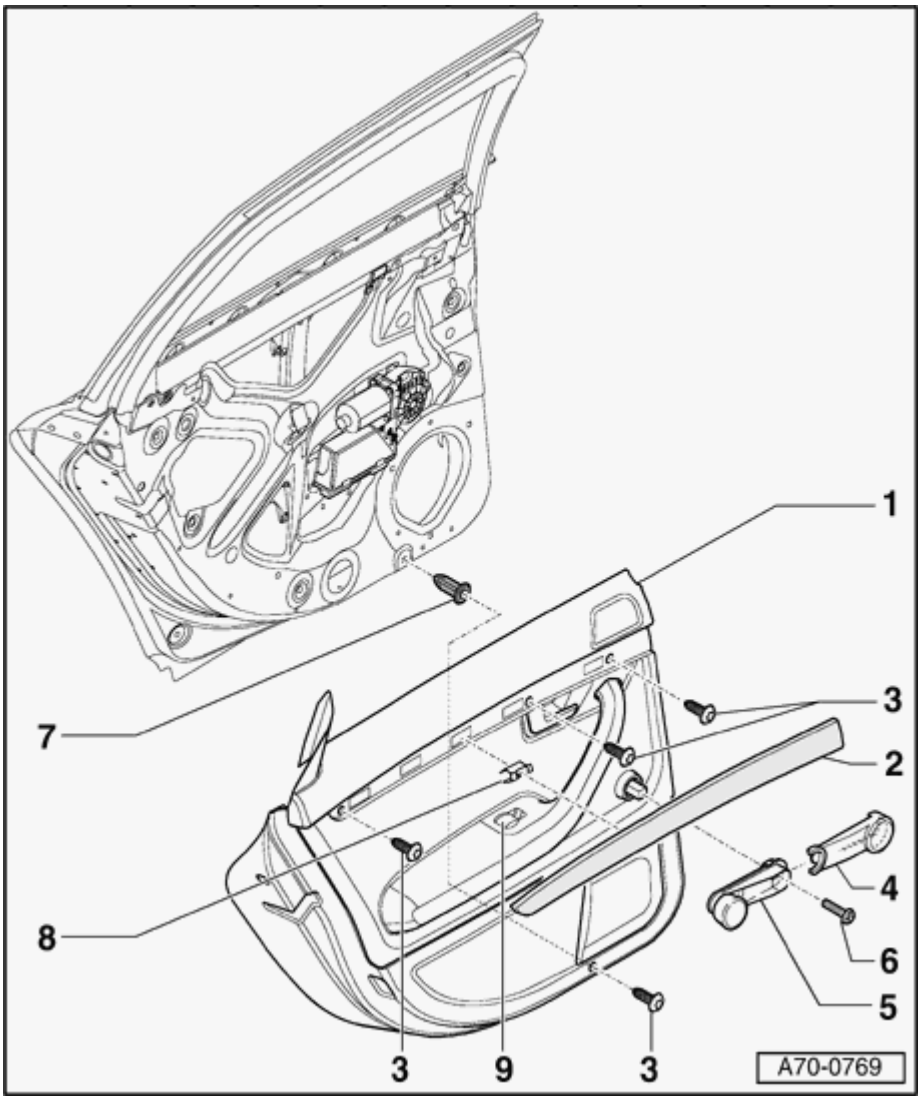


Fig. 209: Rear Door Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Door trim

- Removal:

  - Unclip decorative panel - **2** -.
  - Remove decorative panel - **2** - toward front.
  - Remove bolts - **3** - (3x) from door trim - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

Vehicles with electrical window regulators:

- Power window switch, removing and installing --> **Power window switch, removing and installing**.

Vehicles with manual window crank:

- Remove and install manual window crank --> **Manual window crank, removing and installing**.

For all vehicles:

- Unclip door trim - **1** -. Replace damaged clips **Door trim securing clip**
- Raise door trim - **1** - upward approx. 20 cm out from door shell.
- Disengage release for interior door mechanism **Disengage release**
- Disconnect electrical harness connectors **Connector on window regulator control module**
- Remove rear door trim.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

When installing, speed nuts - **8** - (4x) for expanding nuts - **7** - (4x) must be clipped in.

When installing, door trim must be pressed in center toward door shell.

When installing manual window crank, note its position --> **Manual window crank, removing and installing**.

2 - Trim panel

3 - Bolt (Qty. 3)

4 - Cover

5 - Window crank

6 - Screw

7 - Expanding nut (Qty. 4)

8 - Spring nut (Qty. 4)

9 - Window regulator switch

Disengage release

cardiagn.com

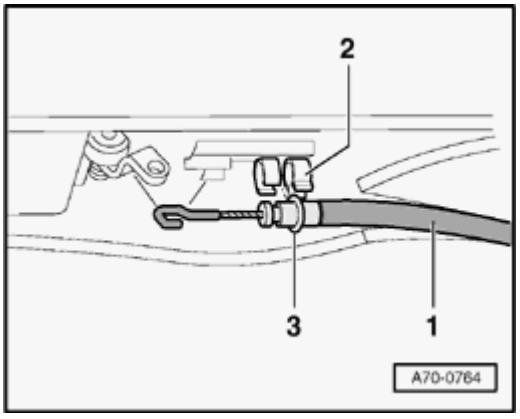


Fig. 210: Identifying Circlip, Release & Guide
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove circlip - **3** -.
- Pull release - **1** - out of guide - **2** - and disengage.

NOTE:

- **When installing make sure that catch - 3 - faces upward.**

Connector on window regulator control module

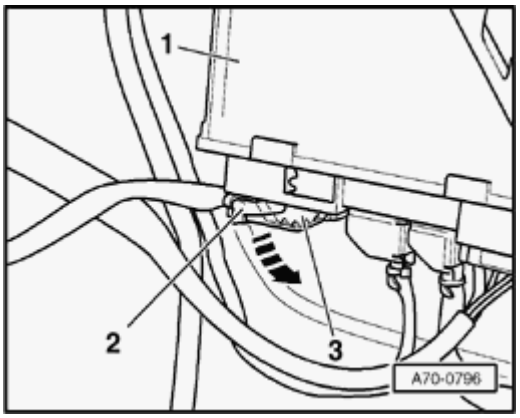


Fig. 211: Connector On Window Regulator Control Module
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press catch - **2** - and remove harness connector - **3** - from control module in direction of arrow.
- Disconnect connector to bass speaker.

Door trim securing clip

cardiagn.com

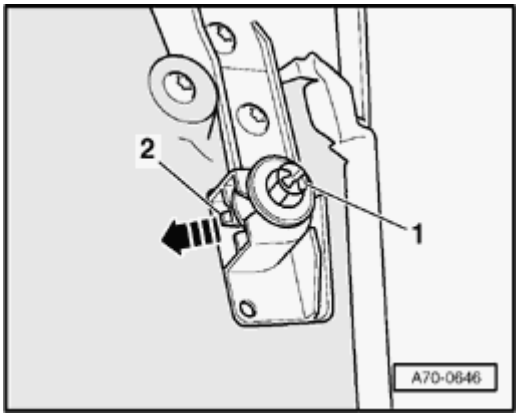


Fig. 212: Pressing Catch And Removing Clip
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press catch - **2** - and remove clip - **1** - in - **direction of arrow** -.

Power window switch, removing and installing

Removing

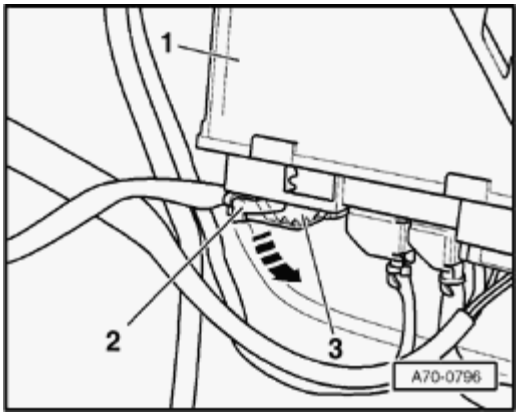


Fig. 213: Connector On Window Regulator Control Module
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press in tab - **2** - on connector for power window switch - **1** - and remove it.
- Pry out window regulator switch - **1** - using a screwdriver.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Manual window crank, removing and installing

Removing

cardiagn.com

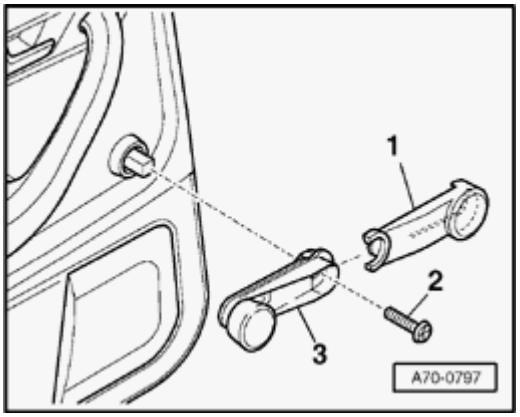


Fig. 214: Manual Window Crank Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull off cover - **1** - of manual window crank - **3** - upward.
- Remove bolt - **2** - of manual window crank - **3** -.
- Remove manual window crank - **3** - upward.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing this, note the following:

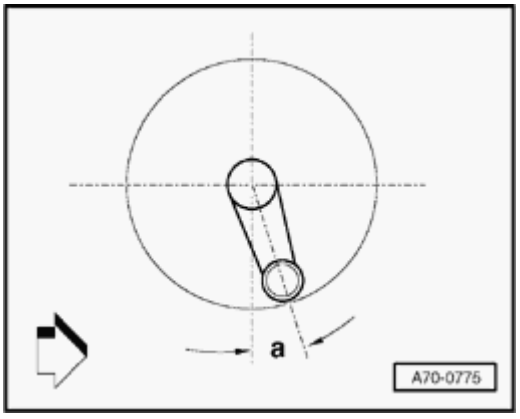


Fig. 215: Identifying Installation Position With Window Closed
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Installation position - **a** - must be adjusted by 5° ± 20° with window closed.

Armrest, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

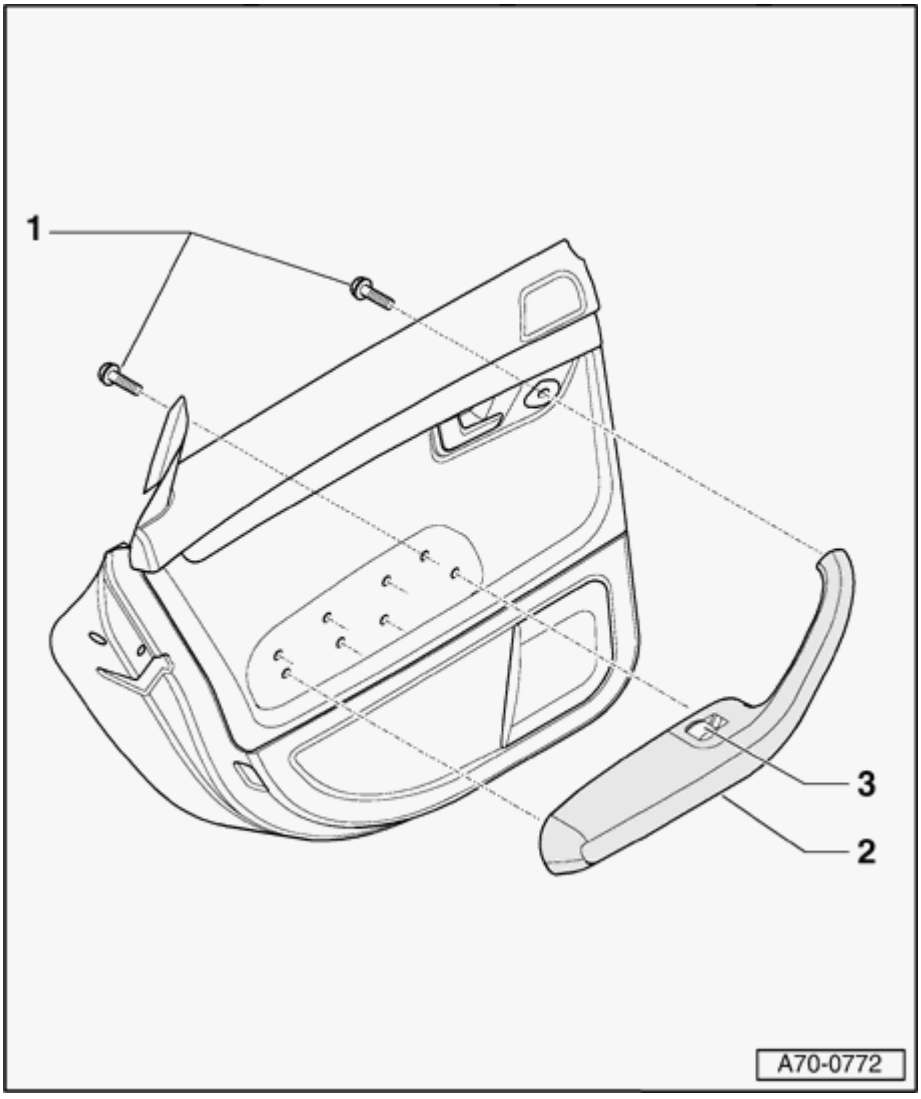


Fig. 216: Armrest Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Bolt (Qty. 8)

2 - Armrest

- Removal:

  - Remove door trim --> **Rear door trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove bolts - **1** - (8x).
  - Remove armrest - **2** - to side.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

3 - Window regulator switch

Door trim wiring harness overview

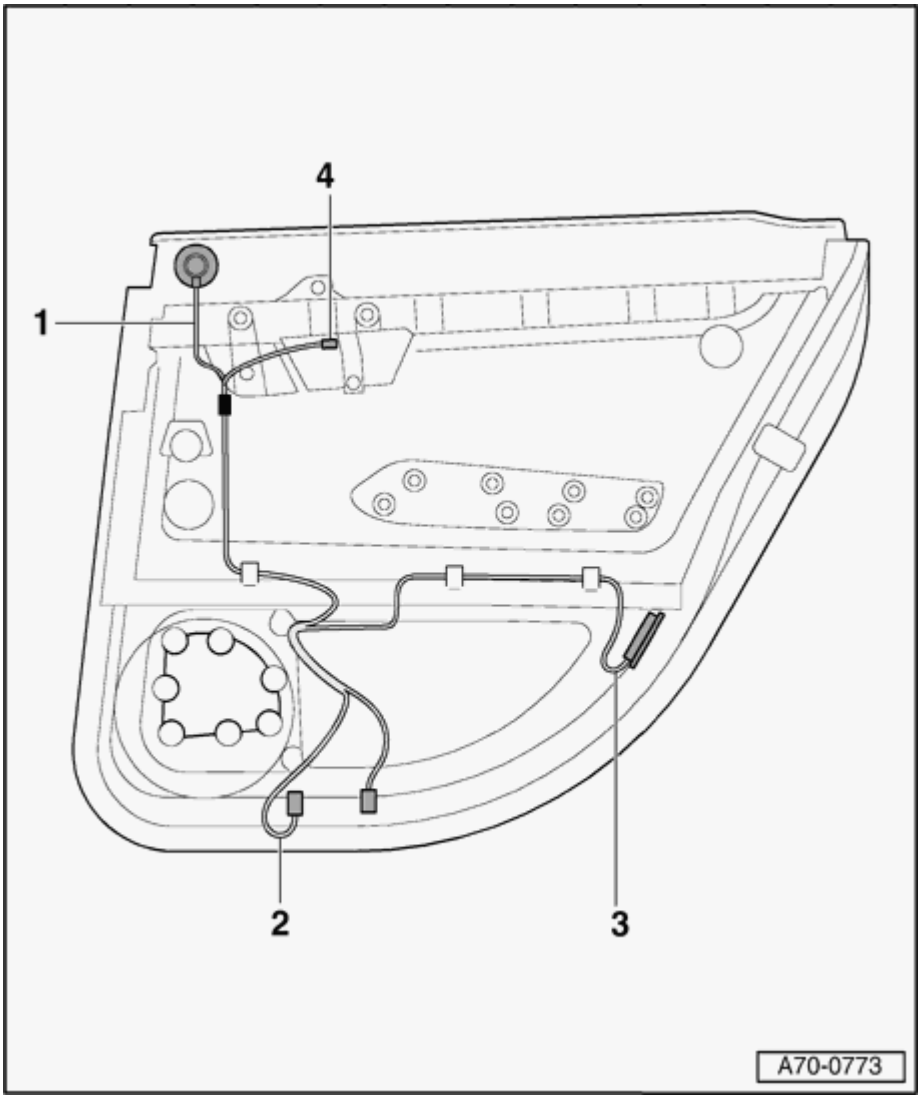


Fig. 217: Door Trim Wiring Harness Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable to treble speaker

2 - Cable to bass speaker

3 - Cable to door warning lights

4 - Interior door mechanism lighting cable

Door warning light, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

Removing

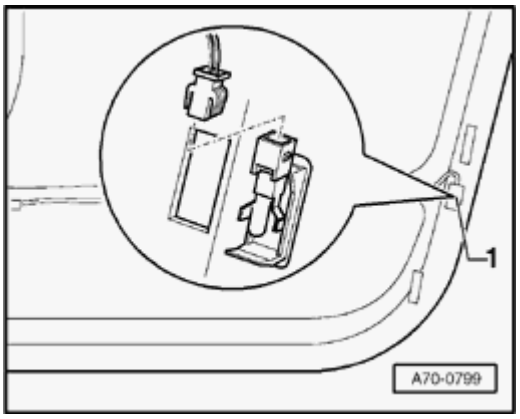


Fig. 218: Door Warning Light Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry out door warning light - **1** - from below using a screwdriver and remove toward outside together with cable.
- Disconnect door warning light - **1** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Bass speaker, removing and installing

- Remove door trim --> **Rear door trim, removing and installing**.

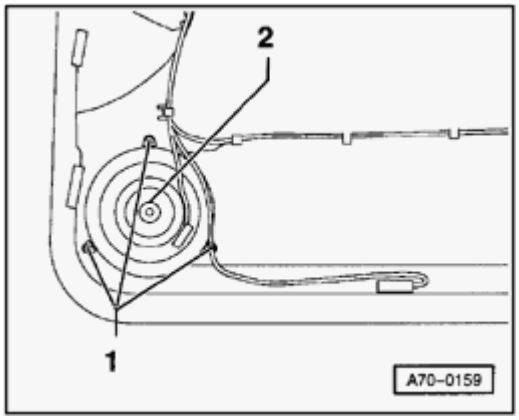


Fig. 219: Bass Speaker Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **1** - (3x), tightening torque 1.5 Nm.
- Remove bass speaker - **2** - and disconnect electrical connection.

cardiagn.com

Treble speaker, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove door trim --> **Rear door trim, removing and installing**.

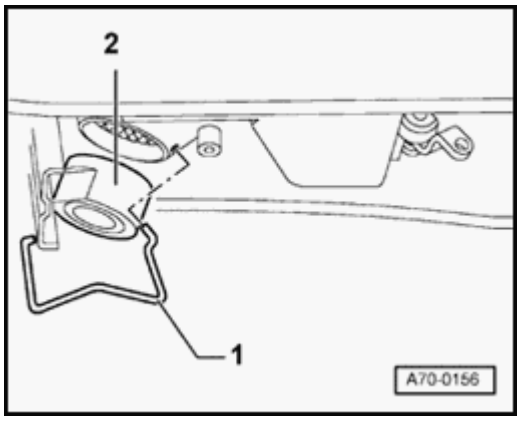


Fig. 220: Treble Speaker Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage bracket - **1** - using a screwdriver.
- Remove tweeter - **2** -.
- Loosen wiring harness from door trim up to bass speaker.

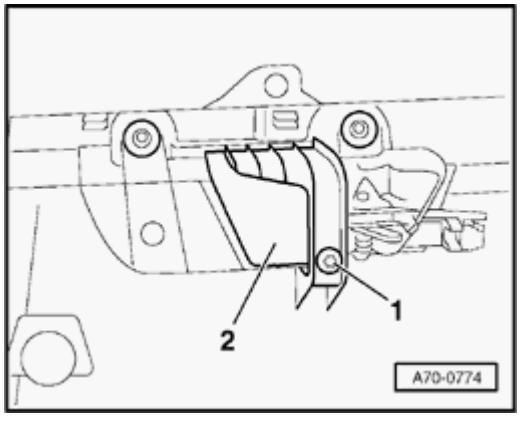
Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Interior door mechanism, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove door trim --> **Rear door trim, removing and installing**.



cardiagn.com

Fig. 221: Interior Door Mechanism Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** -.
- Remove interior door mechanism - **2** - toward front.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Sun shade for door window, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove door trim --> **Rear door trim, removing and installing**.

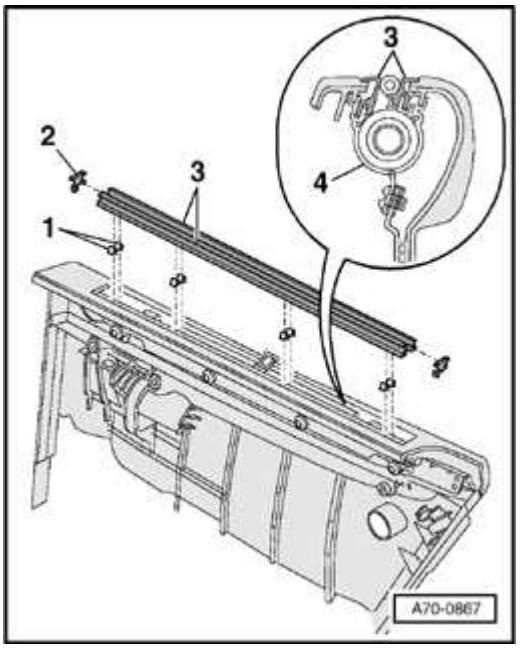


Fig. 222: Removing Guiding Strips From Holding Clips, Covers & Disengaging Gripping Part Of Sun Shade
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove guiding strips - **3** - from holding clips - **1** -.
- Remove covers - **2** -.
- Disengage gripping part of sun shade - **4** -.

cardiagn.com

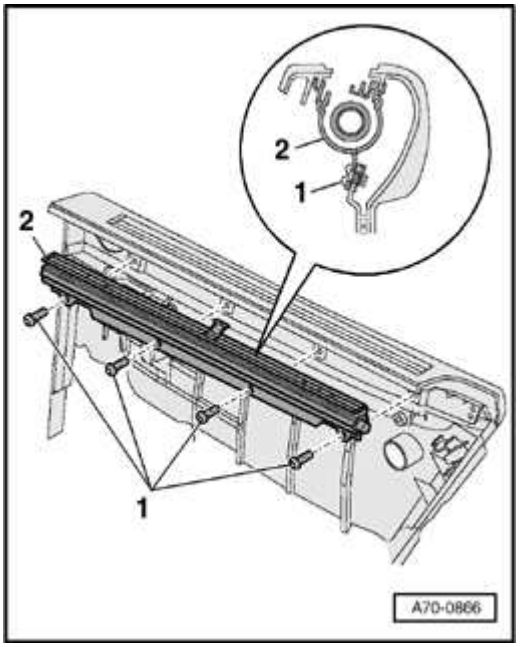


Fig. 223: Removing Screws & Sun Shade
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove screws - **1** - (4x).

Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm

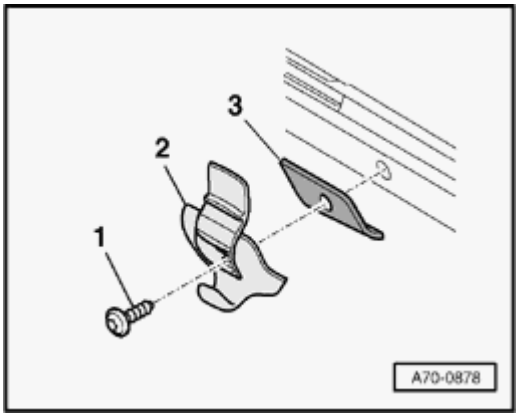
- Remove sun shade - **2** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Retaining clips for sun shade, removing and installing

Removing



cardiagn.com

Fig. 224: Retaining Clips For Sun Shade
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **1** -.

Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm

- Remove retaining clip - **2** - and backing plate - **3** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

Backing plate - **3** - is used to balance out tolerances and must be reinserted where it was installed by the factory.

INSTRUMENT PANEL

Component locations, overview

cardiagn.com

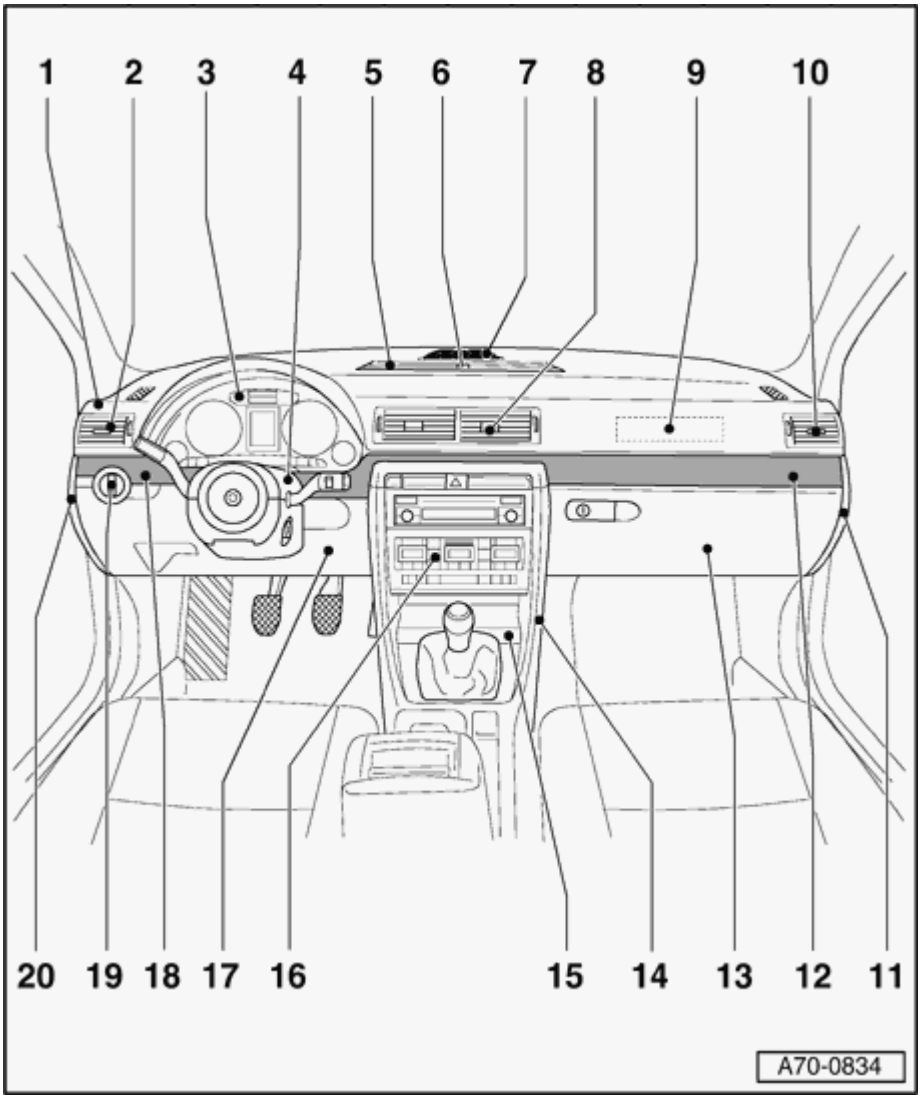


Fig. 225: Instrument Panel Component Locations, Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Remove instrument panel --> **Instrument panel, removing and installing**

CAUTION: Note assignment of airbag unit to instrument panel .

2 - Left instrument panel vent, removing --> **Left and right instrument panel vents, removing and installing**

3 - Removing instrument cluster -->

- **90 INSTRUMENTS**
- **90 INSTRUMENTS** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET

cardiagn.com

4 - Removing upper trim for steering column switch **Removing upper trim for steering column switch**

5 - Removing center defroster outlet **Removing center defroster vent**

6 - Removing photo sensor **Removing photo sensor**

7 - Removing instrument panel speaker **Removing instrument panel speaker**

8 - Removing center instrument panel vent --> **Center instrument panel vent, removing and installing**

9 - Removing front passenger-side airbag unit --> **Passenger airbag, removing and installing**

10 - Removing right instrument panel vent --> **Left and right instrument panel vents, removing and installing**

11 - Removing right instrument panel cover **Removing right instrument panel cover**

12 - Removing right trim for instrument panel --> **Right instrument panel trim, removing and installing**

13 - Removing glove compartment --> **Storage compartments and covers**

14 - Remove center console:

- Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)**
- Vehicles from 11.04 --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles from 11.04)**

15 - Removing front ashtray --> **Front ashtray, removing and installing**

16 - Removing instrument cluster center piece --> **Instrument panel center section, removing and installing**

17 - Removing storage compartment on driver-side --> **Drivers side storage compartment (with and without knee bolster), removing and installing**

18 - Removing left trim for instrument panel --> **Left instrument panel trim, removing and installing**

19 - Removing light switch and headlight beam adjuster **Removing light switch and headlight beam adjuster**

20 - Removing left instrument panel cover **Removing left instrument panel cover**

Instrument panel, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

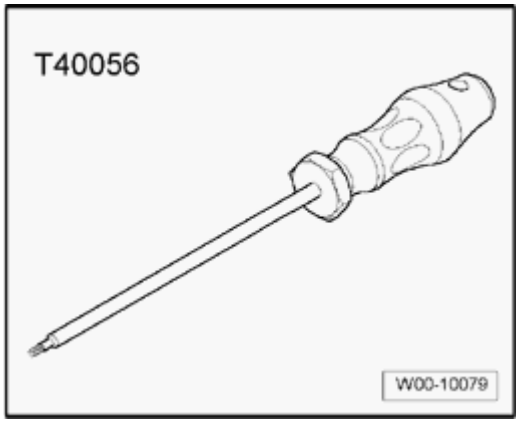


Fig. 226: Torx Screwdriver T8 T 40056
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torx screwdriver T8 T 40056

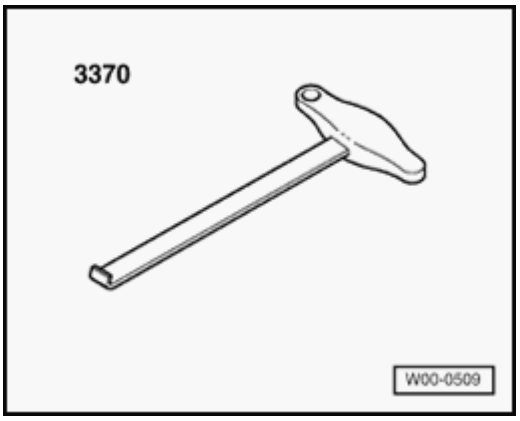


Fig. 227: Identifying Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special hook 3370

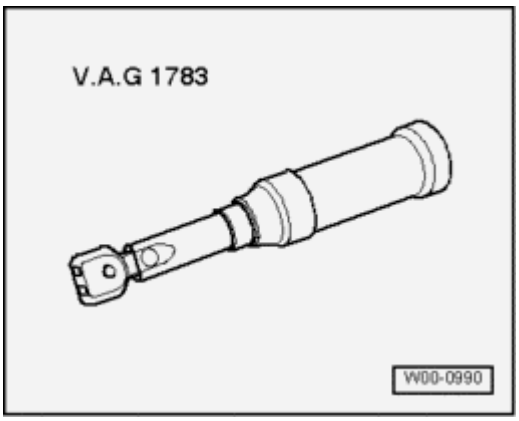


Fig. 228: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

Removing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions with disconnecting battery -->

- **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
- **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

.

CAUTION: Note assignment of airbag unit to instrument panel .

- Disconnect battery ground (GND) strap -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- Drivers side airbag unit (standard steering wheel), removing --> **Airbag unit, removing and installing (standard steering wheel)**.
- Drivers side airbag unit (sport steering wheel), removing --> **Airbag unit, removing and installing (sport steering wheel)**.
- Drivers side airbag unit (multi-function steering wheel), removing --> **Airbag unit, removing and installing (multi-function steering wheel)**.

- Steering wheel, standard, removing --> **Steering wheel, removing and installing (standard steering wheel)**.
- Steering wheel, sport, removing --> **Steering wheel, removing and installing (sport steering wheel)**.
- Steering wheel, multi-function, removing --> **Steering wheel, removing and installing (multi-function steering wheel)**.
- Remove storage compartment on drivers side --> **Drivers side storage compartment (with and without knee bolster), removing and installing**.

- Remove instrument cluster -->
  - **90 INSTRUMENTS**
  - **90 INSTRUMENTS** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET

  .
- Remove glove compartment --> **Storage compartments and covers** .
- Remove front passenger-side airbag unit --> **Passenger airbag, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove center console:

- Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)**
- Vehicles from --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles from 11.04)**.

- Remove instrument cluster center piece --> **Instrument panel center section, removing and installing**.

Removing light switch and headlight beam adjuster

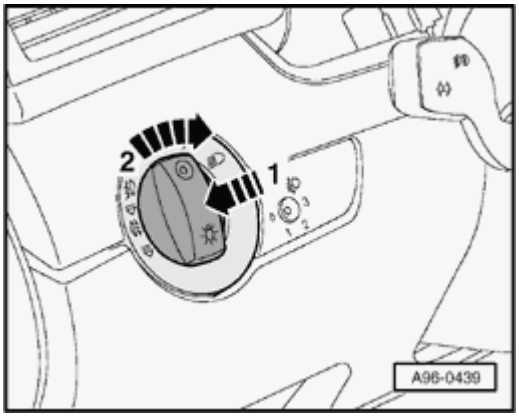


Fig. 229: Pressing Light Switch And Turning Toward Right Simultaneously
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press light switch - **arrow 1** - and turn toward right simultaneously - **arrow 2** -.

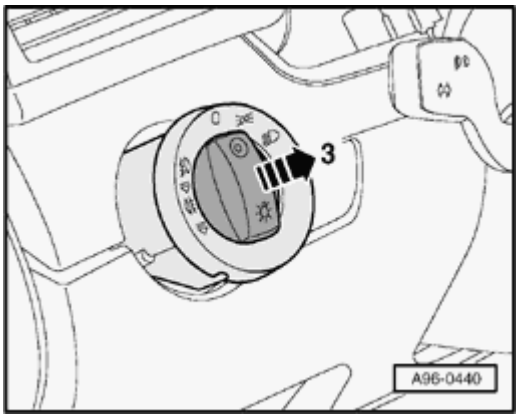


Fig. 230: Holding Switch In This Position And Removing Light Switch From Switch Housing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Hold switch in this position and remove light switch from switch housing - **3** -.
- Disconnect electrical connector.

cardiagn.com

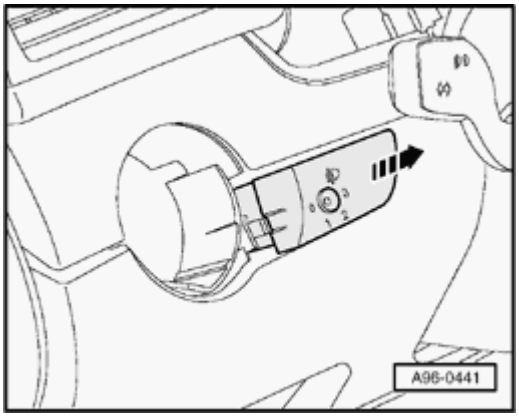


Fig. 231: Pressing Headlamp Range Control Adjuster Out Of Switch Housing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press headlamp range control adjuster out of switch housing.
- Disconnect electrical connector.

Removing upper trim for steering column switch

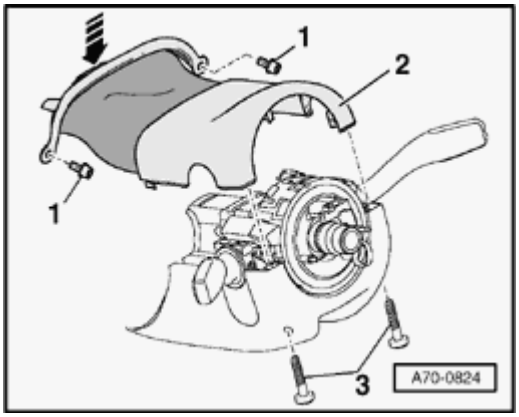


Fig. 232: Removing Upper Trim For Steering Column Switch
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Drivers side airbag unit and steering wheel removed.

- Pull steering column all the way out and down.
- Remove bolts - **1** - (Qty. 2).

Tightening torque: 3 Nm

- Remove Torx bolts - **3** - using Special screwdriver T8 T 40056.

Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm

- Unclip gap cover downward from instrument panel - **arrow** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove upper trim - **2** - for steering column switch.

Removing photo sensor

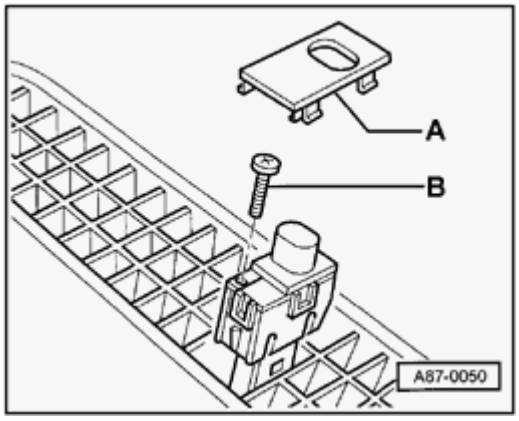


Fig. 233: Removing Photo Sensor
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Carefully pry off cover - **A** -.
- Remove bolt - **B** -.
- Disconnect cable connector.

Removing center defroster vent

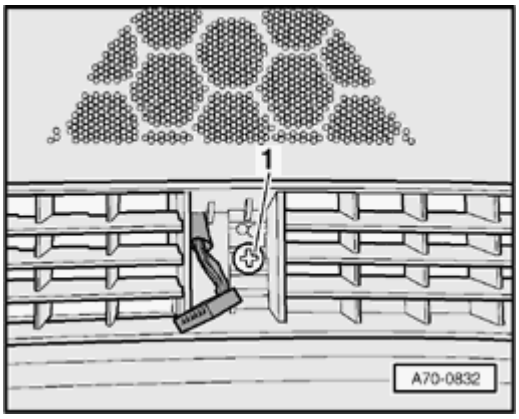


Fig. 234: Removing Center Defroster Vent
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **1** - of defroster vent.

Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm

- Remove defroster nozzle.

Removing instrument panel speaker

cardiagn.com

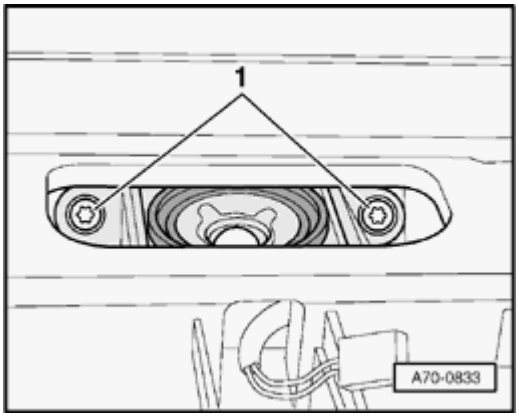


Fig. 235: Removing Instrument Panel Speaker
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Center defroster nozzle removed.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x).

Tightening torque: 2 Nm

- Tip speaker out and disconnect connector.

Disconnecting harness connectors for vent temperature sensor

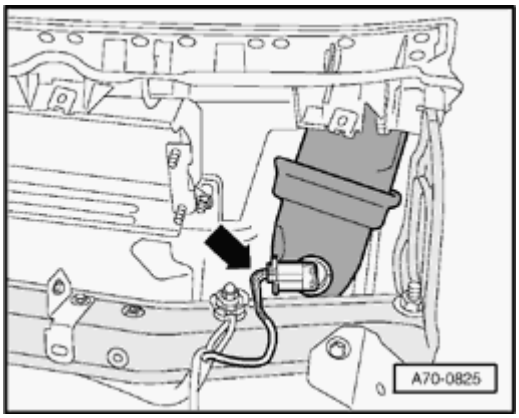


Fig. 236: Disconnecting Harness Connectors For Vent Temperature Sensor
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect left and right harness connector - **arrow** - on outside temperature sensors.

NOTE:

- **The vent temperature sensor is shown on the passengers side in the illustration.**

Removing left instrument panel cover

cardiagn.com

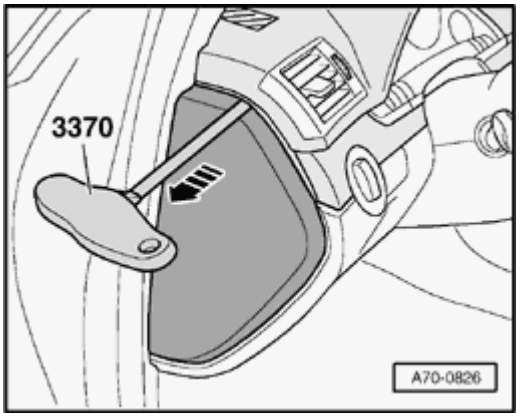


Fig. 237: Pulling Off Left Instrument Panel Cover Using Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull off left instrument panel cover - **arrow** - using special hook 3370.

Removing mount for left exterior instrument panel

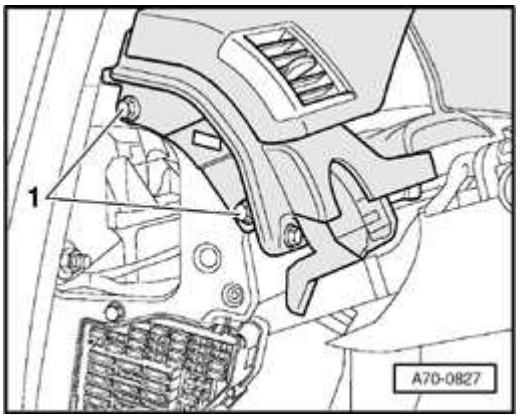


Fig. 238: Removing Mount For Left Exterior Instrument Panel
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x).

Tightening torque: 4.5 Nm

Removing right instrument panel cover

cardiagn.com

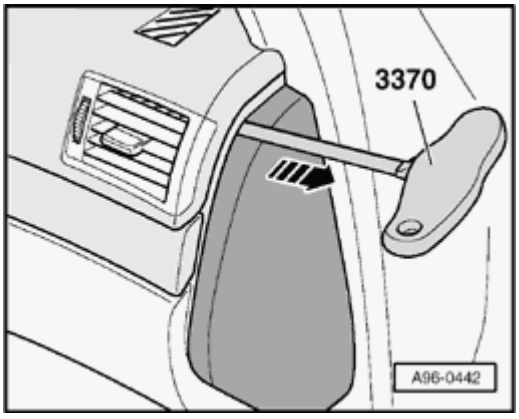


Fig. 239: Removing Right Instrument Panel Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull off right instrument panel cover - **arrow** - using special hook 3370.

Removing mount for right exterior instrument panel

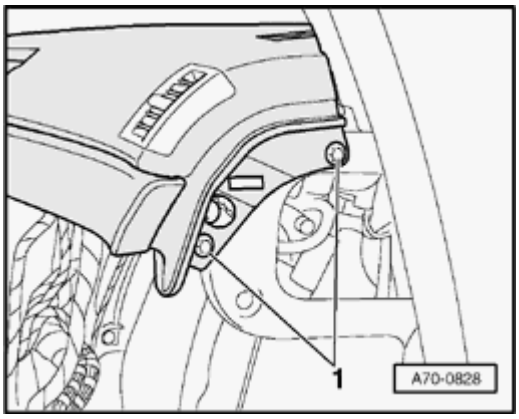


Fig. 240: Removing Mount For Right Exterior Instrument Panel
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x).

Tightening torque: 4.5 Nm

Removing driver-side instrument panel mount

cardiagn.com

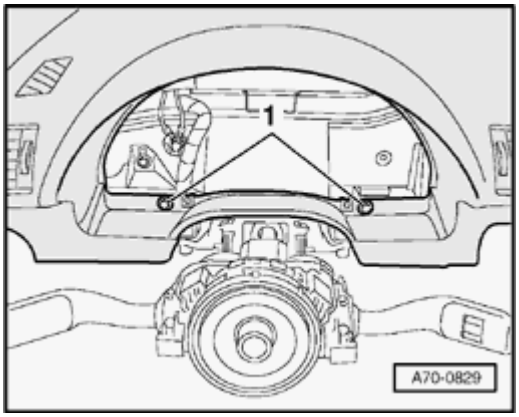


Fig. 241: Removing Driver-Side Instrument Panel Mount
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x).

Tightening torque: 4.5 Nm

Removing center instrument panel mount

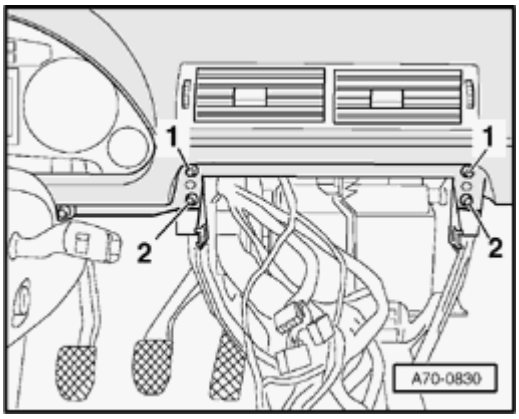


Fig. 242: Removing Center Instrument Panel Mount
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x).

Tightening torque: 3 Nm

- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).

Tightening torque: 4.5 Nm

- Remove instrument panel toward rear.

Installing

cardiagn.com

CAUTION: Note assignment of airbag unit to instrument panel .

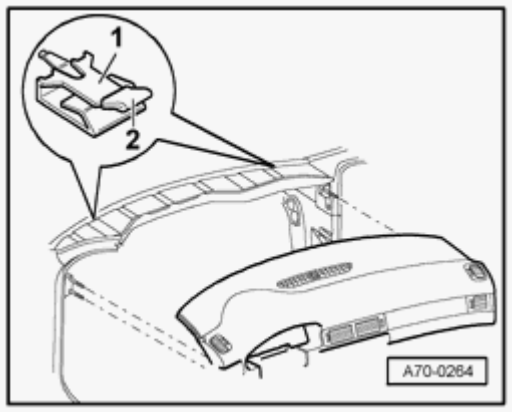


Fig. 243: Checking Whether Felt Is Installed On Clip On Left/Right
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Check whether felt - **2** - is installed on clip - **1** - on left and right.
- Pressing down lightly, push instrument panel into clip.
- Check seating of front of instrument panel in clip by pulling up lightly.
- Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.

Left instrument panel trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

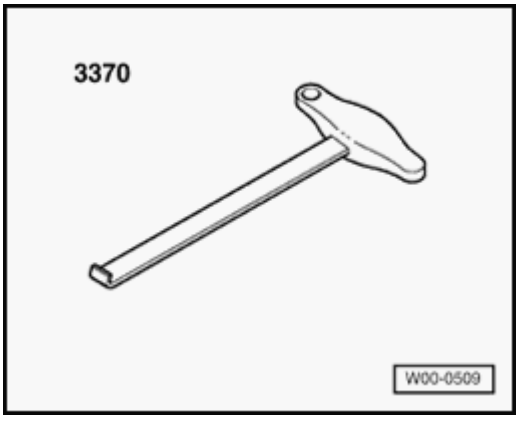


Fig. 244: Identifying Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special hook 3370

cardiagn.com

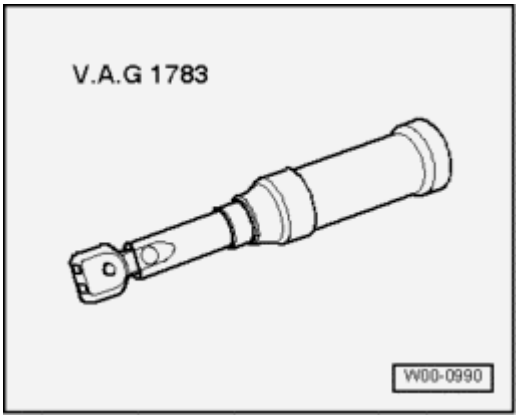


Fig. 245: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

Removing

- Remove storage compartment on drivers side --> **Drivers side storage compartment (with and without knee bolster), removing and installing**.

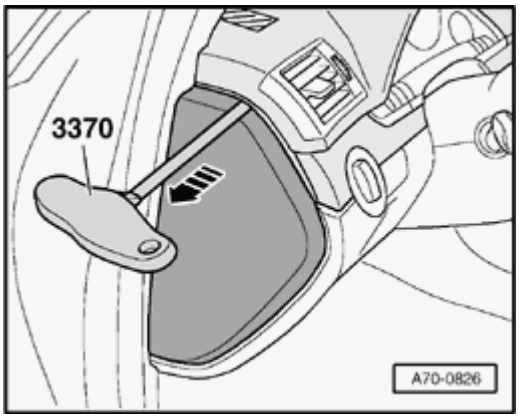


Fig. 246: Pulling Off Left Instrument Panel Cover Using Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull off left instrument panel cover - **arrow** - using special hook 3370.

cardiagn.com

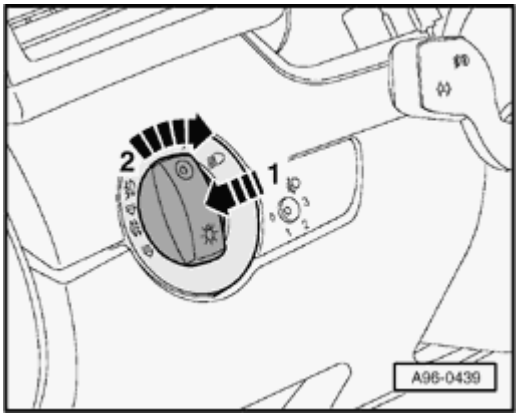


Fig. 247: Pressing Light Switch And Turning Toward Right Simultaneously
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press light switch - **arrow 1** - and turn toward right simultaneously - **arrow 2** -.

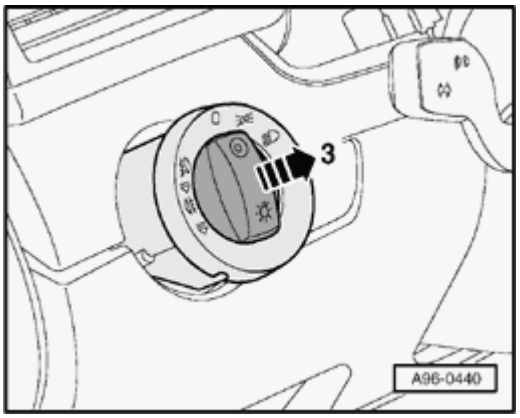


Fig. 248: Holding Switch In This Position And Removing Light Switch From Switch Housing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Hold switch in this position and remove light switch from switch housing - **3** -.
- Disconnect electrical connector.

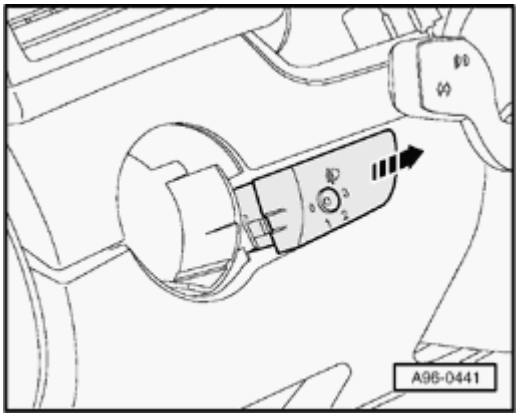


Fig. 249: Pressing Headlamp Range Control Adjuster Out Of Switch Housing

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press headlamp range control adjuster out of switch housing.
- Disconnect electrical connector.

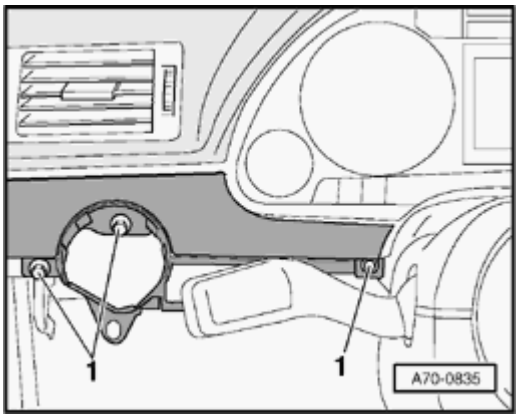


Fig. 250: Removing Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (3x).

Tightening torque: 3 Nm.

- Remove the trim.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Right instrument panel trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

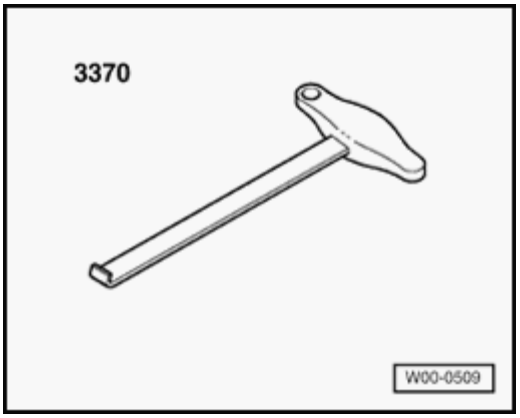


Fig. 251: Identifying Special Hook 3370

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special hook 3370

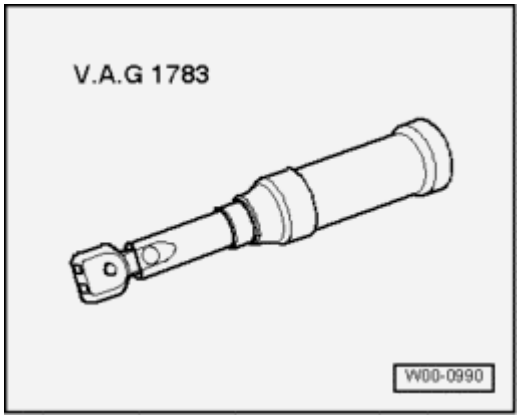


Fig. 252: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

Removing

- Remove storage compartment on drivers side --> **Drivers side storage compartment (with and without knee bolster), removing and installing**.
- Open glove compartment.

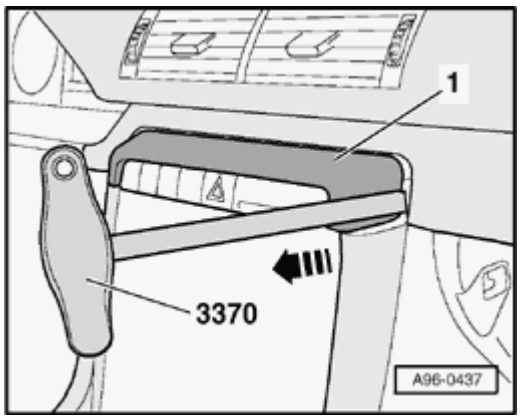


Fig. 253: Removing Trim Using Hook For Front End 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Carefully remove trim - **1** - using hook for front end 3370.

cardiagn.com

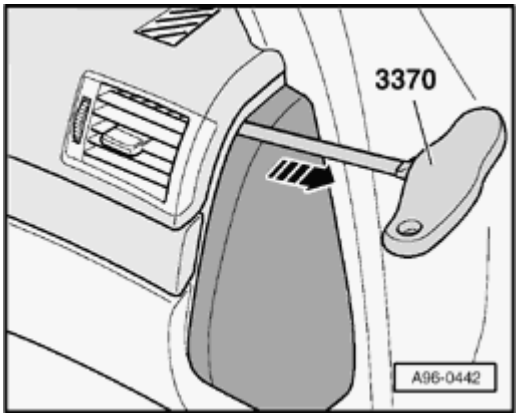


Fig. 254: Removing Right Instrument Panel Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull off right instrument panel cover - **arrow** - using special hook 3370.

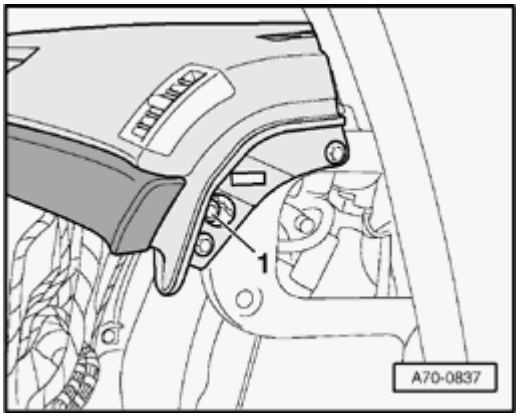
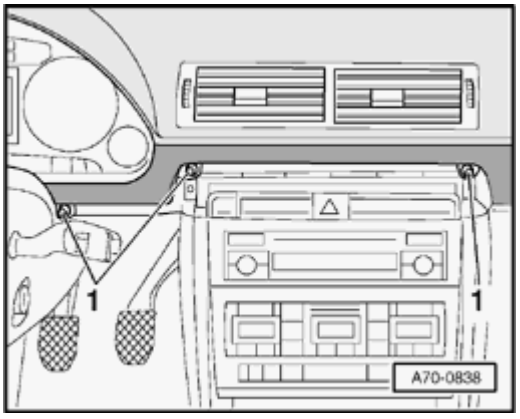


Fig. 255: Removing Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** -.

Tightening torque: 3 Nm



cardiagn.com

Fig. 256: Removing Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (3x).

Tightening torque: 3 Nm

- Remove right trim.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Left and right instrument panel vents, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

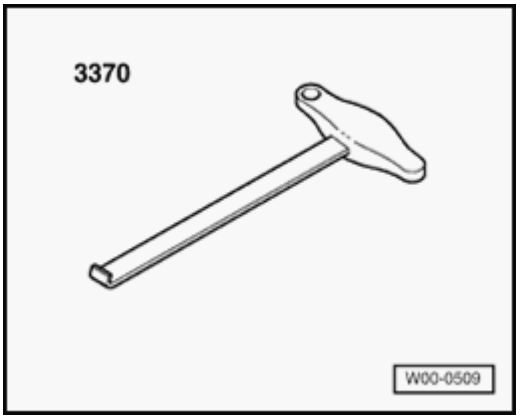
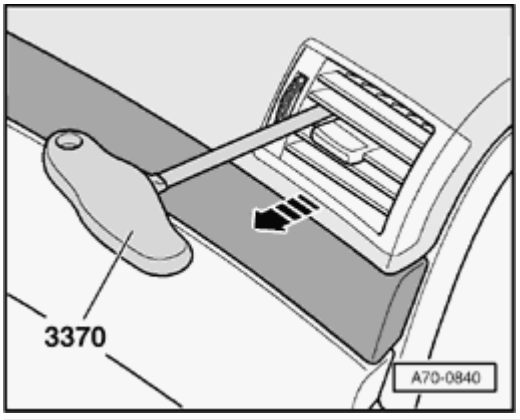


Fig. 257: Identifying Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special hook 3370

Removing



cardiagn.com

Fig. 258: Removing Instrument Panel Vent Rearward Using Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Carefully remove instrument panel vent rearward using special hook 3370.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Left and right instrument panel vents, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

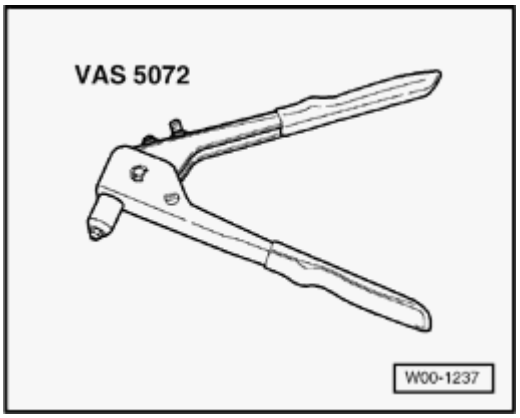


Fig. 259: Pop Rivet Pliers VAS 5072
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pop rivet pliers VAS 5072

Removing

- Remove instrument panel --> **Instrument panel, removing and installing**.
- Remove air quality sensor from damaged side.

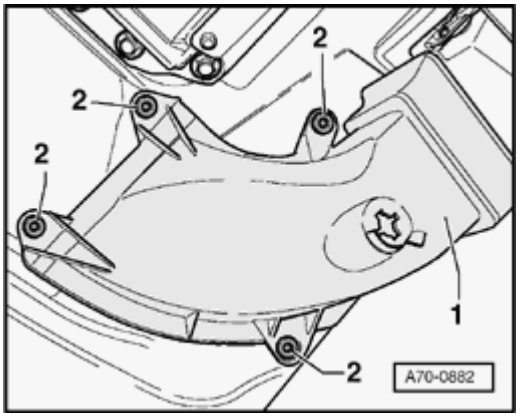


Fig. 260: Identifying Weld Points

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut through weld points - **2** - (4x) flush to air guide using a sharp knife.

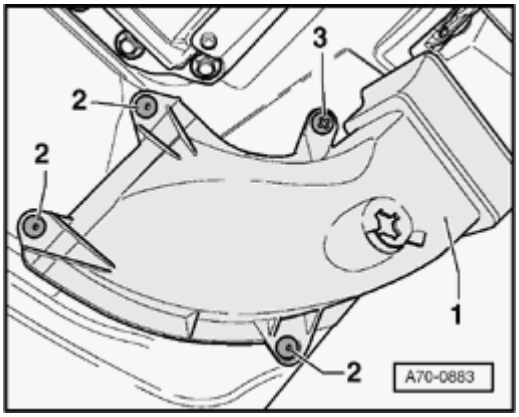


Fig. 261: Removing Damaged Air Vent
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove damaged air vent.
- Drill 5 mm hole at points - **2** - (3x).

Installing

- Install new air duct, ensuring no parts lie in the air channel.
- Rivet in the provided pop rivets for air guide at points - **2** - (3x).
- Install the provided bolt - **3** - for air guide.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.

Center instrument panel vent, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

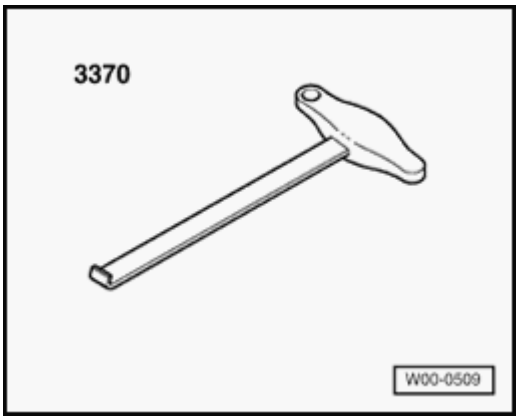


Fig. 262: Identifying Special Hook 3370

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special hook 3370

Removing

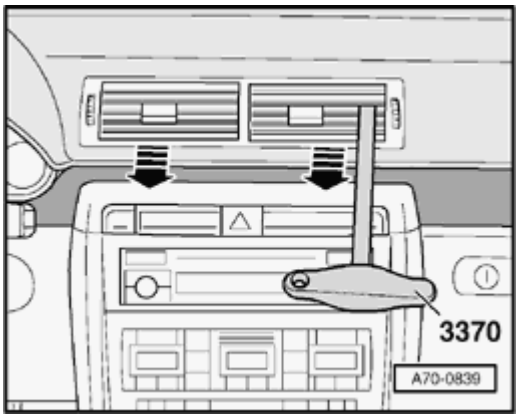


Fig. 263: Removing Instrument Panel Vent Alternately On Left And Right Toward Rear Using Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Carefully remove instrument panel vent alternately on left and right toward rear using special hook 3370.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

CENTRAL TUBE, REMOVING AND INSTALLING

Component locations, overview

cardiagn.com

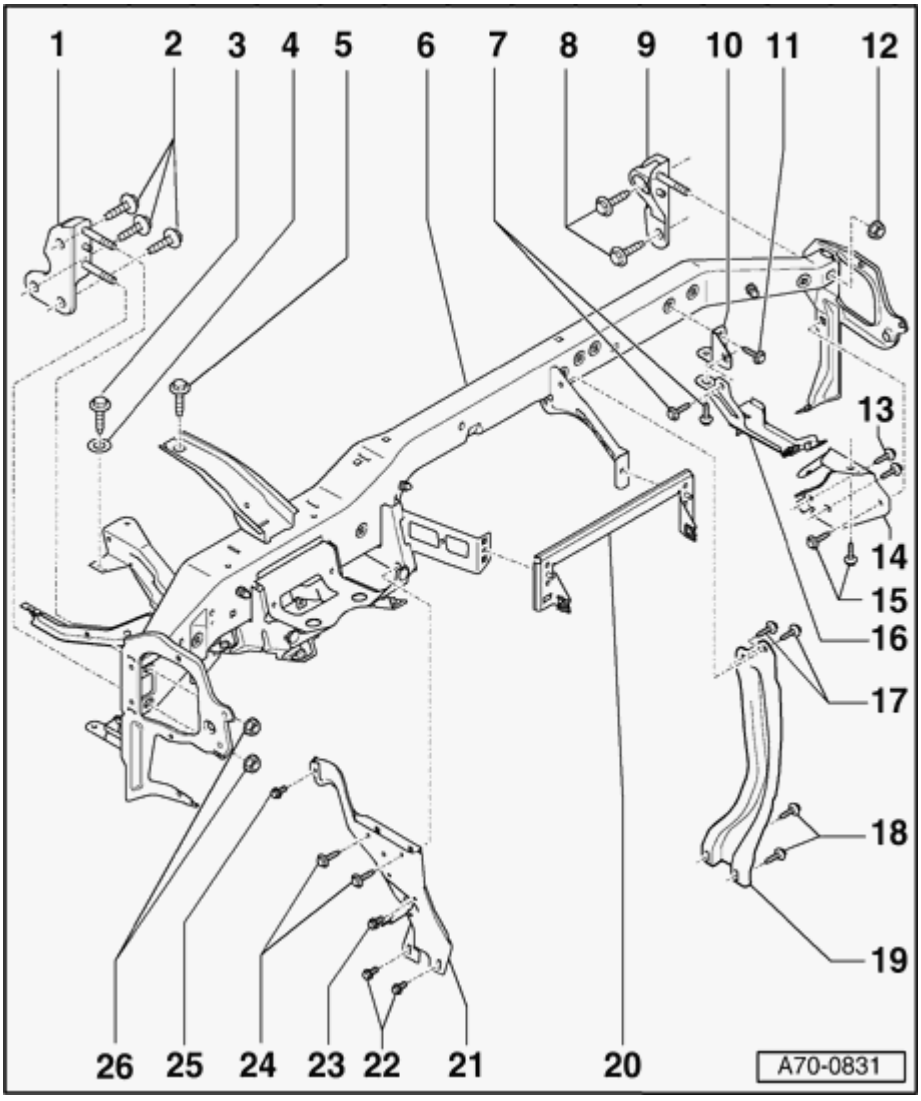


Fig. 264: Central Tube, Component Locations, Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Angle bracket

2 - Bolts (3x)

- Tightening torque 23 Nm

3 - Screw

- Tightening torque 6 Nm

4 - Sealing washer

5 - Screw

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque 6 Nm

6 - Central tube

7 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

8 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 23 Nm

9 - Angle bracket

10 - Angle bracket

11 - Screw

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

12 - Nut

- Tightening torque 35 Nm

13 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

14 - Angle bracket

- For air conditioning unit

15 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

16 - Supports

17 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

18 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

cardiagn.com

19 - Supports

20 - Reinforcing bracket

21 - Supports

22 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

23 - Screw

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

24 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 9 Nm

25 - Screw

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

26 - Nut

- Tightening torque 35 Nm

Instrument panel central tube, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

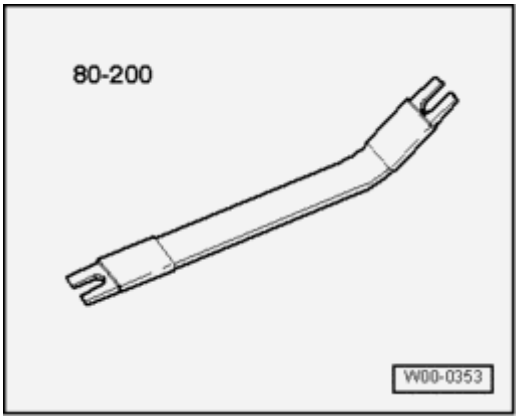


Fig. 265: Identifying Pry Lever 80-200
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry lever 80 - 200

cardiagn.com

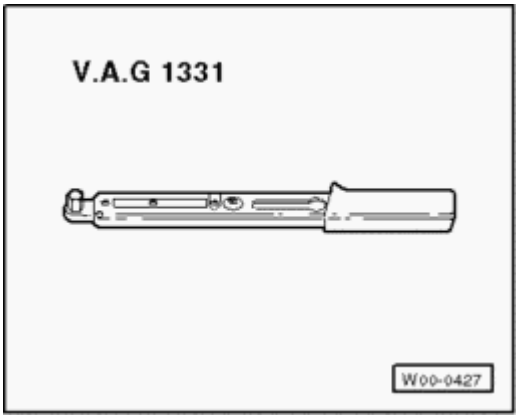


Fig. 266: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

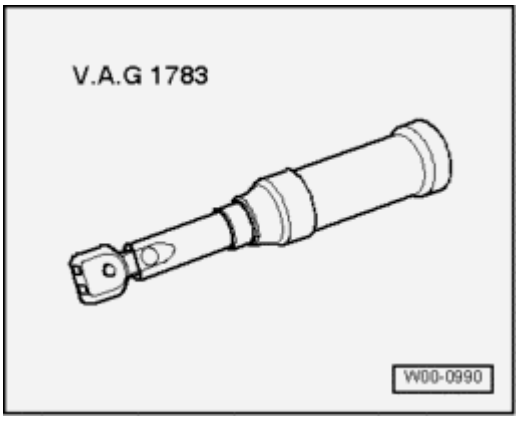


Fig. 267: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

Removing

- Remove instrument panel --> **Instrument panel, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

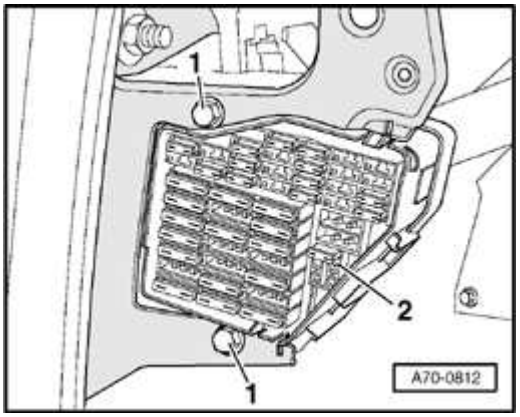


Fig. 268: Removing Bolts Of Fuse Carrier
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x) of fuse carrier - **2** -.

Tightening torque: 3 Nm

- Lay down fuse carrier with connected wires.
- Disengage wiring harness on instrument panel carrier and free it up.

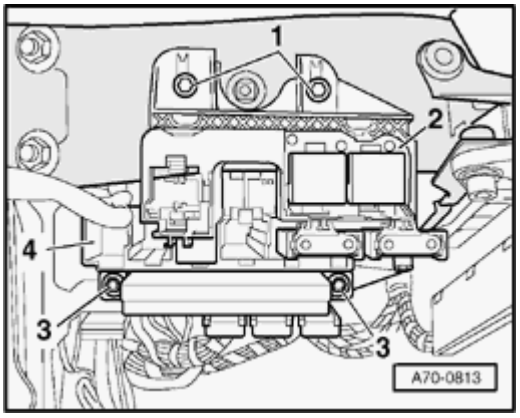


Fig. 269: Identifying Bolts, 3-Socket Relay Carrier & 6-Socket Relay Carrier
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x) of 3-socket relay carrier - **2** -.

Tightening torque: 3 Nm

- Remove nuts - **3** - (2x) of 6-socket relay carrier - **4** - with control module for vehicle electrical system.

Tightening torque: 2.4 Nm

- Lay down relay carrier with connected wires.
- Remove wiring harness behind relay carriers from central tube and free it up.

cardiagn.com

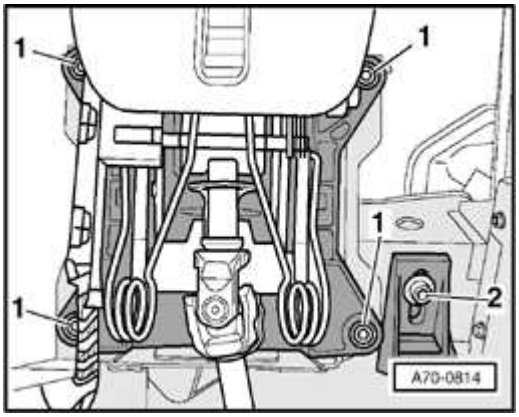


Fig. 270: Removing Bolt Of Pedal Bracket
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **2** - of pedal bracket.

Tightening torque: 23 Nm

- Remove screws - **1** - (4x).

Tightening torque: 22 Nm

- Place steering column in drivers footwell.

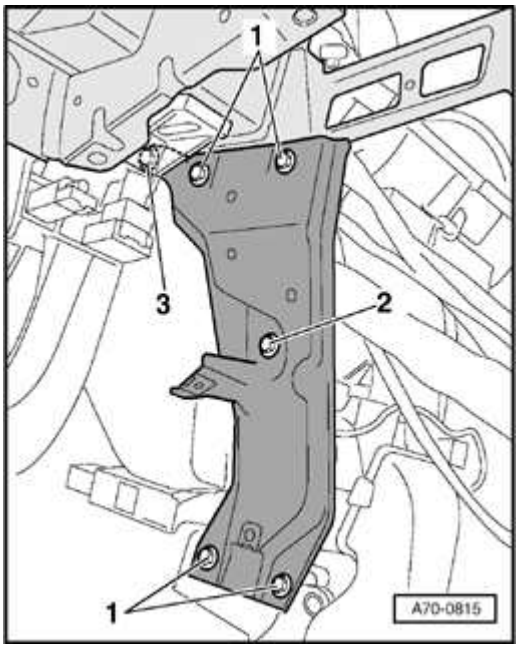


Fig. 271: Identifying Left Brace Bolts & Screw
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (4x) of left brace.

cardiagn.com

Tightening torque: 9 Nm

- Remove screw - **2** -.

Tightening torque: 8 Nm

NOTE:

- **If brace remains installed, it is sufficient to only loosen bolt - 3 - and swivel brace downward.**

- Loosen/remove bolt - **3** - (front mount for brace on air conditioner).

Tightening torque: 8 Nm

- Remove support or tilt it downward.

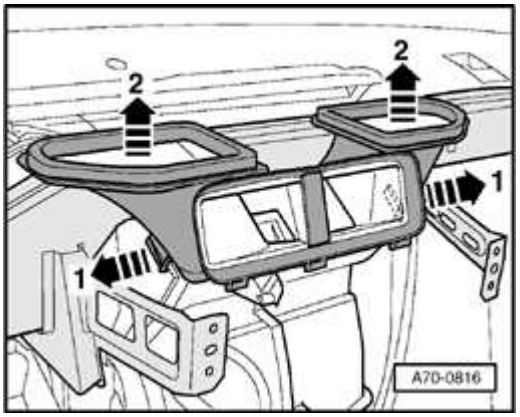


Fig. 272: Disengaging Air Guide At Air Conditioner And Removing It Upward
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage air guide at air conditioner - **arrows 1** - and remove it upward - **arrows 2** -.

cardiagn.com

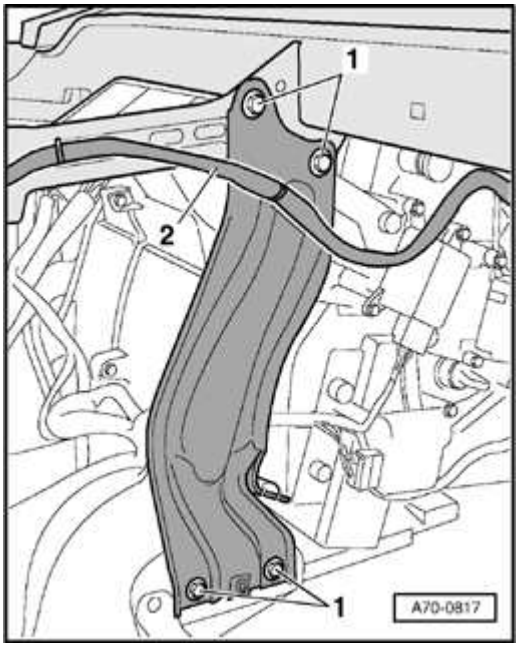


Fig. 273: Removing Screws & Expose Cable
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove screws - **1** - (4x).

Tightening torque: 9 Nm

- Expose cable - **2** -.
- Remove right support.

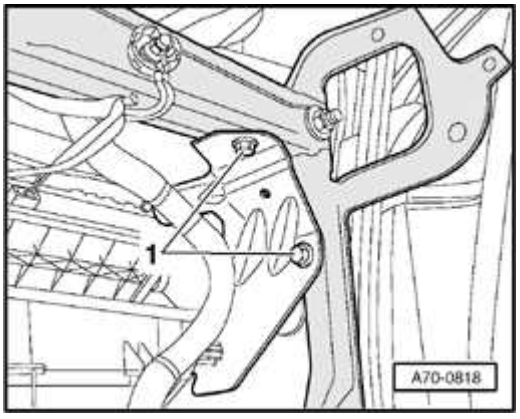


Fig. 274: Removing Bolts Of Bracket For Air Conditioner
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x) of bracket for air conditioner.

Tightening torque: 11 Nm

cardiagn.com

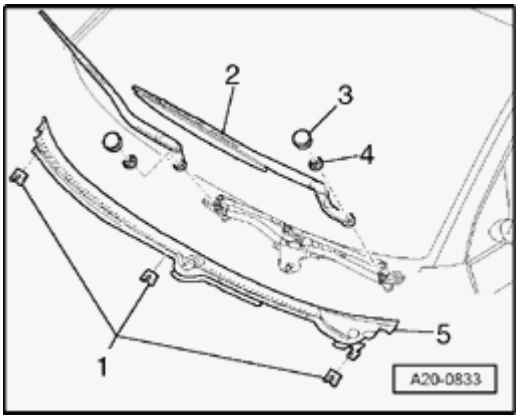


Fig. 275: Removing Securing Clips And Cowl
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry both cover caps - **3** - out with a screwdriver.
- Loosen hex nuts - **4** - a few turns.
- Loosen wiper arm - **2** - from wiper axle by tilting slightly.
- Completely remove hex nuts and remove wiper arm.

- Remove securing clips - **1** - and remove cowl panel grille - **5** -.

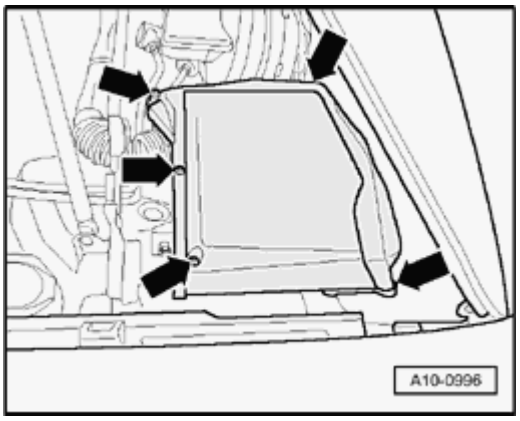


Fig. 276: Removing Screws And Cover From E-Box In Plenum Chamber
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove E-box plenum chamber cover - **arrows** -.

cardiagn.com

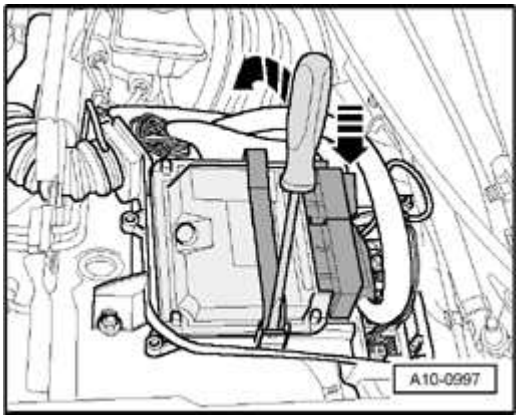


Fig. 277: Using Screwdriver To Remove Retainer Bar And Engine Control Module (ECM) J623
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Carefully pry off mounting bracket - **arrow** - assisted with a screwdriver and lay Engine Control Module (ECM) with attached wires aside.
- Unclip retaining bracket.
- If present, lay aside transmission control module with wiring connected.

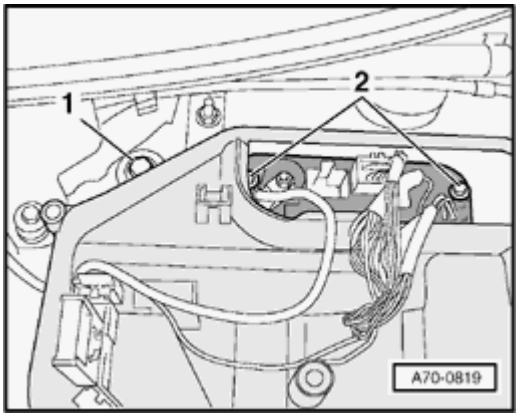


Fig. 278: Removing Bolts Of Connector Station
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x) of connector station.

Tightening torque: 3 Nm

- Remove central tube bolt - **1** - for instrument panel in plenum chamber.

Tightening torque: 6 Nm

cardiagn.com

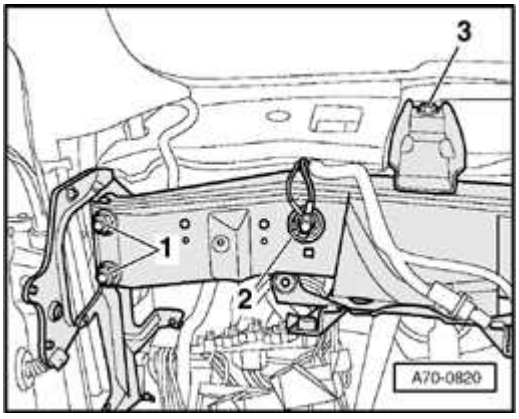


Fig. 279: Removing Left Bolts, Upper Bolt & Ground (GND) Wires
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove left bolts - **1** - (2x).

Tightening torque: 35 Nm

- Remove upper bolt - **3** -. Tightening torque: 6 Nm.
- Unscrew Ground (GND) wires - **2** -.

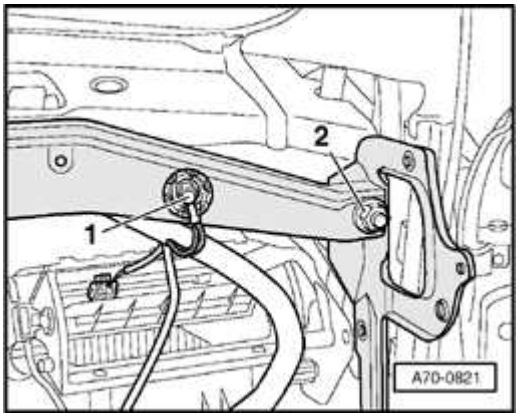


Fig. 280: Removing Right Bolt & Unscrewing Ground (GND) Wires
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove right bolt - **2** -.

Tightening torque: 35 Nm

- Unscrew Ground (GND) wires - **1** -.
- Pull instrument panel central tube forward a few mm.

cardiagn.com

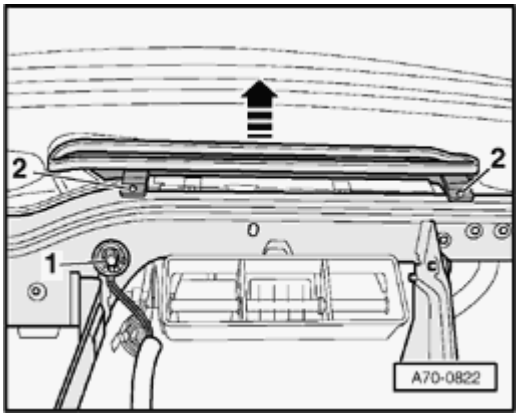


Fig. 281: Pulling Out Pins Upward, Removing Air Guide Upward & Unscrewing Ground (GND) Wires
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pull out pins - **2** - (2x) preferably upward using a small screwdriver.
- Free up electrical wiring harness behind vent.
- Remove air guide upward - **arrow** -.
- Unscrew Ground (GND) wires - **1** -.

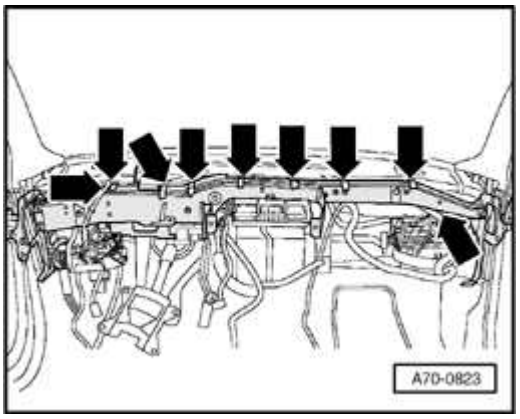


Fig. 282: Pressing Off Wiring Harness Behind Central Tube For Instrument Panel From Central Tube For Instrument Panel
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press off wiring harness behind central tube for instrument panel from central tube for instrument panel - **arrows** -.

cardiagn.com

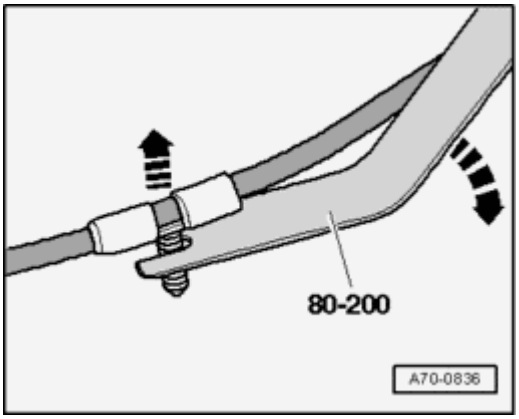


Fig. 283: Using Pry Lever 80 - 200 To Remove Instrument Panel Central Tube
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

To do so, use pry lever 80 - 200.

- Remove instrument panel central tube.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

ROOF TRIM (SEDAN)

Sun visor, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

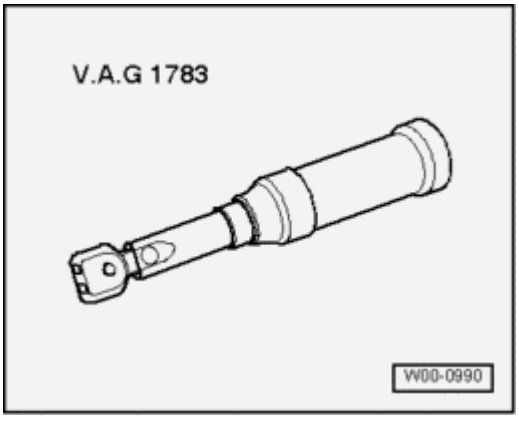


Fig. 284: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

cardiagn.com

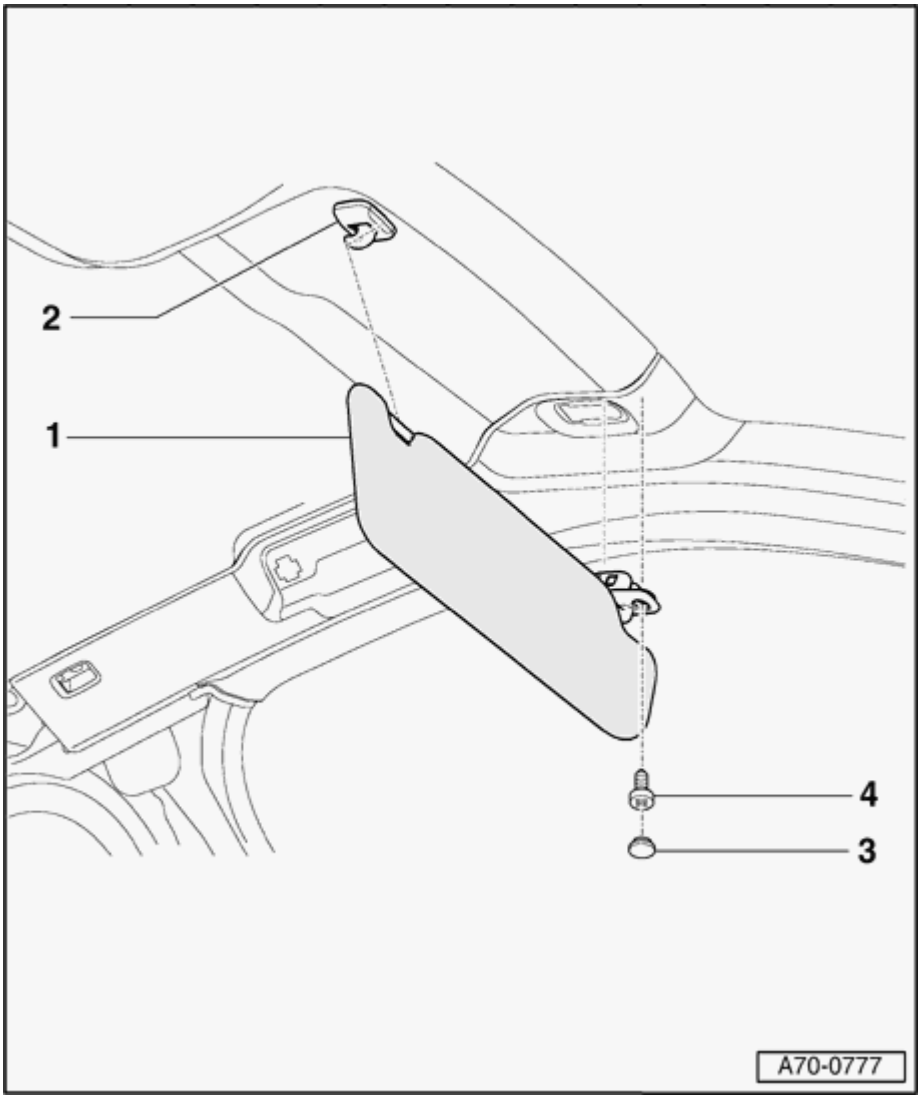


Fig. 285: Sun Visor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Sun visor

- Removal:

  - Disengage sun visor - **1** - in vehicle center from retaining hook - **2** -.
  - Push sun visor - **1** - to the side.
  - Pry out bolt cover - **3** - on sun visor - **1** - and remove bolt - **4** -.
  - If present, disconnect make-up mirror lighting connector.

  - Remove sun visor - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Sun visor center bearing

3 - Bolt cover

4 - Screw

- Tightening torque 4 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

Center sun visor, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

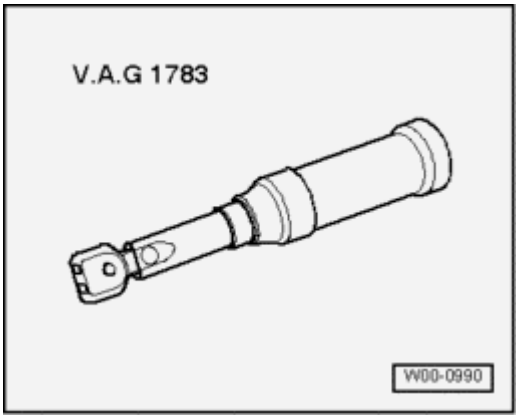


Fig. 286: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

Removing

cardiagn.com

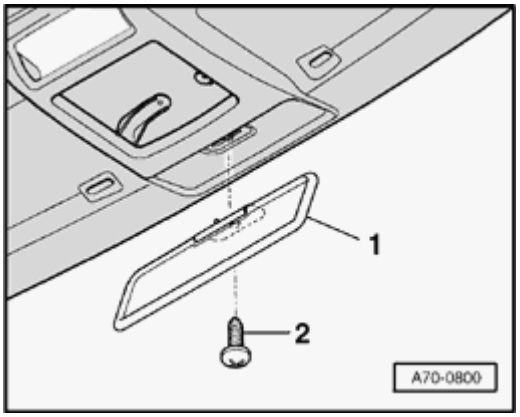


Fig. 287: Identifying Bolt & Center Sun Visor
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **2** - from center sun visor - **1** -.

Tightening torque: 3 Nm

- Remove center sun visor.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Headliner, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

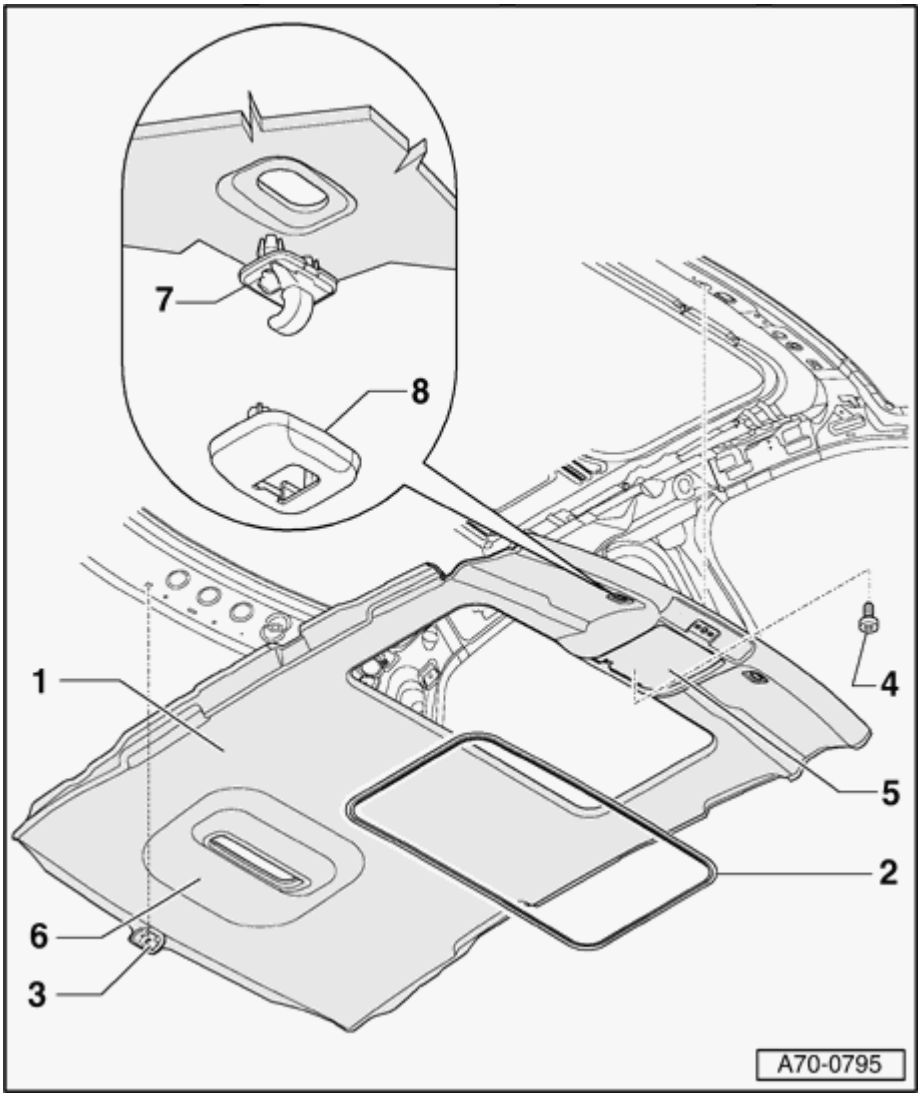


Fig. 288: Headliner Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Headliner

- Removal:

  - Remove right and left sun visor --> **Sun visor, removing and installing**.
  - Remove sun visor center holder - **7** -.
  - Unclip cover cap - **8** -.
  - Remove two clips and disengage expanding clip underneath.

  - Remove visor center bracket.
  - Remove upper left and right A-pillar trim --> **Upper A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove upper B-pillar trim --> **Upper B-pillar trim, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove roof end strip --> **Roof end trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove D-pillar trim on left and right --> **D-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove rear interior reading light - **6** - -->
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT**
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET

  .
- If present, open sunroof.
- Remove slide/tilt sunroof cover frame - **2** -.
- Remove left and right lighting for make-up mirror -->
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT**
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET

  .
- Remove front interior reading light - **5** - -->
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT**
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET

  .
- Unclip cover on rearview mirror boot and disconnect electrical harness connector to rearview mirror **Disconnect electrical connectors**.
- Place shifter or selector lever in front position.
- Position passenger seat backrest as far back as possible.
- Position drivers seat backrest as far back as possible.

A second technician is needed to support the molded headliner.

- Loosen rear clip - **3** - on molded headliner.
- For vehicles with sunroof, remove front bolt - **4** - on molded headliner.
- To remove cable on molded headliner, exit vehicle and carefully lower headliner onto seat.
- If necessary, disconnect wiring harness from A-pillar.
- Disconnect wiring harness from molded headliner --> **Wiring harness routing on rear side or molded headliner**.
- Remove molded headliner through a rear door.

- **Installing:**

cardiagn.com

- Carefully slide molded headliner in through a rear door.
- Attach wiring harness at molded headliner --> **Wiring harness routing on rear side or molded headliner**.

NOTE:

- **Follow sequence when installing because otherwise the roof trim can no longer be centered.**

- Clip in visor bracket.
- Clip in slide/tilt sunroof cover frame - **2** -.
- If installed, tighten bolt - **4** - to sunroof.
- Clip in rear molded headliner at clip - **3** -.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.

2 - Sunroof cover frame

3 - Clip

4 - Screw

5 - Front lighting module

6 - Rear lighting module

7 - Sun visor center bearing

8 - Cover cap

Disconnect electrical connectors

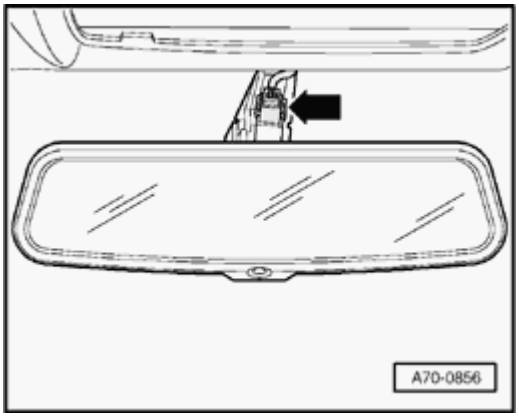


Fig. 289: Unclipping Trim On Mirror Boot And Disconnecting Electrical Harness Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Unclip trim on mirror boot and disconnect electrical harness connector - **arrow** -.

Wiring harness routing on rear side or molded headliner

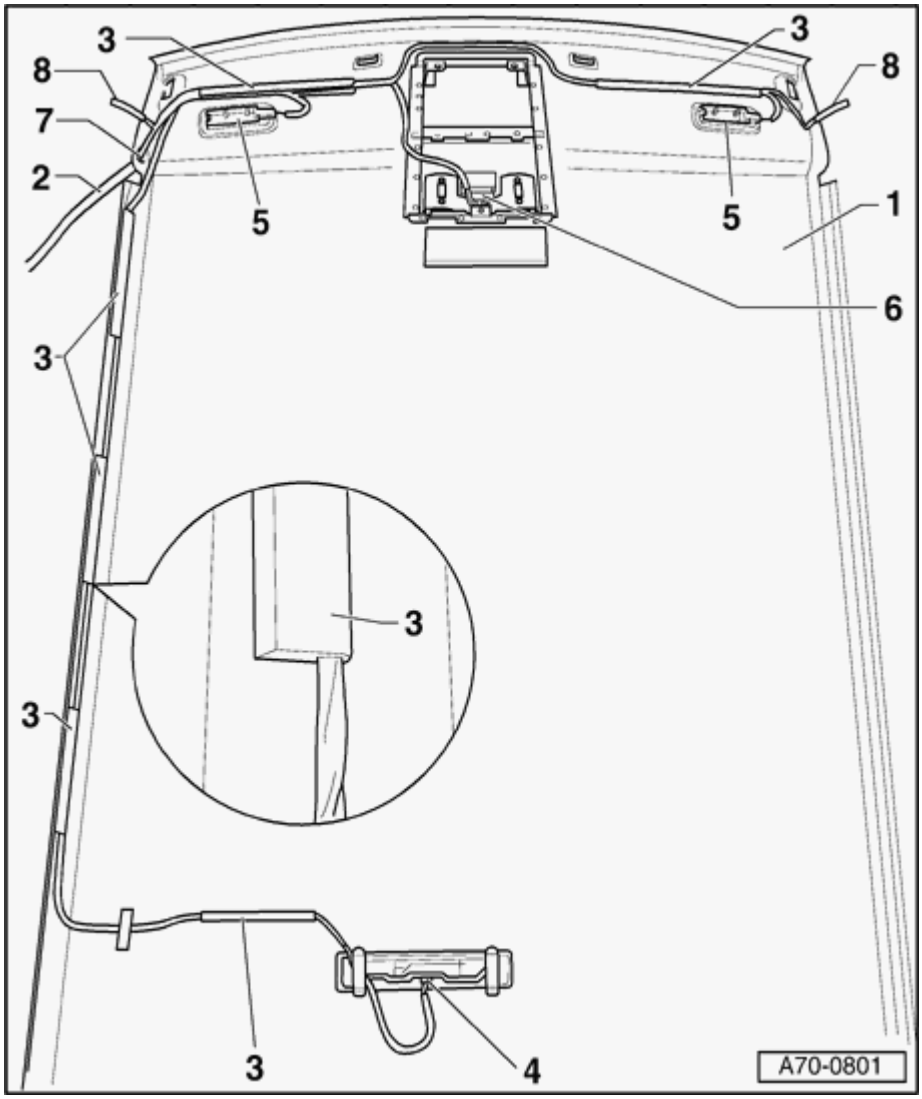


Fig. 290: Wiring Harness Routing On Rear Side Or Molded Headliner
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear side of molded headliner

Molded headliner removed (placed on seats).

- Disconnect connector - **4** -.
- Separate connectors - **5** -.
- Disconnect connector - **6** -.
- Remove cable to sun visor - **8** -.

cardiagn.com

- Unclip cable channels - **3** -.
- Route wiring harness - **2** - through cable guide - **7** -.

2 - Cable harness

3 - Cable channel (Qty. 6)

4 - Rear interior lighting connector

5 - Visor lighting connectors

6 - Interior lighting connector

7 - Cable guide

8 - Cable to visor

Roof grab handle, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

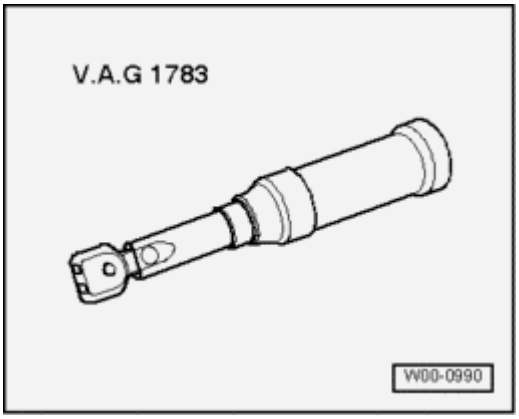


Fig. 291: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

Removing

cardiagn.com

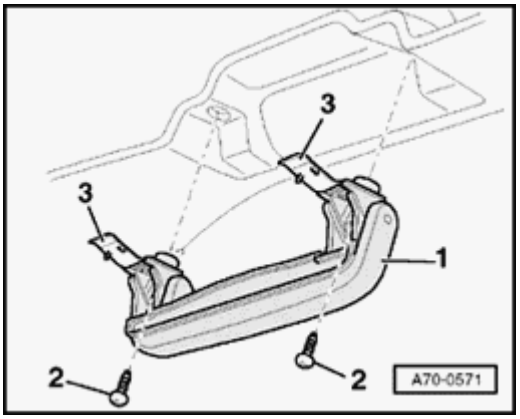


Fig. 292: Identifying Covers, Bolts & Roof Grab Handle
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Open covers - **3** -.
- Remove bolts - **2** -.

Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm

- Remove roof grab handle - **1** -.

NOTE:

- **Threaded holes for roof grab handle must be cleaned of locking compound residue after removal. Otherwise, new screws could lock up when installed and shear off when removed again.**
- **They can be cleaned with a thread cutter.**
- **Replace roof grab handle screws (self-locking).**

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

ROOF TRIM (AVANT)

Sun visor, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

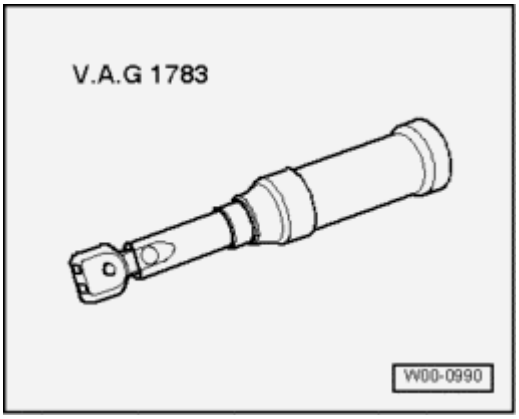
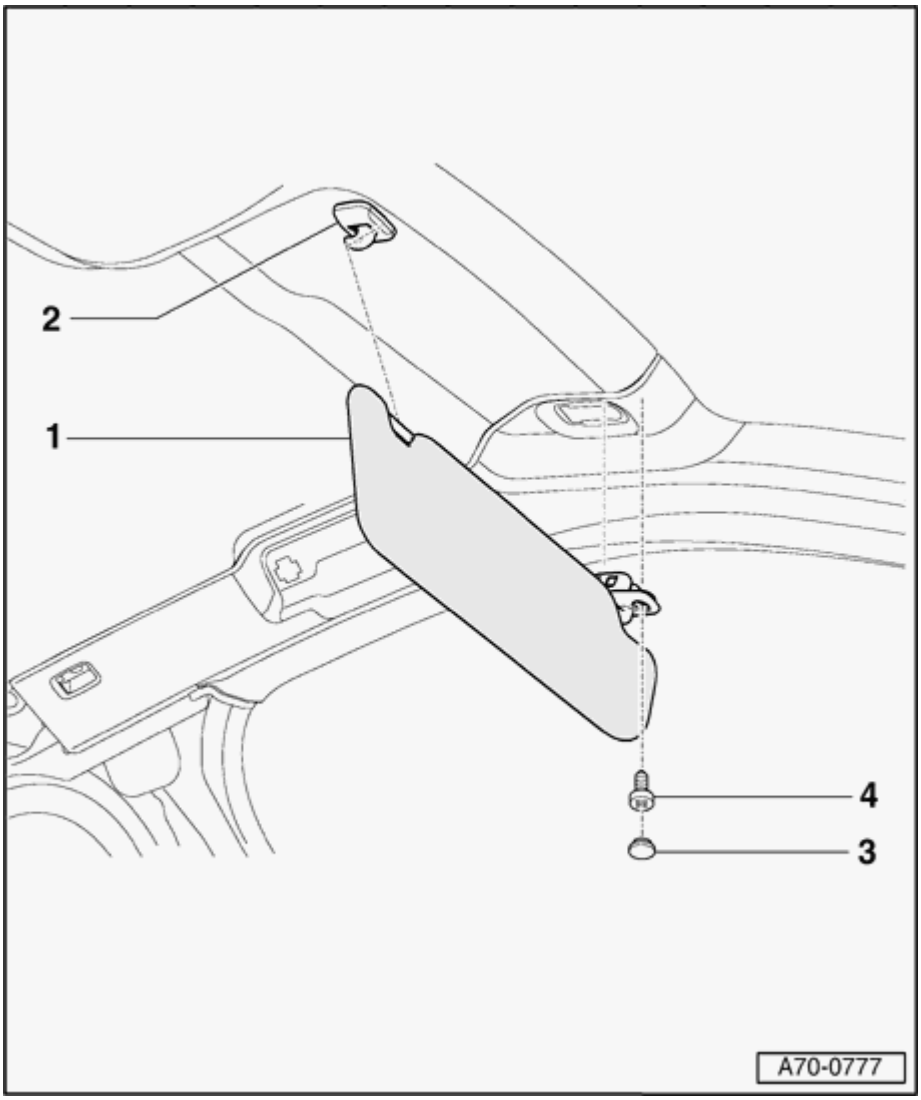


Fig. 293: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783



cardiagn.com

Fig. 294: Sun Visor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Sun visor

- Removal:

  - Disengage sun visor - **1** - in vehicle center from retaining hook - **2** -.
  - Push sun visor - **1** - to the side.
  - Pry out bolt cover - **3** - on sun visor - **1** - and remove bolt - **4** -.
  - If present, disconnect make-up mirror lighting connector.
  - Remove sun visor - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Sun visor center bearing

3 - Bolt cover

4 - Screw

- Tightening torque 4 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

Center sun visor, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

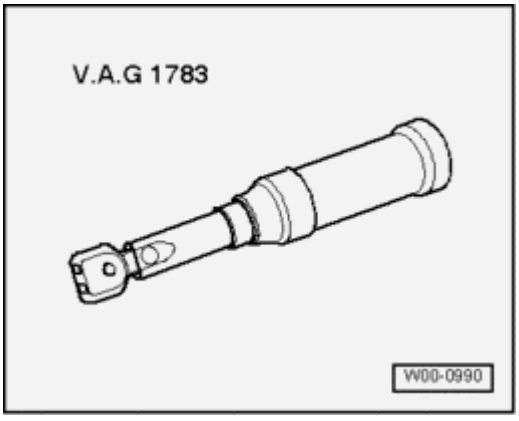


Fig. 295: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

Removing

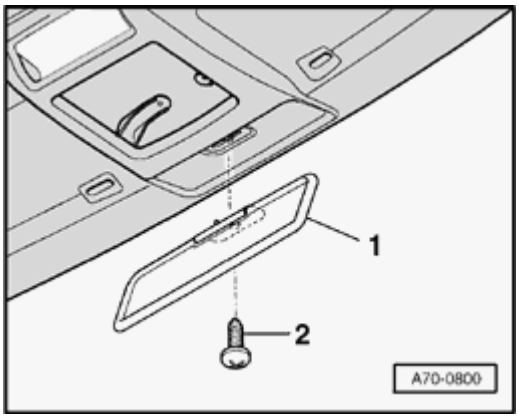


Fig. 296: Identifying Bolt & Center Sun Visor
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **2** - from center sun visor - **1** -.

Tightening torque: 3 Nm

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Headliner, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

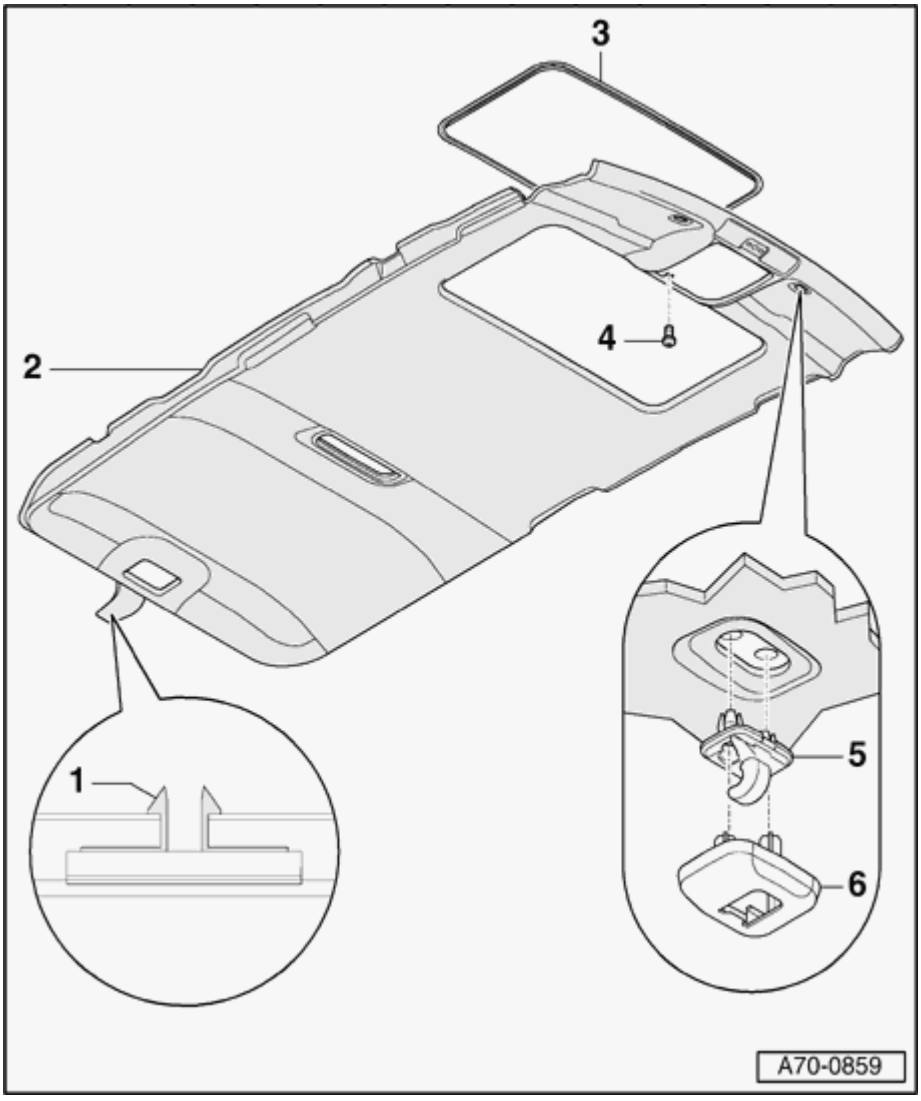


Fig. 297: Headliner Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Clip

2 - Headliner

- Removal:

  - Remove right and left sun visor --> **Sun visor, removing and installing**.
  - Unclip cover caps - **6** -.
  - Disengage expanding clips lying beneath.
  - Remove sun visor center holder - **5** -.

  - Remove upper left and right A-pillar trim --> **Upper A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove roof end strip --> **Roof panel trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove D-pillar trim on left and right --> **D-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove trim above rear door --> **Trim above rear door, removing and installing**.

- Remove left and right lighting for make-up mirror -->
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT**
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET

  .
- Remove front interior reading light -->
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT**
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET

  .
- Disconnect electrical connector on sunroof motor.
- If installed, remove front bolt - **4** - on molded headliner.

- Unclip cover on rearview mirror boot and disconnect electrical harness connector to rearview mirror **Disconnect electrical connectors**.
- Fold rear seat backrest forward.
- Fold drivers and passengers seat backrests back.
- Unclip molded headliner around sunroof cut-out (16 spring clips).

A second technician is needed to support the molded headliner.

- Carefully lower roof liner at front.
- Loosen rear clip - **1** - on molded headliner.
- Carefully lower roof liner at rear.
- If necessary, disconnect wiring harness from A-pillar.

- Disconnect wiring harness from molded headliner --> **Wiring harness routing on rear side or molded headliner**.
- Remove molded headliner through rear lid.

- **Installing:**

NOTE:

- **When installing a new molded headliner, clip frame for sunroof - 3 - to molded headliner.**

- Carefully slide molded headliner in through rear lid.
- Attach wiring harness at molded headliner --> **Wiring harness routing on rear side or molded**

cardiagn.com

headliner.

NOTE:

- **Follow sequence when installing because otherwise the roof trim can no longer be centered.**

- Clip in rear molded headliner at clip - **1** -.
- If installed, tighten bolt - **4** - to sunroof.
- Clip in visor center bracket.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.

3 - Frame

- For sunroof

4 - Screw

5 - Sun visor center bearing

6 - Cover cap

Disconnect electrical connectors

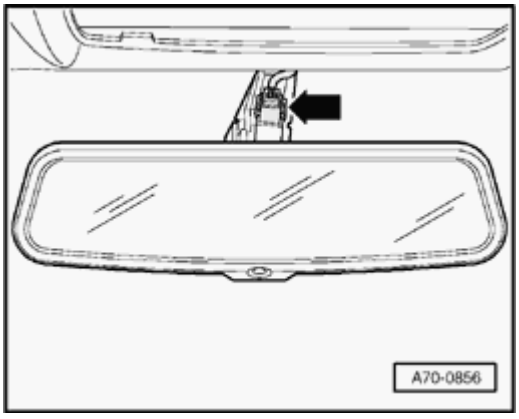


Fig. 298: Uncliping Trim On Mirror Boot And Disconnecting Electrical Harness Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Unclip trim on mirror boot and disconnect electrical harness connector - **arrow** -.

Wiring harness routing on rear side or molded headliner

cardiagn.com

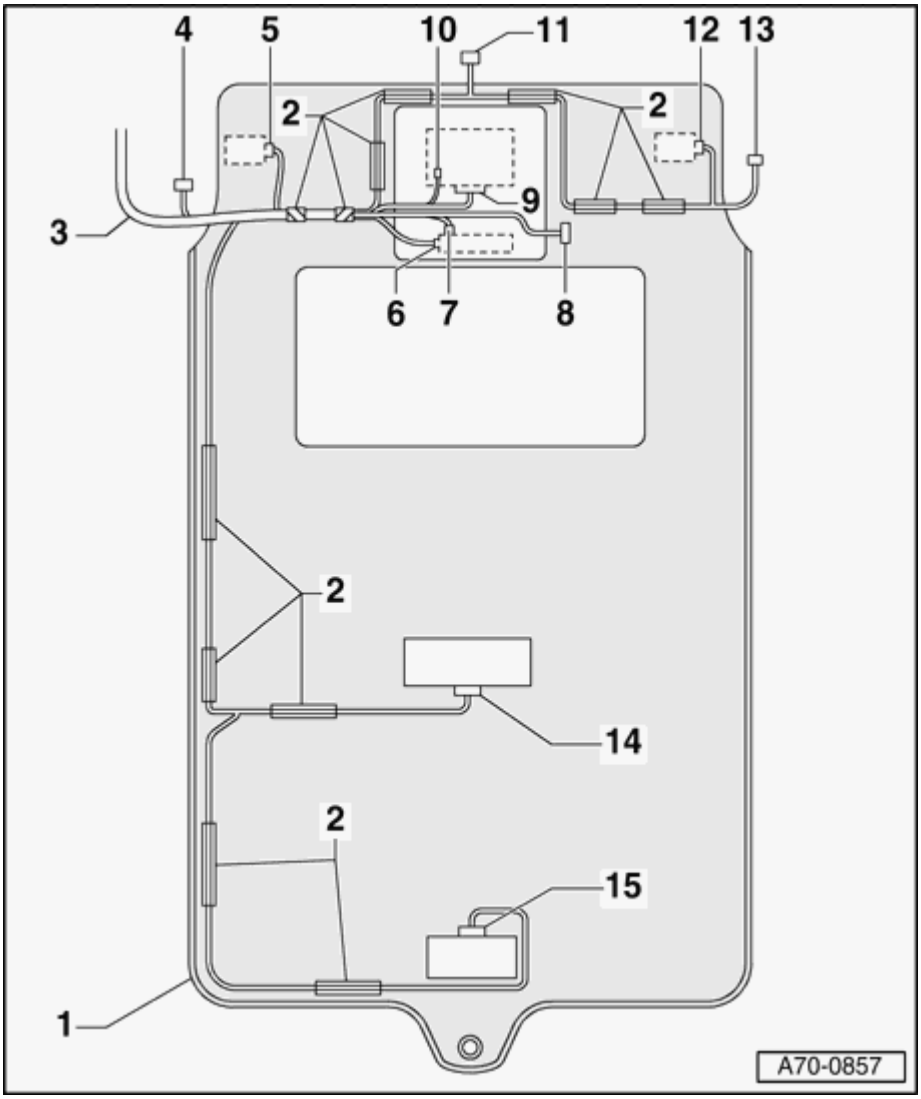


Fig. 299: Wiring Harness Routing On Rear Side Or Molded Headliner
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear side of molded headliner

Molded headliner removed (placed on seats).

- Disconnect connectors - **14** - and - **15** -.
- Unclip wiring harness - **3** - from cable channels - **2** -.

2 - Cable guide

3 - Cable harness

4 - Electrical connection

cardiagn.com

- For sun visor (for make-up lighting switch)

5 - Electrical connection

- For make-up lights

6 - Electrical connection

- For anti-theft warning system interior sensor

7 - Electrical connection

- For "Passenger Airbag-Off" light

8 - Electrical connection

- For sunroof motor

9 - Electrical connection

- For interior light/front reading light

10 - Electrical connection

- For hands-free microphone

11 - Electrical connection

- For automatic day/night rearview mirror

12 - Electrical connection

- For make-up lights

13 - Electrical connection

- For sun visor (for make-up lighting switch)

14 - Electrical connection

- For rear interior lights/reading lights

15 - Electrical connection

- For luggage compartment lights

cardiagn.com

Roof grab handle, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

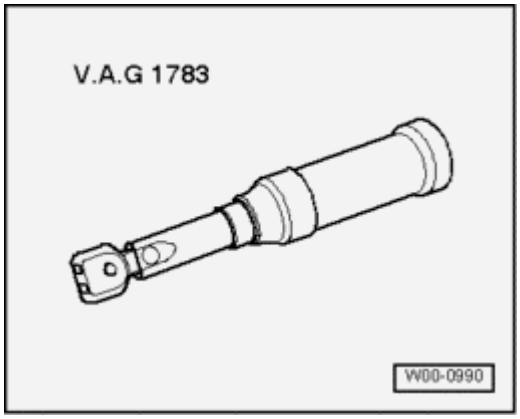


Fig. 300: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

Removing

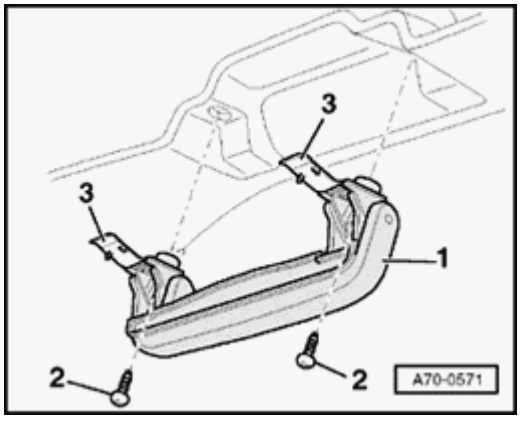


Fig. 301: Identifying Covers, Bolts & Roof Grab Handle
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Open covers - **3** -.
- Remove bolts - **2** -.

Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm

- Remove roof grab handle - **1** -.

NOTE:

- **Threaded holes for roof grab handle must be cleaned of locking compound residue after removal. Otherwise, new screws could lock up**

cardiagn.com

when installed and shear off when removed again.

- **They can be cleaned with a thread cutter.**
- **Replace roof grab handle screws (self-locking).**

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

TRIM (SEDAN)

Upper A-pillar trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

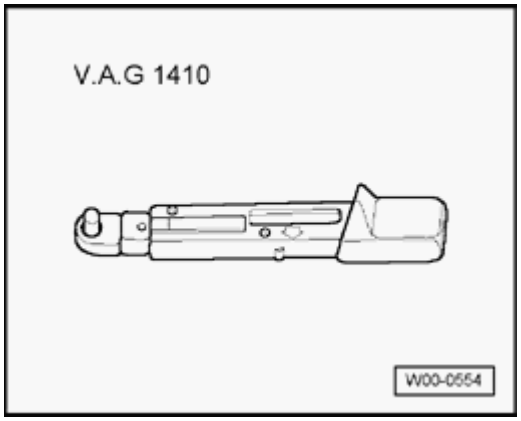


Fig. 302: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

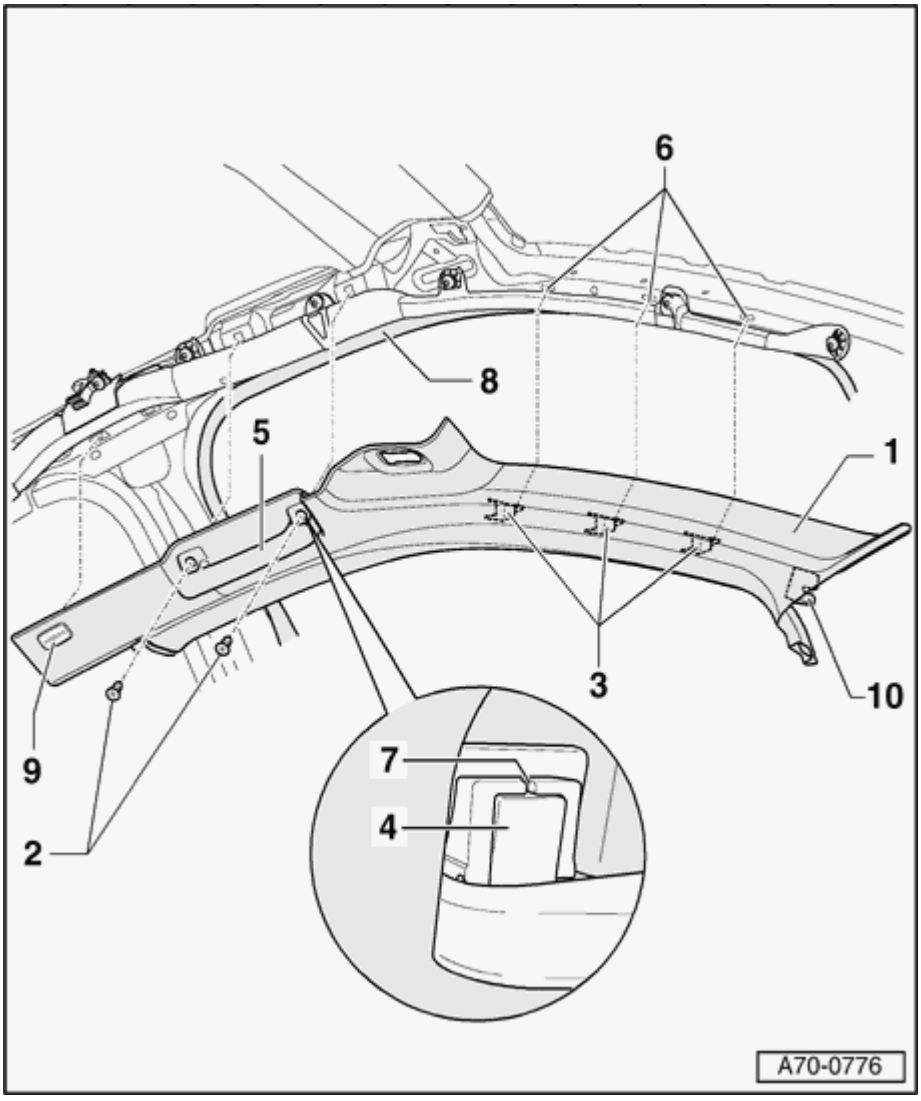


Fig. 303: Upper A-Pillar Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Upper A-pillar trim

- Removal:

  - Remove sun visor --> **Sun visor, removing and installing**.
  - Fold down roof grab handle - **5** -.
  - Fold down lid above bolts on roof grab handle - **4** -.
  - Remove bolts - **2** -.

  - Unclip rear airbag label - **9** - (on B-pillar) and move it down.
  - Remove bolt from airbag label.
  - Remove upper A-pillar trim - **1** - below upper B-pillar trim and unclip three clips - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove upper A-pillar trim - **1** - to the rear.

- **Installing:**

CAUTION: Always follow installation sequence for A-pillar trim.

- Guide upper A-pillar trim - **1** - toward front between door rubber and side plate.
- Guide trim retainer - **10** - into the proper clip.
- Clip upper A-pillar trim - **1** - using three clips - **3** -.
- Slide trim under upper B-pillar trim.

- Ensure that clip and metal hook of head-level airbag adapter engage securely.

CAUTION: Ensure trim is held securely.

2 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 4 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

3 - Clamps (Qty. 3)

4 - Roof grab handle cover

5 - Roof grab handle

6 - Mounts

7 - Groove

8 - Gasket

- After assembling trim, make sure seal is properly fitted.

9 - Airbag label

10 - Retainer

Lower A-pillar trim, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

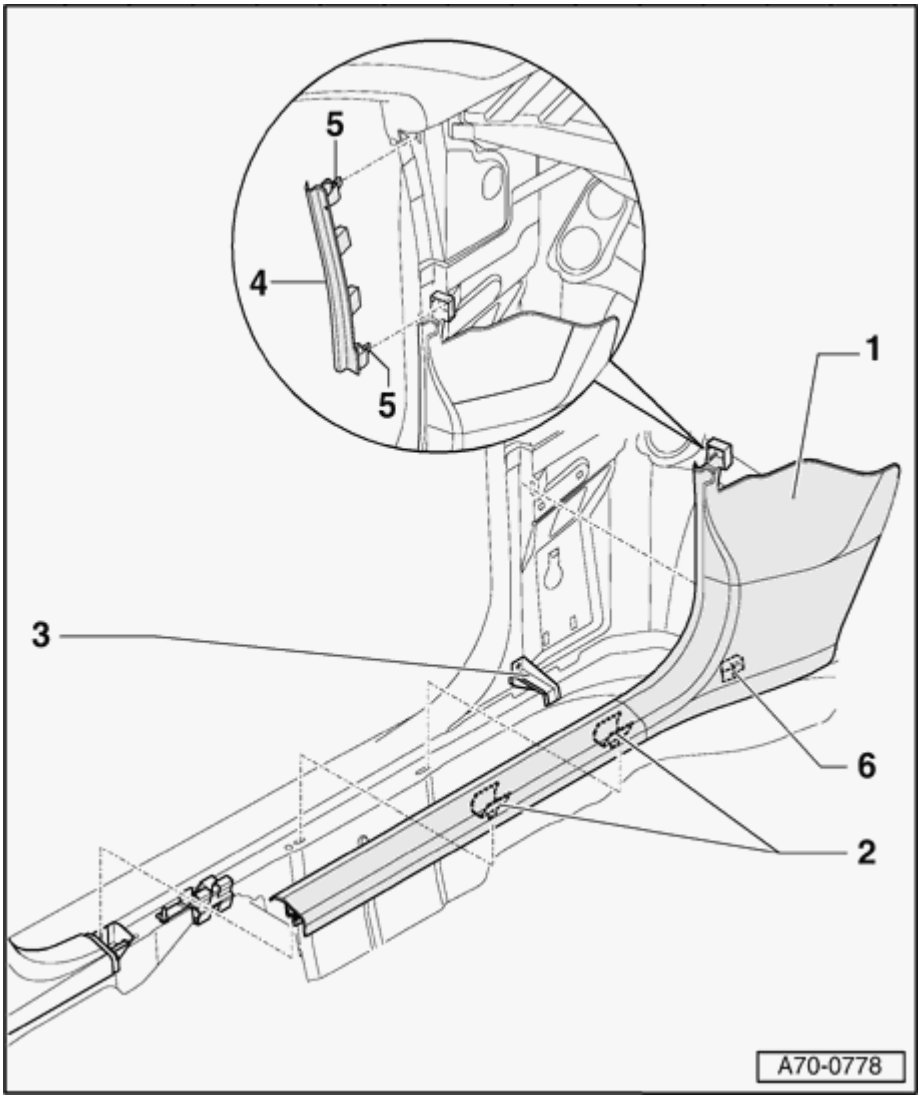


Fig. 304: Lower A-Pillar Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Lower A-pillar trim panel

- Removal:

  - Unclip two clips - **5** - and remove A-pillar intermediate piece - **4** -.
  - Unclip lower A-pillar trim - **1** - from intermediate piece - **4** -.
  - Unclip two clips - **2** - at lower A-pillar trim - **1** -.
  - Pull hook - **6** - from bracket - **3** -.

- **Installing:**

  - When installing, ensure that the door rubber is pulled cleanly over the lower A-pillar trim.

cardiagn.com

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.

2 - Clamps (Qty. 2)

3 - Bracket

4 - A-pillar intermediate piece

5 - Clamps (Qty. 2)

6 - Hook

Foot rest and foot rest bracket, removing and installing

Foot rest, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

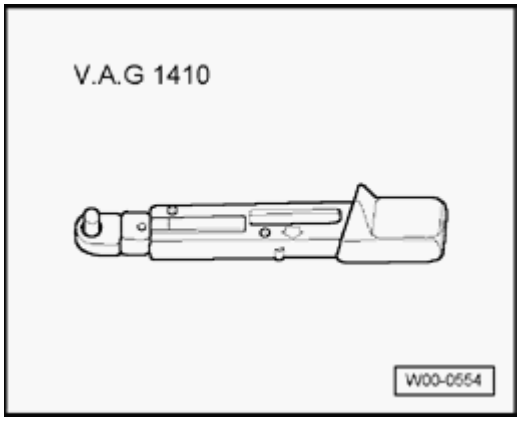


Fig. 305: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

Removing

- Remove lower A pillar trim --> **Lower A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

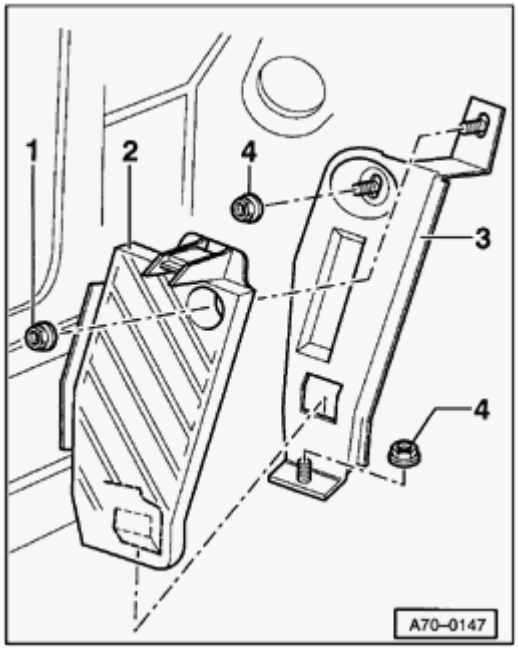


Fig. 306: Removing Nut & Pressing Foot Rest Upward To Remove
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove nut - **1** -.

Tightening torque: 4 Nm

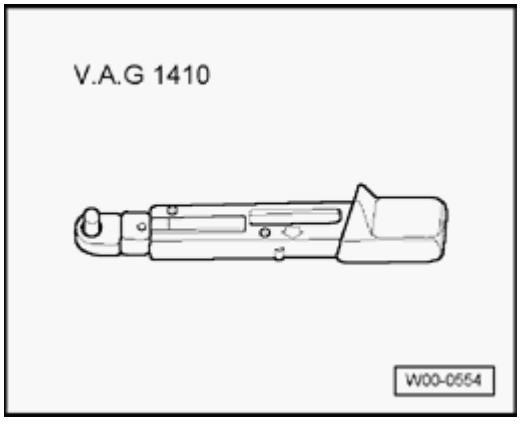
- Press foot rest - **2** - upward and remove.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Foot rest bracket, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required



cardiagn.com

Fig. 307: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

Removing

- Remove support.
- Fold up floor mat in area of support bracket.
- Remove nut - **4** - (2x).

Tightening torque: 4 Nm

- Remove foot rest bracket - **3** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Upper B-pillar trim, removing and installing

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

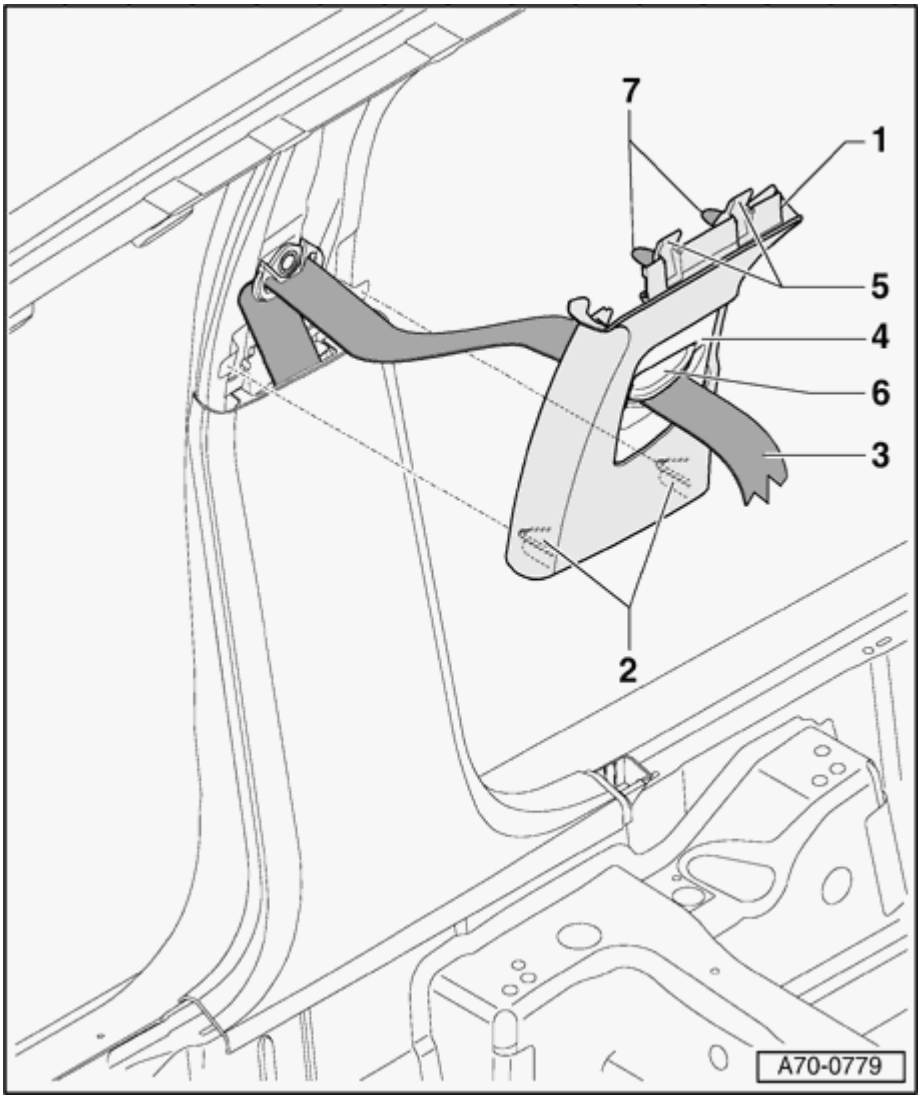


Fig. 308: Upper B-Pillar Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - B pillar trim

- Removal:

  - Remove outer seatbelt anchor --> **Seat belt anchor, removing and installing**.
  - Remove upper A-pillar trim --> **Upper A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove upper D-pillar trim --> **D-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove B-pillar trim - **1** - from door rubber.

  - Unclip lower two clips - **2** - at trim.
  - Unclip upper two retaining tabs - **5** - at trim - **1** -.
  - Remove trim - **1** - vertically downward.

cardiagn.com

- Remove lower belt on seat at outer belt buckle anchoring point --> **Seat belt anchor, removing and installing**.
- Thread belt - **3** - out of belt height adjuster - **4** -.

- **Installing:**

CAUTION: Always follow installation sequence for B-pillar trim.

NOTE:

- **Button - 6 - must not be pressed during installation.**

- Thread belt - **3** - into belt height adjuster - **4** -.
- Install belt height adjuster - **4** - **Installing upper B pillar trim in belt height adjuster**.
- Clip B-pillar trim in at upper edge. Ensure that the two tabs - **5** - and two retainers - **7** - engage correctly (gap width must fit).
- Clip clips - **2** - to lower edge of upper B-pillar trim - **1** -.

CAUTION: Ensure trim is held securely.

NOTE:

- **Function test after installing trim:**
- **Belt height adjuster must audibly engage into all five possible positions (even top position).**
- **Button must return by itself to upper position after being actuated.**

2 - Clamps (Qty. 2)

3 - Belt webbing

4 - Seat belt height adjuster

5 - Tabs (2x)

6 - Height adjustment button

7 - Tabs (Qty. 2)

Installing upper B pillar trim in belt height adjuster

cardiagn.com

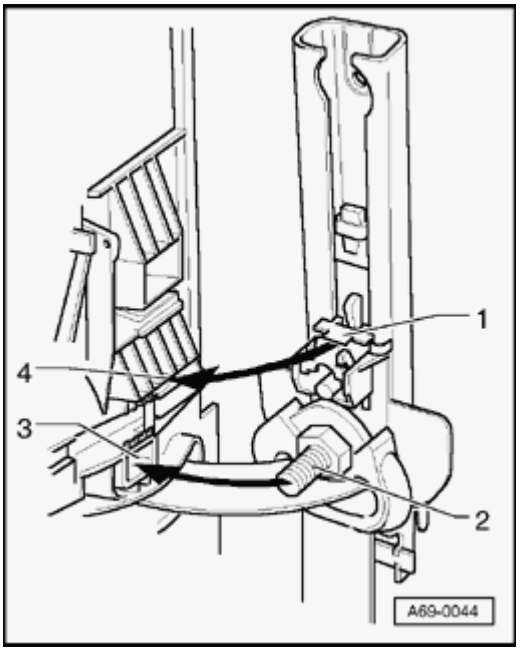


Fig. 309: Installing Upper B Pillar Trim In Belt Height Adjuster
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Guide slide with button - **4** - (without pressing) beginning at the top and working downward to release lever - **1** - of height adjuster while at the same time guiding pin - **2** - into mounting - **3** -.

Lower B-pillar trim, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

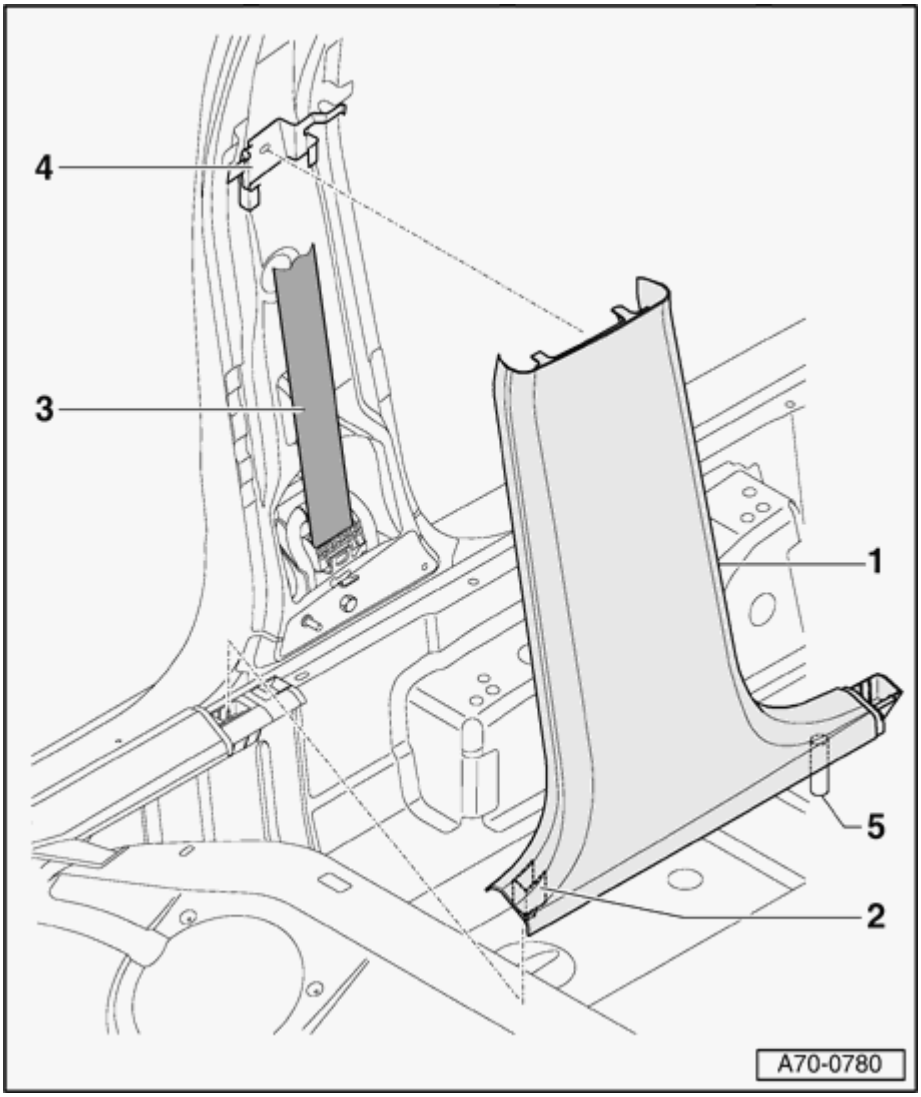


Fig. 310: Lower B-Pillar Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - B pillar trim

- Removal:

NOTE:

- **For removing the lower B-pillar trim, the outer seatbelt anchoring point must not be removed.**

  - Unclip lower A-pillar trim at rear end --> **Lower A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove upper B-pillar trim --> **Upper B-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Unclip lower clip - **2** - at rear end of B-pillar trim - **1** -.
  - Pull lower B-pillar trim - **1** - upward until B-pillar trim disengages from belt guide - **4** -.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing:**

NOTE:

- **Ensure that the belt webbing - 3 - is not jammed when installing trim.**

  - Guide pin - **5** - into hole on shell construction sill.
  - Attach upper trim - **1** - to belt guide - **4** -.
  - Secure lower rear trim - **1** - with clip - **2** -.
  - Clip lower A-pillar trim again at rear --> **Lower A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Install upper B-pillar trim again --> **Upper B-pillar trim, removing and installing**.

After assembling trim, make sure seal is properly fitted.

2 - Clip

3 - Belt webbing

4 - Belt guide

5 - Pins

C-pillar trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

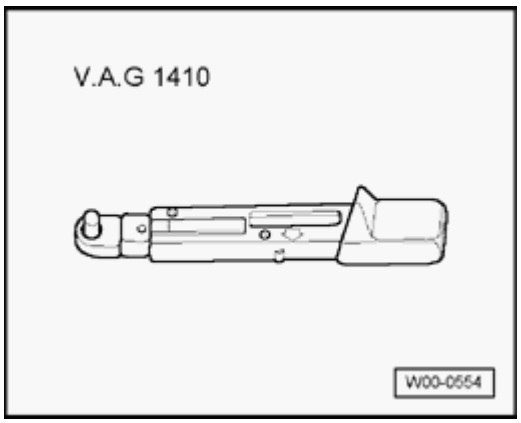


Fig. 311: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

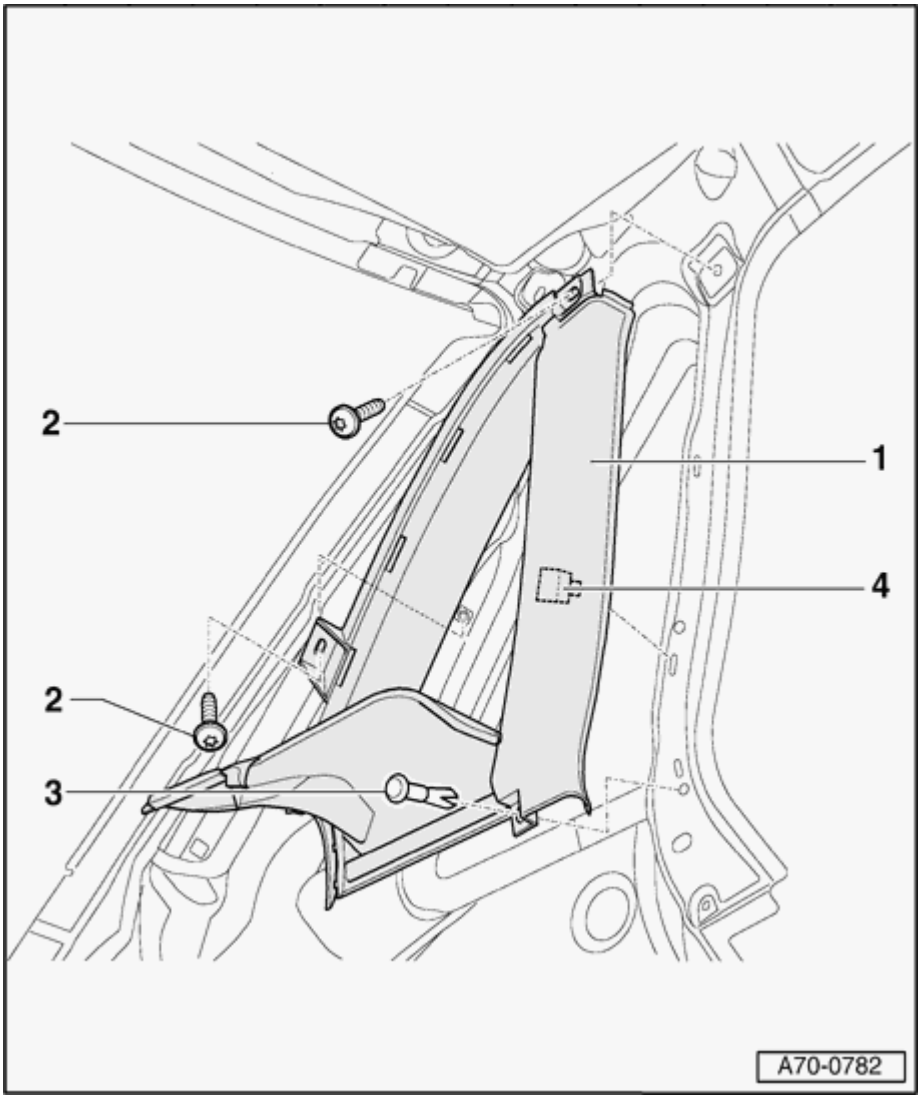


Fig. 312: C-Pillar Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - C-pillar trim

- Removal:

  - Remove - **D** - pillar trim --> **D-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove two bolts - **2** - on C-pillar trim - **1** - at top and bottom.
  - Remove side upholstery --> **Rear seat side padding, removing and installing**.
  - Remove clip - **3** - beneath side panel: Press a screwdriver between both parts of the clip and pull the upper part upward. Lower clip part compresses and can be loosened.
  - Unclip rear shelf at outer clip and raise it up.
  - Unclip C-pillar trim at clip - **4** - and remove it.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing:**

CAUTION: Always follow installation sequence for C-pillar trim.

- Raise rear shelf.
- Position trim - **1** - into mounts at rear shelf.
- Install clip - **4** - in its mount.
- Press lower part of clip - **3** - together and insert clip again.
- Reinstall two bolts - **2** -.

CAUTION: Ensure trim is held securely.

- Secure rear shelf and side upholstery.

2 - Screws, (2x)

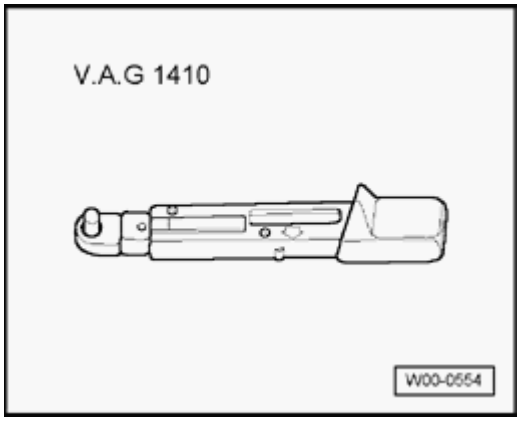
- Tightening torque 4 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

3 - Clip (Qty. 1)

4 - Clamp (Qty. 1)

D-pillar trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required



cardiagn.com

Fig. 313: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

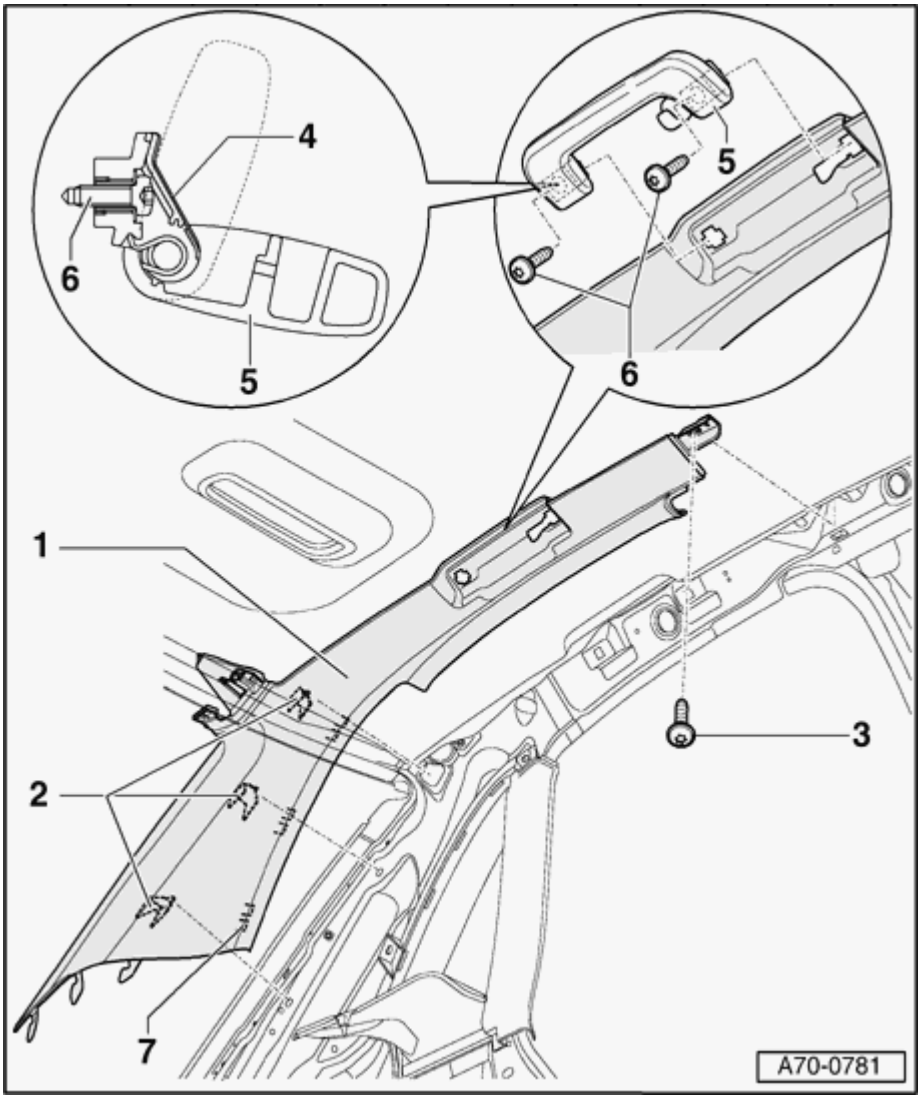


Fig. 314: D-Pillar Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Upper D-pillar trim

- Removal:

cardiagn.com

- Remove upper A-pillar trim --> **Upper A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
- Fold down roof grab handle - **5** -.
- Fold down lid - **4** - above bolts - **6** - on roof grab handle - **5** -.
- Remove two bolts - **6** -.

- Remove upper D-pillar trim - **1** - from upper B-pillar trim.
- Remove roof end --> **Roof end trim, removing and installing**.
- Unclip three clips - **2** - at D-pillar trim - **1** -.
- Remove upper D-pillar trim - **1** - from rear shelf.

- Remove D-pillar trim - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

CAUTION: Always follow installation sequence for D-pillar trim.

NOTE:

- **If the front and rear roof grab handles have been removed, make sure to use the roof grab handle with clothing hook when installing D-pillar trim.**

- Guide D-pillar trim - **1** - first to the rear into rear shelf.
- Guide hooks - **7** - into C-pillar trim slots.
- After installing, slide D-pillar trim - **1** - with front edge beneath upper B-pillar trim and move door seal accurately over trim edges again.
- Ensure that hooks of head-level airbag adapter and clip engage properly.

CAUTION: Ensure trim is held securely.

2 - Clamps (Qty. 3)

3 - Bolt (Qty. 1)

- Belongs to upper A-pillar trim, holds A-pillar trim and D-pillar trim together

4 - Roof grab handle cover

5 - Roof grab handle

6 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 4 Nm

cardiagn.com

- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

7 - Hook

Roof end trim, removing and installing

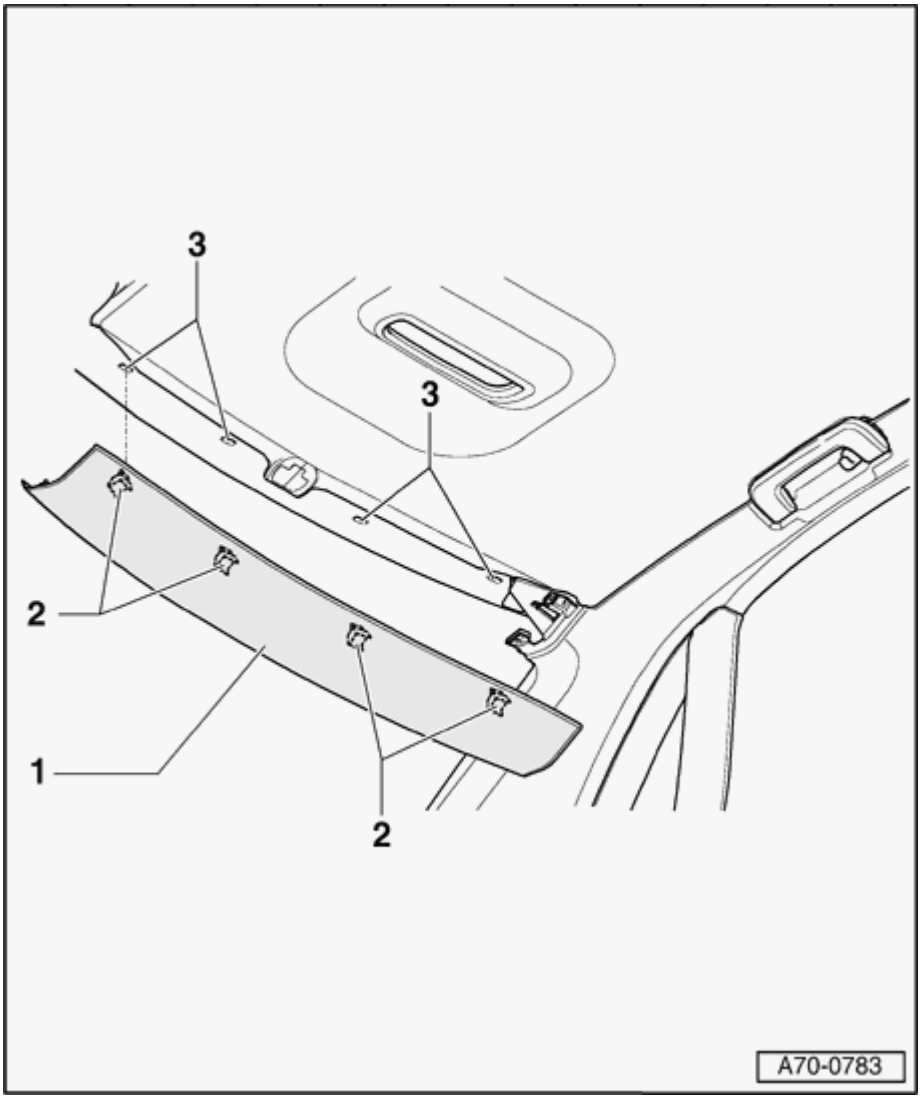


Fig. 315: Roof End Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Roof end trim

- Removal:

  - Unclip four clips - **2** - on roof end - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove roof end - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Clamps (Qty. 4)

3 - Mounts (Qty. 4)

Wheelhousing trim, removing and installing

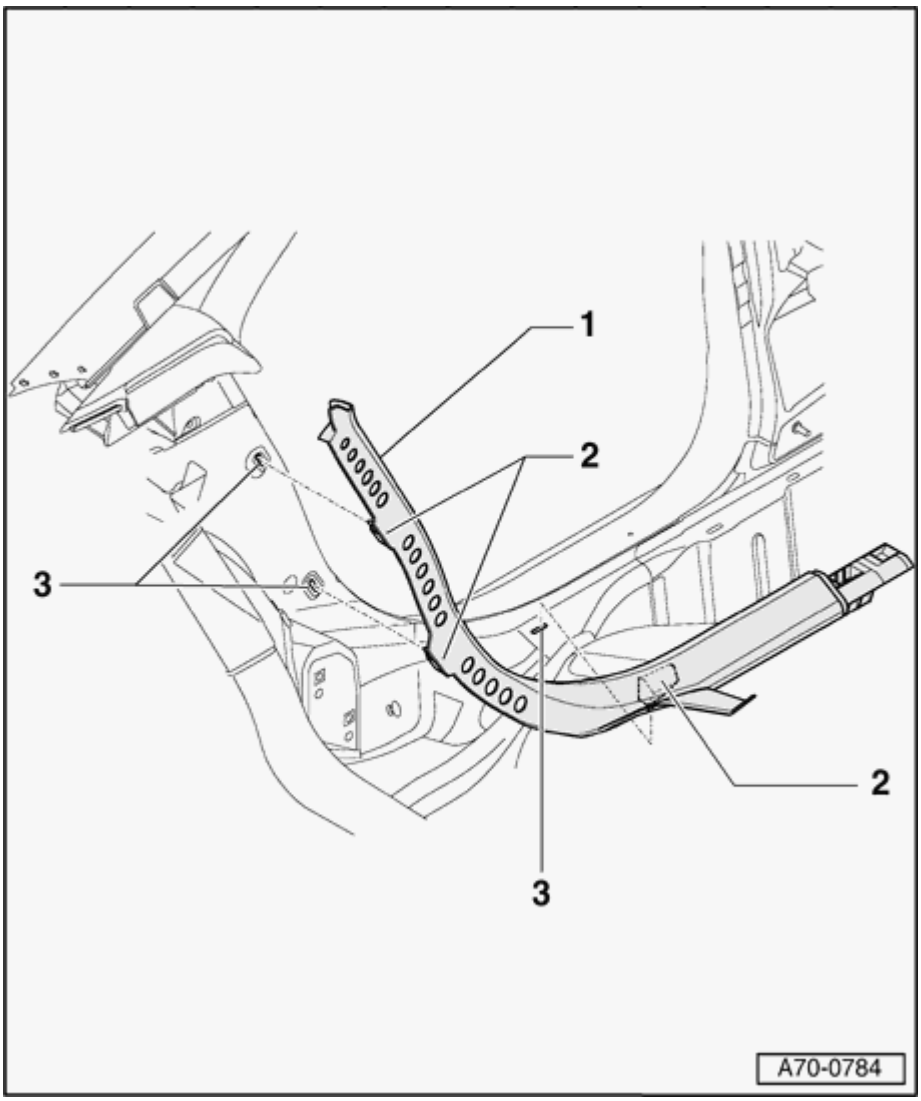


Fig. 316: Wheelhousing Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Wheel housing trim

cardiagn.com

- Removal:

  - Remove lower B-pillar trim --> **Lower B-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove C-pillar trim --> **C-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side upholstery --> **Rear seat side padding, removing and installing**.
  - Unclip three clips - **2** - from their mounts - **3** - and remove wheelhousing trim - **1** -.

- **Installing:**
- After assembling trim, make sure seal is properly fitted.

2 - Clamps (Qty. 3)

3 - Mounts (Qty. 3)

Rear shelf, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

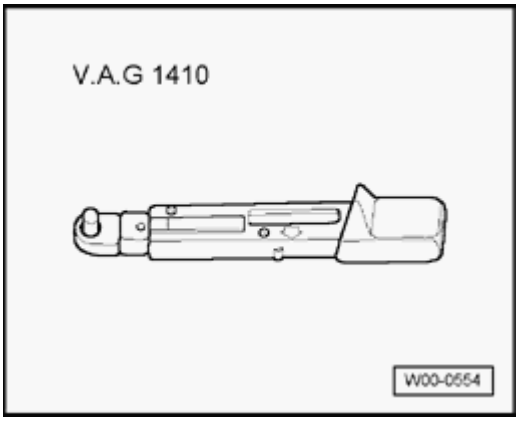


Fig. 317: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

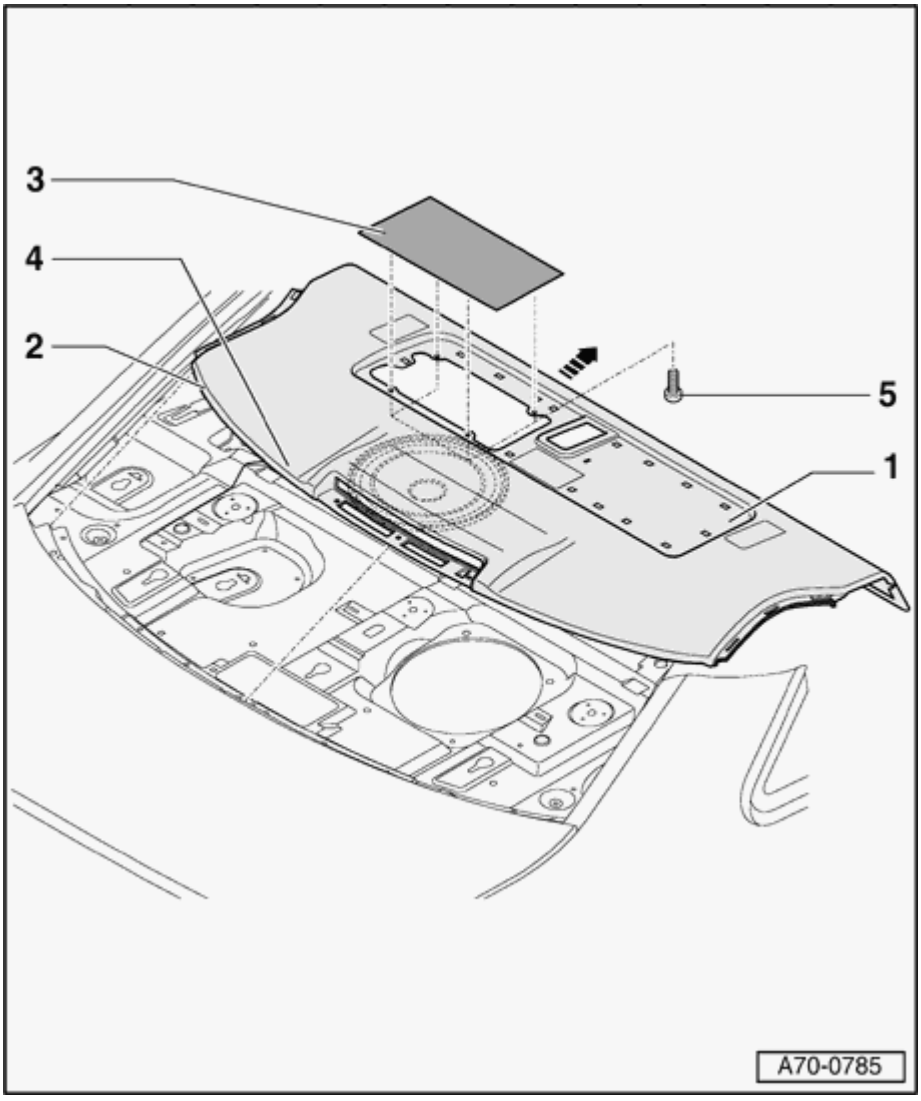


Fig. 318: Rear Shelf Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear shelf

- Removal:

  - Fold rear seat backrest down.

With fixed rear seat backrest:

  - Remove rear seat backrest --> **Fixed backrest, removing and installing**.
  - Remove D-pillar trim on left and right --> **D-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove left and right rear side bolsters --> **Rear seat side padding, removing and installing**.
  - Disconnect harness connector to 3rd brake light.

cardiagn.com

With fixed rear seat backrest:

- Loosen third belt downward and thread it through.

NOTE:

- **In the following, removal is described in three versions, depending on whether a rear shelf without fixtures, with speakers or with speakers and sun shade is to be removed. The following steps beneath "All" are again valid for all three variations.**

Version 1 removal: rear shelf without fixtures

- Proceed with removal as described under "All".

Version 2 removal: rear shelf with integrated speaker

- Detach speaker grill - **3** - from rear shelf - **1** -.
- Remove four bolts - **5** - between speakers and rear shelf - **1** -.

Version 3 removal: rear shelf with integrated speaker and sun shade

- Detach speaker grill - **3** - from rear shelf - **1** -.
- Remove two bolts - **5** - at front corners of speakers and one bolt - **5** - from below.
- Remove three bolts of sun shade - **4** - in luggage compartment (from below) **Electrical sun shade threaded connection in luggage compartment**
- Remove sun shade - **4** - toward front.

All:

- Move rear shelf - **1** - toward front in direction of arrow and disengage it from insertion edge - **2** -.
- Remove rear shelf - **1** - upward and toward front.

- **Installing:**

Depending on the version, installation is the reverse of removal.

2 - Rear shelf insertion edge

3 - Speaker (grille)

4 - Sun shade

5 - Bolts between speaker and rear shelf

- Depending on version, 3 or 4 bolts in varying positions

cardiagn.com

Electrical sun shade threaded connection in luggage compartment

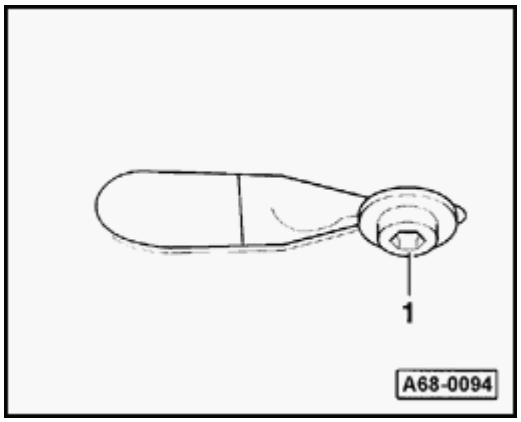


Fig. 319: Electrical Sun Shade Threaded Connection In Luggage Compartment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Loosen bolts - **1** - (3x).

Tightening torque: 4 Nm

Electrical sun shade on rear window, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **Rear shelf is depicted from rear.**

cardiagn.com

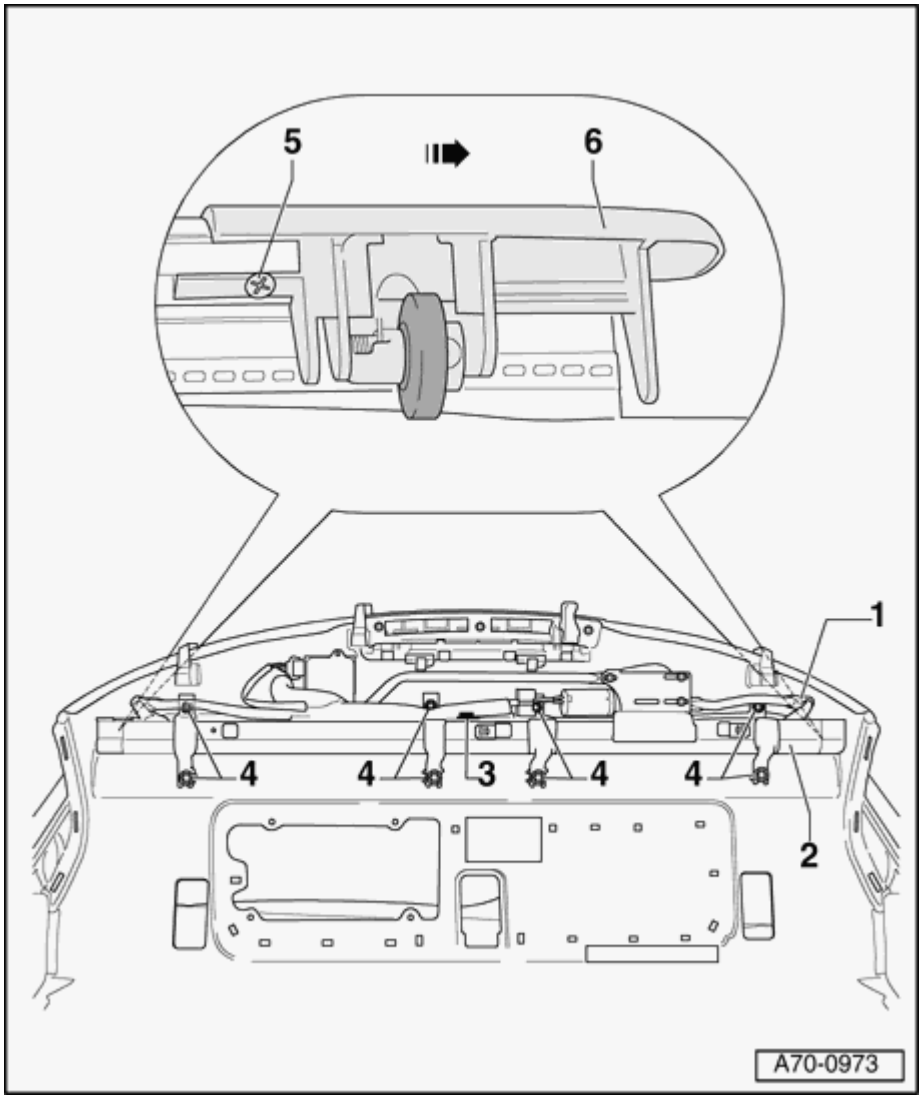


Fig. 320: Electrical Sun Shade On Rear Window Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear shelf

2 - Electrical sun shade

- **Removing:**

  - Remove rear shelf --> **Rear shelf, removing and installing**.
  - Pull out sun shade approx. 50 mm at covers with wheel - **6** -.
  - Clamp something between sun shade and rear shelf.
  - Loosen bolts - **5** - (2x).

  - Remove cover with wheel - **6** - in direction of arrow.

cardiagn.com

- Remove nut - **4** - (8x).
- Remove sun shade - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Connector

4 - Nut (8x)

5 - Screws, (2x)

6 - Cover with wheel

Rear lid trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

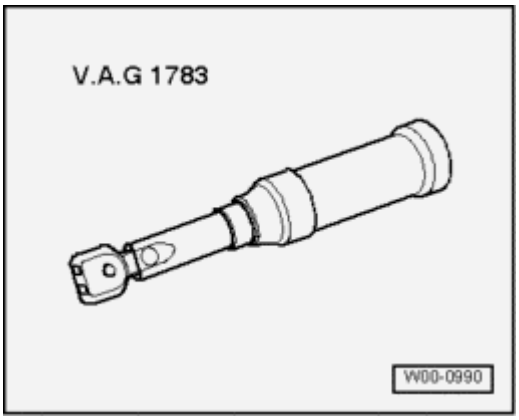


Fig. 321: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

cardiagn.com

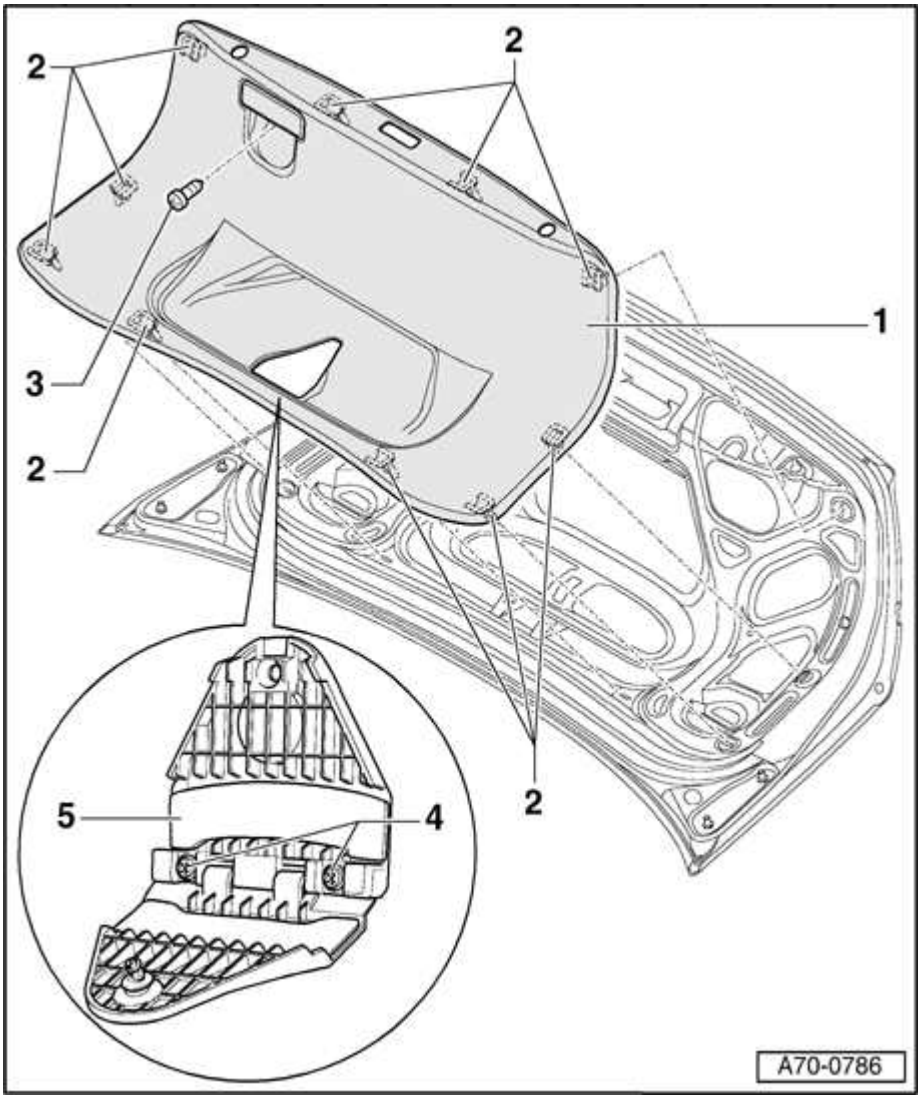


Fig. 322: Rear Lid Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear lid trim

- Removal:

  - Remove lock cover.
  - Remove the flocked screw - **3** - in handle.
  - Remove warning triangle.
  - Remove bolts - **4** - (Qty. 2).

  - Remove bracket for warning triangle - **5** -.

Vehicles with emergency release:

cardiagn.com

- Remove emergency release handle **Emergency release handle, removing**

All:

- Loosen ten clips - **2** - on rear lid trim and unclip them from below.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Clips (Qty. 10)

3 - Bolt (Qty. 1) in handle

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

4 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 2 Nm

5 - Warning triangle bracket

Emergency release handle, removing

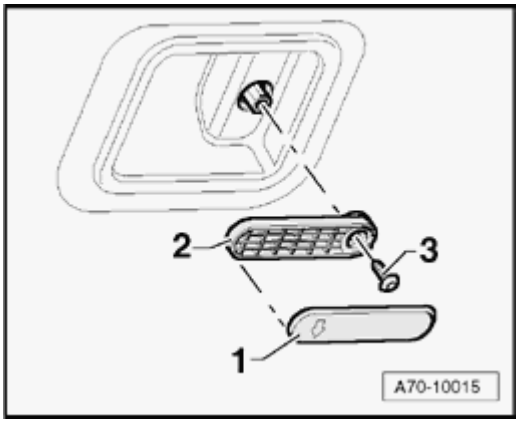


Fig. 323: Emergency Release Handle, Removing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Unclip cover - **1** -.
- Remove bolt - **3** -.
- Remove handle - **2** -.

Rear cross panel trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

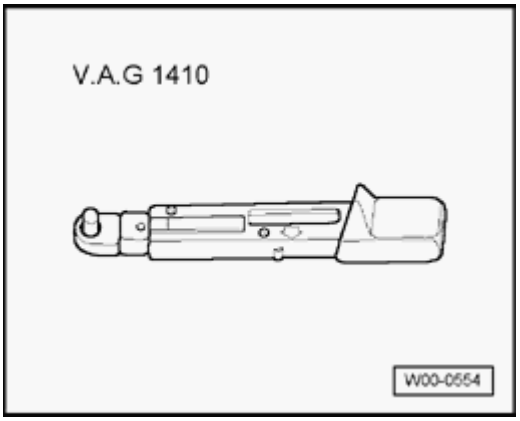
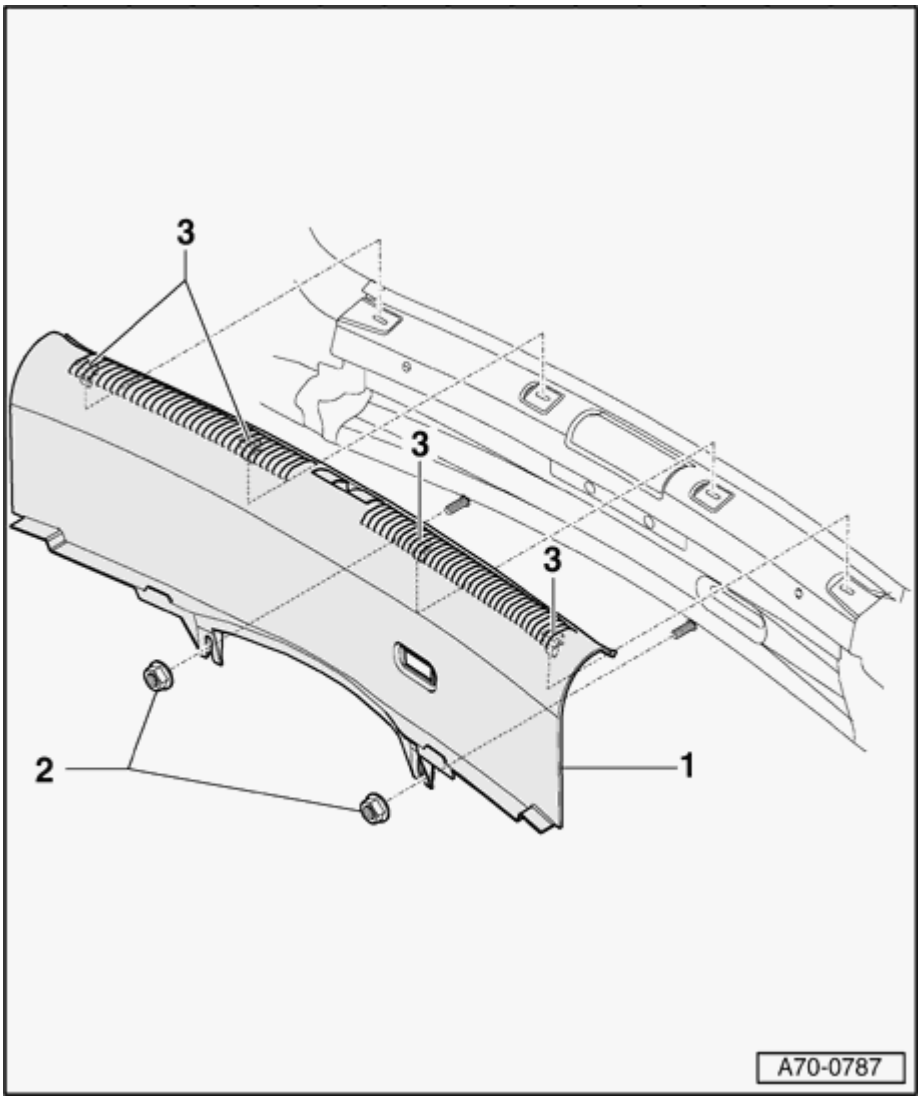


Fig. 324: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410



cardiagn.com

Fig. 325: Rear Cross Panel Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear cross panel trim

- Removal:

  - Remove floor covering from luggage compartment.
  - Loosen two nuts - **2** - on rear cross panel trim - **1** - behind spare wheel and remove nuts.
  - Remove luggage compartment lighting connector.
  - Unclip rear cross panel trim - **1** - upward from four metal clips - **3** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- After assembling trim, make sure seal is properly fitted.
- Reconnect lighting connector.

2 - Nuts (2x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

3 - Metal clips (Qty. 4)

Luggage compartment side trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

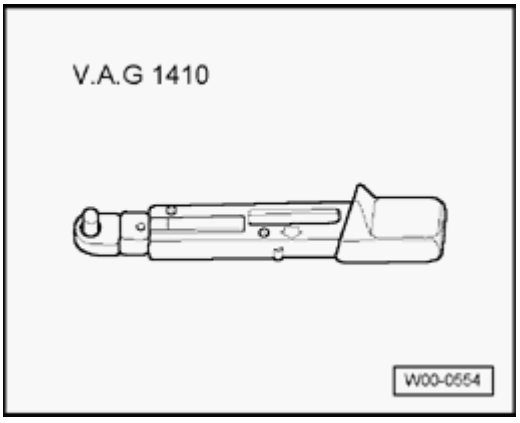


Fig. 326: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

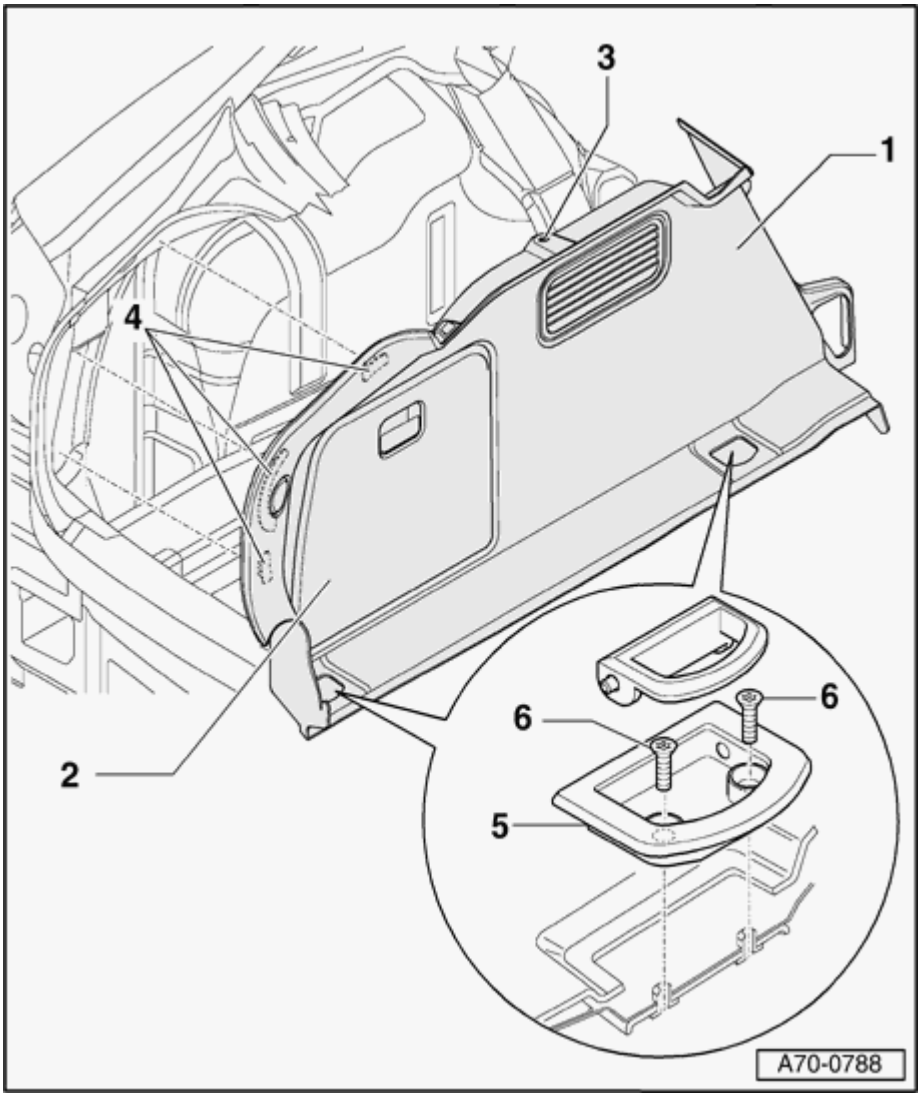


Fig. 327: Luggage Compartment Side Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Luggage compartment trim

- Removal:

  - Remove luggage compartment floor mat --> **Luggage compartment floor mat, removing and installing**.
  - Remove rear cross panel trim --> **Rear cross panel trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove rear seat backrest --> **Fixed backrest, removing and installing**.
  - Position tie-downs - **5** - upward (1x or 2x, depending on version).

  - Remove two Phillips-head screws - **6** - in tie-downs.
  - Remove clip - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

- Disengage clip - **3** - from tab.
- Disengage three clips - **4** -.

- If necessary, remove cover - **2** -.
- Pull off luggage compartment trim - **1** - upward.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- After installation has been completed, pull rear lid rubber over trim - **1** -.

2 - Cover

3 - Clip

4 - Clips (3x)

5 - Tie-downs

6 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 4 Nm

Base bracket, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

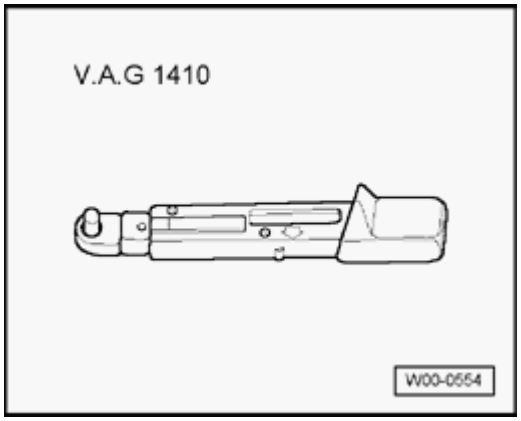


Fig. 328: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

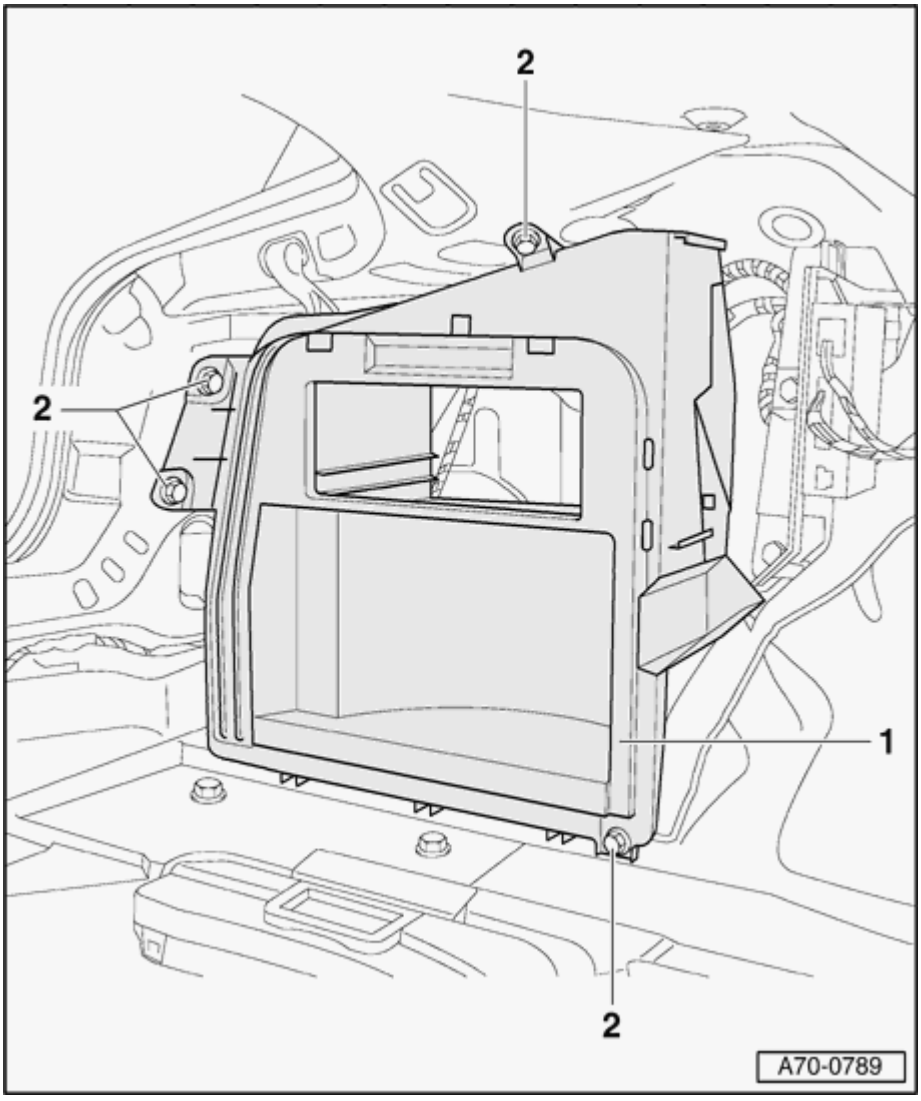


Fig. 329: Base Bracket Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Base bracket

- Removal:

  - Remove side trim luggage compartment on left side of vehicle --> **Luggage compartment side trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove four bolts - **2** - on base mount - **1** -.
  - Remove base mount - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

2 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 4 Nm

Rear panel trim, removing and installing

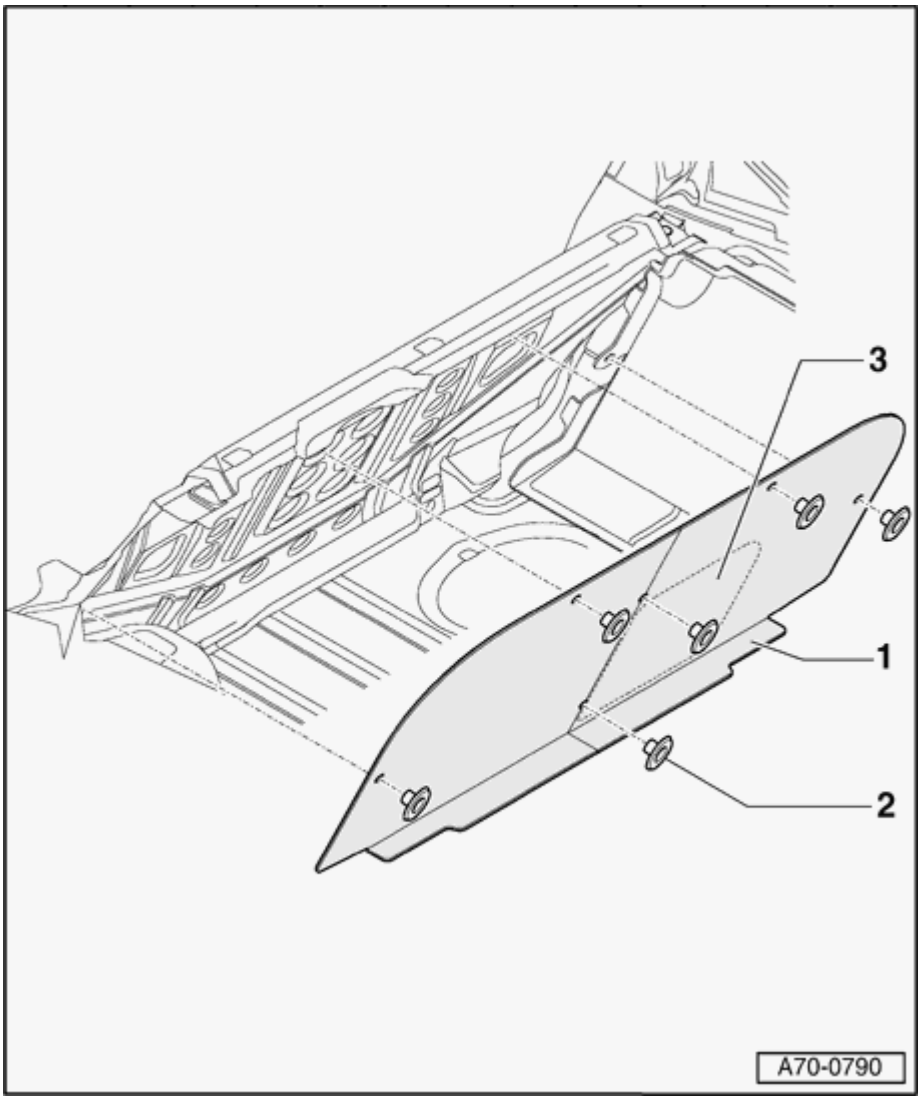


Fig. 330: Rear Panel Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear bulkhead trim panel

- Removal:

- If installed, remove ski sack --> **Ski sack, removing and installing (folding rear seat backrest)**.
- Remove luggage compartment floor covering.
- Remove clips - **2** - (5x in version with ski sack, 6x in version without ski sack).

cardiagn.com

- Remove rear panel trim - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Clips (Qty. 5 or 6)

3 - Ski bag (optional)

Rear panel sill, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

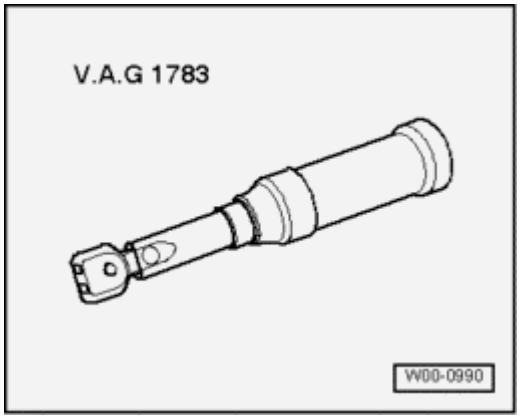


Fig. 331: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

cardiagn.com

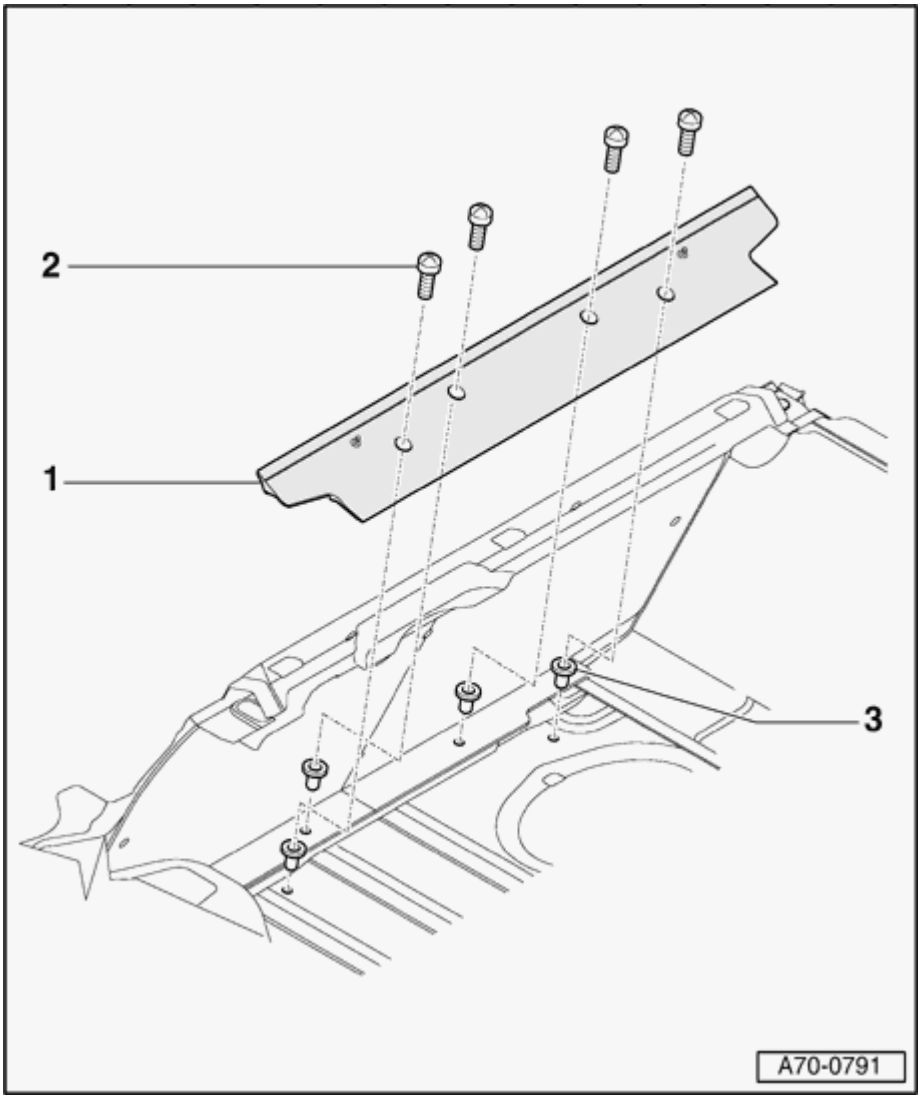


Fig. 332: Rear Panel Sill Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear panel sill

- Removal:

  - Remove rear panel trim --> **Rear panel trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove four bolts - **2** -.
  - Remove rear panel sill - **1** - upward.

- **Installing:**

  - Check whether the four expanding nuts - **3** - are seated properly and replace them if necessary.
  - Position rear panel sill with four holes on expanding nuts - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

- Thread in four bolts - **2** - through holes into expanding nuts - **3** -.

2 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 3 Nm

3 - Expanding nuts (4x)

Dirt tray, removing and installing

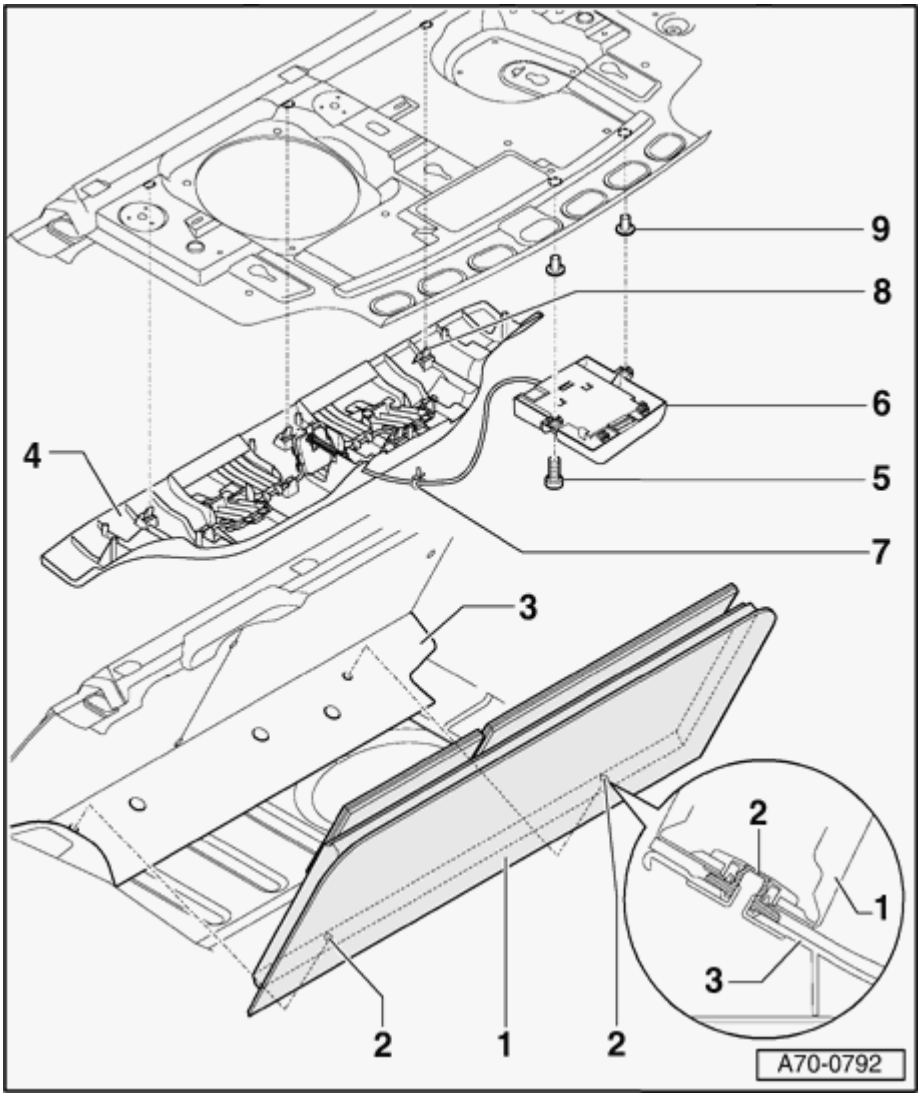


Fig. 333: Dirt Tray Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cargo tray (optional)

- Removal:

cardiagn.com

- Release cargo tray - **1** - from lock - **4** -.
- Unclip two clips - **2** - between cargo tray - **1** - and rear panel sill - **3** -.
- Remove cargo tray - **1** - upward.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Clips (Qty. 2)

3 - Rear panel sill

4 - Cargo tray retainer

- Removal:

- Remove bolt - **5** - on cargo tray handle - **6** -.
- Remove securing clip - **7** - of handle.
- Remove handle - **6** -.
- Loosen two expanding nuts - **9** -.

- Unclip four clips - **8** -.
- Remove cargo tray lock - **4** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

5 - Screw

6 - Grip

7 - Handle securing clip

8 - Clips (Qty. 4)

9 - Expanding nuts (Qty. 2)

Luggage compartment floor mat, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

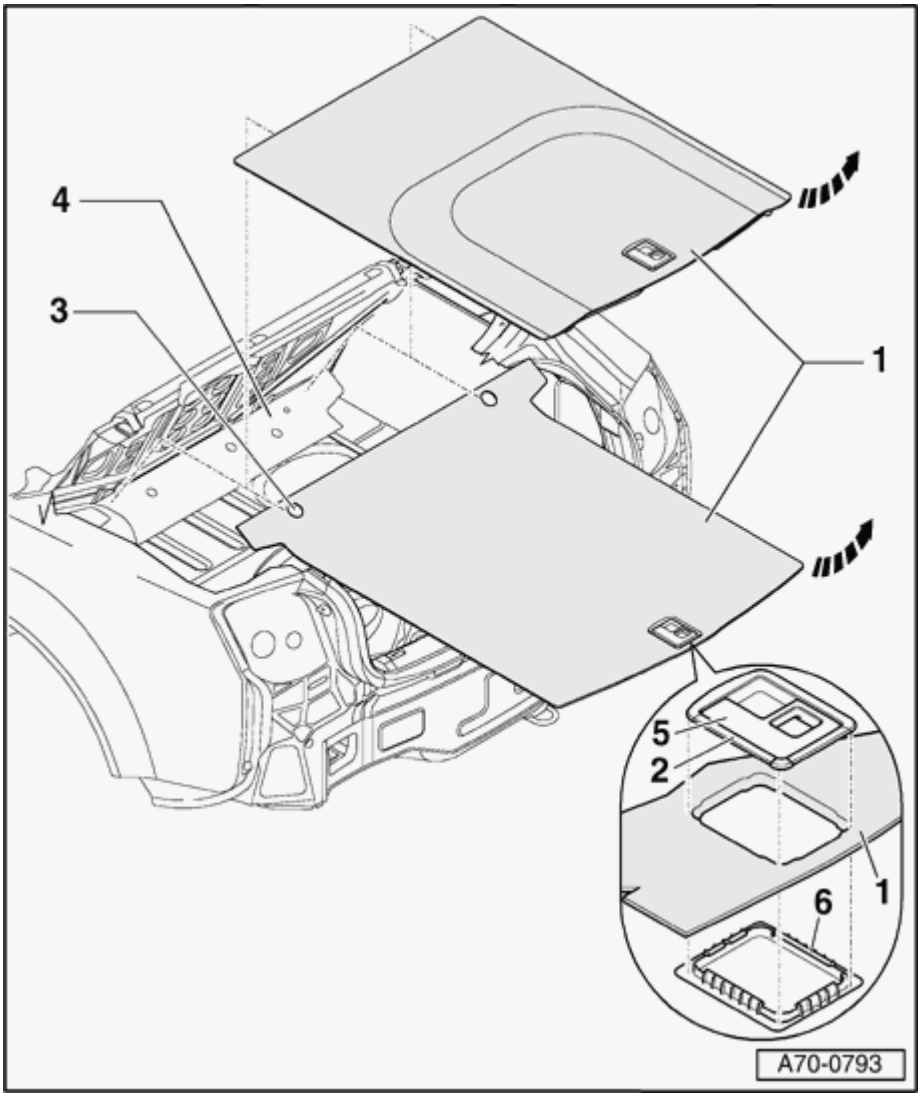


Fig. 334: Luggage Compartment Floor Mat Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- Removal:

Vehicles with cargo tray:

- Remove cargo tray --> **Dirt tray, removing and installing**.

All:

- Lift up handle - **5** - on holder - **2** -.
- Remove holder - **2** - at handle - **5** - upward from mount - **6** -.

cardiagn.com

Vehicles with cargo tray:

- Lift up luggage compartment floor mat from the rear and remove it at holes - **3** - from rear panel sill - **4** -.

All:

- Lift luggage compartment floor mat - **1** - in direction of arrow and remove it from vehicle.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Luggage compartment floor covering bracket

3 - Cargo tray cut-outs (optional)

4 - Rear panel sill (optional)

5 - Handle on luggage compartment floor covering bracket

6 - Luggage compartment floor covering bracket retainer

Floor covering, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

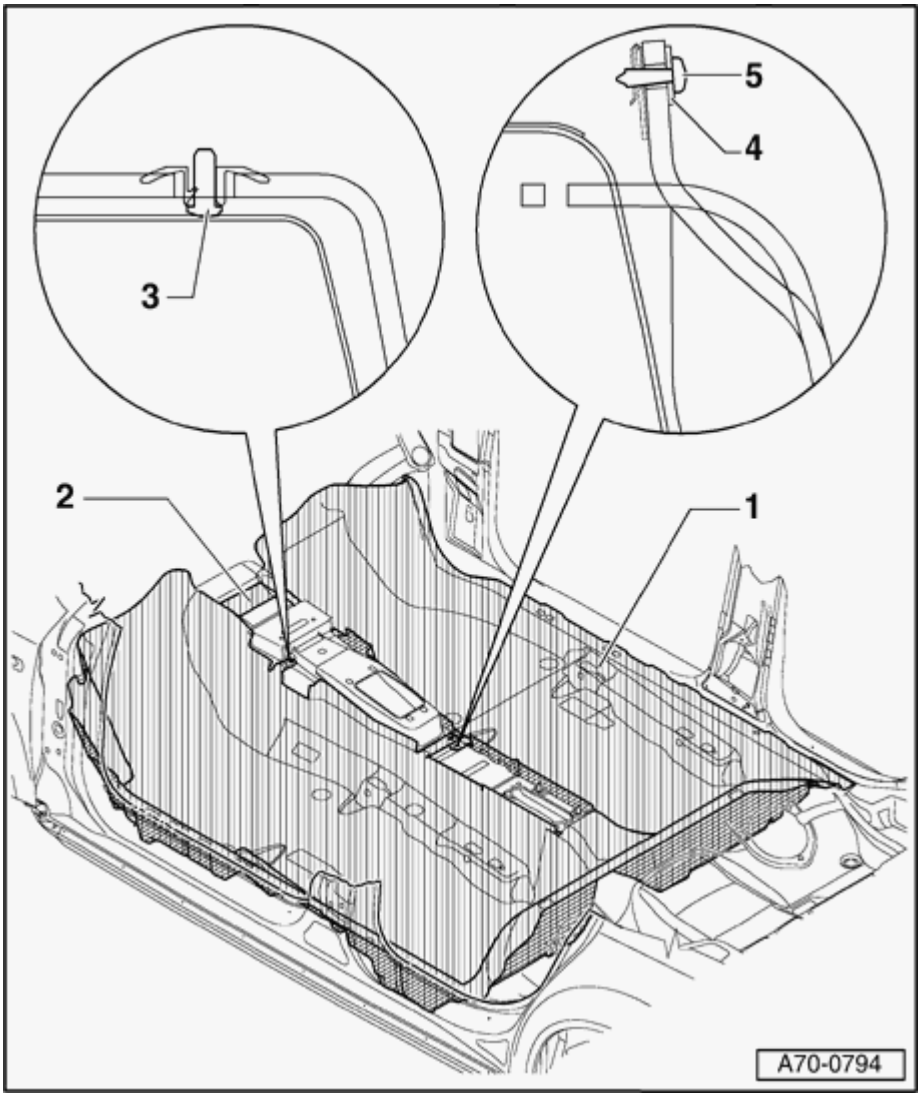


Fig. 335: Floor Covering Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 -

- Removal:

  - Remove right and left front seats --> **Front seats (standard seat) - vehicles up to 10.04**.
  - Remove rear seat bench: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles up to 10.04** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.
  - Remove lower A-pillar trim on left and right --> **Lower A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove lower B-pillar trim on left and right --> **Lower B-pillar trim, removing and installing**.

  - Remove driver-side foot rest.
  - Remove center console --> **Center console, removing and installing (vehicles up to 10.04)**.

cardiagn.com

- Loosen wiring harness under center console.
- Remove buffer pad - **4** - beneath center console and remove bolt - **5** -.

- Remove wiring harness from vehicle.
- Remove air ducts to center console.
- Remove bolt - **3** - on front of carpet tab in footwell.
- Fold floor mat lengthwise and remove it from vehicle.

- **Installing:**

NOTE:

- **Floor covering rips easily from cut-outs. Carefully install floor covering in vehicle.**

- Fold new floor mat lengthwise and lay it in vehicle.
- Before installing a new floor mat - **1** - , remove transport web - **2** -.
- Install floor mat in reverse order of removal.

2 - Transport brace

3 - Screw

4 - Rubber plug

5 - Screw

TRIM, AVANT

C-pillar trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

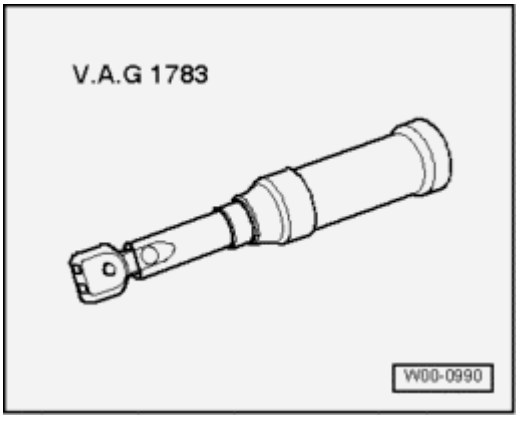


Fig. 336: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

NOTE:

- **Replace self-locking screws.**

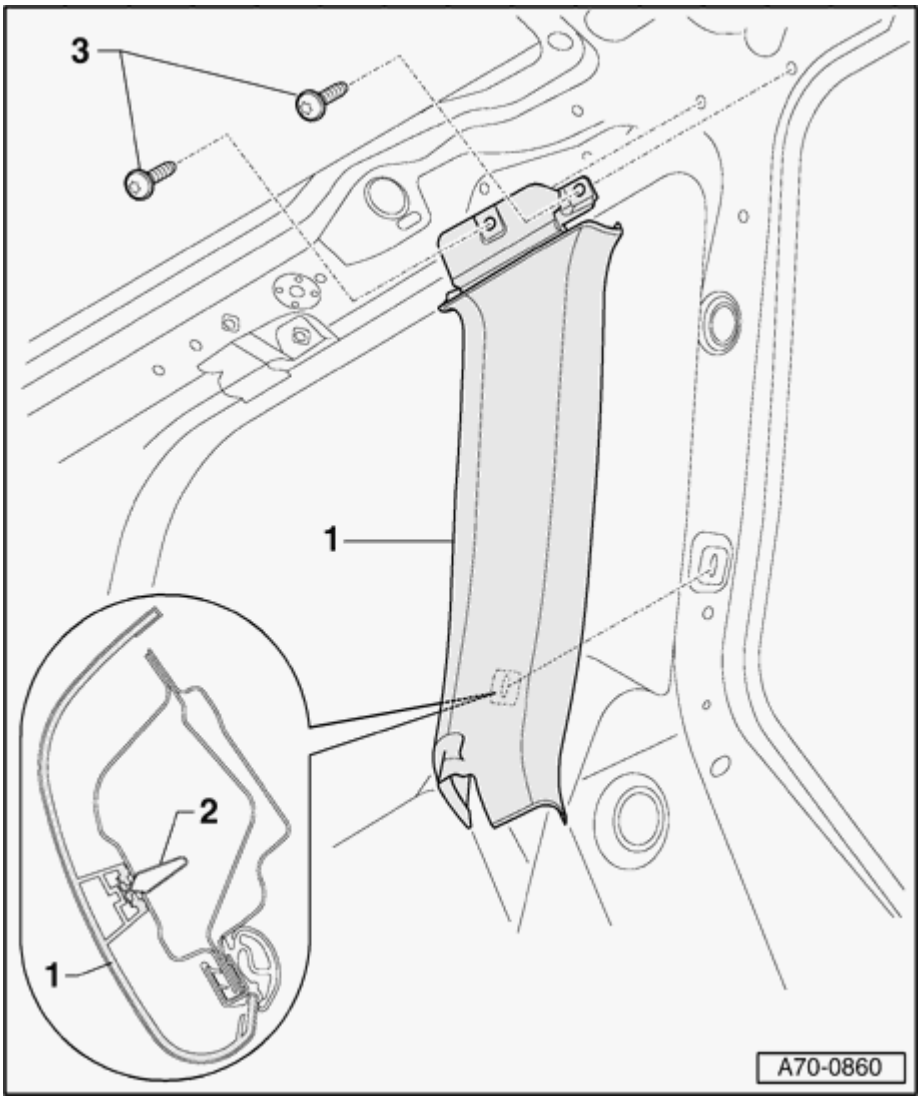


Fig. 337: C-Pillar Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - C-pillar trim

- Removal:

cardiagn.com

- Remove rear seat side panel --> **Rear seat side padding, removing and installing** or rear side airbag --> **Rear side airbag (foldable backrest), removing and installing**.
- Remove luggage compartment side trim --> **Side luggage compartment trim**.
- Remove cover above rear doors --> **Trim above rear door, removing and installing**.
- Remove rear belt guide --> **Right and left rear belt guide piece, removing and installing**.
- Remove bolts for head-level airbag in rear area --> **Side curtain airbag (Avant), removing and installing**.
- Remove bolts - **3** -.
- Remove trim - **1** - , unclip spring clip - **2** - to do so.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Secure head-level airbag with new bolts --> **Side curtain airbag (Avant), removing and installing**.
- Sealing rubber in rear side door must be laid over C-pillar trim.

CAUTION: Ensure trim is held securely.

2 - Spring clamp

3 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

Trim above rear door, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

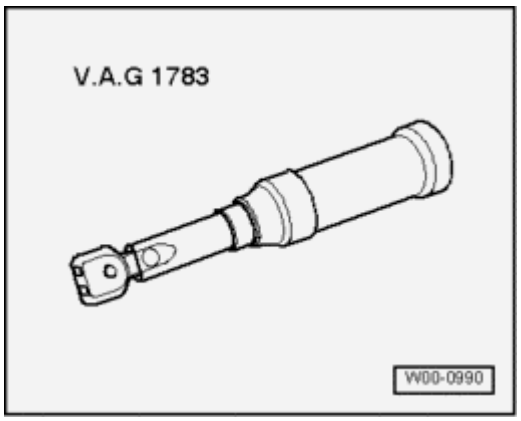


Fig. 338: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

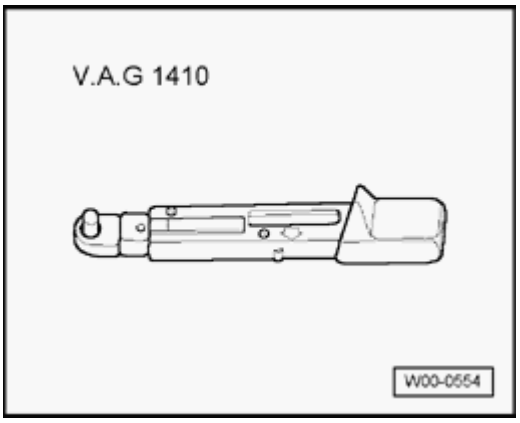


Fig. 339: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

NOTE:

- **Replace self-locking screws.**

cardiagn.com

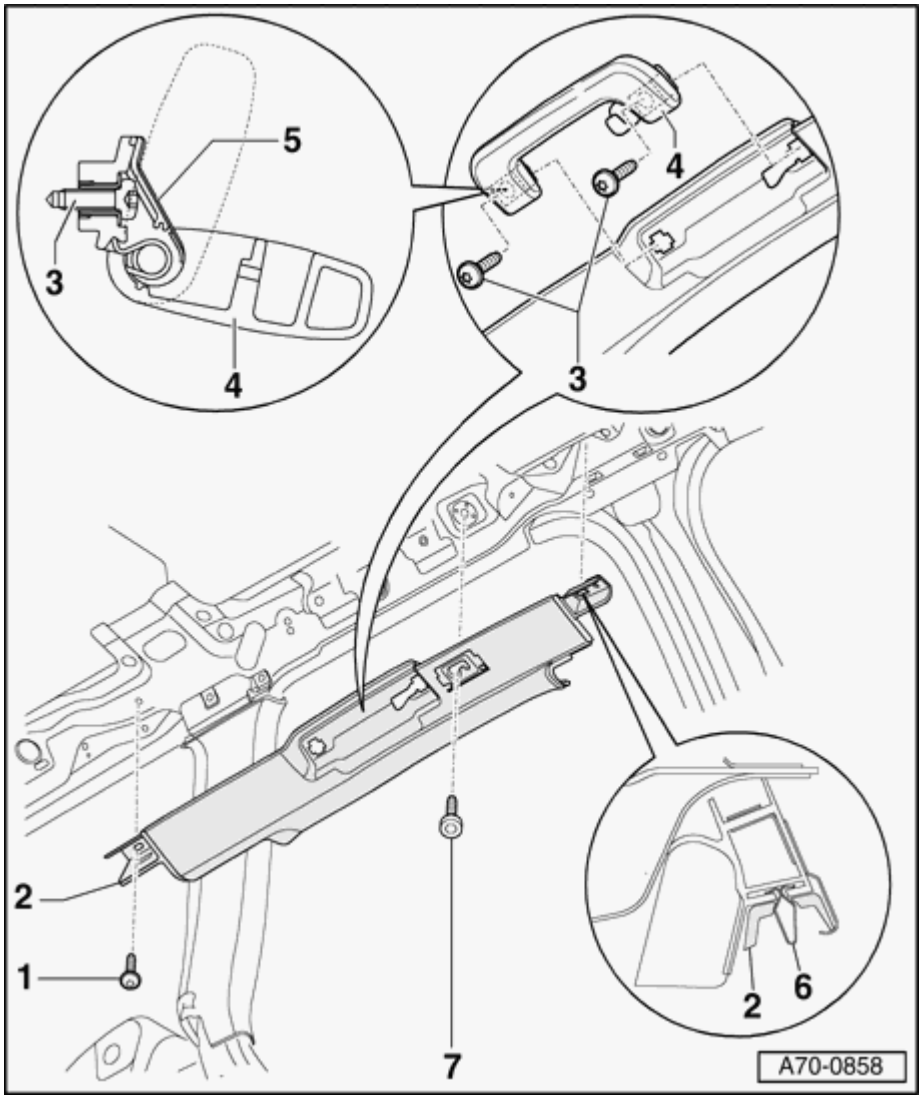


Fig. 340: Trim Above Rear Door Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Screw

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

2 - Cover

- Removal:

- Remove upper A-pillar trim --> **Upper A-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove D-pillar trim --> **D-pillar trim, removing and installing**.
- Fold down roof grab handle - **4** -.
- Open cover - **5** - over bolts and remove bolts - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolt - **1** -.
- Remove bolt - **7** - by sliding covering plate in eyelets to the rear **Partition grille lifting eyes, loosening**.
- Remove cover - **2** - , unclip spring clip - **6** - to do so.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Sealing rubber in rear side door must be laid over C-pillar trim.

NOTE:

- **If the front and rear roof grab handles have been removed, make sure that the roof grab handle with clothing hook in rear is installed.**

CAUTION: Ensure trim is held securely.

3 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

4 - Roof grab handle

5 - Cover

- For bolts

6 - Spring clamp

7 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 9 Nm.
- To loosen and tighten, push covering plate in eyelet to the rear **Partition grille lifting eyes, loosening**

Partition grille lifting eyes, loosening

cardiagn.com

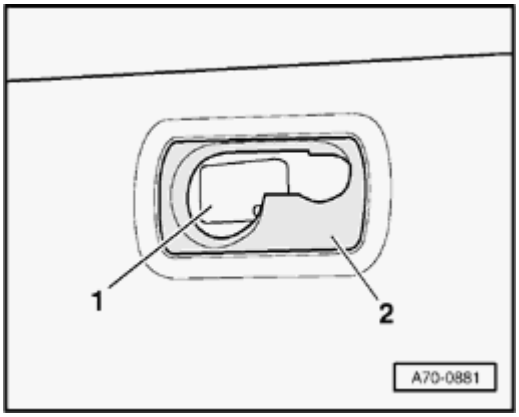


Fig. 341: Pressing Covering Plate In Partition Grill Eyelet
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press covering plate - **1** - in partition grill eyelet - **2** - to the rear and remove the bolt lying behind it.

D-pillar trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

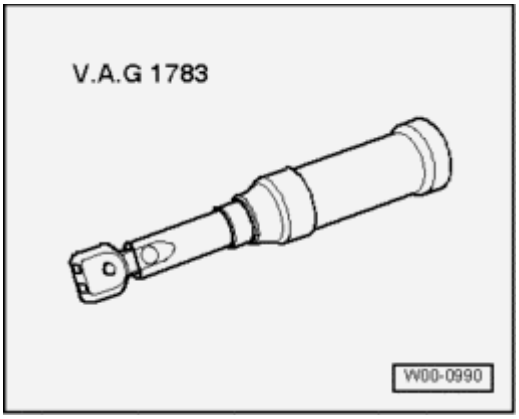


Fig. 342: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

cardiagn.com

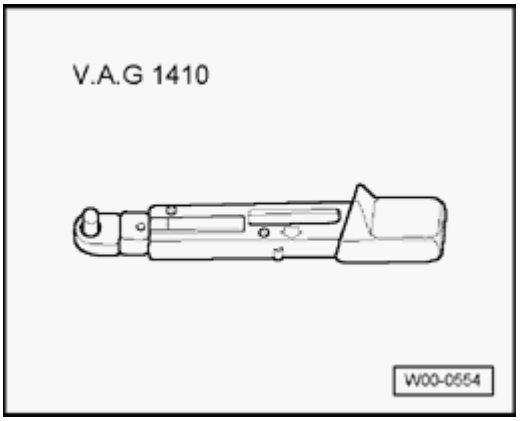


Fig. 343: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

CAUTION: Note safety precautions for working on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions and side curtain airbags --> Side curtain airbag, additional safety precautions.

NOTE:

- **Replace self-locking screws.**

cardiagn.com

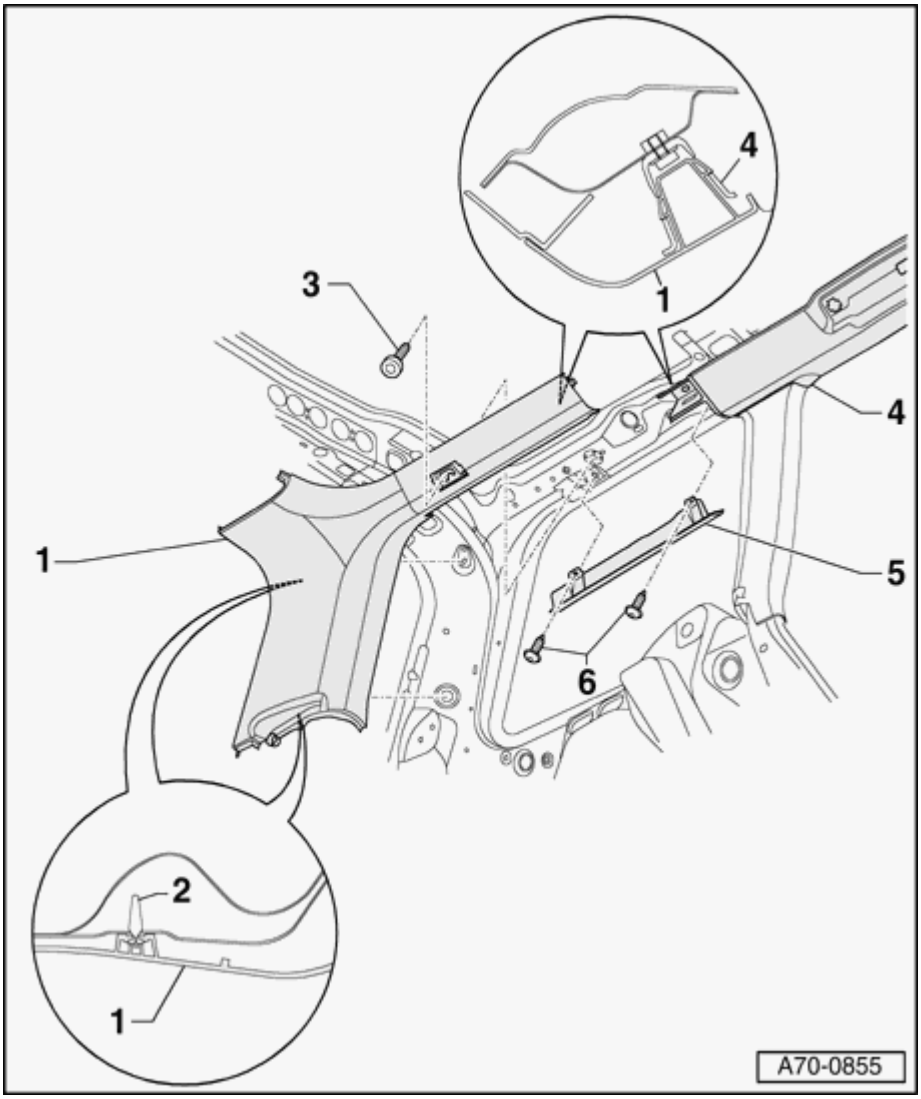


Fig. 344: D-Pillar Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - D-pillar trim

- Removal:

  - Remove roof panel trim --> **Roof panel trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove bolt - **3** - by sliding covering plate in eyelets to the rear **Partition grille lifting eyes, loosening**.
  - Release only the rear edge of luggage compartment side trim --> **Side luggage compartment trim**.
  - Unclip D-pillar trim - **1** - from top downward.

  - Remove D-pillar trim upward out of luggage compartment side trim.
  - Remove D-pillar trim to the rear from trim - **4** - above rear door.
  - Remove bolts for head-level airbag in rear area --> **Side curtain airbag (Avant), removing and**

cardiagn.com

installing.

- Remove bolts - **6** -.
- Remove trim - **5** - above rear side window.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Secure head-level airbag with new bolts --> **Side curtain airbag (Avant), removing and installing**.
- Slide D-pillar trim into mount for cover - **4** - above rear doors.
- Slide D-pillar trim behind luggage compartment side trim.
- Insert trim - **1** - into mounts using spring clips - **2** -.
- Rear lid rubber must be laid over D-pillar trim.

CAUTION: Ensure trim is held securely.

2 - Spring clamp

3 - Screw

- Tightening torque 9 Nm
- To loosen and tighten, push covering plate in eyelet to the rear **Partition grille lifting eyes, loosening**

4 - Cover over rear door

5 - Cover over rear side window

6 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 3.5 Nm

Partition grille lifting eyes, loosening

cardiagn.com

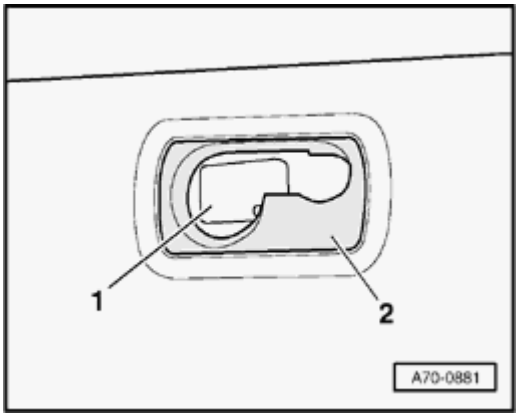


Fig. 345: Pressing Covering Plate In Partition Grill Eyelet
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press covering plate - **1** - in partition grill eyelet - **2** - to the rear and remove the bolt lying behind it.

Roof panel trim, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

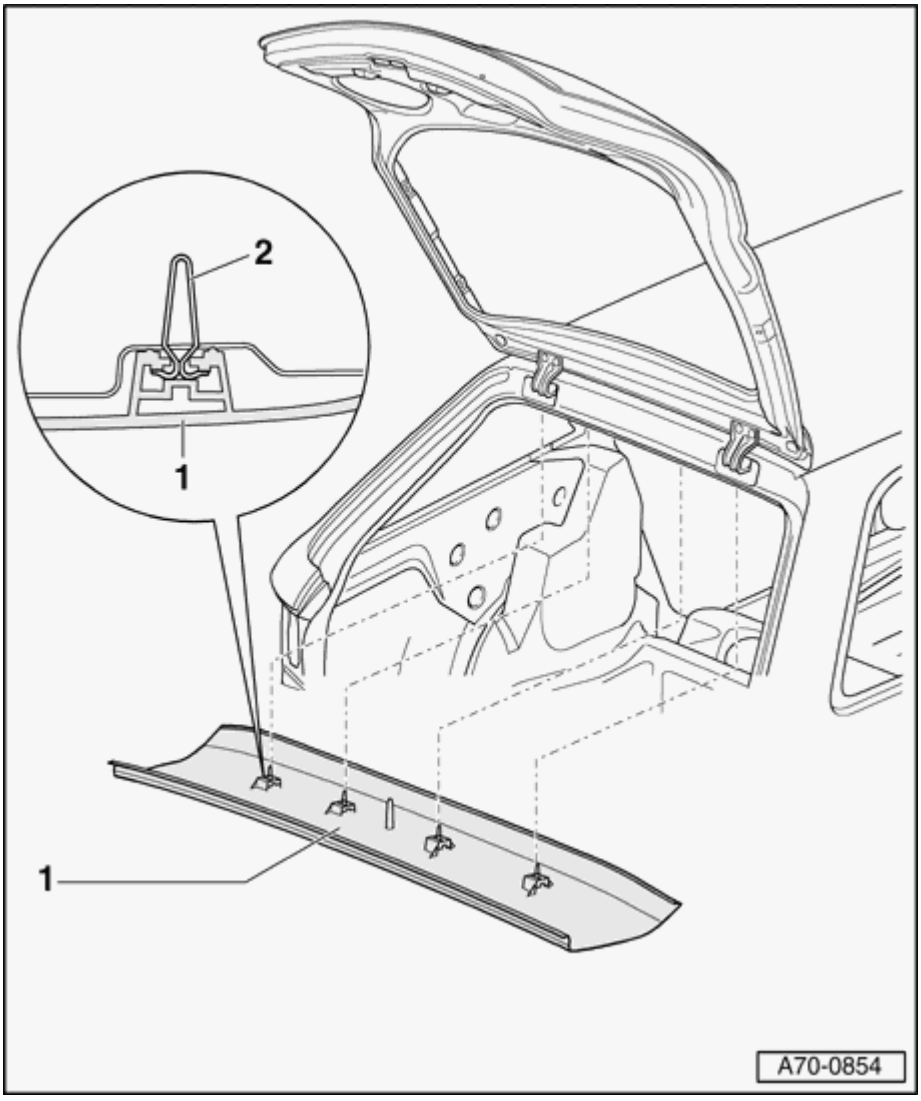


Fig. 346: Roof Panel Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Roof panel trim

- Removal:
  - Unclip four clips - **2** - on body.
  - Remove roof end trim - **1** -.
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Rear lid rubber must be laid over roof end trim.

cardiagn.com

CAUTION: Ensure trim is held securely.

2 - Spring clips (Qty. 4)

Rear lid trim, removing and installing

Lower lid trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

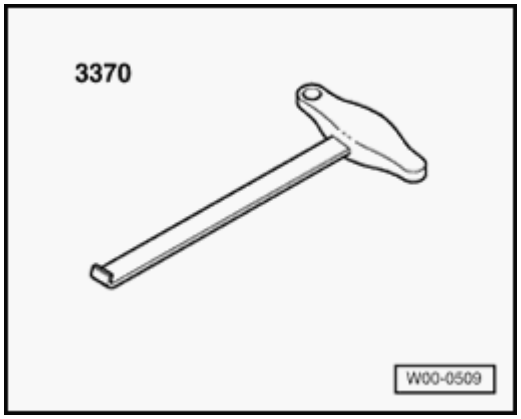


Fig. 347: Identifying Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special hook 3370

cardiagn.com

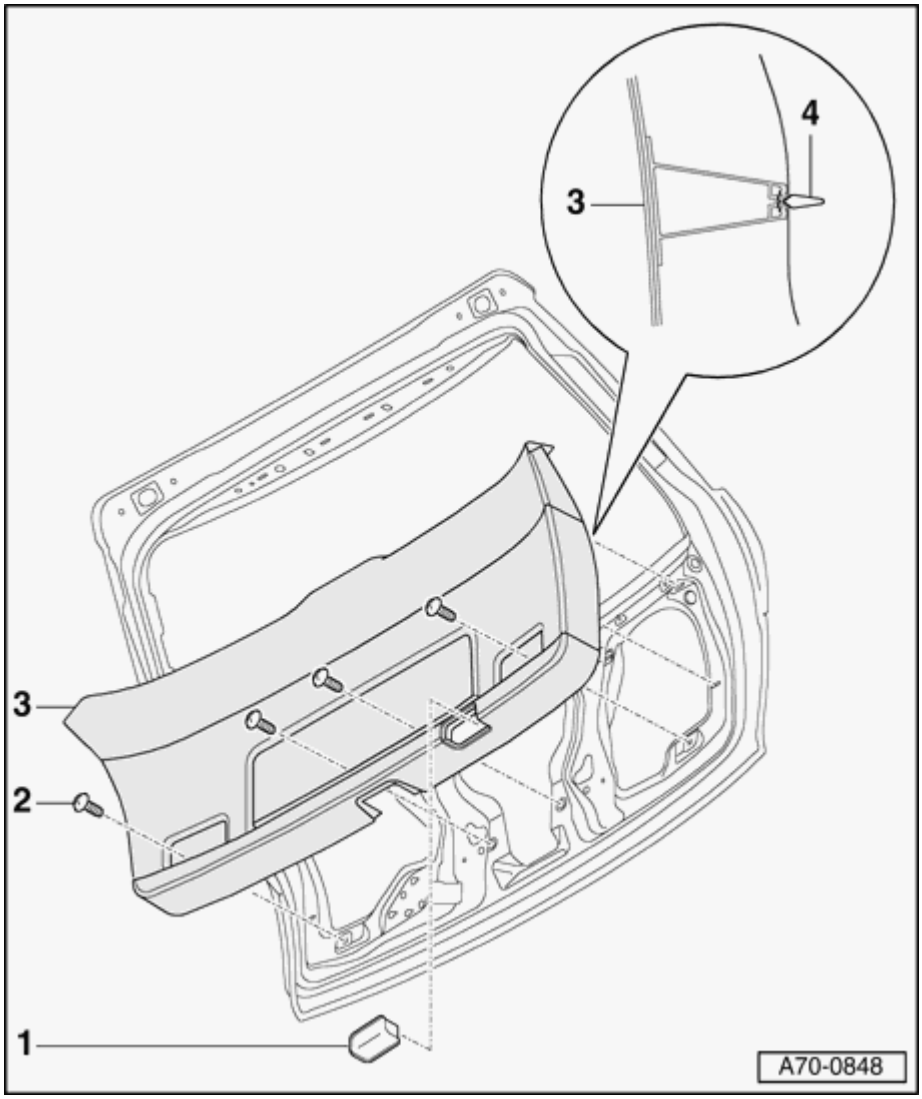


Fig. 348: Lower Lid Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Luggage compartment light

- Removing and installing -->
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT**
  - **96 LIGHTS, SWITCHES - INTERIOR, ANTI-THEFT** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET

2 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 1.5 Nm

3 - Lower rear lid trim

cardiagn.com

- Removal:

  - Open warning triangle cover and remove triangle.
  - Remove screws - **2** - (Qty. 4).
  - Disengage locking mechanism on left and right at top of trim using special hook 3370 **Lower trim, disengaging from retainer**.
  - Carefully remove spring clips - **4** - for lower trim on left and right from rear lid.
  - Reach between trim and rear lid and disengage four more spring clips - **4** -.
  - Remove trim.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

  - Make sure that the trim engages into plate on lid lock.

CAUTION: Ensure trim is held securely.

4 - Spring clips (Qty. 6)

Lower trim, disengaging from retainer

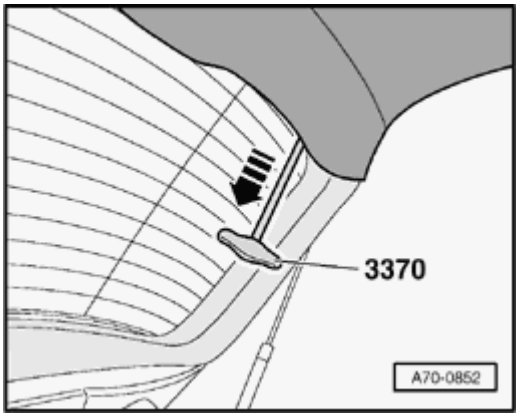


Fig. 349: Lower Trim, Disengaging From Retainer
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

  - Disengage locking mechanism on left and right at top of trim using special hook 3370 - **arrow** -.

Upper lid trim, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

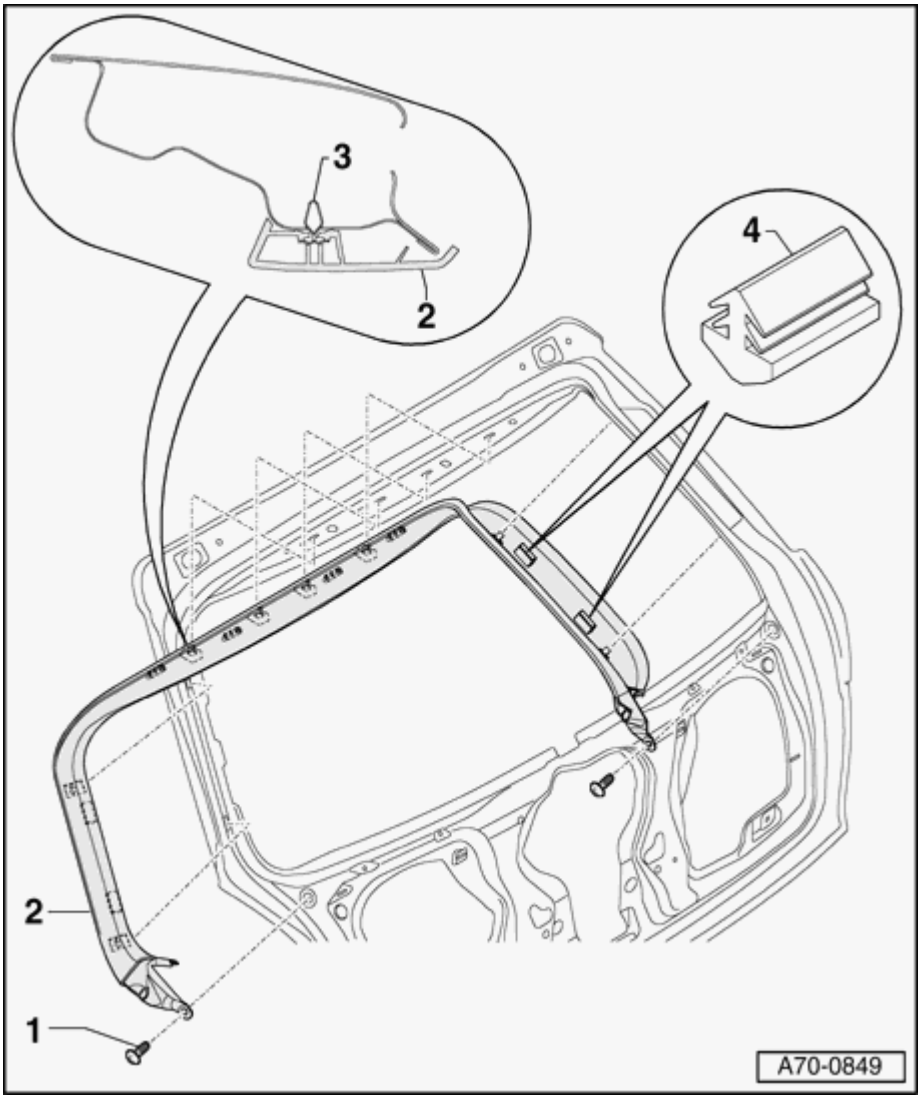


Fig. 350: Upper Lid Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 1.5 Nm

2 - Upper rear lid trim

- Removal:

  - Remove lower rear lid trim.
  - Remove bolts - **1** - (2x).
  - Press spring clamps on trim sides off of rear lid (Qty. 4).
  - Remove spring clips - **3** - on upper trim from rear lid (4x).

cardiagn.com

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Before installing upper lid trim - **2** - , make sure rubber buffers - **4** - (8x) are installed.
- Guide upper rear lid trim behind rear lid side window frames.
- Clip in trim at top first and then at sides.

3 - Spring clips (Qty. 8)

4 - Rubber buffer (Qty. 8)

Side luggage compartment trim

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

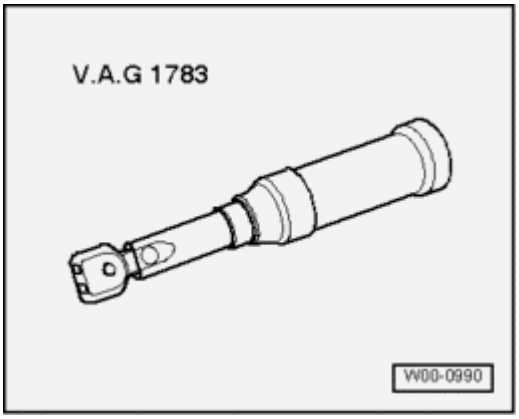


Fig. 351: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

cardiagn.com

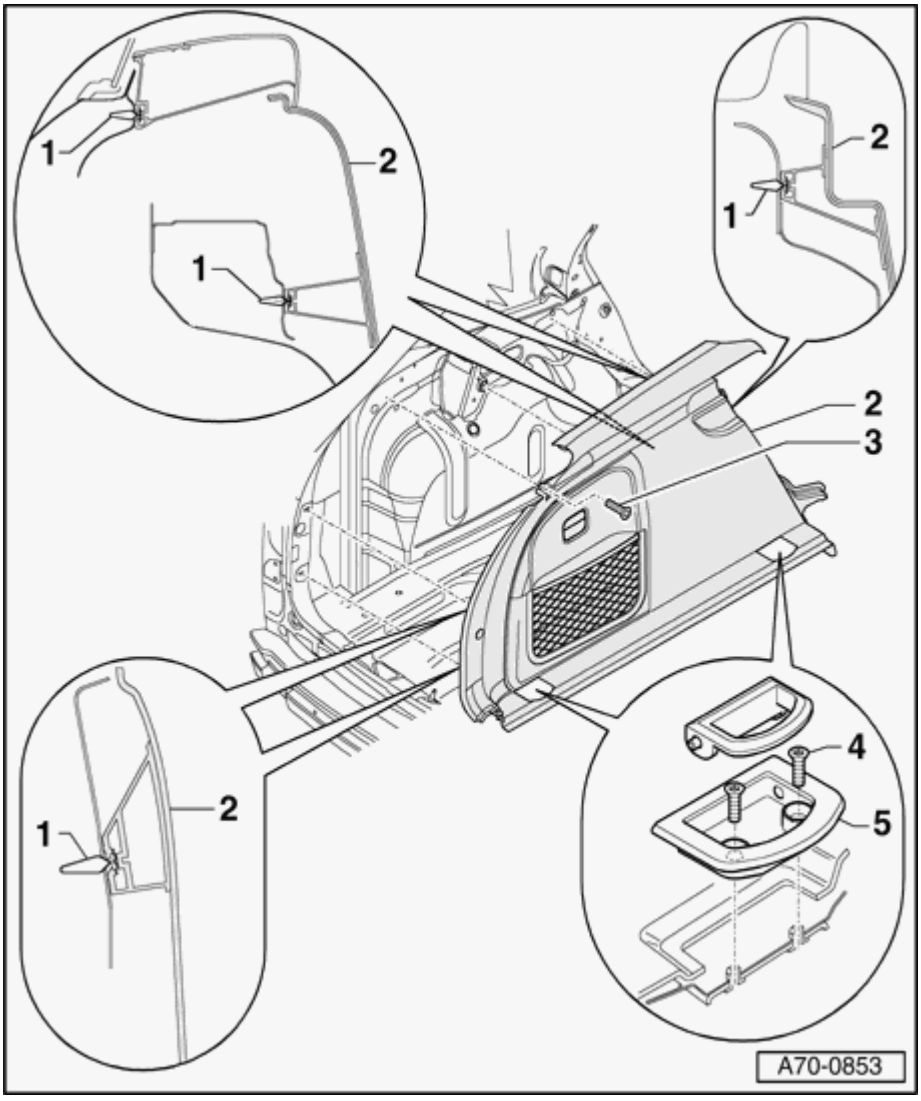


Fig. 352: Side Luggage Compartment Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Spring clamp

2 - Luggage compartment trim

- Removal:

  - Remove rear seat side panel --> **Rear seat side padding, removing and installing** or rear side airbag --> **Rear side airbag (foldable backrest), removing and installing**.
  - Disengage luggage compartment floor at cargo tray and remove.
  - Remove rear cross panel trim --> **Rear cross panel trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove bolts - **4** - (4x) for tie-downs - **5** -.
  - Remove bolt - **3** - (1x).

cardiagn.com

- Unclip trim - spring clips - **1** - (4x).
- Disconnect rear socket electrical connector (right trim).

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Rear lid rubber must be laid over roof end trim.

CAUTION: Ensure trim is held securely.

3 - Screw

- Tightening torque 1.8 Nm

4 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 4 Nm

5 - Tie-downs

Base bracket, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

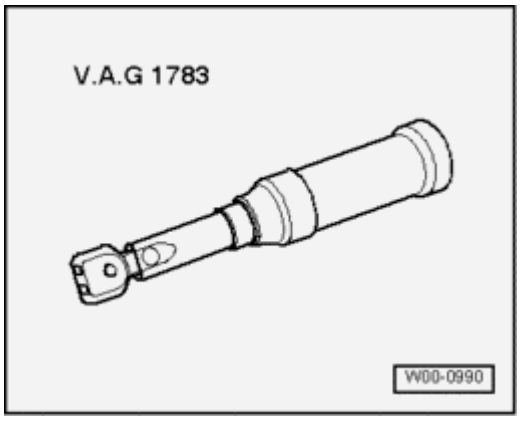


Fig. 353: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

cardiagn.com

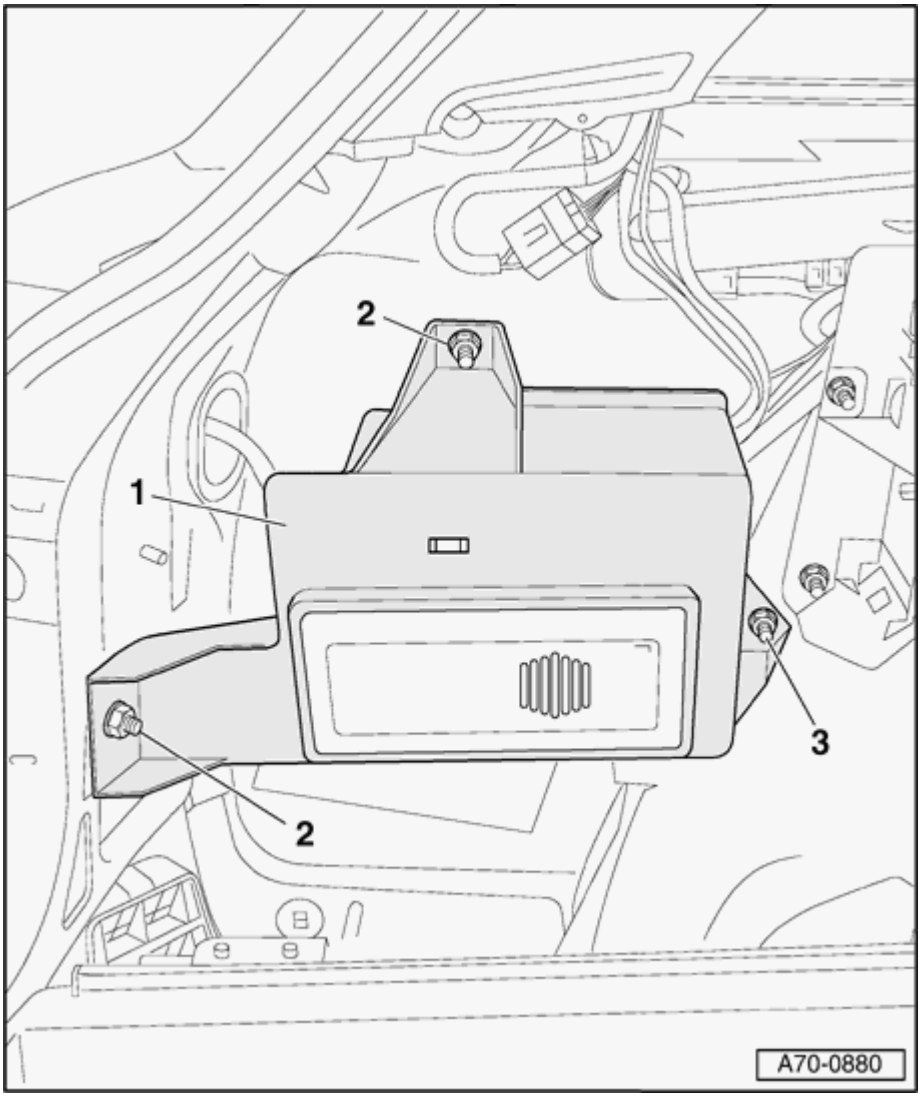


Fig. 354: Base Bracket Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Base bracket

- Removal:
  - Remove side trim luggage compartment on left side of vehicle --> **Side luggage compartment trim**.
  - Remove four bolts - **2** - on base mount - **1** -.
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Nuts (2x)

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

3 - Nut

- Tightening torque 3 Nm

Rear power outlet, removing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

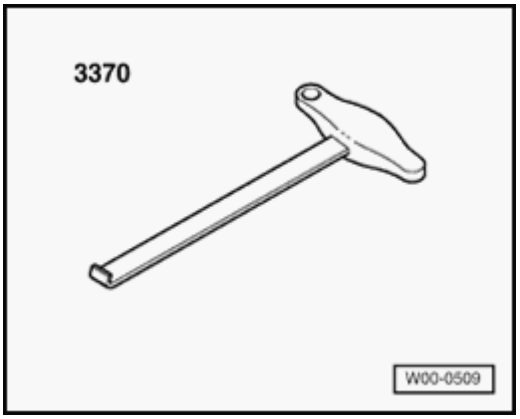


Fig. 355: Identifying Special Hook 3370
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special hook 3370

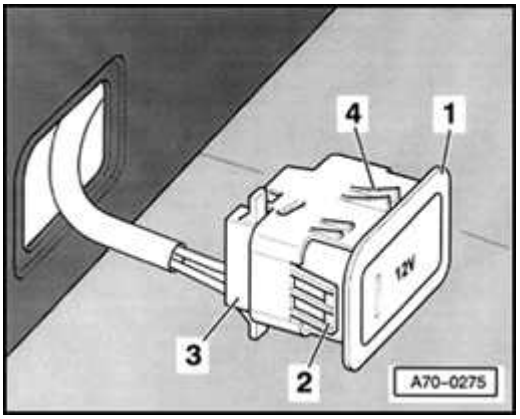


Fig. 356: Rear Power Outlet Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Carefully remove rear power outlet - **1** - from side luggage compartment trim using special hook 3370.

NOTE:

- **Observe catches - 2 - and - 4 - when removing.**

cardiagn.com

- Disconnect electrical connector - **3** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Partition grille, removing and installing

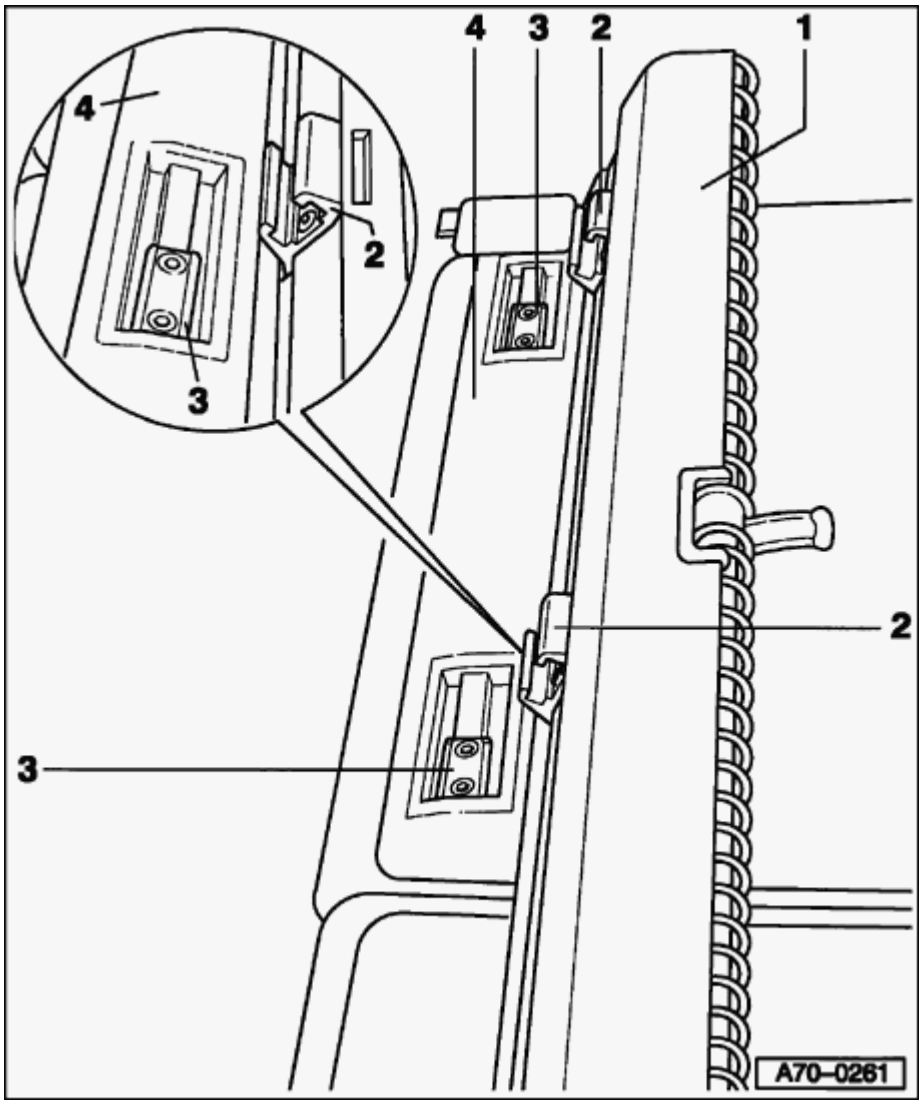


Fig. 357: Partition Grille Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Partition grille

- Removal:

- Fold both rear seat backrests forward.

cardiagn.com

- Press partition grill - **1** - from 1/3 rear seatback in direction toward 2/3 rear seatback - **4** -.
- Remove partition grille.

- **Installing:**

- Guide holding bracket - **2** - into recess on 2/3 seatback.
- Press partition grill - **1** - in direction of 1/3 seatback, lift 2/3 seat back slightly, to do so.

2 - Retaining profile

3 - Bracket

4 - 2/3 rear seat backrest

Rear cross panel trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

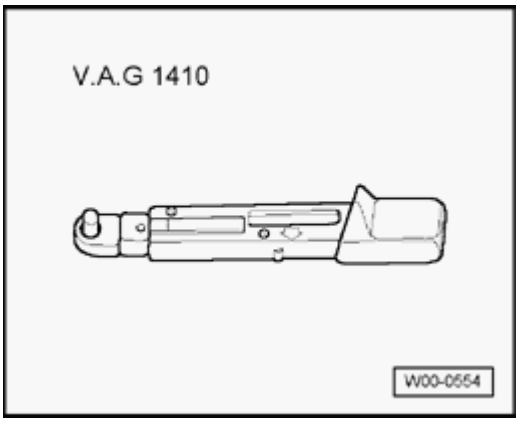


Fig. 358: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

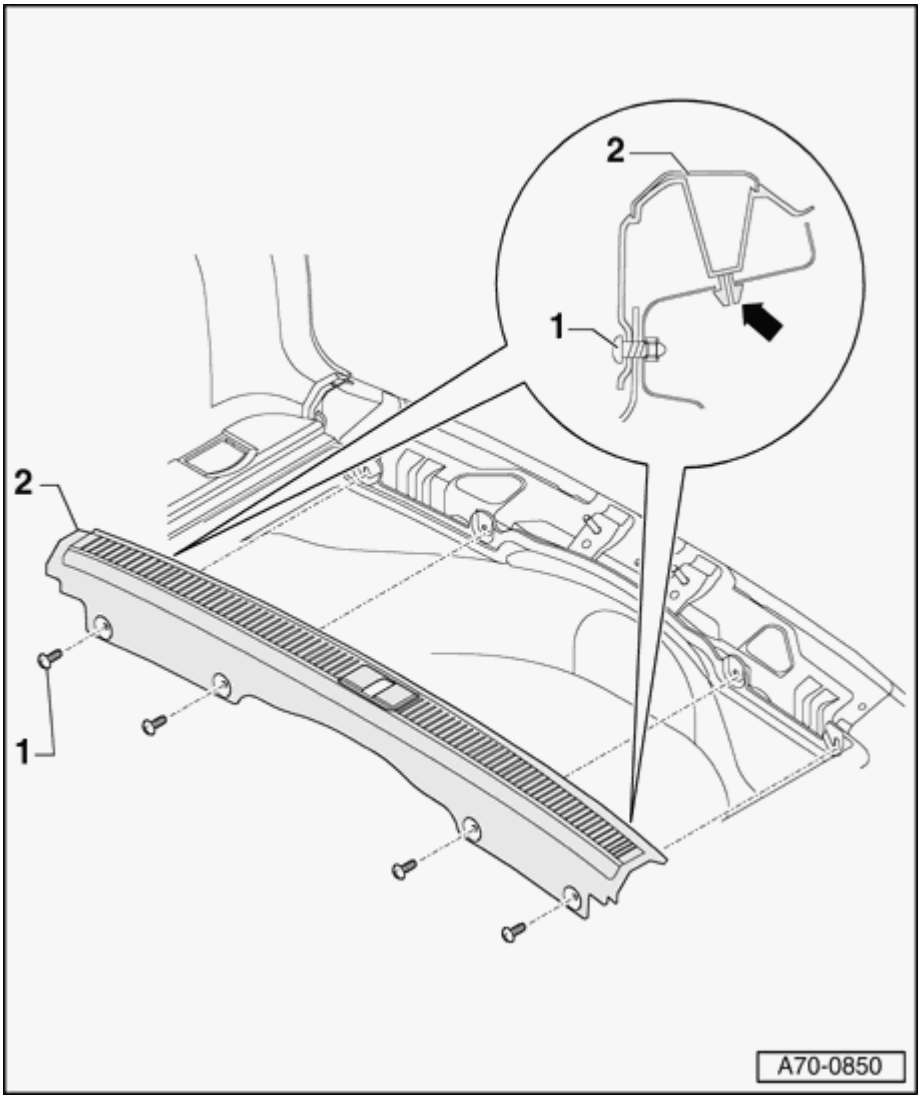


Fig. 359: Rear Cross Panel Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 5 Nm

2 - Rear cross panel trim

- Removal:

  - Open luggage compartment floor lid.
  - Remove screws - **1** - (Qty. 4).
  - Carefully remove rear cross panel trim - **2** - from locking pins - **arrows** -.

- **Installing:**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Rear lid rubber must lie over rear cross panel trim.
- Tighten screws to 5 Nm.

Storage area floor, removing and installing

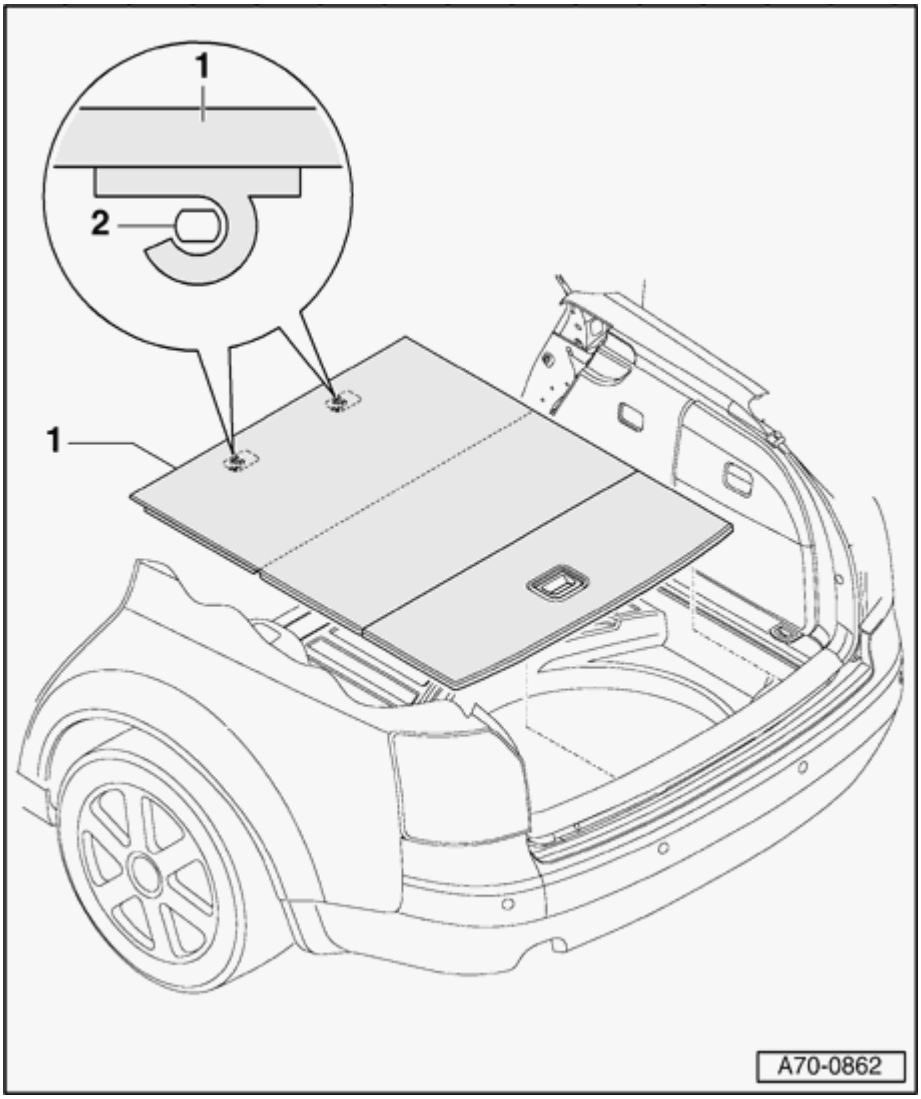


Fig. 360: Storage Area Floor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Luggage compartment floor

- Removal:

- Fold up rear part of luggage compartment floor.
- Detach storage area floor from mounts - **2** - at cargo tray.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Cargo tray mounts (Qty. 2)

Cargo tray, removing and installing

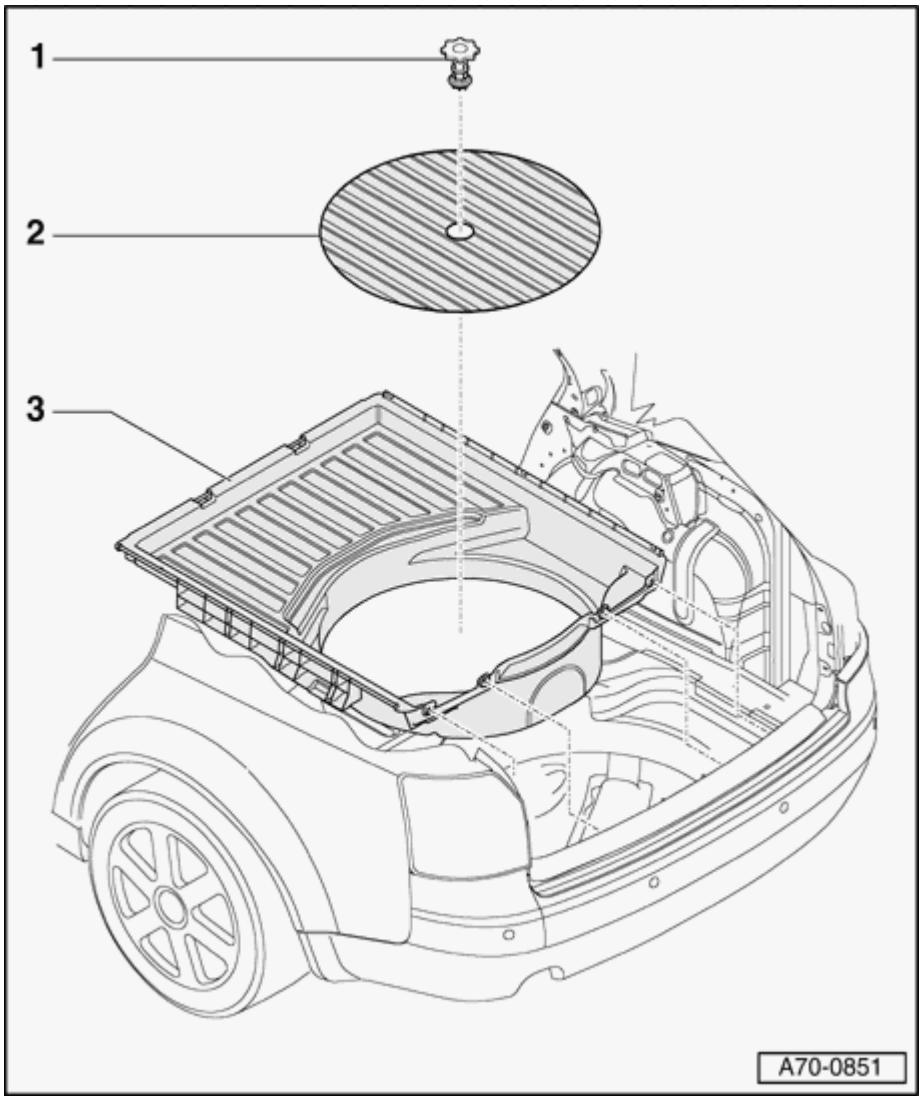


Fig. 361: Cargo Tray Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Threaded pins

- Tighten hand-screwed

2 - Cover

cardiagn.com

- For tool kit

3 - Cargo tray

- Removal:

  - Remove storage area floor --> **Storage area floor, removing and installing**.
  - Remove rear cross panel trim --> **Rear cross panel trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove right and left side trim in luggage compartment --> **Side luggage compartment trim**.
  - Remove cargo tray.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

Tie-down console

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

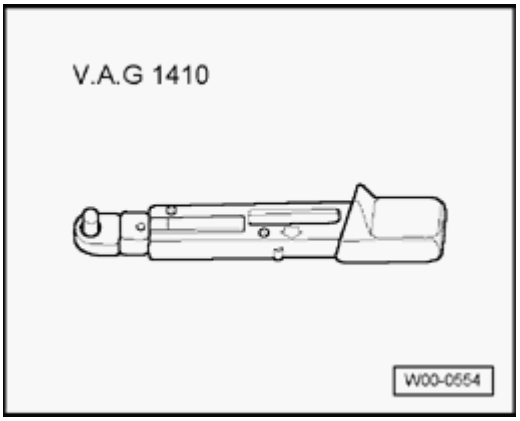


Fig. 362: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

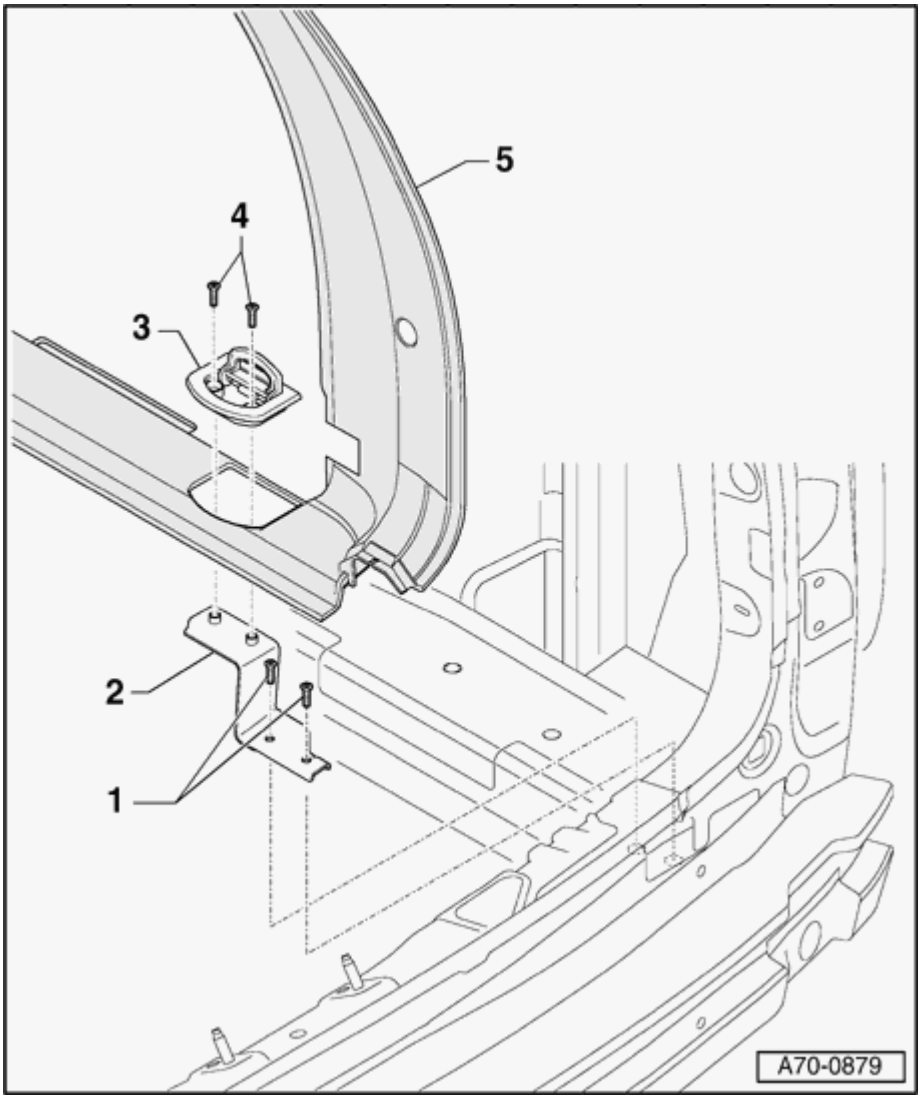


Fig. 363: Tie-Down Console Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 4 Nm

2 - Tie-down console

- Removal:

- Remove bolts - **4** - (4x).
- Remove tie-downs - **3** -.
- Remove luggage compartment floor mat - **3** -.
- Remove bolts - **1** - (Qty. 2).

cardiagn.com

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Tie-downs

4 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 4 Nm

5 - Luggage compartment floor covering

cardiagn.com

72 - SEAT - FRAMES

FRONT SEATS

Tools

Special tools, workshop equipment, testers, measuring instruments and other items required

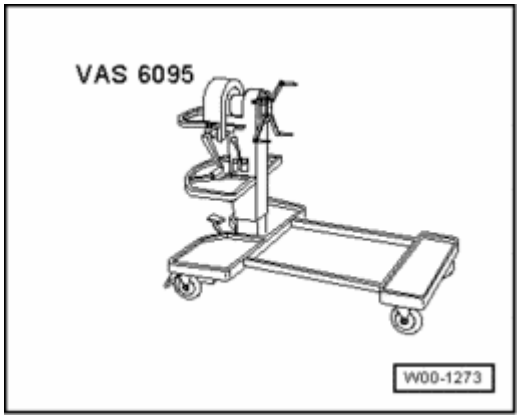


Fig. 218: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

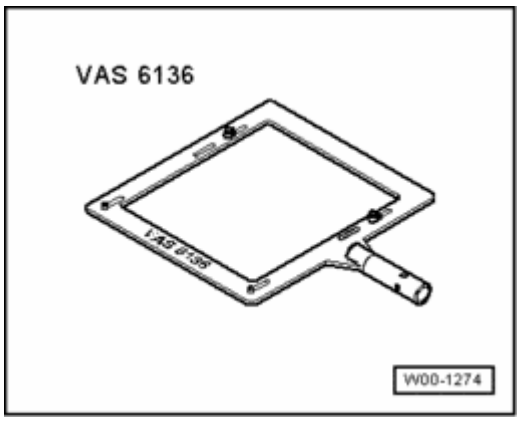


Fig. 219: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

Seat, assembly overview

Special tools and workshop equipment required

cardiagn.com

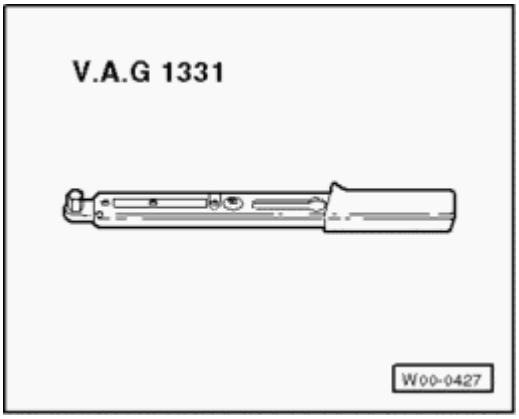


Fig. 220: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

Removing and installing front seat rail cover for front seat

cardiagn.com

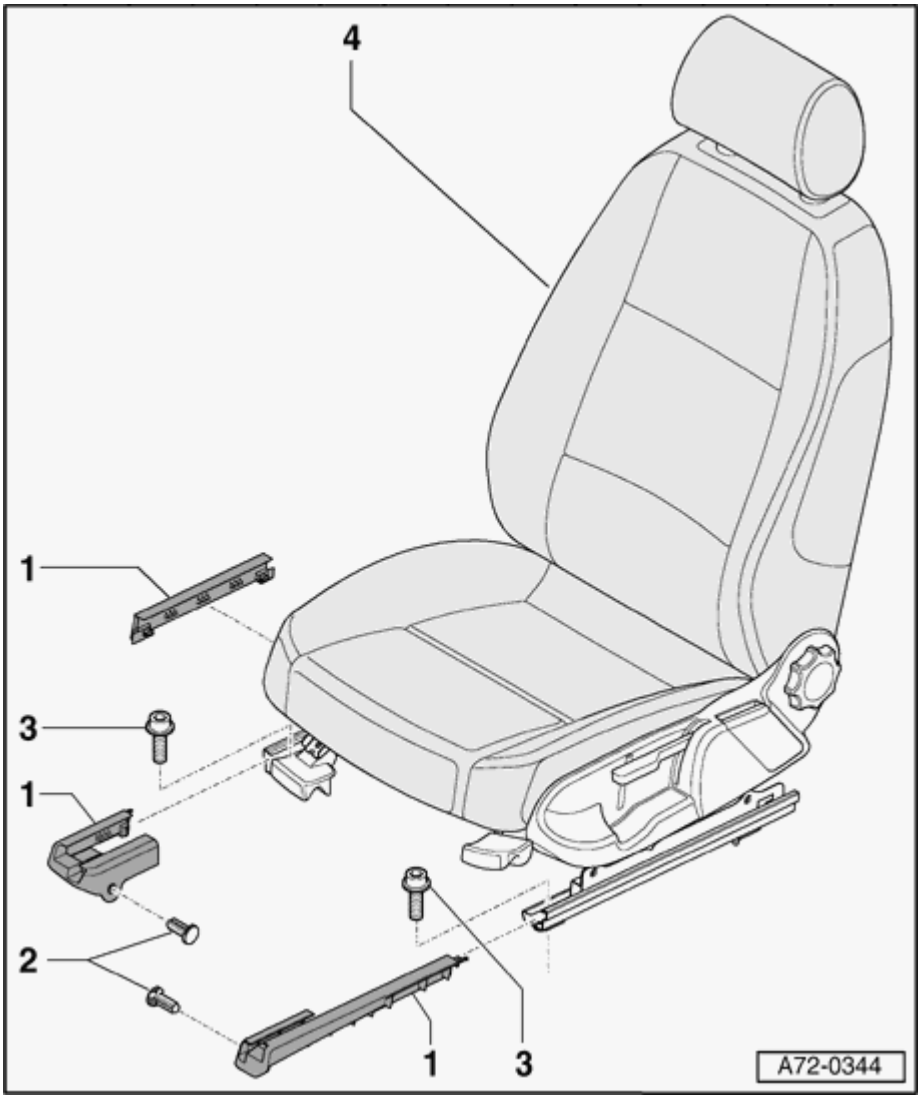


Fig. 221: Removing/Installing Front Seat Rail Cover For Front Seat
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front rail cover

- **Removing**

  - Pull handle for forward and backward adjustment and move front seat - **4** - to rearmost position.
  - Remove securing clip - **2** - (2x).
  - Remove rail cover - **1** - (2x).
  - Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).

2 - Securing clip (2x)

3 - Bolt (2x)

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

4 - Front seat

Removing and installing rear rail cover for front seat

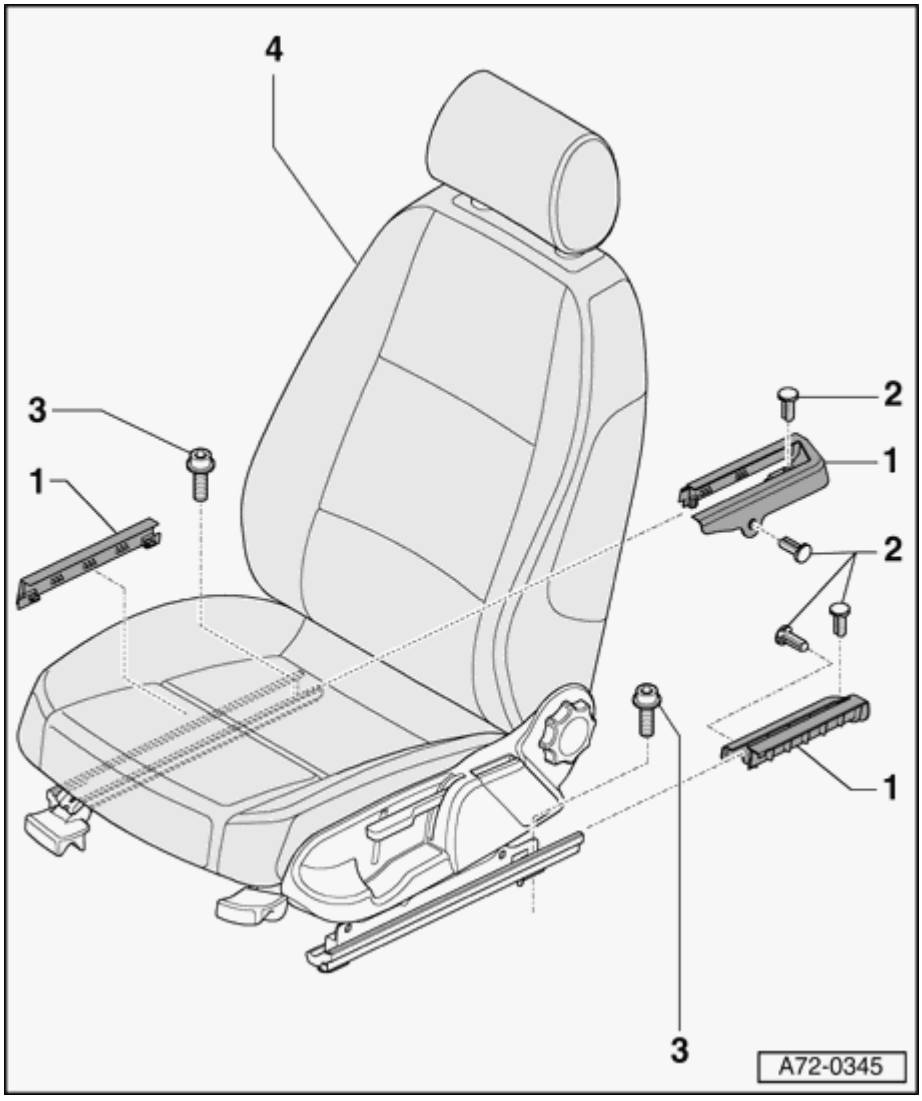


Fig. 222: Removing/Installing Rear Rail Cover For Front Seat
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear rail cover

- **Removing**

  - Pull handle for forward and backward adjustment and move front seat - **4** - forward as far as possible.
  - Remove securing clips - **2** - (4x).
  - Remove rail cover - **1** - (2x).

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolt - **3** - (2x).

2 - Securing clip (4x)

3 - Bolt (2x)

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

4 - Front seat

Removing and installing belt mount

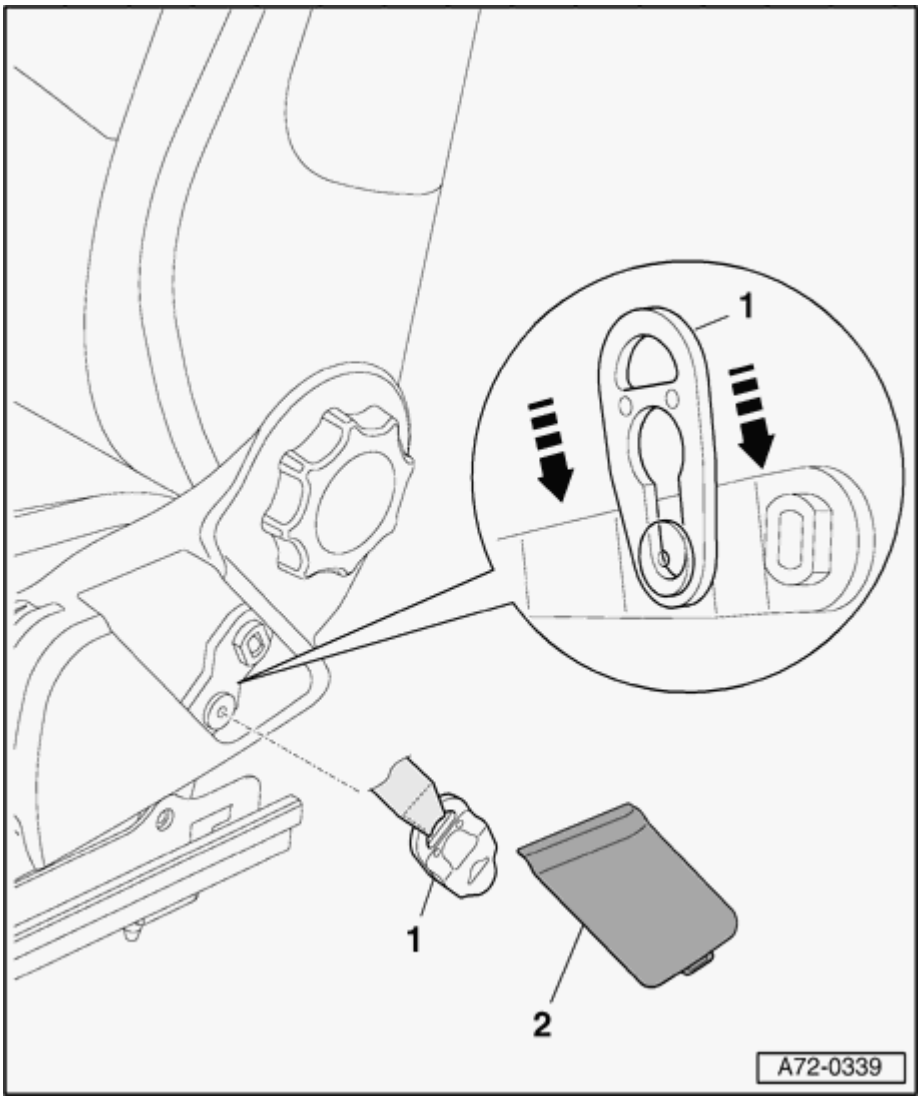


Fig. 223: Removing/Installing Belt Mount
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Belt mount

cardiagn.com

NOTE:

- **Height adjustable seat: Raise seat.**

Removing

- Remove cover - **2** - pull upward.
- Remove belt mount - **1** - pull down in direction of - **arrow** -.

2 - Cover

Connectors, disconnecting

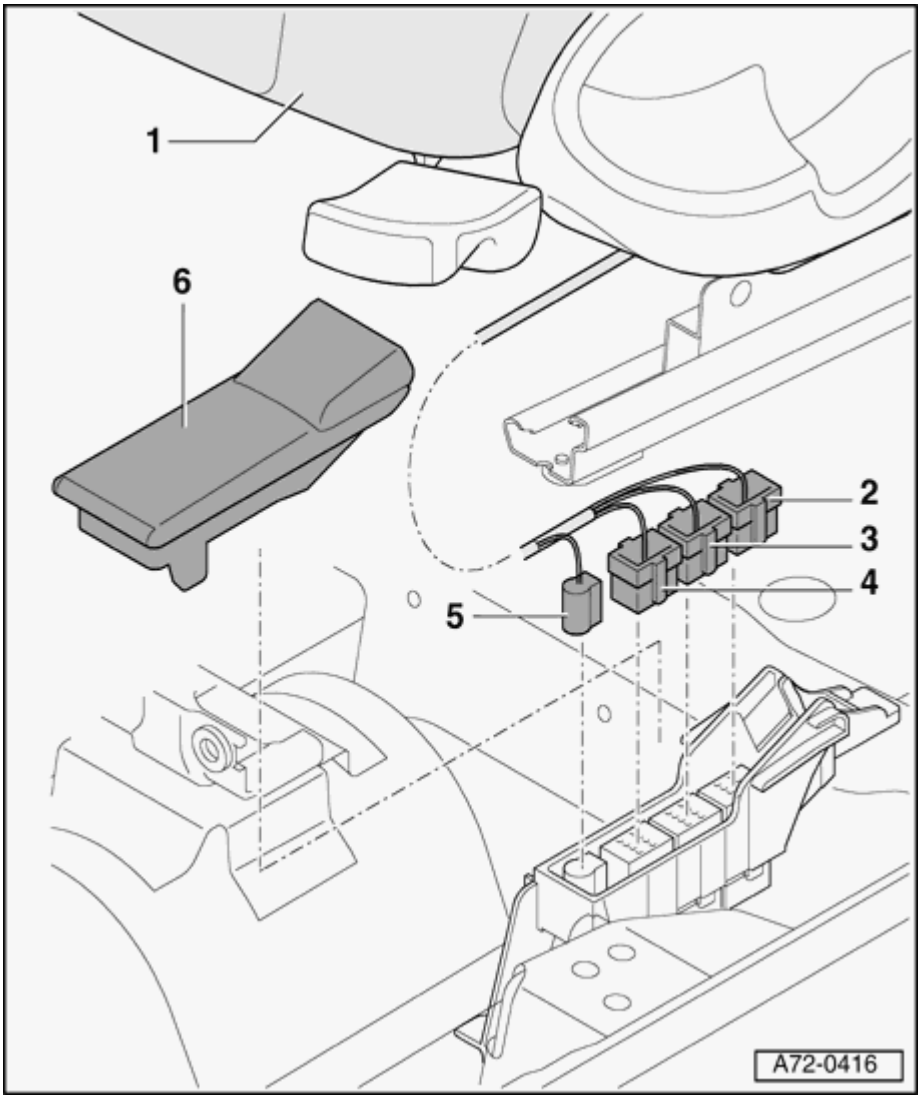


Fig. 224: Disconnecting Connections
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

cardiagn.com

2 - Buckle interrogation connector (black)

3 - Heated seat connector (green)

4 - Power supply connector (red)

5 - Airbag connector (yellow)

6 - Connector point cover

- **Removing**

  - Tilt front seat - **1** - back.
  - Remove connection point cover - **6** - upward.
  - Press tab on airbag connector - **5** - inboard side and remove airbag connector - **5** -.
  - Press tab on power supply connector - **4** - inboard side and remove power supply connector - **4** -.
  - Press tab on seat heating connector - **3** - inboard side and remove seat heating connector - **3** -.
  - For vehicles with buckle interrogation: Press in tab on buckle interrogation connector - **2** - inboard side and remove buckle interrogation connector - **2** -.
  - Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.
  - With assistance from a second mechanic, lift front seat - **1** - out of vehicle.

Airbag adapter VAS 6036 , connecting

Special tools and workshop equipment required

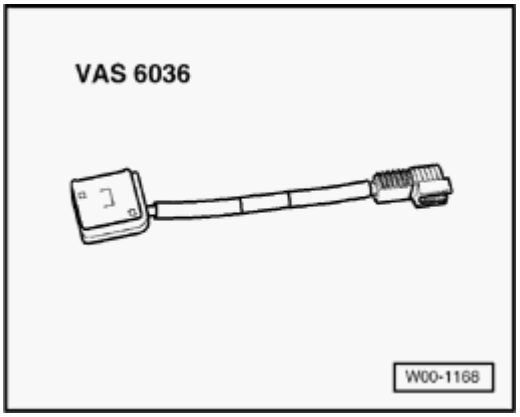


Fig. 225: Airbag Adapter VAS 6036
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Airbag adapter VAS 6036

NOTE:

- **The mechanic must electrostatically discharge him/herself before**

cardiagn.com

disconnecting ignition and ground (GND) wires (briefly touch closing wedge for door or body).

CAUTION: The airbag adapter VAS 6036 must remain connected to the seat until the seat is reinstalled.

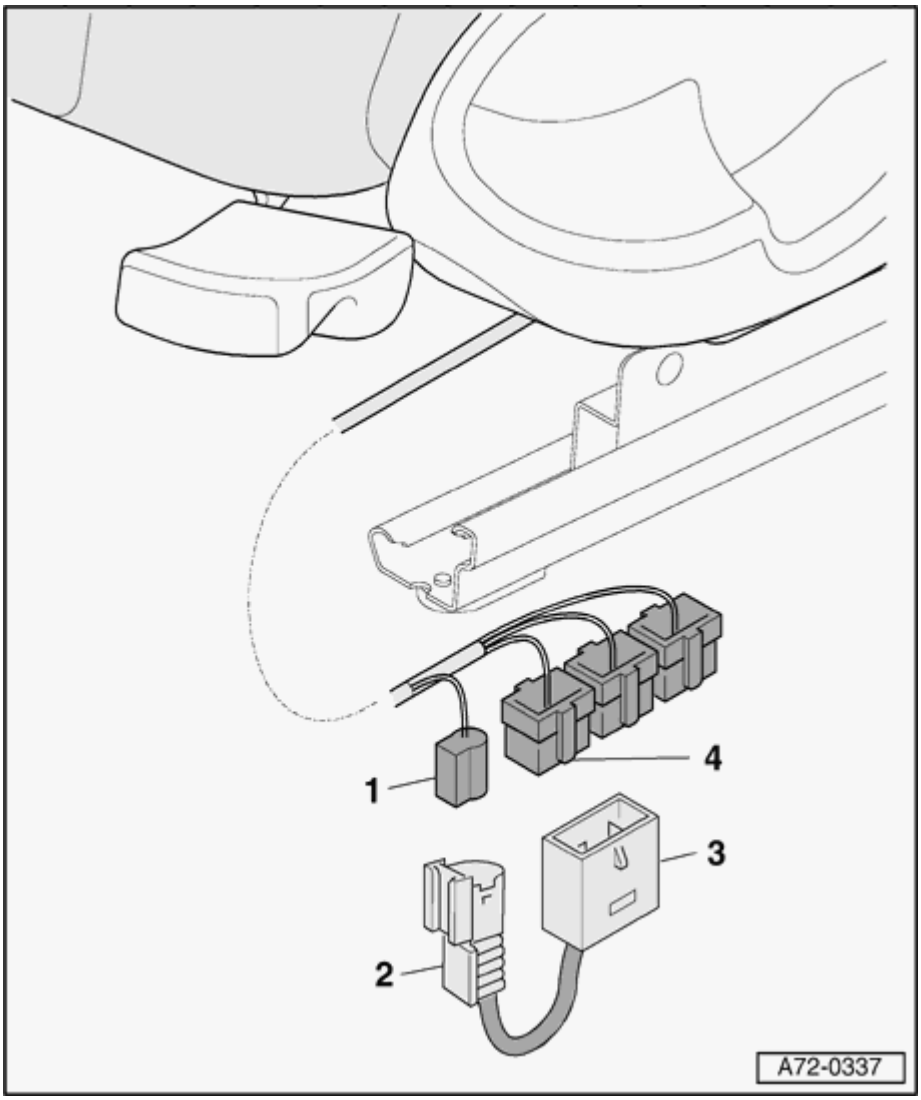


Fig. 226: Identifying Airbag Connector (Yellow), Airbag Adapter Connector, Airbag Adapter Power Supply Connector (Red) & Seat Connector Power Supply Connector (Red)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Airbag connector (yellow)

- Attach airbag connector (yellow) - **1** - to airbag adapter connector - **2** -.
- If present: Connect the airbag adapter power supply connector (red) - **3** - to the seat connector power supply connector (red) - **4** -.

cardiagn.com

2 - Airbag adapter connector (yellow)

3 - Airbag adapter power supply connector (red)

4 - Airbag adapter power supply connector (red)

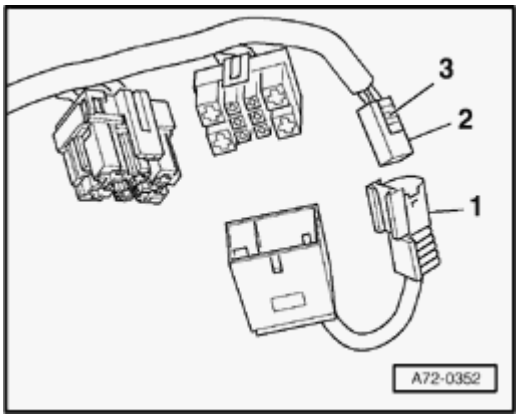


Fig. 227: Side Airbag Connector, Disconnecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Disconnecting plug for side airbag

- Press tab - **3** - for side airbag connector - **2** - from Airbag connector - **1** - and disconnect connector.

NOTE:

- **When connecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**
- **If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 signals a malfunction after assembly, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A to interrogate, erase and then again interrogate DTC memory.**

Front seat backrest, assembly overview

Special tools and workshop equipment required

cardiagn.com

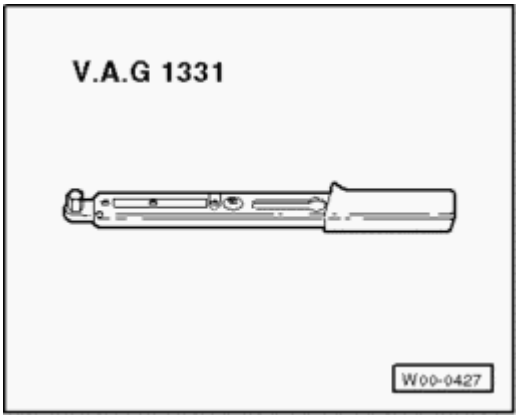


Fig. 228: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

CAUTION: Observe relevant safety precautions for vehicles installed with side airbags --> Additional safety precautions for side airbag.

cardiagn.com

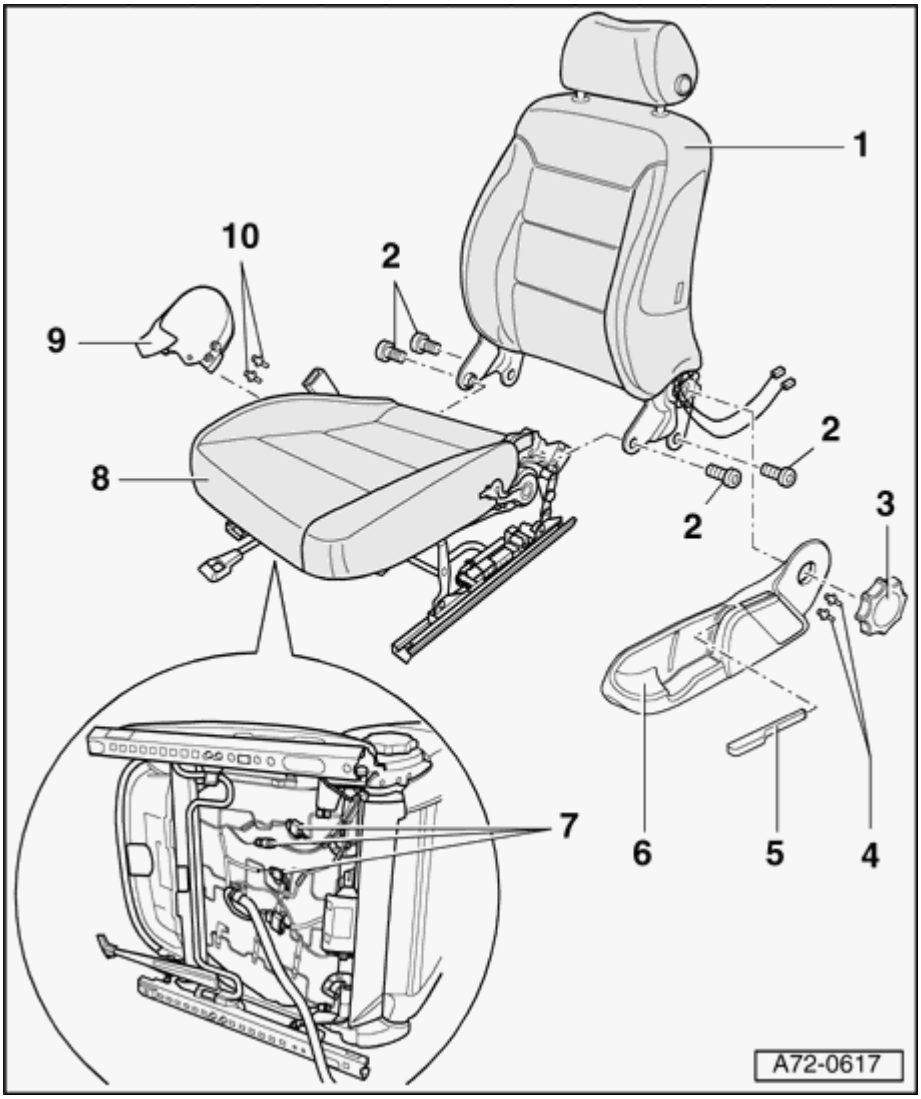


Fig. 229: Side Trim On Tunnel Side Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

- **Removing**

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach front seat to future for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove backrest adjuster --> **Backrest adjuster, removing and installing**.

- Remove seat height adjuster --> **Seat height adjuster, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on sill panel side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Side trim on tunnel side, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Disconnect connectors - **7** - (3x).
- Remove cables at mounting rails.
- Remove bolts -2- (4x).
- Tilt backrest - **1** - forward onto seat.
- Press cushion aside and carefully pull wiring harness out of seat pan - **8** -.
- Remove backrest - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Replace bolts - **2** - (4x).
- Before inserting bolts - **2** - (4x) recut the thread in the backrest frame.
- Install backrest - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

2 - Bolts (4x)

- Tightening torque 20 Nm

3 - Backrest adjuster

4 - Plastic rivet (2x)

5 - Seat height adjuster

6 - Side trim, sill panel side

7 - Connector (3x)

8 - Seat pan

9 - Side trim, tunnel side

10 - Plastic rivet (2x)

Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

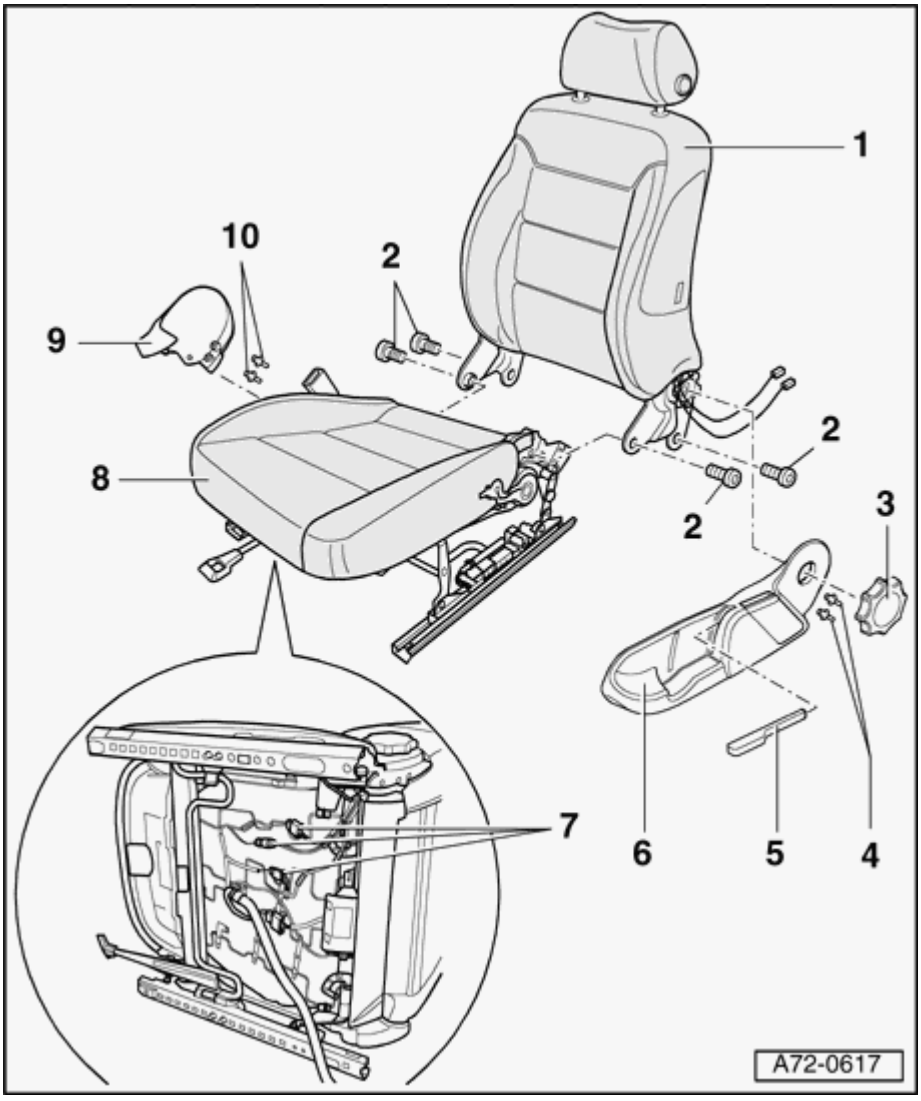


Fig. 230: Side Trim On Tunnel Side Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

2 - Bolts (4x)

3 - Backrest adjuster

4 - Plastic rivet (2x)

- Always replace

5 - Seat height adjuster

6 - Side trim, sill panel side

cardiagn.com

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove backrest adjuster --> **Backrest adjuster, removing and installing**.
  - Remove seat height adjuster --> **Seat height adjuster, removing and installing**.
  - Apply screwdriver to head of plastic rivet - **4** -.
  - Twist screwdriver and pry out plastic rivet - **4** -.
  - Release second plastic rivet - **4** -.
  - Remove side trim on sill panel side - **6** -.

- **Installing**

  - Install side trim on sill panel side - **6** - in reverse order of removal.

7 - Connector (3x)

8 - Seat pan

9 - Side trim, tunnel side

10 - Plastic rivet (2x)

Seat height adjuster, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

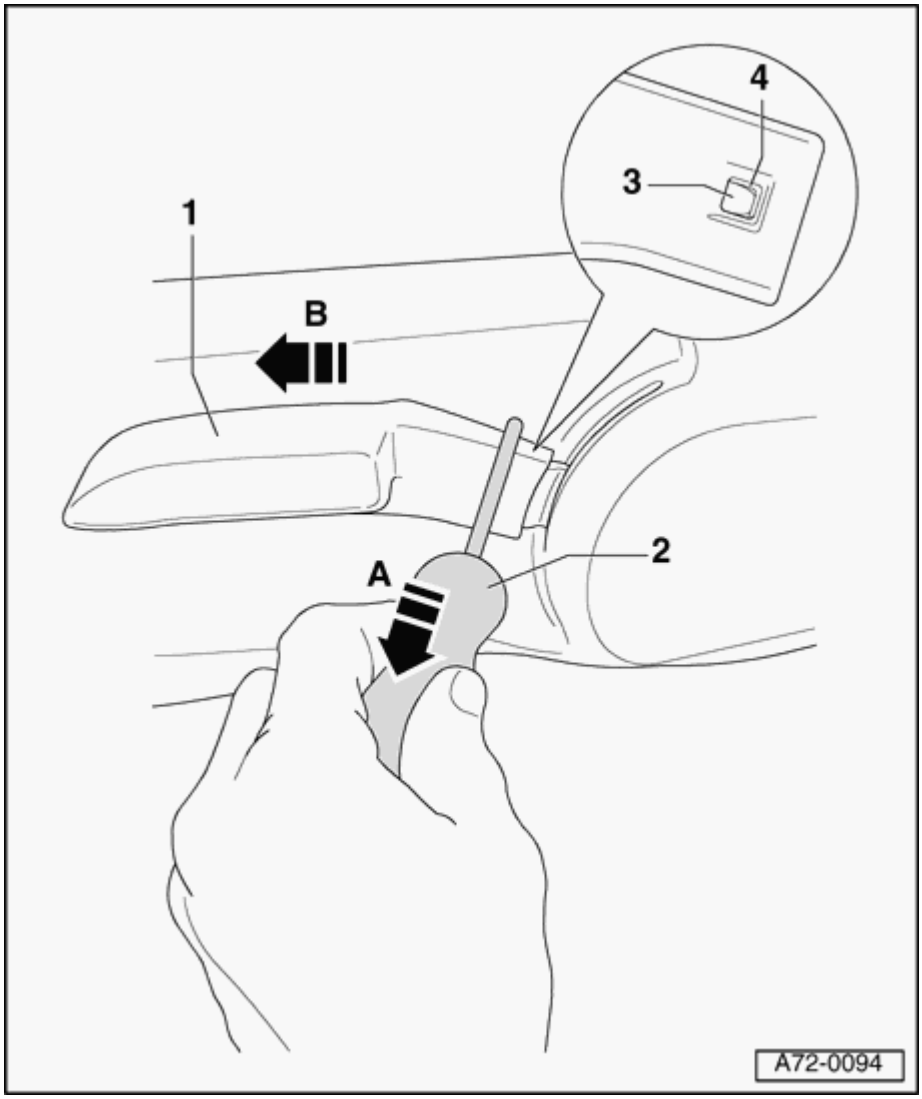


Fig. 231: Removing/Installing Seat Height Adjuster
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat height adjuster

- **Removing**

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Make improvised tool --> **Making improvised tool for removing seat height adjuster**

- Pull seat height adjuster - **1** - slightly off seat.
- Insert improvised tool - **2** - in mount - **4** -.
- Pull improvised tool - **2** - in direction of arrow - **A** - to press spring - **3** - outward.

cardiagn.com

- Remove seat height adjuster - **1** - in direction of arrow - **B** -.

- **Installing**

- Make sure clip is attached to lever of seat height adjuster. Observe installation position --> **Installation position of clip**
- Install seat height adjuster - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

2 - Improvised tool

3 - Spring

4 - Mount

Making improvised tool for removing seat height adjuster

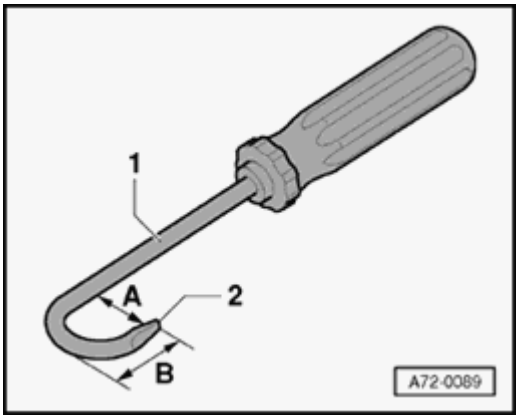
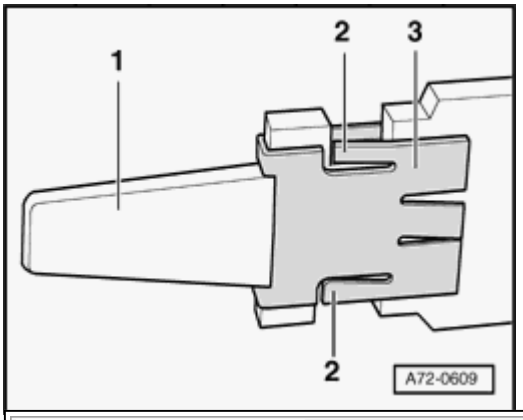


Fig. 232: Preparing Assist Tool To Remove Seat Height Adjusting Handle
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Bend screwdriver - **1** - with a width - **2** - of 3.5 mm to form dimensions - **A** - 20 mm and - **B** - max. 15 mm.

Installation position of clip



cardiagn.com

Fig. 233: Retaining Clamp Installation Position
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Make sure springs - **2** - (2x) of clip - **3** - are positioned on outside of lever - **1** -.

Backrest adjuster, removing and installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

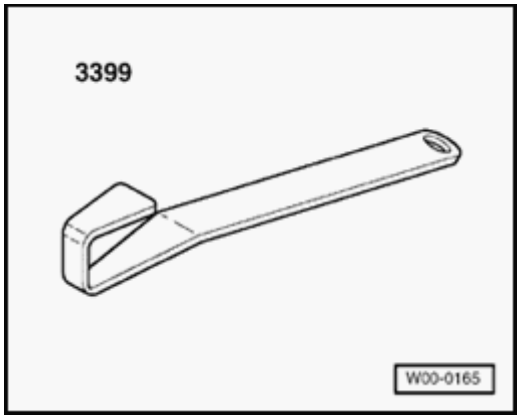


Fig. 234: Assembly Tool 3399
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Assembly tool 3399
- **Removing**

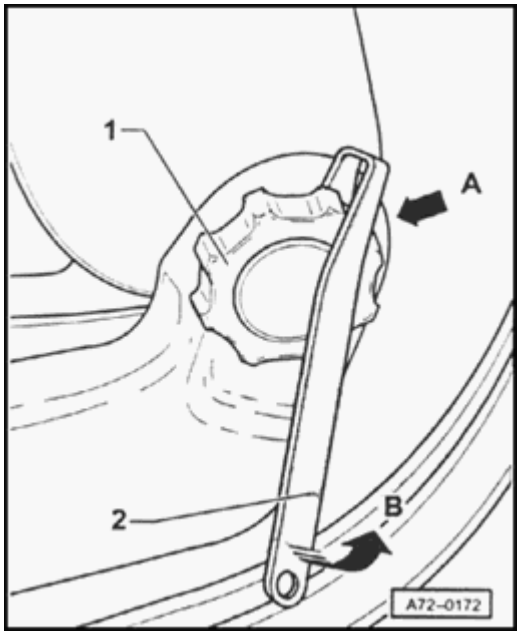


Fig. 235: Removing Backrest Adjustment Wheel
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Turn backrest adjuster - **1** - until detent is visible from rear - **arrow A** -. Use light, if necessary.
- Hook in assembly tool 3399 - **2** - and lever in direction of arrow - **B** -.
- Turn backrest adjuster - **1** - an additional 120° turn.
- Hook in special tool 3399 - **2** - and lever in direction of arrow - **B** -.
- Detach backrest adjuster - **1** -.

- **Installing**

NOTE:

- **After installing backrest adjuster, replace if it is too loose.**

Side trim on tunnel side, removing and installing

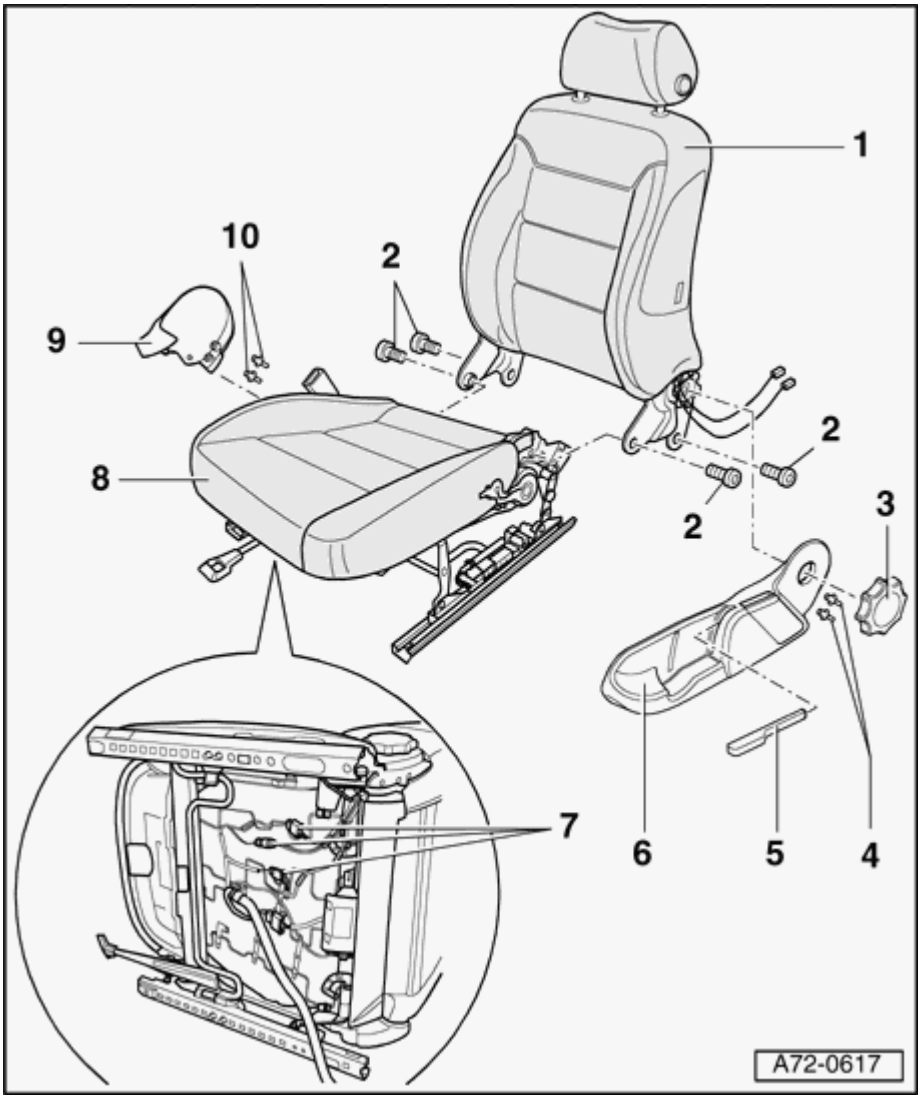


Fig. 236: Side Trim On Tunnel Side Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Backrest

2 - Bolts (4x)

3 - Backrest adjuster

4 - Plastic rivet (2x)

5 - Seat height adjuster

6 - Side trim, sill panel side

7 - Connector (3x)

8 - Seat pan

9 - Side trim, tunnel side

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Apply screwdriver to head of plastic rivet - **10** -.
  - Twist screwdriver and pry out plastic rivet - **10** -.
  - Release second plastic rivet - **10** -.
  - Remove side trim on tunnel side - **9** -.

- **Installing**

  - Install side trim on tunnel side - **9** - in reverse order of removal.

10 - Plastic rivet (2x)

- Always replace

Seat height adjuster unit, removing and installing

Special tools, workshop equipment, testers, measuring instruments and other items required

Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

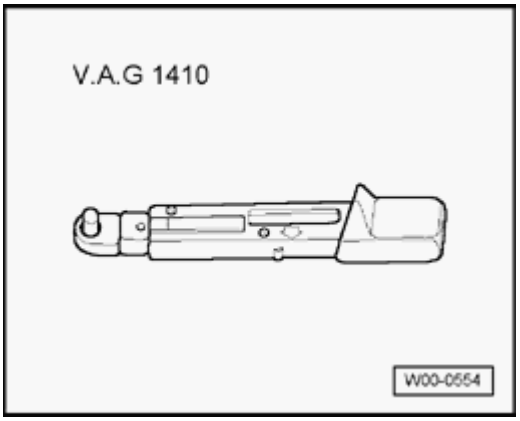


Fig. 237: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

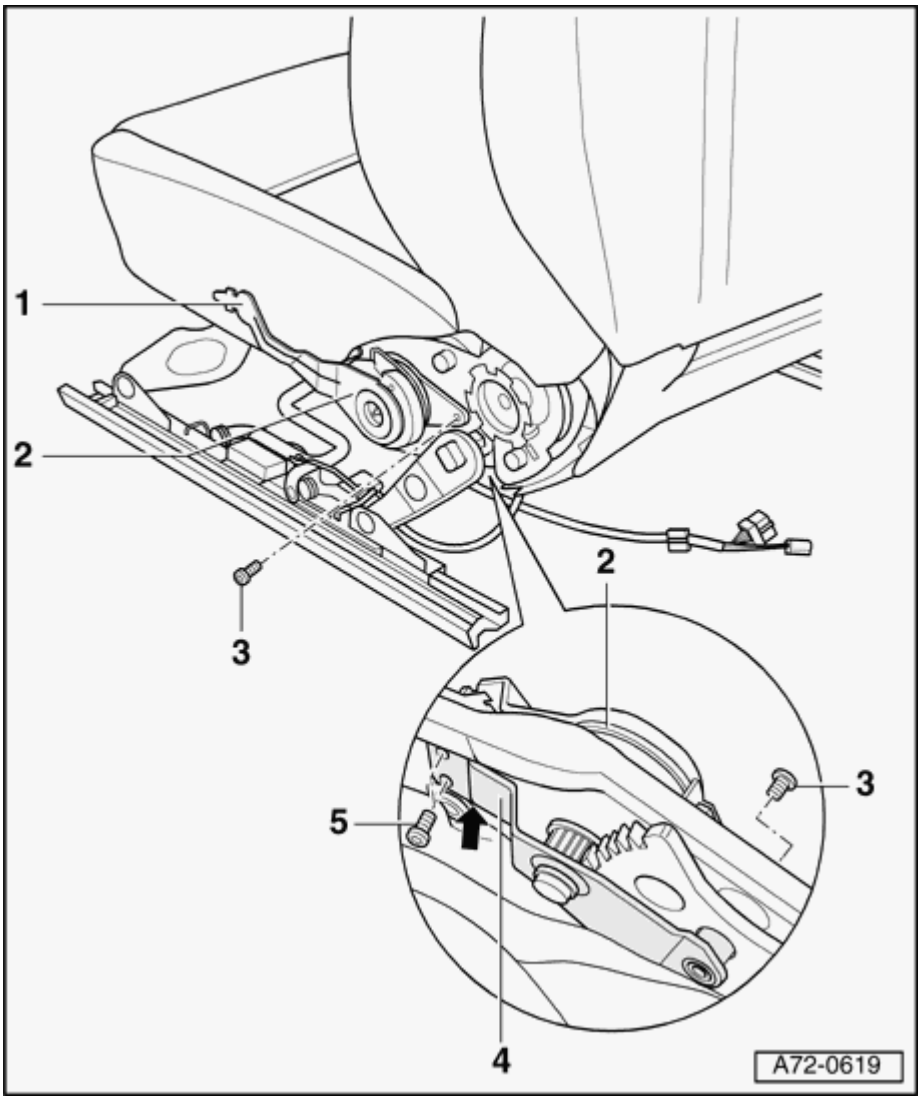


Fig. 238: Seat Height Adjuster Unit Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Seat height adjuster lever

2 - Seat height adjuster unit

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove backrest adjuster --> **Backrest adjuster, removing and installing**.
  - Remove seat height adjuster --> **Seat height adjuster, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim on sill panel side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.
  - Remove bolt - **3** -.
  - Remove bolts - **5** - (2x).
  - Remove seat height adjuster unit - **2** - and retainer - **4** -.

- **Installing**

  - Install seat height adjuster unit - **2** - in reverse order of removal.
  - Make sure retainer - **4** - makes contact with seat pan - **arrow** -.
  - Make sure clip is attached to lever of seat height adjuster - **2** -. Observe installation position --> **Installation position of clip**

3 - Bolt

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

4 - Retainer

5 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

Bowden cable of seat height adjuster unit, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

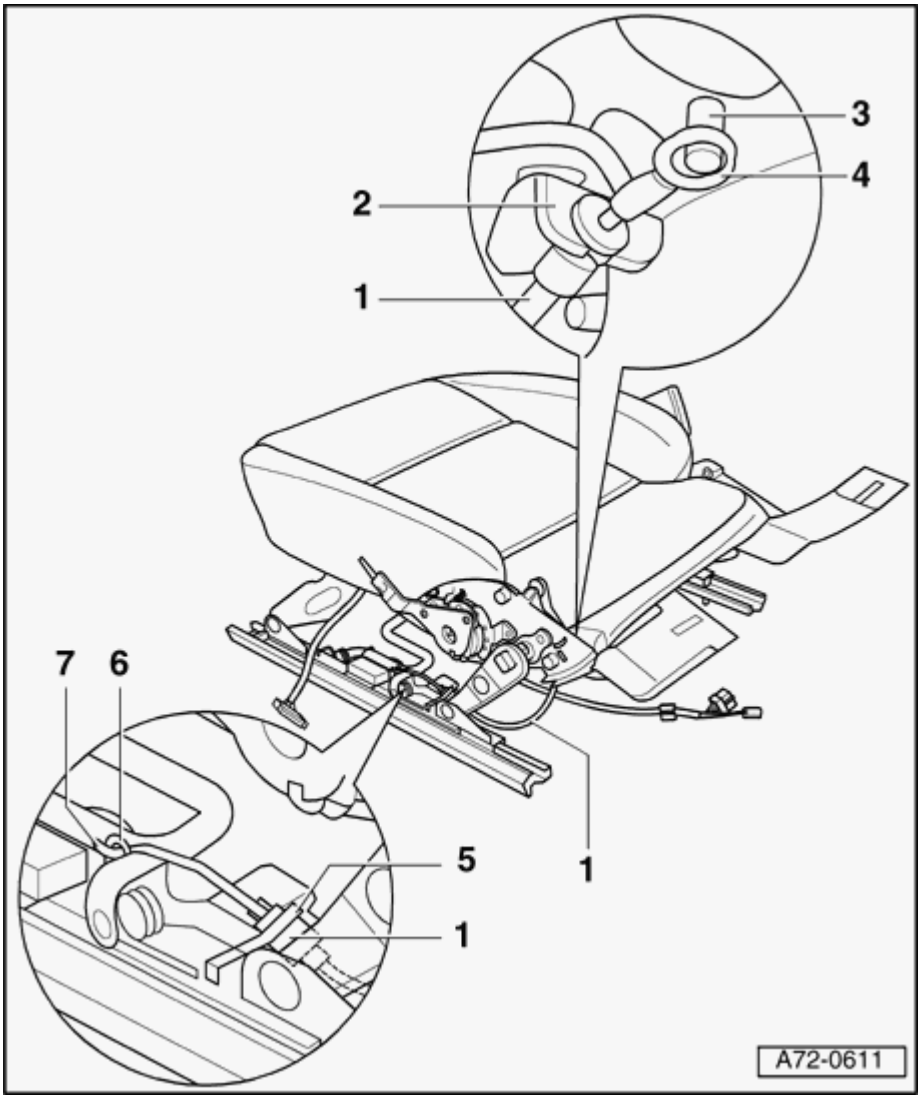


Fig. 239: Bowden Cable Of Seat Height Adjuster Unit Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Bowden cable of seat height adjuster unit

- **Removing**

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim on sill panel side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Side trim on tunnel side, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove Bowden cable - **1** - from holder - **2** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove tab - **4** - from pin - **3** -.
- Remove Bowden cable - **1** - from holder - **5** -.
- Remove Bowden cable at hook - **7** - from holder - **6** -.

- **Installing**

- Install Bowden cable of seat height adjuster unit - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

2 - Holder

3 - Pin

4 - Tab

5 - Holder

6 - Holder

7 - Hook

Easy-entry facility (manual), removing and installing

cardiagn.com

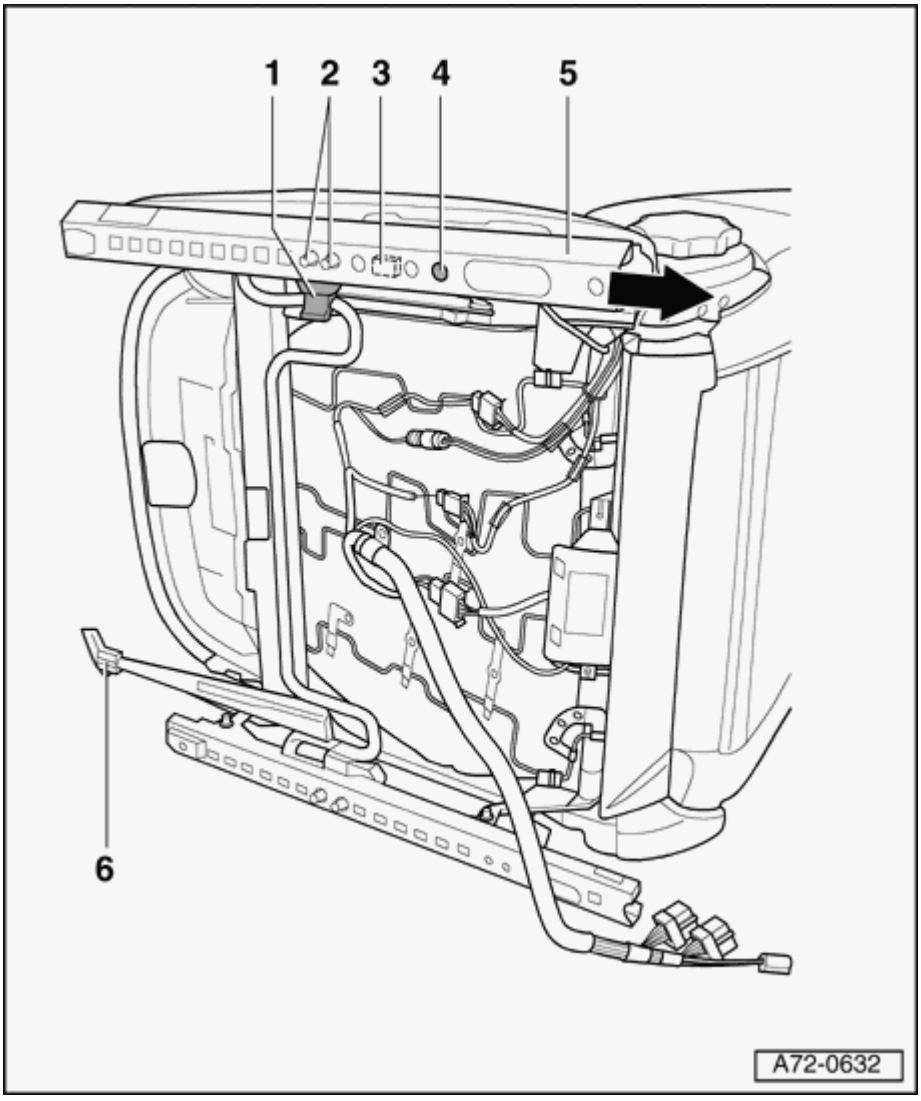


Fig. 240: Easy-Entry Facility (Manual) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Lever

2 - Pins (2x)

3 - Easy-entry facility (manual)

- **Removing**

  - Move front seat forward as far as possible.
  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Drill out rivet - **4** - at runner - **5** - and take out metal holders (2x) on inside of runner - **5** -.
  - Press lever - **1** - until pins - **2** - (2x) are in runner - **5** - and pull runner - **5** - to rear in direction of - **arrow** - .

cardiagn.com

- Remove easy-entry facility - **3** -.

- **Installing**

- Guide easy-entry facility into runner **Guiding easy-entry facility into runner**
- Installing easy-entry facility - **3** - in reverse order of removal.

4 - Rivet

5 - Runner

6 - Handle for length adjustment

Guiding easy-entry facility into runner

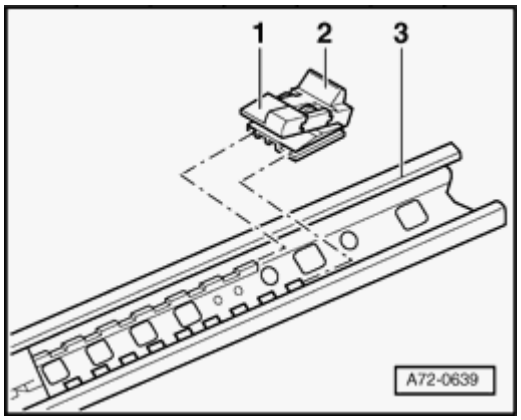


Fig. 241: Guiding Easy-Entry Facility Into Runner
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Guide easy-entry facility - **2** - into runner - **3** -.
- Press lever - **1** - and slide easy-entry facility - **2** - forward.

Storage compartment, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

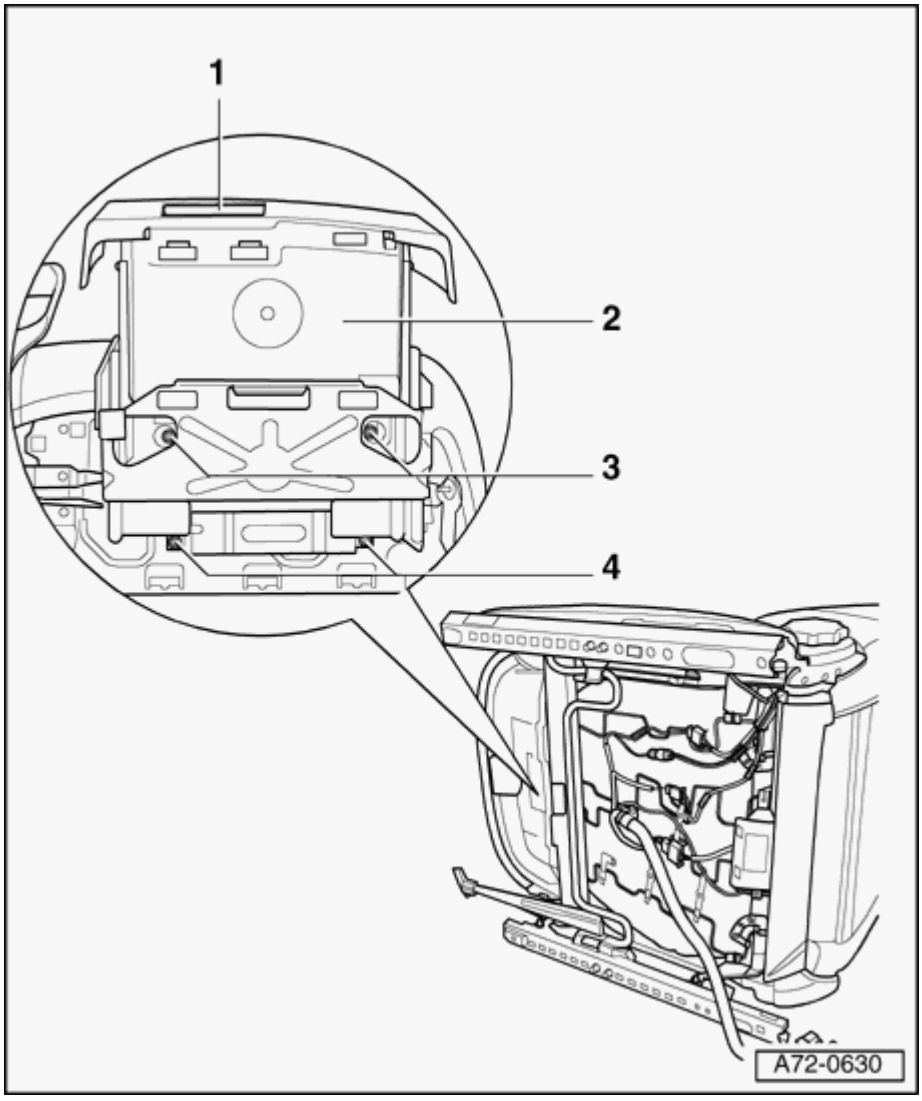


Fig. 242: Storage Compartment Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Handle

2 - Storage compartment

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Pull handle - **1** - out storage compartment - **2** -.

  - Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolts - **4** - (2x).
- Remove storage compartment - **2** -.

- **Installing**

- Install storage compartment - **2** - in reverse order of removal.

3 - Bolts (2x)

4 - Bolts (2x)

Backrest cover panel, removing and installing

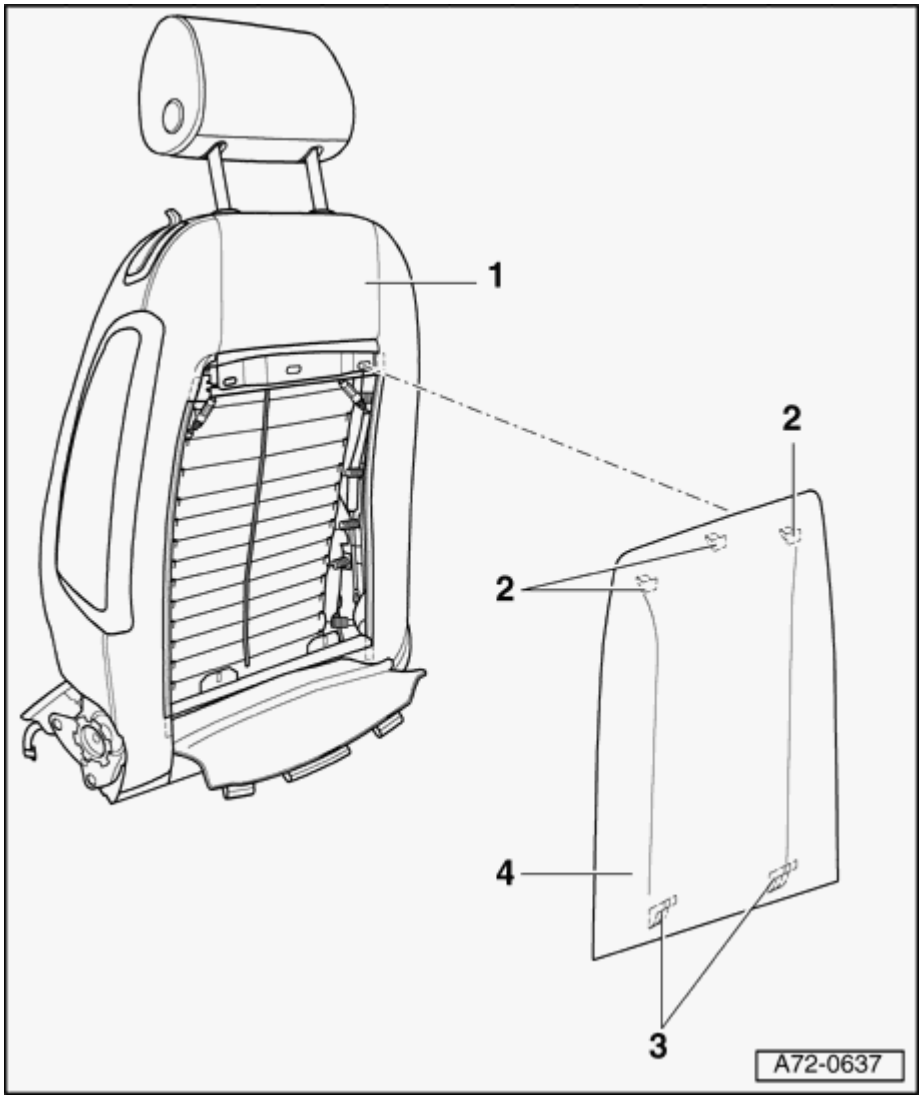


Fig. 243: Backrest Cover Panel Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Front seat

2 - Clips (3x)

3 - Holders (2x)

4 - Backrest cover panel

- **Removing**

  - Unclip clips - **3** - (3x) by inserting a flat screwdriver in clip and turning screwdriver clockwise until clip is released.
  - Remove backrest cover panel - **4** - upward from holders - **3** - (2x).

- **Installing**

  - Replace damaged clips - **2** - (3x).
  - Install backrest cover panel - **4** - in reverse order of removal.

Outer frame, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

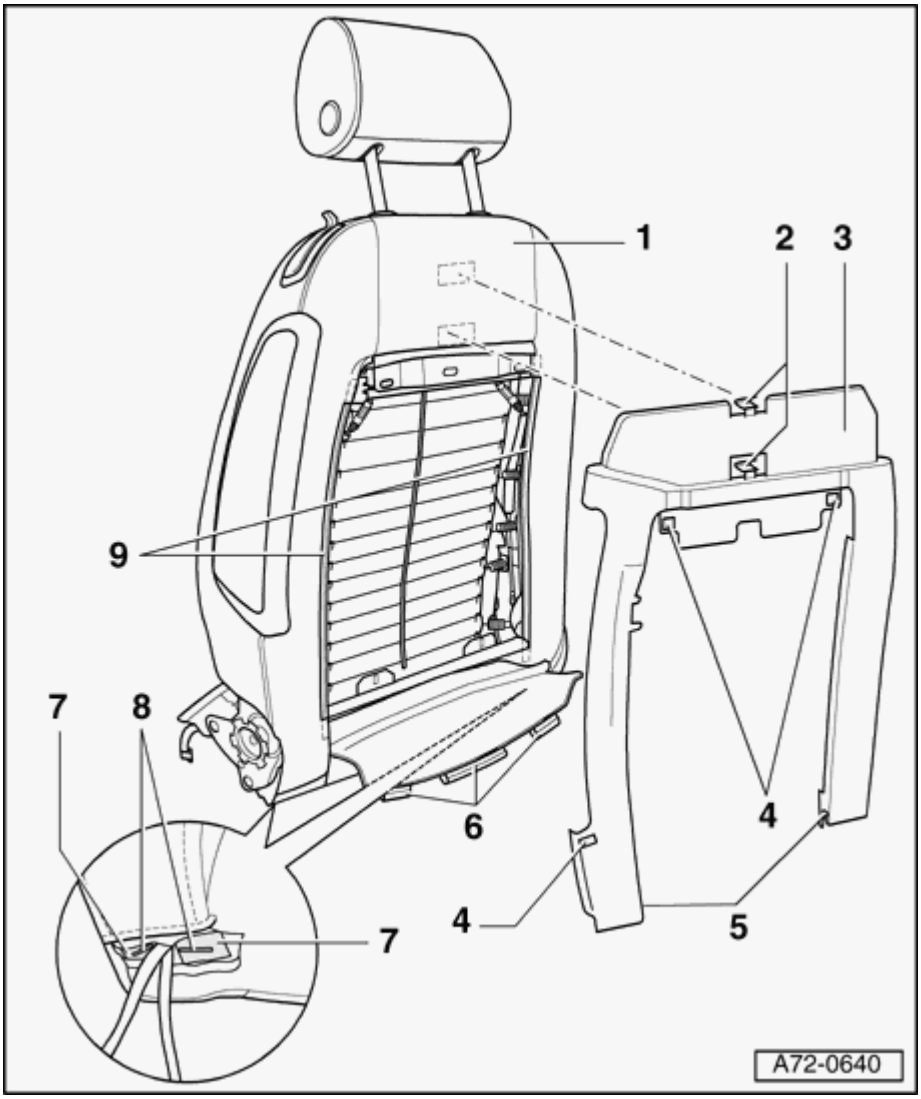


Fig. 244: Outer Frame Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Clips (2x)

3 - Outer frame

- **Removing**

  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.
  - Pry out staples - **8** - (4x) on left and right.
  - Remove velcro strips - **7** - (4x) on left and right.
  - Disengage piping on side - **9** - (2x).

cardiagn.com

- Pry out piping at bottom - **6** - (3x).
- Pry out clips - **4** - (3x).
- Pry out clips - **2** - (2x).
- Remove outer frame - **3** - from backrest frame.

- **Installing**

- Lock outer frame - **3** - at holders - **5** - (2x) in backrest frame.
- Install outer frame - **3** - in reverse order of removal.

4 - Clips (3x)

5 - Holders (2x)

6 - Bottom piping (3x)

7 - Velcro strips (4x)

8 - Staples (4x)

- Commercially available.
- Only use upholstery stapler.

9 - Side piping (2x)

Easy-entry facility handle, removing and installing

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

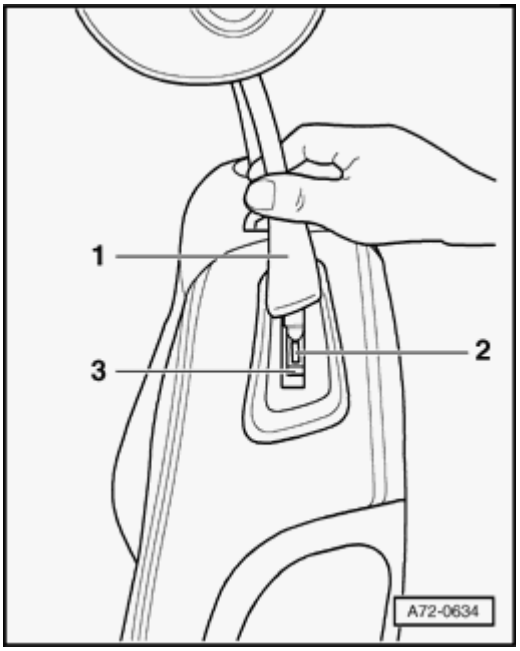


Fig. 245: Easy-Entry Facility Handle Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press handle - **1** - upward.
- Use screwdriver to pry tab - **3** - out of metal pin - **2** - and at the same time detach handle - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Install easy-entry facility handle - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

NOTE:

- **In order to be able to press in the handle, the metal pin in the cover plate aperture must be pushed upward with a screwdriver.**

Removing and installing easy-entry facility trim

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

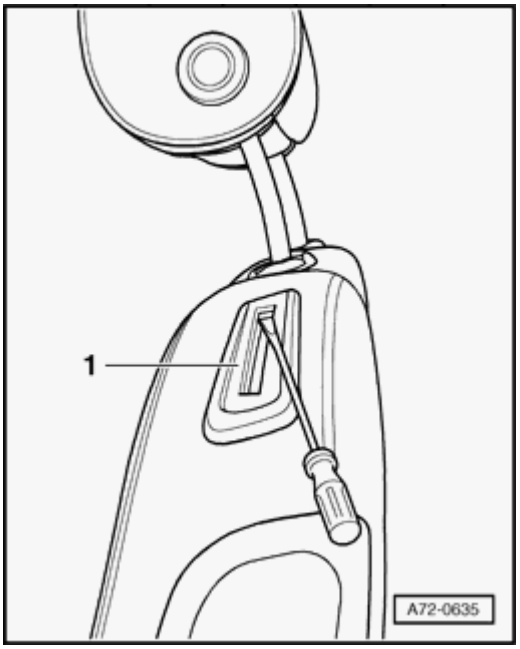


Fig. 246: Removing/Installing Easy-Entry Facility Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Use flat screwdriver to pry out trim - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Install easy-entry facility trim - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

Bowden cable for backrest lock, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

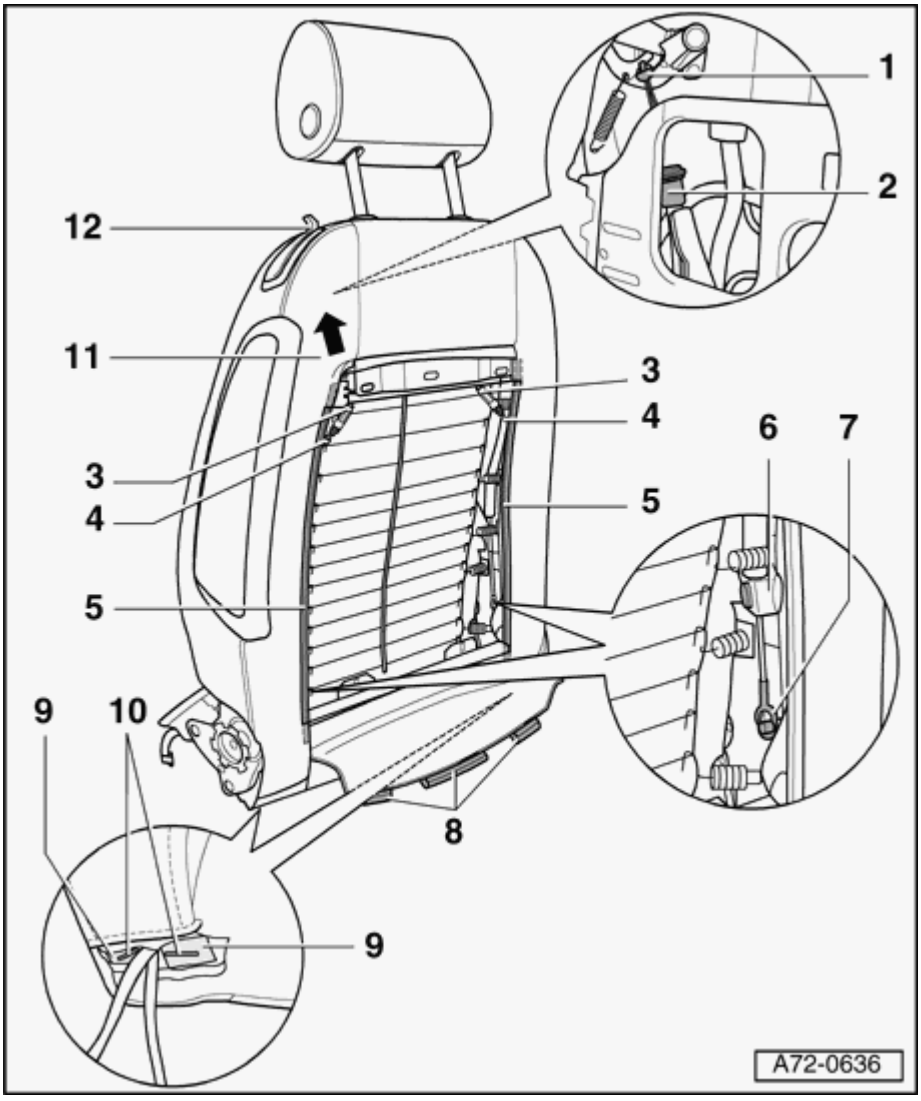


Fig. 247: Bowden Cable For Backrest Lock Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Holder

2 - Holder

3 - Bowden cable adjusters (2x)

4 - Bowden cables for backrest lock (2x)

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.

cardiagn.com

- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.
- Pry out staples - **10** - (4x) on left and right.
- Remove velcro strips - **9** - (4x) on left and right.
- Detach piping on side - **5** - (2x).
- Pry out piping at bottom - **8** - (3x).
- Use pliers to disengage tabs -7- (2x) at bottom left and right.
- Use screwdriver to pry Bowden cables out of mounts -6- (2x) on left and right.
- Remove Bowden cables -4- (2x) upward.
- Push cover - **11** - upward in direction of - **arrow** -.
- Detach Bowden cables at holders -1- and -2-.

- **Installing**

- Install Bowden cables for backrest lock in reverse order of removal.
- Set Bowden cables -4- (2x) with adjusters -3- (2x). Make sure pins at bottom left and right are released simultaneously on actuating easy-entry facility handle - **12** -.

5 - Side piping (2x)

6 - Mounts (2x)

7 - Tabs (2x)

8 - Bottom piping (3x)

9 - Velcro strips (4x) on left and right

10 - Staples (4x) on left and right

- Commercially available.
- Only use upholstery stapler.

11 - Cover

12 - Handle of easy-entry facility

Side airbag guide, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

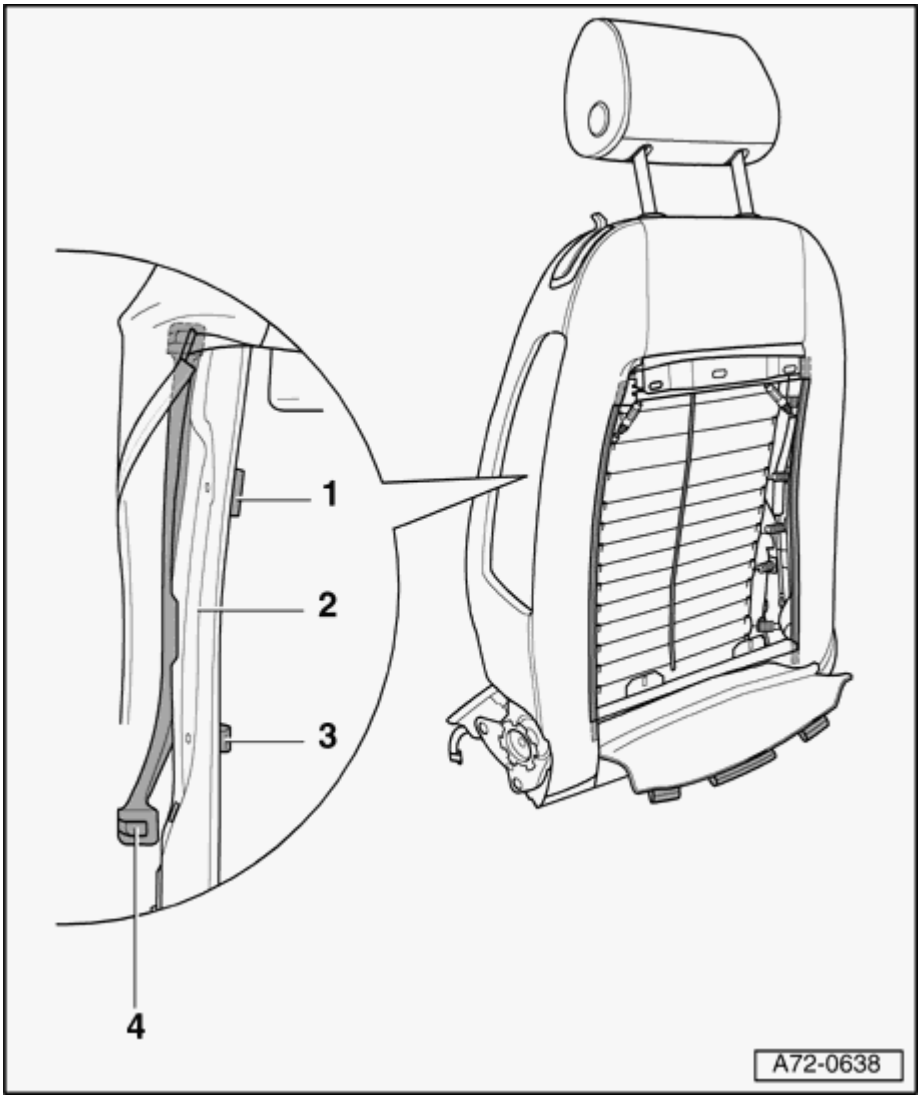


Fig. 248: Side Airbag Guide Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Mount

2 - Backrest frame

3 - Clip

4 - Side airbag guide

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side airbag --> **Side airbag (sports seat, standard seat), removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Press clip -3- together from inside of backrest frame - **2** -.
- Pry out mount -1- from inside.
- Remove side airbag guide -4-.

- **Installing**

- Install in reverse order of removal.

Head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism, removing and installing

- **Removing**

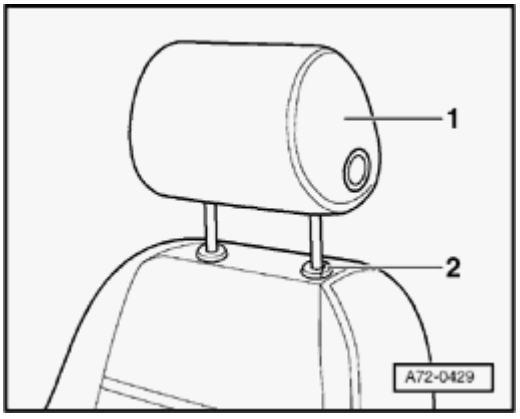


Fig. 249: Pressing Button & Removing Head Restraint
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press button - **2** -.
- Remove head restraint - **1** -.

Rear footwell light, removing

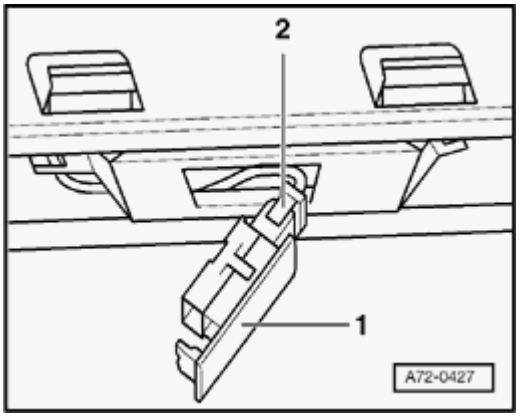


Fig. 250: Removing Rear Footwell Light
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Use screwdriver to pry rear footwell light - **1** - out of backrest cover panel on one side.
- Disconnect rear footwell light connector - **2** -.

FRONT SEATS (MEMORY SEAT, ELECTRICALLY OPERATED SEAT)

Tools

Special tools, workshop equipment, testers, measuring instruments and other items required

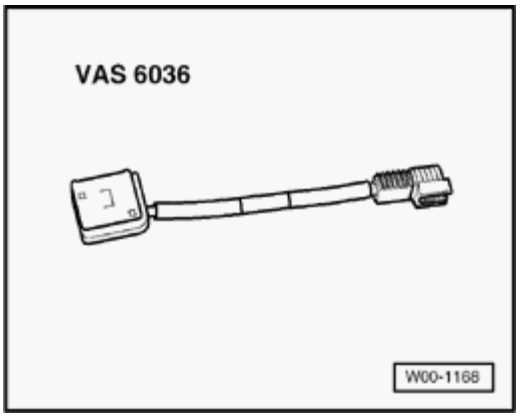


Fig. 251: Airbag Adapter VAS 6036
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Airbag adapter VAS 6036

Front seat, assembly overview

NOTE:

- **Before disconnecting the battery: obtain the radio code.**

cardiagn.com

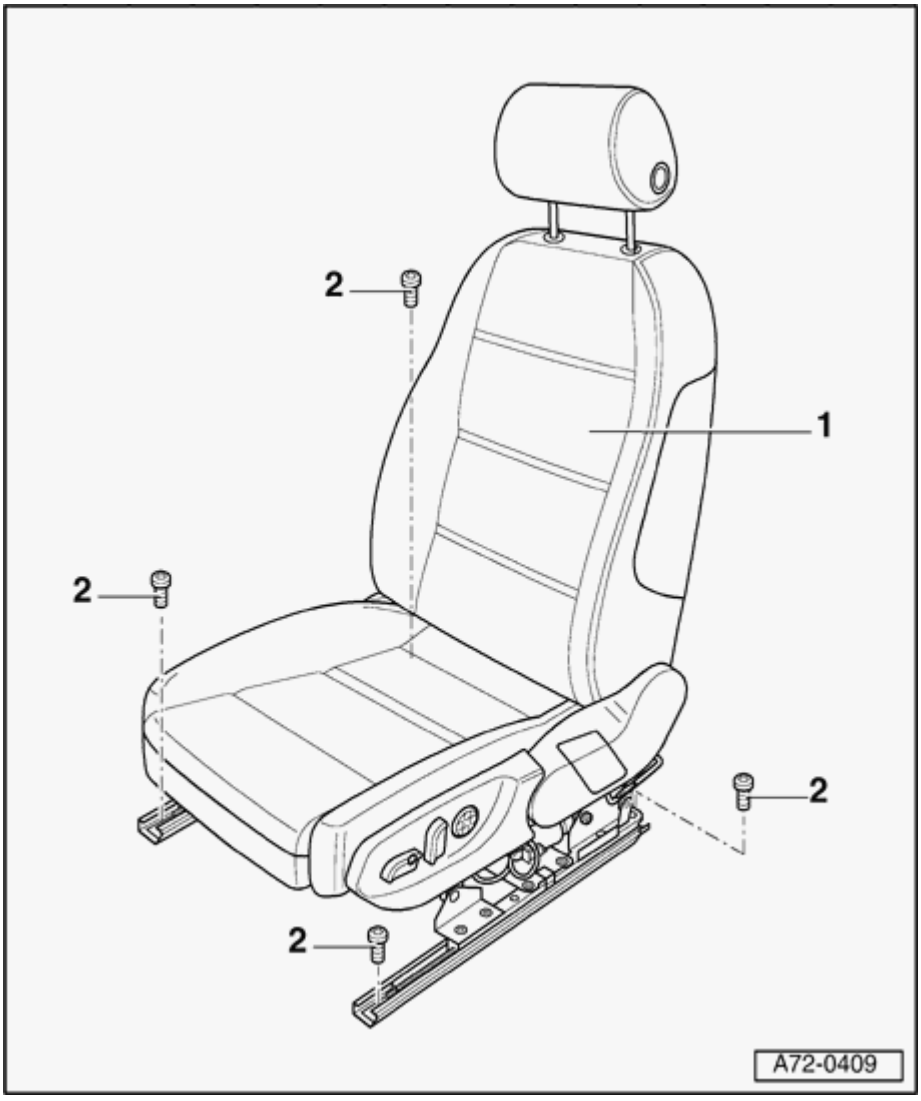


Fig. 252: Front Seat, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

- **Removing**

- Remove front seat rail covers --> **Front seat rail cover, assembly overview**.
- Remove rear seat rail covers --> **Rear seat rail cover, assembly overview**.
- Move front seat - **1** - up and back as far as possible.
- Remove front bolts - **2** - (2x).

- Move seat forward.
- Remove rear bolts - **2** - (2x).

cardiagn.com

CAUTION: Before removing seat: Disconnect battery Ground (GND) strap

- Tilt front seat - **1** - back.
- Disconnect connectors --> **Connectors, disconnecting**.
- Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

2 - Bolts (4x)

- Tightening torque 40 Nm

Front seat with faulty forward and backward seat adjustment motor or defective control unit, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **If possible: Move seat up.**
- **For greater clarity, the illustration shows the seat pan without padding or backrest.**

cardiagn.com

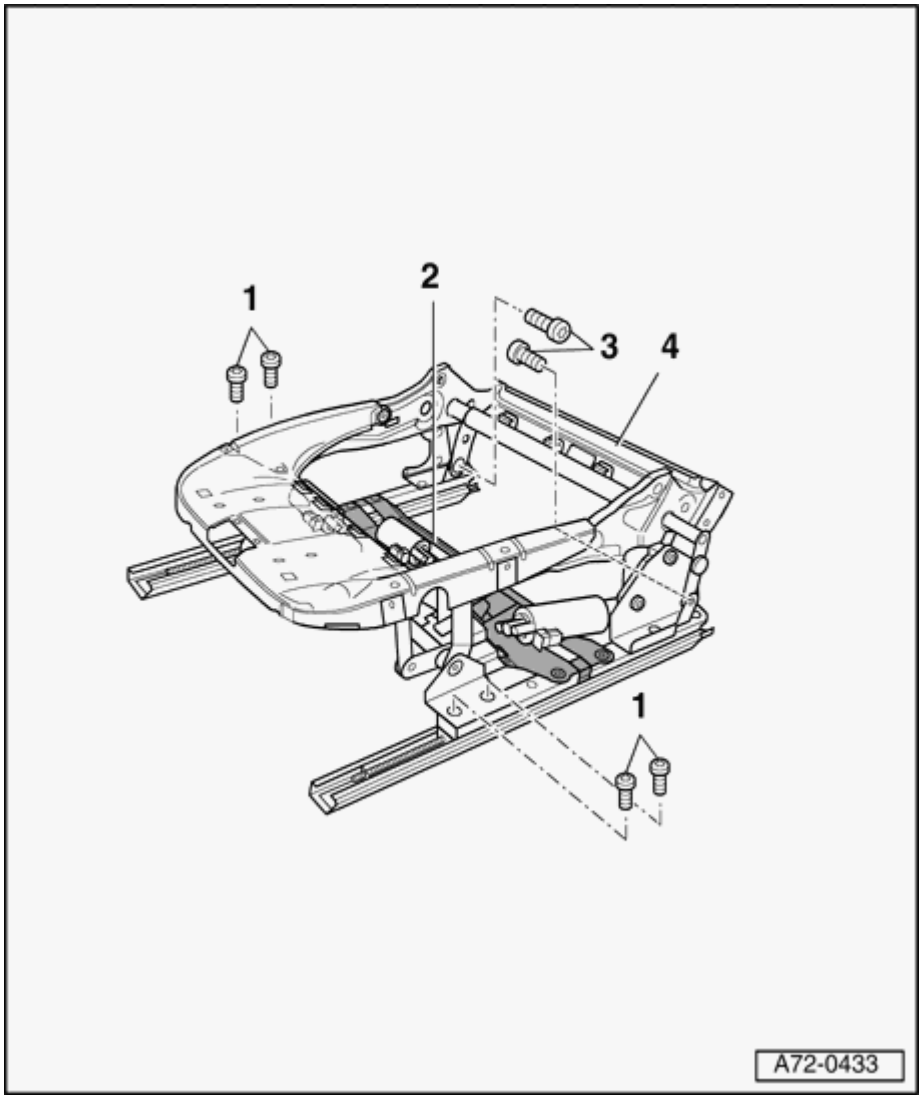


Fig. 253: Front Seat With Faulty Forward And Backward Seat Adjustment Motor Or Defective Control Unit Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Bolts (4x)

- Tightening torque 17 Nm

2 - Motor retaining plate

3 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 19 Nm

4 - Upper seat pan support

cardiagn.com

- **Removing**

- Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).
- Fold seat forwards.
- Remove bolts - **1** - (4x).
- Remove backrest with top support of seat pan.

- For faulty control unit:

- Disconnect connector at forward and backward seat adjustment motor.
- Move the forward and backward seat adjustment motor with an external power source until the bolts are visible.
- Remove bolts.
- Remove control unit --> **Control unit, removing and installing**.

- For faulty forward and backward seat adjustment motor:

- Disconnect connector - **3** -.
- Remove bolts - **4** - (2x) from forward and backward seat adjustment motor.
- Disengage forward and backward seat adjustment motor - **2** - from the two shafts - **1** - and - **5** -.
- Move both seat rails using a power screwdriver via the long shaft -5-, until the concealed bolts are visible.

- Remove bolts.
- Replace the lower seat support with forward and backward seat adjustment motor.

Front seat rail cover, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

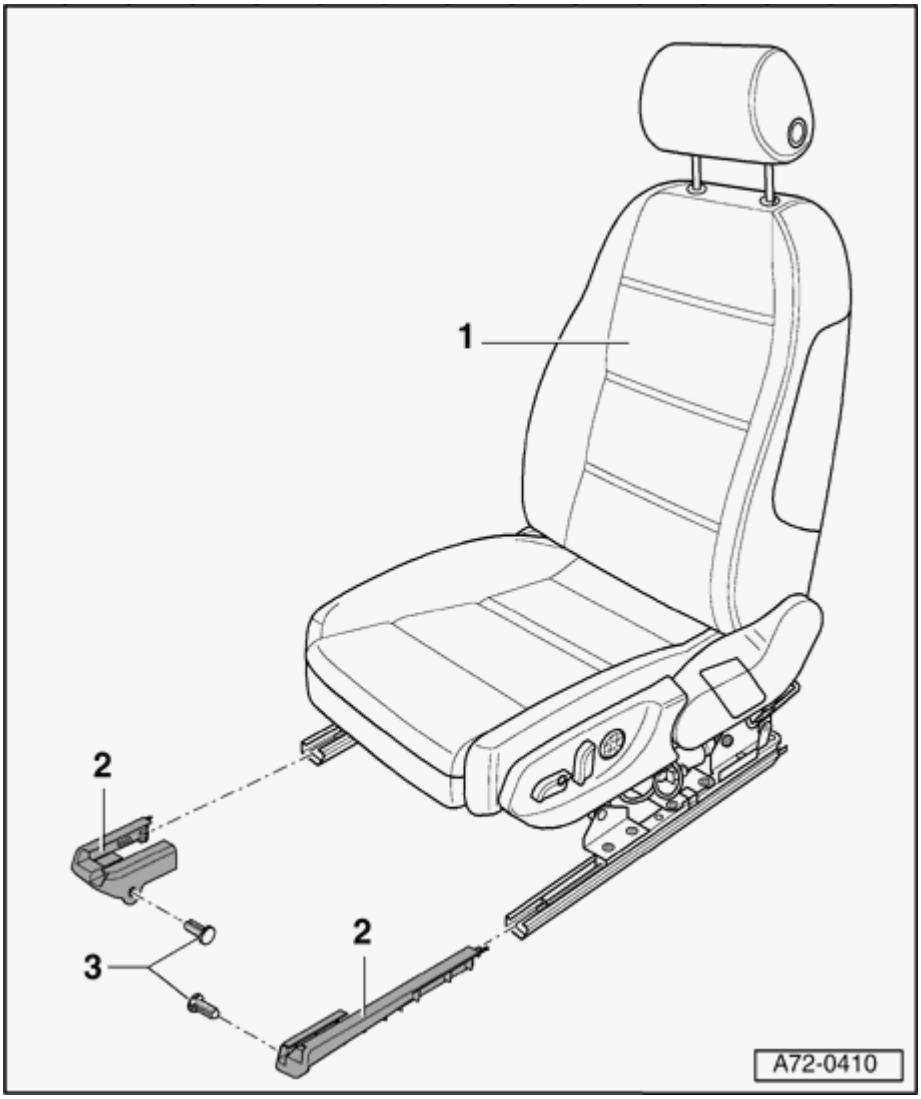


Fig. 254: Front Seat Rail Cover, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Seat rail covers (2x)

- **Removing**

  - Move front seat - **1** - back as far as possible.
  - Remove securing clips - **3** - (2x).
  - Remove seat rail covers - **2** - (2x).

- **Installing**

  - Install in reverse order of removal.

cardiagn.com

3 - Securing clips (2x)

Rear seat rail cover, assembly overview

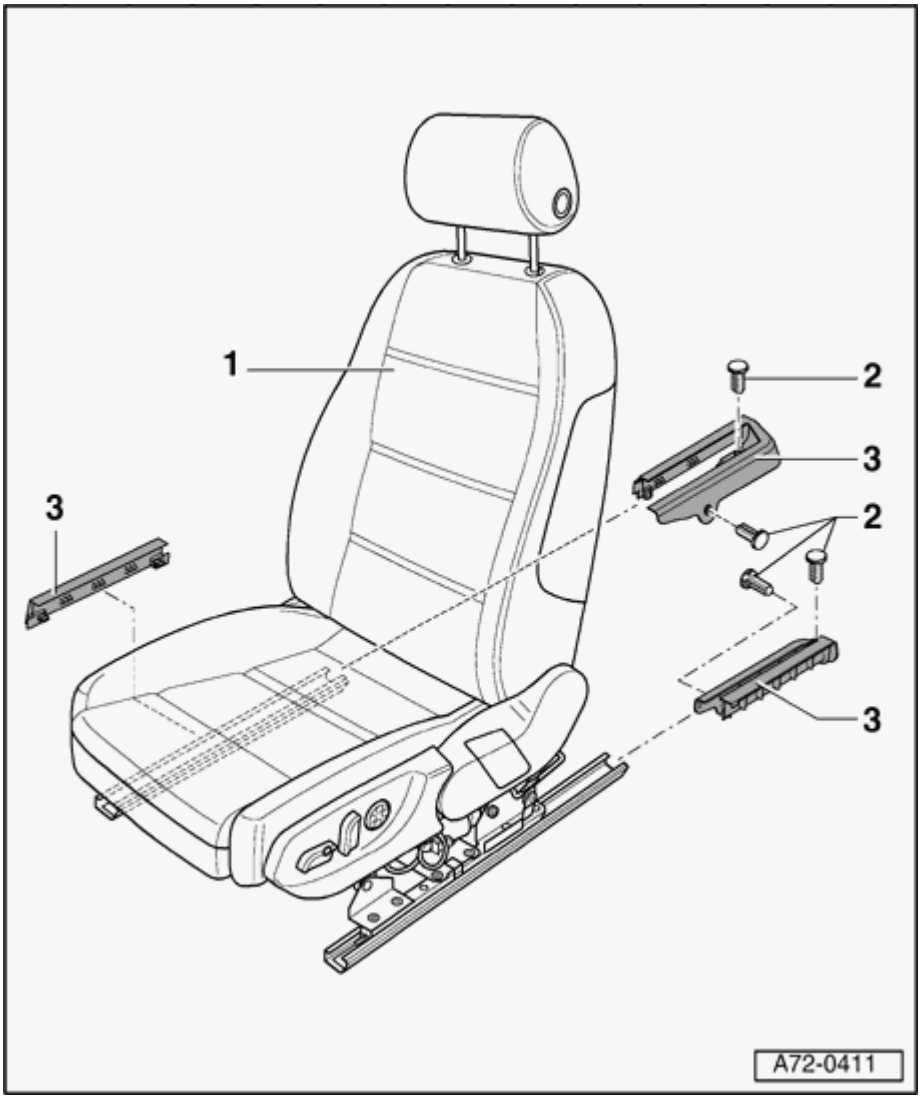


Fig. 255: Rear Seat Rail Cover, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Securing clips (4x)

3 - Seat rail covers (3x)

- **Removing**

  - Move front seat - **1** - forward as far as possible.

cardiagn.com

- Remove securing clips - **2** - (4x).
- Remove seat rail covers - **3** - (3x).

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Connectors, disconnecting

NOTE:

- **The mechanic must electrostatically discharge him/herself before disconnecting ignition and ground (GND) wires (briefly touch closing wedge for door or body).**

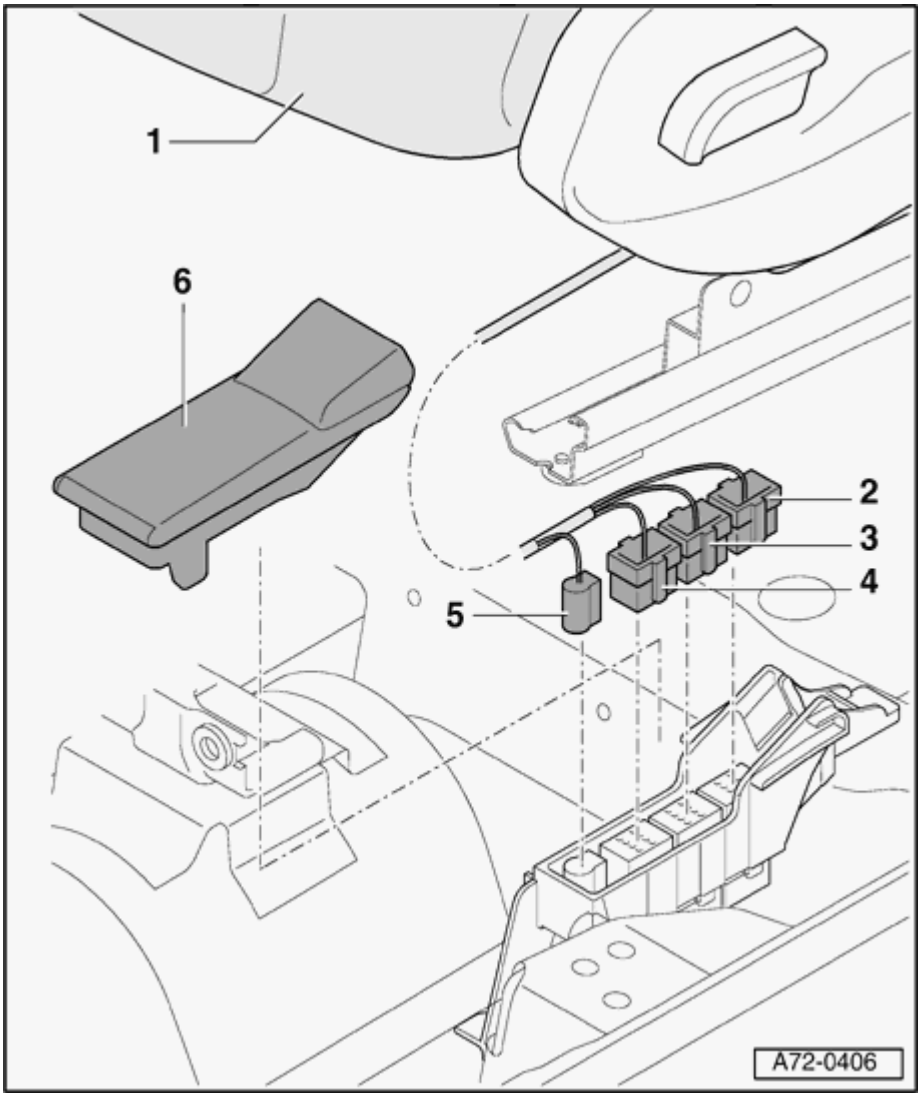


Fig. 256: Disconnecting Connections
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Front seat

2 - Buckle interrogation connector (black)

3 - Seat heating connector (green)

4 - Power supply connector (red)

5 - Airbag connector (yellow)

6 - Connector point cover

- **Removing**

  - Tilt front seat - **1** - back.
  - Remove connection point cover - **6** - upward.
  - Press tab on airbag connector - **5** - inboard side and remove airbag connector - **5** -.
  - Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.
  - Press tab on power supply connector - **4** - inboard side and remove power supply connector - **4** -.
  - Press tab on seat heating connector - **3** - inboard side and remove seat heating connector - **3** -.
  - For vehicles with buckle interrogation: Press in tab on buckle interrogation connector - **2** - inboard side and remove buckle interrogation connector - **2** -.

Airbag adapter VAS 6036 , connecting

cardiagn.com

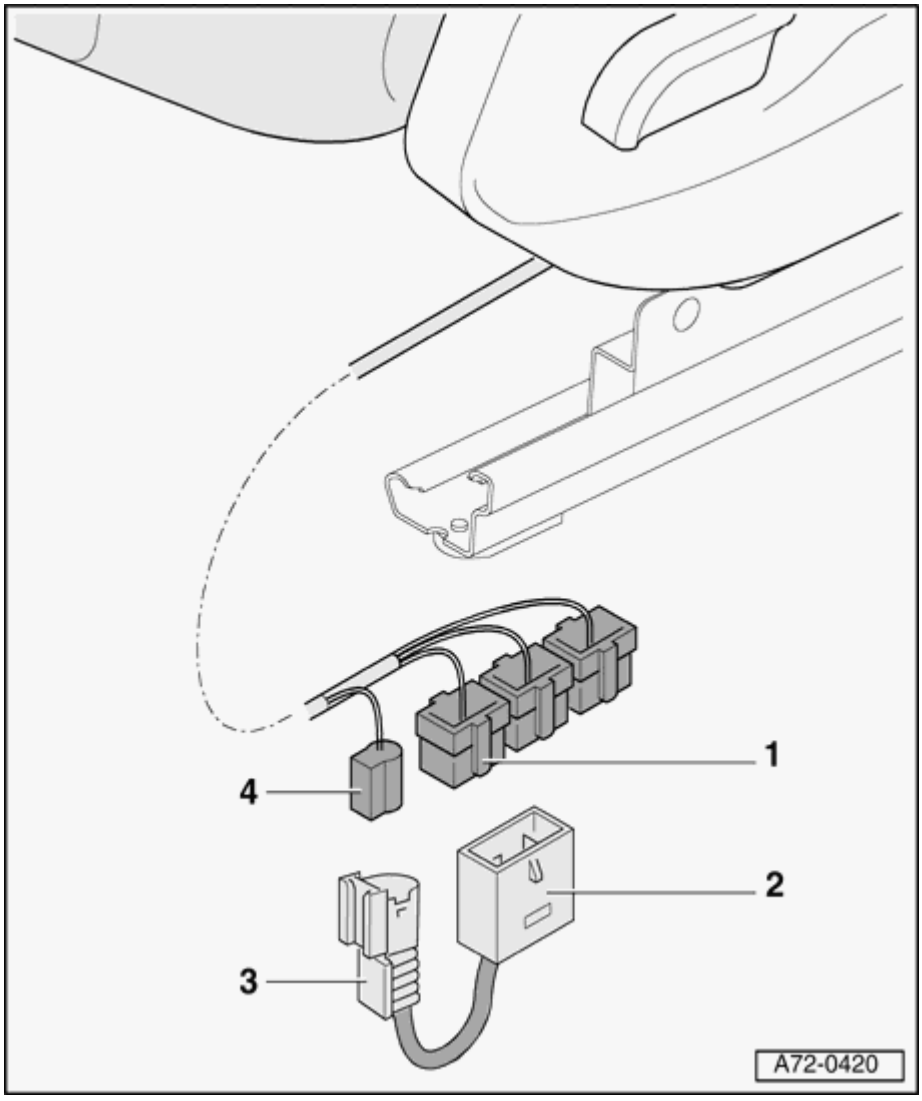


Fig. 257: Identifying Seat Connector Power Supply Connector (Red), Airbag Adapter Power Supply Connector (Red), Airbag Adapter Connector (Yellow) & Airbag Connector (Yellow)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

NOTE:

- **The mechanic must electrostatically discharge him/herself before disconnecting ignition and ground (GND) wires (briefly touch closing wedge for door or body).**

CAUTION: The airbag adapter VAS 6036 must remain connected to the seat until the seat is reinstalled.

1 - Seat connector power supply connector (red)

2 - Airbag adapter power supply connector (red)

cardiagn.com

3 - Airbag adapter connector (yellow)

4 - Airbag connector (yellow)

- Disconnect ignition and Ground (GND) wires.
- Connect airbag connector - **4** - to airbag adapter connector - **3** -.
- If present: Connect the airbag adapter power supply connector - **2** - to the seat connector power supply connector - **1** -.

Connector assignment for connection point

NOTE:

- **Arrow points in direction of travel.**

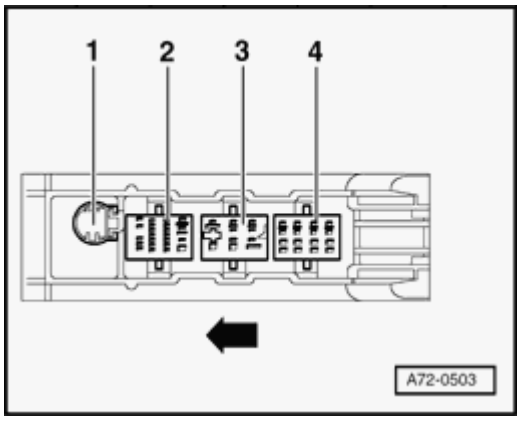


Fig. 258: Connector Assignment For Coupling Station
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- 1 Side airbag
- 2 Power supply
- 3 Seat heating
- 4 Buckle interrogation

Connector for side airbag, disconnecting

cardiagn.com

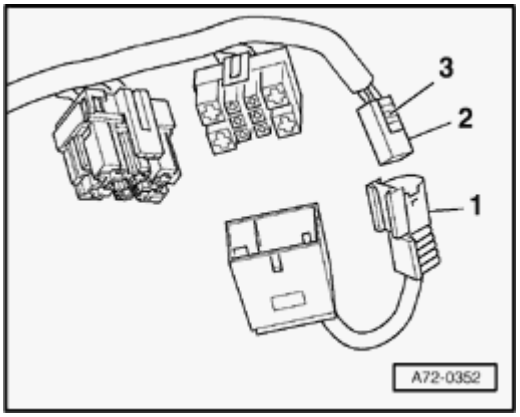


Fig. 259: Side Airbag Connector, Disconnecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press retainer tab - **3** - of airbag connector - **2** - out of airbag adapter connector - **1** - and disconnect airbag connector - **2** -.

NOTE:

- **After connecting the battery observe the necessary measures. -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT, CABRIOLET**
- **If airbag malfunction warning light K75 signals a malfunction after assembly, use vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system VAS 5051 A to interrogate, erase and then again interrogate DTC memory.**

Front seat backrest, assembly overview

CAUTION: Observe relevant safety precautions for vehicles installed with side airbags --> Additional safety precautions for side airbag.

cardiagn.com

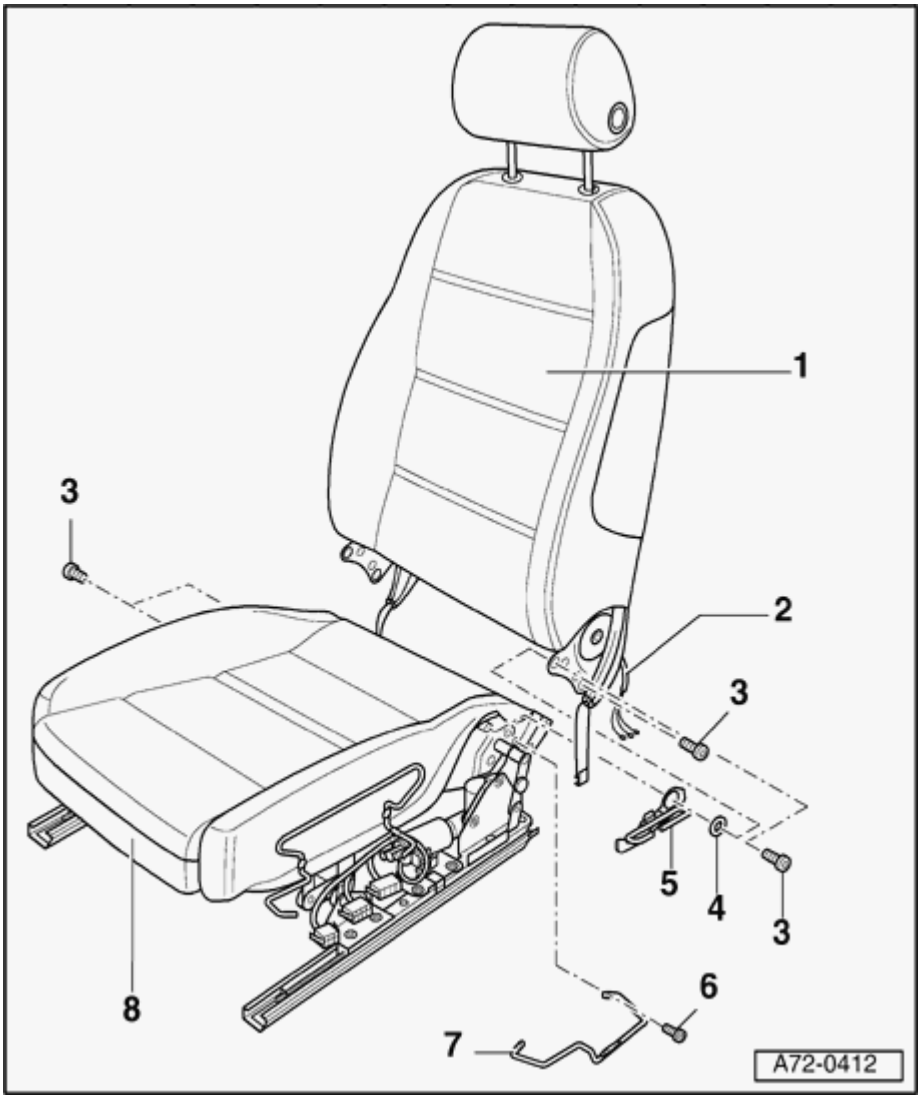


Fig. 260: Front Seat Backrest, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove side trim, outboard side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim, inboard side --> **Side trim, inboard side, assembly overview**.

2 - Wiring harness

cardiagn.com

3 - Bolts (4x)

- Tightening torque 20 Nm

4 - Plastic washer

5 - Bracket

6 - Bolt

7 - Clip

8 - Seat pan

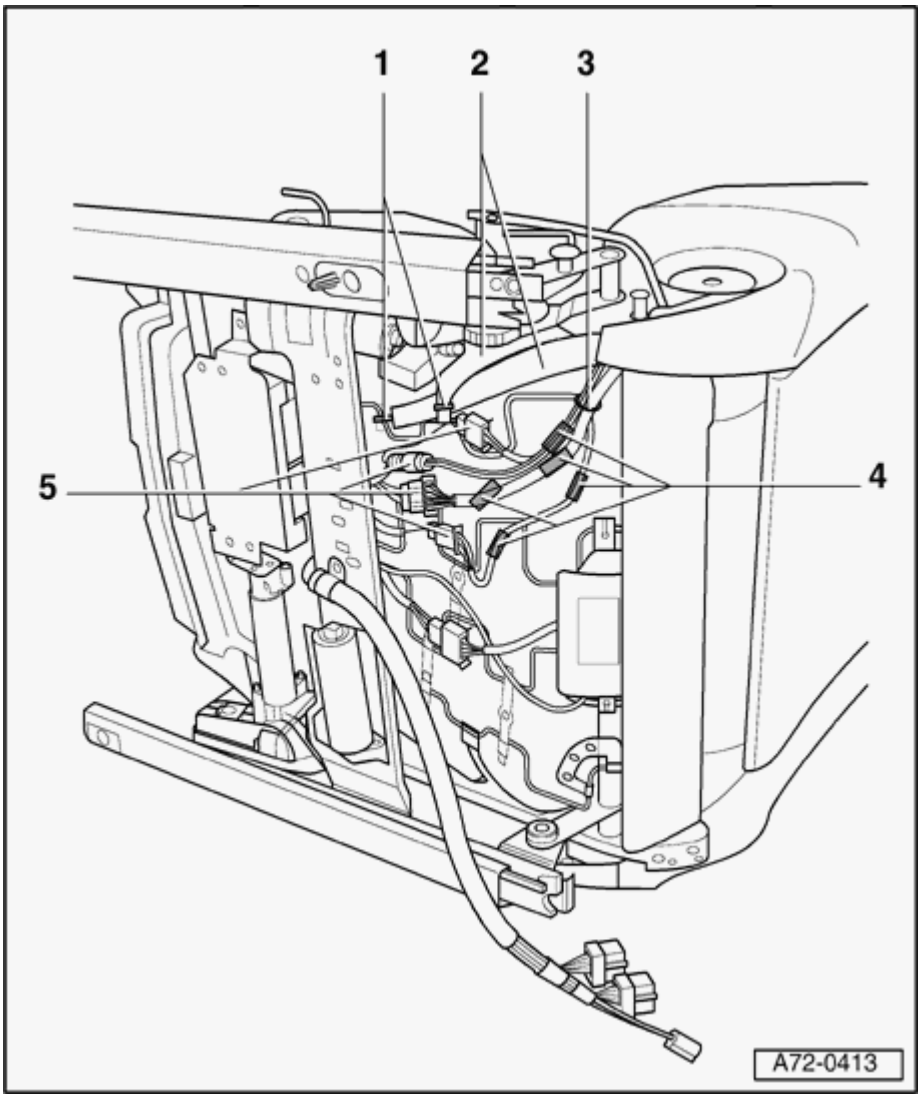


Fig. 261: Identifying Cable Ties, Rubber Straps, Mounting Rails & Connectors
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Cable ties (2x)

- Open cable ties - **1** - (2x).
- Detach rubber straps - **2** - (2x).
- Disconnect connectors - **5** - (4x).
- Remove cable tie - **3** - on wiring harness.
- Detach adhesive strips on mounting rails - **4** - (5x).

2 - Rubber straps (2x)

3 - Cable tie

4 - Mounting rails (5x)

5 - Connectors (4x)

cardiagn.com

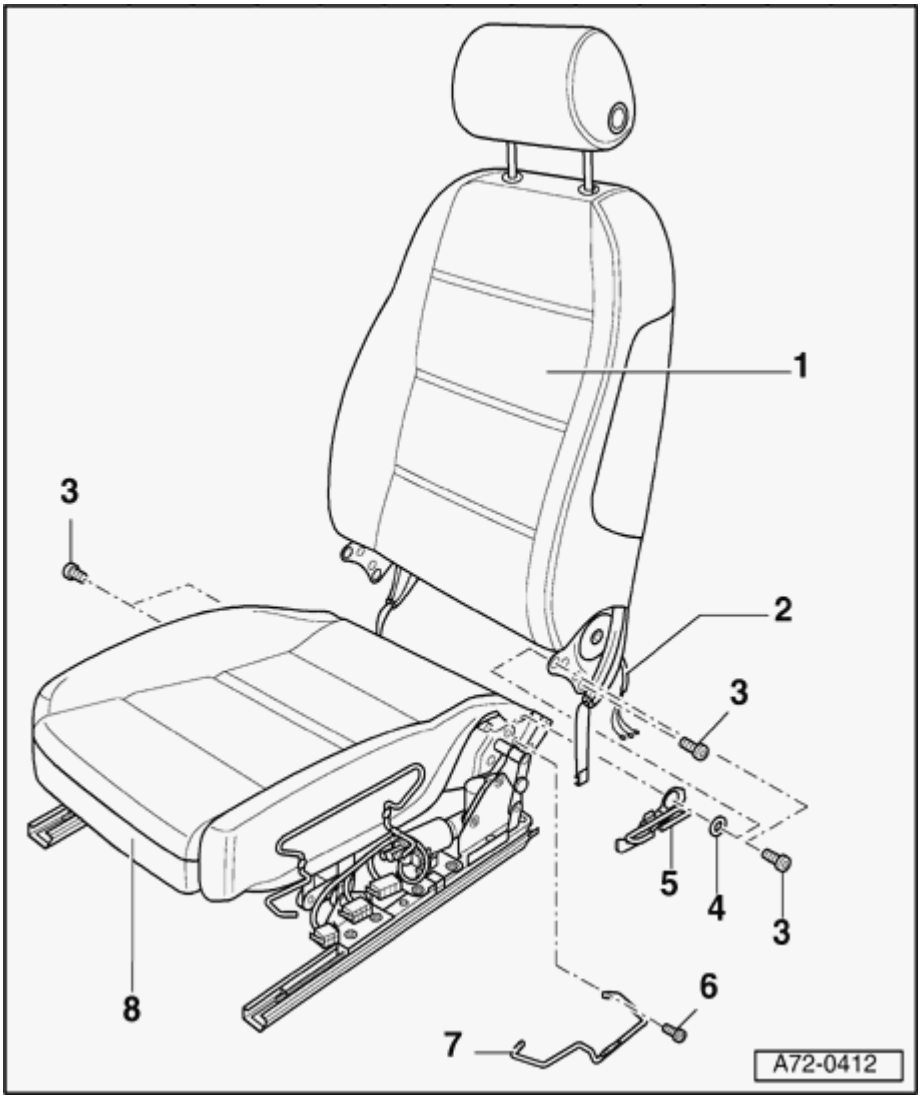


Fig. 262: Front Seat Backrest, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

- **Removing**

  - Remove bolt - **6** -.
  - Twist clip - **7** - upward.
  - Remove bolts - **3** - (4x).
  - Tilt backrest - **1** - forwards onto seat.

  - Move padding to one side and carefully lift wiring harness - **2** - out of seat pan - **8** -.
  - Remove backrest - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing**

  - To instal clip - **5** - : Secure bolt - **6** - firmly to plastic washer - **4** -.
  - Always use new bolts - **3** - (4x).
  - Before inserting bolts - **3** - (4x) recut the thread in the backrest frame.
  - For memory seat: After installing seat in vehicle perform basic setting of backrest and seat.

2 - Wiring harness

3 - Bolts (4x)

- Tightening torque 20 Nm

4 - Plastic packing plate

5 - Bracket

6 - Bolt

7 - Clip

8 - Seat pan

Side trims (outboard side), assembly overview

cardiagn.com

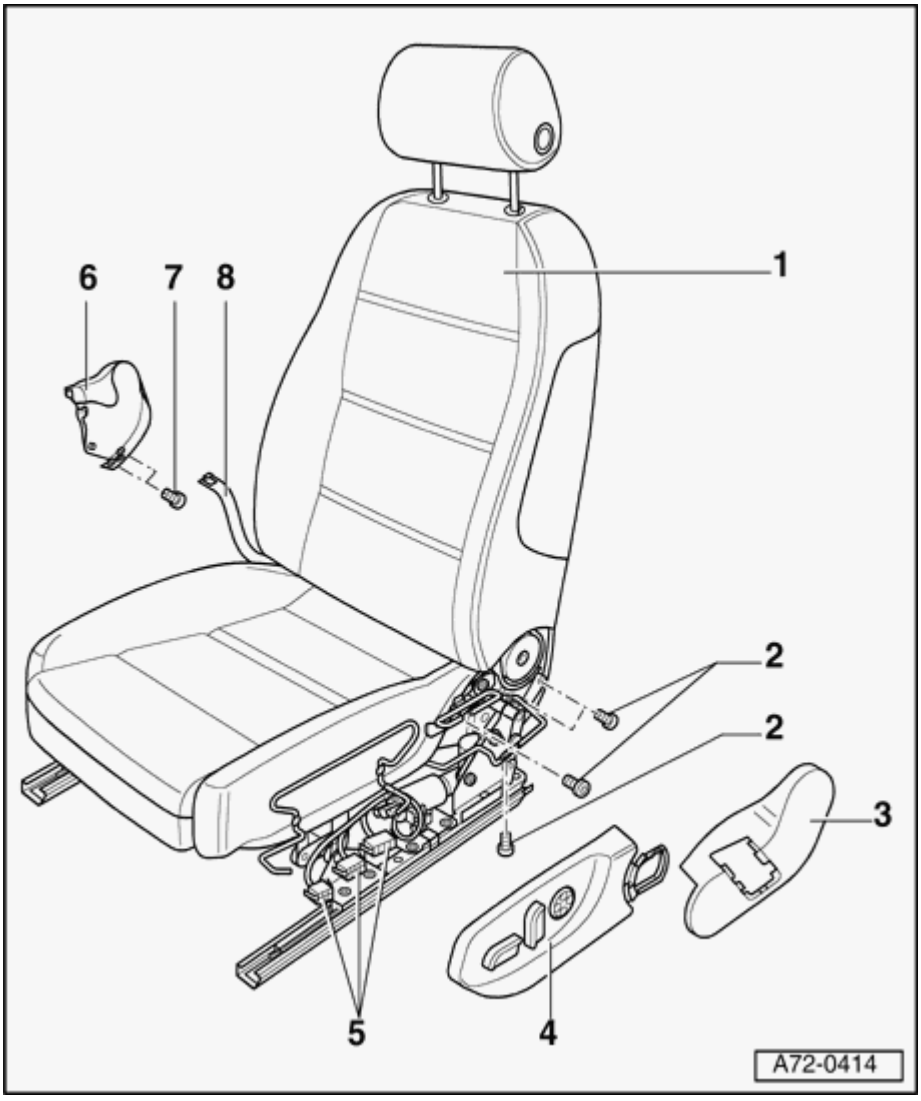


Fig. 263: Side Trims (Outboard Side), Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

2 - Bolts (4x)

3 - Rear side trim, outboard side

4 - Front side trim, outboard side

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Remove bolts - **2** - (4x).
  - Remove rear side trim - **3** - upward.

cardiagn.com

- Remove front side trim - **4** - forward.
- Disconnect connectors - **5** - (3x).

5 - Connector (3x)

6 - Side trim, inboard side

7 - Bolts (2x)

8 - Rubber strap of backrest cover

Side trim, inboard side, assembly overview

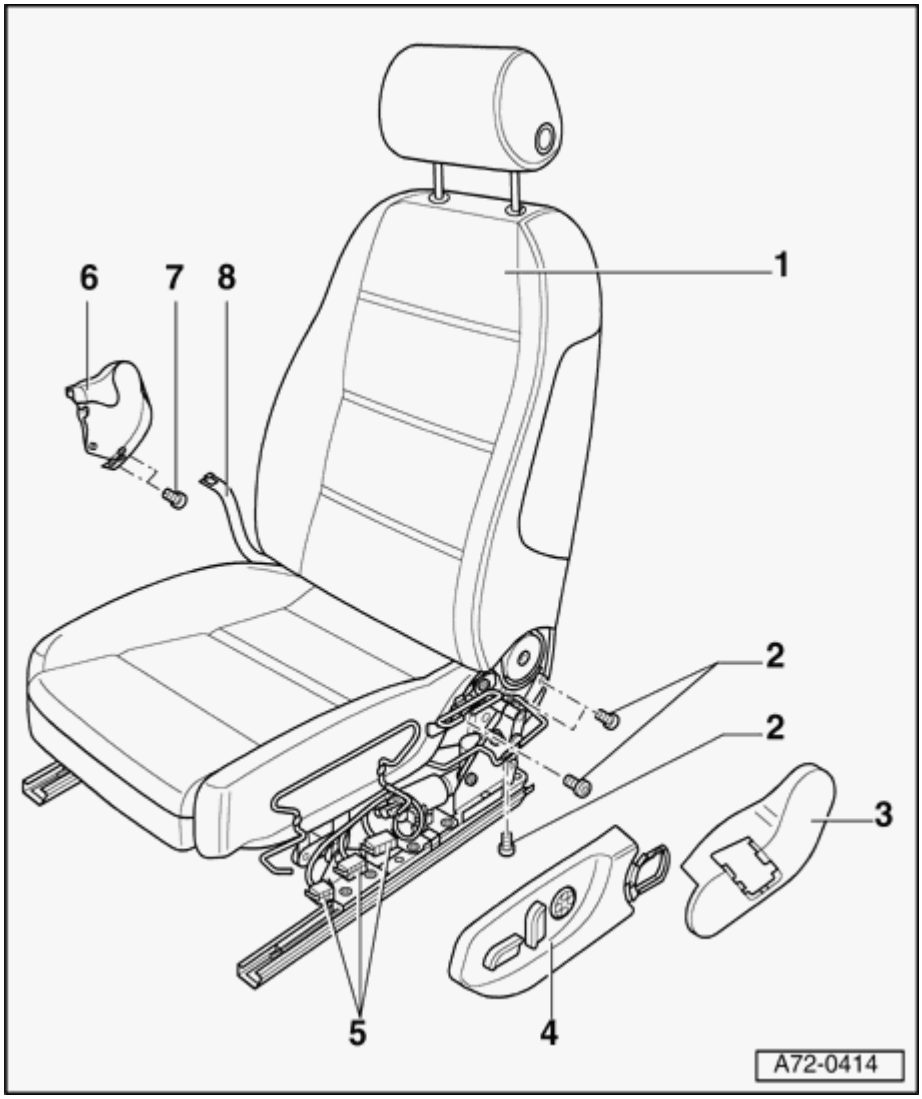


Fig. 264: Side Trim, Inboard Side, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Backrest

2 - Bolts (4x)

3 - Rear side trim, outboard side

4 - Front side trim, outboard side

5 - Connector (3x)

6 - Side trim, inboard side

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Disengage rubber strap of backrest cover - **8** -.
  - Remove bolts - **7** - (2x).
  - Remove side trim - **6** - upward.

7 - Bolts (2x)

8 - Rubber strap of backrest cover

Easy-entry facility, removing and installing

- **Removing**

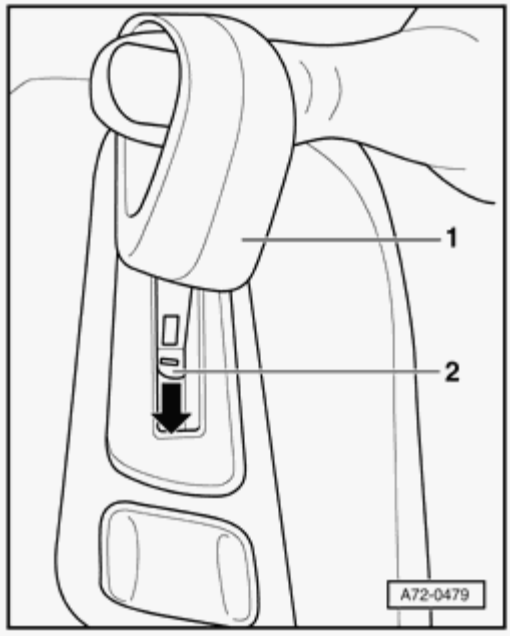


Fig. 265: Removing/Installing Easy-Entry Facility

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press handle - **1** - upward.
- Release tab - **2** - in direction of - **arrow** - using a screwdriver and, at the same time, pull off handle - **1** -.

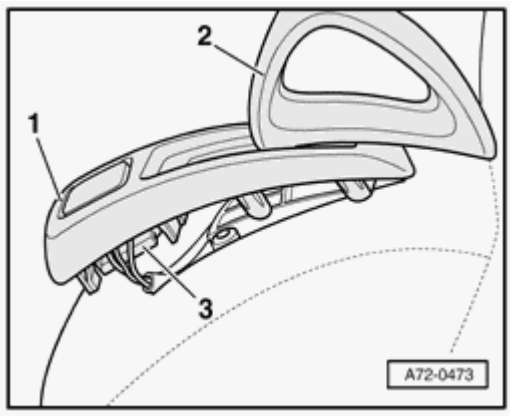


Fig. 266: Identifying Cover Plate, Connector & Cover Plate
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Unclip cover plate - **1** -.
- Disconnect connector - **3** -.
- Remove cover plate - **1** -.

- **Installing**

NOTE:

- **In order to be able to press in the handle, the metal pin in the cover plate aperture must be pushed upward with a screwdriver.**

- Install easy-entry facility in reverse order of removal. Make sure handle - **2** - engages.

Bowden cable for backrest lock, assembly overview

NOTE:

- **For the sake of illustration, the seat is depicted without seat pan in the illustration.**

cardiagn.com

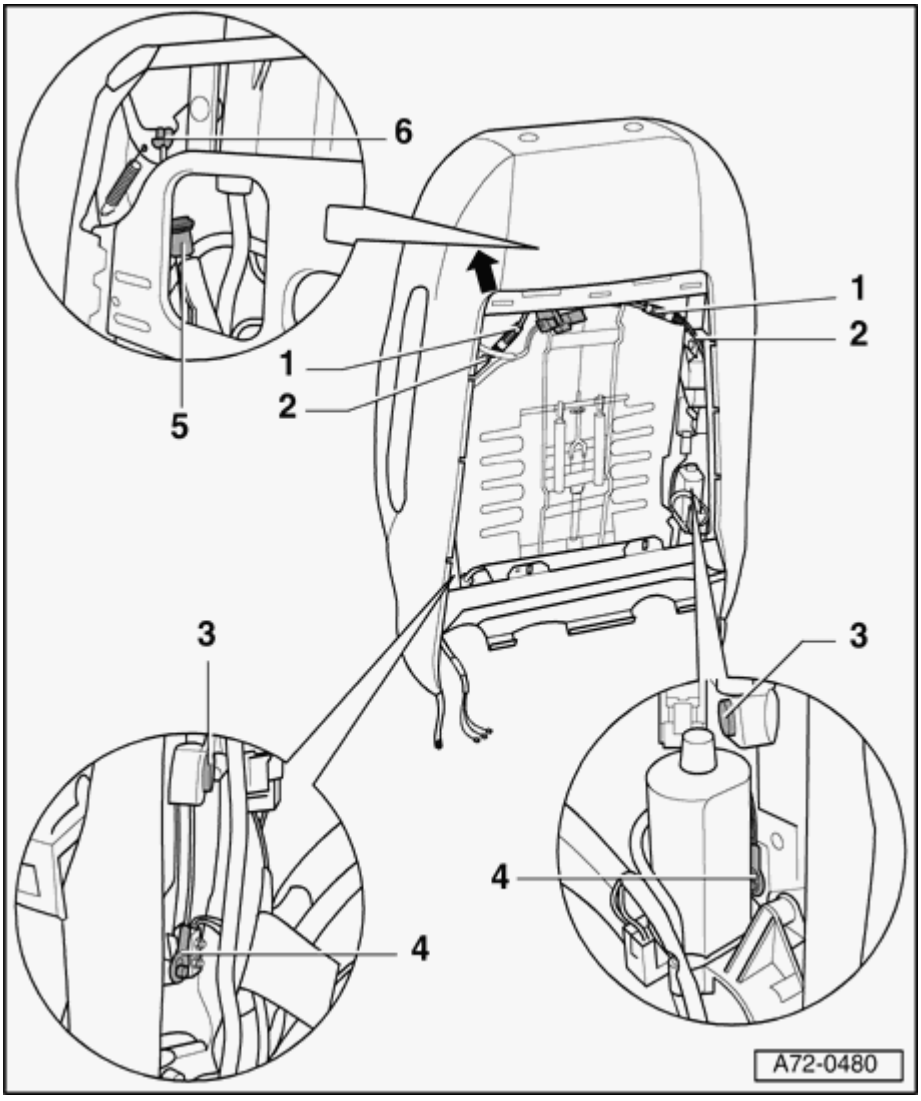


Fig. 267: Bowden Cable For Backrest Lock, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Adjustment devices for Bowden cable (2x)

2 - Bowden cable for backrest lock (2x)

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove backrest panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.

  - Operate the Easy Entry handle of entry assistance and fold backrest forward.

cardiagn.com

- Disengage eyelets - **4** - (2x) at bottom left and right, using pliers.
- Using a screwdriver, pry out left and right retainers - **3** - (2x).
- Remove Bowden cables - **2** - (2x) upward.

- Slide seat cover upward in direction of - **arrow** -.
- Disengage Bowden cables at brackets - **5** - and - **6** -.

- **Installing**

NOTE:

- **For vehicles up to 05.02, VIN: 8H 3K 002 450: To prevent malfunctions of headrest and seatback adjustment, apply a cable tie - 7 -.**

- Install Bowden cable for backrest lock in reverse order of removal.
- Adjust Bowden cables - **1** - (2x) using adjustment devices - **2** - (2x). Ensure that the lower pins at left and right are released simultaneously when the Easy Entry handle of entry assistance is operated.

3 - Retainers (2x)

4 - Eyelets (2x)

5 - Bracket

6 - Bracket

7 - Cable tie

Microswitch for seatback release, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

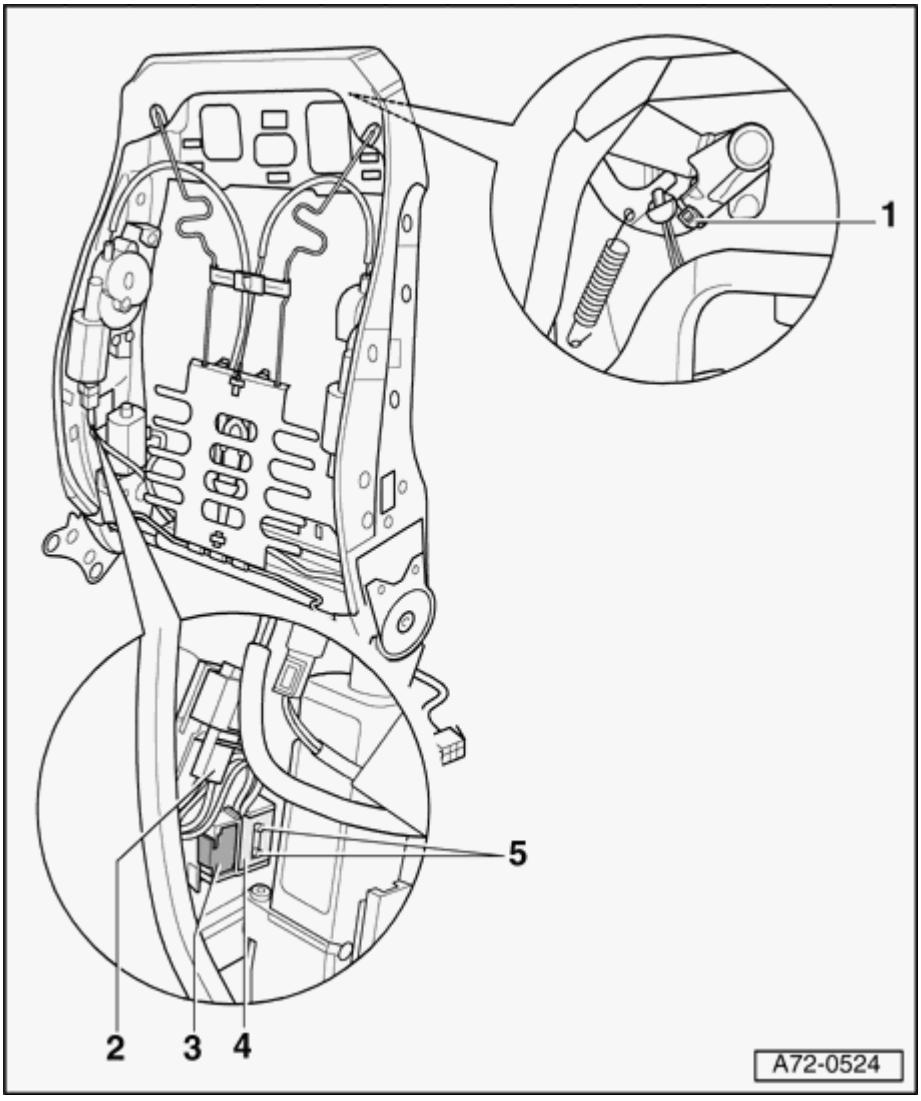


Fig. 268: Microswitch For Seatback Release, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable tie

2 - Connector

3 - Circlip

4 - Microswitch for seatback release

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.

cardiagn.com

- Remove door sill side seat trim --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.
- Remove tunnel side seat trim --> **Side trim, inboard side, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest frame --> **Backrest frame, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest cover and cushion --> **Backrest cover and padding (sports seat, standard seat), removing and installing**.
- Use a screwdriver to pry out circlip - **3** -.
- Press together catches - **5** - (2x) and remove microswitch - **4** -.
- Disconnect connector - **2** -.

- **Installing**

- Press in microswitch - **4** - until the catches - **5** - (2x) engage.
- Connect connector - **2** -.
- Install backrest cover and cushion g --> **Backrest cover and padding (sports seat, standard seat), removing and installing**.
- Install backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Install seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Adjust microswitch for seatback release --> **Microswitch for seatback release, adjusting**.
- Insert the circlip - **3** -.
- Install backrest frame --> **Backrest frame, assembly overview**.
- Install backrest panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.

5 - Catches (2x)

Microswitch for seatback release, adjusting

NOTE:

- **For vehicles up to 05.02, VIN: 8H 3K 002 450: To prevent malfunctions of headrest and seatback adjustment, apply a cable tie - 1 -.**

cardiagn.com

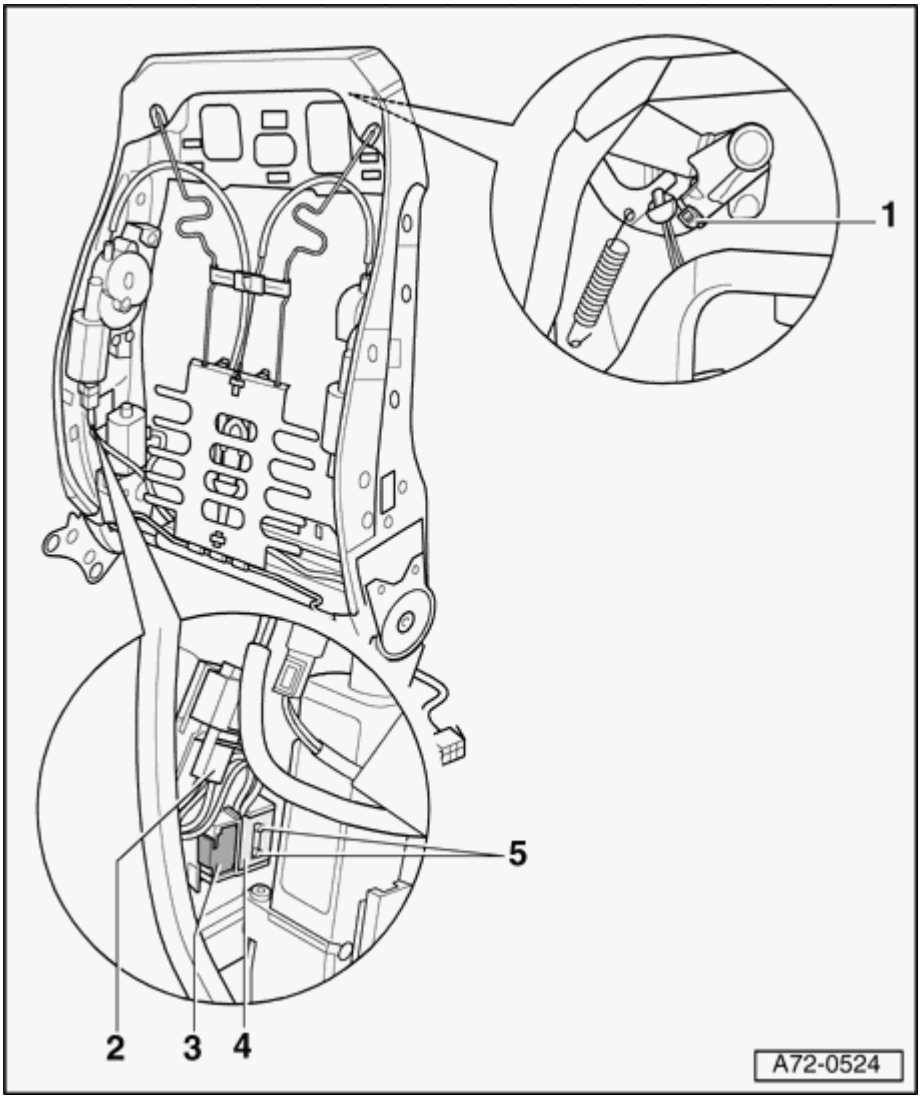


Fig. 269: Microswitch For Seatback Release, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable tie

2 - Connector

3 - Circlip

4 - Microswitch for seatback release

- Adjusting and checking function

  - Remove backrest panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.
  - Use a screwdriver to pry out circlip - **3** -.
  - Slide microswitch - **4** - only far enough so that backrest is switched off when release lever is lifted 1/3.

cardiagn.com

- Check backrest function at adjustment switch:

- Backrest is not activated when backrest release lever is lifted to 1/3.
- Backrest is activated when release lever is in rest position.
- Correct the position of microswitch - **4** - as necessary and check its function again.

5 - Catches (2x)

Microswitch for headrest, assembly overview

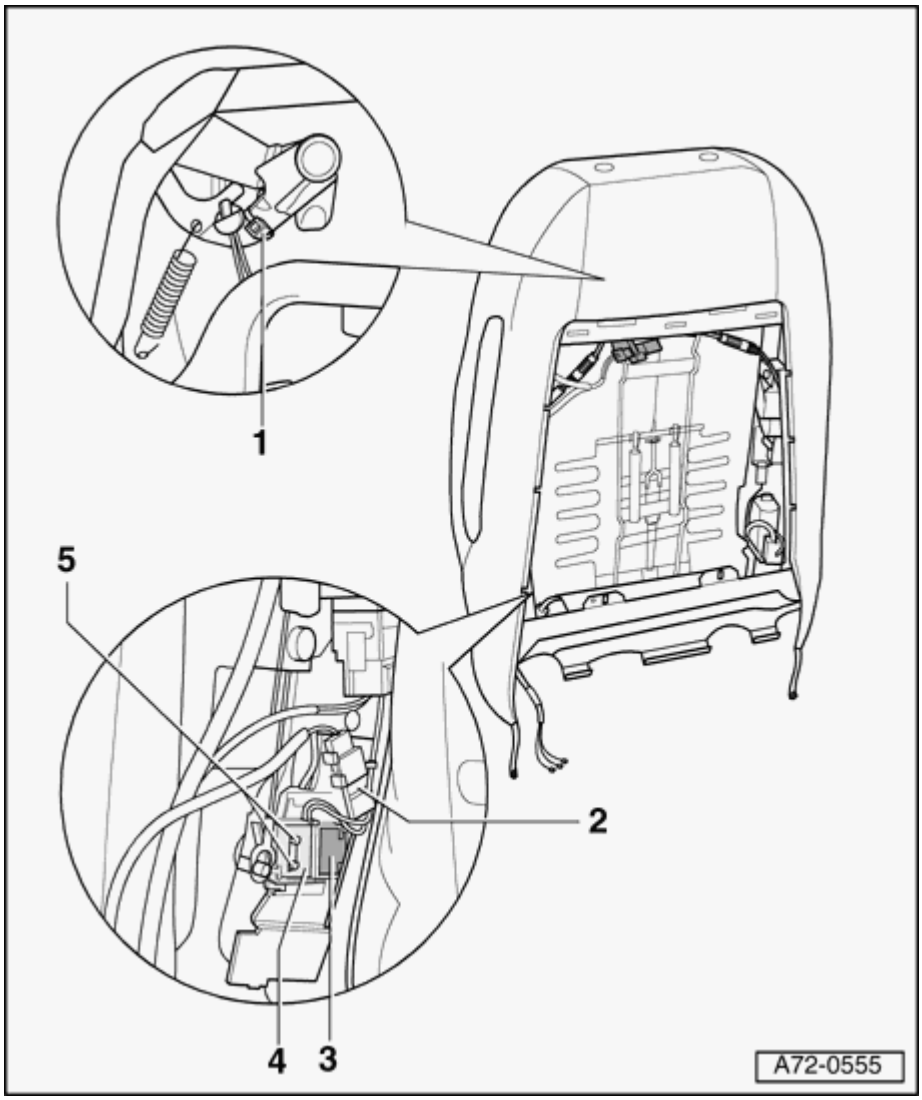


Fig. 270: Microswitch For Headrest, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable tie

2 - Connector

cardiagn.com

3 - Circlip

4 - Microswitch for headrest

- **Removing**

  - Remove backrest panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.
  - Use a screwdriver to pry out circlip - **3** -.
  - Press together catches - **5** - (2x) and remove microswitch - **4** -.
  - Disconnect connector - **2** -.

- **Installing**

  - Press in microswitch - **4** - until the catches - **5** - (2x) engage.
  - Connect connector - **2** -.
  - Install seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Adjust microswitch for headrest --> **Microswitch for headrest, adjusting**.

  - Insert the circlip - **3** -.
  - Install backrest panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.

5 - Catches (2x)

Microswitch for headrest, adjusting

NOTE:

- **For vehicles up to 05.02, VIN: 8H 3K 002 450: To prevent malfunctions of headrest and seatback adjustment, apply a cable tie - 1 -.**

cardiagn.com

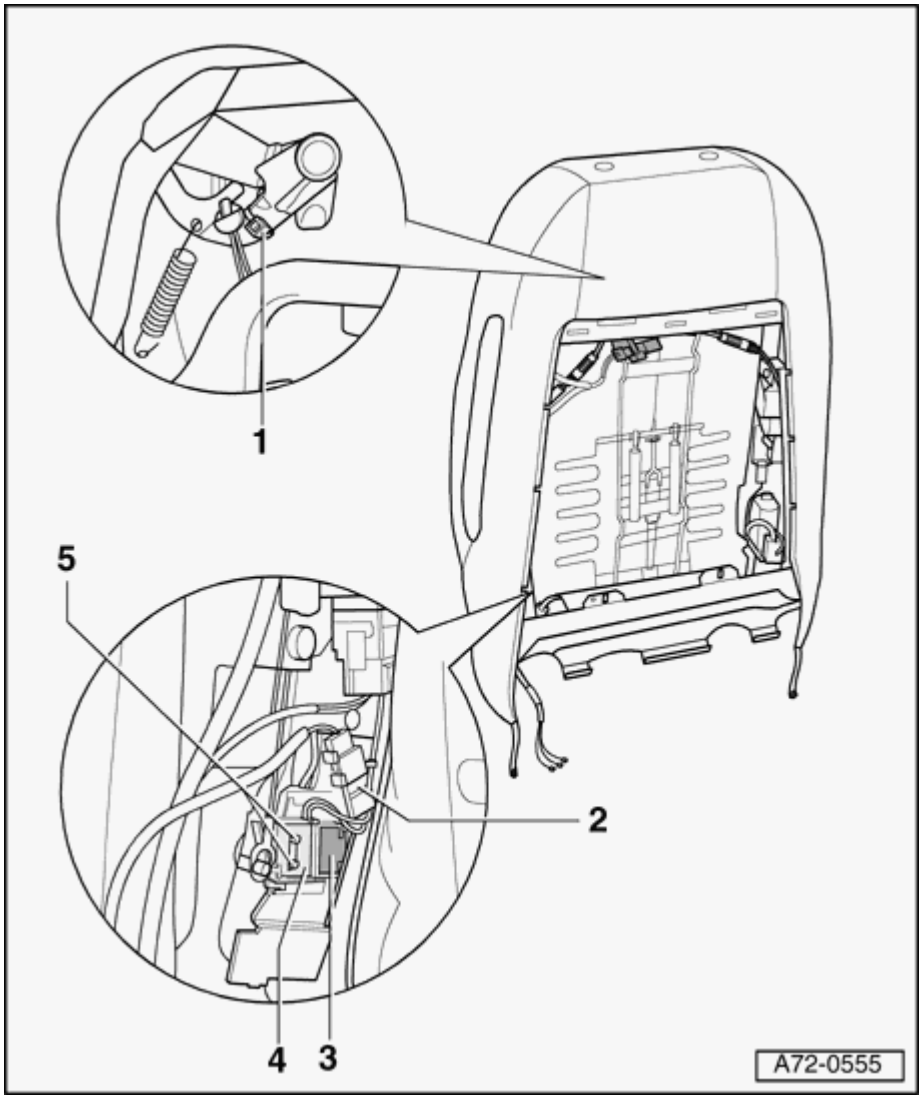


Fig. 271: Microswitch For Headrest, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable tie

2 - Connector

3 - Circlip

4 - Circlip

- Adjusting and checking function

  - Remove backrest panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.
  - Use a screwdriver to pry out circlip - **3** -.
  - Slide microswitch - **4** - only far enough so that headrest is moved downward and switched off when

cardiagn.com

release lever is lifted 1/3.

- Check function of headrest at adjustment switch:

- Headrest is not activated when backrest release lever is lifted to 1/3.
- Headrest is activated when release lever is in rest position.
- Correct the position of microswitch - **4** - as necessary and check its function again.

5 - Catches (2x)

Backrest (standard seat), replacing

NOTE:

- **Sports backrest only is available as replacement part. Convert the sports backrest for the standard seat.**

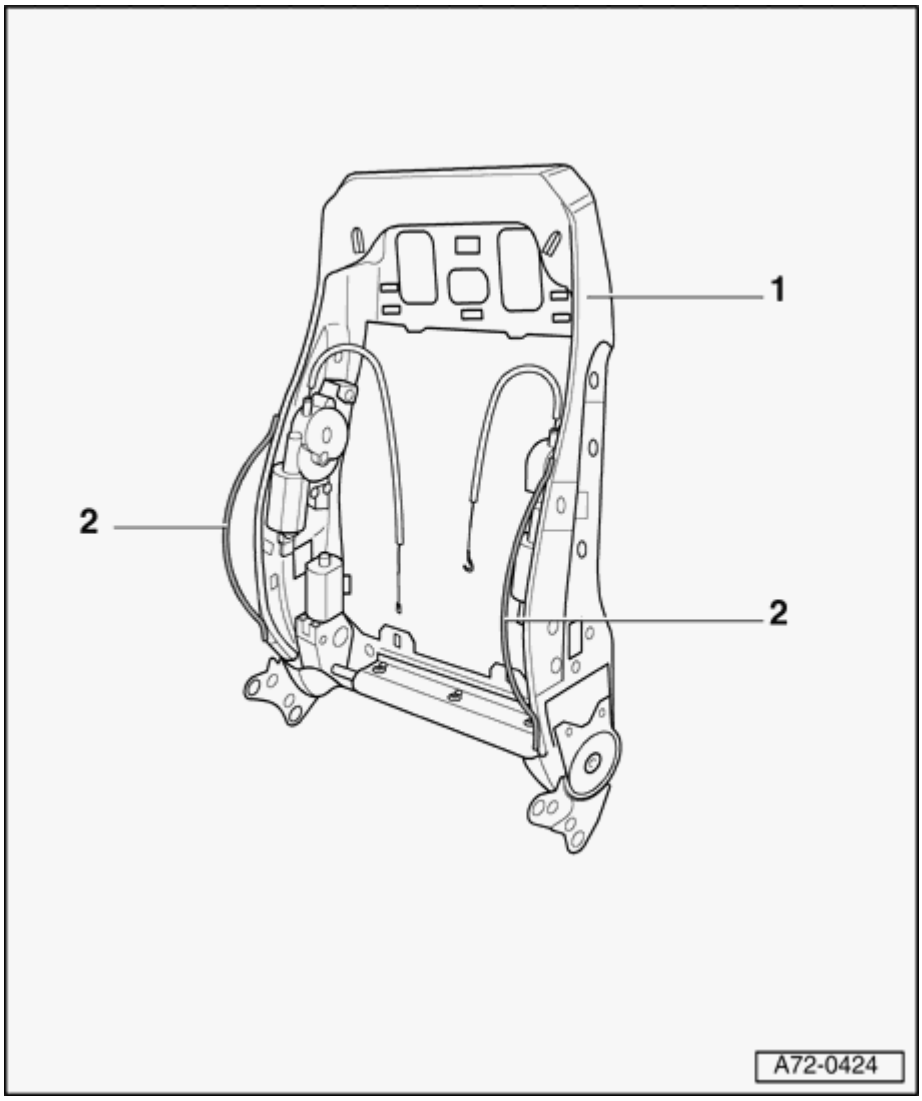


Fig. 272: Backrest (Standard Seat), Replacing

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Sports backrest

- Conversion

  - Detach wire clips - **2** - (2x) from sports seat backrest - **1** -.
  - Paint layer must be replicated and, if necessary, the protection measures against corrosion must be performed.

2 - Wire clips (2x)

Seat pan (standard seat), replacing

NOTE:

- **Sports seat pan only is available as replacement part. Convert the sports seat pan for the standard seat.**

cardiagn.com

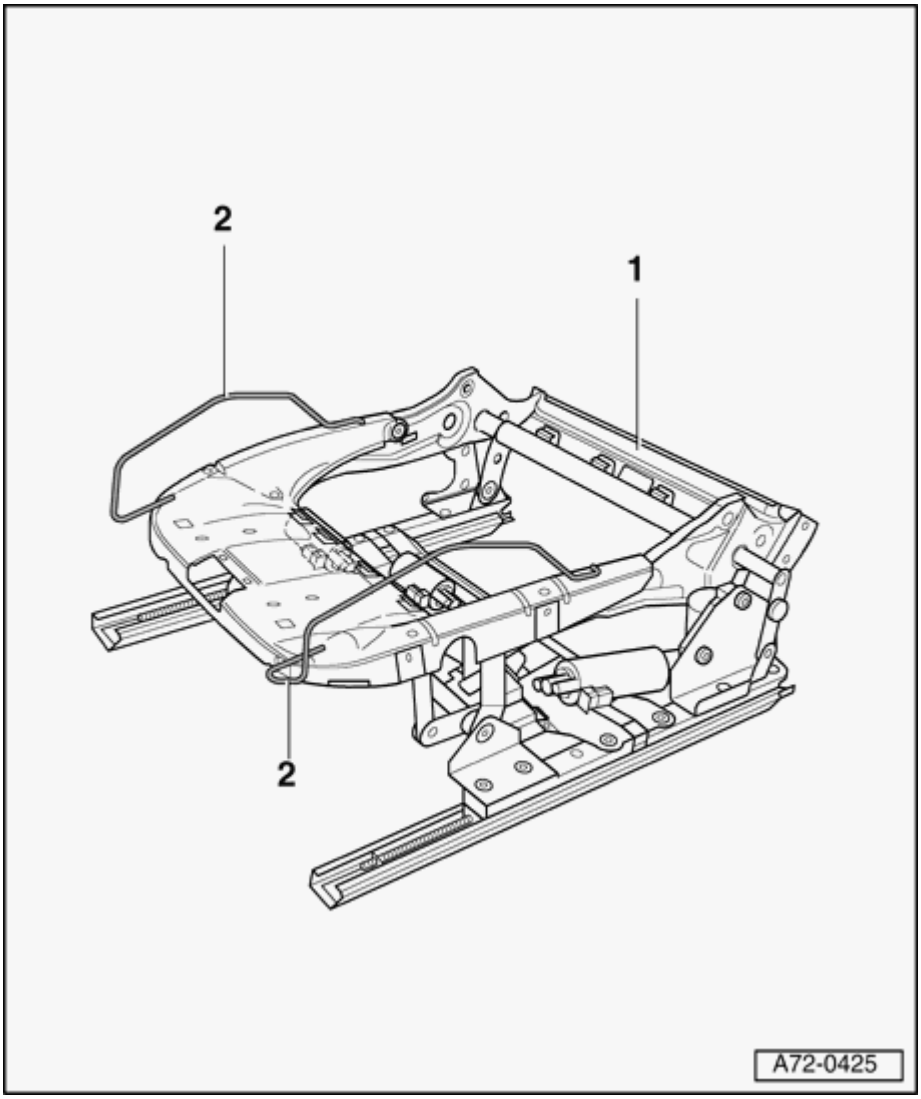


Fig. 273: Seat Pan (Standard Seat), Replacing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Sports seat pan

- Conversion

  - Detach wire clips - **2** - (2x) from sports seat pan - **1** -.
  - Paint layer must be replicated and, if necessary, the protection measures against corrosion must be performed.

2 - Wire clips (2x)

Guide for side airbag, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

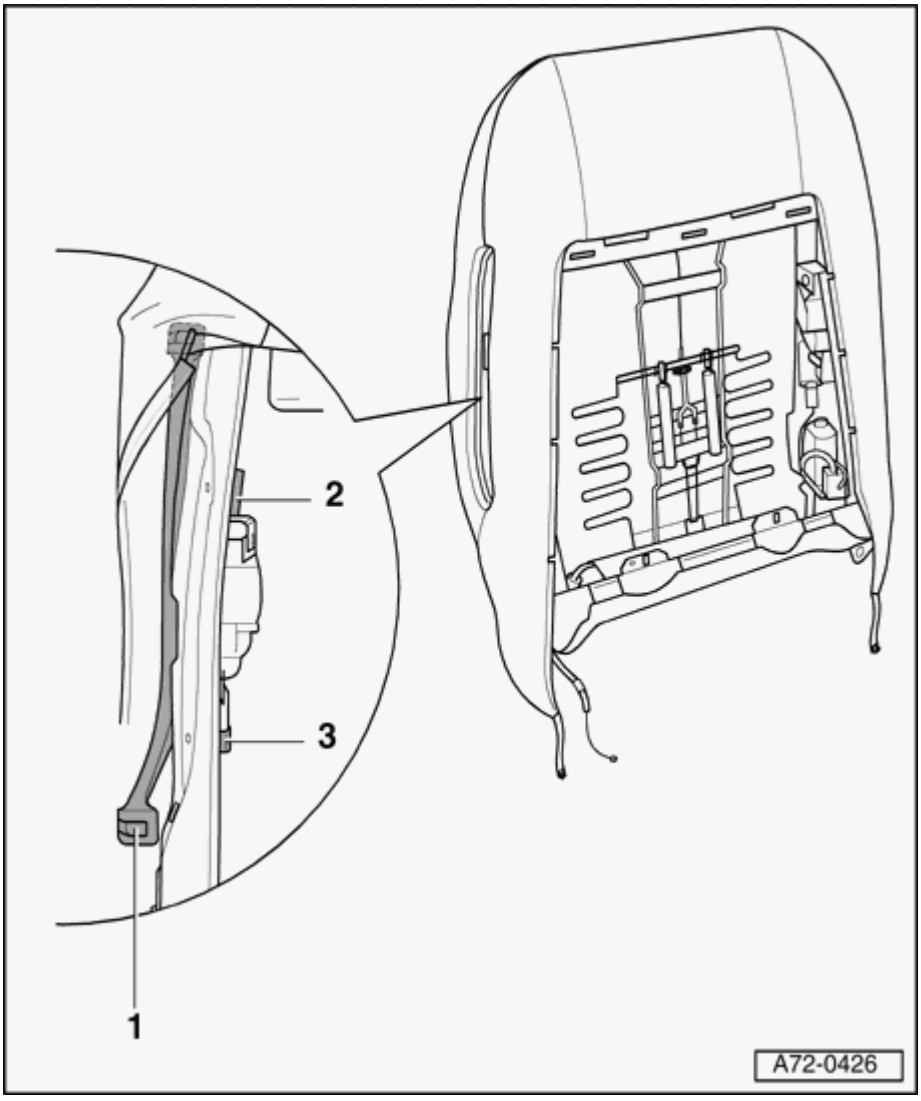


Fig. 274: Guide For Side Airbag, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Guide for side airbag

- **Removing**

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.

- Remove side airbag --> **Side airbag (electric seat), assembly overview**.
- Press clip - **3** - together and remove clip - **3** -.
- Pry out the retainer - **2** - from inside.

cardiagn.com

- Detach the side airbag guide - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

2 - Retainer

3 - Clip

Seat adjustment switch, removing and installing

- **Removing**

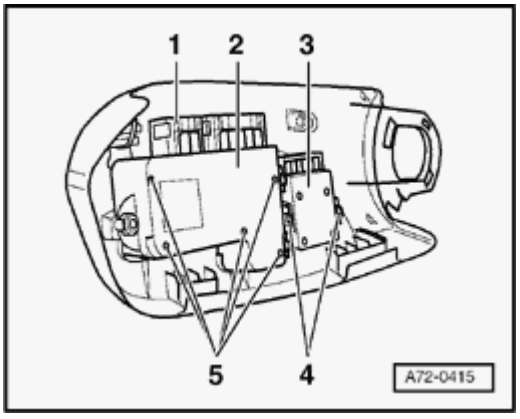


Fig. 275: Seat Adjustment Switch Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Remove seat side trim, outboard side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.
- Remove bolts - **5** - (5x). Tightening torque 1.5 Nm
- Detach seat adjustment switch - **2** -.

- Remove the connection board with connectors - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Switch for 4-way lumbar support, removing and installing

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

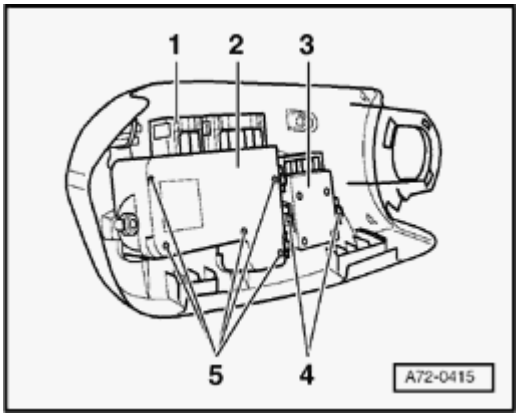


Fig. 276: Switch For 4-Way Lumbar Support Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Remove seat side trim, outboard side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.
- Remove bolts - **4** - (2x). Tightening torque 0.4 Nm
- Detach switch for 4-way lumbar support - **3** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Control unit, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **The control unit for the memory seat and the electric seat is under the drivers seat.**
- **If the control unit is defective, the top support of the seat pan and backrest must be removed --> Front seat with faulty forward and backward seat adjustment motor or defective control unit, removing and installing.**

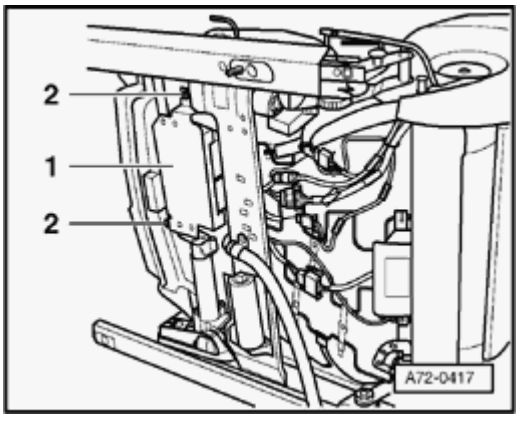


Fig. 277: Identifying Bolts & Control Module
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x). Tightening torque 1.5 Nm
- Turn control unit - **1** - over.

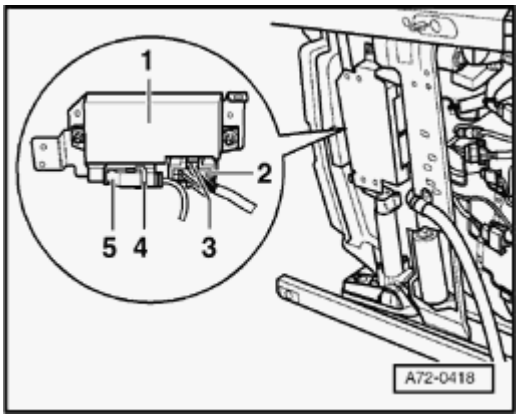


Fig. 278: Identifying Retaining Bracket, Connectors, Catches & Control Module
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage retaining clip - **4** - and disconnect connector - **5** -.
- Press retainer tabs - **3** - (2x) and disconnect connector - **2** -.
- Remove control unit - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Forward and backward seat adjustment motor, assembly overview

NOTE:

- **If the motor is faulty, the top support of the seat pan must be replaced --> Front seat with faulty forward and backward seat adjustment motor or defective control unit, removing and installing.**

cardiagn.com

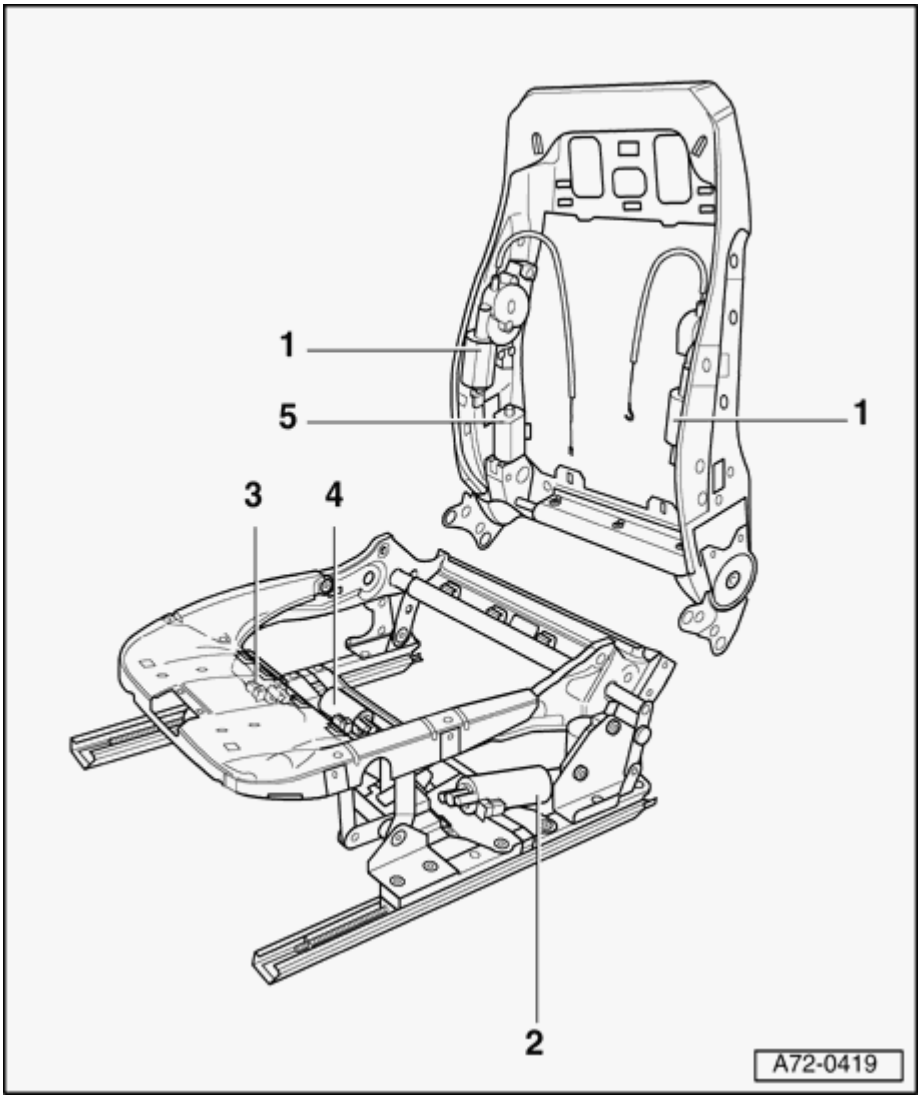


Fig. 279: Forward And Backward Seat Adjustment Motor, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Lumbar support adjustment motors (2x)

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

3 - Seat inclination adjustment motor

4 - Forward and backward seat adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor

Seat height adjustment motor, assembly overview

NOTE:

- **If the motor is faulty, the top support of the seat pan must be replaced.**

cardiagn.com

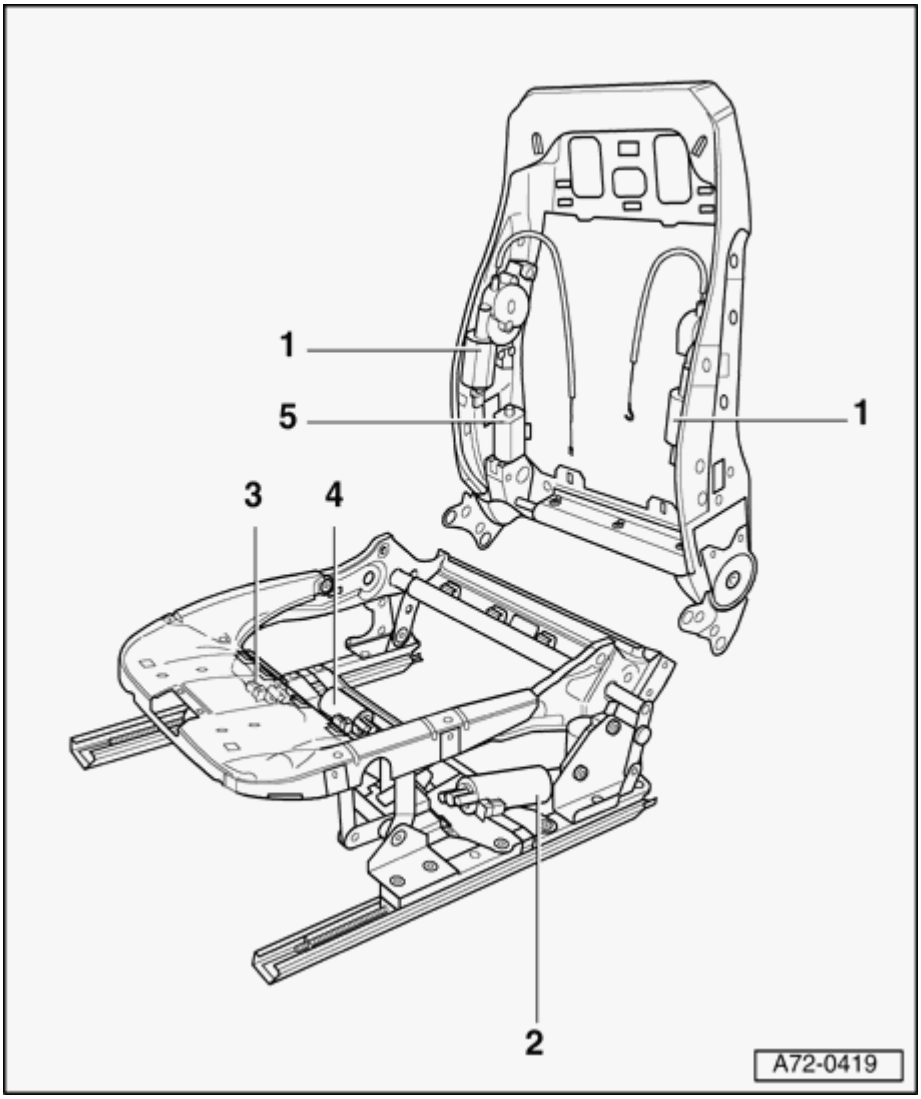


Fig. 280: Seat Height Adjustment Motor, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Lumbar support adjustment motors (2x)

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove side trim, outboard side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.

  - Remove side trim, inboard side --> **Side trim, inboard side, assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Seat pan cover and padding (sports seat), assembly overview**.
- Remove control unit --> **Control unit, removing and installing**.

- Remove belt buckle --> **Front anchorage point for belt buckle**.
- Remove spring pad with wiring harness from seat pan --> **Seat pan spring pad with wiring harness, assembly overview**.
- Detach the upper seat pan support from the lower seat pan support.

3 - Seat inclination adjustment motor

4 - Forward and backward seat adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor

Forward and backward seat adjustment motor, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

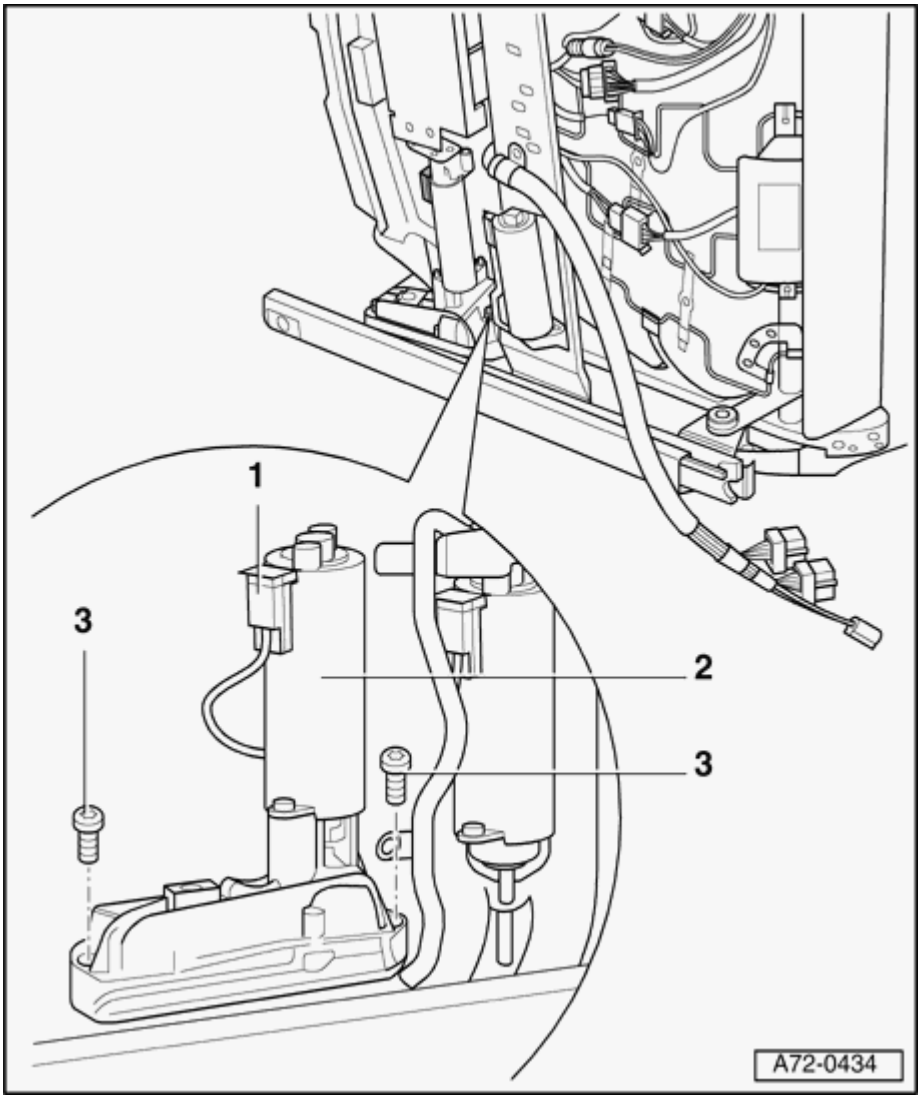


Fig. 281: Forward And Backward Seat Adjustment Motor, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Connector

2 - Seat inclination adjustment motor

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove control unit --> **Control unit, removing and installing**.

  - Disconnect connector - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).
- Remove seat inclination adjustment motor - **2** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

3 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 10 Nm

4 - Forward and backward seat adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor

Seat cushion extension (sports seat), assembly overview

cardiagn.com

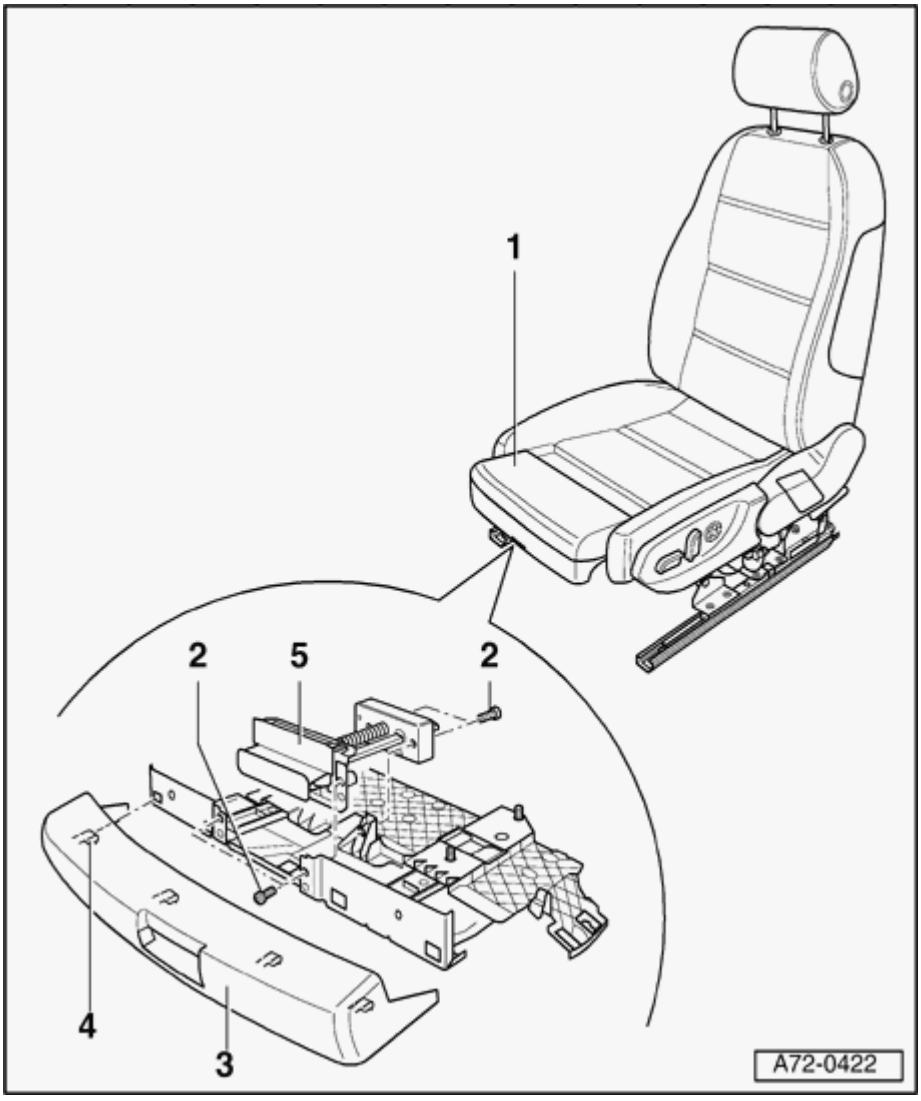


Fig. 282: Seat Cushion Extension (Sports Seat), Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat cushion extension

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Detach cover and padding from seat pan --> **Seat pan cover and padding (sports seat), assembly overview**.
  - Detach seat cushion extension from cover and padding --> **Seat pan cover and padding (sports seat), assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing**
  - Installation is in reverse order of removal.

2 - Bolts (4x)

3 - Panel

- **Removing**
  - Pry clips - **4** - (4x) off trim - **3** -.
- **Installing**
  - Installation is in reverse order of removal.

4 - Clips (4x)

5 - Handle

- **Removing**
  - Remove bolts - **2** - (4x).
  - Remove handle - **5** -.
- **Installing**
  - Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Motor for backrest inclination adjustment, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

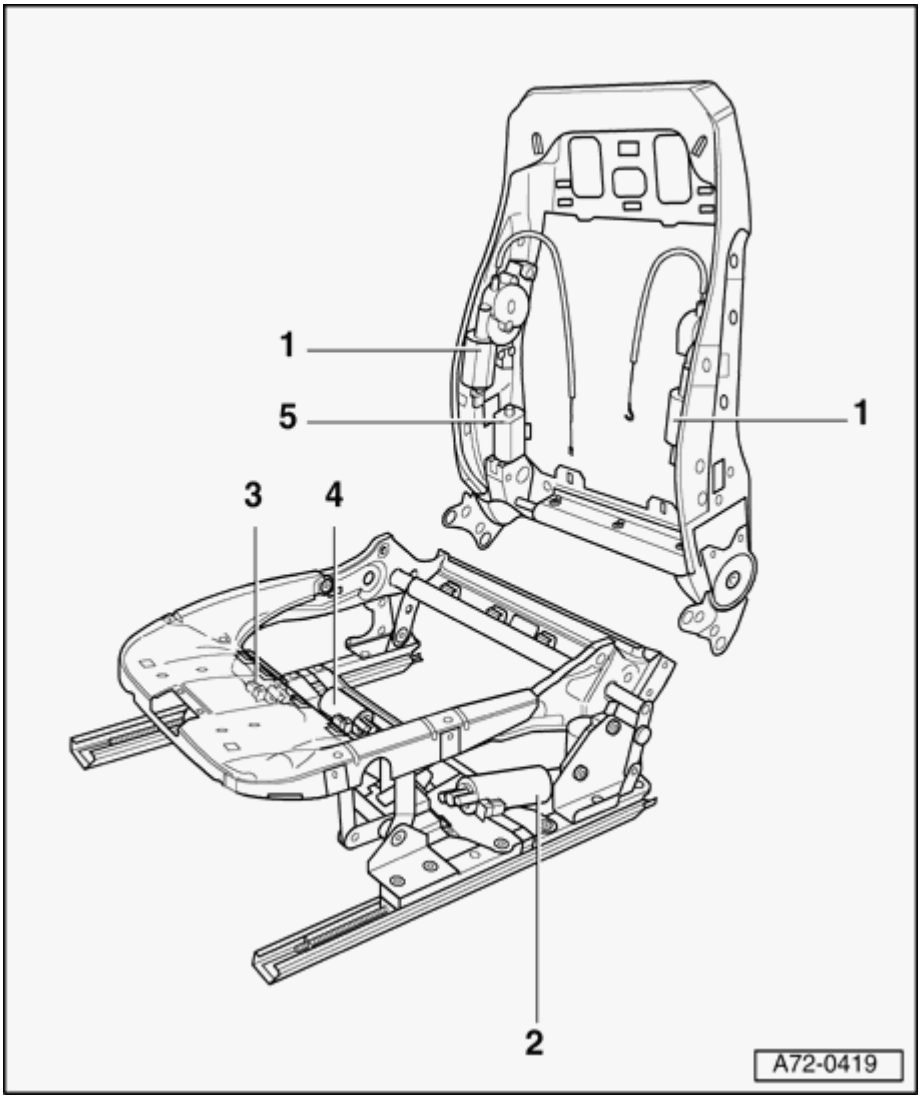


Fig. 283: Motor For Backrest Inclination Adjustment, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Lumbar support adjustment motors (2x)

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

3 - Seat inclination adjustment motor

4 - Forward and backward seat adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

- Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim, outboard side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.

- Remove side trim, inboard side --> **Side trim, inboard side, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.

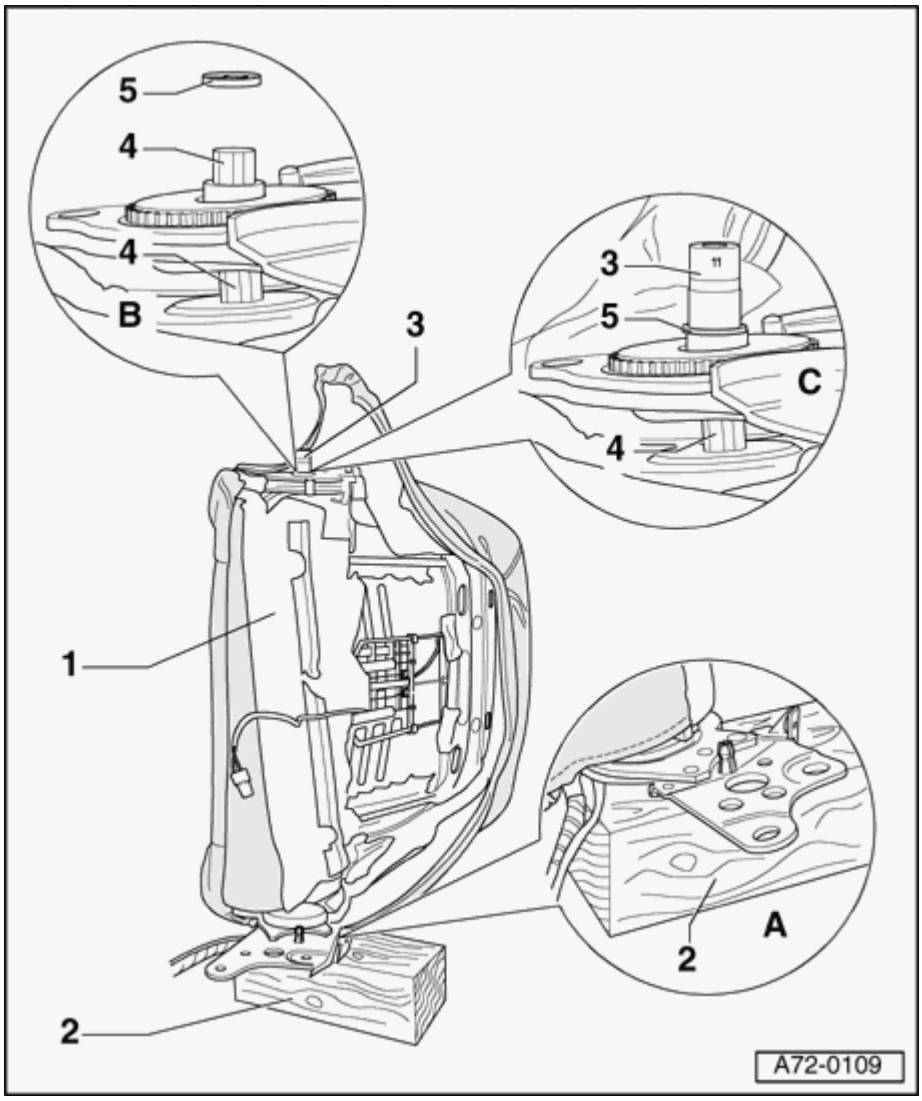


Fig. 284: Identifying Backrest Frame, Wood Block, Socket, Shaft & Spring Washer
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest frame

NOTE:

- **The illustration shows a front passenger seat backrest.**

- Remove bolt from backrest adjustment motor **Releasing fastening for backrest inclination adjustment**

cardiagn.com

motor.

- Using a screwdriver, pry off the spring washer - **5** - on the side of the backrest inclination adjustment motor (**Fig. 284** - **B** -).
- Using a hammer and punch knock shaft - **4** - through the side of the backrest frame.
- Pull shaft - **4** - out of backrest frame - **1** - until backrest inclination adjustment motor can be removed.

- **Installing**

- When installing new motor, prepare backrest accordingly **Preparing backrest for new motor**
- Adapt the splines of the new backrest inclination adjustment motor **Preparing backrest inclination adjustment motor**
- Push shaft - **4** - through backrest inclination adjustment motor and through backrest frame - **1** -.
- Place seat on its side.

- Position a block of wood - **2** - under shaft - **4** - on the opposite side of the backrest inclination adjustment motor (**Fig. 284** - **A** -).
- Using an 11 mm socket, knock spring washer - **5** - onto shaft - **4** - (**Fig. 284** - **C** -).
- Tighten the bolt on the backrest adjustment motor and connect the connector.
- For memory seat: After installing the seat, perform basic setting of backrest and seat.

2 - Wooden block

3 - 11 mm socket

4 - Shaft

5 - Spring lock washer

Releasing fastening for backrest inclination adjustment motor

cardiagn.com

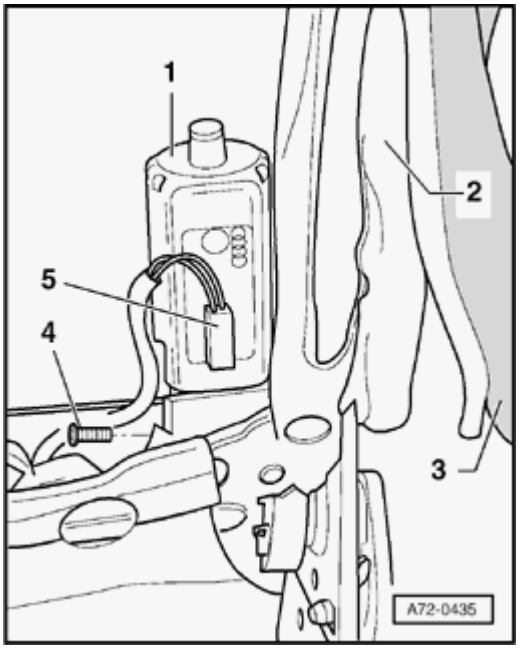


Fig. 285: Releasing Fastening For Backrest Inclination Adjustment Motor
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector - **5** -.
- Pull cover - **3** - and anti-squeak pad - **2** - to one side.
- Remove bolt - **4** -.

Preparing backrest inclination adjustment motor

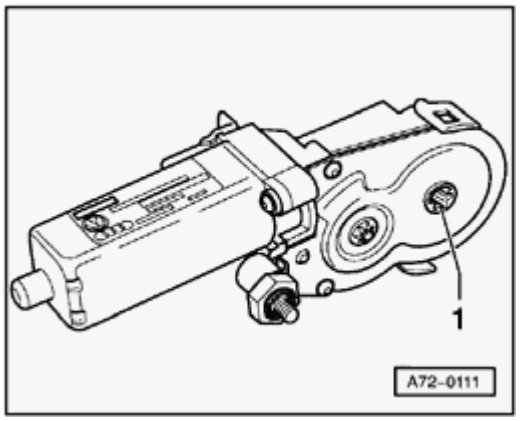


Fig. 286: Preparing Backrest Inclination Adjustment Motor
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, turn asymmetric section of teeth - **1** - to align with shaft in backrest frame.

Preparing backrest for new motor

cardiagn.com

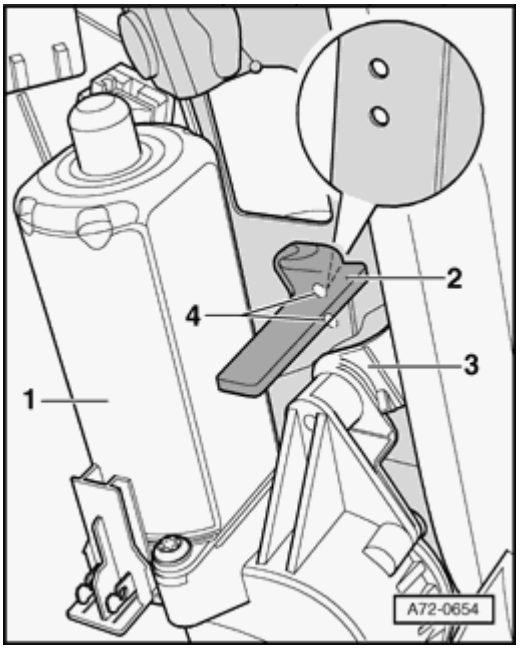


Fig. 287: Preparing Backrest For New Motor
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Use pliers to break off bracket - **2** -.
- Secure new motor - **1** - with new bracket - **3** - , using rivets at holes - **4** -.

Backrest cover panel, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

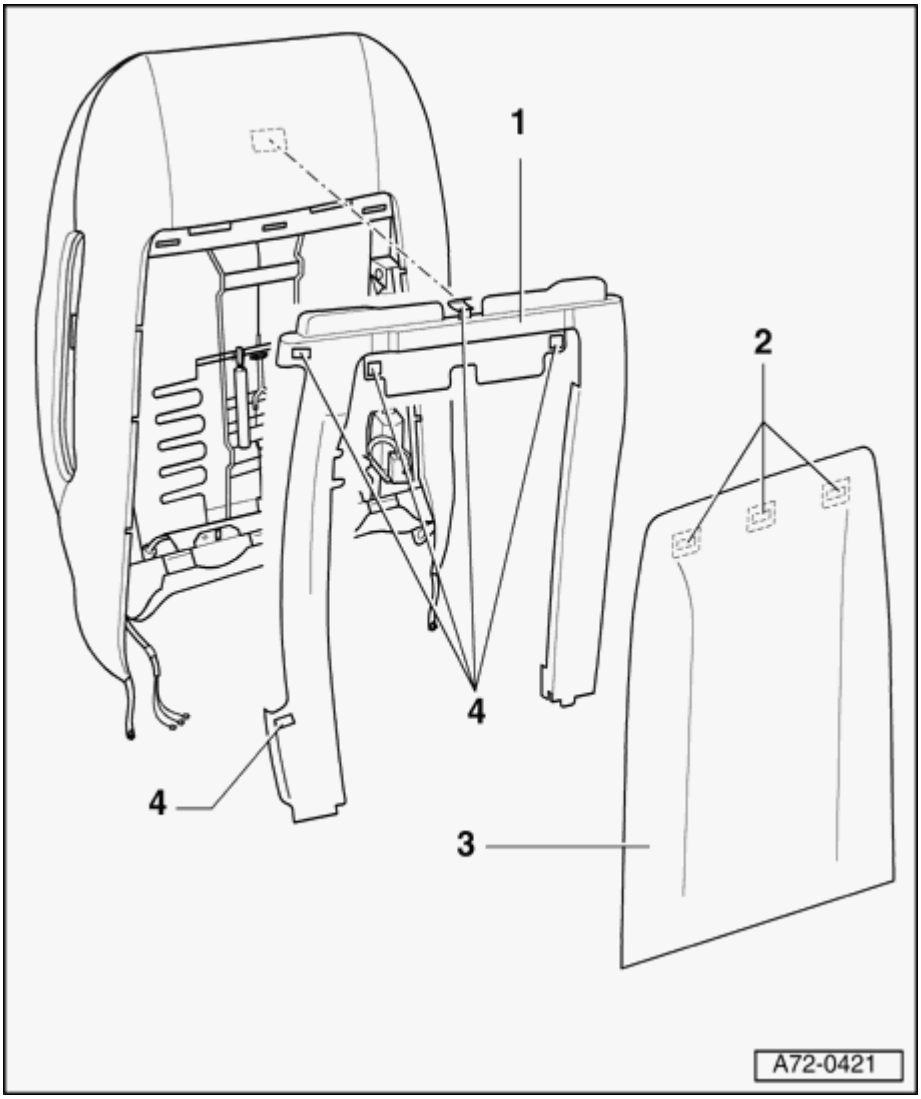


Fig. 288: Backrest Cover Panel, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest frame

2 - Staples (3x)

3 - Backrest trim

- **Removing**

  - Pry off staples - **2** - (3x) on backrest cover panel - **1** -.
  - Remove backrest cover panel - **3** - upward.

- **Installing**

cardiagn.com

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

4 - Clips (5x)

Backrest frame, assembly overview

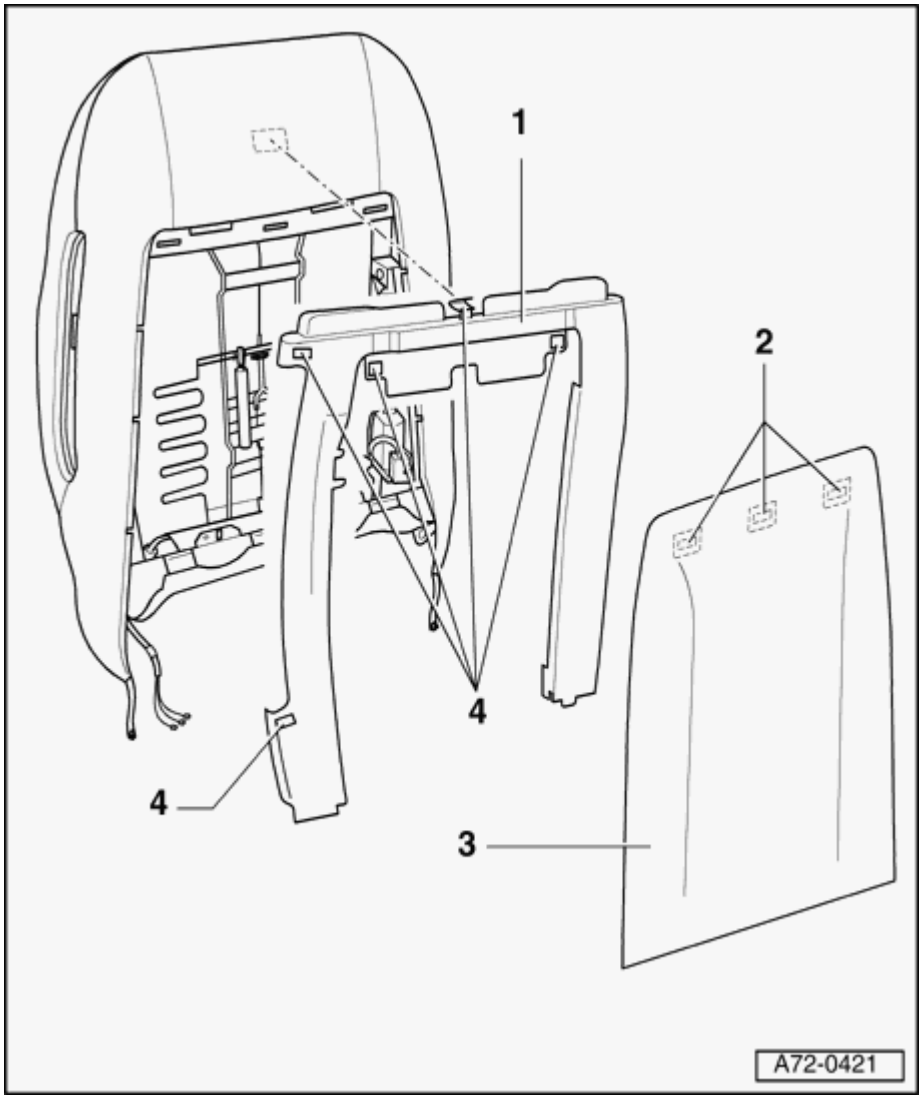


Fig. 289: Backrest Frame, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest frame

- **Removing**

- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.
- Pry off clips - **4** - (5x).
- Remove backrest frame - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing**
  - Installation is in reverse order of removal.

2 - Staples (3x)

3 - Backrest trim

4 - Clips (5x)

4-way lumbar support, assembly overview

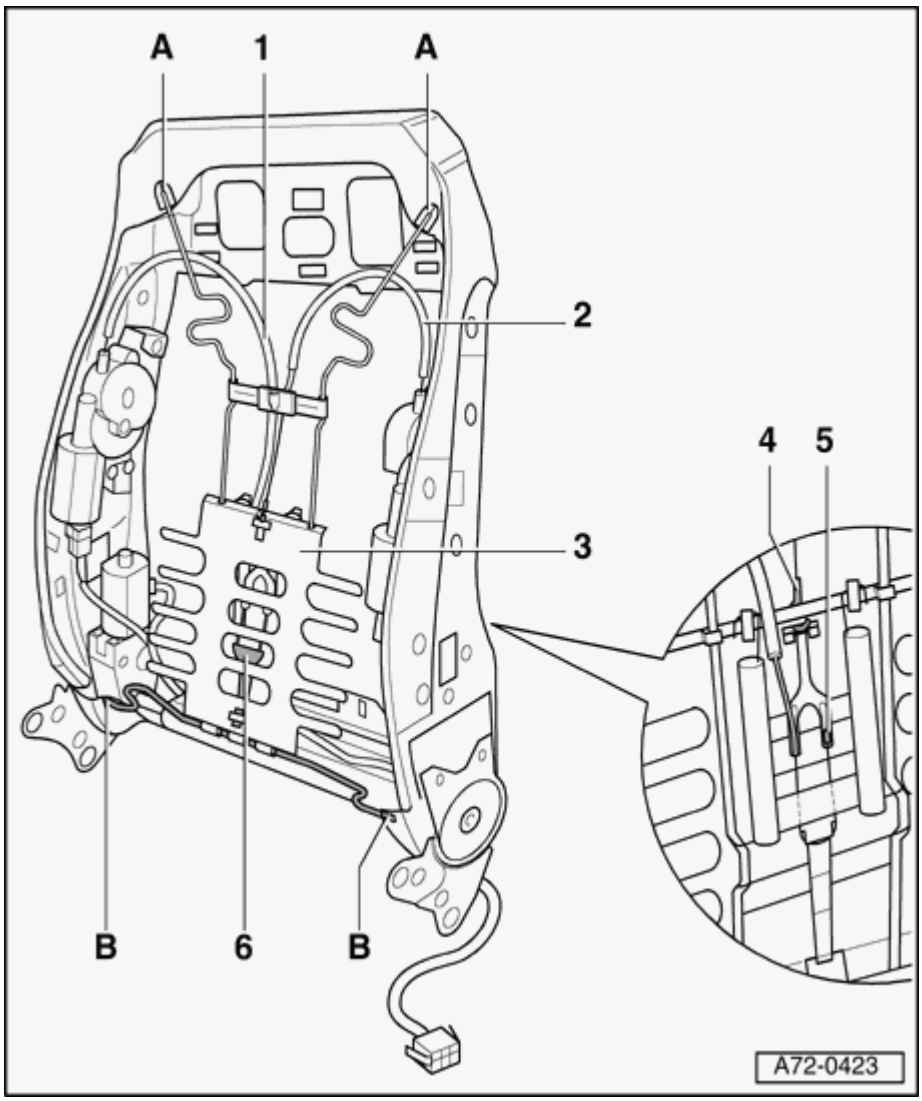


Fig. 290: 4-Way Lumbar Support, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Bowden cable for lumbar support height adjustment

cardiagn.com

2 - Bowden cable for lumbar support adjustment

3 - 4-way lumbar support

- **Removing**

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim, outboard side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.

- Remove side trim, inboard side --> **Side trim, inboard side, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest frame --> **Backrest frame, assembly overview**.

- Disengage Bowden cable for lumbar support adjustment - **2** - from hook - **4** -.
- Disengage Bowden cable for lumbar support height adjustment - **1** - at retainer pin - **5** - and at idler wheel - **6** -.
- Disengage lower 4-way lumbar support - **3** - at positions - **B** - (2x).
- Disengage upper 4-way lumbar support - **3** - at positions - **A** - (2x).

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

4 - Hook

5 - Retaining tabs

6 - Idler roller

Lumbar support adjustment motors, assembly overview

NOTE:

- **On the drivers seat in the illustration, the lumbar support height adjustment motor is on the left and the lumbar support adjustment motor is on the right.**

cardiagn.com

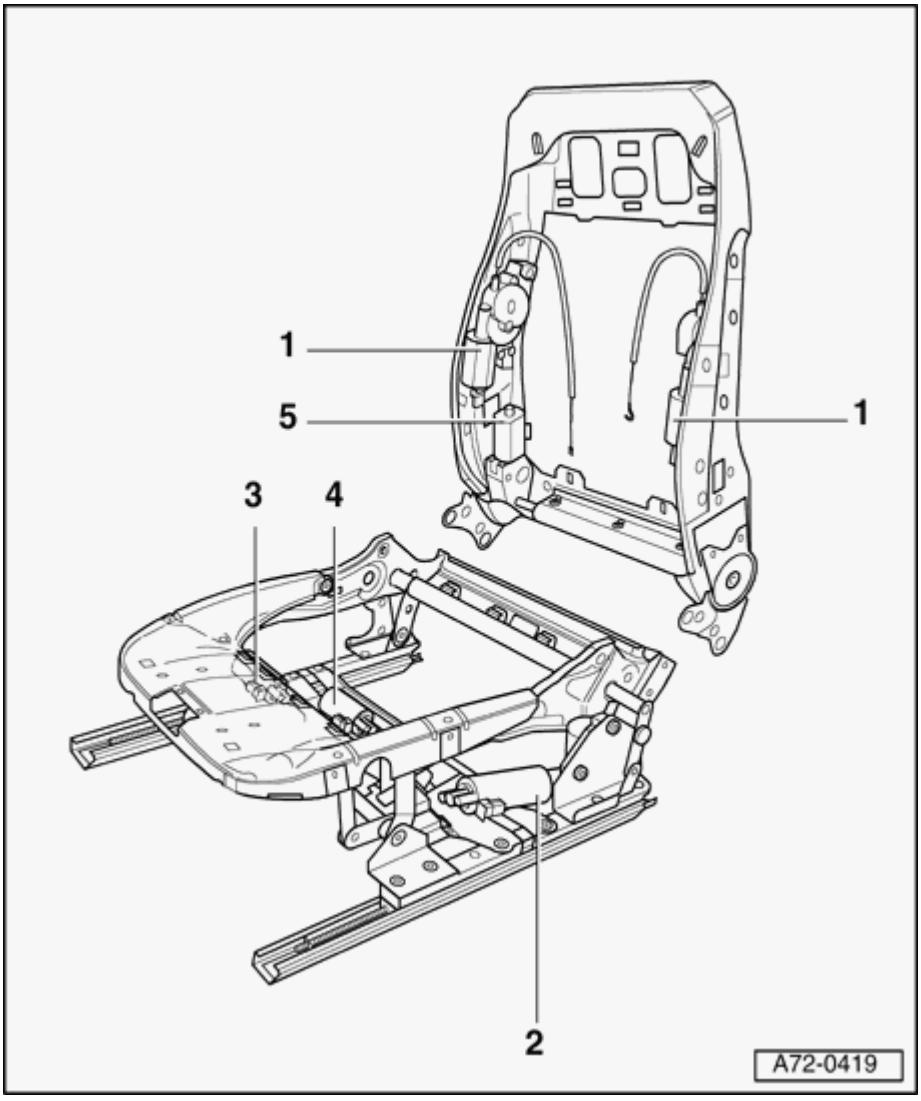


Fig. 291: Lumbar Support Adjustment Motors, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Lumbar support adjustment motors (2x)

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.

  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.

- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.
- Disconnect connector.
- Remove bolts.
- Disengage Bowden cable at 4-way lumbar support.

cardiagn.com

- Replace motor.

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

3 - Seat inclination adjustment motor

4 - Forward and backward seat adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor

Head restraint, removing and installing

- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.

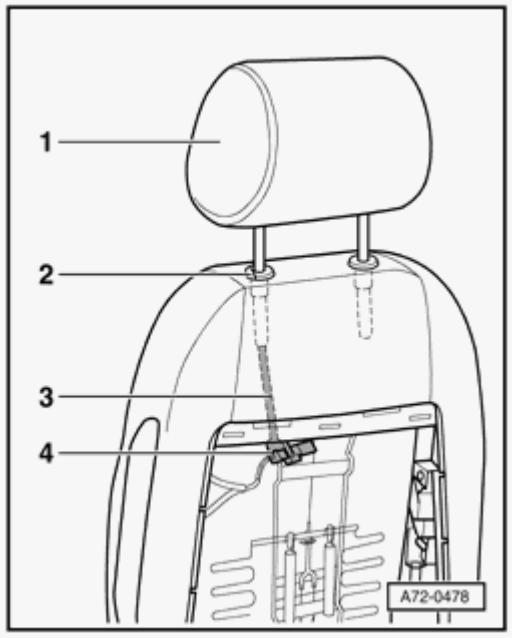


Fig. 292: Removing/Installing Head Restraint
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector - **4** -.
- Press button - **2** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Rear footwell light, removing

- **Removing**

cardiagn.com

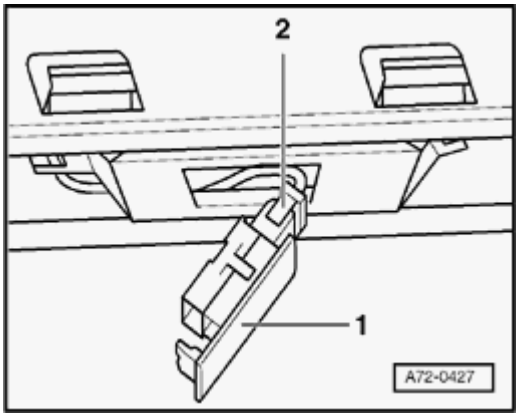


Fig. 293: Removing Rear Footwell Light
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press out rear footwell light - **1** - from rear.
- Disconnect connector - **2** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Seat pan spring pad with wiring harness, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

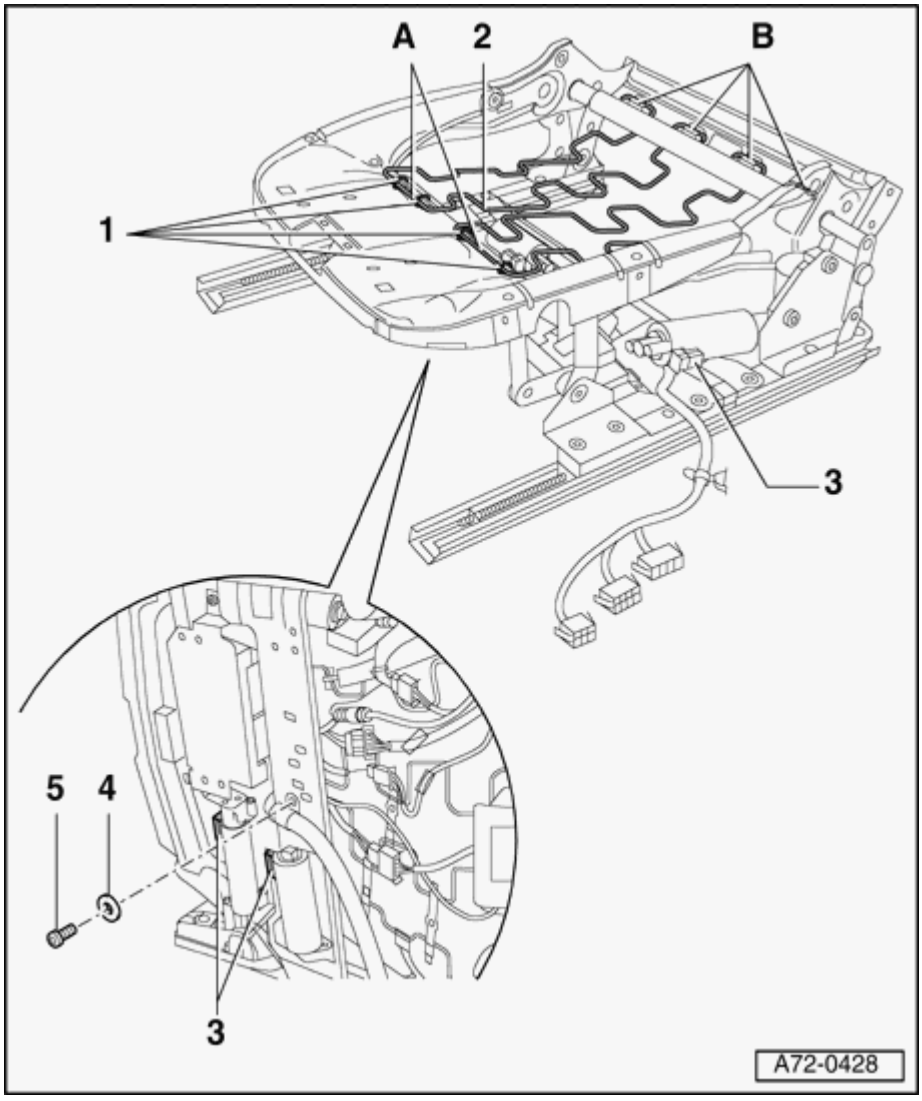


Fig. 294: Seat Pan Spring Pad With Wiring Harness, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable ties (4x)

2 - Spring pad with wiring harness

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove side trim, outboard side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim, inboard side --> **Side trim, inboard side, assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Seat pan cover and padding (sports seat), assembly overview**.
- Remove cable tie - **1** - (4x).
- Disengage spring pad - **2** - at positions - **A** - (2x).
- Disengage spring pad - **2** - at positions - **B** - (4x).
- Place seat to side.
- Disconnect connectors - **3** - (3x).
- Remove bolt - **5** -.
- Remove spring pad with wiring harness - **2** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

3 - Connector (3x)

4 - Shim

5 - Bolt

Seat wiring assignment

cardiagn.com

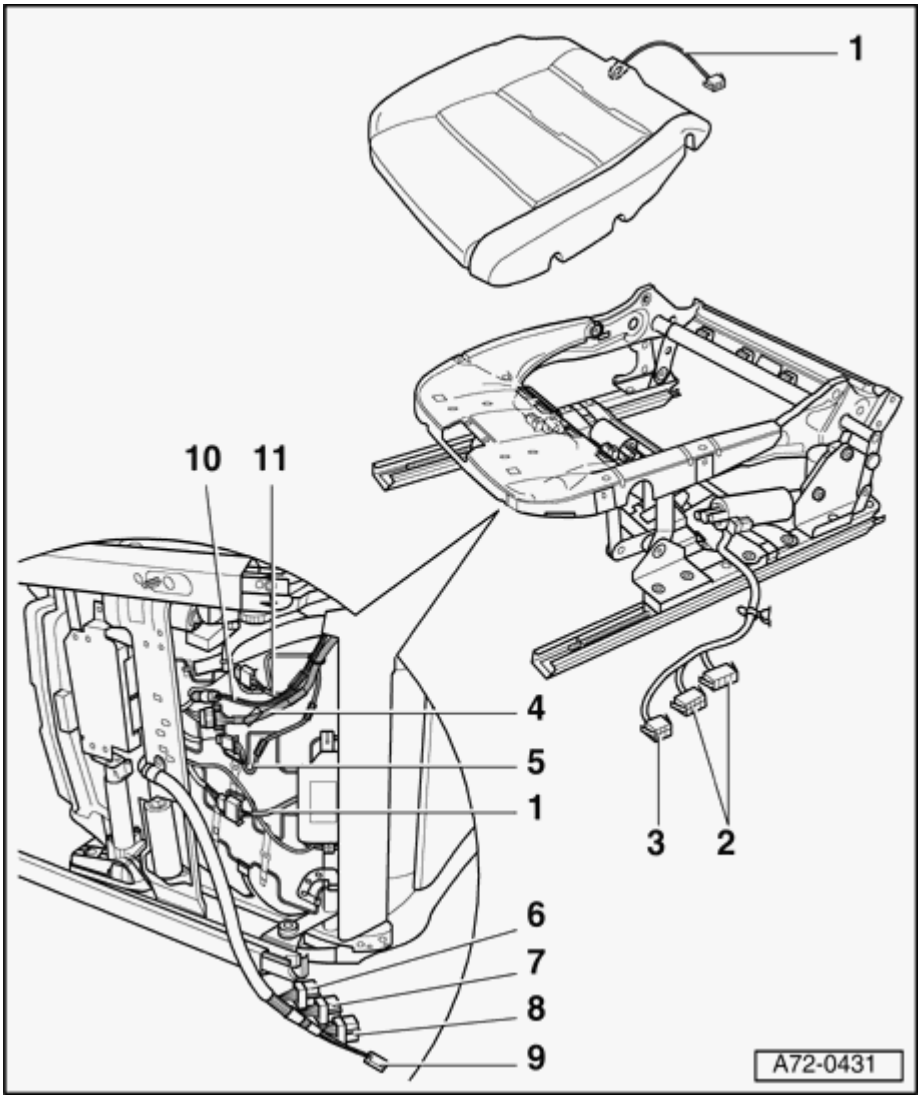


Fig. 295: Seat Wiring Assignment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat heating wiring harness

2 - Seat adjustment connectors (2x)

3 - 4-way lumbar support connector

4 - Electric lumbar support wiring harness, inboard side

5 - Backrest heating wiring harness

6 - Buckle interrogation connector (black)

7 - Seat heating connector (green)

cardiagn.com

8 - Power supply connector (red)

9 - Airbag connector (yellow)

10 - Airbag wiring harness

11 - Electric lumbar support wiring harness for 4-pin side airbag

Backrest wiring assignment

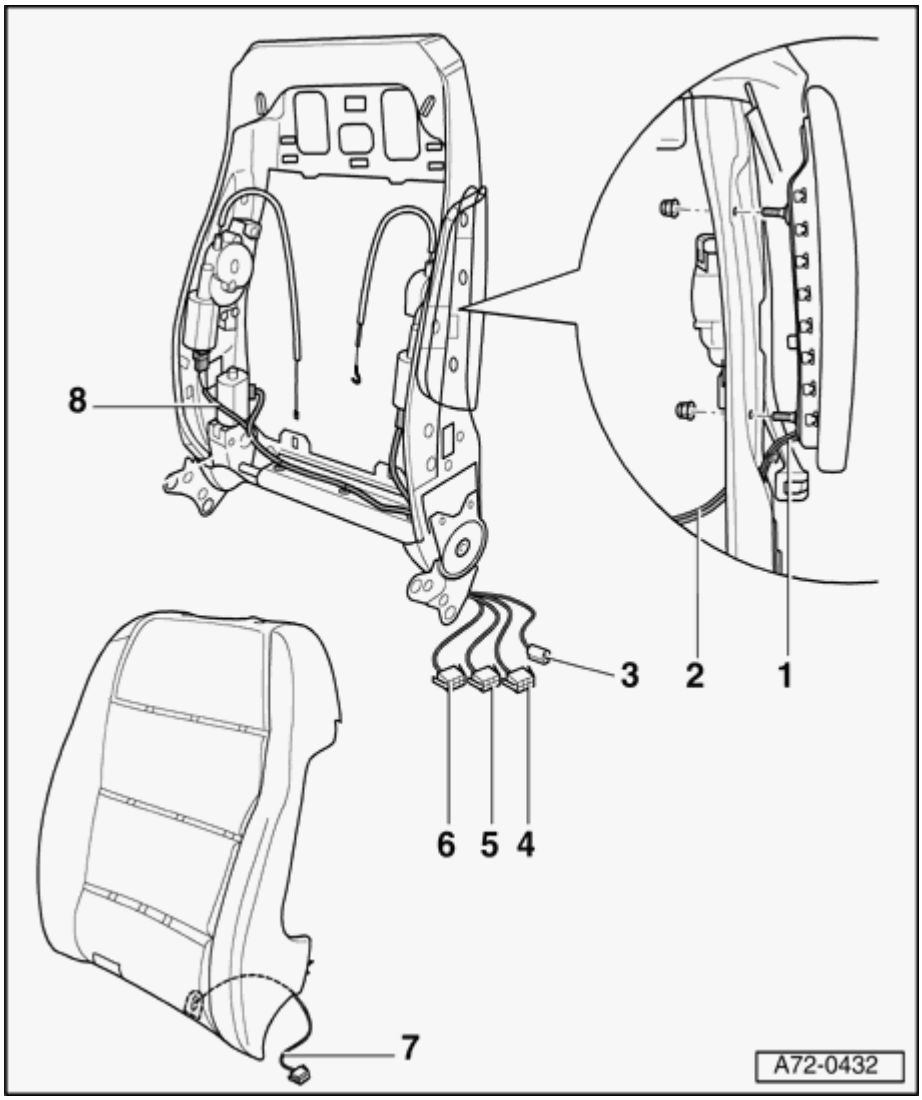


Fig. 296: Backrest Wiring Assignment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Airbag wiring harness

2 - Electric lumbar support wiring harness for 4-pin side airbag

cardiagn.com

3 - Airbag connector

4 - Electric lumbar support connector for 4-pin side airbag

5 - Electric lumbar support connector

6 - Backrest heating connector

7 - Backrest heating wiring harness

8 - Electric lumbar support wiring harness, inboard side

Seat backrest wiring harness, assembly overview

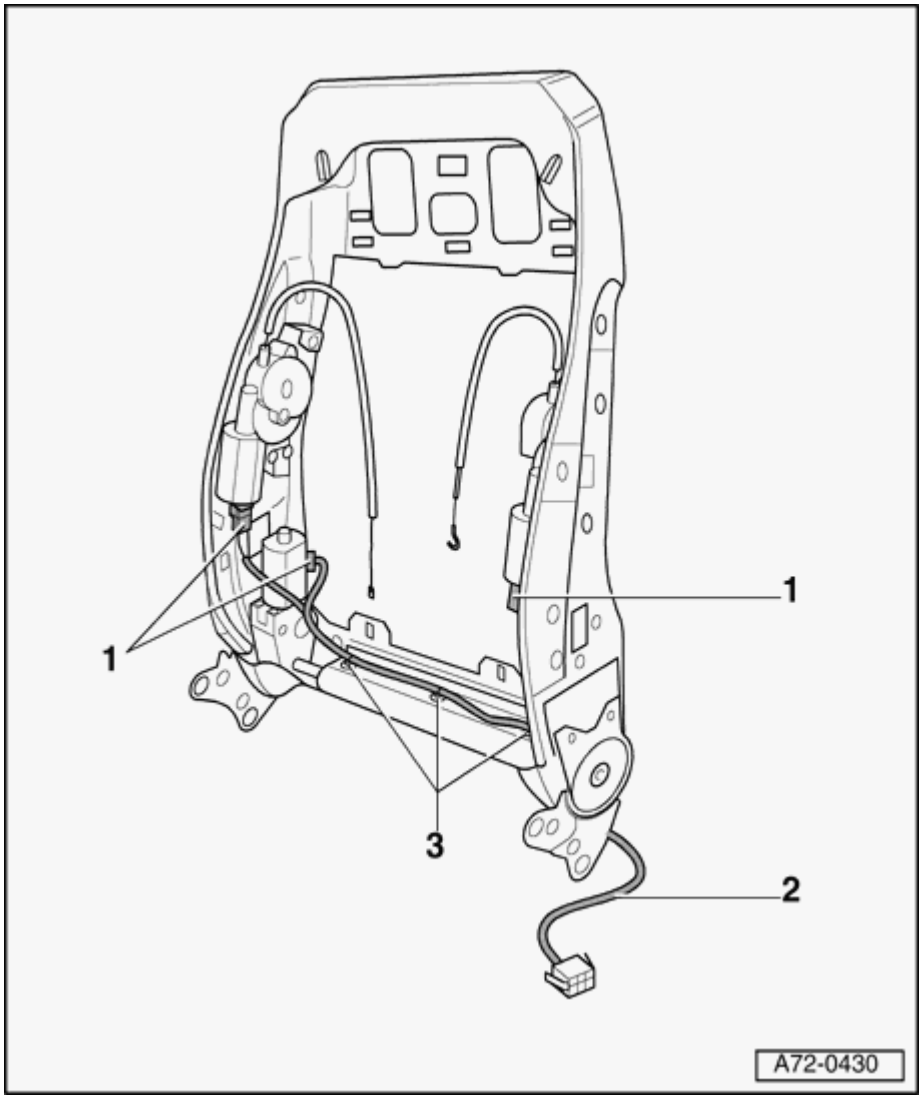


Fig. 297: Seat Backrest Wiring Harness, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Connector (3x)

2 - Wiring harness

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Remove side trim, outboard side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim, inboard side --> **Side trim, inboard side, assembly overview**.
  - Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.
  - Remove cover and padding from backrest --> **Backrest cover and padding (sports seat, standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Detach cable ties - **3** - (3x).
  - Disconnect connectors - **1** - (3x).
  - Remove wiring harness - **2** -.

- **Installing**

  - Installation is in reverse order of removal.

3 - Cable ties (3x)

REAR SEATS

Rear seat bench, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

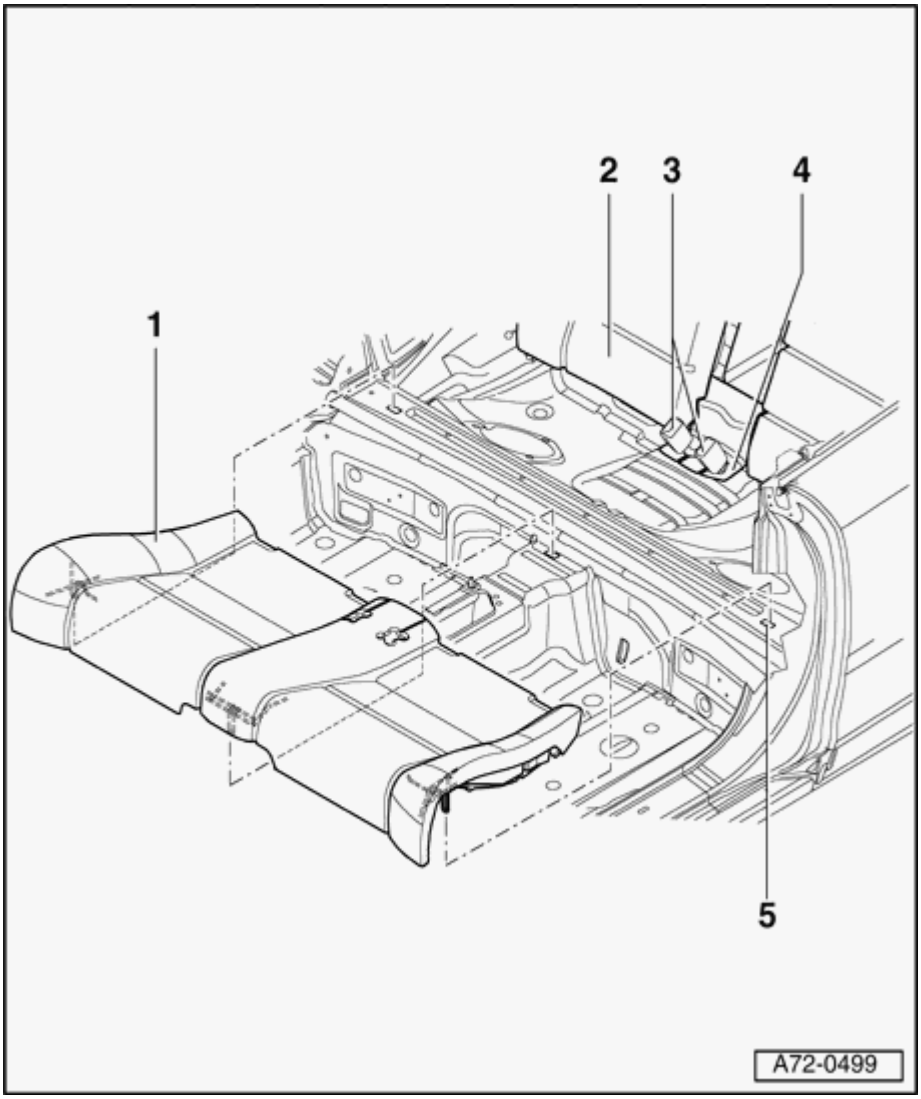


Fig. 298: Rear Seat Bench, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear seat bench

- **Removing**

  - Pull rear seat bench - **1** - up and remove rear seat bench - **1** -.
  - With seat heating: Detach connector for seat heating.

- **Installing**

  - Place protective cover - **4** - below buckles - **3** - (2x).
  - Install piping at buckle cover **Cord at fabric cover of belt buckles, removing and installing**
  - With seat heating: Connect connector for seat heating.

cardiagn.com

- Push rear seat bench - **1** - under rear seat backrest - **2** - and feed in buckles - **3** - (2x).
- Engage rear seat bench - **1** - in grommets - **5** - (3x).

2 - Rear seat backrest

3 - Buckles (2x)

4 - Protective cover

5 - Grommets (3x)

Rear seat backrest, assembly overview

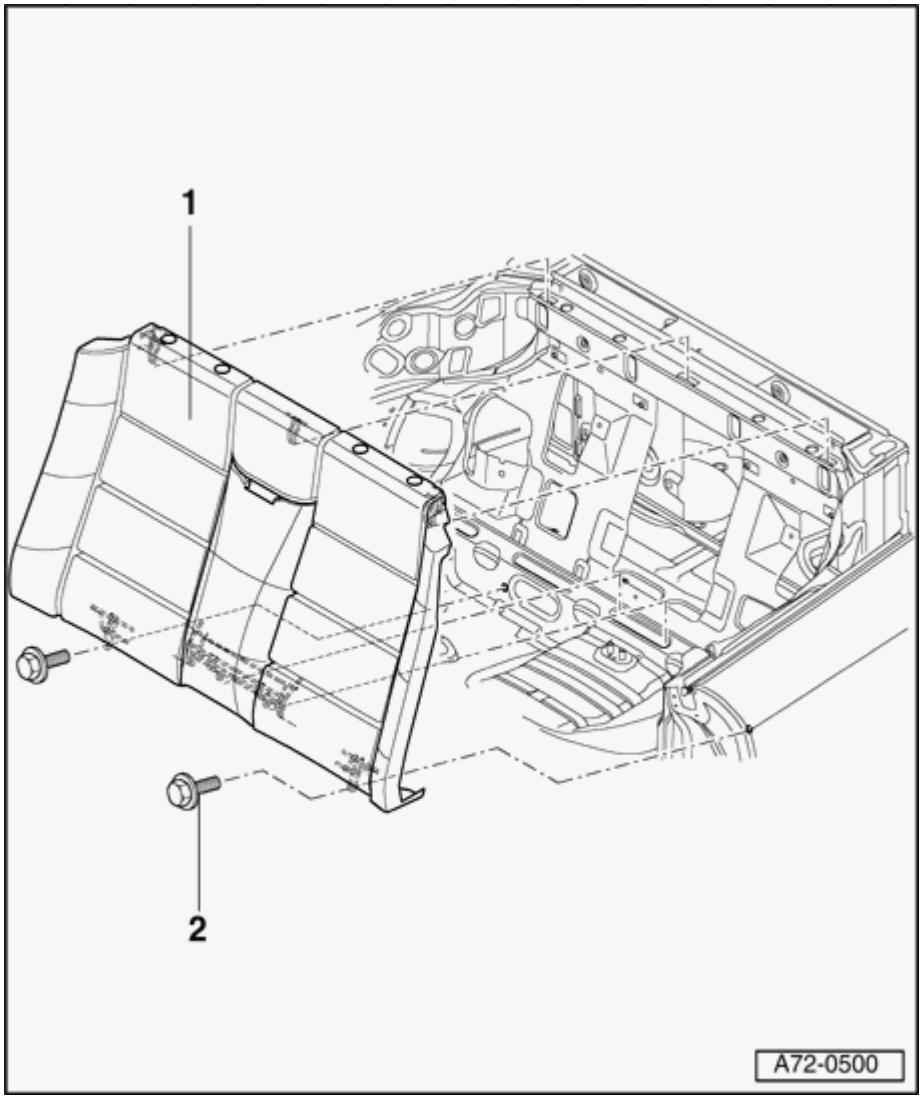


Fig. 299: Rear Seat Backrest, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Rear seat backrest

- **Removing**

- Remove rear bench seat --> **Rear seat bench, assembly overview**.
- Remove head restraints --> **Head restraints, removing and installing**.
- Remove head restraint guides --> **Head restraint guides, removing and installing**.
- Open convertible top compartment to gain access to belt guides of rear seat belts.

- Disengage seatbelt guides (2x) at left and right --> **Rear 3-point seat belt with belt tensioner, assembly overview** , Item - **2** -.
- Remove center armrest.
- Remove cord at fabric cover of belt buckles **Cord at fabric cover of belt buckles, removing and installing**
- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).

- Remove rear seat backrest - **1** -.
- With seat heating: Disconnect connector for seat heating.

- **Installing**

- With seat heating: Connect connector for seat heating.
- Guide rear seat backrest - **1** - in at bottom.
- Push rear seat backrest - **1** - upward and engage rear seat backrest - **1** - at top (3x).
- Press rear seat backrest - **1** - fully down.

- Install bolts - **2** - (2x).
- Install head restraint guides --> **Head restraint guides, removing and installing**.
- Install head restraints --> **Head restraints, removing and installing**.

2 - Bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

Cord at fabric cover of belt buckles, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

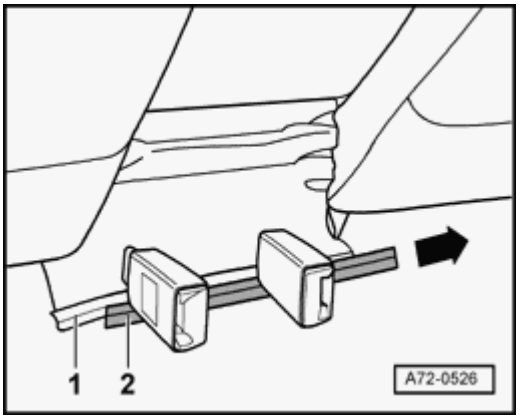


Fig. 300: Removing Cord
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- **Removing**
  - Remove cord - **2** - in direction of - **arrow** -.
- **Installing**
  - Slide cord - **2** - in opposite direction of - **arrow** - into grip channel - **1** -.

Head restraints, removing and installing

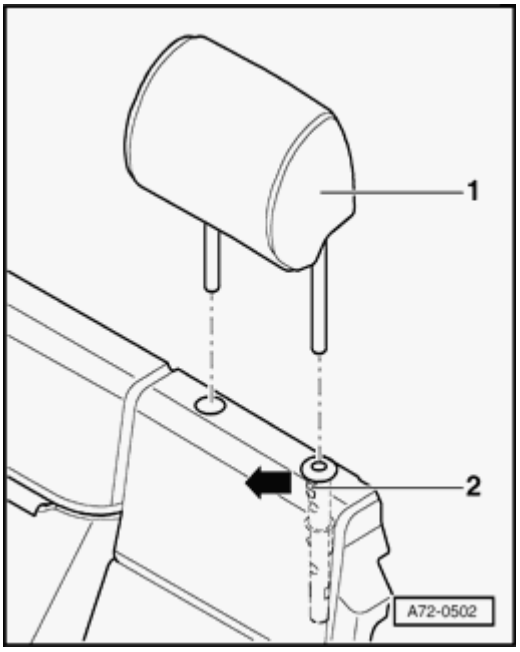


Fig. 301: Pressing Cover Down And Using Screwdriver, Pry Out Clip & Pulling Out Head Restraints
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press cover down and using a screwdriver, pry out clip - **2** - in direction of - **arrow** -.

cardiagn.com

- Pull out head restraints - **1** - (2x).

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Piping, removing and installing

- **Removing**

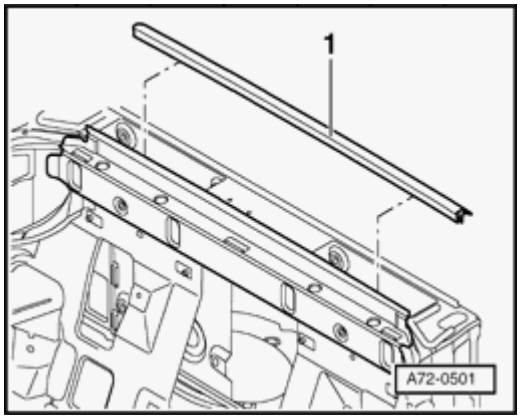


Fig. 302: Removing Piping
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove piping - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

cardiagn.com

.

72 - SEAT - FRAMES

FRONT SEATS (STANDARD SEAT) - VEHICLES UP TO 10.04

Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

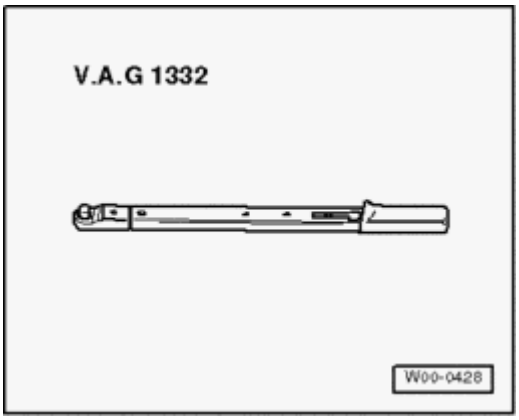


Fig. 364: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1332
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1332

Front seat rail covers, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

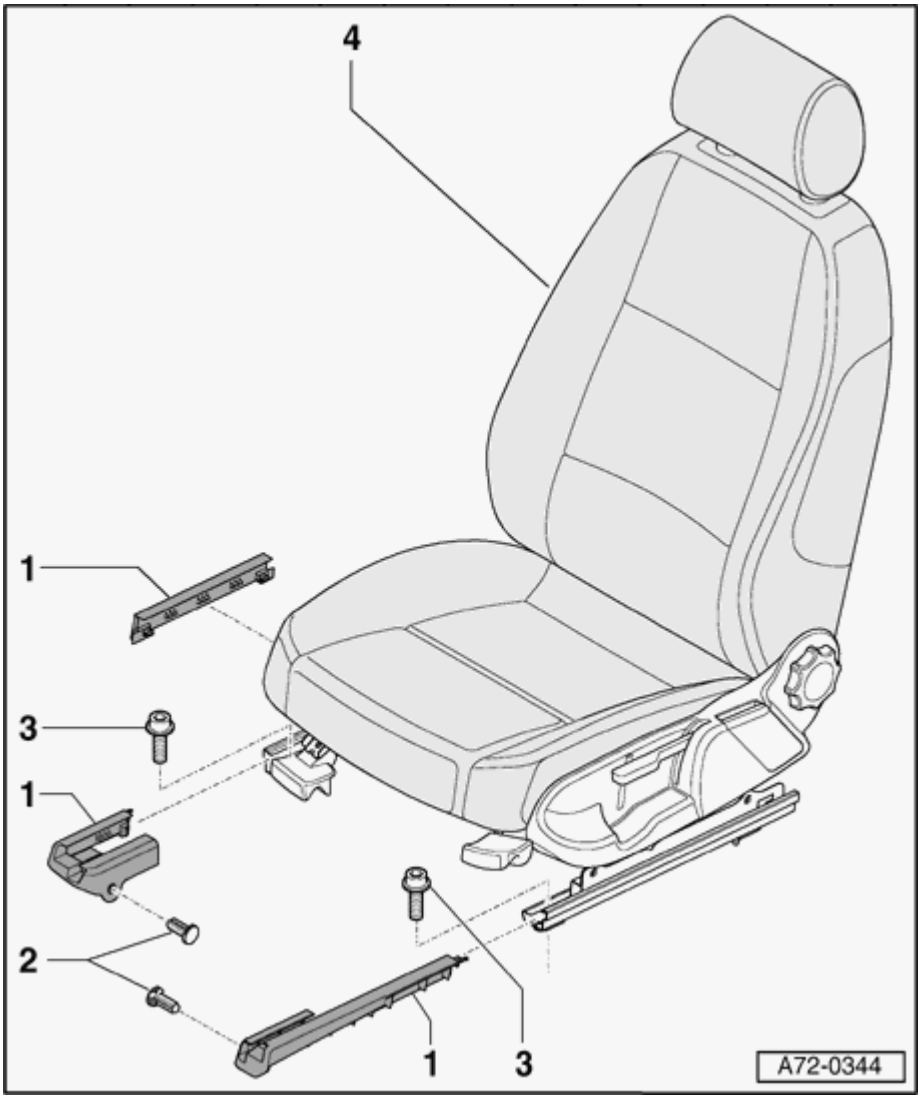


Fig. 365: Front Seat Rail Covers Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat rail cover

- Removal:

  - Slide front seat - **4** - fully to the rear.
  - Remove securing clip - **2** - (2x).
  - Remove seat rail cover - **1** - (2x).
  - Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

2 - Securing clip (Qty. 2)

3 - Bolts (Qty. 2)

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

4 - Front seat

Rear front seat rail cover, removing and installing

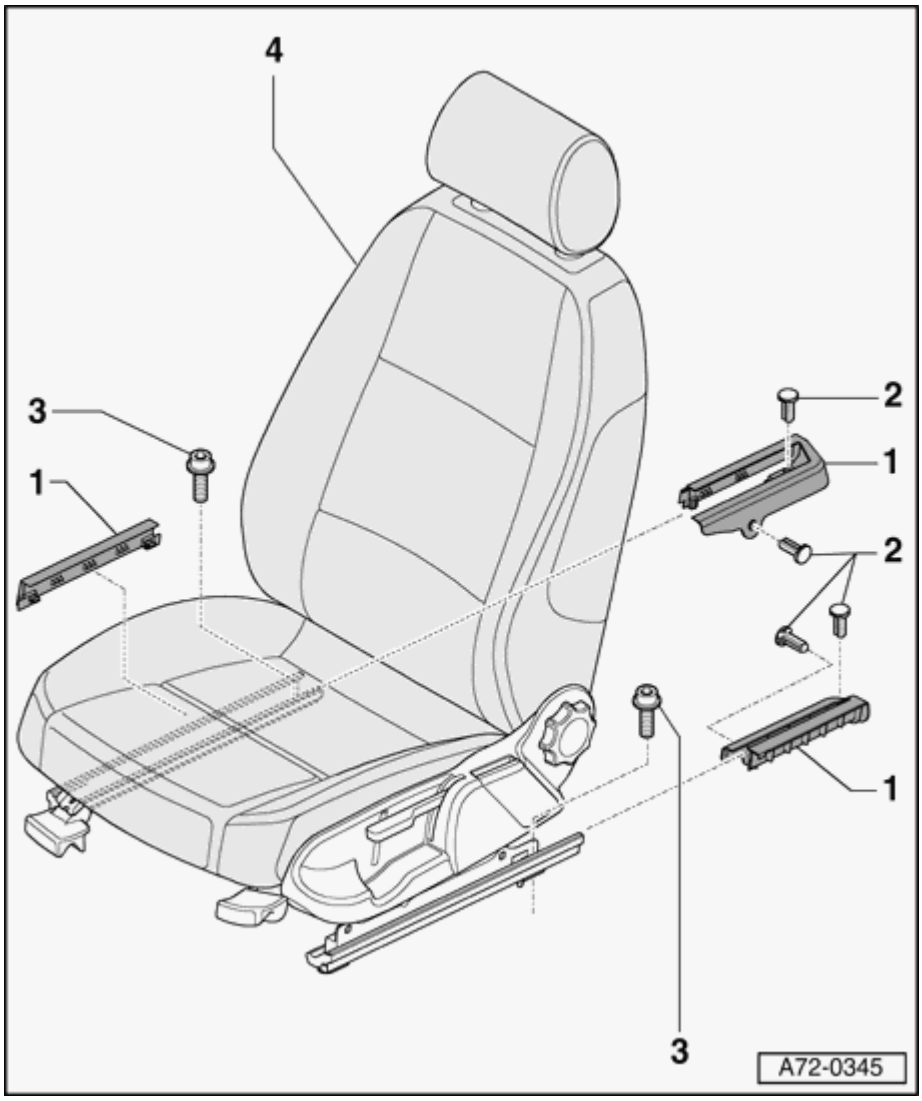


Fig. 366: Rear Front Seat Rail Cover Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear front seat rail cover

- Removal:

cardiagn.com

- Slide front seat - **4** - fully to the front.
- Remove securing clips - **2** - (4x).
- Remove seat rail cover - **1** - (2x).
- Remove bolt - **3** - (2x).

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Securing clip (Qty. 4)

3 - Bolts (Qty. 2)

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

4 - Front seat

Seat belt anchor, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

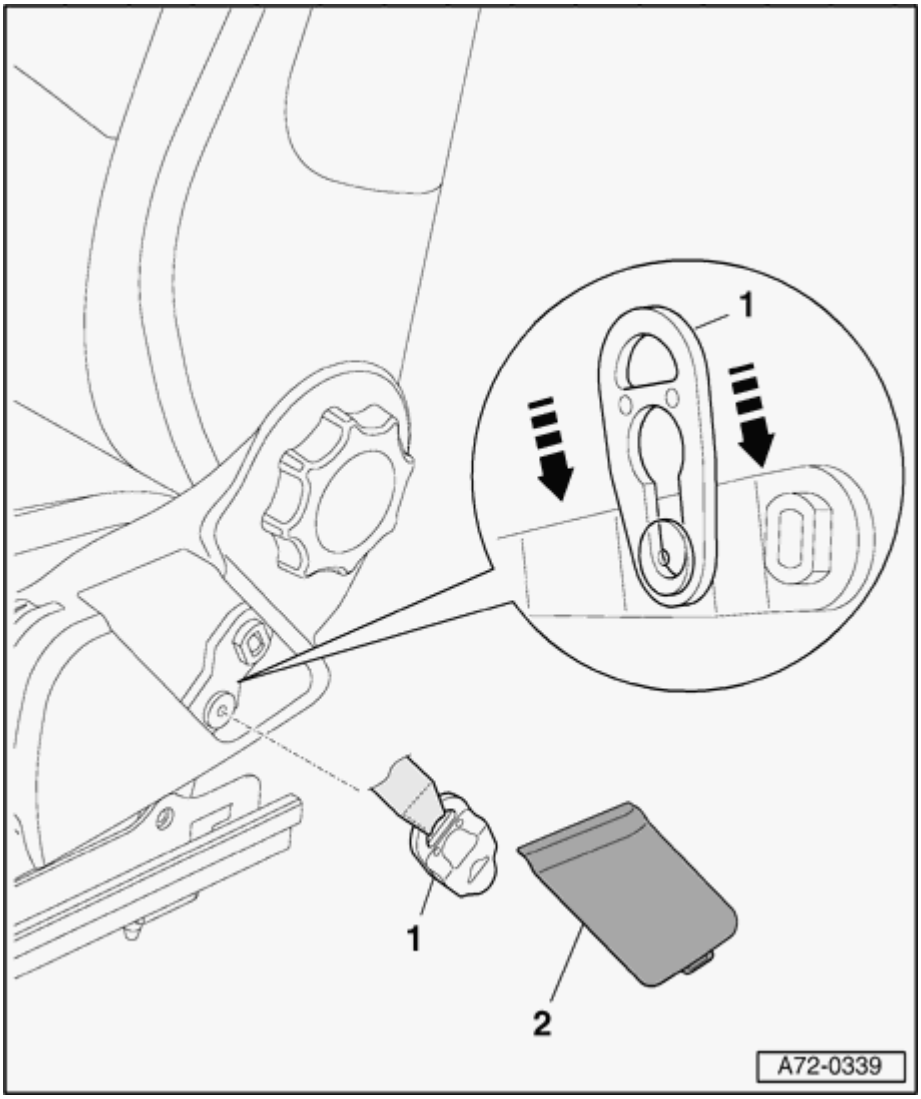


Fig. 367: Seat Belt Anchor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat belt anchor

NOTE:

- **On height-adjustable seat: Move seat up.**
- **Removal:**

  - Pull assembly cover - **2** - up and remove.
  - Pull seat belt anchor - **1** - down in direction of arrow and remove.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

2 - Assembly cover

Disconnecting connections

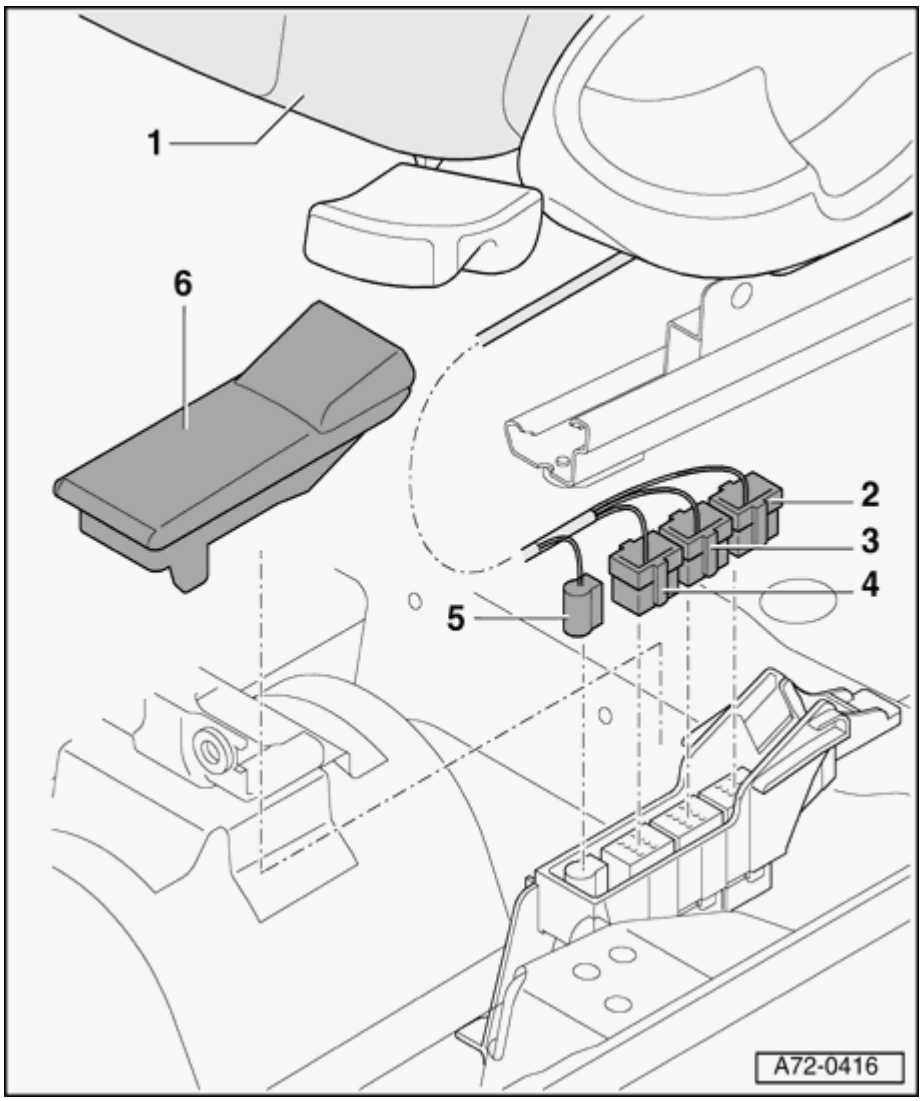


Fig. 368: Disconnecting Connections
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Belt buckle sensor connector (black)

3 - Seat heater connector (green)

4 - Current supply connector (red)

5 - Airbag connector (yellow)

cardiagn.com

6 - Connector point cover

- Removal:

  - Tip front seat - **1** - back.
  - Remove coupling station cover - **6** - upward.
  - Press in tab on airbag connector - **5** - on tunnel side and disconnect airbag connector - **5** -.
  - Press in tab on connector for voltage supply - **4** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for voltage supply - **4** -.
  - Press in tab on connector for heated seat - **3** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for heated seat - **3** - .

Vehicles with seatbelt fasten sensor:

  - Press in tab on connector for seatbelt fasten sensor - **2** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for seatbelt fasten sensor - **2** -.

All:

  - Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036, connecting**.
  - Remove front seat - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

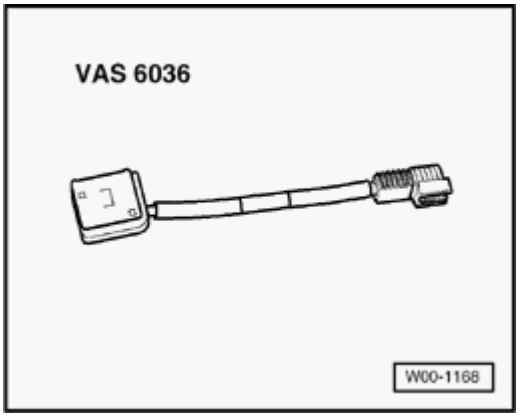


Fig. 369: Airbag Adapter VAS 6036
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Airbag adapter VAS 6036

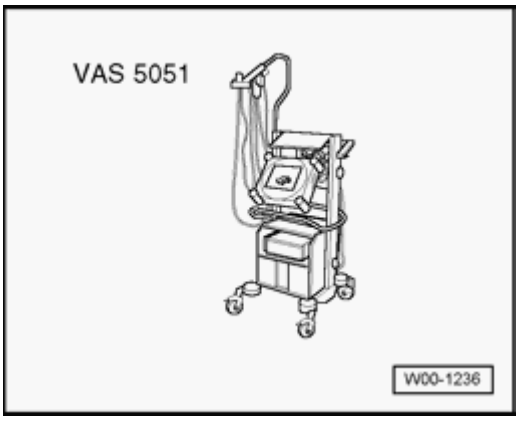


Fig. 370: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

CAUTION: Technician must be grounded before disconnecting ignition and ground wiring, touching door striker or body.

CAUTION: The Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 must stay connected to seat until seat is installed again.

cardiagn.com

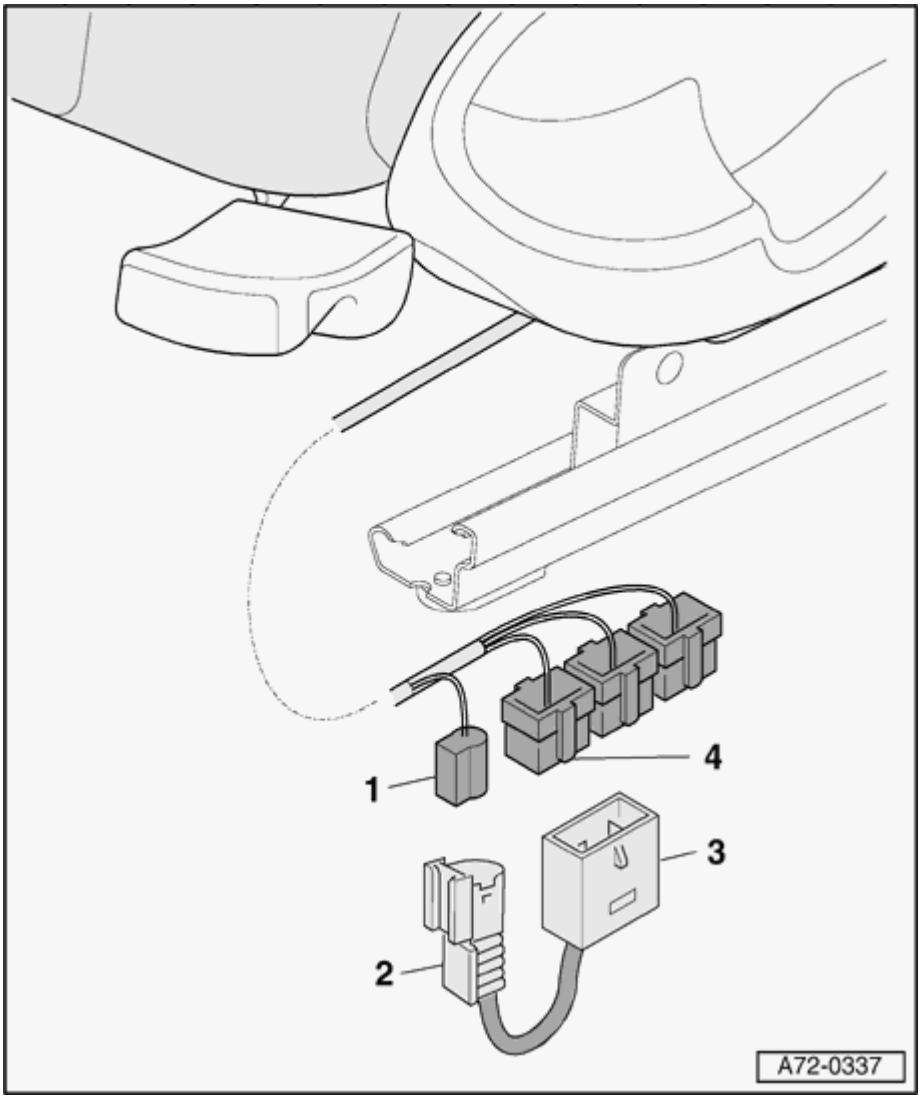


Fig. 371: Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , Connecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Airbag connector (yellow)

- Connect airbag connector (yellow) - **1** - to airbag adapter connector - **2** -.

If present:

- Connect connector for voltage supply (red) of airbag adapter - **3** - to counterpart (red) - **4** - on seat connector.

2 - Airbag adapter connector (yellow)

3 - Voltage supply connector of airbag adapter (red)

cardiagn.com

4 - Seat connector voltage supply connector (red)

Side airbag connector, disconnecting

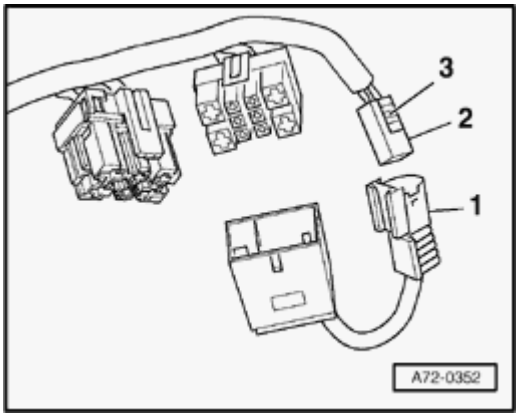


Fig. 372: Side Airbag Connector, Disconnecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press catch - **3** - on connector for side airbag - **2** - from counterpart - **1** - and remove it.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

Front backrest (standard seat), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

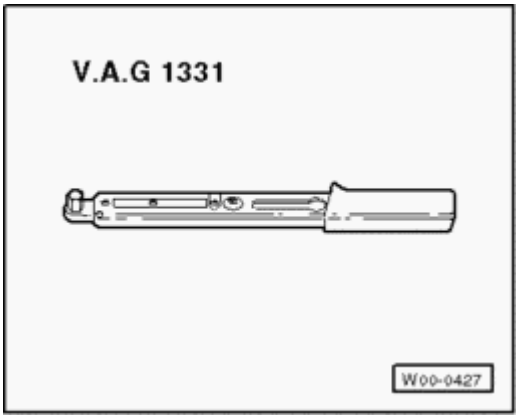


Fig. 373: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

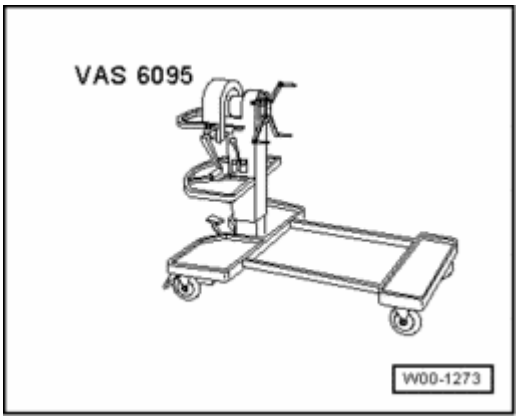


Fig. 374: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

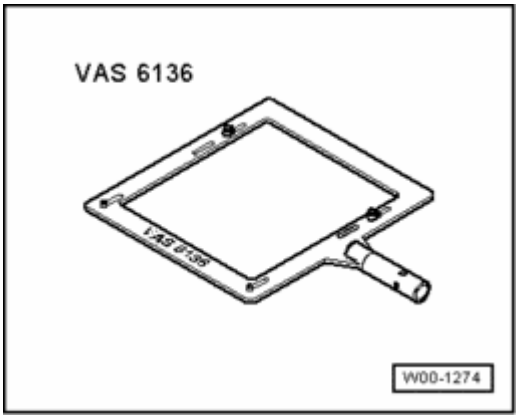


Fig. 375: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

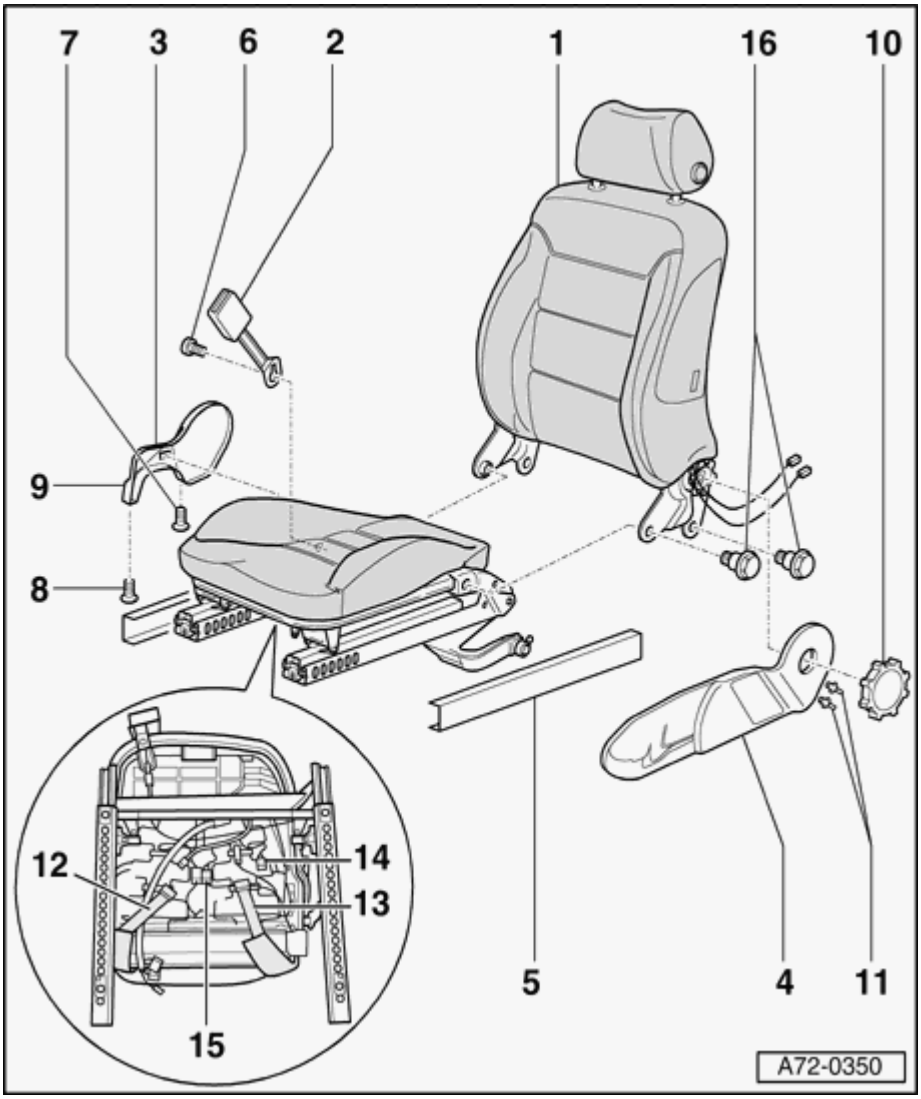


Fig. 376: Front Backrest (Standard Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Unclip seat rail panel on tunnel side - **5** -.

  - Remove bolt - **6** -.
  - Remove bolt - **7** -.
  - Remove clip - **8** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove tab - **9** - with clip.
- Remove backrest panel on tunnel side - **3** - to side.
- Remove backrest adjusting wheel - **10** - --> **Backrest adjustment wheel, removing and installing**.
- Release clip - **11** - (2x).
- Remove backrest panel on door sill side - **4** -.
- Disengage rubber strap on door sill side - **12** -.
- Disengage rubber strap on tunnel side - **13** -.
- Cut through backrest wiring cable tie with a diagonal cutter.
- Press in tab on airbag connector - **14** - (yellow) and remove it.
- Press in tab on connector for heated backrest - **15** - (black) and remove it.
- Slide backrest wiring through seat pan.
- Remove bolt - **16** - (4x).
- Remove backrest - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- If backrest adjustment wheel is too loose after installation, replace wheel.

2 - Belt buckle

3 - Tunnel-side backrest trim

4 - Sill-side backrest trim

5 - Tunnel-side seat rail trim

6 - Screw

7 - Screw

8 - Clip

9 - Tab

10 - Backrest adjusting wheel

11 - Clip (Qty. 2)

12 - Sill-side rubber strap

cardiagn.com

13 - Tunnel-side rubber strap

14 - Airbag connector

15 - Backrest heating connector

16 - Bolt (Qty. 4)

- Tightening torque 20 Nm
- Self-locking
- Replace after each disassembly
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

Tunnel-side backrest trim, removing and installing

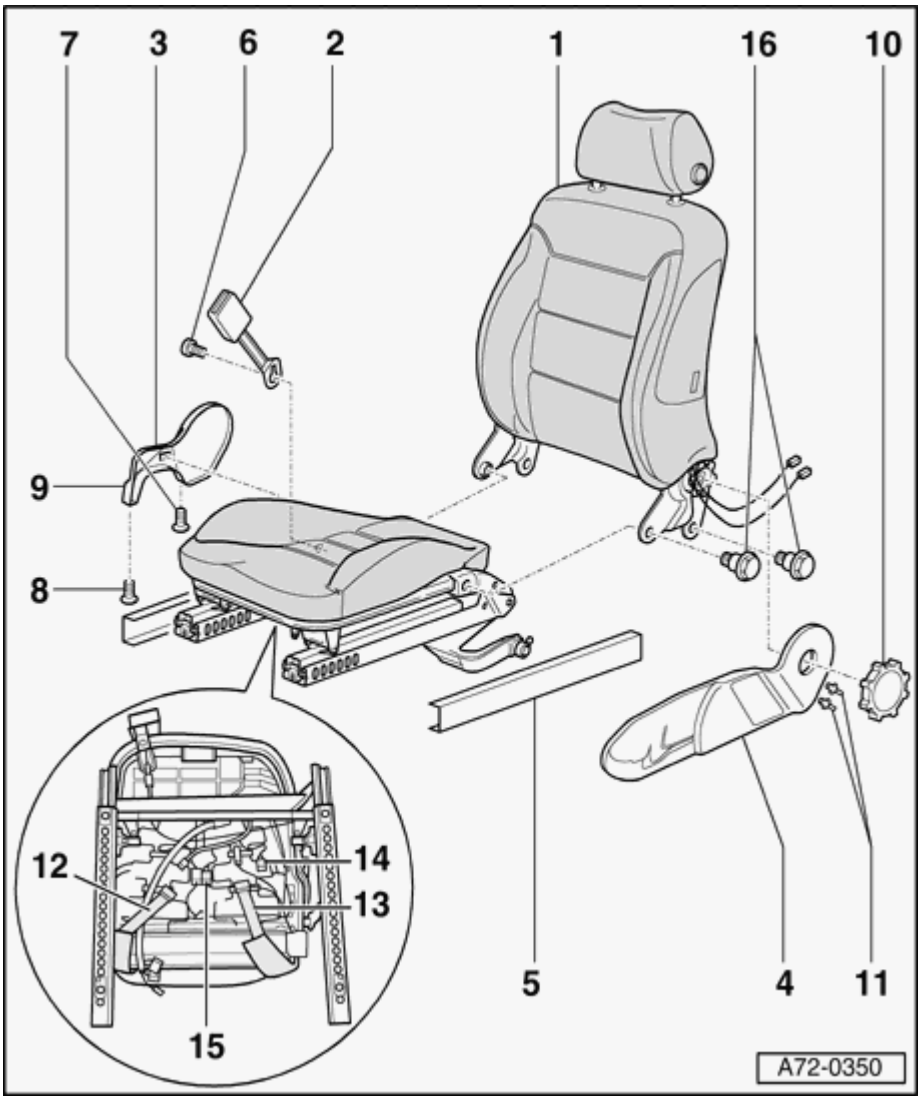


Fig. 377: Tunnel-Side Backrest Trim Remove/Install Components

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Removal:

  - Remove bolt - **7** -.
  - Remove clip - **8** -.
  - Remove tab - **9** - with clip.
  - Remove backrest panel on tunnel side - **3** - to side.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

Removing and installing backrest panel on door sill side

- Removal

  - Remove backrest adjusting wheel - **10** - --> **Backrest adjustment wheel, removing and installing**.
  - Release clip - **11** - (2x).
  - Remove backrest panel on door sill side - **4** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

Backrest adjustment wheel, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

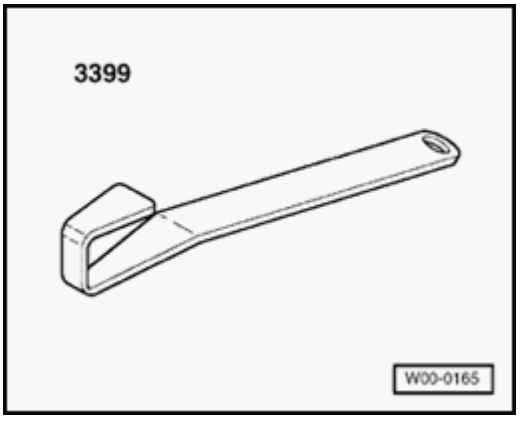


Fig. 378: Assembly Tool 3399
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Assembly tool 3399

cardiagn.com

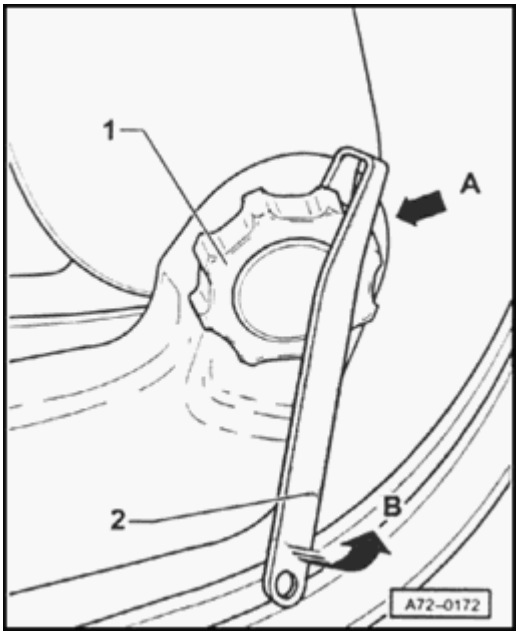


Fig. 379: Removing Backrest Adjustment Wheel
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Turn backrest adjusting wheel - **1** - until one of the adjusting wheel catches can be seen from behind (direction of arrow - **A** -), use a flashlight, if necessary.
- Insert assembly tool 3399 - **2** - and pry in - **direction of arrow** - - **B** -.
- Turn backrest adjustment wheel about 120° more.
- Insert assembly tool 3399 - **2** - and pry in - **direction of arrow** - - **B** -.
- Remove backrest adjustment wheel.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- If backrest adjustment wheel is too loose after installation, replace wheel.

Seat cushion extension, removing and installing (sports seat)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

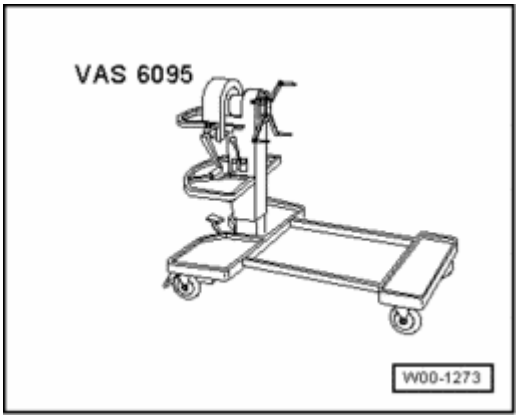


Fig. 380: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

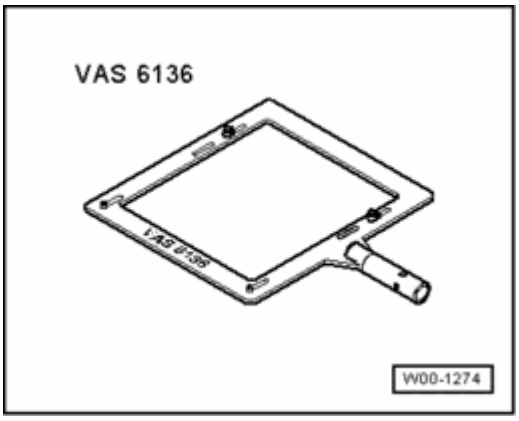


Fig. 381: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

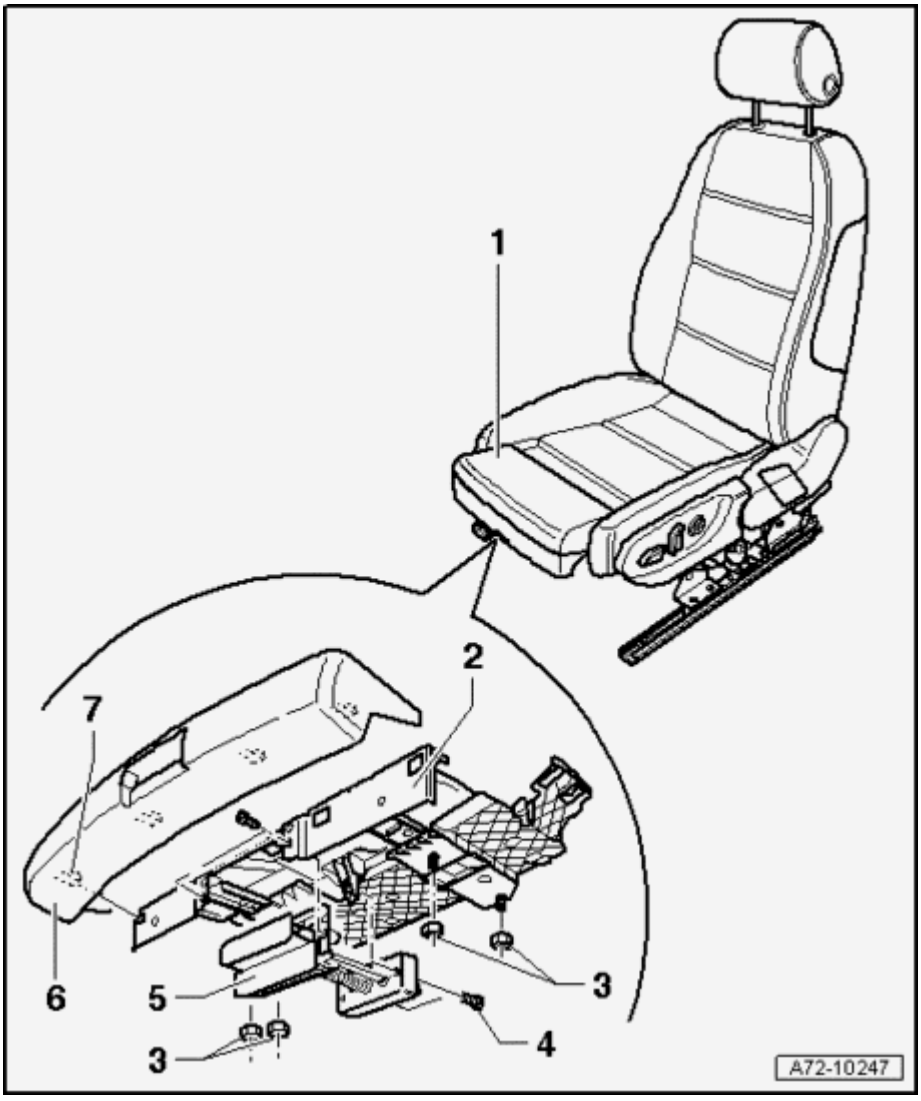


Fig. 382: Seat Cushion Extension (Sports Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat cushion extension

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Detach cover and cushion from seat pan --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.

  - Detach seat cushion extension from cover and cushion.

- **Installing**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Seat surface extension base plate

3 - Nut

- 35 Nm
- Qty. 4

4 - Screw

- Qty. 4

5 - Grip

- Removal
  - Remove bolts - **4** - (Qty. 4).
  - Remove handle - **5** -.
- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

6 - Trim

- Removal
  - Remove clips - **7** - (Qty. 4) on trim - **6** -.
- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

7 - Clips

- Qty. 4

Headrest with insertion lock, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

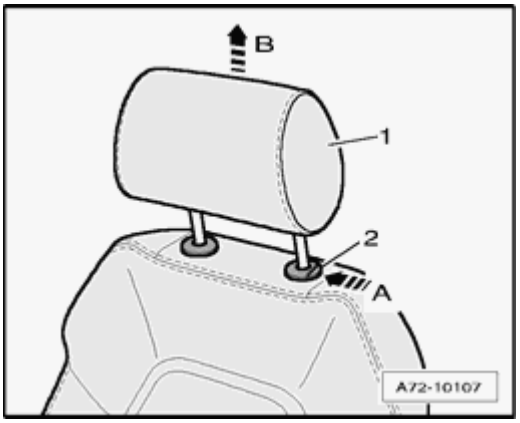


Fig. 383: Pushing Release Button In And Pulling Headrest Upward As Far As Possible
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Push release button - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and pull headrest - **1** - upward as far as possible - **arrow B** - , keep release button pushed while doing so.

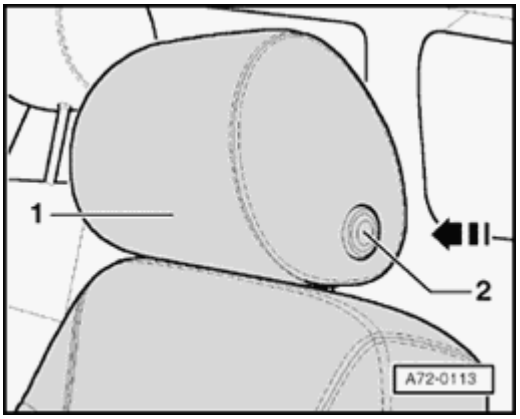


Fig. 384: Pressing Release Button On Headrest Until Stop
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press release button - **2** - on headrest - **1** - until stop - **arrow** -.
- Slide headrest down completely on rods, release button on headrest must be kept pressed while doing so.
- Remove headrest completely from headrest guides.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

FRONT SEATS (STANDARD SEAT) - VEHICLES FROM 11.04

Front seats (standard seat) - vehicles from 11.04

cardiagn.com

NOTE:

- **From 08.05, the usual wiring harness routing to connector station under front seat --> Disconnecting harness connectors has been replaced with modular wiring routing --> Modular wiring routing, vehicles from 08.05, assembly overview.**
- **The modular wiring routing has not been implemented for all countries.**

Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing

NOTE:

- **Before disconnecting battery: Obtain coding of radio.**

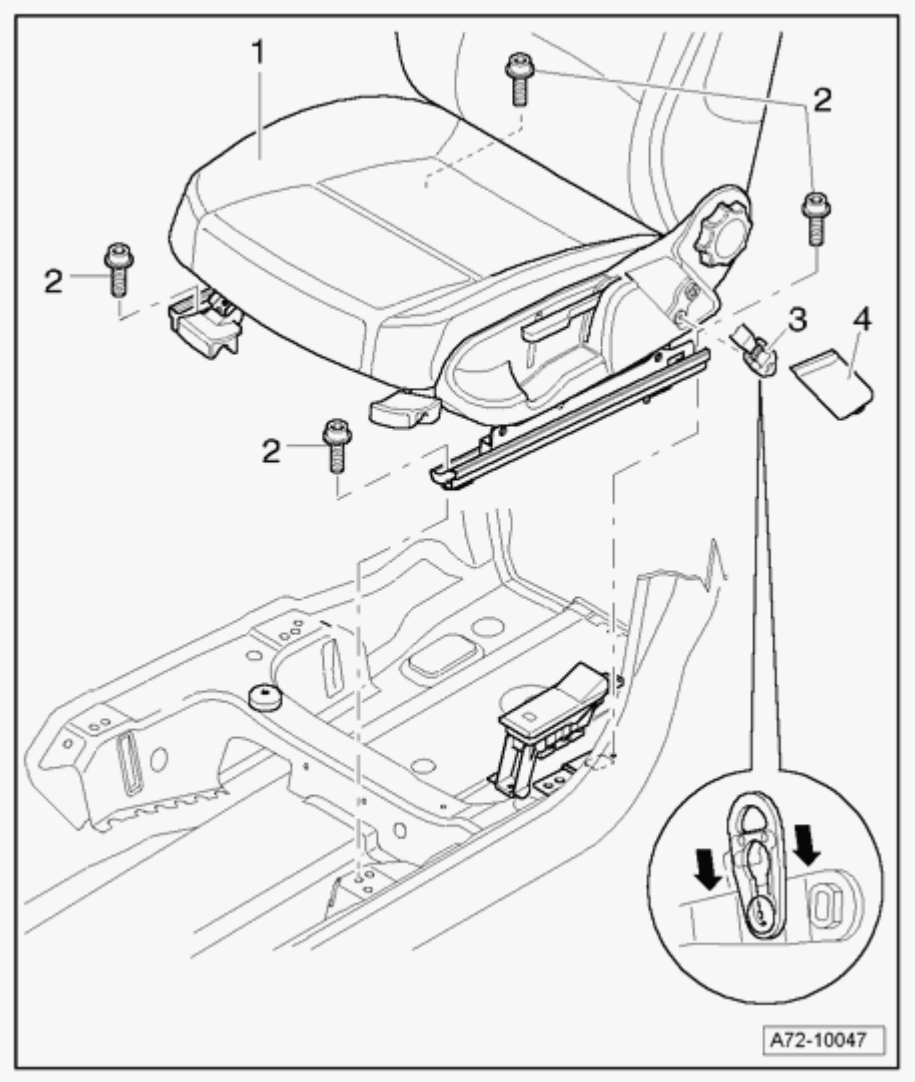


Fig. 385: Front Seats (Standard Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

cardiagn.com

- Removal

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

- Tilt seat up.
- Pull assembly cover - **4** - up and remove.
- Pull seat belt anchor - **3** - down in direction of arrow and remove.
- Pull handle for seat fore/aft adjustment and drive front seat - **1** - completely toward rear.
- Remove front bolts - **2** - (2x). Pull handle for seat fore/aft adjustment and drive front seat - **1** - completely toward front.
- Remove rear bolts - **2** - (2x).
- Disconnect battery ground wire -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

CAUTION: Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.

- Tip front seat - **1** - back.
- Disconnect harness connectors --> **Disconnecting harness connectors**.
- Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.
- With help from a second mechanic, lift front seat - **1** - out of vehicle.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Remove Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 only after installing front seat --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.

cardiagn.com

NOTE:

- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Connect connector to couplings on connector station location in floor --> **Disconnecting harness connectors**.
- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

2 - Screw

- 50 Nm
- Qty. 4

3 - Seat belt anchor

4 - Assembly cover

Disconnecting harness connectors

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

cardiagn.com

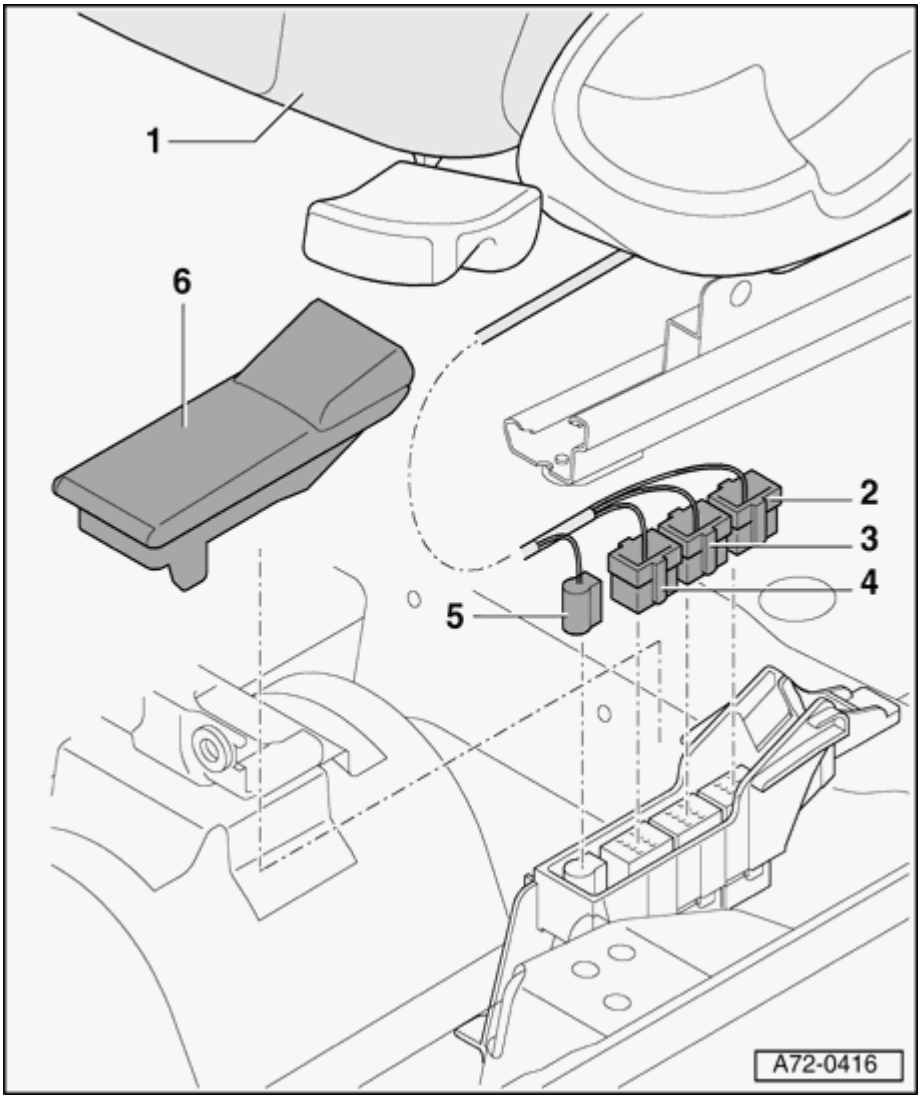


Fig. 386: Disconnecting Harness Connectors
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Belt buckle sensor connector (black)

3 - Seat heater connector (green)

4 - Current supply connector (red)

5 - Airbag connector (yellow)

6 - Panel or cover

- For connector station

cardiagn.com

- Removal

  - Tip front seat - **1** - back.

Vehicles without modular wiring routing through 08.05

  - Remove connector station cover - **6** - upward.

Vehicles with modular wiring routing from 08.05

  - Remove connector station cover --> **Modular wiring routing with corrugated tubing on front seat**.

Procedure for all vehicles

  - Press in tab on airbag connector - **5** - on tunnel side and disconnect airbag connector - **5** -.
  - Press in tab on connector for voltage supply - **4** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for voltage supply - **4** -.
  - Press in tab on connector for heated seat - **3** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for heated seat - **3** - .
  - For vehicles with seatbelt fasten sensor: Press in tab on connector for seatbelt fasten sensor - **2** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for seatbelt fasten sensor - **2** -.

  - Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

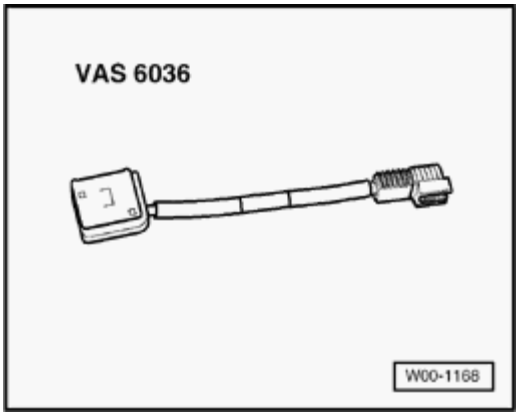


Fig. 387: Airbag Adapter VAS 6036
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Airbag adapter VAS 6036

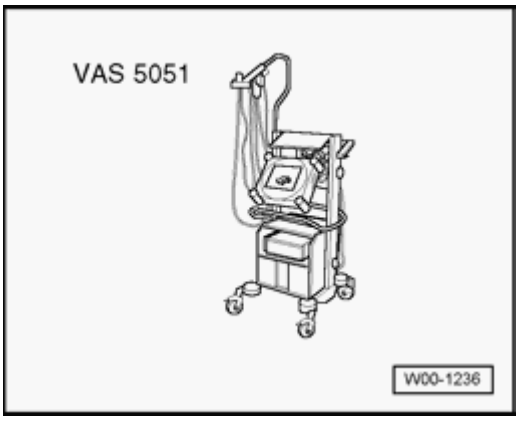


Fig. 388: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

CAUTION: Technician must be grounded before disconnecting ignition and ground wiring, touching door striker or body.

CAUTION: The Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 must stay connected to seat until seat is installed again.

cardiagn.com

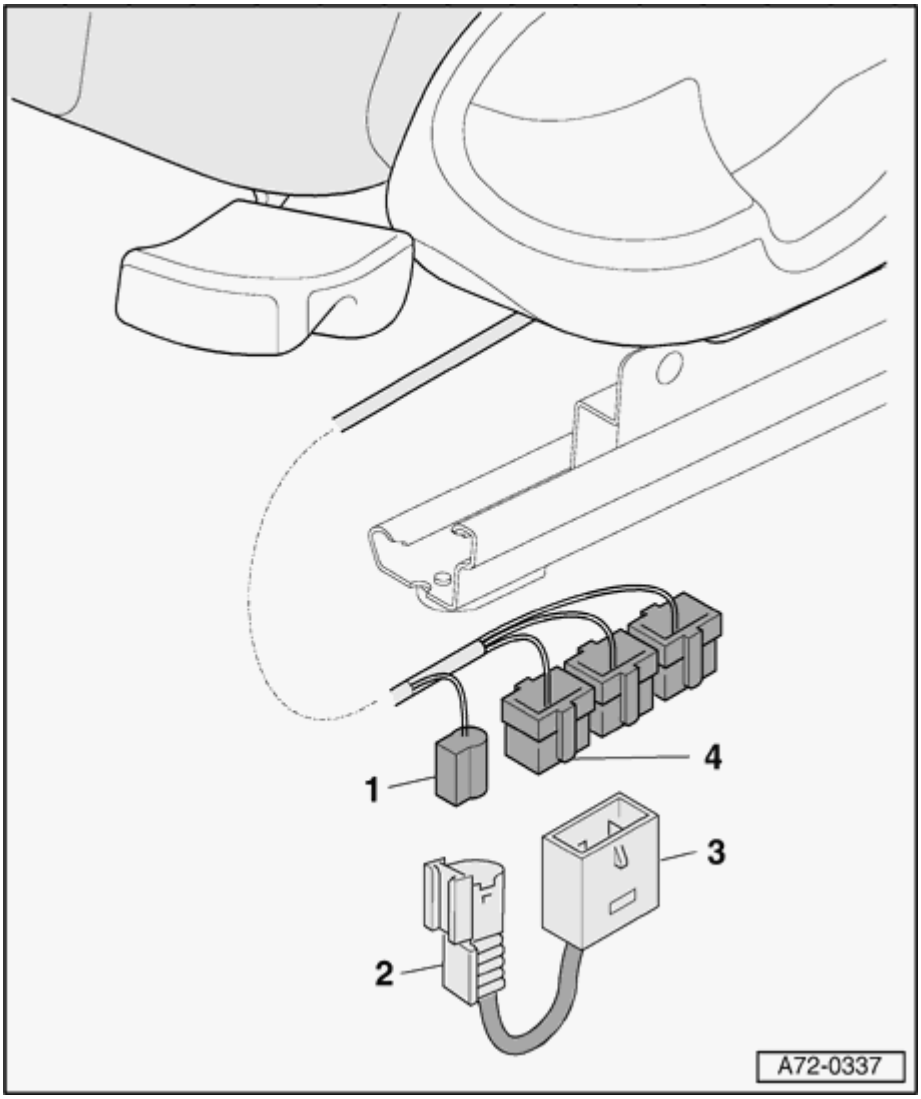


Fig. 389: Airbag Adapter VAS 6036, Connecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Side airbag connector, seat side (yellow)

2 - Side airbag connector, adapter side (yellow)

- Disconnect ignition and ground wiring.
- Attach adapter-side of side airbag connector - **2** - to seat-side of side airbag connector - **1** -.

3 - Power supply connector, adapter side (red)

4 - Power supply connector, seat side (red)

Side airbag connector, disconnecting

cardiagn.com

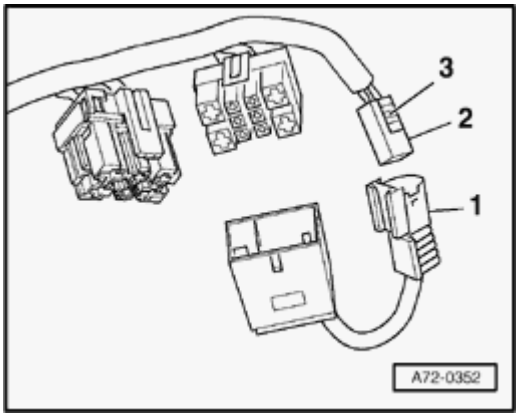


Fig. 390: Side Airbag Connector, Disconnecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press catch - **3** - on connector for side airbag - **2** - from counterpart - **1** - and remove it.
- Follow measures after connecting battery -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

NOTE:

- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

Connector assignment for coupling station

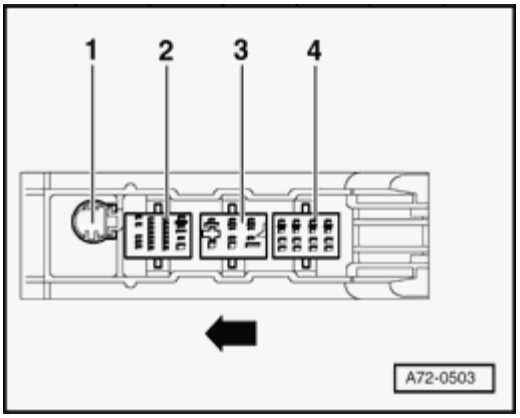


Fig. 391: Connector Assignment For Coupling Station
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

NOTE:

- **The arrow points to the direction of travel.**

1. Side airbag

cardiagn.com

2. Power supply
3. Seat heating
4. Seatbelt fasten sensor

Modular wiring routing, vehicles from 08.05, assembly overview

NOTE:

- **Modular wiring routing has not been implemented on vehicles for all countries.**
- **Check version of front seat and of vehicle and perform repairs accordingly.**

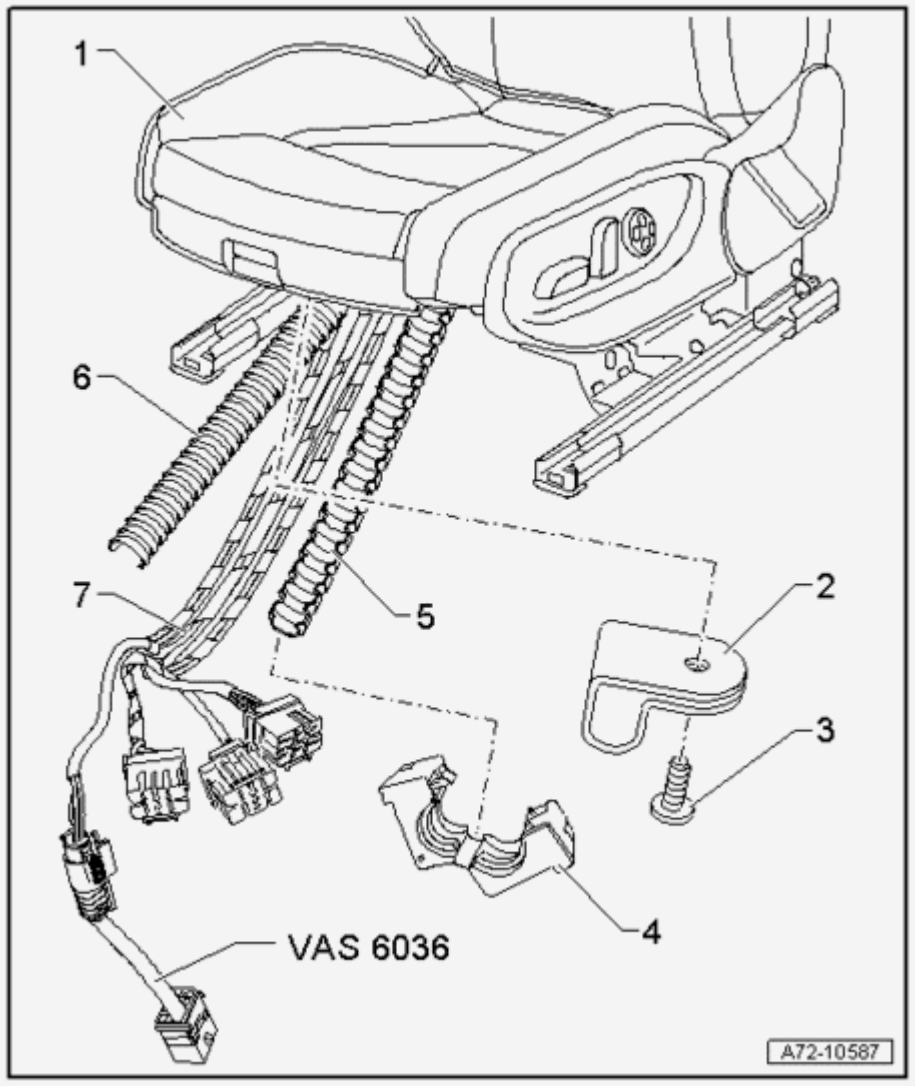


Fig. 392: Modular Wiring Routing, Vehicles From 08.05, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

cardiagn.com

2 - Cable clip

- For securing corrugated tubing to seat pan

3 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm

4 - Cable bracket

- Note location --> **Modular wiring routing with corrugated tubing on front seat**

5 - Corrugated tubing

- Lower shell
- Note location --> **Modular wiring routing with corrugated tubing on front seat**

6 - Corrugated tubing

- Upper shell
- Note location --> **Modular wiring routing with corrugated tubing on front seat**

7 - Wiring harness

- Observe notes for routing wiring harness in corrugated tubing --> **Modular wiring routing with corrugated tubing on front seat**

Modular wiring routing with corrugated tubing on front seat

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

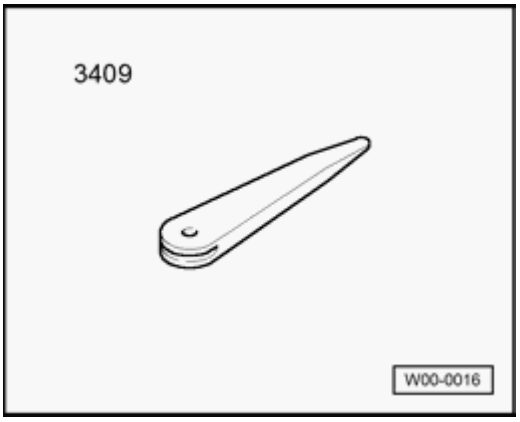


Fig. 393: Identifying Trim Removal Wedge 3409
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Trim removal wedge 3409

cardiagn.com

General information

With the introduction of modular wiring routing, the complete sheathing of the entire wiring harness with a fabric strap between the seat tray and the connectors to the connector station has been eliminated. A two-shell corrugated tubing in which the wires are routed separately has been implemented.

Opening corrugated tubing and removing individual wire

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

- Move front seat as far back and up as possible.

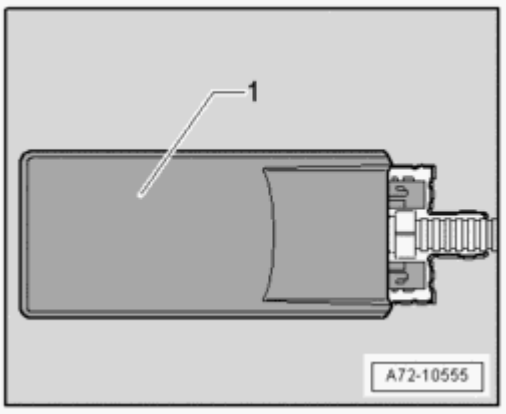


Fig. 394: Uncliping Connector Station Cover Under Front Seat
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Unclip connector station cover - **1** - under front seat.
- Use Trim Removal wedge 3409 to do this.
- Disengage cover - **1** - on corrugated tubing side.

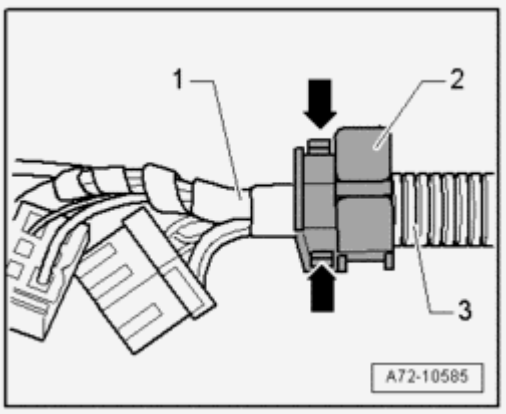


Fig. 395: Releasing Cable Bracket On Connector Station By Pressing Retaining Tabs On Both Sides
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Release cable bracket - **2** - on connector station by pressing retaining tabs on both sides - **arrows** -.

1 - Wiring harness

3 - Corrugated tubing, two-shelled

CAUTION: Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.

- Remove front seat --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**
- Attach seat to Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136.

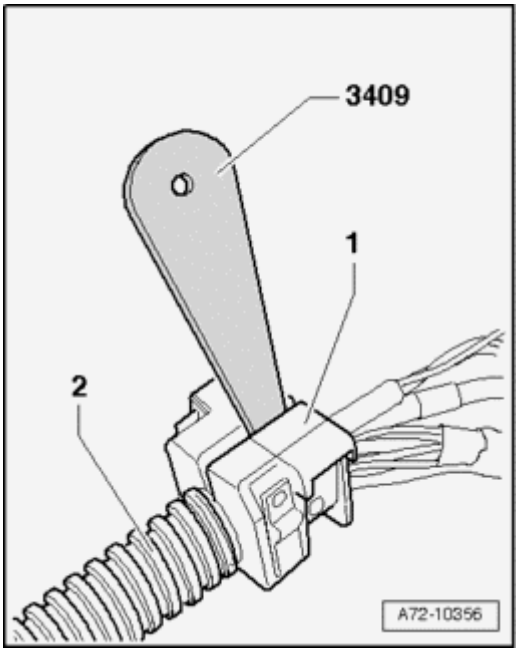


Fig. 396: Using Trim Removal Wedge 3409 To Open Cable Bracket
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using Trim Removal Wedge 3409 , open cable bracket - **1** -.
- Remove cable bracket - **1** - from corrugated tubing - **2** -.

cardiagn.com

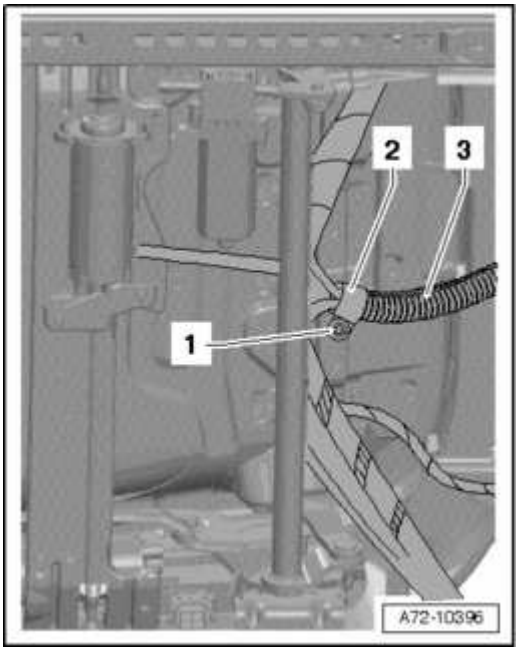


Fig. 397: Removing Bolt & Cable Clip From Corrugated Tubing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt - **1** -.
- Remove cable clip - **2** - from corrugated tubing - **3** -.

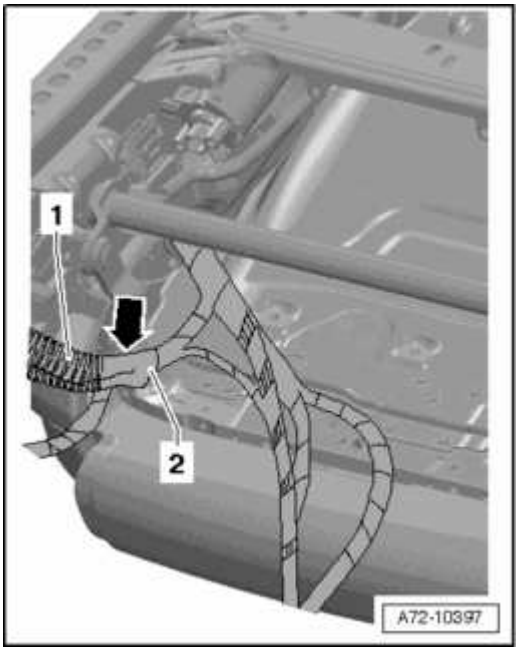


Fig. 398: Opening Fabric Band & Corrugated Tubing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Open fabric band - **2** - in area of - **arrow** -.

cardiagn.com

- Open corrugated tubing - **1** -.

Install individual wires and close corrugated tubing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- When bundling and placing individual wires in corrugated tubing, ensure wires are not twisted.

NOTE:

- **Note installation position of two-part corrugated tubing to wiring harness and position of cable bracket to corrugated tubing.**

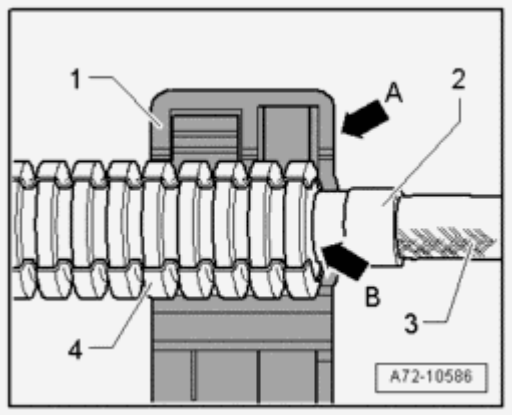


Fig. 399: Ensuring Side Of Cable Bracket Connects To Last Rib On Corrugated Tubing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- The beginning of the corrugated tubing - **4** - should be placed immediately after the clip - **2** - or cable tie.

3 - Wiring harness to connector station

- Ensure two-part corrugated tubing - **4** - locks cleanly over entire length.
- Ensure side - **arrow A** - of cable bracket - **1** - connects to the last rib - **arrow B** - on the corrugated tubing - **4** -.

cardiagn.com

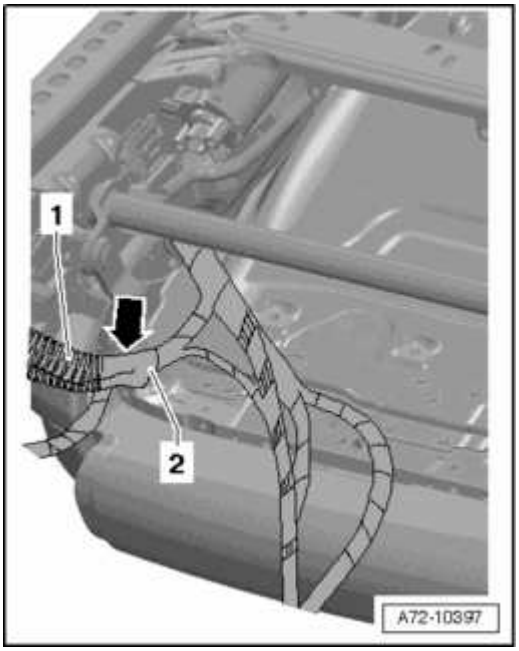


Fig. 400: Binding Transition Of Seat Side Of Corrugated Tubing And Wiring Harness With Self-Adhesive Fabric Tape
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Bind transition of seat side of corrugated tubing - **1** - and wiring harness - **2** - with self-adhesive fabric tape - **arrow** -.

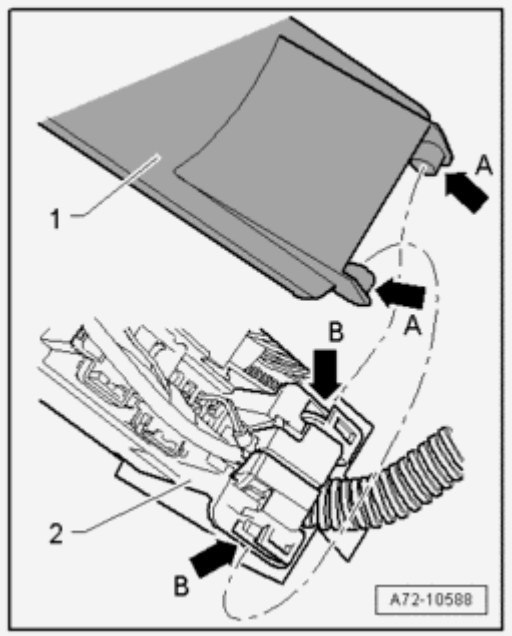


Fig. 401: Ensuring First Pins On Cover Engage Correctly In Mounts On Connector Station
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Ensure that first the pins - **A arrows** - on cover - **1** - engage correctly in mounts - **B arrows** - on

cardiagn.com

connector station - **2** -.

- They can only lock in the connector station when the cover is engaged correctly.

Tightening torques --> **Modular wiring routing, vehicles from 08.05, assembly overview**

Seat rail covers, removing and installing

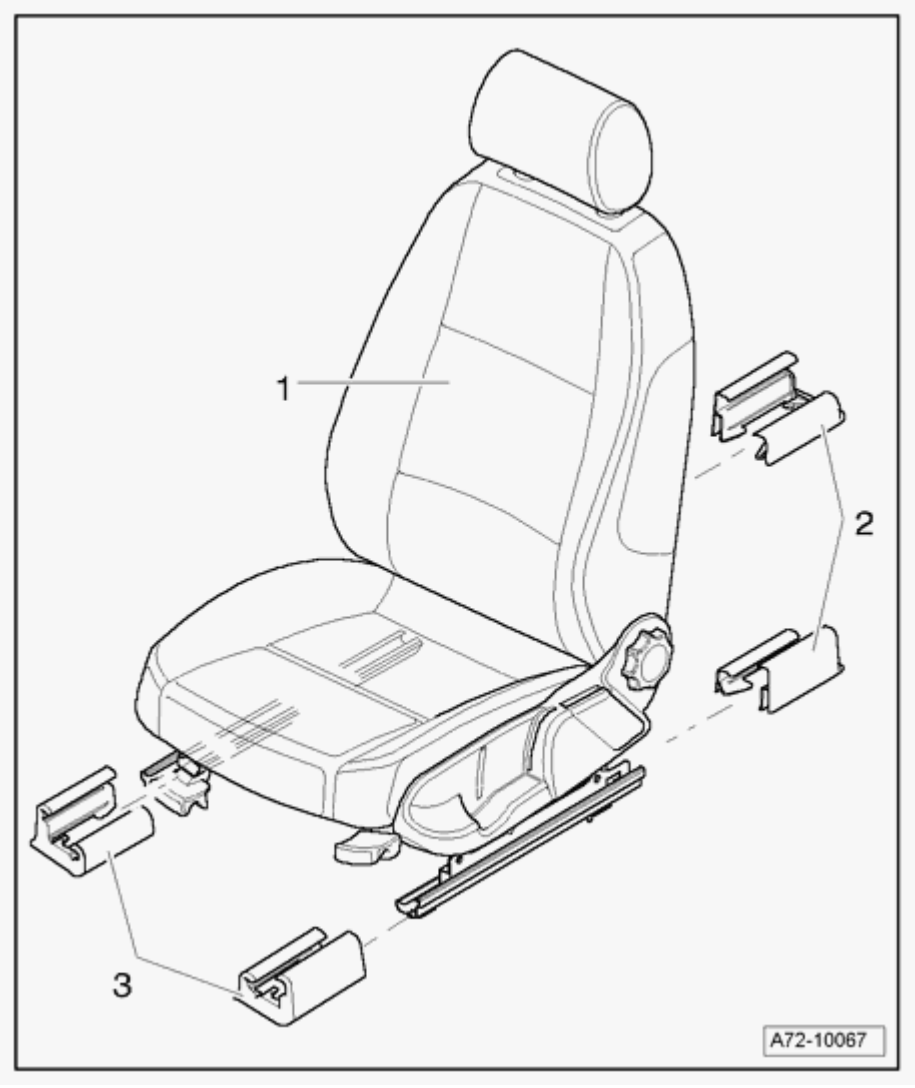


Fig. 402: Seat Rail Covers Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Rear seat rail covers (2x)

- Removal

cardiagn.com

- Drive front seat - **1** - to center position.
- Remove seat --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
- Remove seat rail cover - **2** - or - **3** - from below on interior side.
- Pry out seat rail cover on the outside.
- Pull off seat rail cover - **2** - or - **3** - as straight as possible.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Front seat rail covers (2x)

Front backrest (standard seat), removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

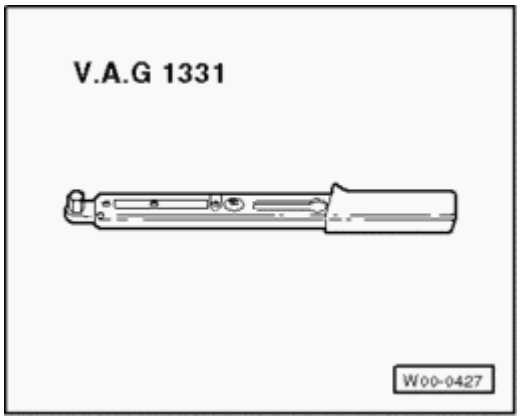


Fig. 403: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

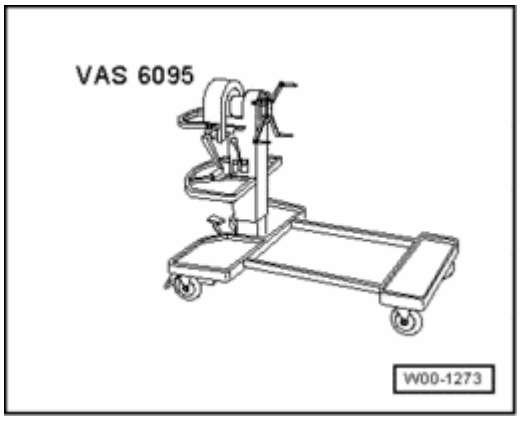


Fig. 404: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

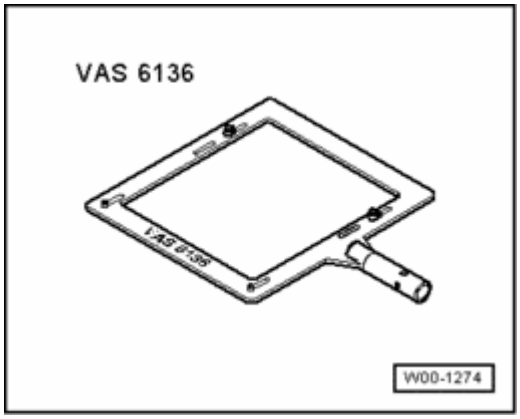


Fig. 405: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

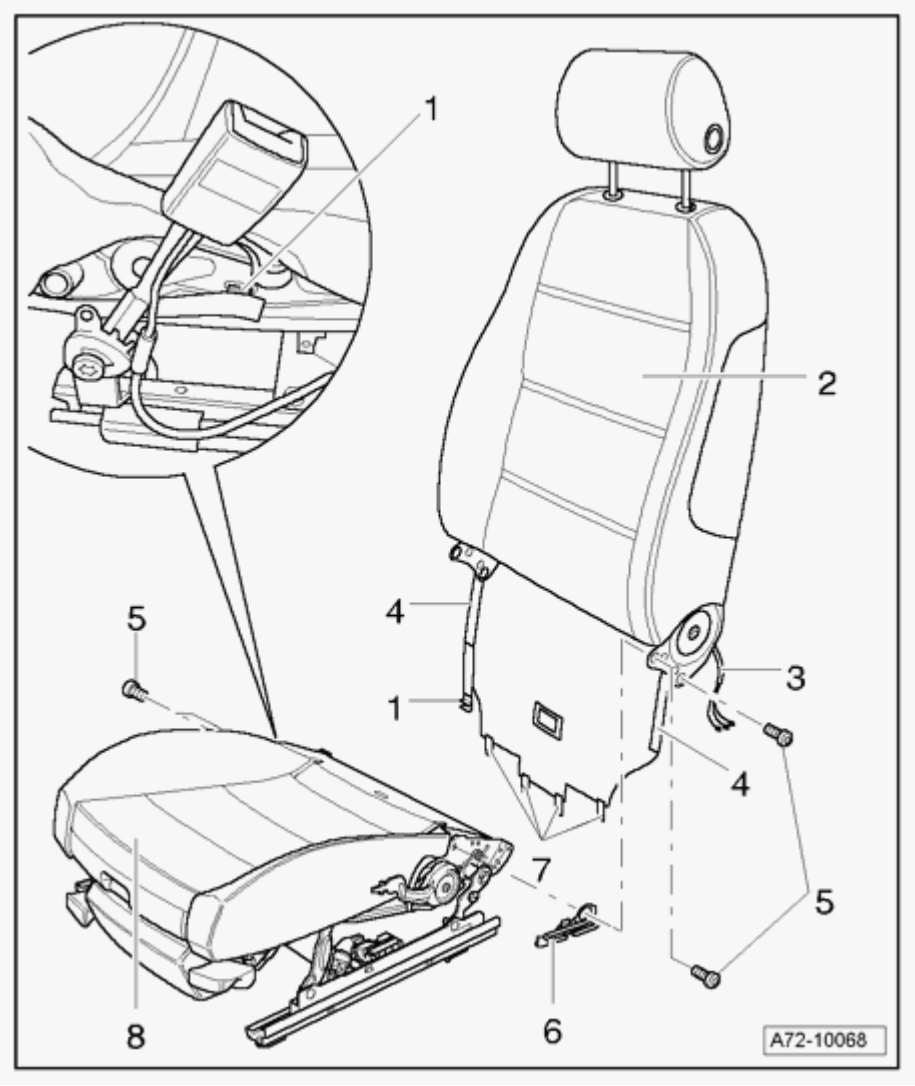


Fig. 406: Front Backrest (Standard Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Fastening strip

2 - Backrest

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove backrest adjustment wheel --> **Backrest adjustment wheel, removing and installing**.
  - Remove seat height adjustment handle --> **Seat height adjustment handle, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side trim (sill side), removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing**.
- Disengage retaining strip - **1** - from seat pan - **8** -.

- Disconnect connectors and disconnect cables from spring mat.
- Remove screws - **5** - (4x).
- Tip backrest - **2** - forward on seat.
- Push cushion aside and carefully disconnect wiring harness - **3** - from seat pan - **8** -.

- Remove backrest - **2** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

- If backrest adjustment wheel is too loose after installation, replace wheel.
- Secure tabs - **7** - (4x) on footwell cover to spring mat of seat pan.

3 - Cable harness

4 - Fastening strip

- Qty. 2

5 - Screw, self-locking

- Tightening torque 20 Nm
- Qty. 4
- Replace
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

6 - Support

7 - Tab

- Qty. 4

8 - Seat pan

cardiagn.com

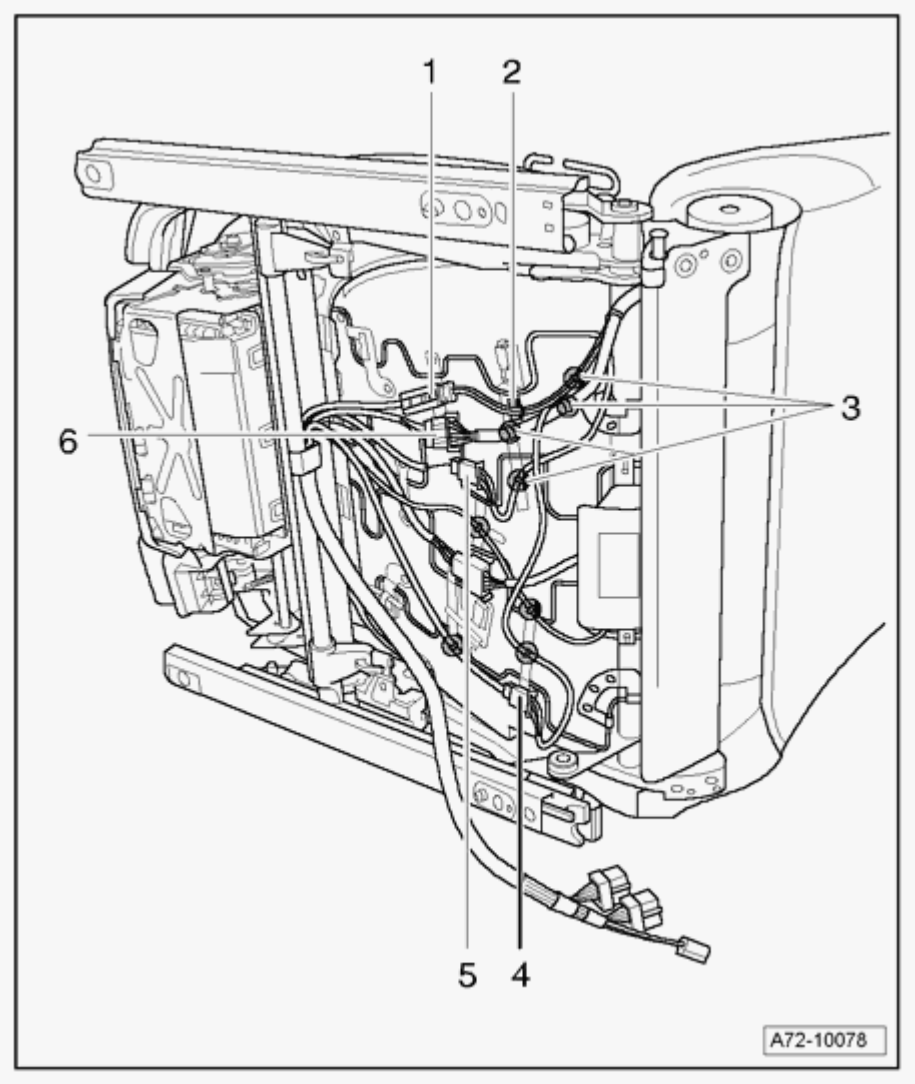


Fig. 407: Identifying Connectors, Clip, Cable Tie Clips, Harness Connector Of Side Airbag Ground (Gnd), Backrest Heater Connector & Four-Way Lumbar Support Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Side airbag connector

- Only on vehicles without modular wiring routing through 08.05

  - Press in catches on connectors - **4** - , - **5** - and - **6** - on left and right and disconnect connectors.
  - Disconnect harness connector of side airbag - **1** - **Side airbag connector, vehicles without modular wiring routing through 08.05, disconnecting**.
  - Disconnect clip - **2** -.
  - Loosen wires at cable tie clips - **3** -.

2 - Clip

cardiagn.com

3 - Cable tie clips

4 - Harness connector of side airbag Ground (GND)

5 - Backrest heater connector

6 - Four-way lumbar support connector

Side airbag connector, vehicles without modular wiring routing through 08.05, disconnecting

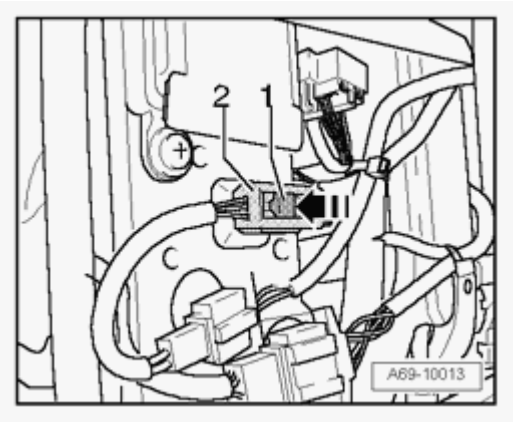


Fig. 408: Pressing Catch And Disconnecting Connector For Side Airbag
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press catch - **1** - in direction of arrow and disconnect connector for side airbag - **2** -.

Backrest adjustment wheel, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

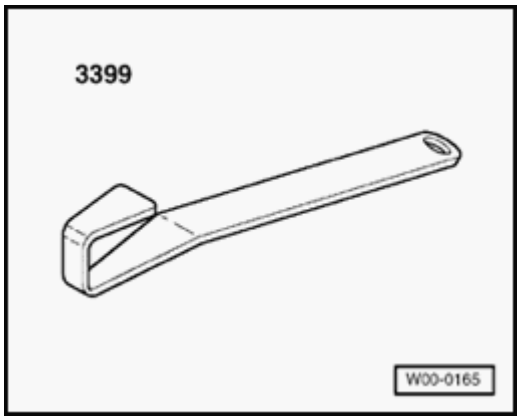


Fig. 409: Assembly Tool 3399
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Assembly tool 3399

cardiagn.com

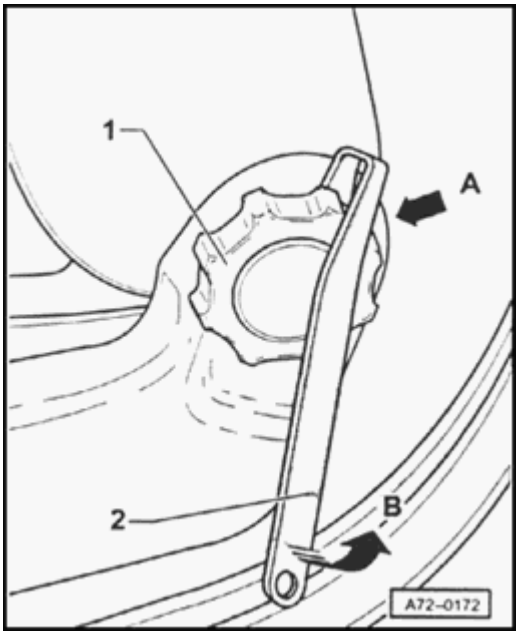


Fig. 410: Removing Backrest Adjustment Wheel
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Removal
  - Turn backrest adjustment wheel - **1** - until you see a locking tab at back - **arrow A** -. Use a flashlight, if needed.
  - Hook in assembly tool 3399 - **2** - and pry in - **direction of arrow B** -.
  - Turn backrest adjustment wheel about 120° more.
  - Insert assembly tool 3399 - **2** - and pry in - **direction of arrow B** -.
  - Remove backrest adjustment wheel.
- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

- If backrest adjustment wheel is too loose after installation, replace wheel.

Seat height adjustment handle, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

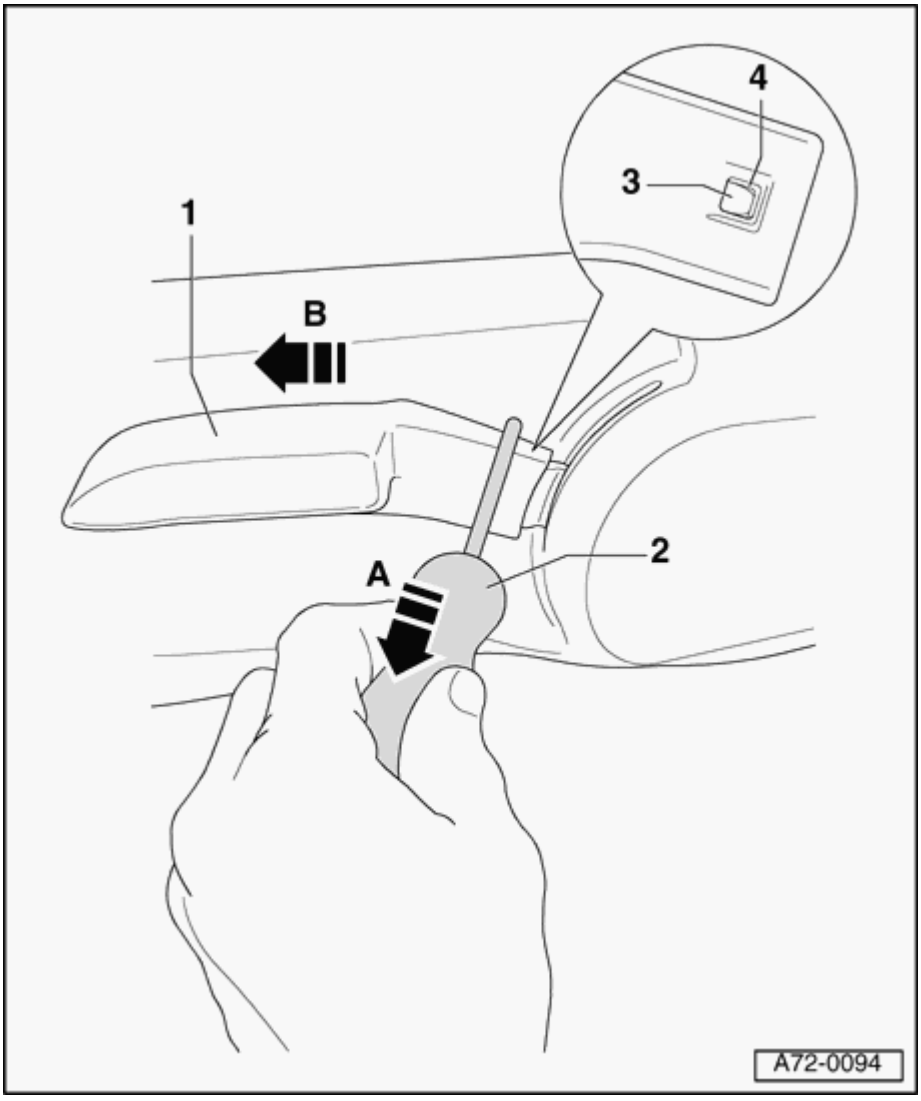


Fig. 411: Seat Height Adjustment Handle Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat height adjustment handle

- Create an assisting tool **Preparing assist tool to remove seat height adjusting handle**.
- Pull seat height adjustment handle - **1** - away from seat a little.
- Guide assisting tool - **2** - into mount - **4** -.
- Pull assisting tool - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - to push spring - **3** - back.
- Pull seat height adjustment handle - **1** - in - **direction of arrow B** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

cardiagn.com

- Ensure retaining clamp is positioned on seat height adjustment handle lever. Note installation position **Retaining clamp installation position**.

2 - Assisting tool

3 - Spring

4 - Mount

Preparing assist tool to remove seat height adjusting handle

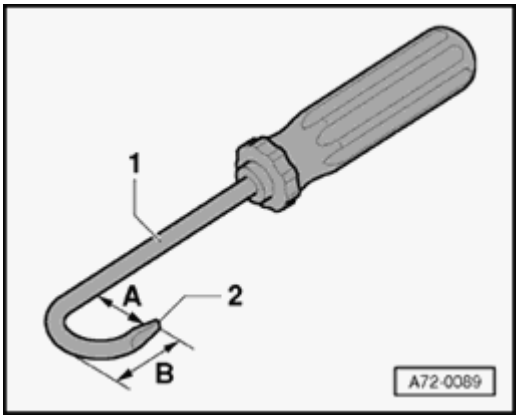


Fig. 412: Preparing Assist Tool To Remove Seat Height Adjusting Handle
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Bend a screwdriver - **1** - with a width - **2** - of 3.5 mm and dimensions - **A** - 20 mm and - **B** - max. 15 mm.

Retaining clamp installation position

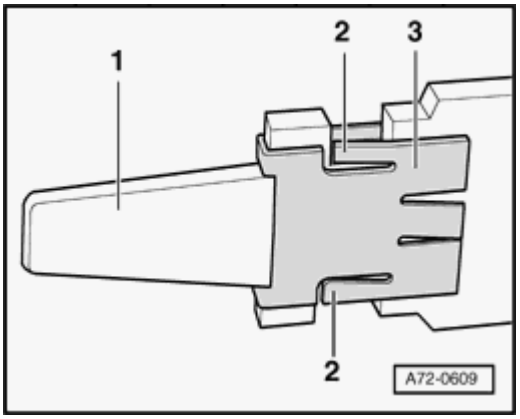


Fig. 413: Retaining Clamp Installation Position
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Ensure springs - **2** - (2x) in retaining clamp - **3** - are position on outside of lever - **1** -.

Side trim (sill side), removing and installing

cardiagn.com

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

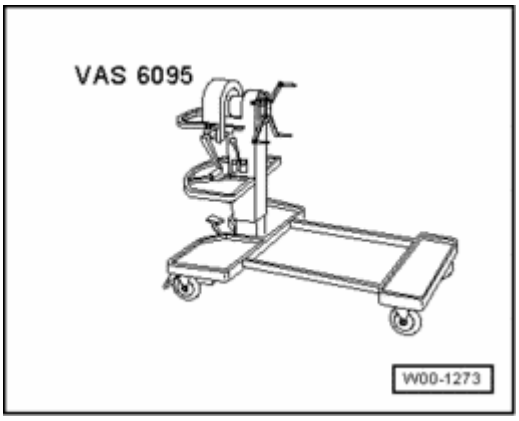


Fig. 414: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

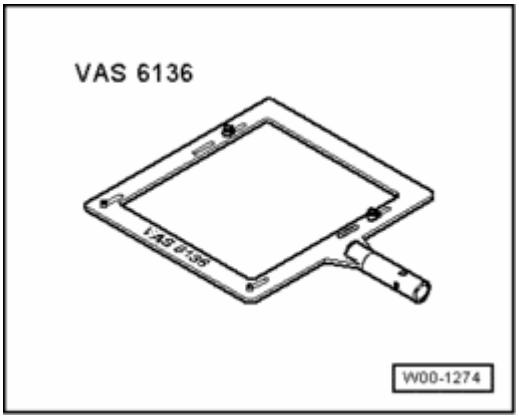


Fig. 415: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

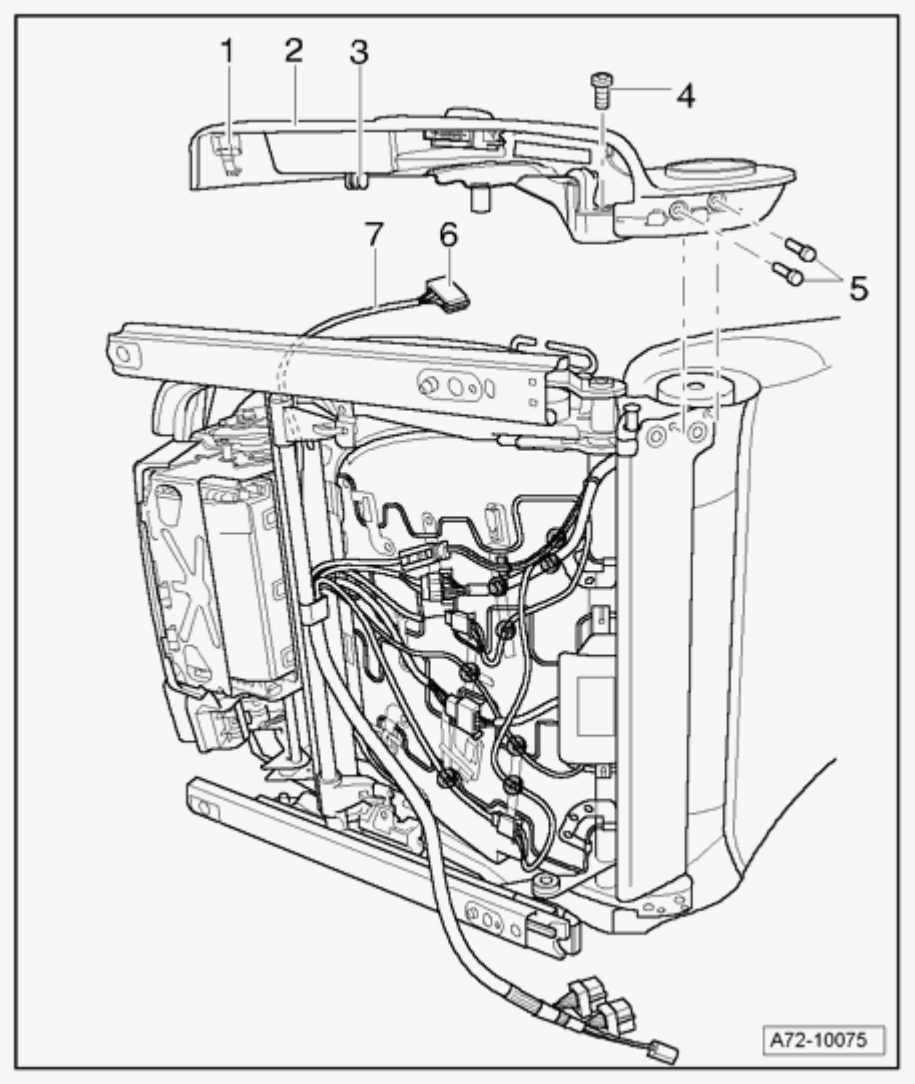


Fig. 416: Side Trim (Sill Side) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Catch

2 - Side trim (sill side)

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove backrest adjustment wheel --> **Backrest adjustment wheel, removing and installing**.
  - Remove seat height adjustment handle --> **Seat height adjustment handle, removing and installing**.
  - Loosen footwell cover retaining strip from side panel **Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening**.

cardiagn.com

- Position a screwdriver to head of plastic rivet - **5** - (2x).
- Pry out plastic rivet - **5** - (2x) by turning the screwdriver.

- Remove screw - **4** -.
- Disengage front side panel from locking mechanism - **1** -.
- Pull side panel toward front in order to disengage eyelet - **3** -.
- Disengage side panel toward top.

- Remove connector - **6** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

- Slide footwell cover retaining strip into side panel brackets - **2** - **Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening**.

3 - Eye

4 - Screw

5 - Plastic rivets (2x)

6 - Connector

7 - Wire to four-way lumbar support switch

Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening

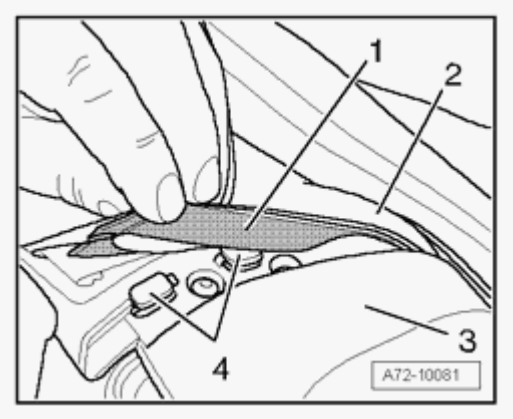


Fig. 417: Disengaging Retaining Strip On Footwell Cover From Brackets Rear Sill Side Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage retaining strip - **1** - on footwell cover - **2** - from brackets - **4** - (2x) on side panel - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

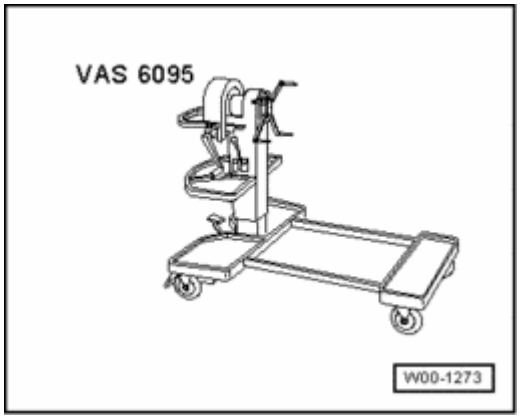


Fig. 418: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

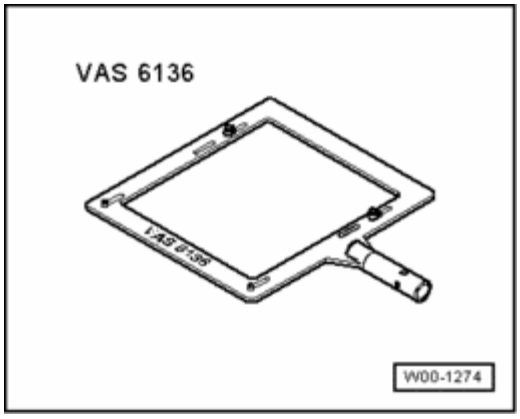


Fig. 419: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

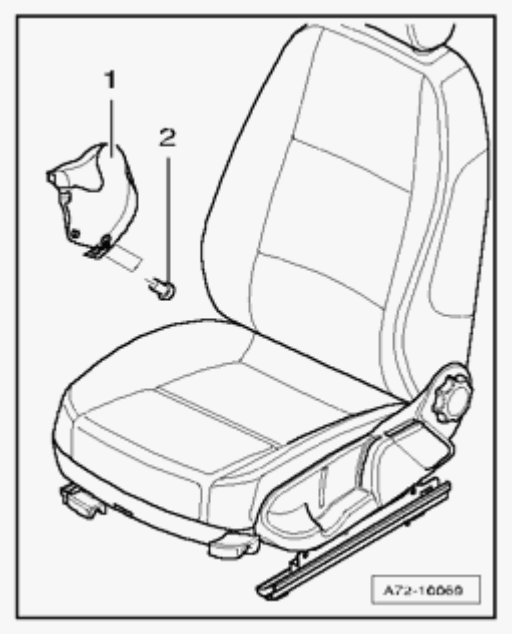


Fig. 420: Tunnel-Side Side Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Loosen footwell cover retaining strip from side panel **Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening**.

  - Position a screwdriver to head of plastic rivet - **2** - (2x).
  - Pry out plastic rivet - **2** - (2x) by turning the screwdriver.
  - Disengage side panel - **1** - toward top.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

  - Slide footwell fastening strip into side trim bracket **Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening**

Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening

cardiagn.com

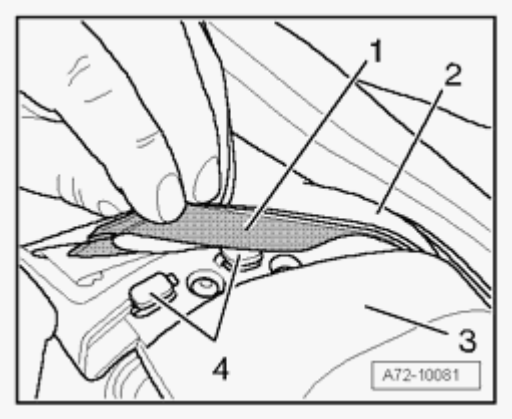


Fig. 421: Disengaging Retaining Strip On Footwell Cover From Brackets Rear Sill Side Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage retaining strip - **1** - on footwell cover - **2** - from brackets - **4** - (2x) on side panel - **3** -.

Seat height adjustment unit, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

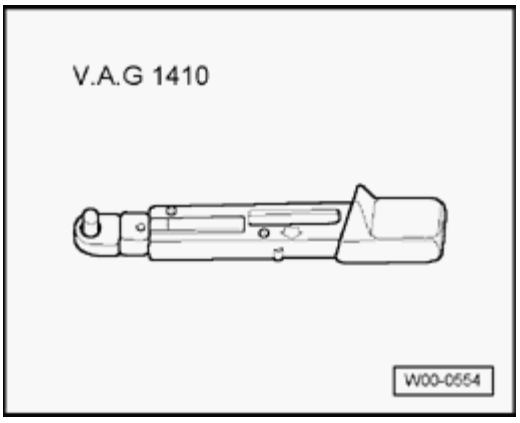


Fig. 422: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

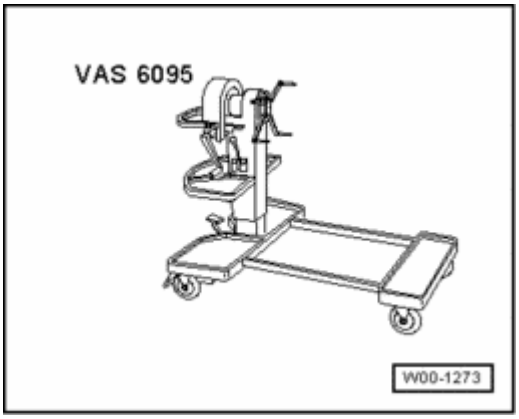


Fig. 423: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

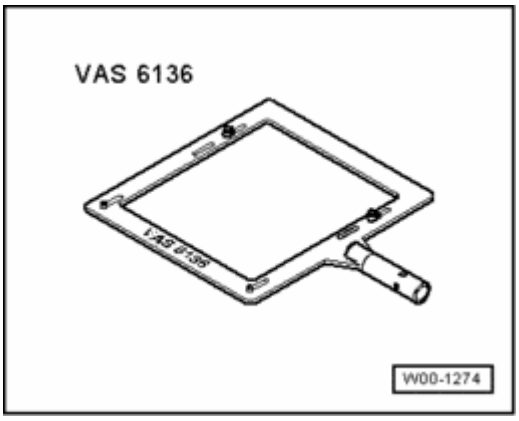


Fig. 424: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

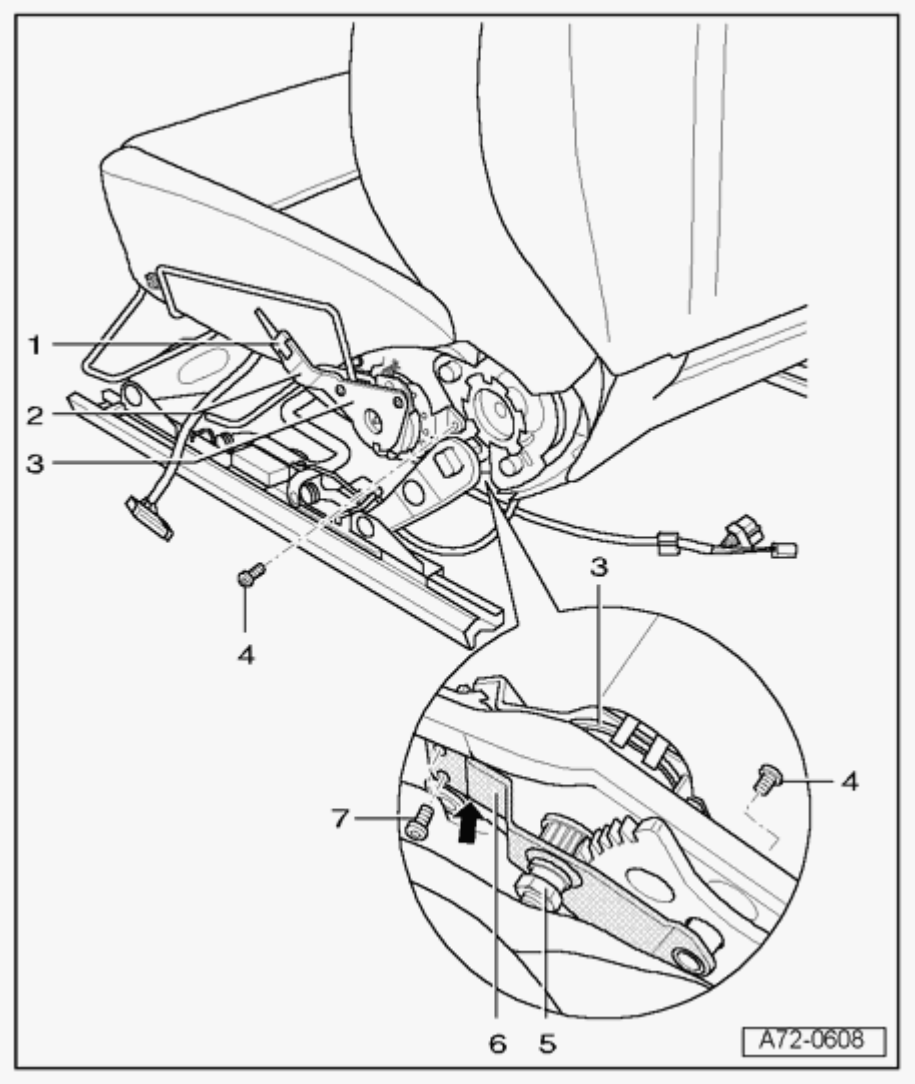


Fig. 425: Seat Height Adjustment Unit Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Retaining clamp

2 - Seat height adjustment handle lever

3 - Seat height adjustment unit

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove backrest adjustment wheel --> **Backrest adjustment wheel, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove seat height adjustment handle --> **Seat height adjustment handle, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side trim (sill side), removing and installing**.
- Remove nut - **5** -.
- Remove bolts - **7** - (2x).
- Remove screw - **4** -.
- Remove seat height adjustment unit - **3** - and retaining plate - **6** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

- Make sure that the retaining plate - **6** - makes contact on backrest frame at location indicated by arrow.
- Ensure retaining clamp - **1** - is positioned on seat height adjustment handle lever - **2** -. Note installation position **Retaining clamp installation position**.

4 - Screw

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

5 - Nut

- Tightening torque 12 Nm

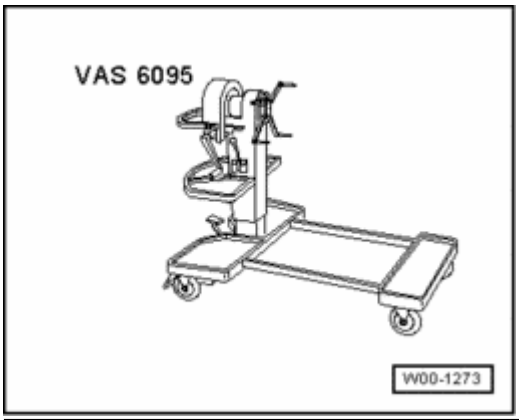
6 - Retaining plate

7 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

Four-way lumbar support switch, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required



cardiagn.com

Fig. 426: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

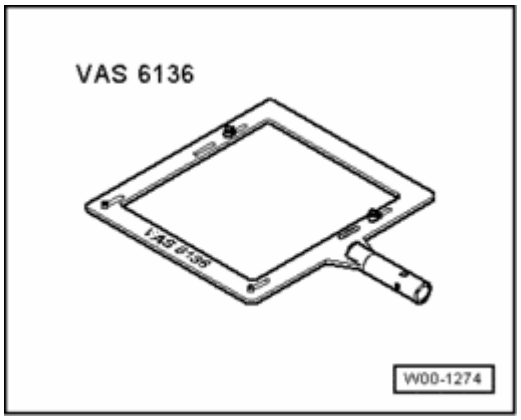


Fig. 427: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

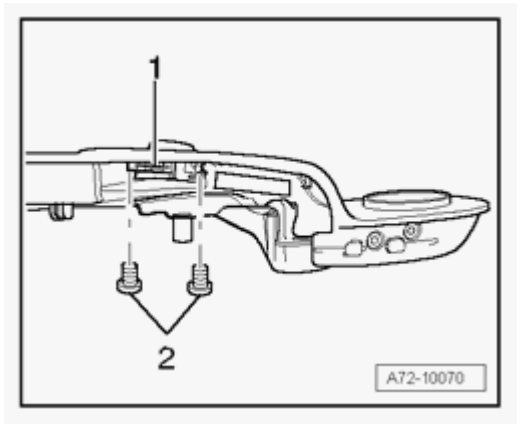


Fig. 428: Removing Bolts & Four-Way Lumbar Support Switch
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Removal

- Remove seat --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove backrest adjustment wheel --> **Backrest adjustment wheel, removing and installing**.

- Remove seat height adjustment handle --> **Seat height adjustment handle, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side trim (sill side), removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).
- Remove four-way lumbar support switch - **1** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

- Tightening torques for bolts - **2** - : 0.5 Nm

Drawer, vehicles through 06.06, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

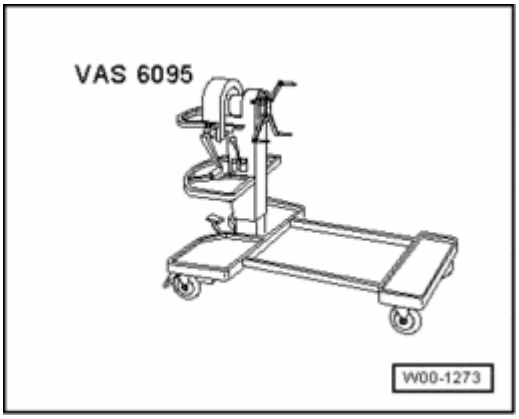


Fig. 429: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

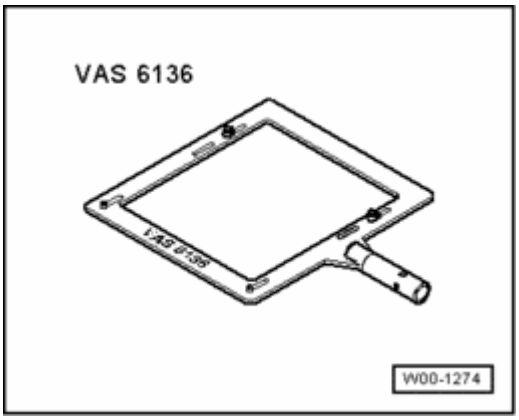


Fig. 430: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

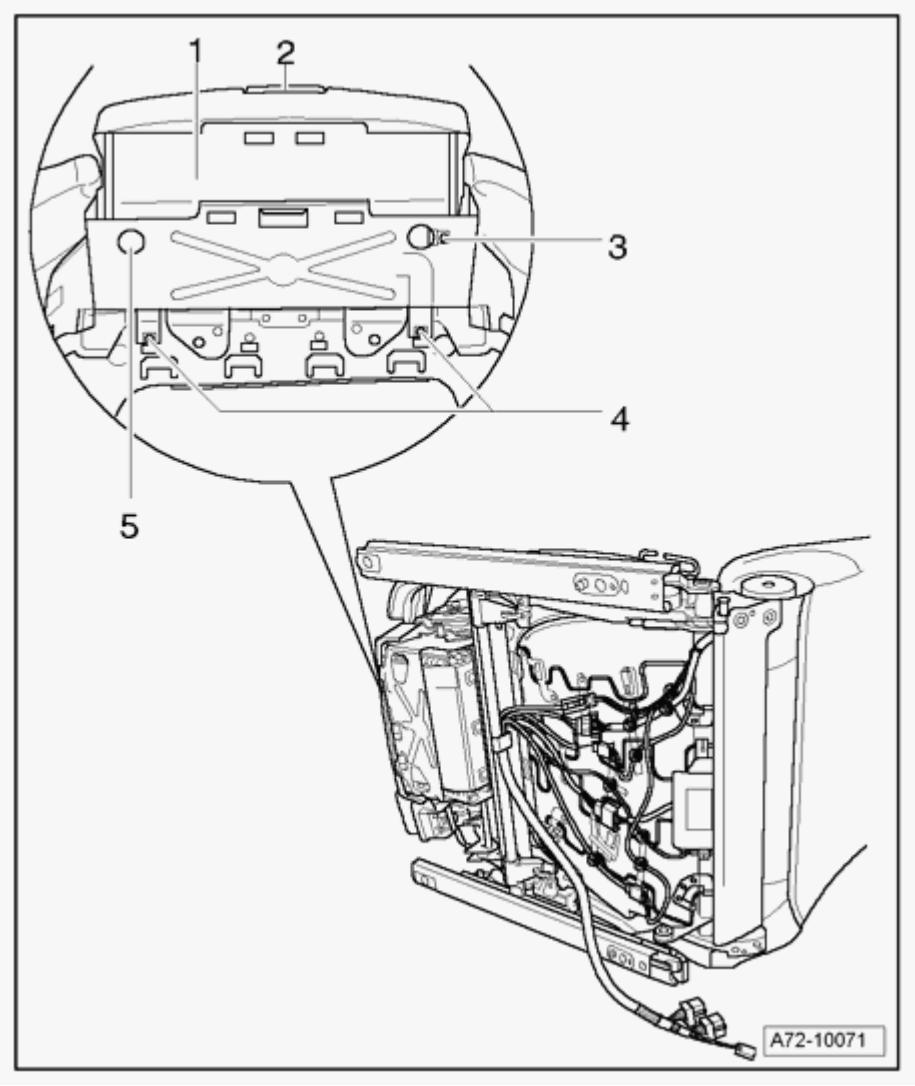


Fig. 431: Drawer, Vehicles Through 06.06 Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Drawer

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Pull handle - **2** - and pull out drawer - **1** -.

  - Insert a screwdriver with inserted bit into opening - **5** - and remove the bolt installed beneath.
  - Remove bolts - **4** - (2x).
  - Remove screw - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove drawer - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Grip

3 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm
- Qty. 2

4 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm
- Qty. 2

5 - Opening

Passenger side storage compartment, from 06.06, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

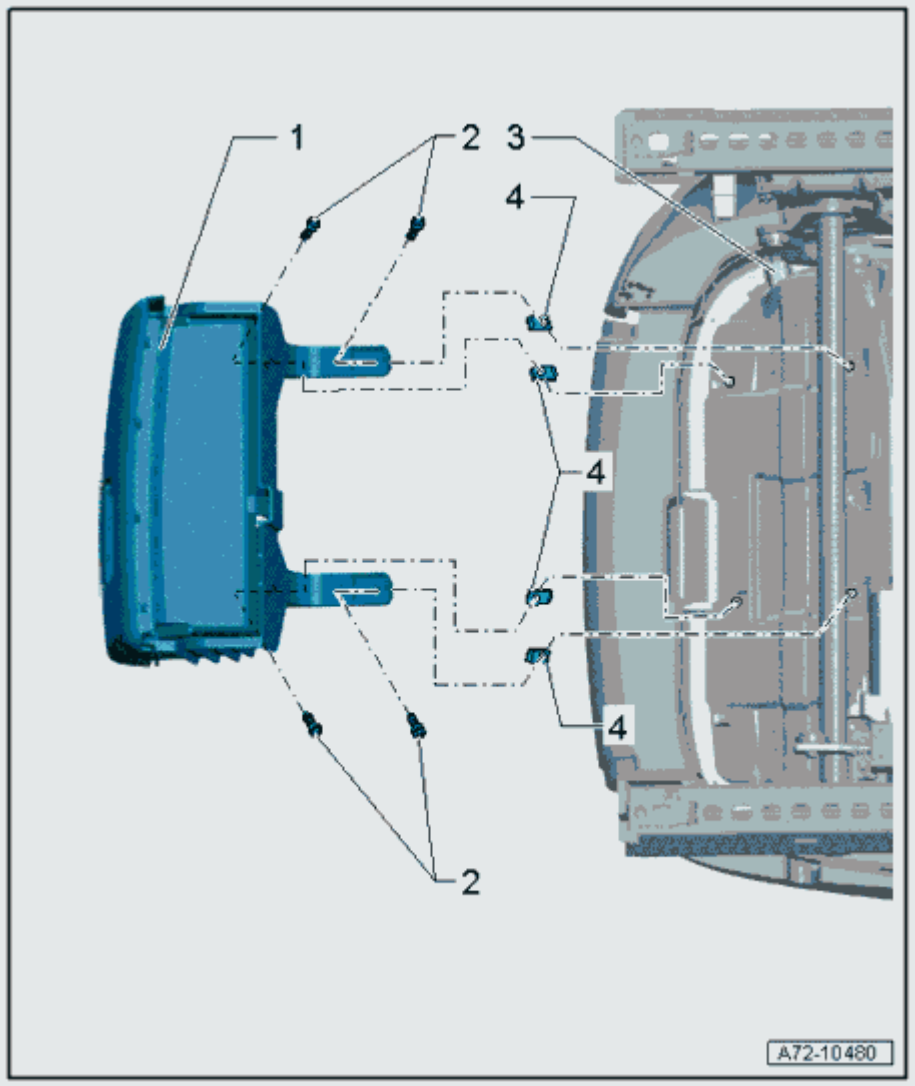


Fig. 432: Passenger Side Storage Compartment, From 06.06, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Storage compartment

- Removing and installing --> **Storage compartment, removing and installing**
- Storage compartment individual parts, assembly overview --> **Storage compartment individual parts, assembly overview**
- Disassembling and assembling --> **Storage compartment, disassembling and assembling**
- Only installed on passenger side

2 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm
- Qty. 4

cardiagn.com

3 - Seat pan

4 - Spring nut

- Qty. 4

Storage compartment, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

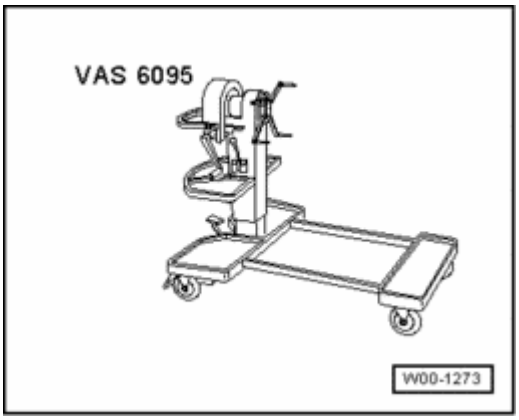


Fig. 433: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

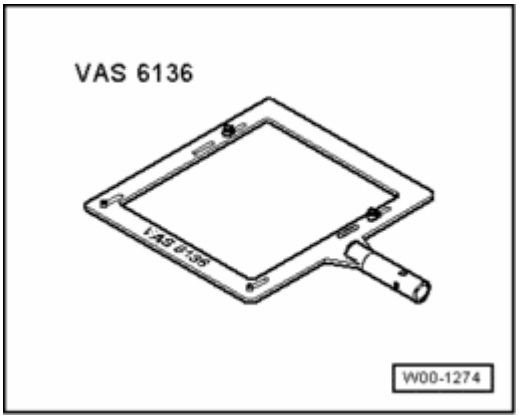


Fig. 434: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

Removing

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety**

cardiagn.com

precautions.

- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Remove front seat (standard seat) --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach seat to Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136.
- Open storage compartment.

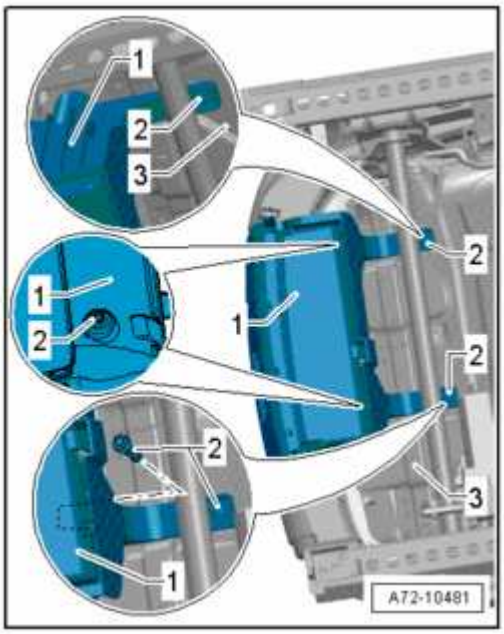


Fig. 435: Storage Compartment Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **2** - (Qty. 4).

NOTE:

- **For illustrative purposes, the storage compartment is shown closed in the illustration.**

- Remove entire storage compartment - **1** - from front seat - **3** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**

cardiagn.com

- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

NOTE:

- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

Tightening torques --> **Passenger side storage compartment, from 06.06, assembly overview**

Storage compartment individual parts, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

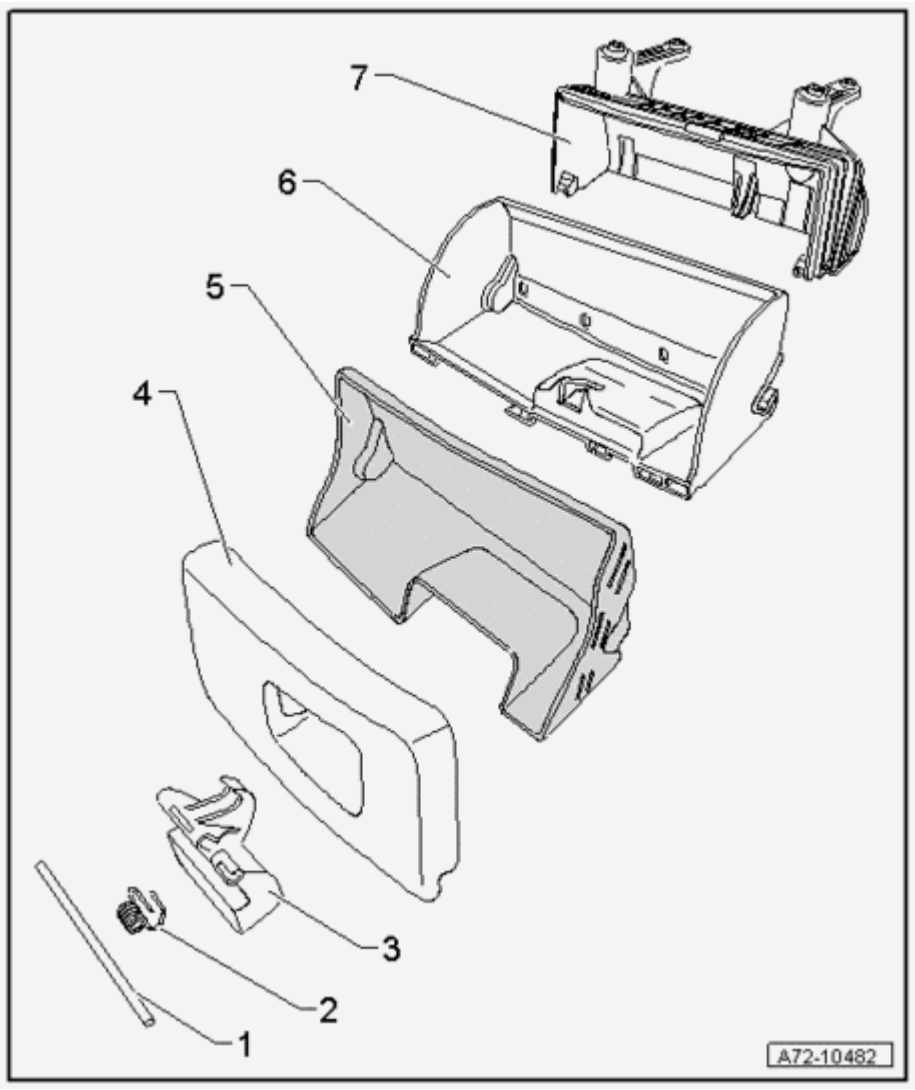


Fig. 436: Storage Compartment Individual Parts, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rod

- For handle with locking mechanism

2 - Torsion spring

- As a replacement part only with handle with locking mechanism and axle

3 - Handle with locking mechanism

- As replacement part handle with locking mechanism, axle and torsion spring

4 - Trim

cardiagn.com

- Clipped with inner part

5 - Insert

6 - Inner part

- As replacement part only with outer part

7 - Outer part

- As replacement part only with inner part

Storage compartment, disassembling and assembling

Storage compartment, disassembling

- Remove storage compartment --> **Storage compartment, removing and installing**.

Remove trim

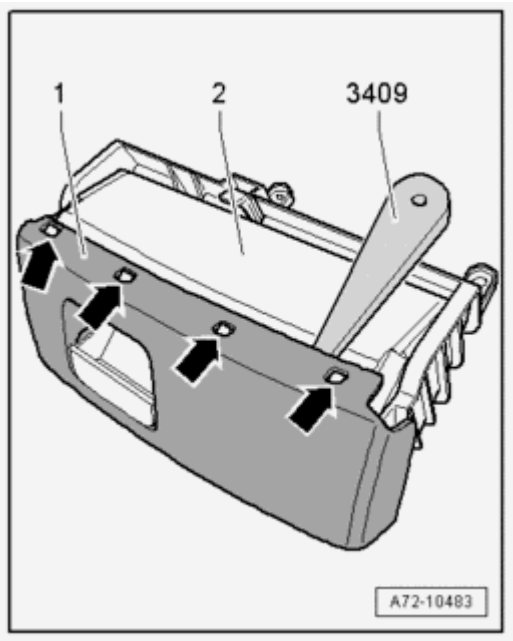


Fig. 437: Using Trim Removal Wedge 3409 To Unclip Trim From Retaining Tabs On Inner Part
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using Trim Removal Wedge 3409 , unclip trim - **1** - from retaining tabs - **arrows** - (Qty. 4) on inner part - **2** -.

Handle with locking mechanism, removing

- Remove trim --> **Remove trim**.

cardiagn.com

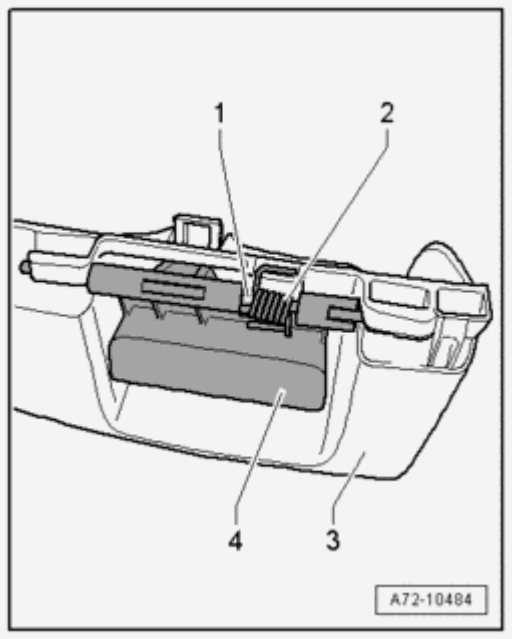


Fig. 438: Handle With Locking Mechanism, Removing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove rod - **1** - from inner part - **3** -.
- Remove handle with locking mechanism - **4** - , torsion spring - **2** - and axle - **1** -.

Insert, removing

NOTE:

- **The insert is placed in the inner part and is not secured by any additional means.**
- **For overview purposed, the trim and handle with locking mechanism are not shown in the illustration.**

- Open storage compartment.

cardiagn.com

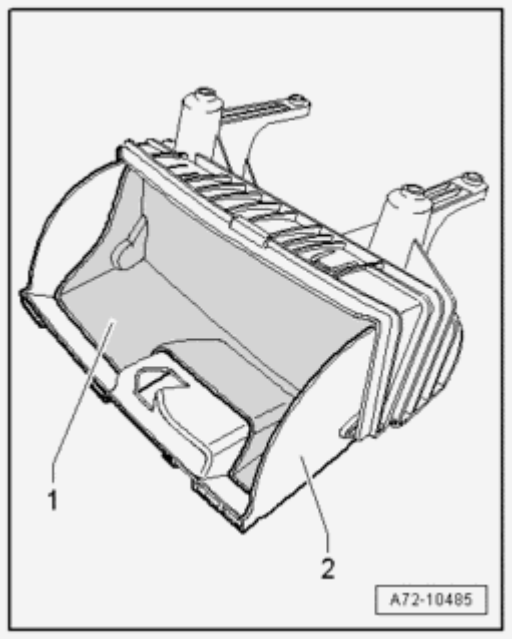


Fig. 439: Removing Insert From Inner Part
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove insert - **1** - from inner part - **2** -.

Inner part, removing from outer part

- Open storage compartment.

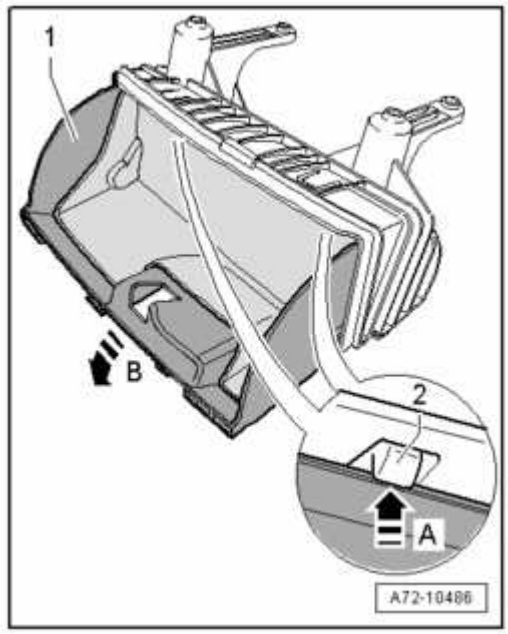


Fig. 440: Inner Part, Removing From Outer Part
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Press retainers - **2** - (Qty. 2) upward in - **direction of arrow A** -.
- Tip inner part - **1** - down in - **direction of arrow B** -.

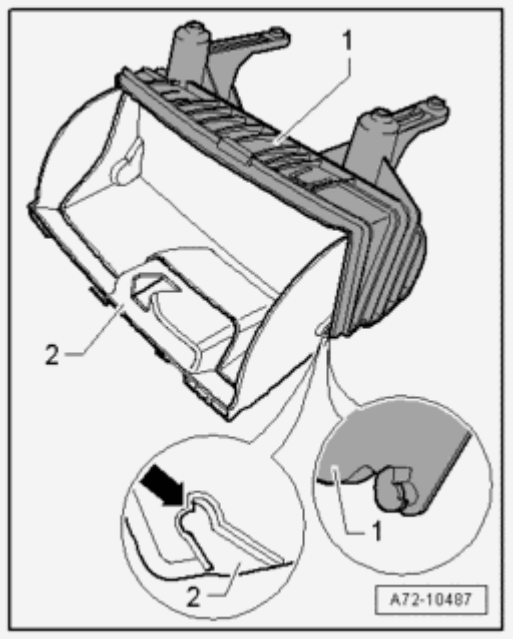


Fig. 441: Removing Outer Part From Guide On Inner Part
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove outer part - **1** - from guide - **arrow** - on inner part - **2** -.

Storage compartment, assembling

Assembly is performed in the reverse order of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

cardiagn.com

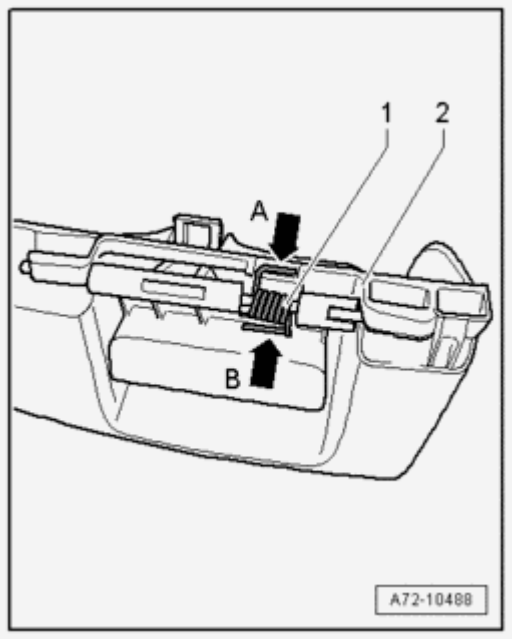


Fig. 442: Storage Compartment, Assembling
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engage torsion spring - **1** - so that shorter side - **arrow A** - is supported on inner part - **2** - and longer side - **arrow B** - is supported on handle - **3** -.

Seat cushion extension, removing and installing (sports seat)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

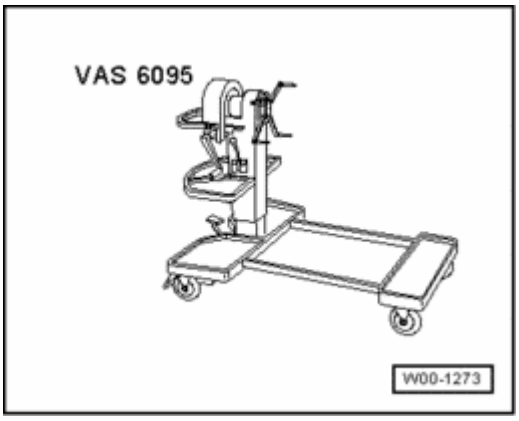


Fig. 443: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

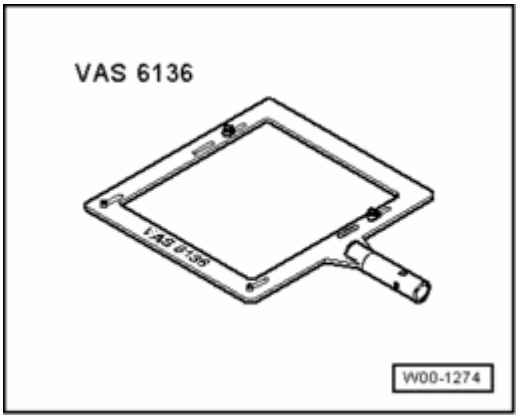
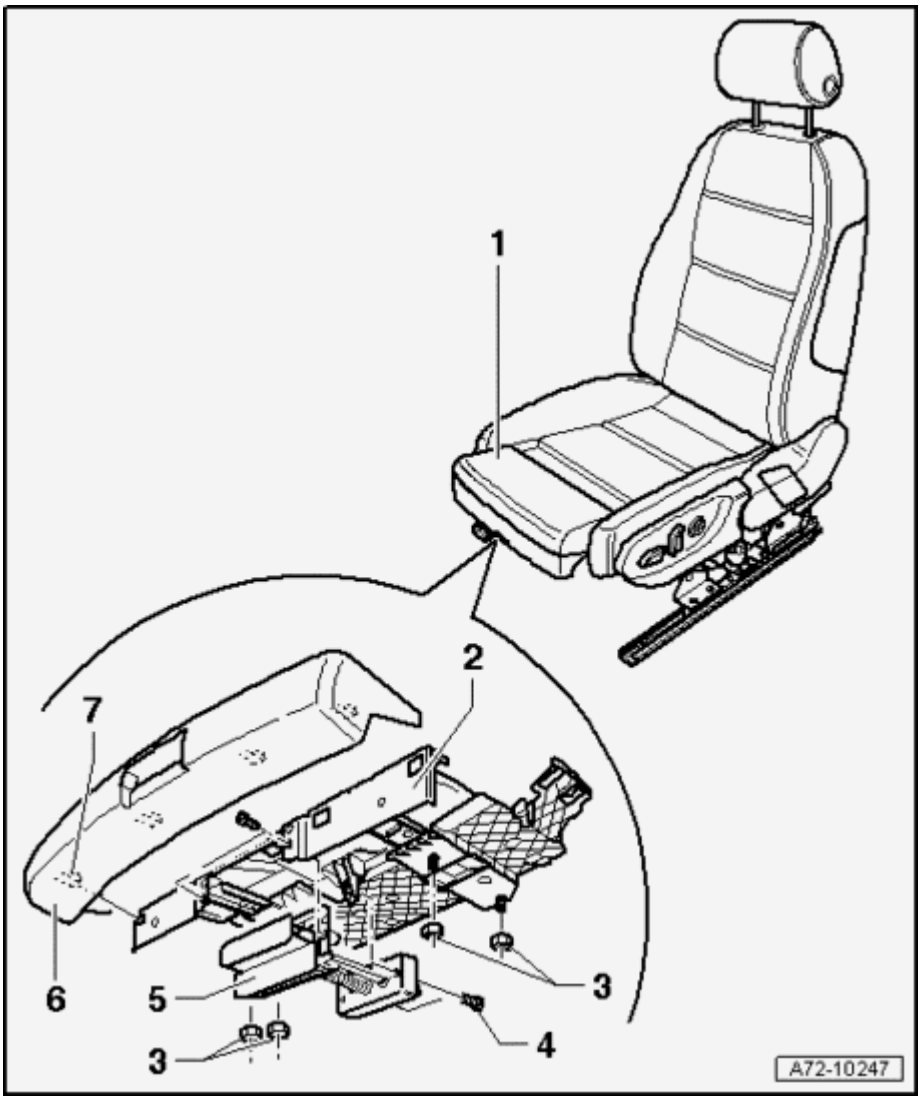


Fig. 444: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136



cardiagn.com

Fig. 445: Seat Cushion Extension (Sports Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat cushion extension

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove drawer or storage compartment:

- Drawer, removing and installing (through 06.06) --> **Drawer, vehicles through 06.06, removing and installing**
- Storage compartment, removing and installing (from 06.06) --> **Storage compartment, removing and installing**.

  - Detach cover and cushion from seat pan --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.
  - Detach seat cushion extension from cover and cushion.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Seat surface extension base plate

3 - Nut

- 35 Nm
- Qty. 4

4 - Screw

- Qty. 4

5 - Grip

- Removal

  - Remove bolts - **4** - (Qty. 4).
  - Remove handle - **5** -.

- **Installing**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

6 - Trim

- Removal
  - Remove clips - **7** - (Qty. 4) on trim - **6** -.
- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

7 - Clips

- Qty. 4

Backrest, replacing

NOTE:

- **Only the sports seat backrest is offered as a replacement part. For standard seats, adapt a sports seat backrest.**

cardiagn.com

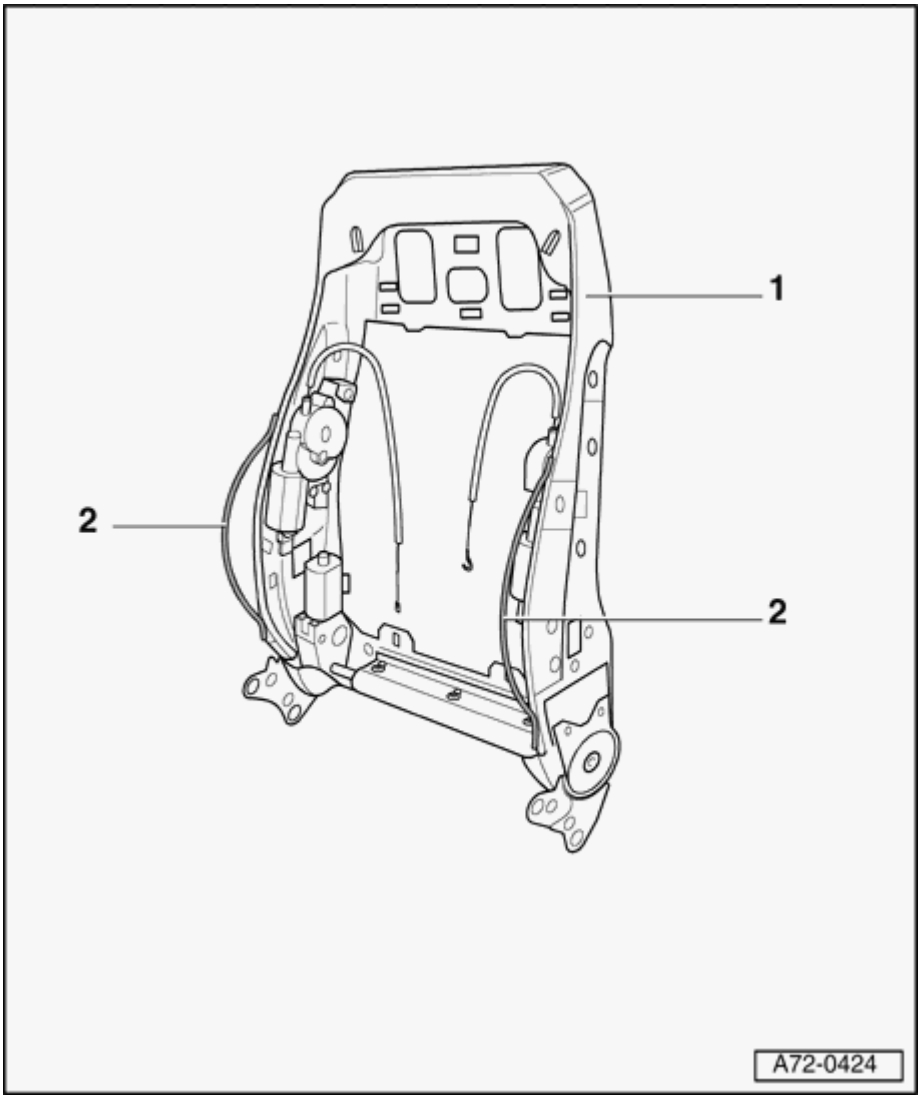


Fig. 446: Backrest, Replacing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Sports seat backrest

- Adaptation

  - Remove wire brackets - **2** - (2x) from sport seat backrest - **1** -.
  - The paint construction must be re-established..

2 - Wire bracket (2x)

Seat pan, replacing

NOTE:

- **Only the sport-seat seat pan is available as a replacement part. Retrofit the sport-seat seat pan for the normal seat.**

cardiagn.com

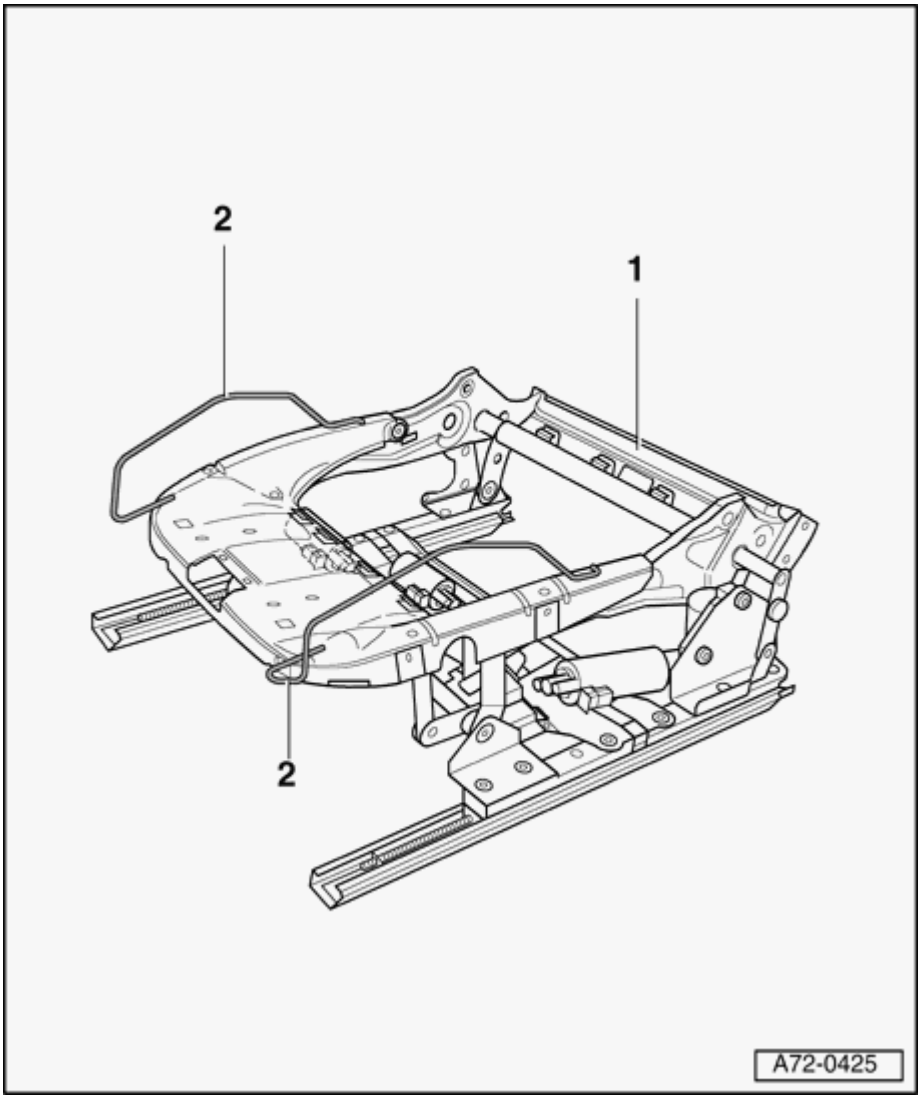


Fig. 447: Seat Pan, Replacing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Sports seat pan

- Adaptation
  - Remove wire brackets - **2** - (2x) from sport-seat seat pan - **1** -.
  - The paint construction must be re-established..

2 - Wire bracket (2x)

Backrest cover, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **In the illustration, removal and installation of backrest cover is shown on a front seat with the active head restraint system.**

cardiagn.com

- **Removal and installation of backrest cover on a front seat without active head restraint system is the same.**

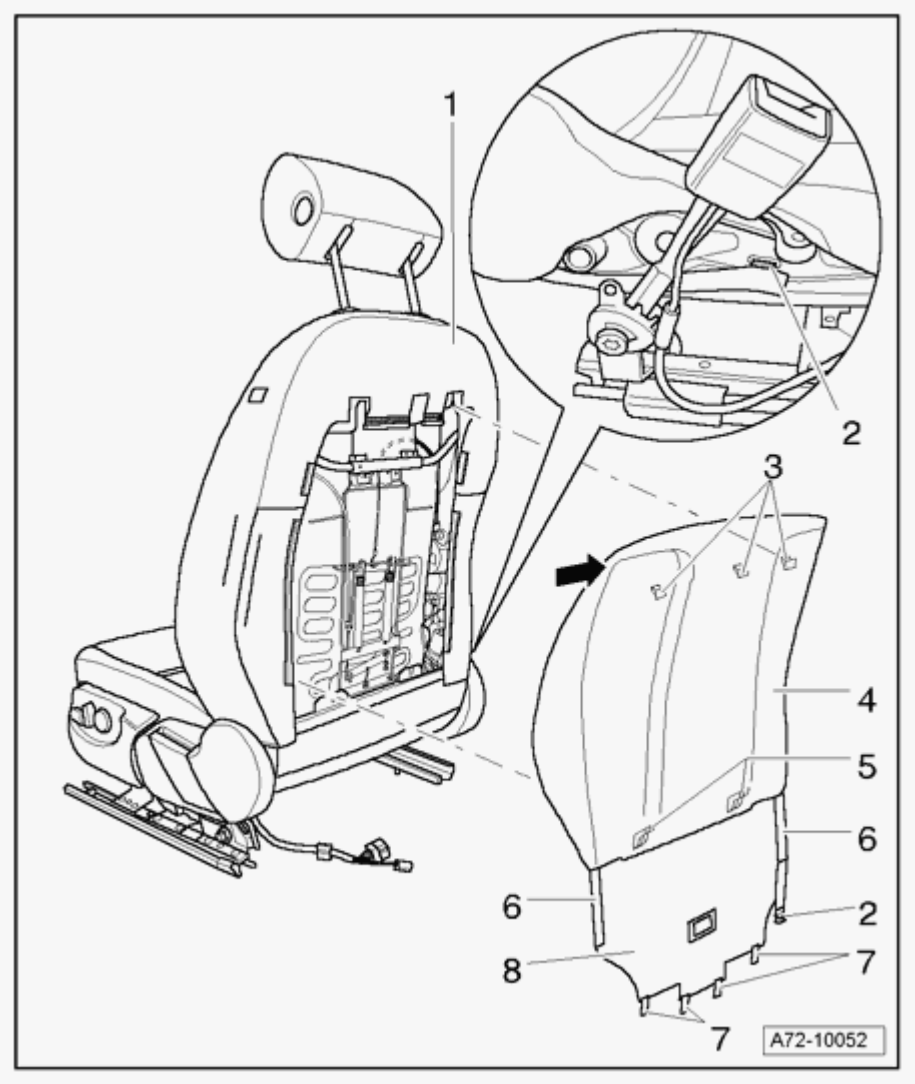


Fig. 448: Backrest Cover Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Fastening strip

- Always on tunnel side

3 - Spring clips

- Qty. 3
- Must be replaced

cardiagn.com

4 - Backrest cover

- Removal

  - Disengage footwell cover - **8** - on underside of seat at tabs - **7** - (4x) from spring mat.
  - Disengage retaining strip - **2** -.
  - Loosen retaining strips - **6** - (2x) from side panels **Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening**.
  - Press backrest cover - **4** - in - **direction of arrow** - in order to disengage spring clips - **3** - (3x).
  - Disengage backrest cover - **4** - upward from brackets - **5** - (2x).

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

  - Replace clips - **3** - (3x).
  - Slide footwell fastening strip into side trim bracket **Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening**.

5 - Bracket

- Qty. 2

6 - Fastening strips

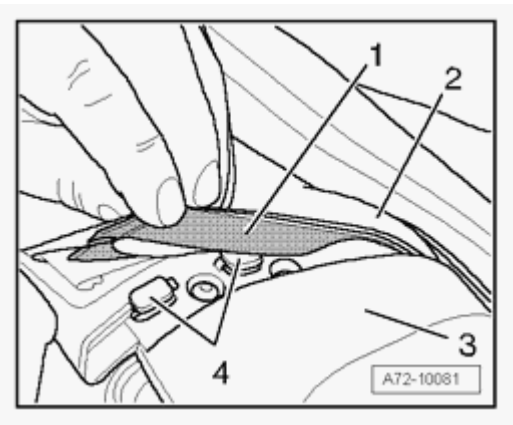
- Qty. 2

7 - Tabs

- Qty. 4

8 - Footwell cover

Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening



cardiagn.com

Fig. 449: Disengaging Retaining Strip On Footwell Cover From Brackets Rear Sill Side Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage retaining strip - **1** - on footwell cover - **2** - from brackets - **4** - (2x) on side panel - **3** -.

Four-way lumber support, removing and installing - up to 06.06

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

- Special pop rivet pliers V.A.G 1753 A

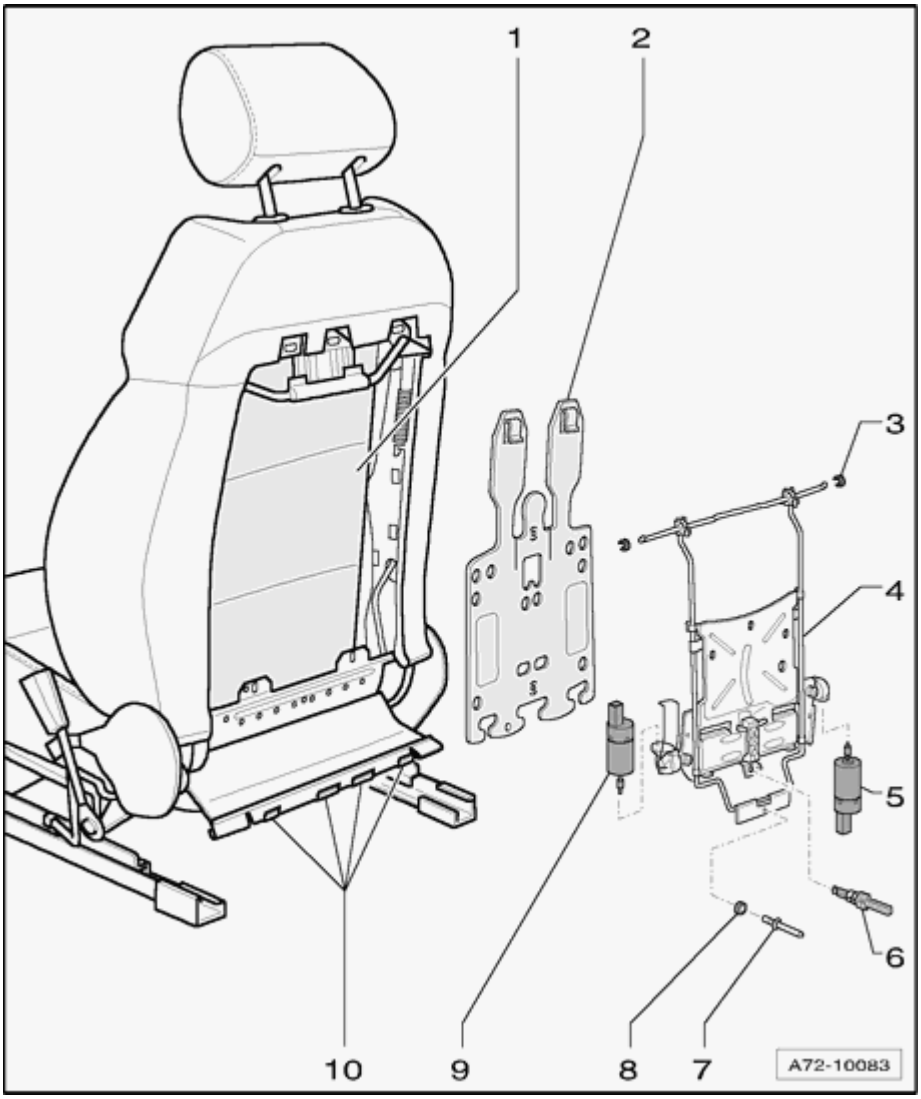


Fig. 450: Four-Way Lumber Support - Up To 06.06 Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest padding

cardiagn.com

2 - four-way lumbar support

3 - Clamping sleeve

4 - Four-way lumbar support frame

- **Removing:**

  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
  - Pry fastening strips - **10** - (4x) out with a screwdriver.
  - Insert foil between upholstery and backrest frame to protect against metal particles.
  - Drill out rivet - **7** -.
  - Disengage four-way lumbar support frame - **4** - at upper left and right from backrest frame.
  - Disconnect electrical harness connectors at actuators - **5** - and - **9** - for four-way lumbar support.
  - Disconnect Velcro connector between four-way lumber support - **2** - and backrest upholstery - **1** -.
  - Disengage four-way lumbar support at top of frame.
  - Remove four-way lumbar support.

- **Installing:**

Installation is performed in reverse order of removal, noting the following:

  - Place a plastic film over Velcro strips on four-way lumbar support. Secure plastic film to four-way lumbar support --> **Secure four-way lumbar support with assembly aid and secure plastic film to four-way lumbar support**.
  - Ensure four-way lumbar support is secured to frame with transport fastener or a suitable pin **Four-way lumbar support with backrest frame, riveting**.
  - Position lumbar support frame behind backrest and engage lumbar support frame at top left and right in mounts on frame.
  - Rivet bottom of four-way lumbar support frame with backrest frame. A plastic washer must be placed between four-way lumbar support frame and backrest frame **Four-way lumbar support with backrest frame, riveting**.
  - Remove plastic film between backrest padding and four-way lumbar support.
  - Press four-way lumbar support Velcro fastener onto backrest padding to secure.
  - Connect electrical connectors to four-way lumbar support adjustment motors.

5 - Four-way lumber support positioning motor

- Removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing**

6 - Assembly safety guard

cardiagn.com

For centering four-way lumbar support with frame

7 - Rivet

- Rivet using special pop rivet pliers V.A.G 1753 A
- Before riveting, a plastic washer must be placed between four-way lumbar support and backrest frame

8 - Plastic washer

9 - Four-way lumbar support height adjustment motor

- Removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing**

10 - Fastening strips

Secure four-way lumbar support with assembly aid and secure plastic film to four-way lumbar support

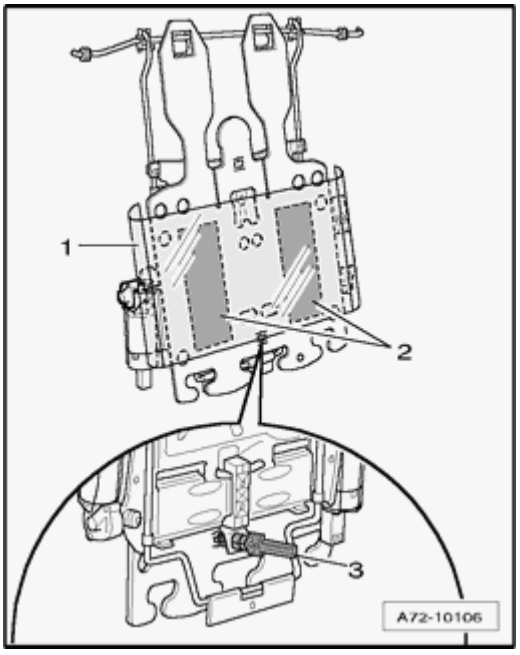


Fig. 451: Securing Four-Way Lumbar Support With Assembly Aid And Plastic Film To Four-Way Lumbar Support
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Lay plastic film - **1** - over Velcro strips - **2** - on four-way lumbar support. Secure plastic film to four-way lumbar support.
- Ensure four-way lumbar support is attached to four-way lumbar support frame with assembly fastener - **3** - or a suitable pin.

Four-way lumbar support with backrest frame, riveting

cardiagn.com

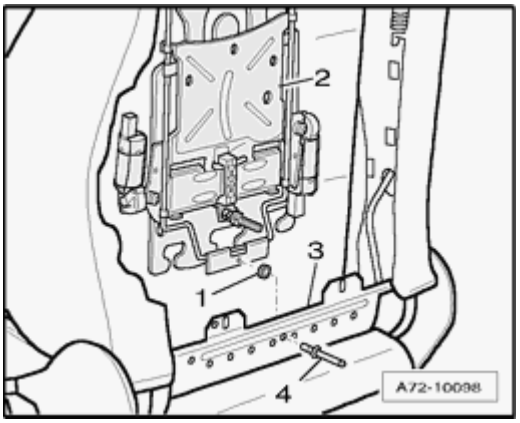


Fig. 452: Four-Way Lumbar Support With Backrest Frame, Riveting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Before securing rivet - **4** - , a plastic washer - **1** - must be placed between four-way lumbar support - **2** - and backrest frame - **3** -.

Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

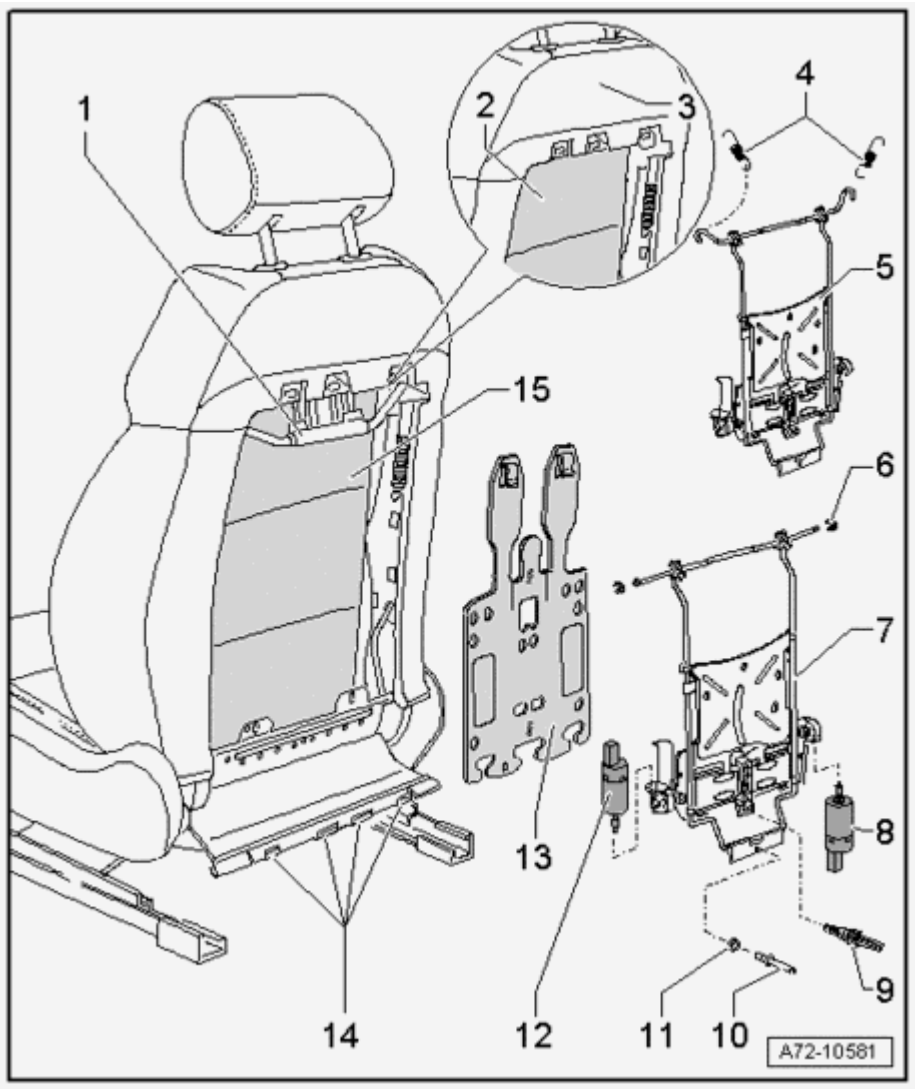


Fig. 453: Four-Way Lumbar Support Positioning Motors Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest with active restraint system

- Through 06.06 (for specific countries)
- Through 11.06 (rest of world)

2 - Backrest padding

- From 06.06 (for specific countries)
- From 11.06 (rest of world)

3 - Backrest without active head restraint system

- From 06.06 (for specific countries)

cardiagn.com

- From 11.06 (rest of world)

4 - Spring

- Qty. 2
- For engaging four-way lumbar support in backrest frame
- From 06.06 (for specific countries)
- From 11.06 (rest of world)

5 - Four-way lumbar support frame

- From 06.06 (for specific countries)
- From 11.06 (rest of world)

6 - Clamping sleeve

- Through 06.06 (for specific countries)
- Through 11.06 (rest of world)

7 - Four-way lumbar support frame

- Through 06.06 (for specific countries)
- Through 11.06 (rest of world)

8 - Four-way lumber support positioning motor

- **Removing:**

NOTE:

- **When replacing positioning motor, four-way lumbar support must not be on an end stop.**

  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
  - Disconnect electrical harness connector **Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator**.
  - Disengage retaining bracket and remove actuator downward **Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator**.

- **Installing:**

Installation is performed in reverse order of removal, noting the following:

  - Actuator can only be installed in one position.

9 - Central screws

cardiagn.com

For centering four-way lumbar support with frame

10 - Rivet

11 - Plastic washer

12 - Four-way lumbar support height adjustment motor

Removing

NOTE:

- **When replacing positioning motor, four-way lumbar support must not be on an end stop.**

- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
- Disconnect electrical harness connector **Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator**.
- Disengage retaining bracket and remove actuator upward **Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator**.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Actuator can only be installed in one position.

13 - Four-way lumbar support

14 - Fastening strips

15 - Backrest padding

- Through 06.06 (for specific countries)
- Through 11.06 (rest of world)

Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator

cardiagn.com

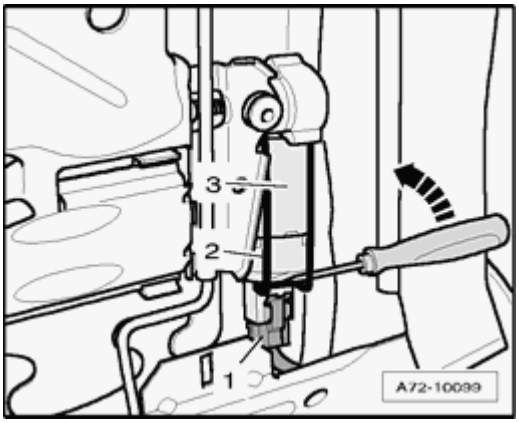


Fig. 454: Disconnecting Electrical Harness Connector And Disengaging Retaining Bracket At Actuator
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

NOTE:

- **When replacing positioning motor, four-way lumbar support must not be on an end stop.**

- Disconnect electrical connector - **4** -.
- Disengage retaining bracket - **3** - using a screwdriver - **2** - and remove actuator - **1** -.

Headrest with insertion lock, removing and installing

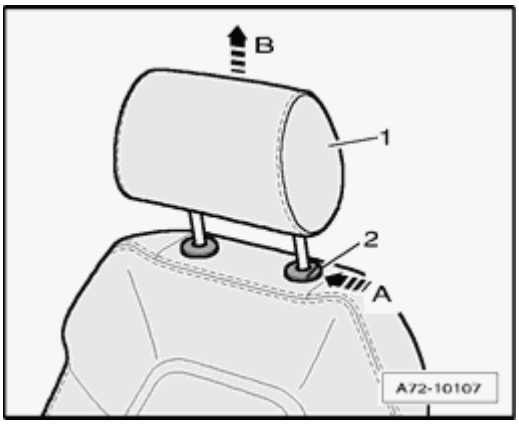


Fig. 455: Pushing Release Button In And Pulling Headrest Upward As Far As Possible
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Push release button - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and pull headrest - **1** - upward as far as possible - **arrow B** - , keep release button pushed while doing so.

cardiagn.com

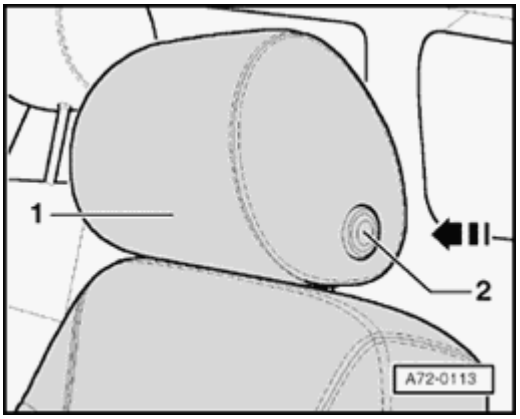


Fig. 456: Pressing Release Button On Headrest Until Stop
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press release button - **2** - on headrest - **1** - until stop - **arrow** -.
- Slide headrest down completely on rods, release button on headrest must be kept pressed while doing so.
- Remove headrest completely from headrest guides.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Footwell light, removing and installing

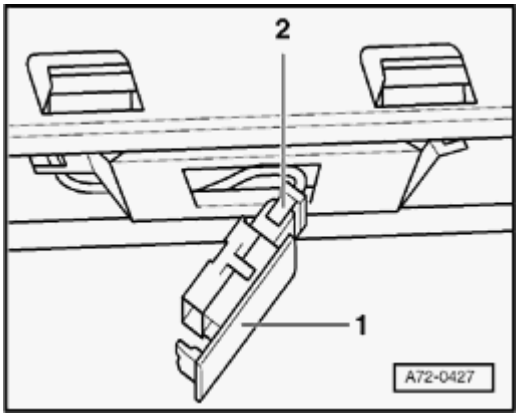


Fig. 457: Identifying Rear Footwell Light & Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Removal

- Press out rear footwell light - **1** - from rear.
- Remove connector - **2** -.

- **Installing**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

Front seat (standard seat) without active head restraint system, vehicles from 06.06 or from 11.06, assembly overview

NOTE:

- **With the introduction of backrests without the active head restraint system, the active head restraint system has been discontinued.**
- **The upper area of the backrest frame for backrests without the active head restraint system was changed.**
- **Inclination adjustment has been changed on headrests for backrest without active head restraint system.**
- **The rear side of the upholstery was adapted in the upper area of the changed backrest frame.**
- **With the introduction of backrests without the active head restraint system, the mount for four-way lumbar support in the upper area of the backrest frame has changed.**
- **Removal and installation of curvature and height adjustment motors for four-way lumbar support is similar to removal and installation on backrests with active head restraint system.**
- **The covers are identical for backrests with and without the active head restraint system.**

CAUTION: For safety reasons, headrests from vehicles with the active head restraint system should not be used on seats without the active head restraint system.

cardiagn.com

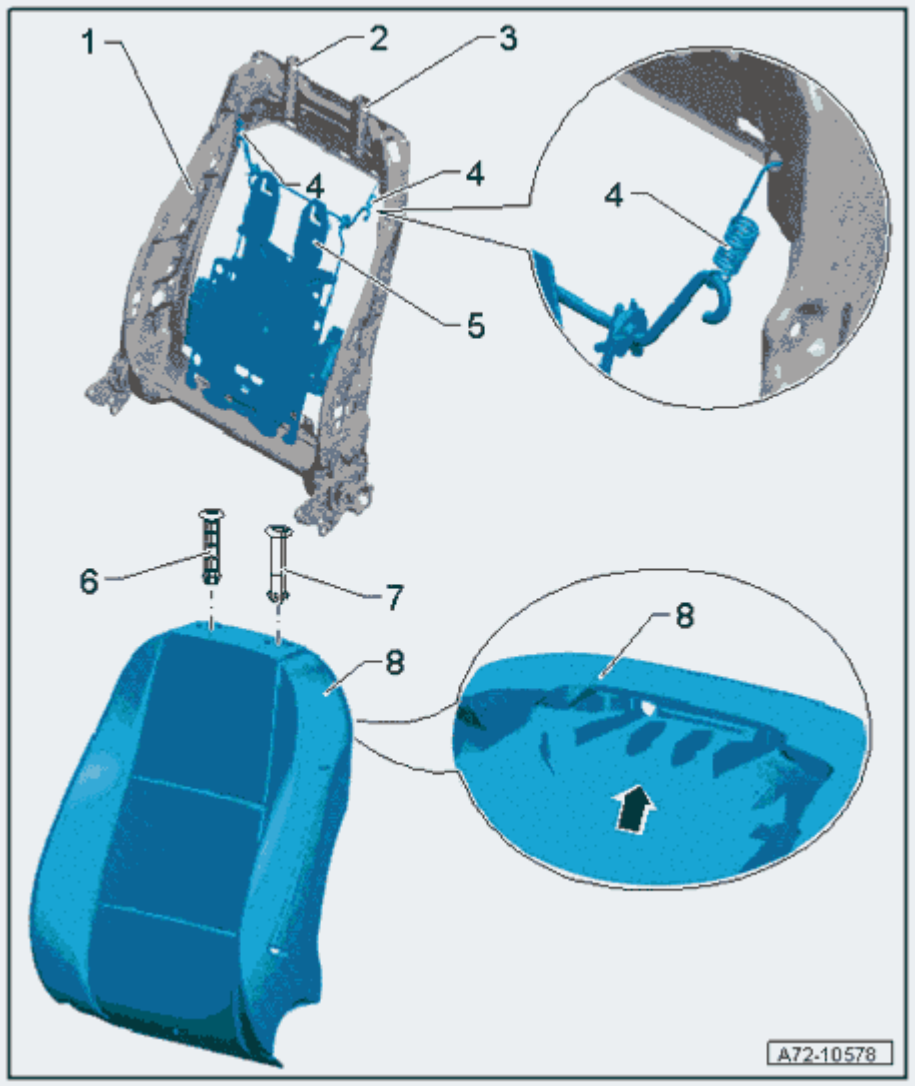


Fig. 458: Front Seat (Standard Seat) Without Active Head Restraint System, Vehicles From 06.06 Or From 11.06, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest frame

2 - Right headrest guide mount

- Welded with backrest frame

3 - Left headrest guide mount

- Welded with backrest frame

4 - Spring

cardiagn.com

- Qty. 2
- Engaged in backrest frame
- To upper four-way lumbar support mount

5 - Four-way lumbar support

- Removing and installing --> **Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing four-way lumbar support**

6 - Right headrest guide

- Removing and installing --> **Headrest guides, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**

7 - Left headrest guide

- Removing and installing --> **Headrest guides, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**

8 - Upholstery

- Rear side adapted to new backrest in upper area
- Removing and installing --> **Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing**

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing headrests

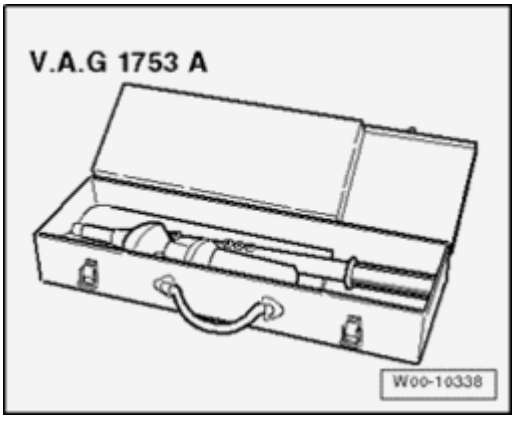
Head rests, removing and installing --> **Headrest with insertion lock, removing and installing**

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing backrest cover

Backrest cover, removing and installing --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing four-way lumbar support

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required



cardiagn.com

Fig. 459: Special Pop Rivet Pliers V.A.G 1753A
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special pop rivet pliers V.A.G 1753A

Removing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions.

- Remove front seat (standard seat) --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.

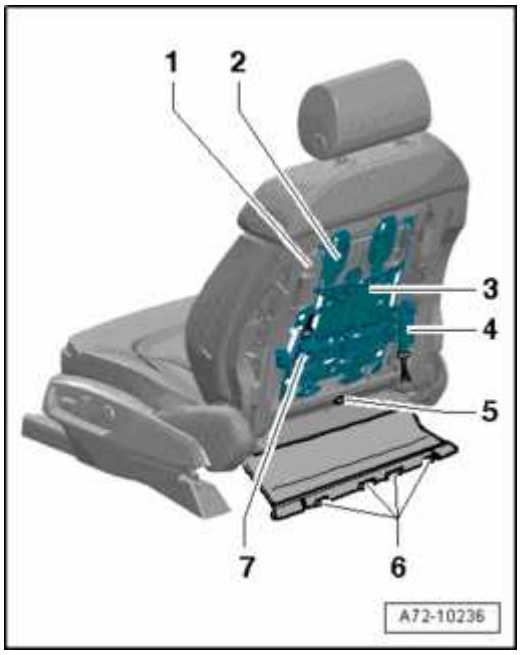


Fig. 460: Backrest Without Active Head Restraint System - Four-Way Lumbar Support Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry fastening strips - **6** - (Qty. 4) out with a screwdriver.
- Insert foil between upholstery and backrest frame to protect against metal particles.
- Drill out rivet - **5** -.
- Disconnect electrical connectors at lumbar support curvature and height adjustment motors - **4** - and - **7** -.

cardiagn.com

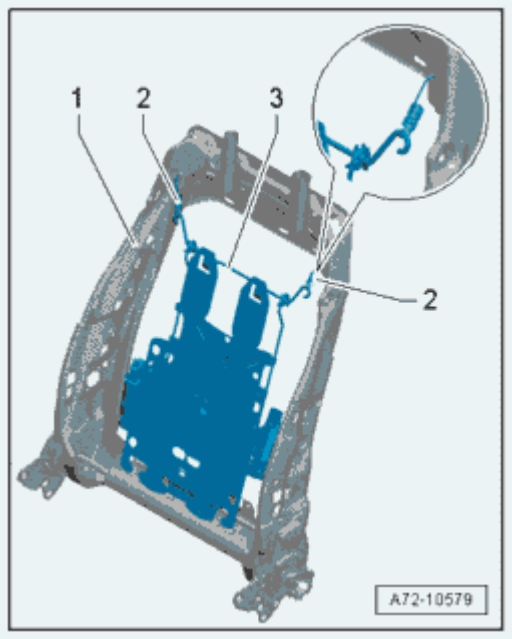


Fig. 461: Disengaging Four-Way Lumbar Support With Springs At Backrest Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage four-way lumbar support - **3** - with springs - **2** - (Qty. 2) at backrest frame - **3** -.

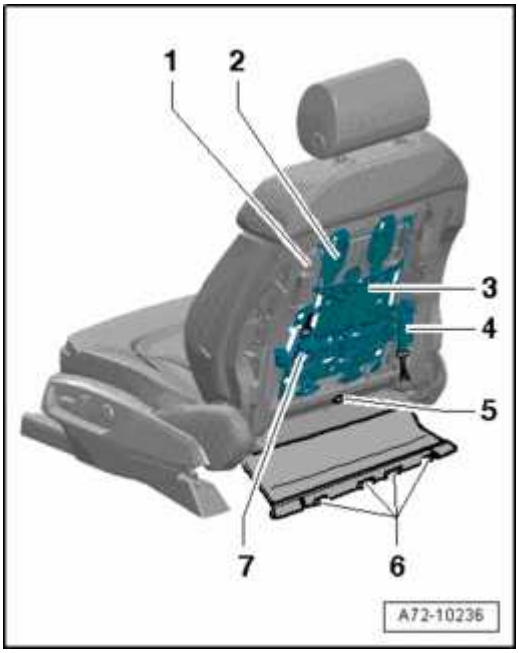


Fig. 462: Backrest Without Active Head Restraint System - Four-Way Lumbar Support Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect Velcro connector between lumbar support - **2** - and backrest padding - **1** -.
- Disengage lumbar support - **2** - at top of support frame - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove lumbar support frame - **3** - with lumbar support - **2** -.

Installing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions.

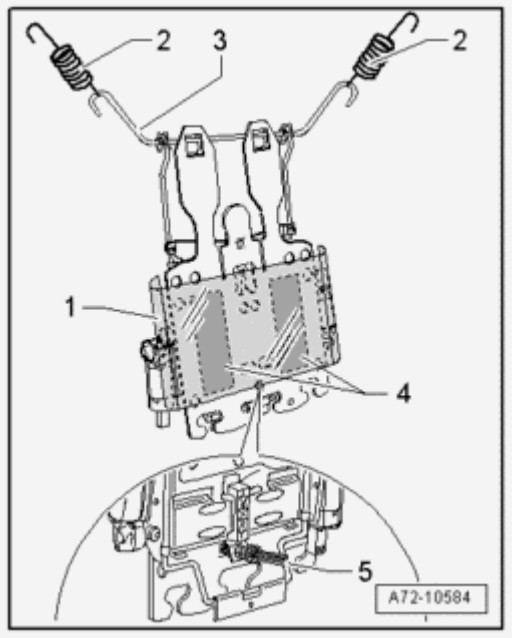
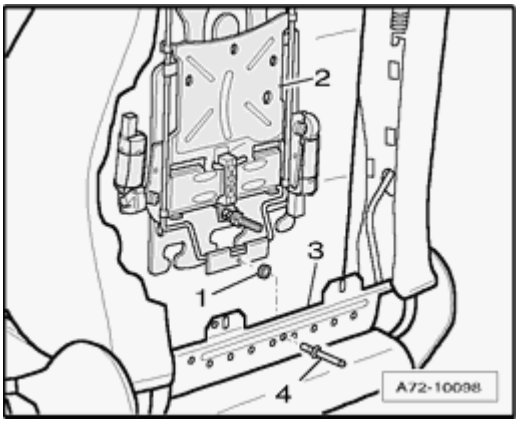


Fig. 463: Laying Plastic Film Over Velcro Strips On Lumbar Support
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Lay plastic film - **1** - over Velcro strips - **4** - on lumbar support. Secure plastic film on lumbar support.
- Ensure lumbar support is attached to lumbar support frame with assembly fastener - **5** - or a suitable screw.
- Position four-way lumbar support frame behind backrest frame and engage top of frame - **3** - in mounts on backrest frame at left and right with springs - **2** -.



cardiagn.com

Fig. 464: Four-Way Lumbar Support With Backrest Frame, Riveting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Before securing rivet - **4** - , a plastic washer - **1** - must be placed between lumbar support - **2** - and backrest frame - **3** -.
- Rivet lumbar support frame - **2** - with backrest frame - **3** -.
- Remove plastic film between backrest padding and lumbar support.
- Press lumbar support Velcro fastener onto backrest padding to secure.
- Connect electrical connectors at curvature and height adjustment motors.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION: Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.

NOTE:

- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery with ignition on, procedure -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing four-way lumbar support adjusting motors

Motors for:

- Drivers Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor V125 or V126 , removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing**
- Drivers Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor V129 or V130 , removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing**

cardiagn.com

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing headrest guides

Headrest guides, removing and installing --> **Headrest guides, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing cover with upholstery

Cover with upholstery, removing and installing --> Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing

Backrest without active head restraint system, separating cover from upholstery

Separating cover from upholstery

FRONT SEATS (POWER SEAT WITH MEMORY) - VEHICLES UP TO 10.04

Front power seats with memory, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

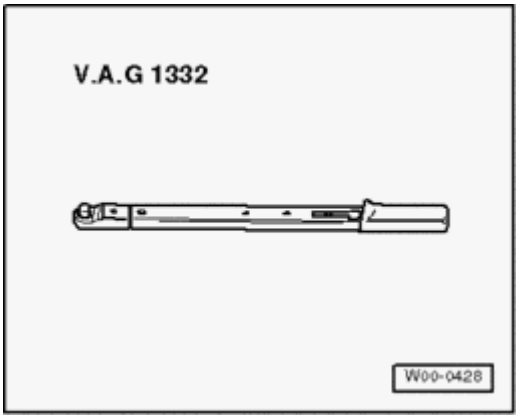


Fig. 465: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1332
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1332

NOTE:

- **Before disconnecting battery: Obtain radio code.**

cardiagn.com

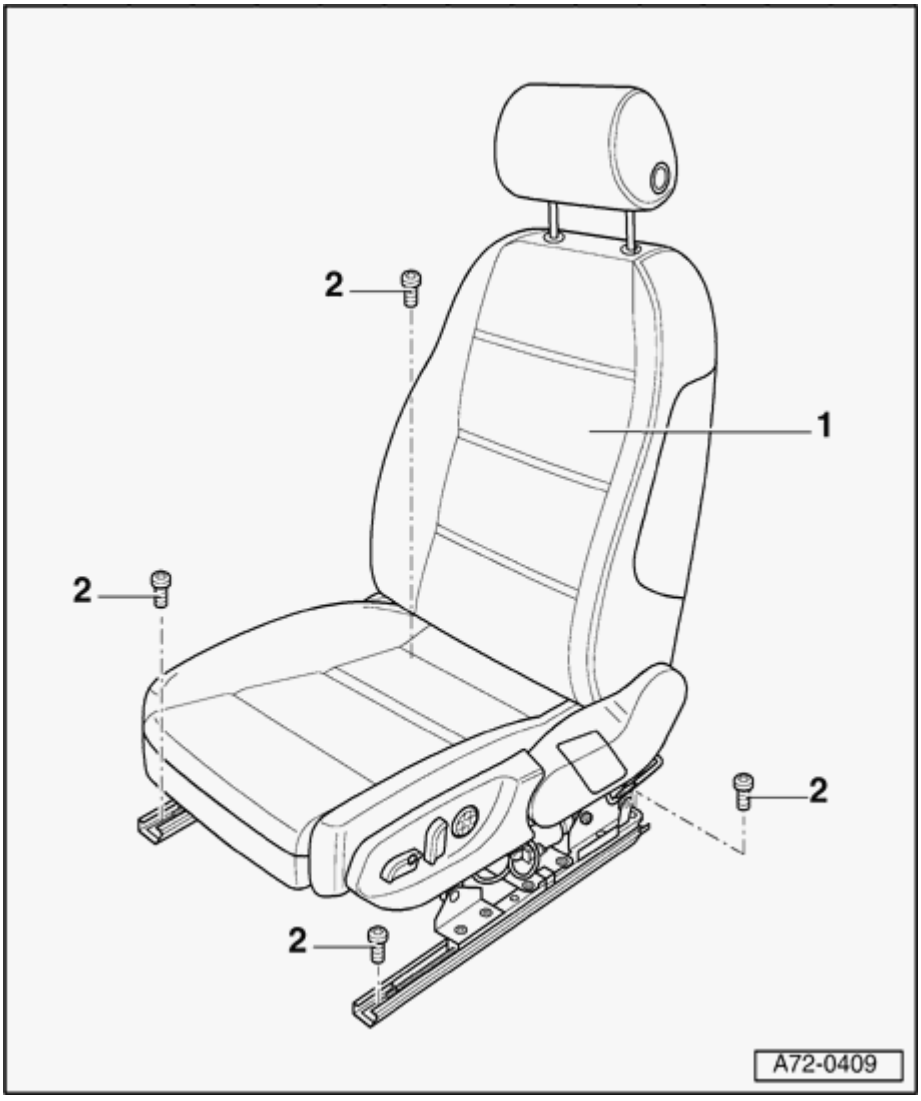


Fig. 466: Front Power Seats With Memory Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

- Removal:

  - Remove front seat rail covers --> **Front seat rail covers, removing and installing**.
  - Remove rear seat rail covers --> **Rear seat rail covers, removing and installing**.
  - Push front seat - **1** - fully upward and to the rear.
  - Remove front bolts - **2** - (2x).

  - Move seat forward.
  - Remove rear bolts - **2** - (2x).

cardiagn.com

CAUTION: Before removing seat: Disconnect battery ground (GND) strap -->

- **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
- **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

.

- Tip front seat - **1** - back.
- Disconnect harness connectors --> **Disconnecting connections**.
- Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

Front seat with malfunctioning motor for seat fore-aft adjustment or malfunctioning control module, removing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

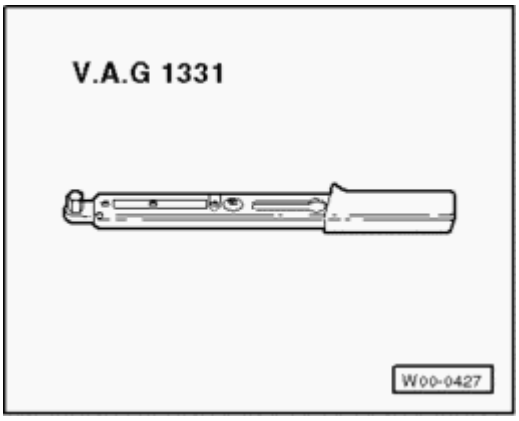


Fig. 467: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

NOTE:

- **If possible: Tilt seat up.**
- **Seat is shown without upholstery and without backrest in picture for the sake of a better illustration.**

cardiagn.com

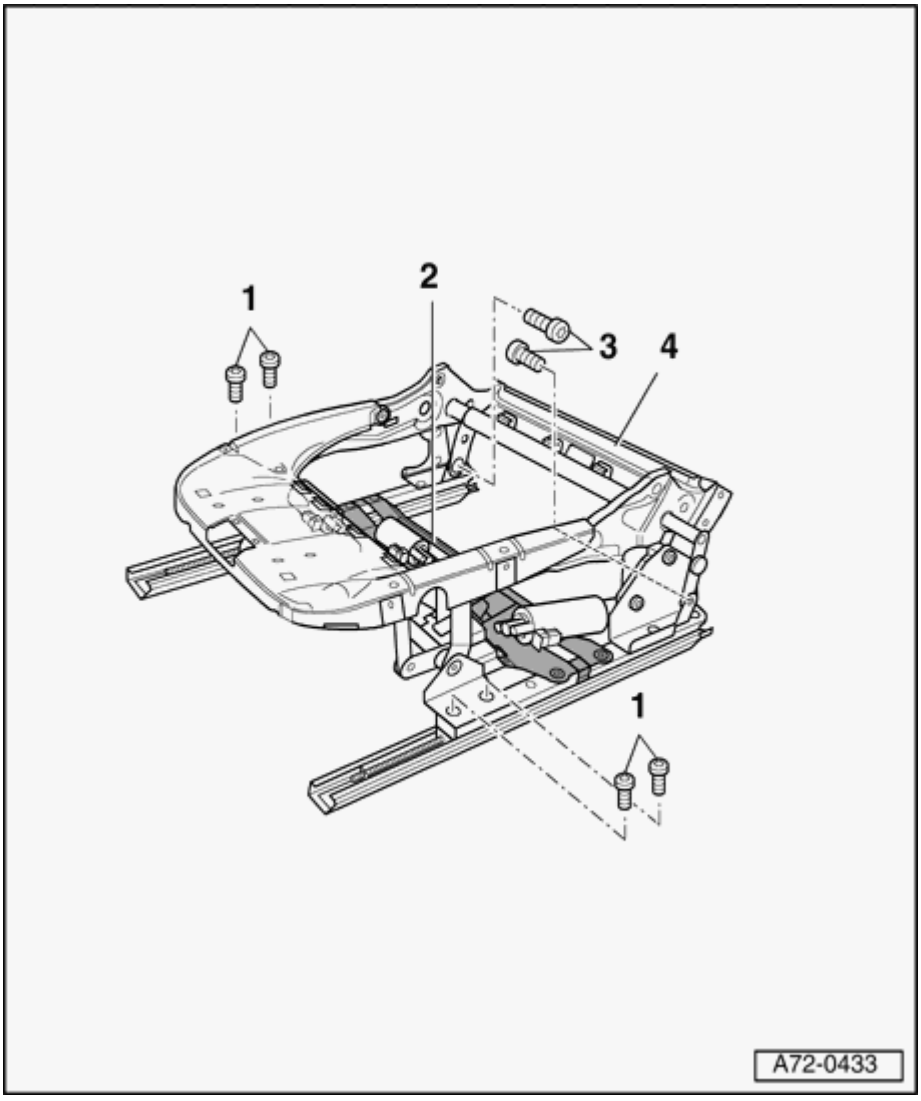


Fig. 468: Front Seat With Malfunctioning Motor For Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment Or Malfunctioning Control Module, Removing Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 17 Nm

2 - Motor mounting plate

3 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 19 Nm

4 - Seat pan upper frame

cardiagn.com

- Removal:

  - Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).
  - Fold seat all the way forward.
  - Remove screws - **1** - (4x).
  - Remove backrest with seat pan upper frame.

If control module is defective:

  - Disconnect connector on seat fore-aft adjustment motor.
  - Run fore-aft adjustment motor using an external power source until bolts are visible.
  - Remove bolts.
  - Remove control module --> **Control module, removing and installing**.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

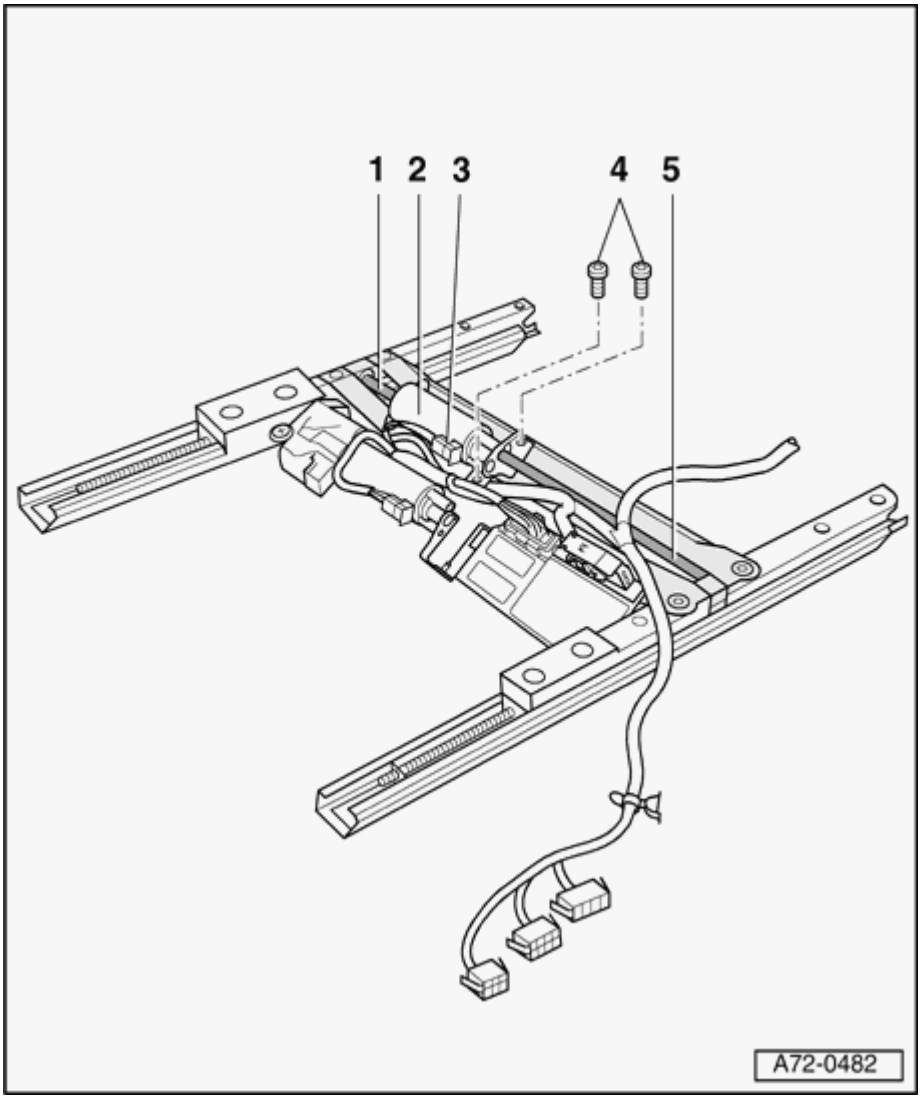


Fig. 469: Front Seat With Malfunctioning Motor For Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment Or Malfunctioning Control Module, Installing Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Shaft

2 - Longitudinal seat adjustment motor

If longitudinal seat adjustment motor is defective:

- Remove connector - **3** -.
- Remove bolts - **4** - (2x) at seat fore-aft adjustment motor.
- Disengage seat fore-aft adjustment motor - **2** - from both shafts - **1** - and - **5** -.
- Using a cordless drill and long shaft - **5** - , move both seat rails by sliding until the concealed bolts are visible.

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolts.
- Replace seat lower frame with fore-aft adjustment motor.

3 - Connector

4 - Screws, (2x)

5 - Shaft

Front seat rail covers, removing and installing

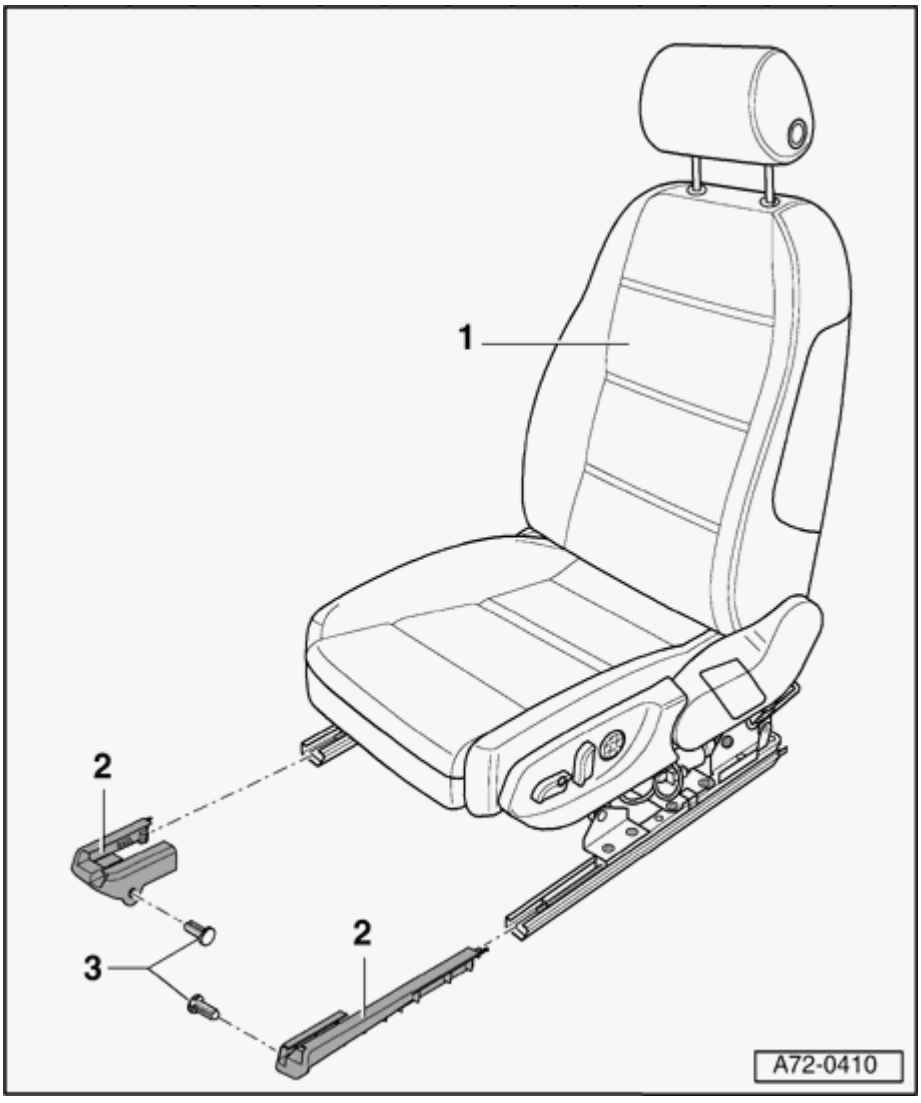


Fig. 470: Front Seat Rail Covers Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

cardiagn.com

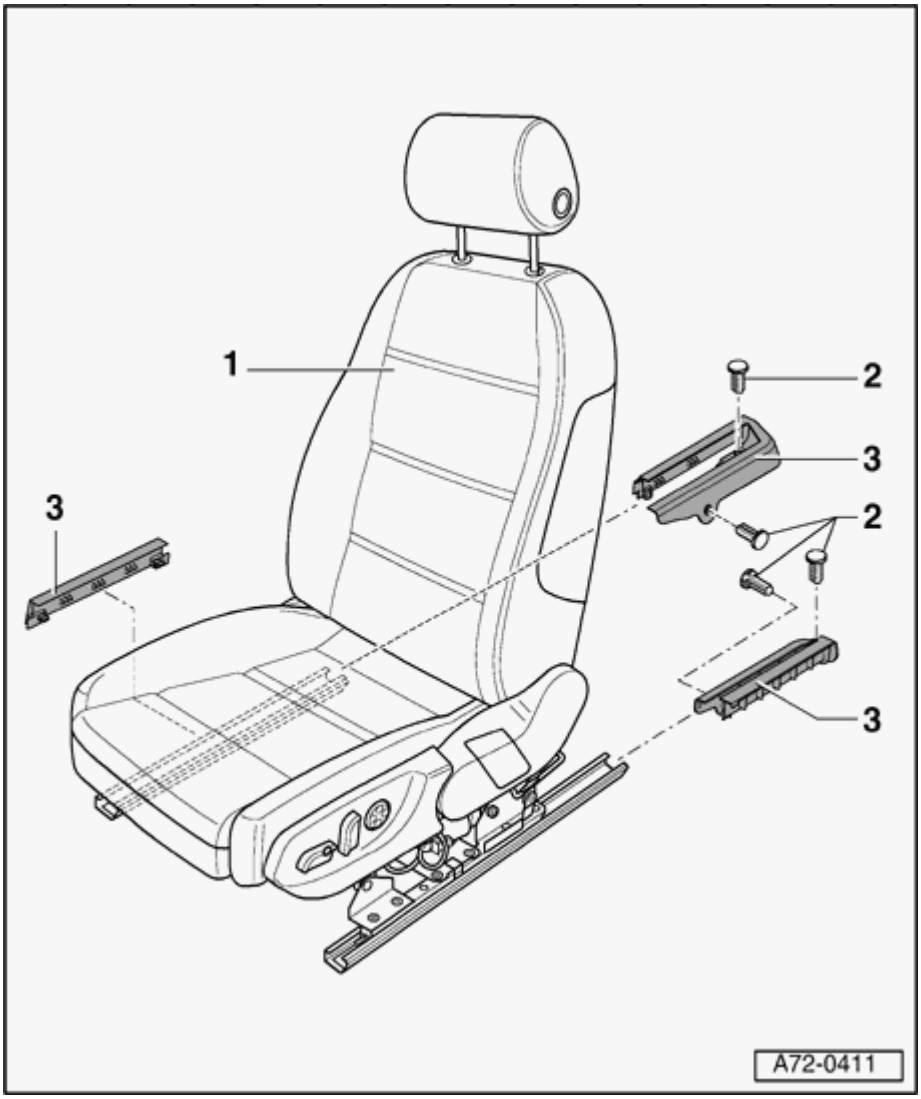
2 - Seat rail covers (Qty. 2)

- Removal:
  - Move front seat - **1** - fully to the rear.
  - Remove securing clips - **3** - (2x).
  - Remove seat rail covers - **2** - (2x).
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Securing clips (Qty. 2)

Rear seat rail covers, removing and installing



cardiagn.com

Fig. 471: Rear Seat Rail Covers Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Securing clips (Qty. 4)

3 - Seat rail covers (Qty. 3)

- Removal:

  - Move front seat - **1** - fully to the front.
  - Remove securing clips - **2** - (4x).
  - Remove seat rail covers - **3** - (3x).

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

Disconnecting connections

NOTE:

- **Technician must be grounded before disconnecting ignition and ground wiring, touching door striker or body.**

cardiagn.com

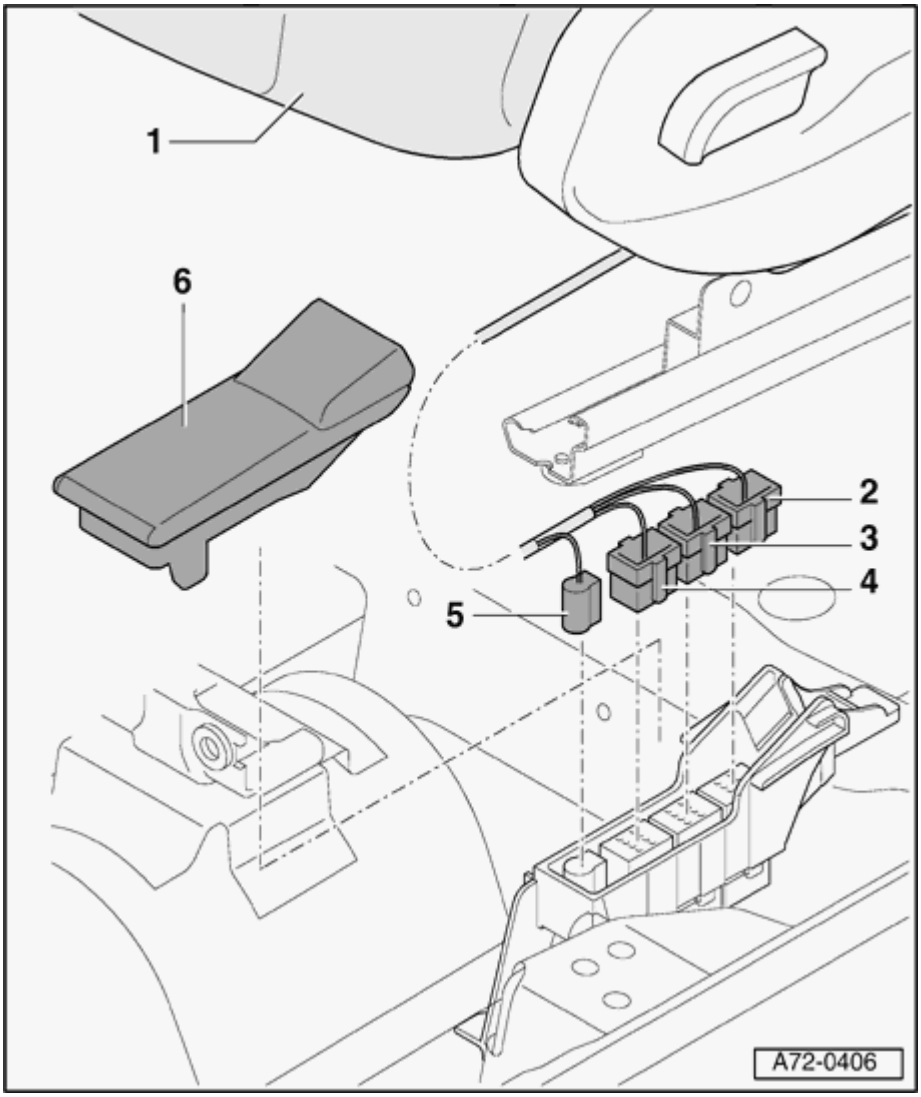


Fig. 472: Disconnecting Connections
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Belt buckle sensor connector (black)

3 - Seat heating connector (green)

4 - Current supply connector (red)

5 - Airbag connector (yellow)

6 - Connector point cover

- Removal:

cardiagn.com

- Tip front seat - **1** - back.
- Remove coupling station cover - **6** - upward.
- Press in tab on airbag connector - **5** - on tunnel side and disconnect airbag connector - **5** -.
- Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.

- Press in tab on connector for voltage supply - **4** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for voltage supply - **4** -.
- Press in tab on airbag connector for heated seat - **3** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for heated seat - **3** -.

For vehicles with seatbelt fasten sensor:

- Press in tab on connector for seatbelt fasten sensor - **2** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for seatbelt fasten sensor - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

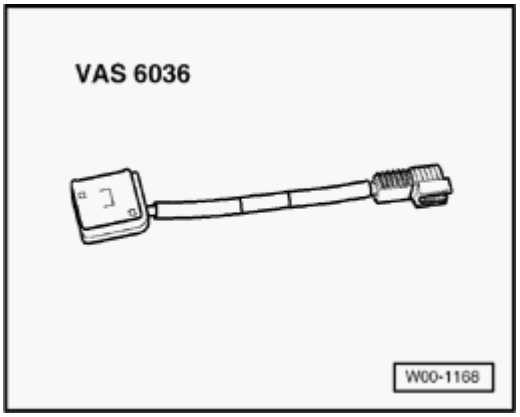


Fig. 473: Airbag Adapter VAS 6036
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Airbag adapter VAS 6036

CAUTION: Technician must be grounded before disconnecting ignition and ground wiring, touching door striker or body.

CAUTION: The Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 must stay connected to seat until seat is installed again.

cardiagn.com

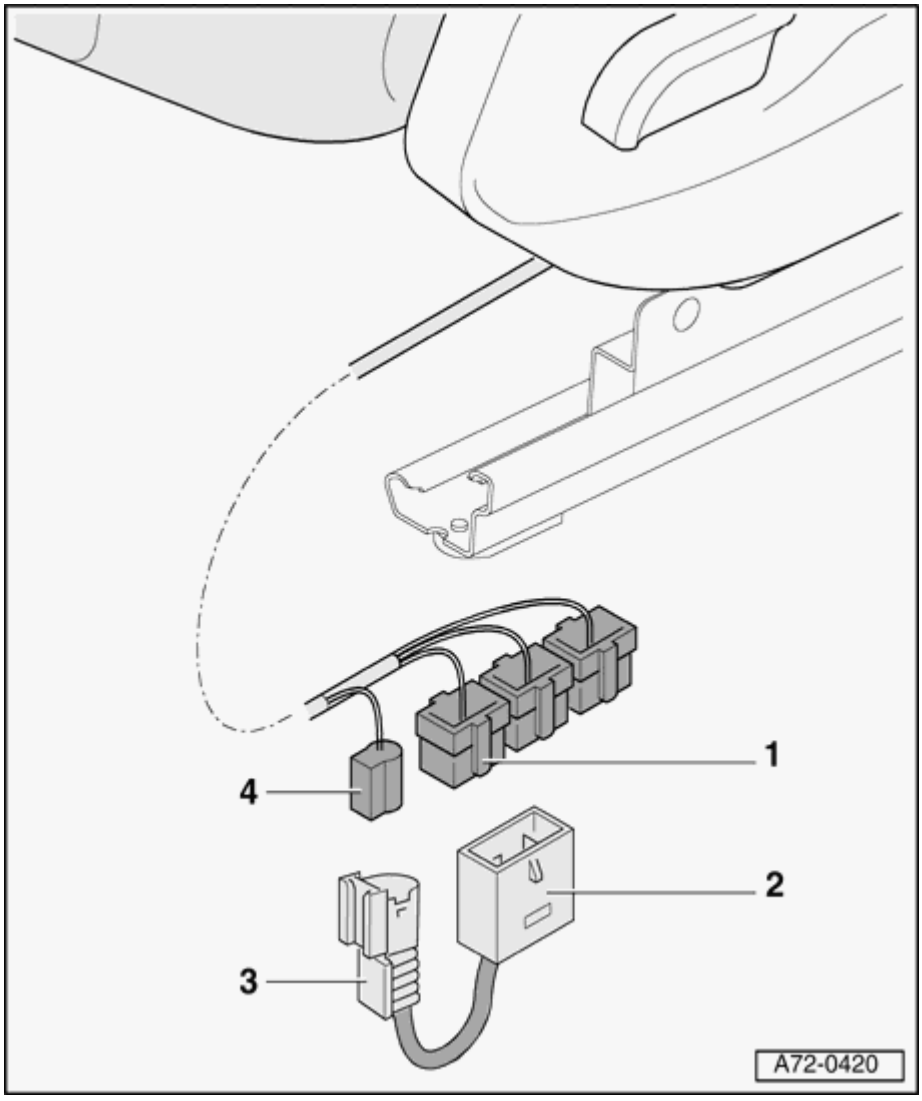


Fig. 474: Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , Connecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat connector power supply connector (red)

2 - Voltage supply connector for airbag adapter (red)

3 - Airbag adapter connector (yellow)

4 - Airbag connector (yellow)

- Disconnect ignition and ground wiring.
- Connect airbag connector - **4** - to airbag adapter connector - **3** -.

If present:

cardiagn.com

- Connect voltage supply connector for airbag adapter - **2** - to voltage supply connector for seat - **1** -.

Side airbag connector, disconnecting

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

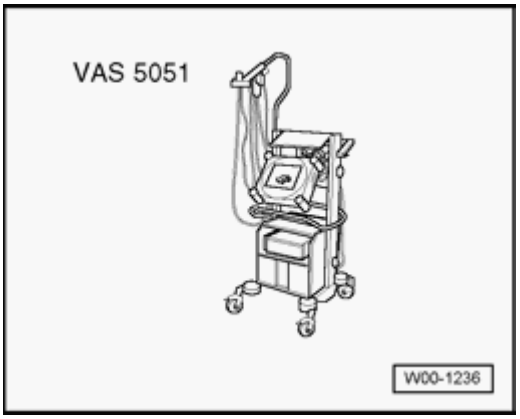


Fig. 475: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

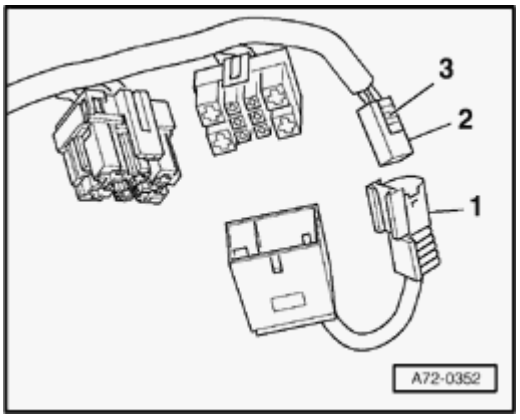


Fig. 476: Side Airbag Connector, Disconnecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press catch - **3** - of airbag connector - **2** - out of airbag adapter connector - **1** - and disconnect airbag connector - **2** -.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction**

cardiagn.com

after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.

Front backrest, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

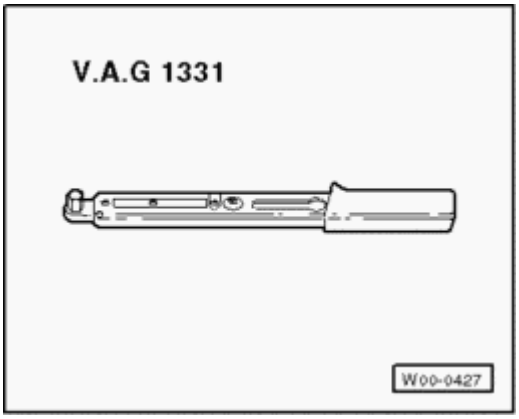


Fig. 477: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

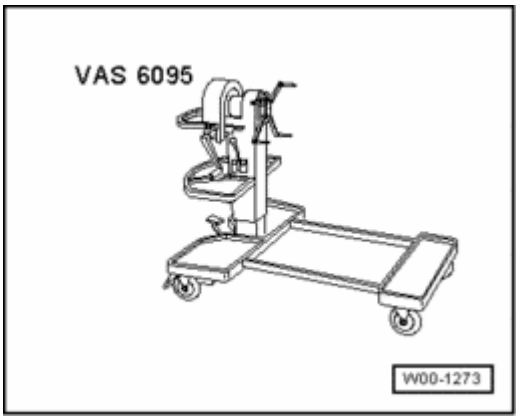


Fig. 478: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

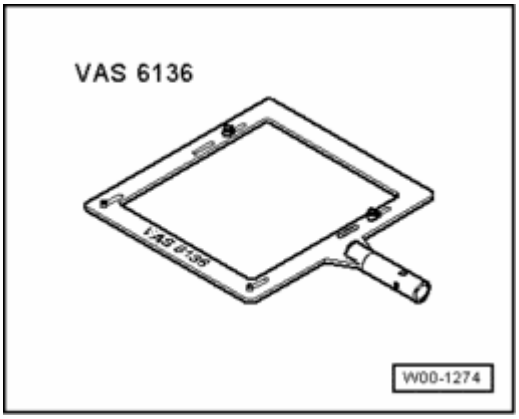


Fig. 479: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

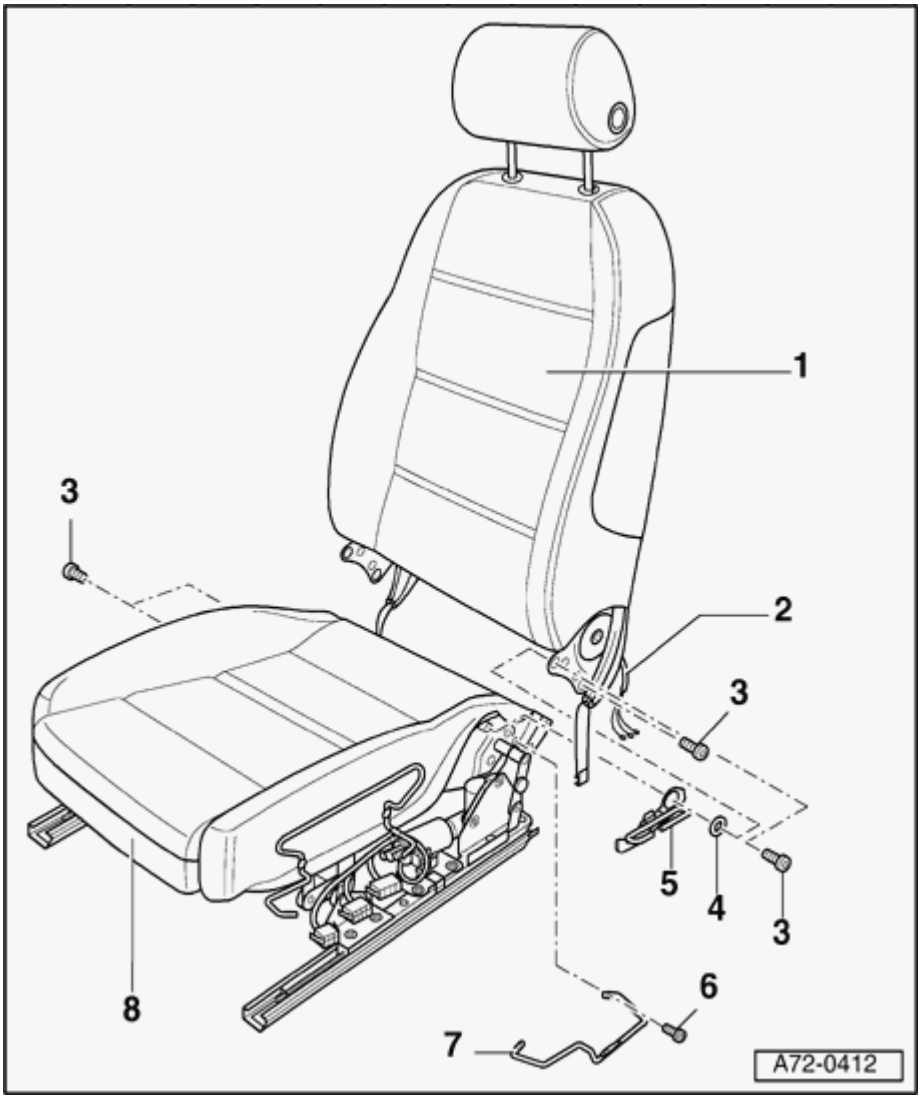


Fig. 480: Removing Front Backrest
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing**.
  - Disconnect or loosen cable ties, loosen adhesive stripes and disconnect connectors.
  - Remove screw **- 6 -**.

cardiagn.com

- Turn bracket - **7** - upward.

- Remove screws - **3** - (4x).
- Tip backrest - **1** - forward on seat.
- Push cushion aside and carefully disconnect wiring harness - **2** - from seat pan - **8** -.
- Remove backrest - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- When installing bracket - **5** - , install bolt - **6** - together with plastic washer - **4** -.
- Always replace bolts - **3** - (4x).
- Cut threads in backrest frame before installing screws - **3** - (4x).

For seats with seat memory:

- Perform a basic setting for backrest or seat after installing seat in vehicle.

2 - Cable harness

3 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 20 Nm

4 - Plastic washer

5 - Support

6 - Screw

7 - Support

8 - Seat pan

cardiagn.com

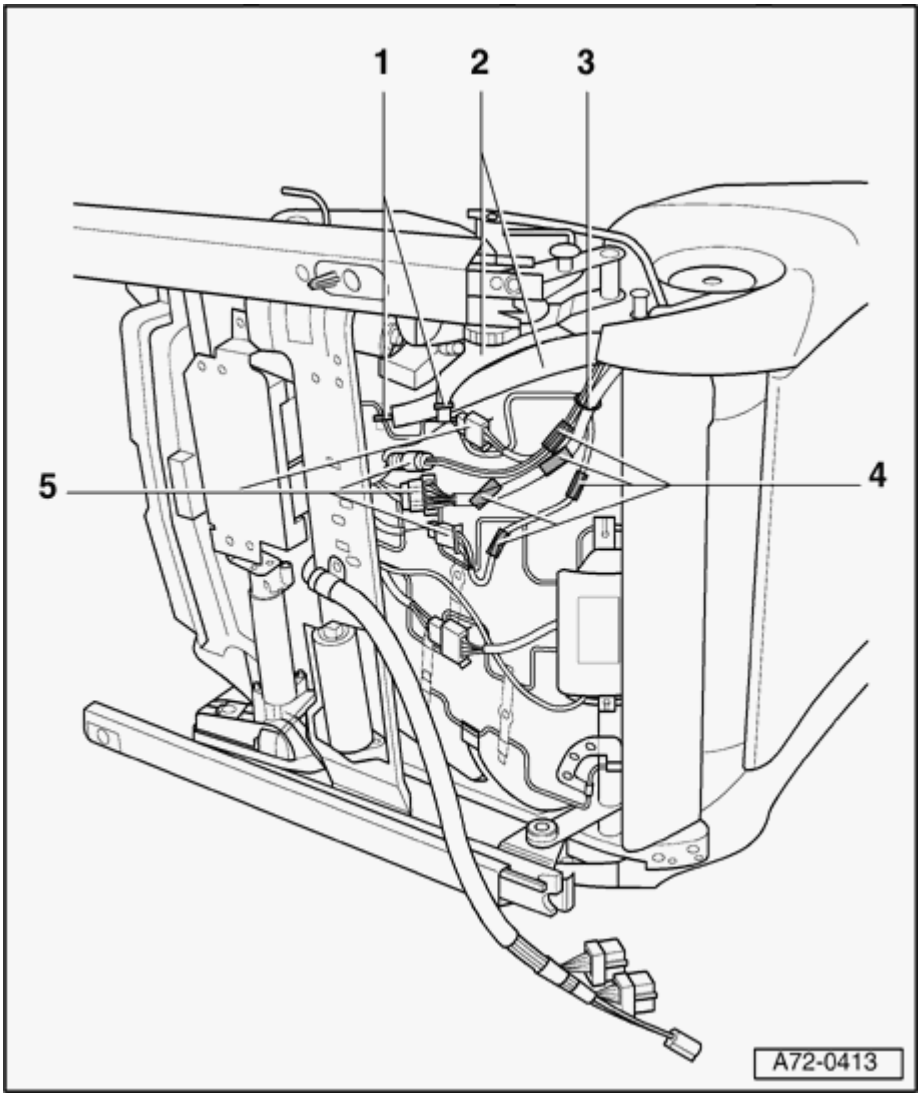


Fig. 481: Installing Front Backrest
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable ties (2x)

- Cut cable ties - **1** - (2x).
- Remove rubber straps - **2** - (2x).
- Disconnect connectors - **5** - (4x).
- Remove cable tie - **3** - on wiring harness.
- Remove adhesive strips on securing rails - **4** - (5x).

2 - Rubber straps (Qty. 2)

3 - Cable tie

cardiagn.com

4 - Securing rails (Qty. 5)

5 - Connector (Qty. 4)

Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

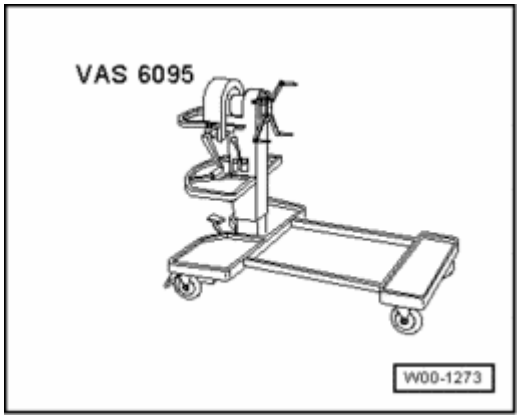


Fig. 482: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

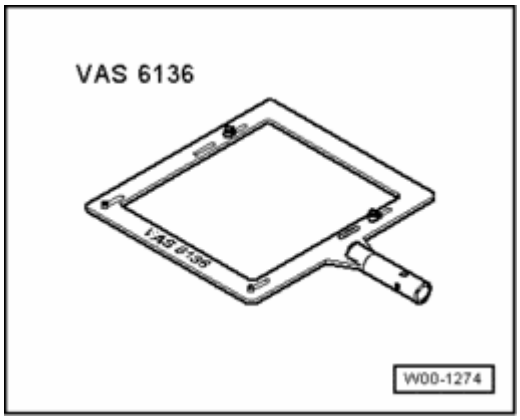


Fig. 483: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

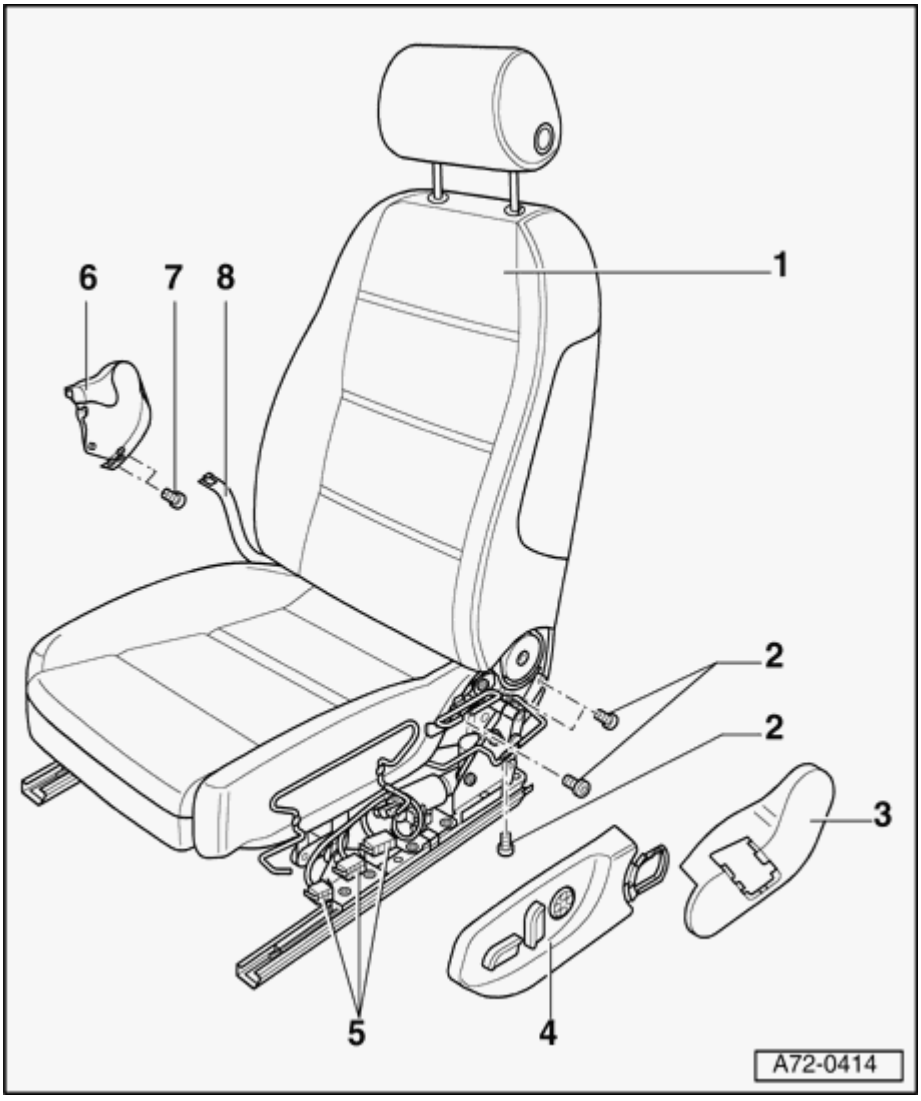


Fig. 484: Side Panels On Door Sill Side Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

2 - Screws (4x)

3 - Rear side trim (sill side)

4 - Front side trim (sill side)

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.

cardiagn.com

- Remove screws - **2** - (4x).
- Remove rear side panel - **3** - upward.
- Remove front side panel - **4** - toward front.
- Disconnect connectors - **5** - (3x).

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

5 - Connector (3x)

6 - Side trim (tunnel side)

7 - Screws, (2x)

8 - Backrest cover rubber strap

Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

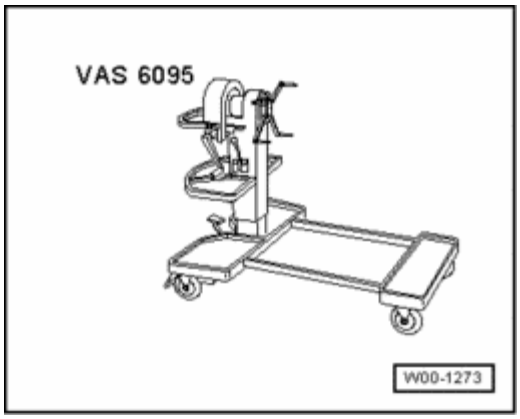


Fig. 485: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

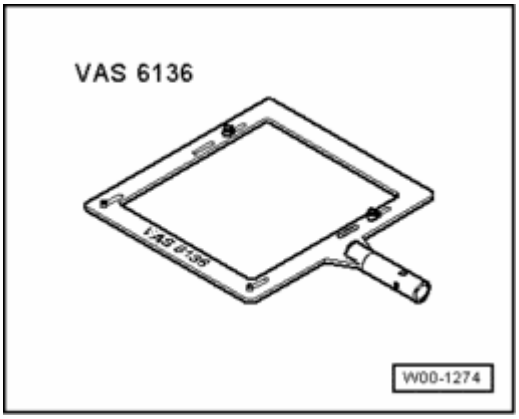
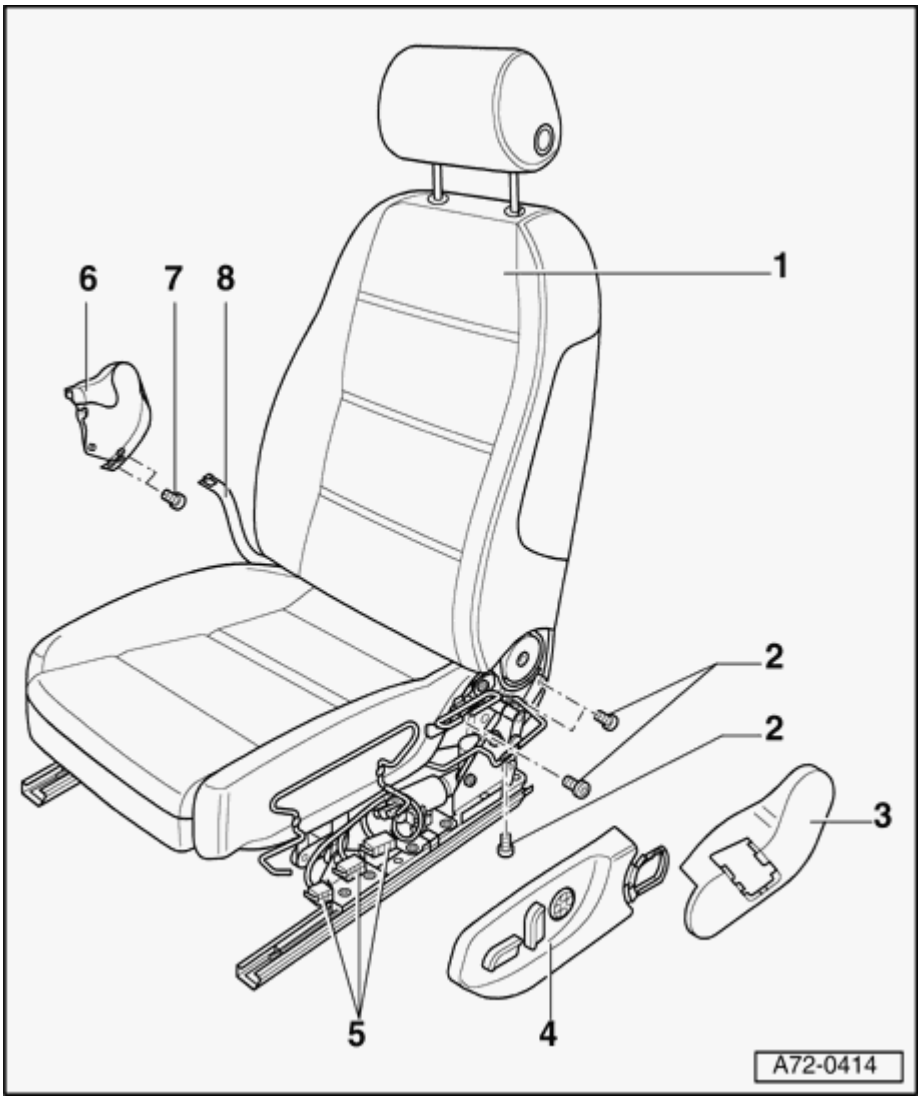


Fig. 486: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136



cardiagn.com

Fig. 487: Tunnel-Side Side Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

2 - Screws (4x)

3 - Rear side trim (sill side)

4 - Front side trim (sill side)

5 - Connector (3x)

6 - Side trim (tunnel side)

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Disengage rubber strap of backrest cover - **8** -.
  - Remove bolts - **7** - (2x).
  - Remove side panel - **6** - upward.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

7 - Screws, (2x)

8 - Backrest cover rubber strap

Backrest, replacing

NOTE:

- **Only the sports seat backrest is offered as a replacement part. For standard seats, adapt a sports seat backrest.**

cardiagn.com

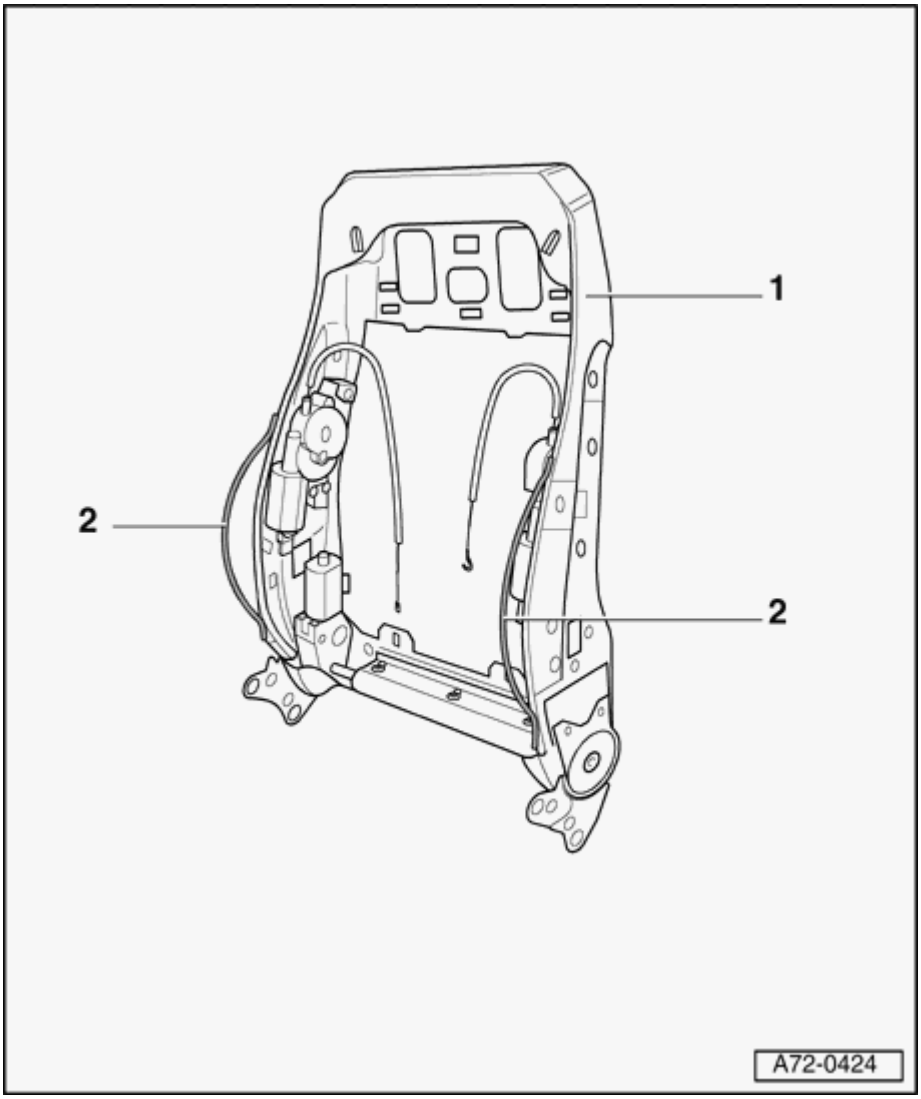


Fig. 488: Backrest, Replacing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Sports seat backrest

- Retrofitting:

  - Remove wire brackets - **2** - (2x) from sport seat backrest - **1** -.
  - The paint construction must be re-established.

2 - Wire bracket (2x)

Seat pan, replacing

NOTE:

- **Only the sport-seat seat pan is available as a replacement part. Retrofit the sport-seat seat pan for the normal seat.**

cardiagn.com

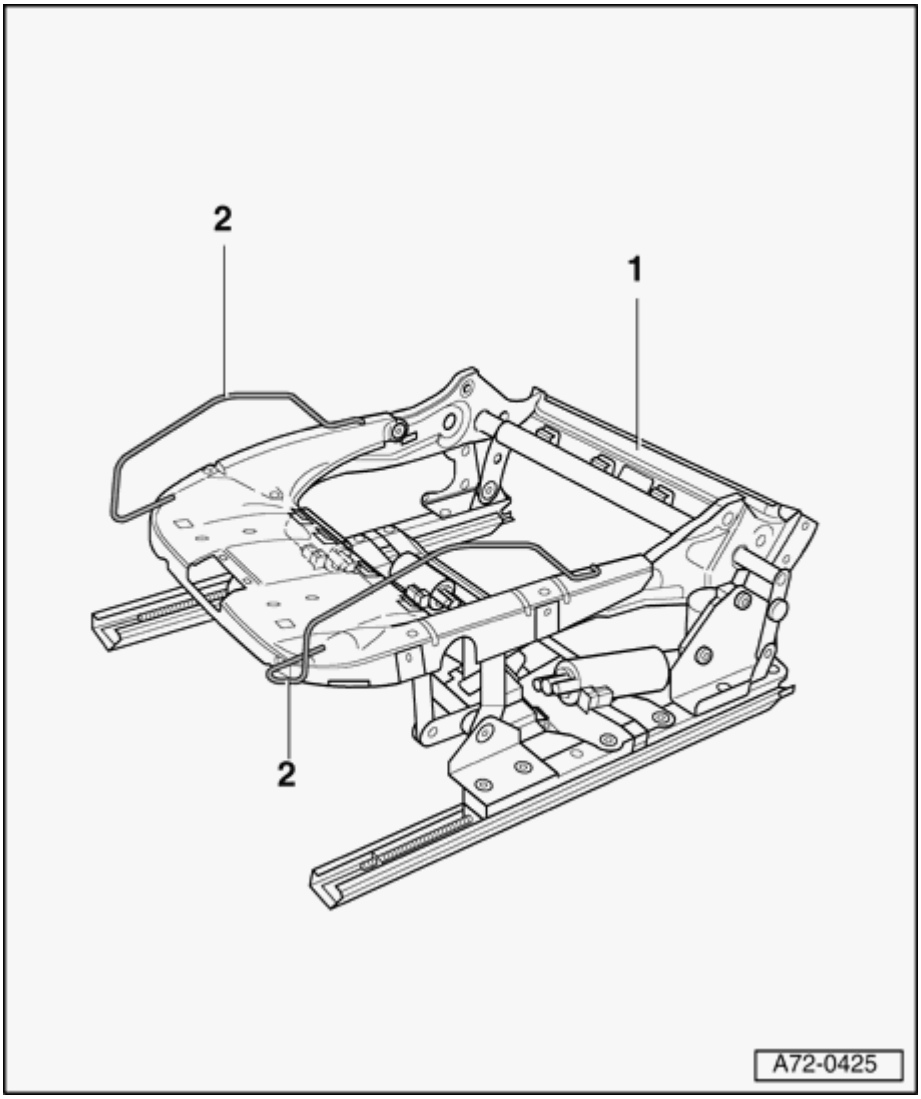


Fig. 489: Seat Pan, Replacing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Sports seat pan

- Retrofitting:

  - Remove wire brackets - **2** - (2x) from sport-seat seat pan - **1** -.
  - The paint construction must be re-established.

2 - Wire bracket (2x)

Guide for side airbag, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

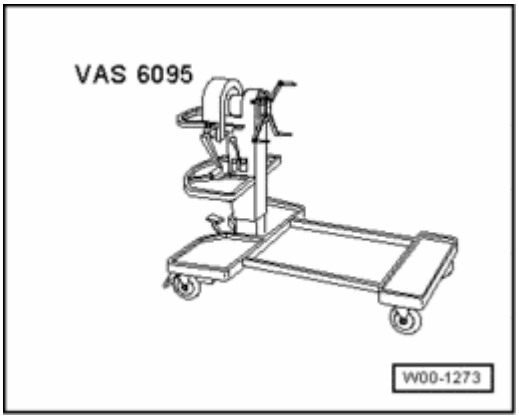


Fig. 490: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

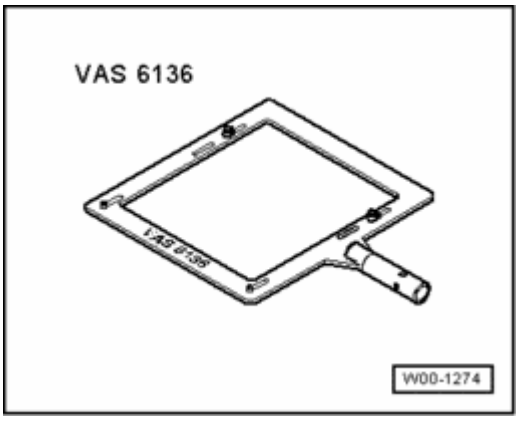


Fig. 491: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

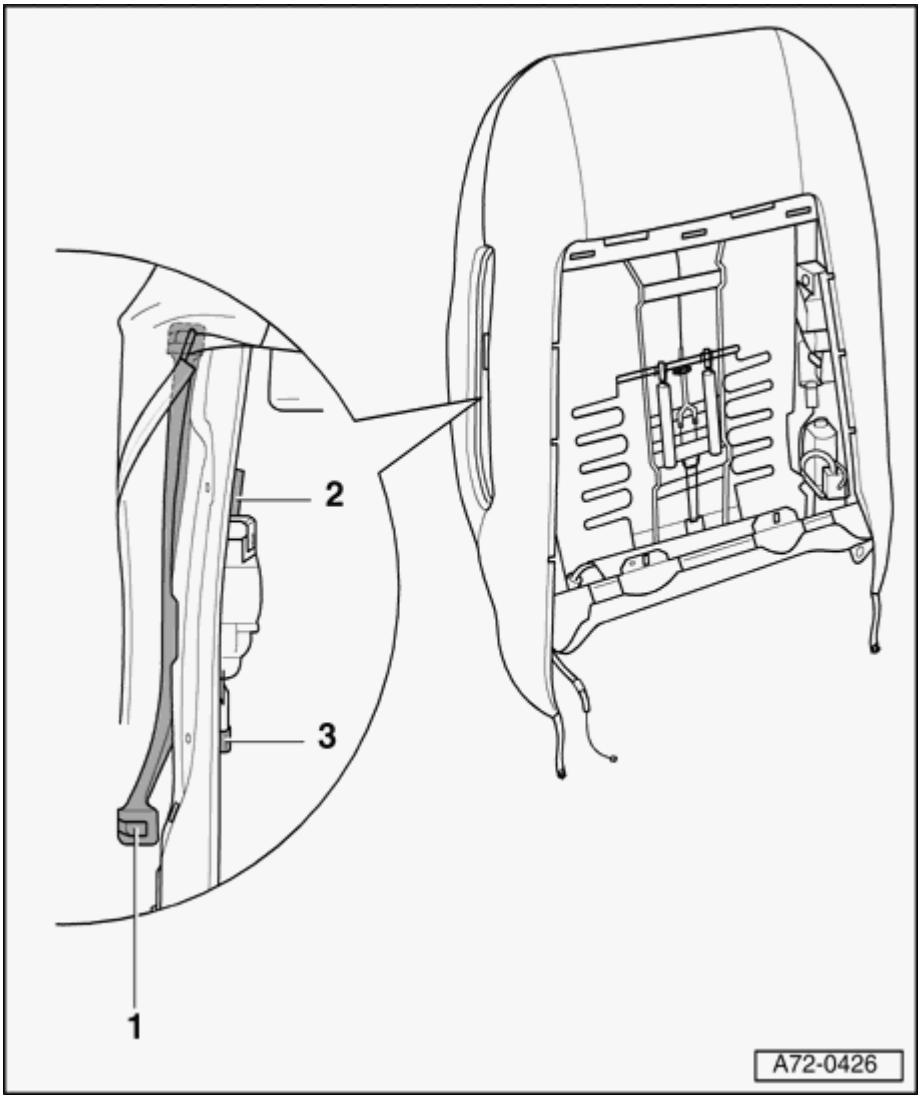


Fig. 492: Guide For Side Airbag Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Side airbag guide

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.

  - Remove side airbag --> **Side airbags, servicing**.
  - Press clip - **3** - together and remove clip - **3** -.
  - Pry out bracket - **2** - from inside.

cardiagn.com

- Remove guide for side airbag **- 1 -**.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Retainer

3 - Clip

Seat adjustment switch, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

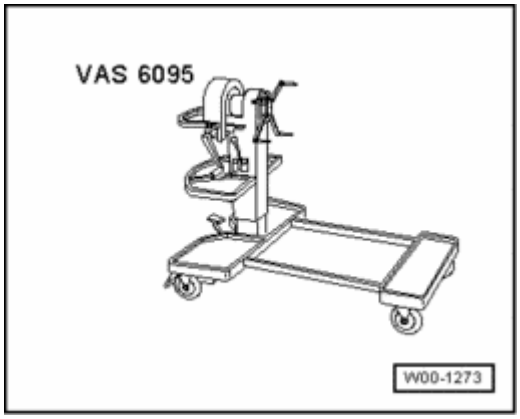


Fig. 493: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

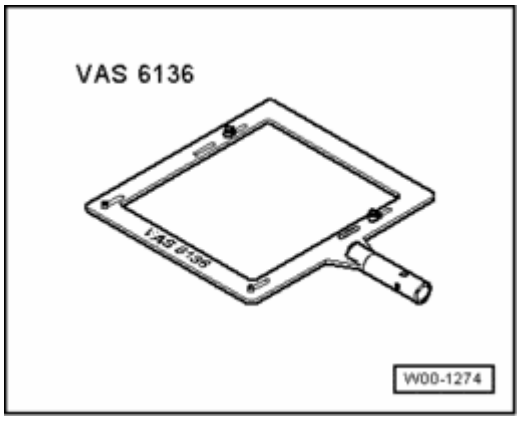


Fig. 494: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove seat side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.

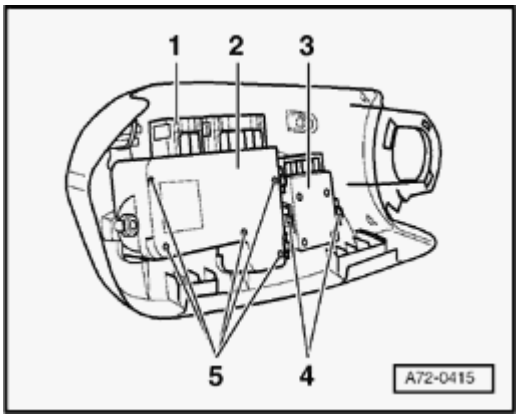


Fig. 495: Seat Adjustment Switch Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **5** - (5x).

Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm

- Remove seat adjustment switch - **2** -.
- Remove circuit board with connectors - **1** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Four-way lumbar support switch, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

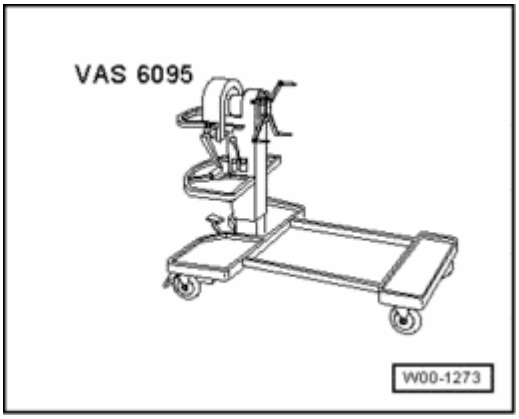


Fig. 496: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

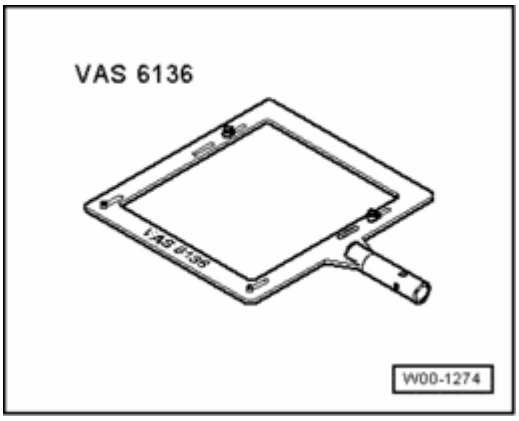


Fig. 497: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove seat side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

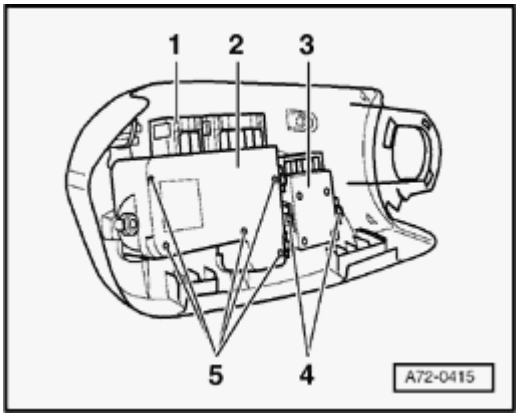


Fig. 498: Four-Way Lumbar Support Switch Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **4** - (2x).

Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm

- Remove four-way lumbar support switch - **3** -.

Installing

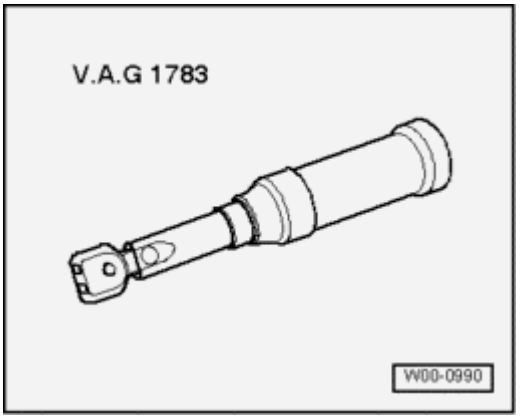
Installation is reverse of removal.

Control module, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **The control module for power seat with memory is located beneath the drivers seat.**
- **With malfunctioning control module, the upper frame of seat pan with backrest must be removed --> Front seat with malfunctioning motor for seat fore-aft adjustment or malfunctioning control module, removing.**

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required



cardiagn.com

Fig. 499: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

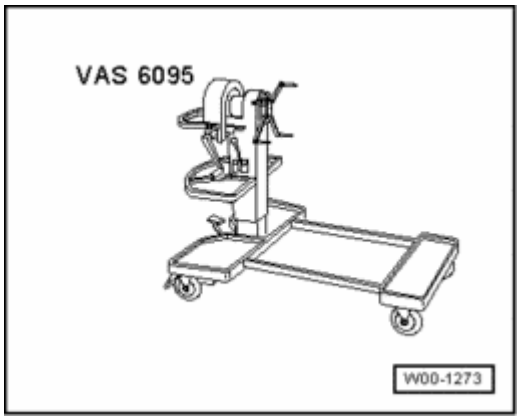


Fig. 500: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

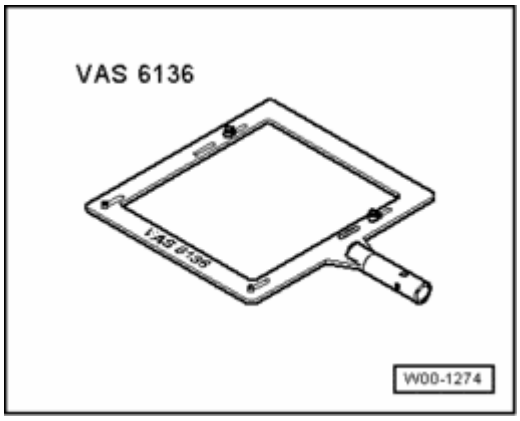


Fig. 501: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.

cardiagn.com

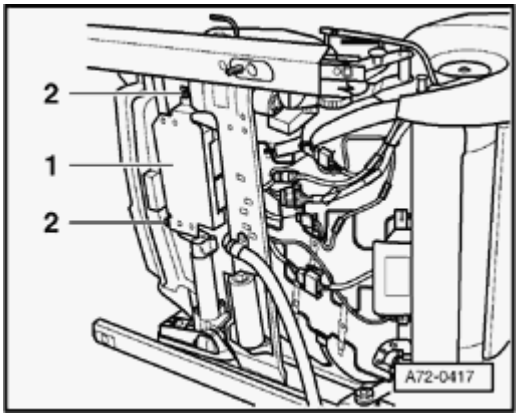


Fig. 502: Identifying Bolts & Control Module
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).

Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm

- Turn control module - **1** - around.

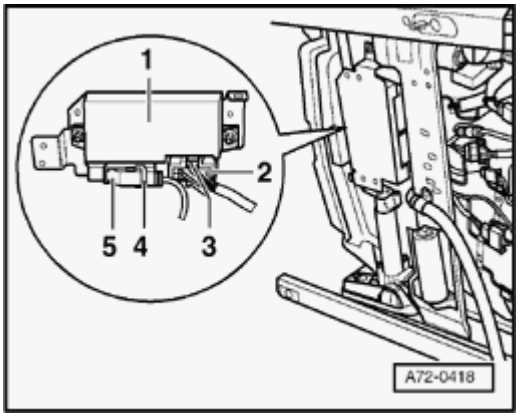


Fig. 503: Identifying Retaining Bracket, Connectors, Catches & Control Module
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage retaining bracket - **4** - and disconnect connector - **5** -.
- Press in catches - **3** - (2x) and disconnect connector - **2** -.
- Remove control module - **1** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Longitudinal seat adjustment motor, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **With malfunctioning motor, the lower frame of seat pan must be replaced -**

cardiagn.com

-> Front seat with malfunctioning motor for seat fore-aft adjustment or malfunctioning control module, removing.

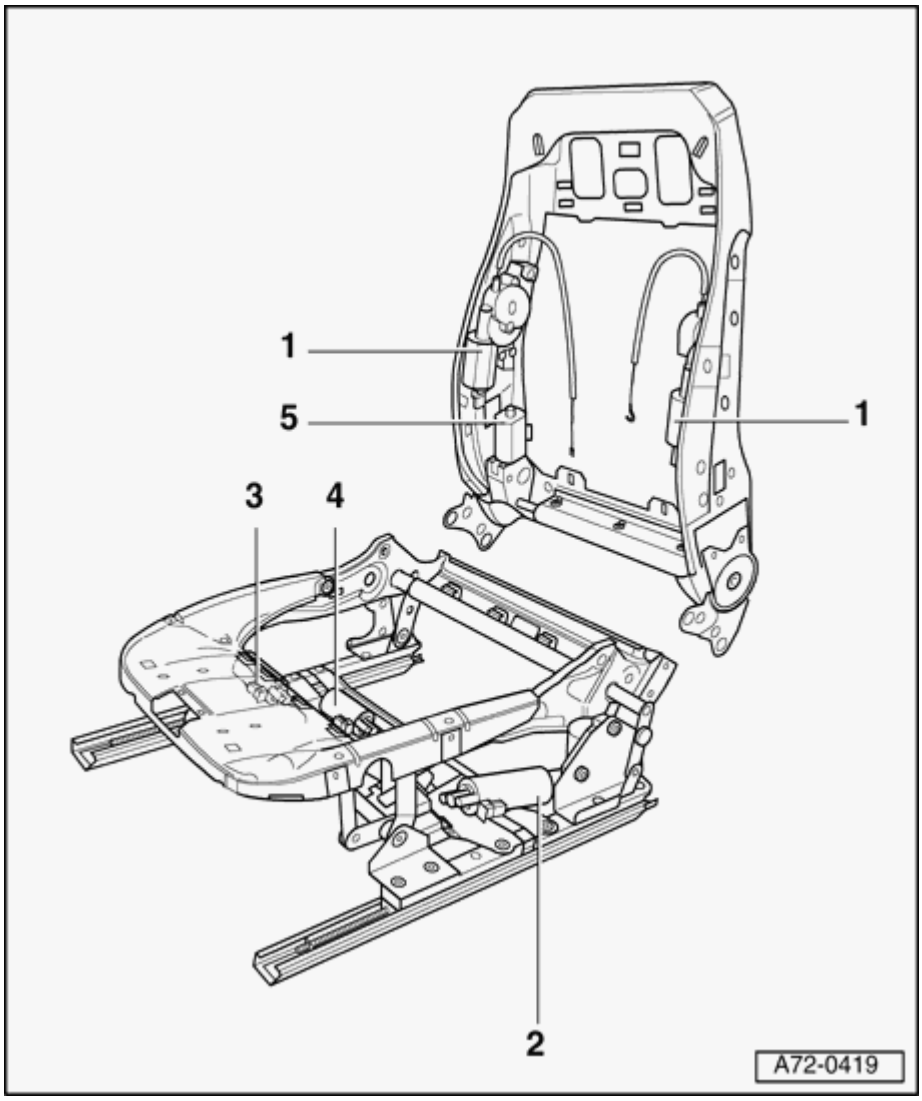


Fig. 504: Longitudinal Seat Adjustment Motor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Four-way lumber support motors (Qty. 2)

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

3 - Seat angle adjustment motor

4 - Longitudinal seat adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor

cardiagn.com

Electrical height adjuster on seats with bolted upper part of seat (older version), replacing

NOTE:

- **Older shoulder pin must be used.**
- **Older seat frame must be used.**
- **Older sail must be used on new height adjuster gearing.**
- **New microencapsulated bolts to secure the sail to the height adjuster gearing and to the seat rail are included in delivery.**
- **New nut to secure shoulder pin and plastic toothed segment are included in delivery.**

- Move seat as far to front as possible.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side trim (sill side), removing and installing**.

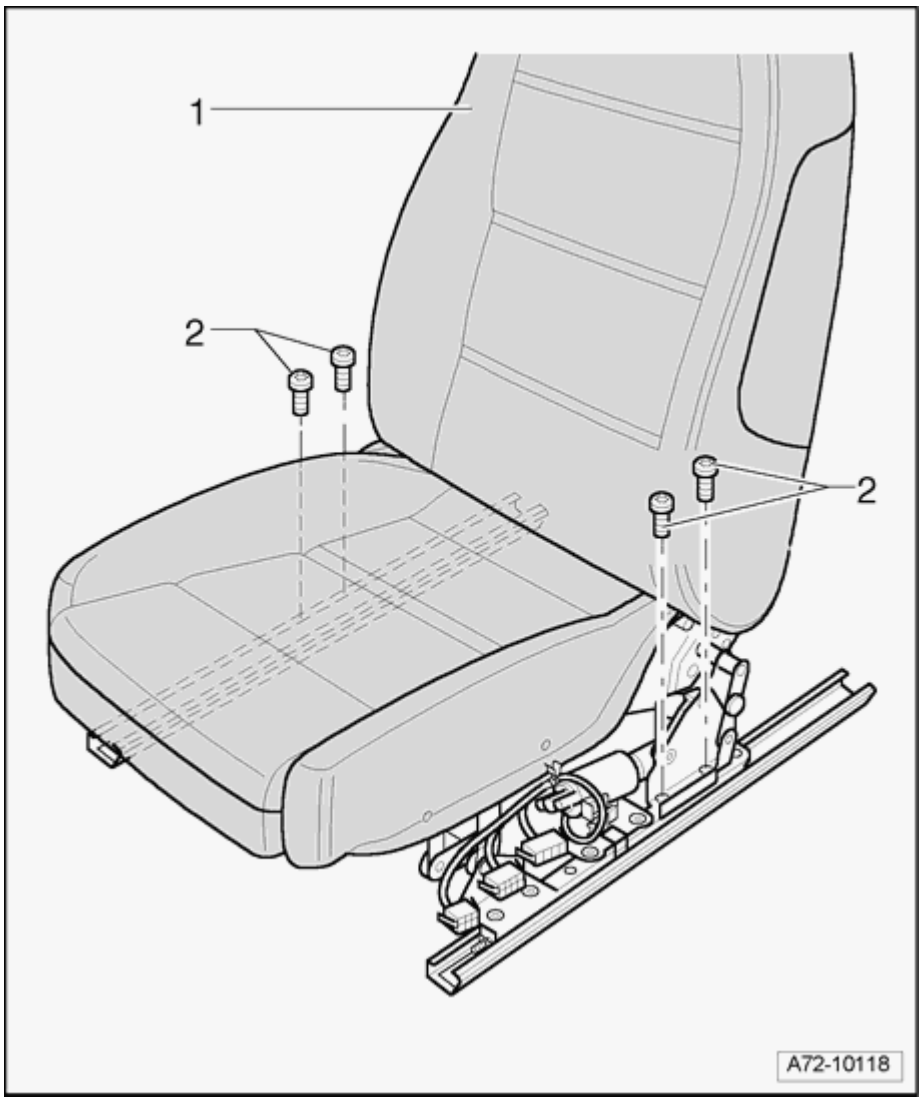


Fig. 505: Electrical Height Adjuster On Seats With Bolted Upper Part Of Seat (Older Version), Replacing

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat

2 - Bolts for seat rail (microencapsulated)

- Remove two rear microencapsulated bolts - **2** - to seat rail on left and right.

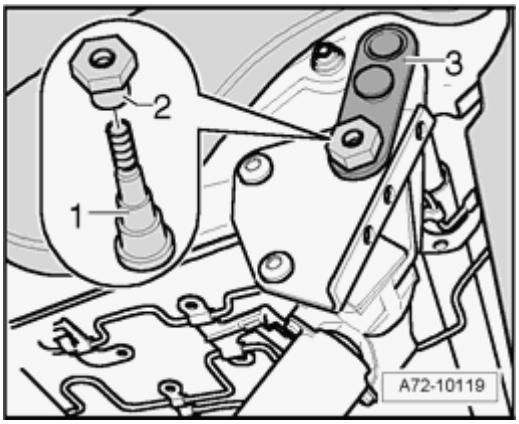


Fig. 506: Loosening Shoulder Pin, Nut And Lever On Height Adjuster Gearing And Removing Shoulder Pin
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Loosen shoulder pin - **1** - , nut - **2** - and lever - **3** - on height adjuster gearing and remove shoulder pin - **1** -.
- Fold seat fully toward front.
- Remove height adjuster gearing.

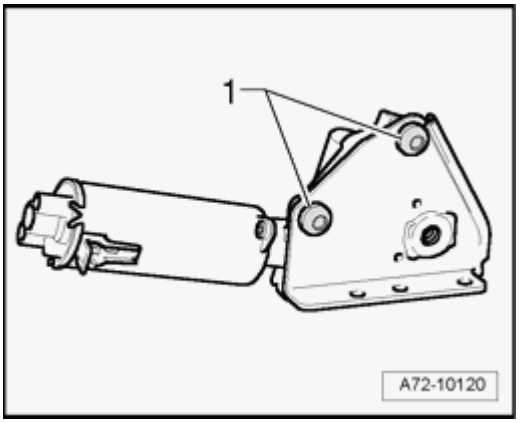


Fig. 507: Removing Both Microencapsulated Bolts At Sail To Height Adjuster Gearing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove both microencapsulated bolts - **1** - at sail to height adjuster gearing.
- Clean threaded holes on height adjuster gearing.

cardiagn.com

- Secure new height adjuster gearing to sail using both new microencapsulated bolts - **1** -.

NOTE:

- **Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter).**

- If damaged, replace white plastic toothed segment.
- Carefully insert height adjuster gearing and make sure white plastic toothed segment is not damaged.
- Guide shoulder pin through height adjuster gearing, sail and drive lever and tighten new nut.
- Clean threaded holes in seat rail.

- Fold seat fully toward rear.
- Secure seat to seat rail using microencapsulated bolts supplied.

NOTE:

- **Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter).**

Electrical height adjuster on seats with upper part of seat laser-welded to seat rail (new version), replacing

NOTE:

- **New shoulder pin, nut and plastic toothed segment are included in delivery.**
- **New microencapsulated bolts to secure the sail to the height adjuster gearing are included in delivery.**

- Move seat as far to front as possible.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side trim (sill side), removing and installing**.
- Loosen shoulder pin, nut and gear lever at height adjuster gearing.
- Remove shoulder pin.

- Remove both microencapsulated bolts at sail to height adjuster gearing.
- Fold seat fully toward front.
- Remove height adjuster gearing.
- If damaged, replace white plastic toothed segment.

- Clean threaded holes on height adjuster gearing.
- Installation of the height adjuster gearing is the reverse of removal.

NOTE:

- **Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter).**

Motor for seat tilt adjustment, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

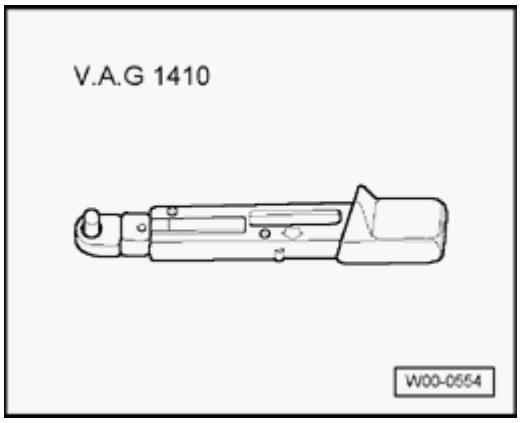


Fig. 508: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

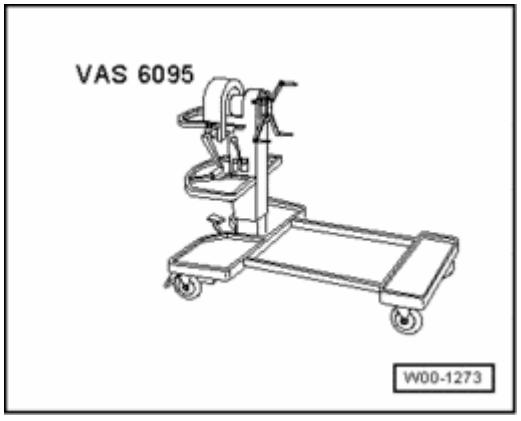
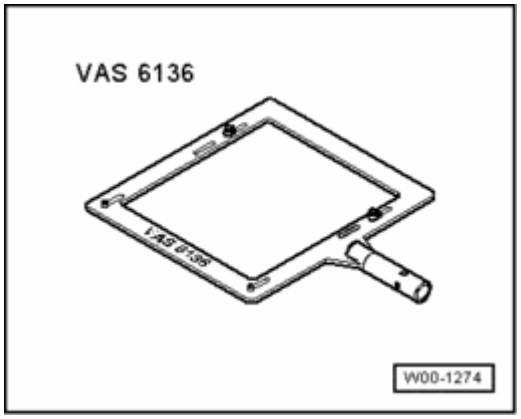


Fig. 509: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095



cardiagn.com

Fig. 510: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

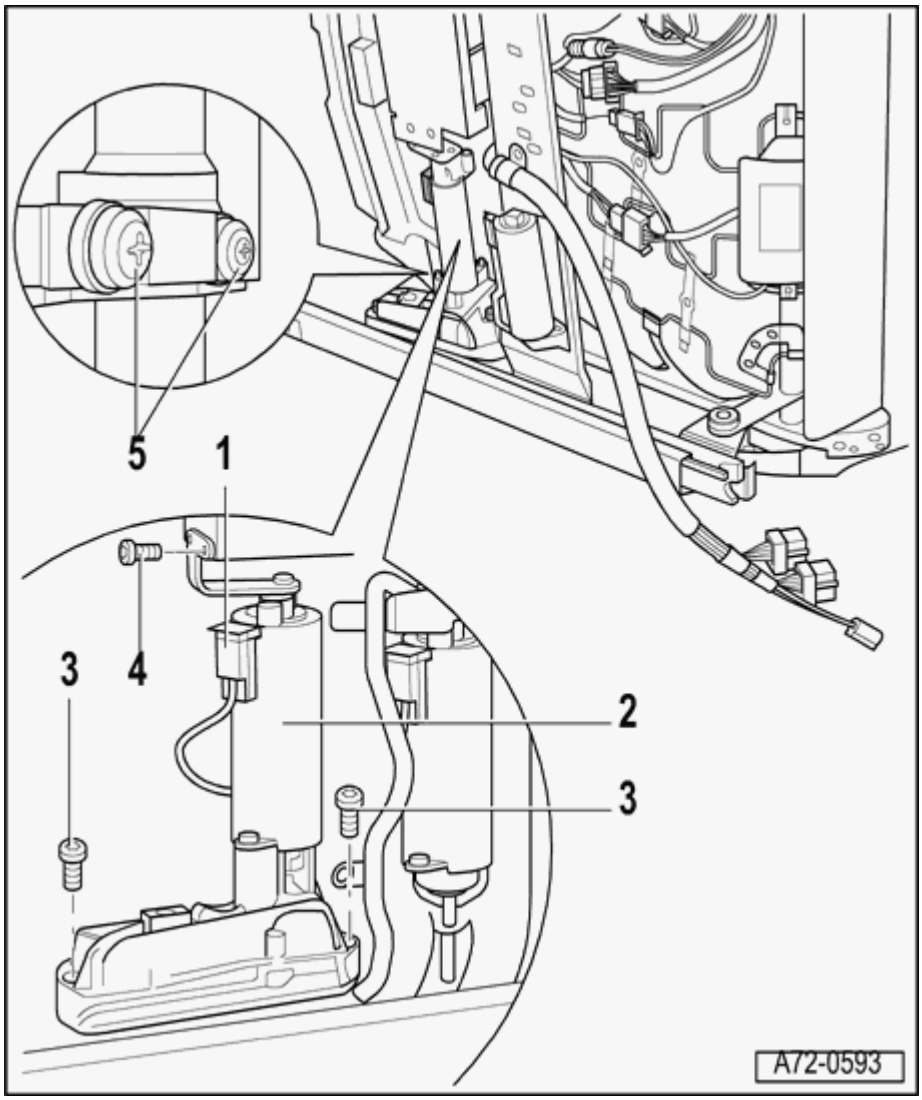


Fig. 511: Motor For Seat Tilt Adjustment Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Connector

2 - Seat angle adjustment motor

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.

cardiagn.com

- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove bolts - **5** - (2x).
- Remove screw - **4** -.
- Remove connector - **1** -.
- Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).
- Remove motor for seat tilt adjustment - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Screw

10 Nm

- Qty. 2

4 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm

5 - Screw

5 Nm

- Qty. 2

Seat cushion extension, removing and installing (sports seat)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

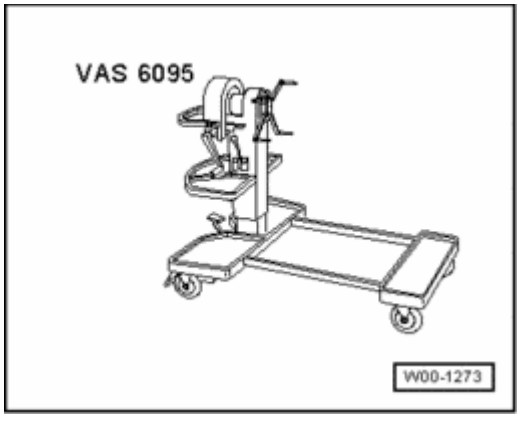


Fig. 512: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

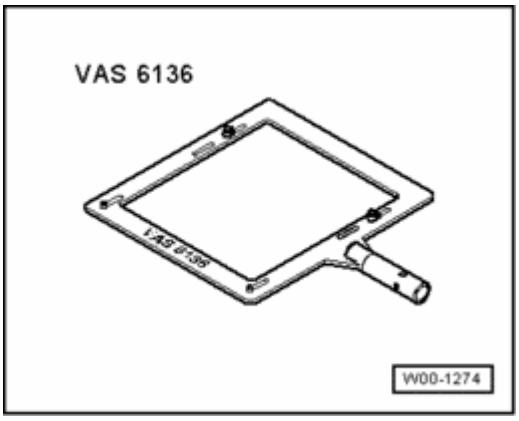


Fig. 513: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

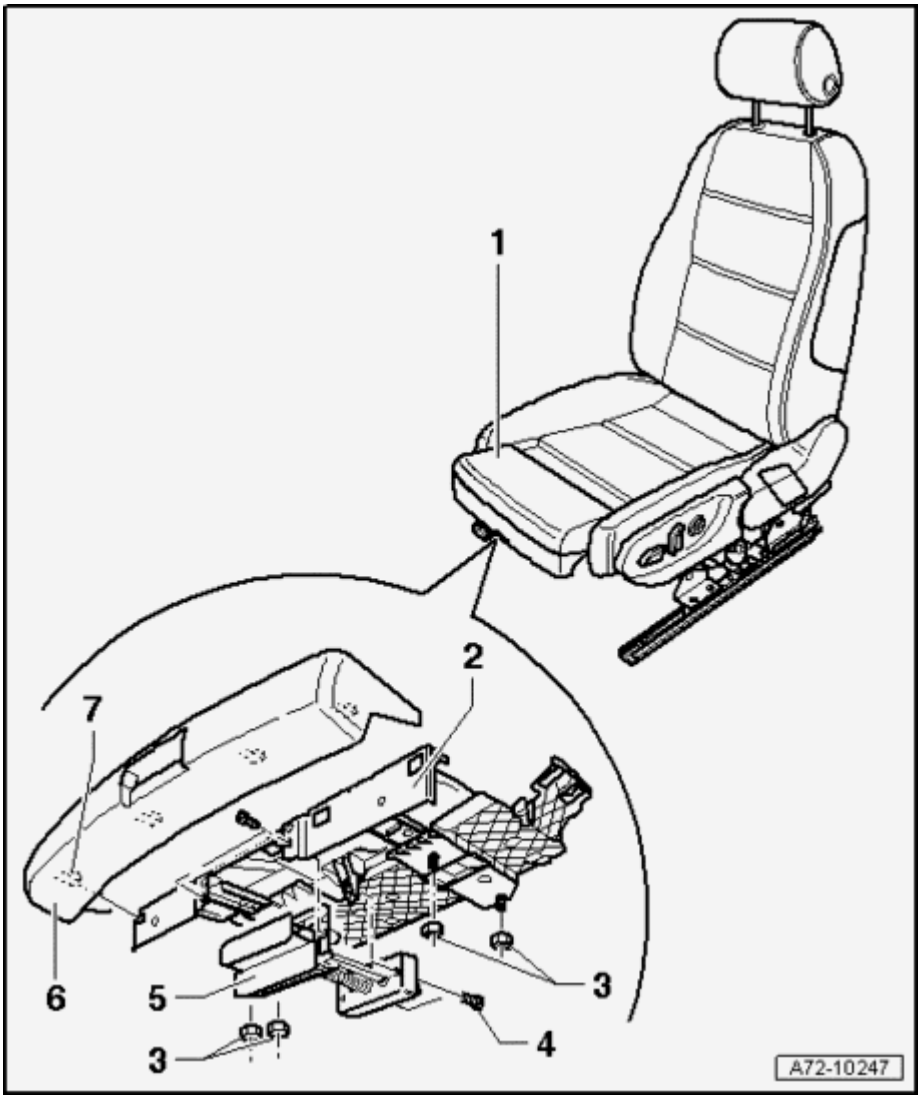


Fig. 514: Seat Cushion Extension (Sports Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat cushion extension

- Removal

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove drawer --> **Drawer, vehicles through 06.06, removing and installing**.

- Detach cover and cushion from seat pan --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.
- Detach seat cushion extension from cover and cushion.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Seat surface extension base plate

3 - Nut

- 35 Nm
- Qty. 4

4 - Screw

- Qty. 4

5 - Grip

- Removal

  - Remove bolts - **4** - (Qty. 4).
  - Remove handle - **5** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

6 - Trim

- Removal

  - Remove clips - **7** - (Qty. 4) on trim - **6** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

7 - Clips

- Qty. 4

Backrest adjustment motor, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

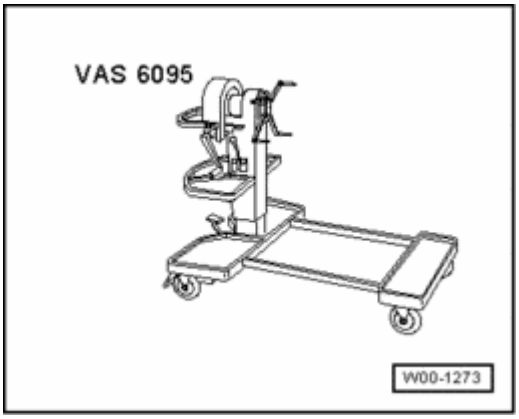


Fig. 515: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

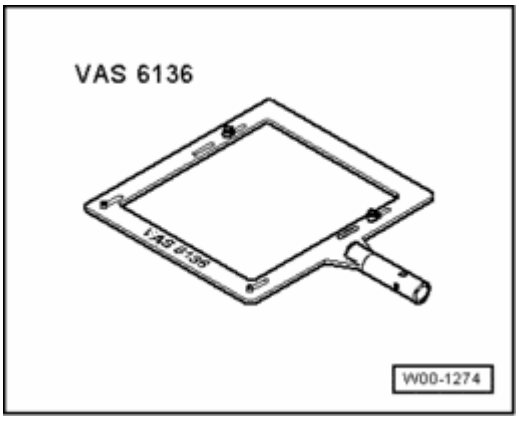


Fig. 516: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

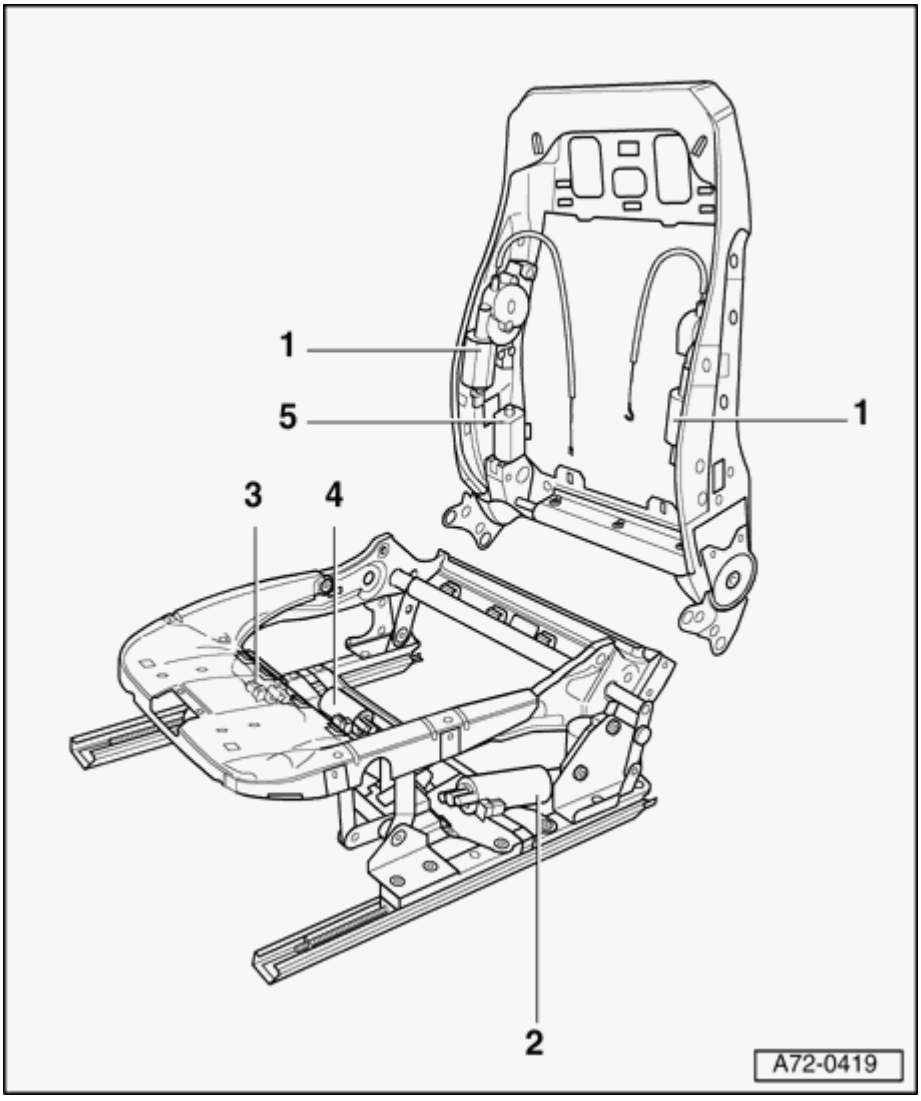


Fig. 517: Longitudinal Seat Adjustment Motor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Four-way lumber support motors (Qty. 2)

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

3 - Seat angle adjustment motor

4 - Longitudinal seat adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor

- Removal:
  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.

- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.

NOTE:

- **A passenger seat backrest is shown in the illustration.**

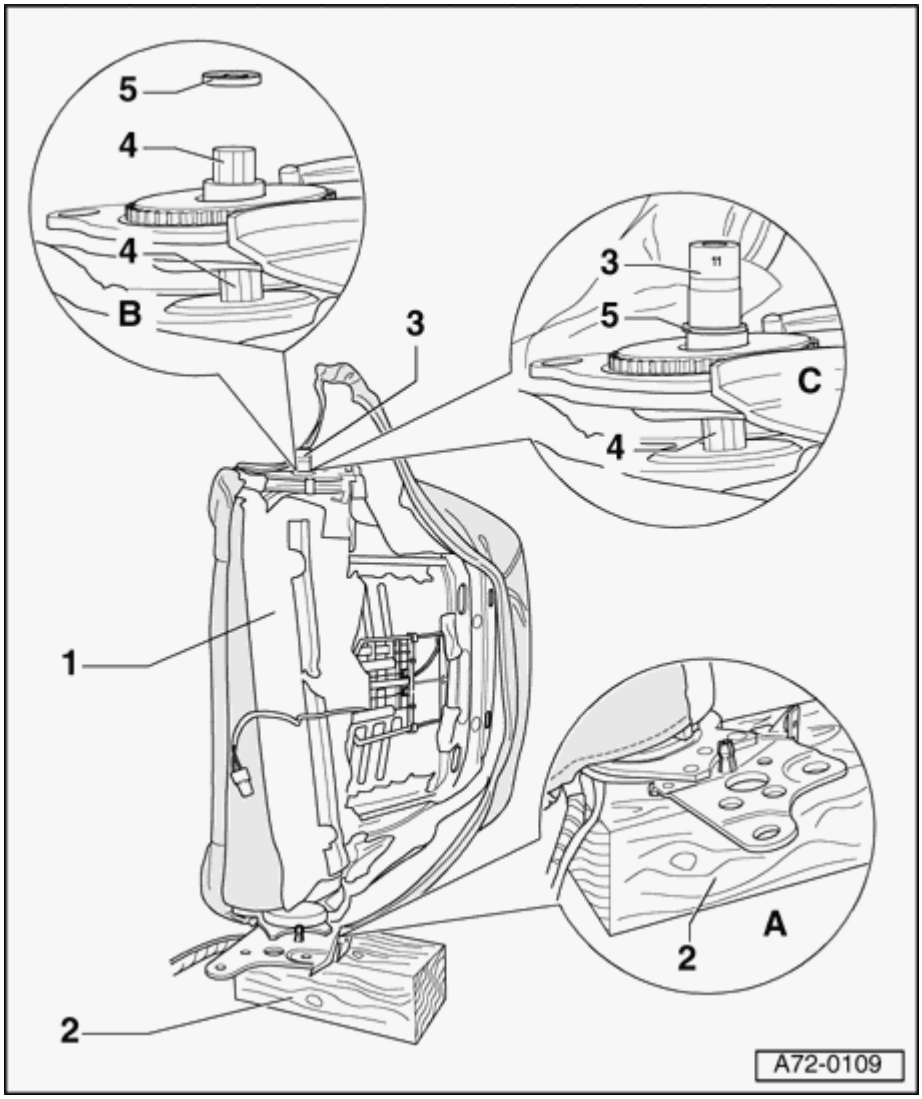


Fig. 518: Identifying Backrest Frame, Wood Block, Socket, Shaft & Spring Washer
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolt from motor for backrest adjustment **Removing mount for motor for backrest adjustment**.

cardiagn.com

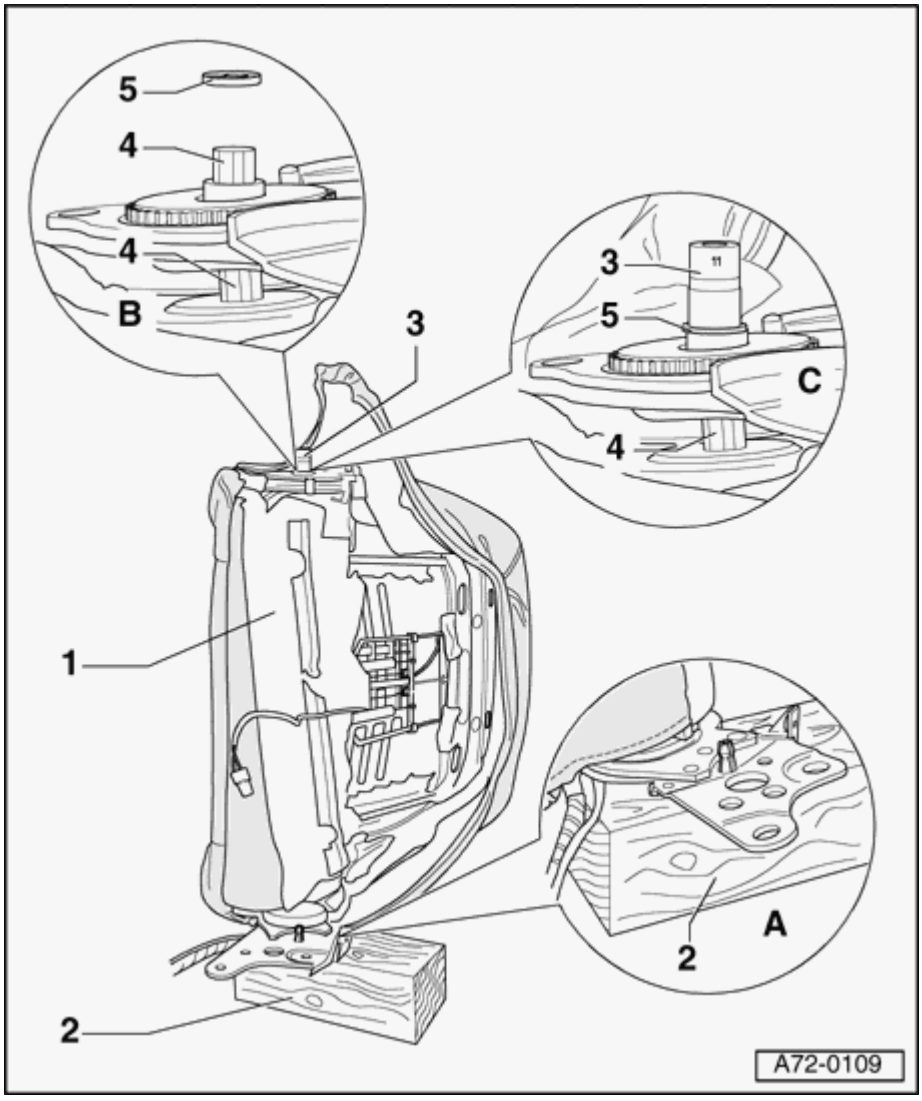


Fig. 519: Identifying Backrest Frame, Wood Block, Socket, Shaft & Spring Washer
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry out spring washer - **5** - on side of backrest motor with a screwdriver (magnified area of illustration - **B** -.)
- Tap shaft - **4** - through the side of the backrest frame - **1** - using a hammer and drift punch.
- Pull out shaft - **4** - just far enough out of backrest frame - **1** - until motor for backrest adjustment comes out.

- **Installing:**

- Adapt the splines of new motor for backrest adjustment **Preparing backrest adjustment motor**.
- Slide shaft - **4** - through motor for backrest adjustment and through backrest frame - **1** -.
- Set seat aside.
- Place a wood block - **2** - beneath shaft - **4** - (**Fig. 519**- **A** -) on opposite side of motor for backrest

cardiagn.com

adjustment.

- Tap spring washer - **5** - onto shaft - **4** - using a socket wrench 11 mm insert - **3** - (**Fig. 519**- **C** -).
- Install screw on backrest adjustment motor and connect connector.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.

For seats with seat memory:

- After installing seat, perform a basic setting for backrest or seat.

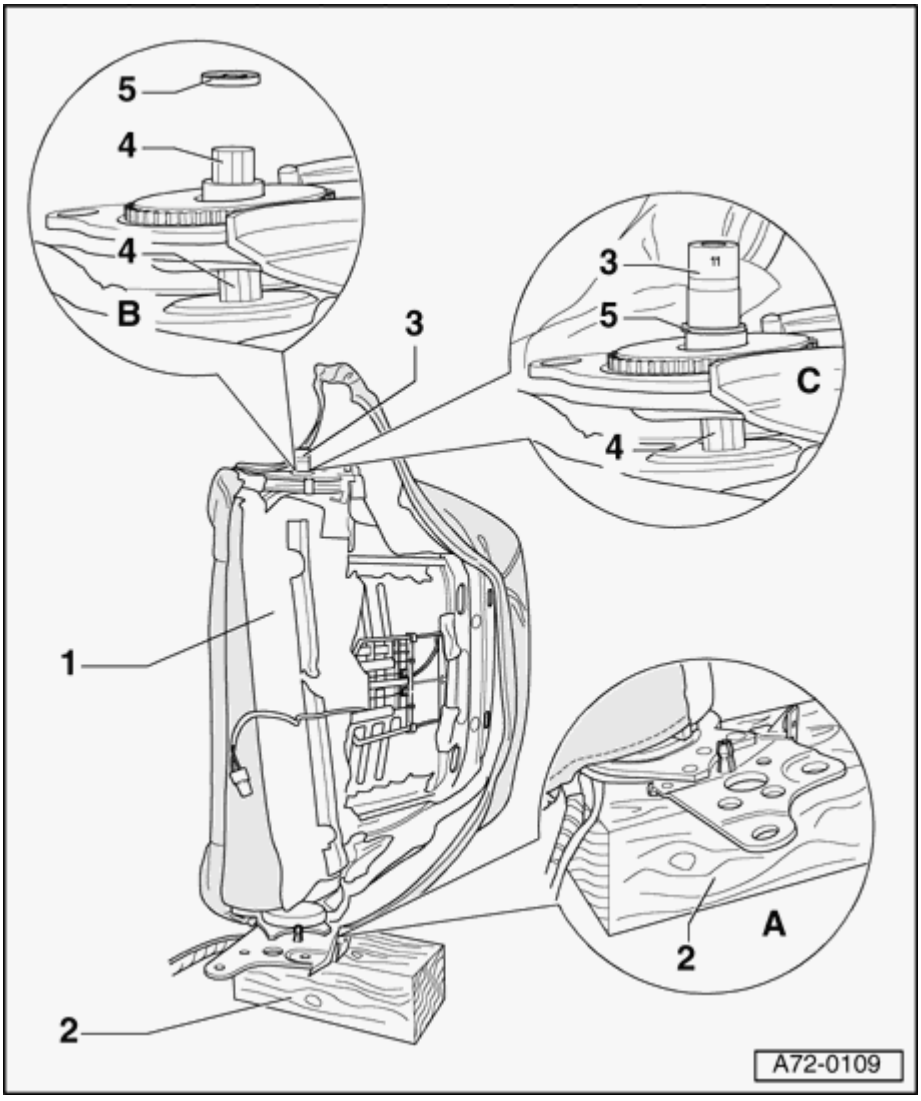


Fig. 520: Identifying Backrest Frame, Wood Block, Socket, Shaft & Spring Washer
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest frame

cardiagn.com

2 - Wood block

3 - Socket 11 mm

4 - Shaft

5 - Spring washer

Removing mount for motor for backrest adjustment

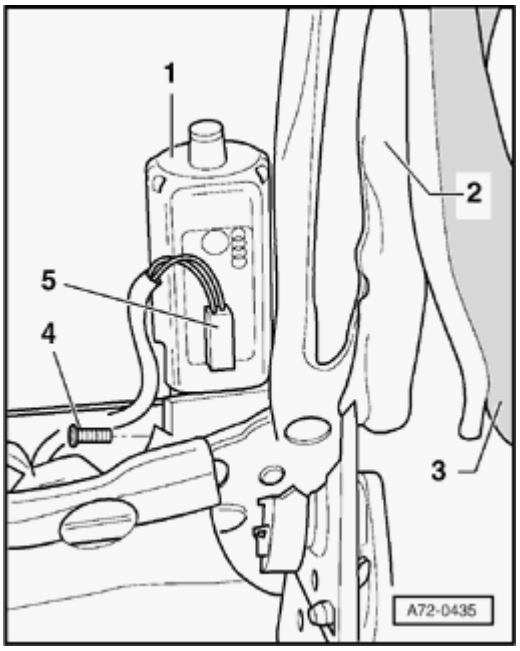


Fig. 521: Removing Mount For Motor For Backrest Adjustment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector - **5** -.
- Remove cover - **3** - and anti-crush fleece - **2** - to side.
- Remove screw - **4** -.

Preparing backrest adjustment motor

cardiagn.com

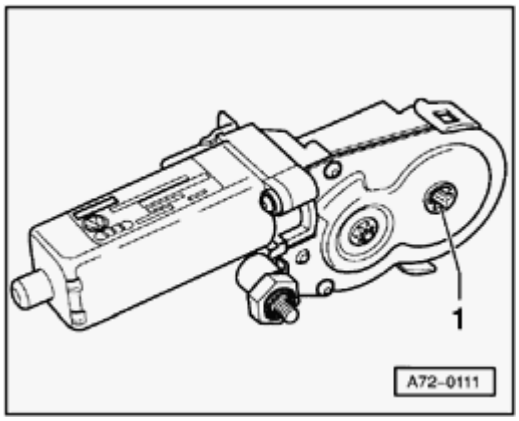


Fig. 522: Preparing Backrest Adjustment Motor
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, turn the locating element of splines - **1** - so it aligns with shaft of backrest frame.

Backrest cover, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

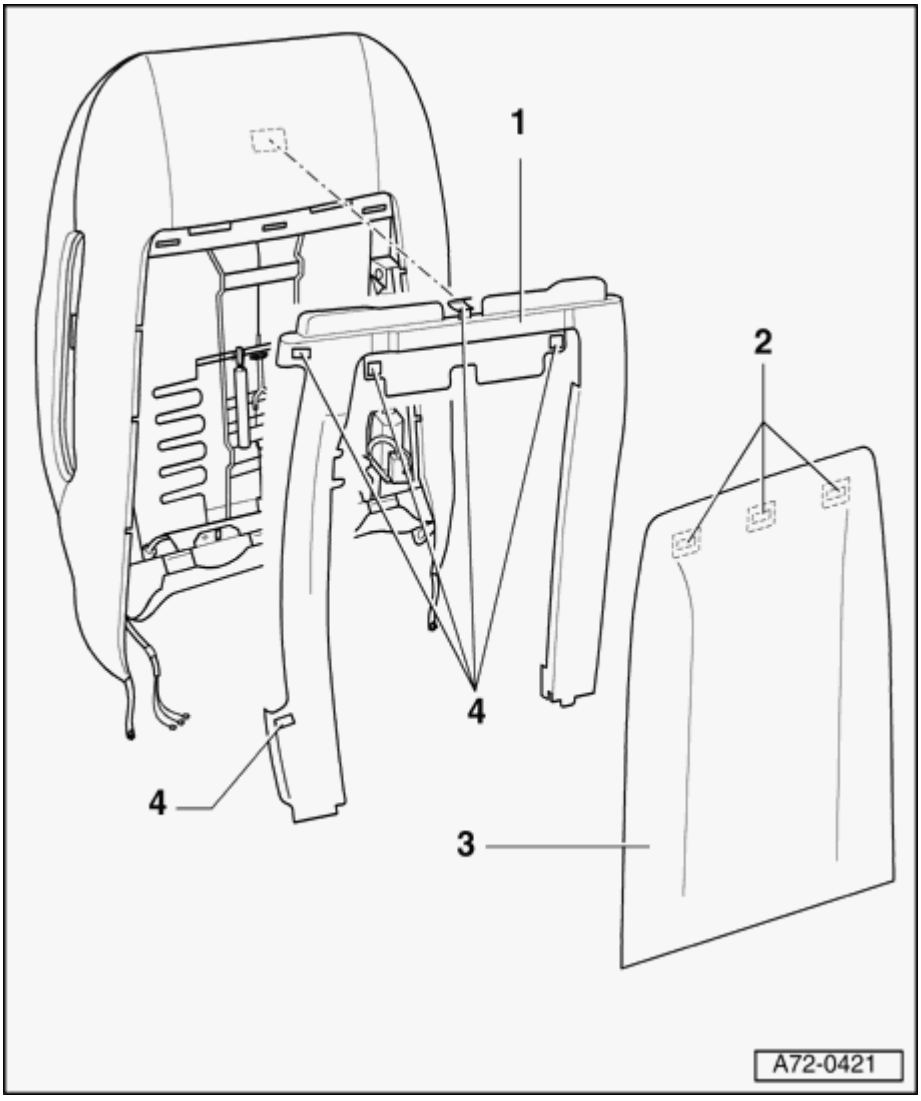


Fig. 523: Identifying Backrest Frame, Wire Clips, Backrest Cover & Clips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest frame

2 - Wire clips (Qty. 3)

3 - Backrest cover

- Removal:

  - Pry out wire clips - **2** - (3x) on backrest panel - **1** -.
  - Remove backrest panel - **3** - upward.

- **Installing:**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

4 - Clips (Qty. 5)

Backrest frame, removing and installing

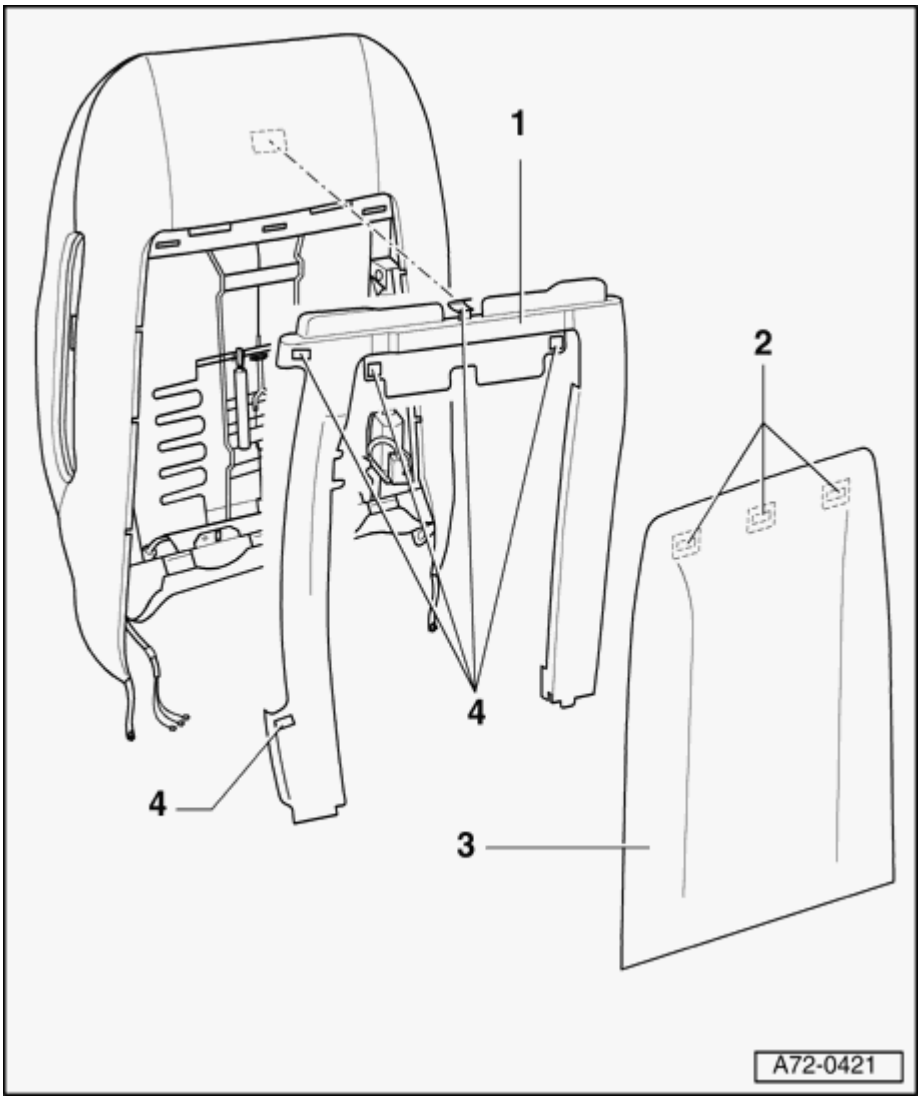


Fig. 524: Identifying Backrest Frame, Wire Clips, Backrest Cover & Clips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest frame

- Removal:

  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
  - Pry out clips - **4** - (5x).
  - Remove backrest frame - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Wire clips (Qty. 3)

3 - Backrest cover

4 - Clips (Qty. 5)

Four-way lumbar support, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

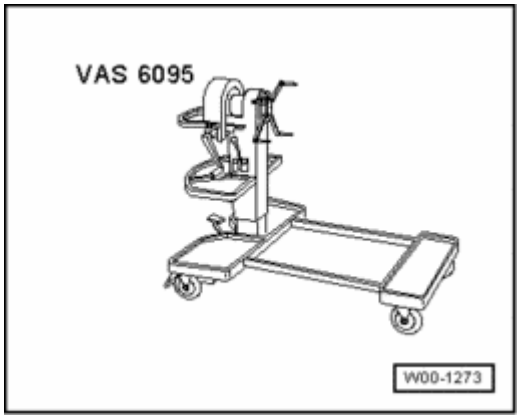


Fig. 525: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

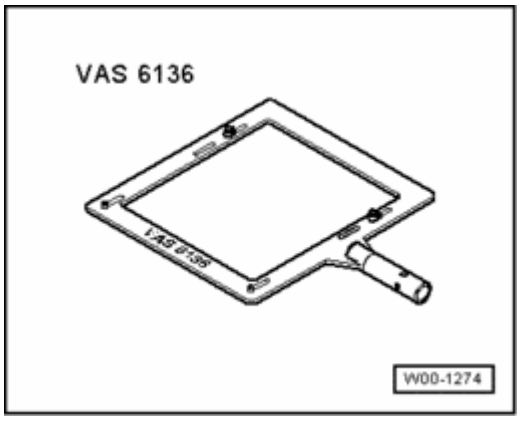


Fig. 526: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

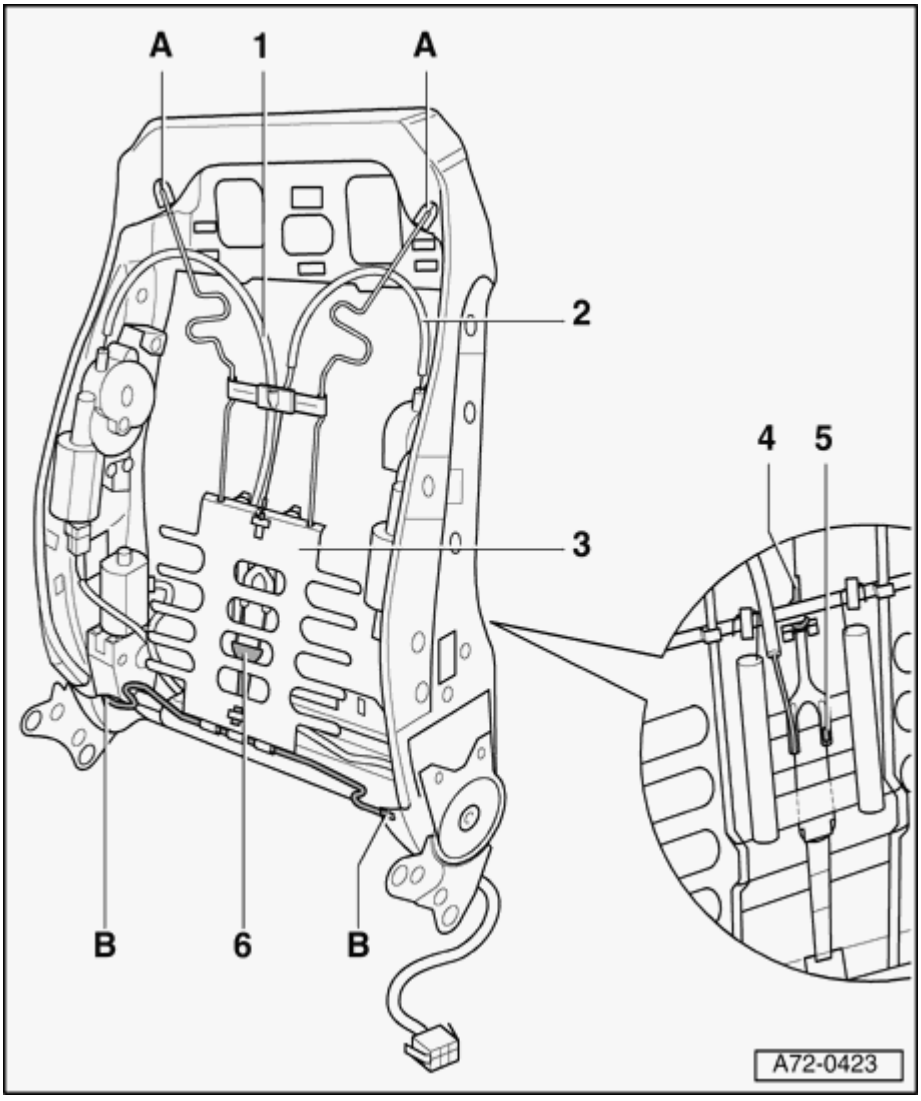


Fig. 527: Four-Way Lumbar Support Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Four-way lumbar support height adjuster release

2 - Four-way lumbar support release

3 - four-way lumbar support

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest frame --> **Backrest frame, removing and installing**.

- Disengage release for four-way lumbar adjustment - **2** - at hook - **4** -.
- Disengage four-way lumbar support height adjustment release - **1** - at retaining pin - **5** - and at idler pulley - **6** -.
- Disengage bottom of four-way lumbar support - **3** - at - **B** - positions (Qty. 2).
- Disengage four-way lumbar support - **3** - above at - **A** - positions (Qty. 2).

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

4 - Hook

5 - Retaining pins

6 - Idler pulley

Four-way lumbar support motors, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

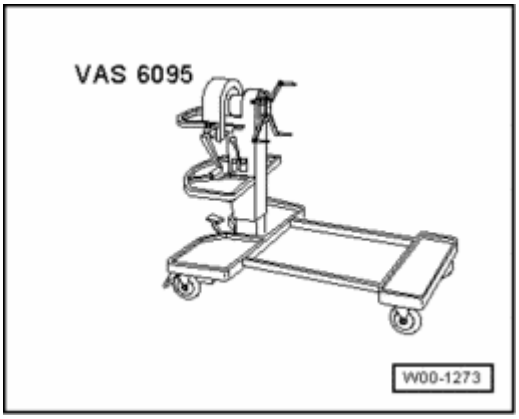


Fig. 528: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

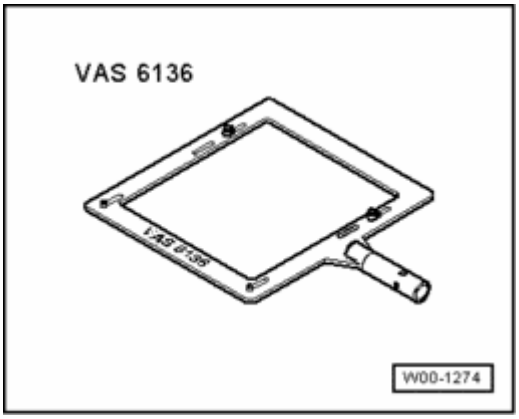


Fig. 529: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

NOTE:

- **On the drivers seat shown in the illustration, the four-way lumbar support height adjustment motor is on the left side and the four-way lumbar support motor is on the right side.**

cardiagn.com

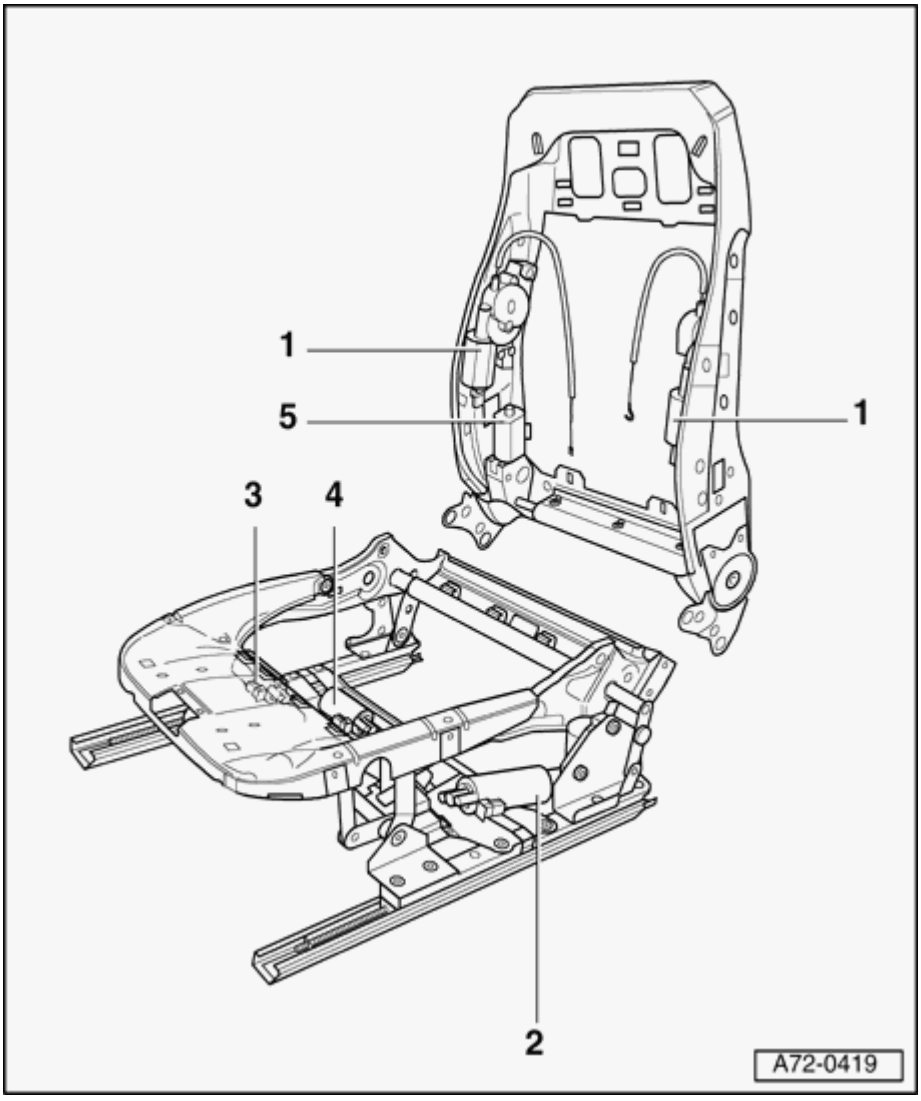


Fig. 530: Longitudinal Seat Adjustment Motor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Four-way lumber support motors (Qty. 2)

- Removal:

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.

- Disconnect connector.
- Remove bolts or rivets.
- Disengage release at four-way lumbar support.

cardiagn.com

- Replace motor.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

3 - Seat angle adjustment motor

4 - Longitudinal seat adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor

Headrest with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing

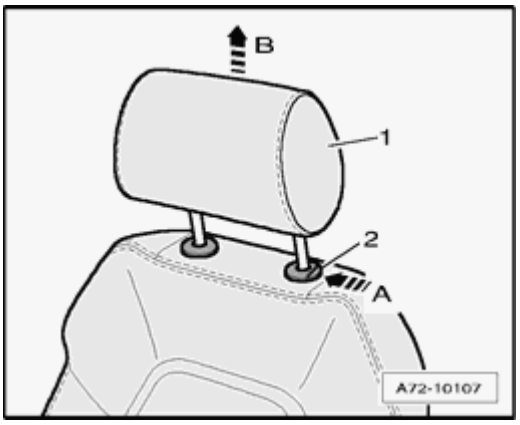


Fig. 531: Pushing Release Button In And Pulling Headrest Upward As Far As Possible
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Push release button - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and pull headrest - **1** - upward as far as possible - **arrow B** - , keep release button pushed while doing so.

cardiagn.com

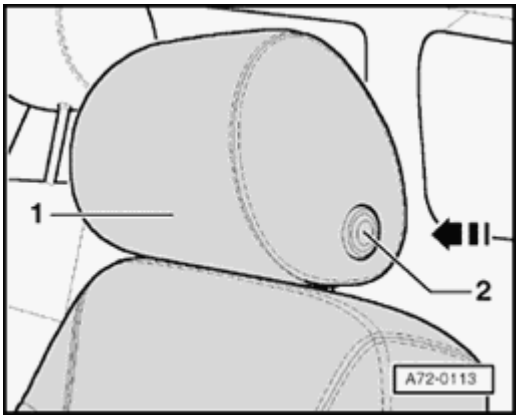


Fig. 532: Pressing Release Button On Headrest Until Stop
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press release button - **2** - on headrest - **1** - until stop - **arrow** -.
- Slide headrest down completely on rods, release button on headrest must be kept pressed while doing so.
- Remove headrest completely from headrest guides.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Footwell light, removing and installing

Removing

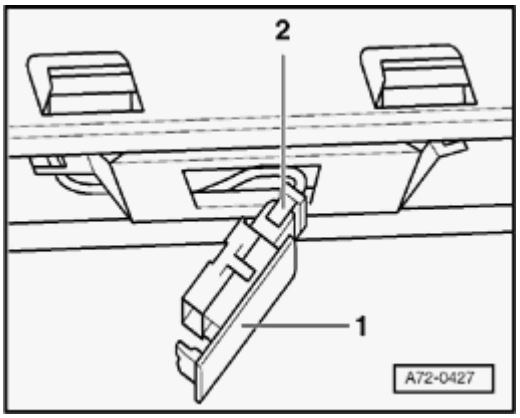


Fig. 533: Identifying Rear Footwell Light & Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press out rear footwell light - **1** - from rear.
- Remove connector - **2** -.

Installing

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

Spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

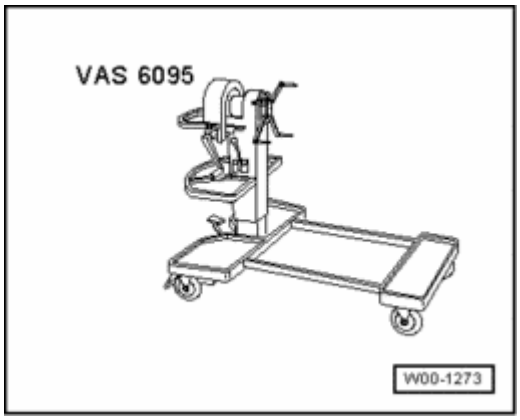


Fig. 534: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

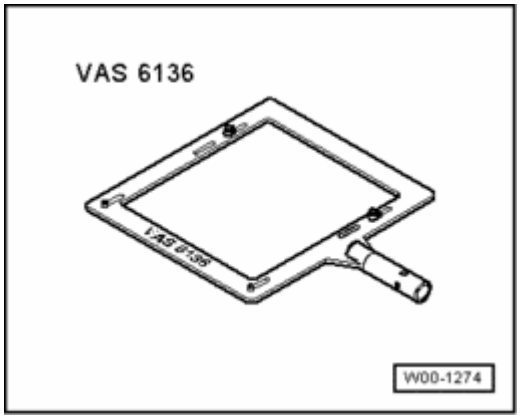


Fig. 535: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

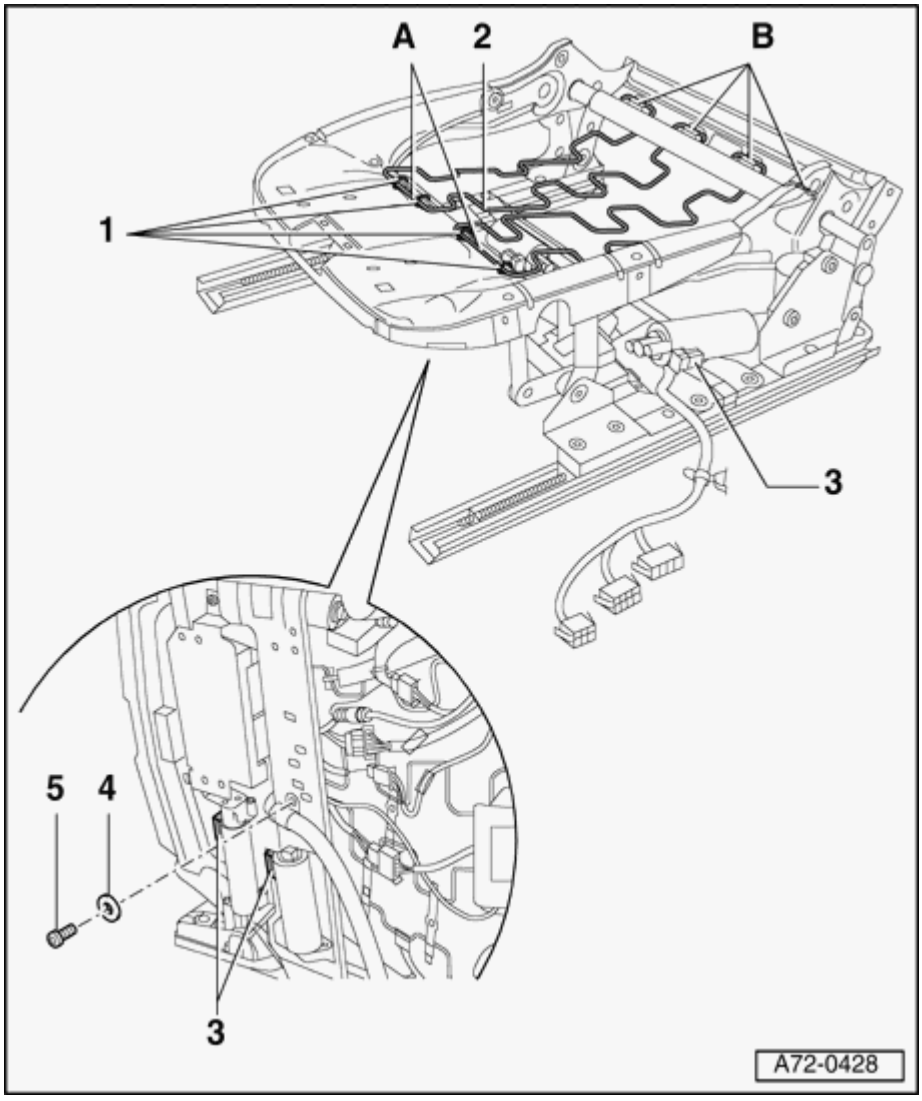


Fig. 536: Spring Mat With Wiring Harness In Seat Pan Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable ties (4x)

2 - Spring mat with wiring harness

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.
- Remove cable ties - **1** - (4x).
- Disengage spring mat - **2** - at - **A** - positions (2x).
- Disengage spring mat - **2** - at - **B** - positions (4x).
- Tip seat to side.
- Disconnect connectors - **3** - (3x).
- Remove screw - **5** -.
- Remove spring mat with wiring harness - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Connector (3x)

4 - Washer

5 - Screw

Seat wiring harness location

cardiagn.com

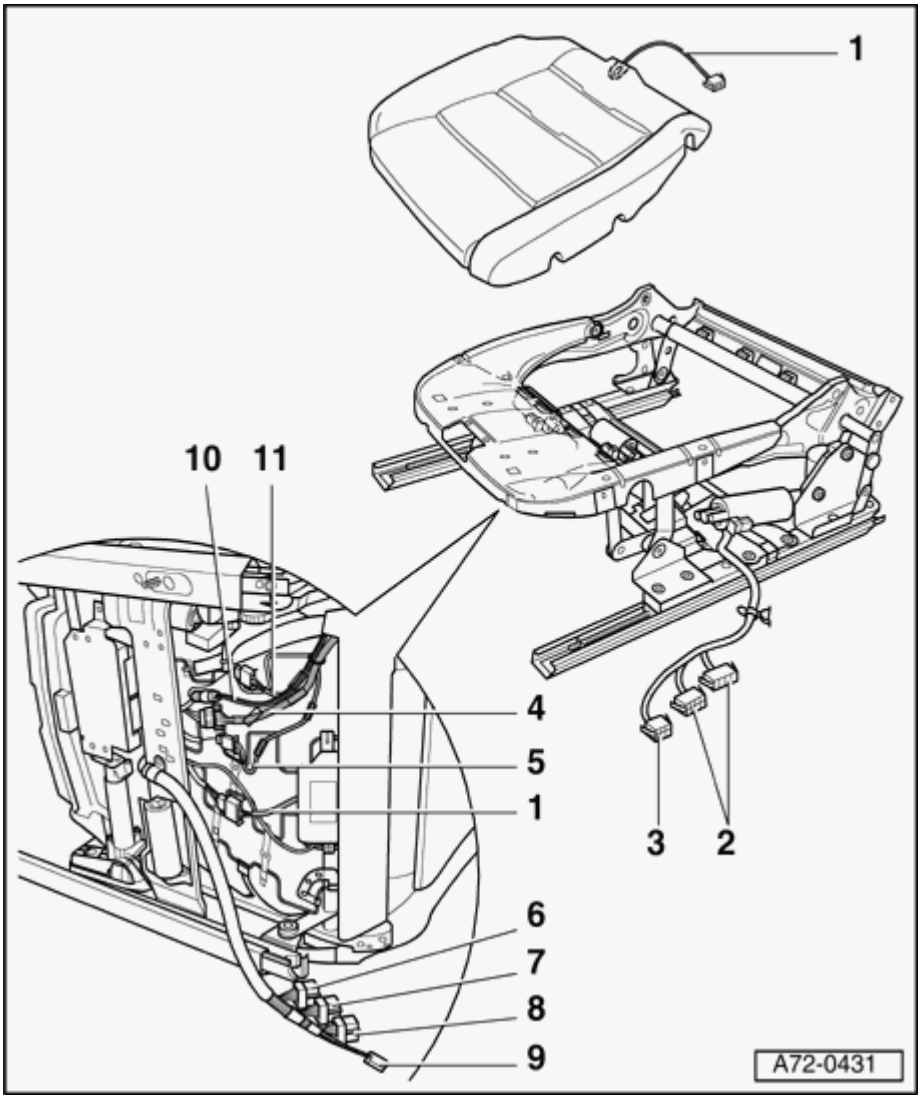


Fig. 537: Seat Wiring Harness Location
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat heating wiring harness

2 - Seat adjustment connector (2x)

3 - Four-way lumbar support connector

4 - Electric four-way lumbar support wiring harness, tunnel side

5 - Backrest heating wiring harness

6 - Belt buckle sensor connector (black)

7 - Seat heating connector (green)

cardiagn.com

8 - Current supply connector (red)

9 - Airbag connector (yellow)

10 - Airbag wiring harness

11 - Electrical four-way lumbar support wiring harness for 4-pin side airbag

Backrest wiring assignment

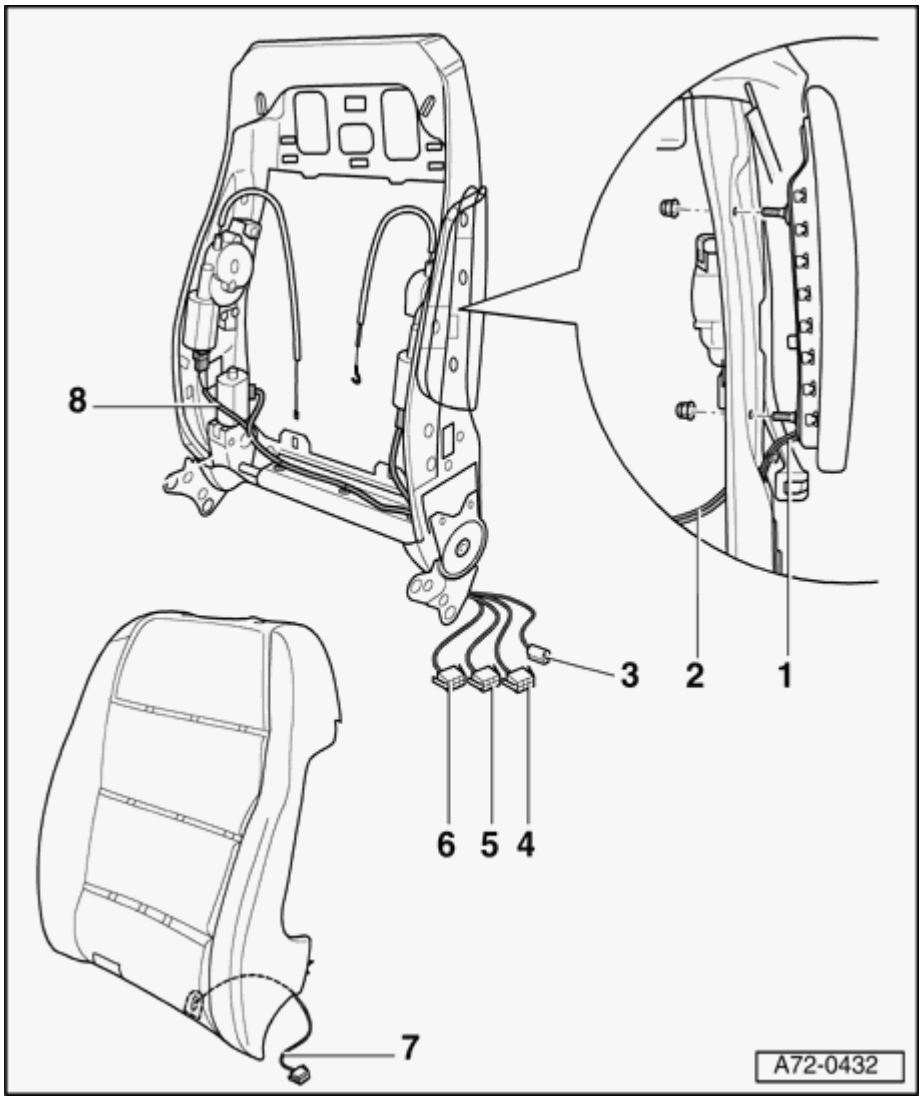


Fig. 538: Backrest Wiring Assignment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Airbag wiring harness

2 - Electrical four-way lumbar support wiring harness for 4-pin side airbag

cardiagn.com

3 - Airbag connector

4 - Electrical four-way lumbar support connector for 4-pin side airbag

5 - Electrical four-way lumbar support connector

6 - Backrest heater connector

7 - Backrest heating wiring harness

8 - Electric four-way lumbar support wiring harness, tunnel side

Wiring harness for backrest, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

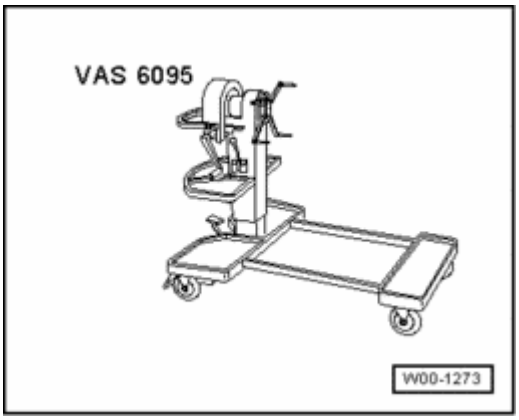


Fig. 539: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

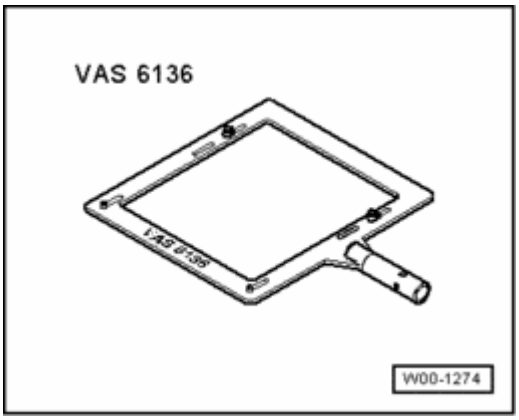


Fig. 540: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

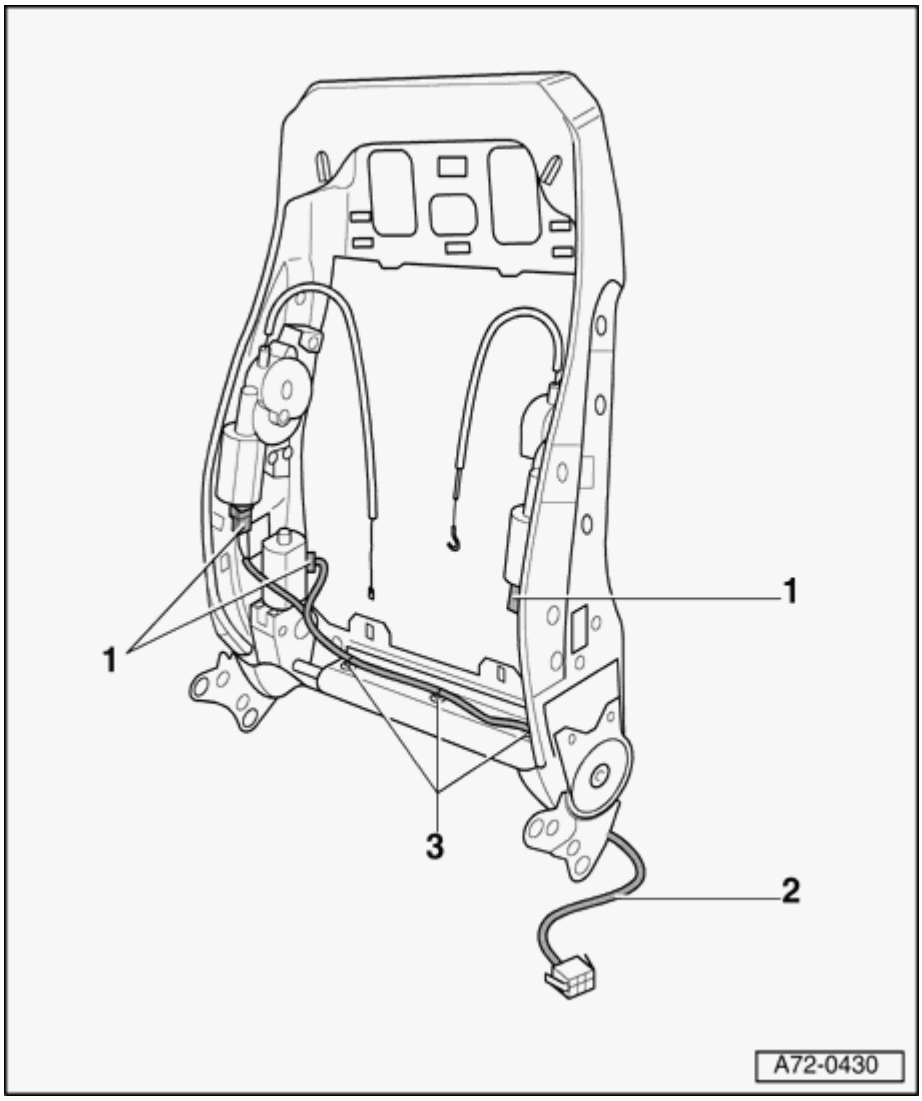


Fig. 541: Wiring Harness For Backrest Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Connector (3x)

2 - Cable harness

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
- Remove cover and padding from backrest --> **Cover and cushion for backrest, removing and installing (sport seat, standard seat)**.

- Remove cable ties - **3** - (3x).
- Remove connectors - **1** - (3x).
- Remove wiring harness - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Cable ties (3x)

FRONT SEATS (POWER SEAT WITH MEMORY) - VEHICLES FROM 11.04

Front seats (power seat with memory) - vehicles from 11.04

NOTE:

- **From 08.05, the usual wiring harness routing to connector station under front seat --> Disconnecting connections has been replaced with modular wiring routing --> Modular wiring routing, vehicles from 08.05, assembly overview.**
- **The modular wiring routing has not been implemented for all countries.**

Front power seats with memory, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

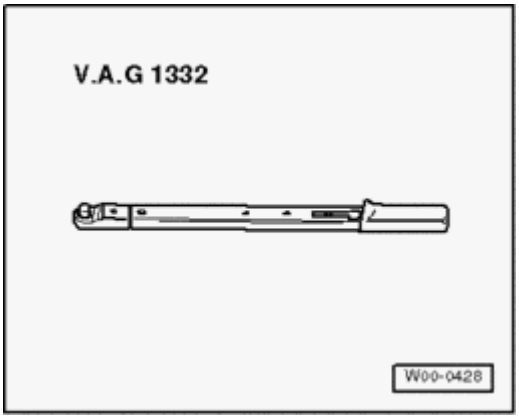


Fig. 542: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1332
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1332

NOTE:

- **Before disconnecting battery: Obtain coding of radio.**

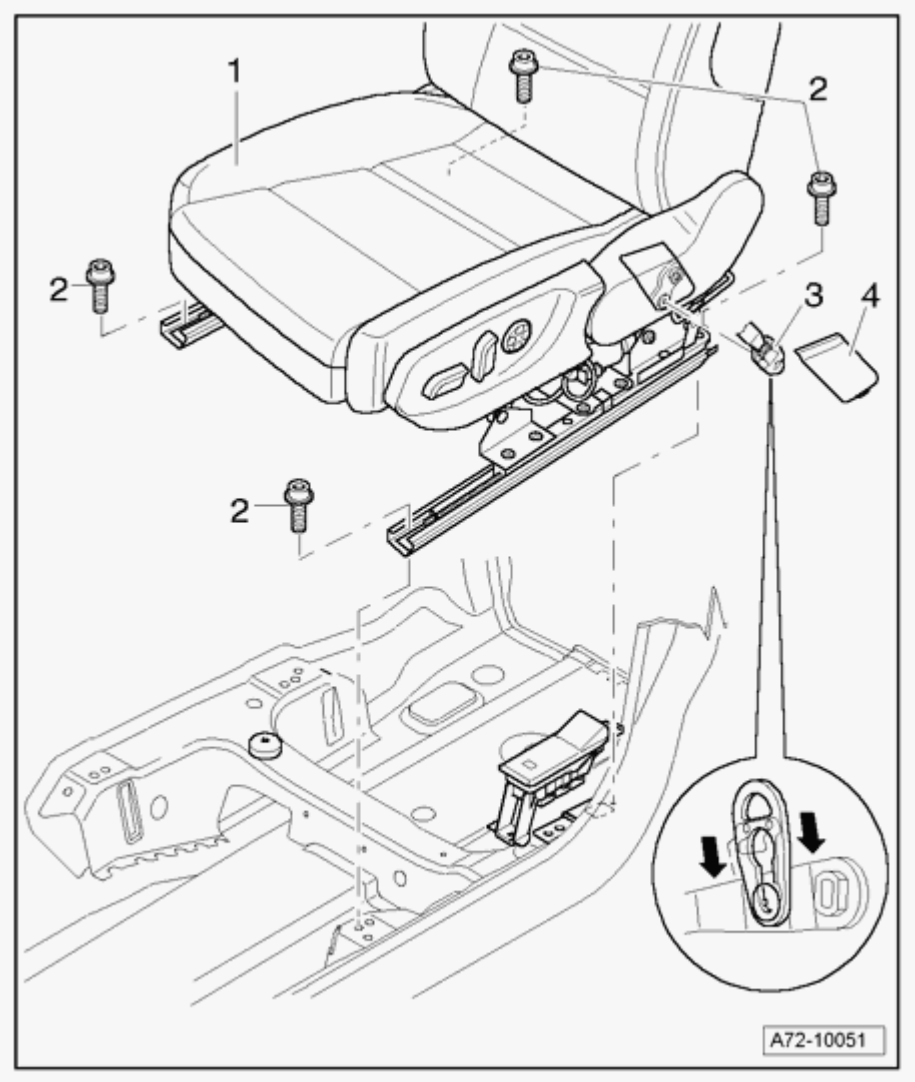


Fig. 543: Front Power Seats With Memory Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

- Removal

  - Push front seat - **1** - fully upward and to the rear.
  - Pull assembly cover - **4** - up and remove.
  - Pull seat belt anchor - **3** - down in direction of arrow and remove.
  - Remove front bolts - **2** - (2x).

cardiagn.com

- Move seat forward.
- Remove rear bolts - **2** - (2x).
- Disconnect battery ground wire -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

CAUTION: Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.

- Tip front seat - **1** - back.
- Disconnect harness connectors --> **Disconnecting connections**.
- Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.
- With help from a second mechanic, lift front seat - **1** - out of vehicle.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Remove Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 only after installing front seat --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.

NOTE:

- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Connect connector to couplings on connector station location in floor --> **Disconnecting connections**.
- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->

cardiagn.com

- **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
- **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

2 - Screw

- 50 Nm
- Qty. 4

3 - Seat belt anchor

4 - Assembly cover

Front seat with malfunctioning control module or malfunctioning motor for seat fore-aft adjustment, removing

NOTE:

- **If possible: Tilt seat up.**
- **Before disconnecting battery: Obtain coding of radio.**
- **Seat is shown without upholstery and without backrest in picture for the sake of a better illustration.**

CAUTION: Loosen bolts - 6 - only after checking electrical or electronic components and wires.

After loosening bolts - 6 - , lower part of seat pan - 7 - including Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288 must be replaced with transverse member - 9 -.

cardiagn.com

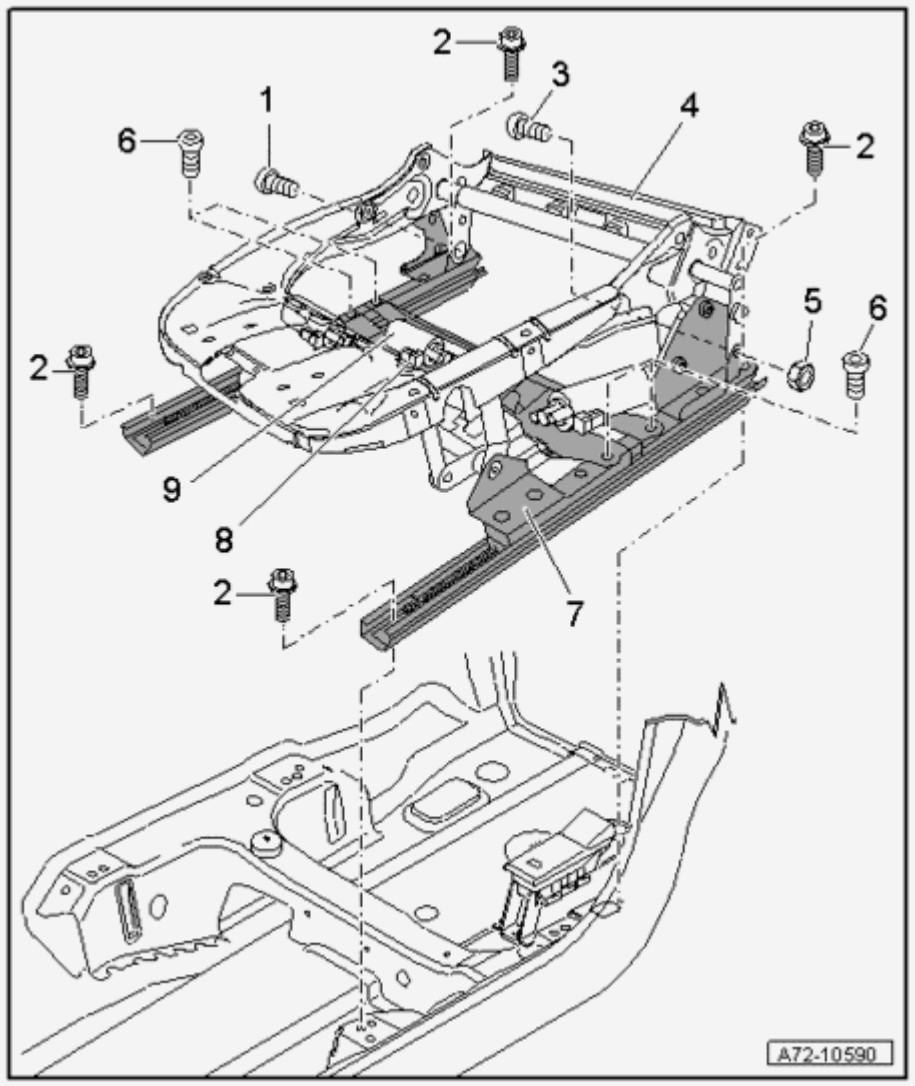


Fig. 544: Front Seat With Malfunctioning Control Module Or Malfunctioning Motor For Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment, Removing Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Screw

- Tightening torque --> **Seat pan, assembly overview**
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

2 - Screw

- Tightening torque --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**
- Qty. 4

3 - Screw

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque --> **Seat pan, assembly overview**

4 - Seat pan upper frame

- Removal

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

- Remove screw - **1** -.
- Remove nut - **5** - and bolt - **3** -.
- Fold seat fully toward front. If necessary: Remove steering wheel --> **Steering wheel, removing and installing (standard steering wheel)**.

CAUTION: Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.

NOTE:

- **Check electrical and electronic components and wires before removing seat further to avoid unnecessary repair costs.**

- Perform the following tests:

- Check fuse --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations
- Check voltage at connector station, perform fault-finding if necessary --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations
- Check voltage to control module --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations
- Check voltage to Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288 --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations

- If fuse is faulty: replace fuse --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations.
- If voltage to connector station is low: repair or replace wire --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations.
- If control module is defective: Replace control module --> **Control module, removing and installing**.
- If Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288 is faulty: replace lower frame of seat pan - **7** - --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**.

Further removal only if Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288 is faulty

- Disconnect battery ground wire -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**

cardiagn.com

- **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

- Remove bolts - **6** - (Qty. 4).

CAUTION: Before removing seat: Disconnect battery ground (GND) strap -->

- **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
- **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

.

- Disconnect connector - **8** -.
- Tip front seat back.
- Move seat until bolts - **2** - (Qty. 4) are visible.
- Remove bolts - **2** - (Qty. 4).

- Disconnect harness connectors --> **Disconnecting connections**.
- Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.
- With help from a second technician, lift front seat out of vehicle.
- Disconnect seat pan lower frame - **7** - and upper frame - **4** - --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**.

- Replace seat pan lower frame - **7** - with Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288 with the transverse member - **9** - --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**.

5 - Nut

- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

6 - Screw

- Qty. 4
- For transverse member to seat pan lower frame

7 - Lower seat pan frame

- Replace --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**

8 - Connector

9 - Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288 with transverse member

cardiagn.com

- **Installing**

  - Install front seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.

Disconnecting connections

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

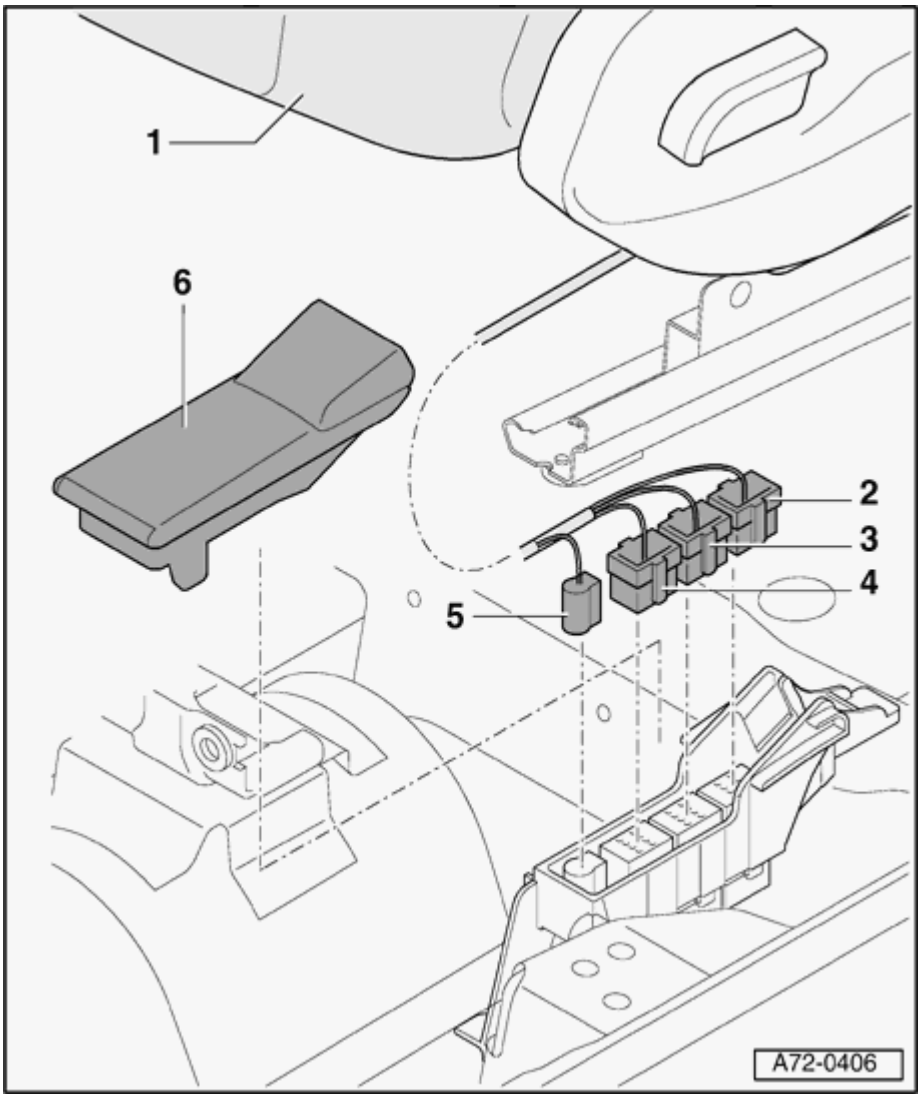


Fig. 545: Disconnecting Connections
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Front seat

2 - Belt buckle sensor connector (black)

3 - Seat heating connector (green)

4 - Current supply connector (red)

5 - Airbag connector (yellow)

6 - Panel or cover

- For connector station
- Removal

  - Tip front seat - **1** - back.

Vehicles without modular wiring routing through 08.05

  - Remove coupling station cover - **6** - upward.

Vehicles with modular wiring routing from 08.05

  - Remove connector station cover --> **Modular wiring routing with corrugated tubing on front seat**.

Procedure for all vehicles

  - Press in tab on airbag connector - **5** - on tunnel side and disconnect airbag connector - **5** -.
  - Press in tab on connector for voltage supply - **4** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for voltage supply - **4** -.
  - Press in tab on airbag connector for heated seat - **3** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for heated seat - **3** -.
  - For vehicles with seatbelt fasten sensor: Press in tab on connector for seatbelt fasten sensor - **2** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for seatbelt fasten sensor - **2** -.

  - Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

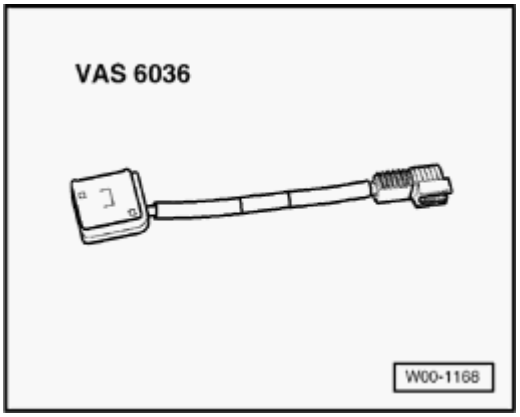


Fig. 546: Airbag Adapter VAS 6036
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Airbag adapter VAS 6036

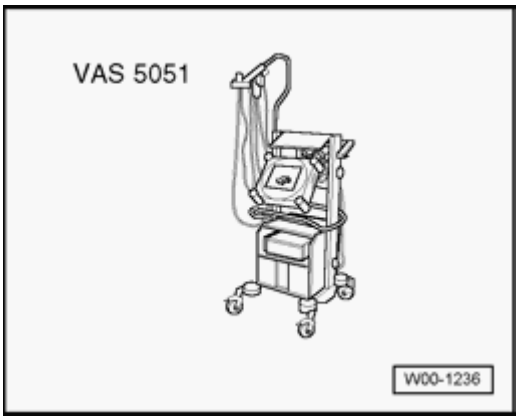


Fig. 547: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

CAUTION: Technician must be grounded before disconnecting ignition and ground wiring, touching door striker or body.

CAUTION: The Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 must stay connected to seat until seat is installed again.

cardiagn.com

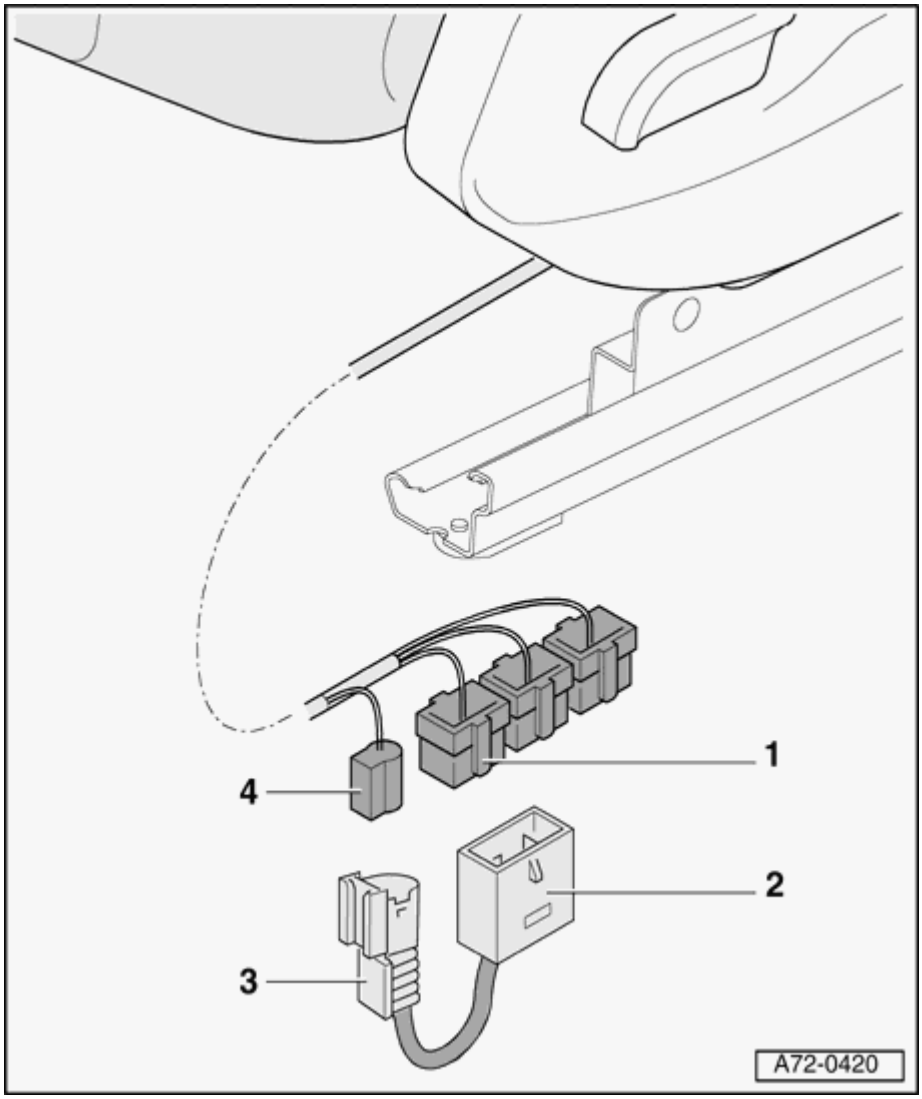


Fig. 548: Airbag Adapter VAS 6036, Connecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Power supply connector, seat side (red)

2 - Power supply connector, adapter side (red)

3 - Side airbag connector, adapter side (yellow)

- Disconnect ignition and ground wiring.
- Connect airbag connector - **4** - to airbag adapter connector - **3** -.

4 - Side airbag connector, seat side (yellow)

Side airbag connector, disconnecting

cardiagn.com

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

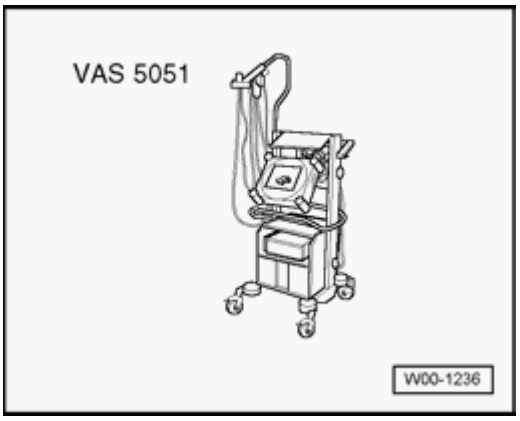


Fig. 549: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

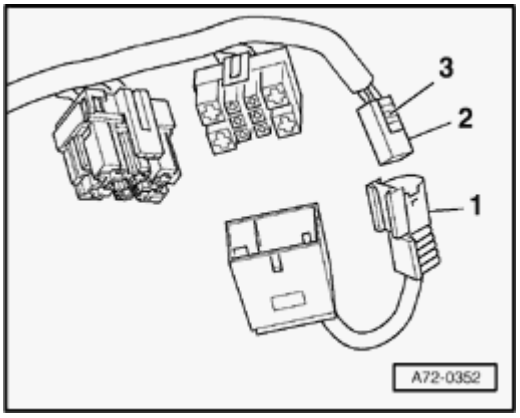


Fig. 550: Side Airbag Connector, Disconnecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press catch - **3** - of airbag connector - **2** - out of airbag adapter connector - **1** - and disconnect airbag connector - **2** -.
- Follow measures after connecting battery -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

NOTE:

- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

cardiagn.com

Connector assignment for coupling station

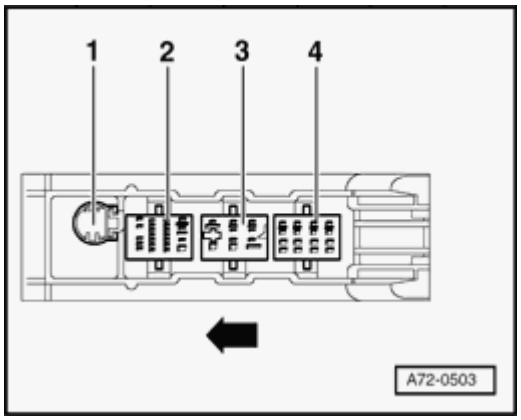


Fig. 551: Connector Assignment For Coupling Station
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

NOTE:

- **The - arrow - points to the direction of travel.**

1. Side airbag
2. Power supply
3. Seat heating
4. Seatbelt fasten sensor

Modular wiring routing, vehicles from 08.05, assembly overview

NOTE:

- **Modular wiring routing has not been implemented on vehicles for all countries.**
- **Check version of front seat and of vehicle and perform repairs accordingly.**

Modular wiring routing, assembly overview --> **Modular wiring routing, vehicles from 08.05, assembly overview**

Modular wiring routing with corrugated tubing on front seat

The procedure steps and notes about removing and installing the corrugated tubing and wiring are given in the following description.

Modular wiring routing with corrugated tubing on front seat --> **Modular wiring routing with corrugated tubing on front seat**

Seat rail covers, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

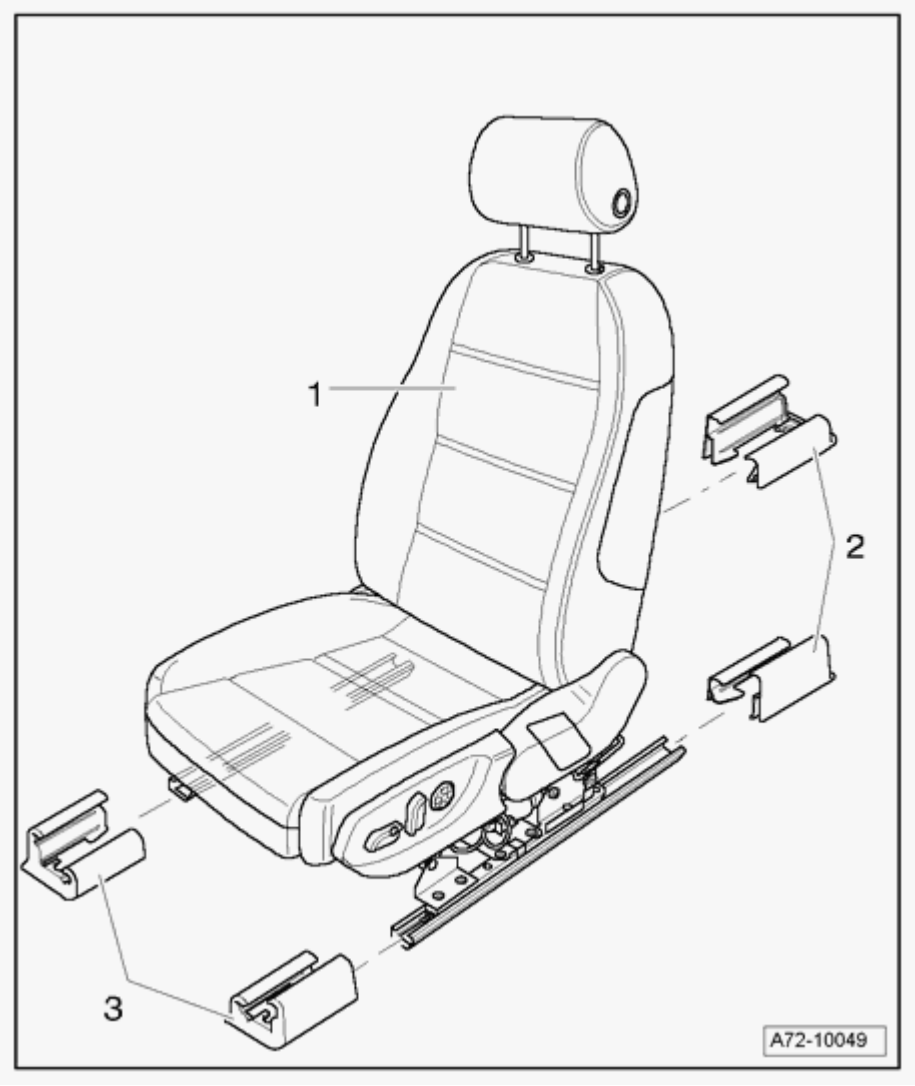


Fig. 552: Seat Rail Covers Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Rear seat rail covers (2x)

- Removal

  - Drive front seat - **1** - to center position.
  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Pry out seat rail cover - **2** - from beneath or - **3** - on the inside.
  - Pry out seat rail cover on the outside.

  - Pull off seat rail cover - **2** - or - **3** - as straight as possible.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Front seat rail covers (2x)

Front backrest, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

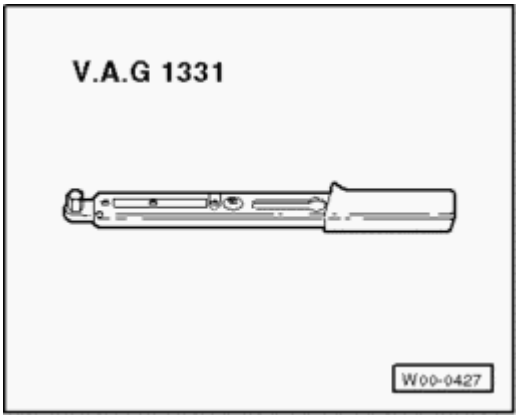


Fig. 553: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

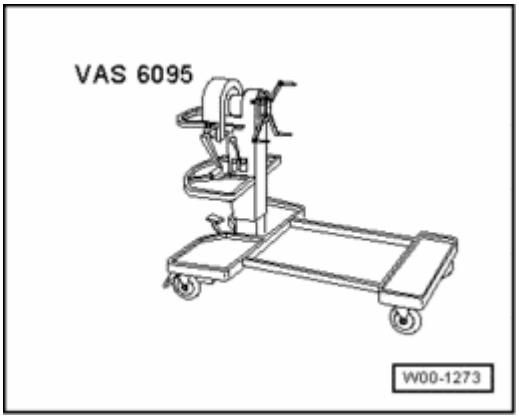


Fig. 554: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

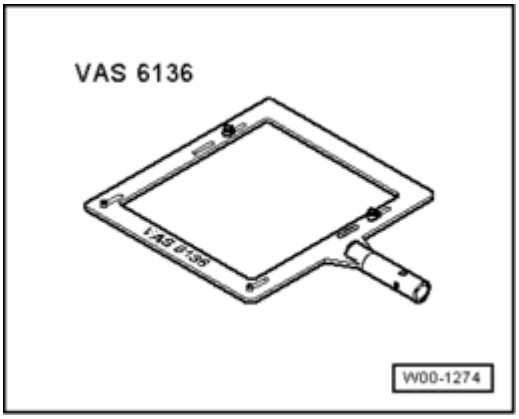
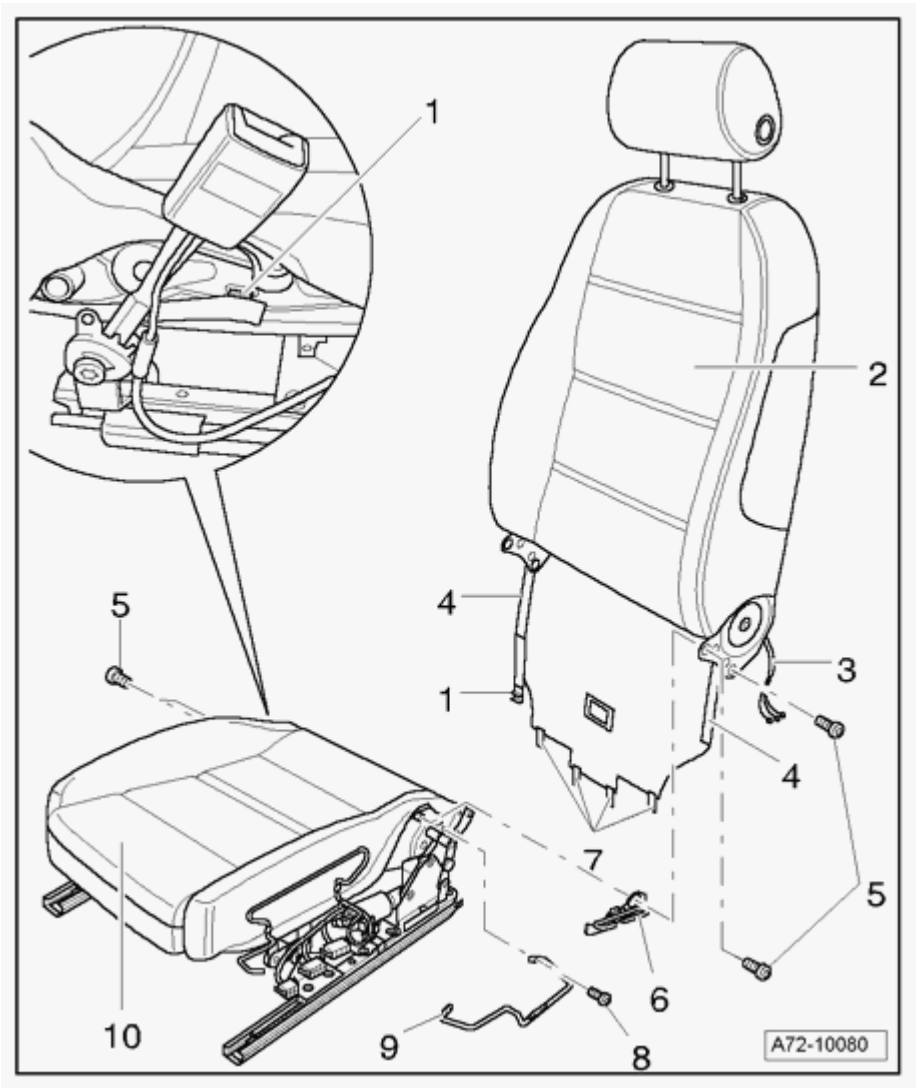


Fig. 555: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136



cardiagn.com

Fig. 556: Removing Front backrest
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Fastening strip

2 - Backrest

- Removal

CAUTION:
- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing**.
- Disengage retaining strip - **1** - from seat pan - **10** -.

Vehicles without modular wiring routing through 08.05

- Disconnect connectors and disconnect cables from spring mat --> **Spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan, removing and installing**.

Vehicles with modular wiring routing from 07.06

Vehicles with modular wiring routing have a continuous wire from side airbag to connector station.

- Disconnect side airbag connector at connector station --> **Disconnecting connections**.
- Remove corrugated tubing --> **Modular wiring routing with corrugated tubing on front seat**

Procedure for all vehicles

- Remove screw - **8** -.
- Turn bracket - **9** - upward.
- Remove screws - **5** - (4x).
- Tip backrest - **1** - forward on seat.
- Push cushion aside and carefully disconnect wiring harness - **3** - from seat pan - **10** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove backrest - **2** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

- Cut threads in backrest frame before installing screws - **5** - (4x).
- Always replace bolts - **5** - (4x).
- Secure tabs - **7** - on footwell cover to spring mat of seat pan.
- For seats with seat memory: Perform a basic setting for backrest or seat after installing seat in vehicle.

3 - Cable harness

4 - Fastening strip

- Qty. 2

5 - Screw, self-locking

- 20 Nm
- Replace
- Qty. 4
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

6 - Support

7 - Tab

- Qty. 4

8 - Screw

9 - Support

10 - Seat pan

cardiagn.com

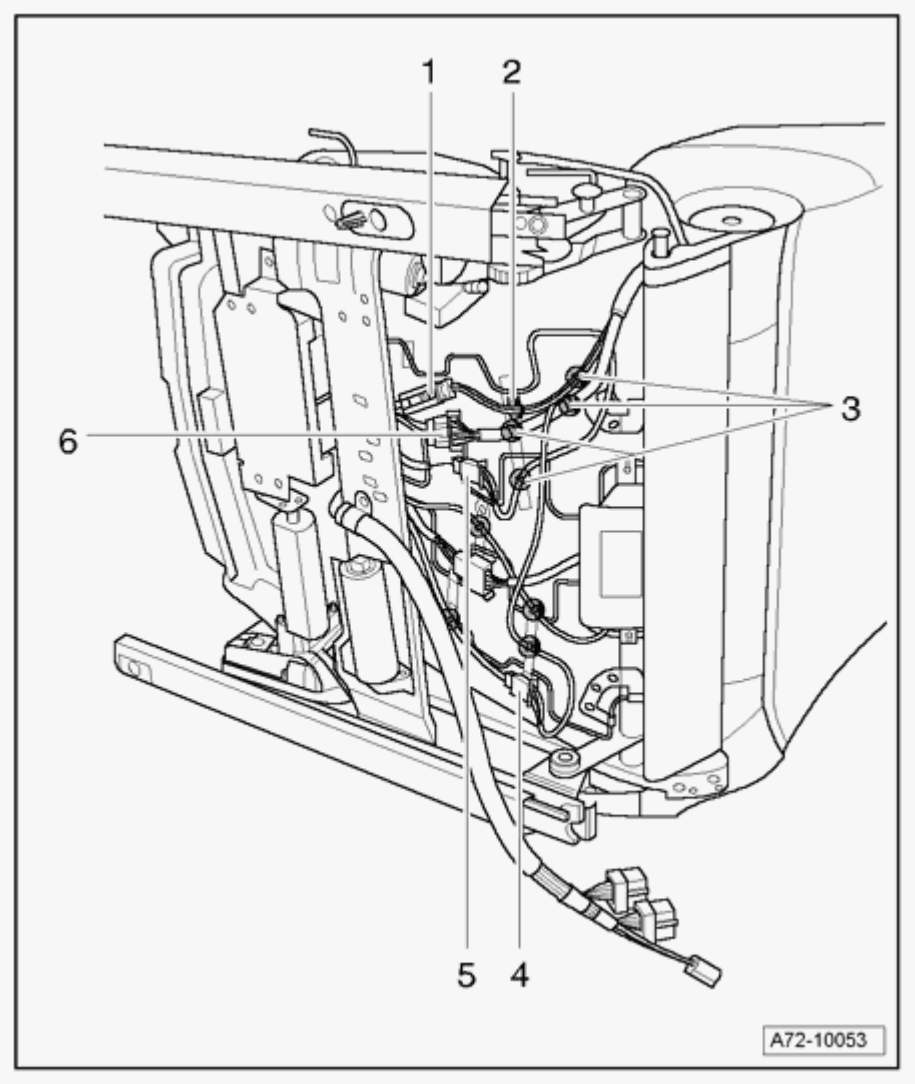


Fig. 557: Installing Front backrest
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Side airbag connector

- Only on vehicles without modular wiring routing through 08.05

  - Press in catches on connectors - **4** - , - **5** - and - **6** - on left and right and disconnect connectors.
  - Disconnect harness connector of side airbag - **1** - **Side airbag connector, vehicles without modular wiring routing through 08.05, disconnecting**.
  - Disconnect clip - **2** -.
  - Loosen wires at cable tie clips - **3** -.

2 - Clip

3 - Cable tie clips

cardiagn.com

4 - Harness connector of side airbag Ground (GND)

5 - Backrest heater connector

6 - Four-way lumbar support connector

Side airbag connector, vehicles without modular wiring routing through 08.05, disconnecting

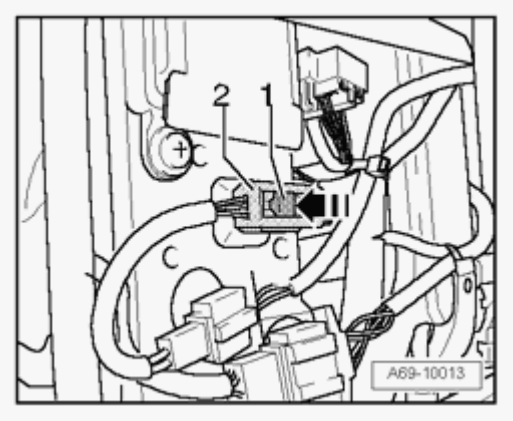


Fig. 558: Pressing Catch And Disconnecting Connector For Side Airbag
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press catch - **1** - in - **direction of arrow** - and disconnect connector for side airbag - **2** -.

Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

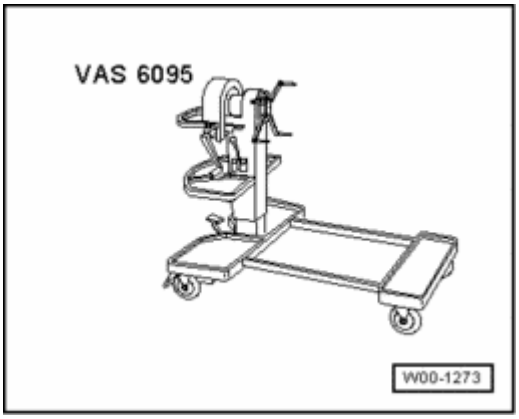


Fig. 559: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

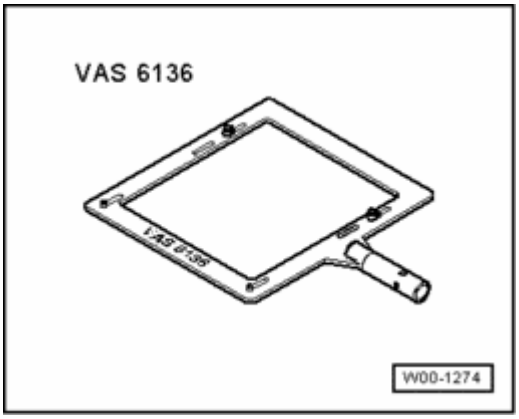
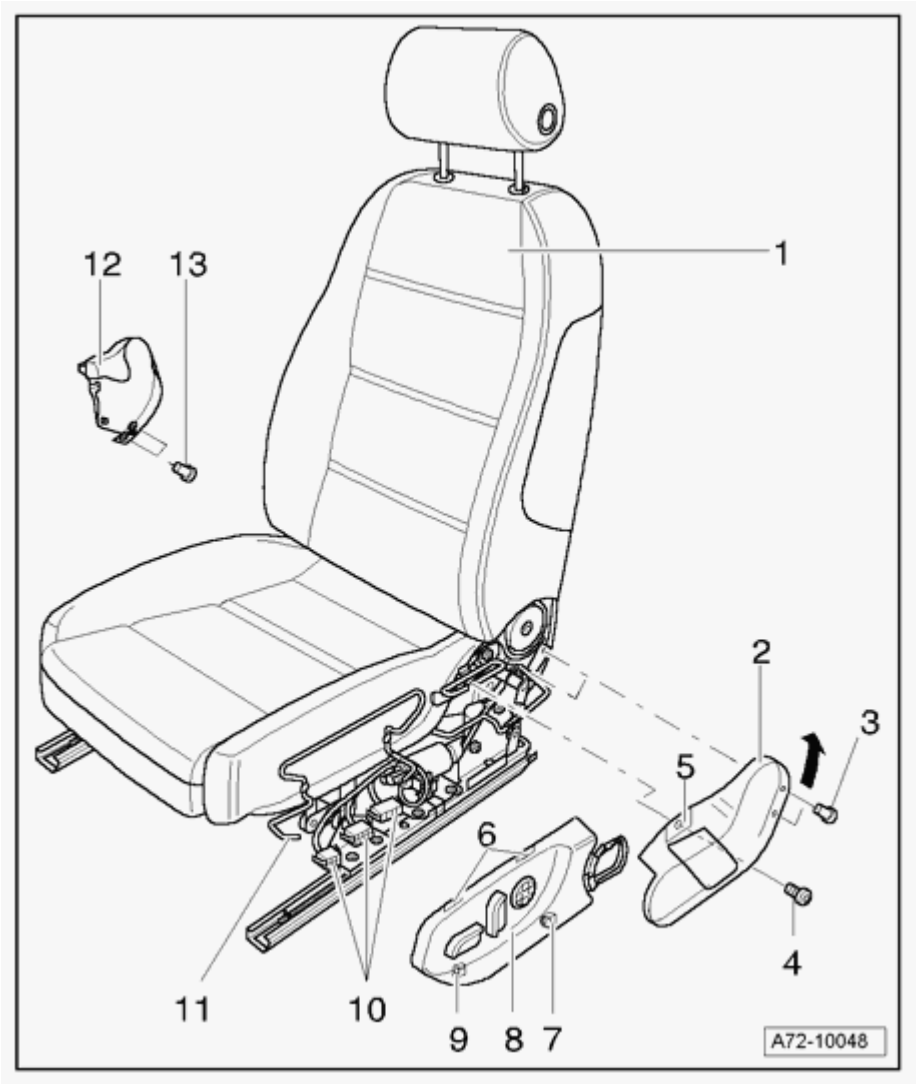


Fig. 560: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136



cardiagn.com

Fig. 561: Side Panels On Door Sill Side Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

2 - Rear side trim (sill side)

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Loosen footwell cover retaining strip from side panel **Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening**.

  - Position a screwdriver to head of plastic rivet - **3** - (2x).
  - Pry out plastic rivet - **3** - (2x) by turning the screwdriver.
  - Remove screw - **4** -.
  - Disengage rear side panel - **2** - at bracket - **5** - upward.

  - Disconnect rear side panel - **2** - from front side panel - **8** - using a turning motion in direction of arrow.
  - Pull side panel - **8** - toward front in order to disengage eyelet - **7** - from bracket - **11** -.
  - Disengage front side panel - **8** - upward at brackets - **6** - (2x).
  - Open locking mechanism - **9** -.

  - Disconnect connectors - **10** - (3x).
  - Remove front side panel - **8** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

  - Slide footwell fastening strip into side trim bracket **Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening**

3 - Plastic rivets

- Qty. 2

4 - Screw

- 1 Nm

5 - Bracket

6 - Bracket

cardiagn.com

- Qty. 2

7 - Eye

8 - Front side trim (sill side)

9 - Catch

10 - Connector

- Qty. 3

11 - Support

12 - Side trim (tunnel side)

13 - Plastic rivets

- Qty. 2

Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening

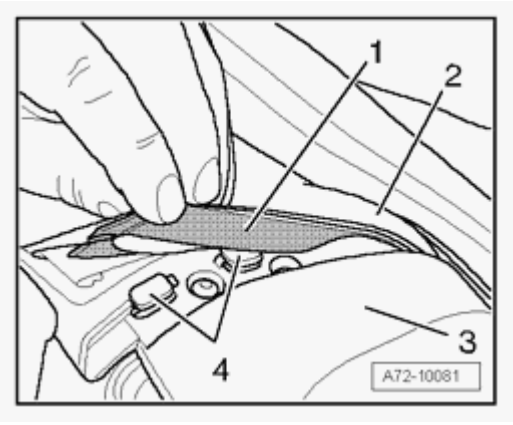


Fig. 562: Disengaging Retaining Strip On Footwell Cover From Brackets Rear Sill Side Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage retaining strip - **1** - on footwell cover - **2** - from brackets - **4** - (2x) on side panel - **3** -.

Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

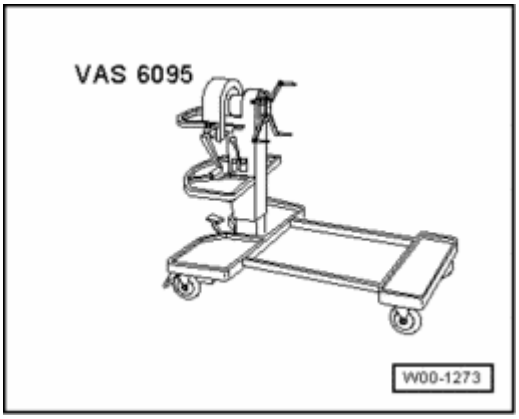


Fig. 563: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

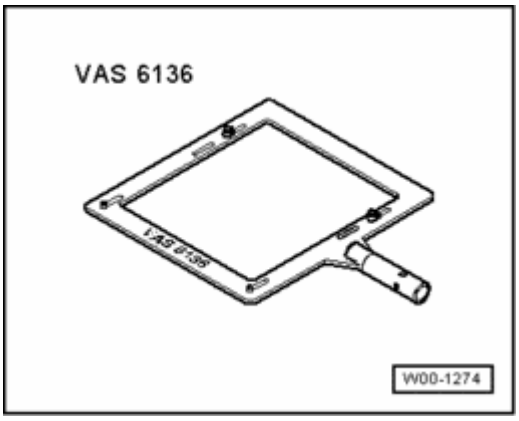


Fig. 564: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

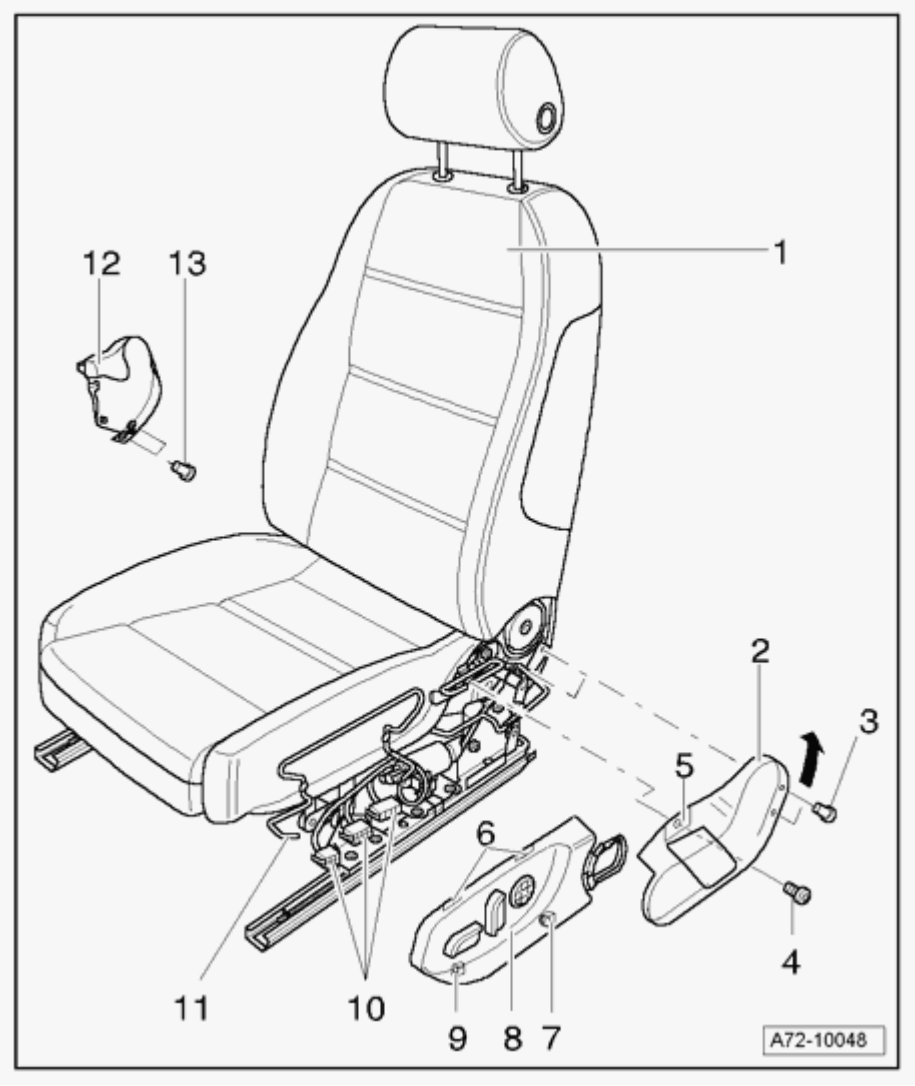


Fig. 565: Tunnel-Side Side Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

2 - Rear side trim (sill side)

3 - Plastic rivets (2x)

4 - Screw

5 - Bracket

6 - Retainers (2x)

7 - Eye

cardiagn.com

8 - Front side trim (sill side)

9 - Catch

10 - Connector (3x)

11 - Support

12 - Side trim (tunnel side)

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Loosen footwell cover retaining strip from side panel **Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening**.
  - Position a screwdriver to head of plastic rivet - **13** - (2x).
  - Pry out plastic rivet - **13** - (2x) by turning the screwdriver.
  - Remove side panel - **12** - upward.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

  - Slide footwell fastening strip into side trim bracket **Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening**.

13 - Plastic rivets (2x)

Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening

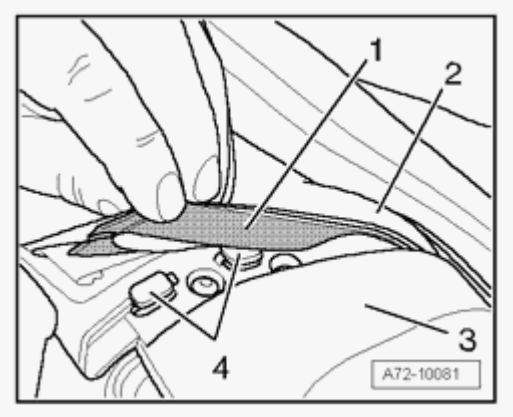


Fig. 566: Disengaging Retaining Strip On Footwell Cover From Brackets Rear Sill Side Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Disengage retaining strip - **1** - on footwell cover - **2** - from brackets - **4** - (2x) on side panel - **3** -.

Backrest, replacing

NOTE:

- **Only the sports seat backrest is offered as a replacement part. For standard seats, adapt a sports seat backrest.**

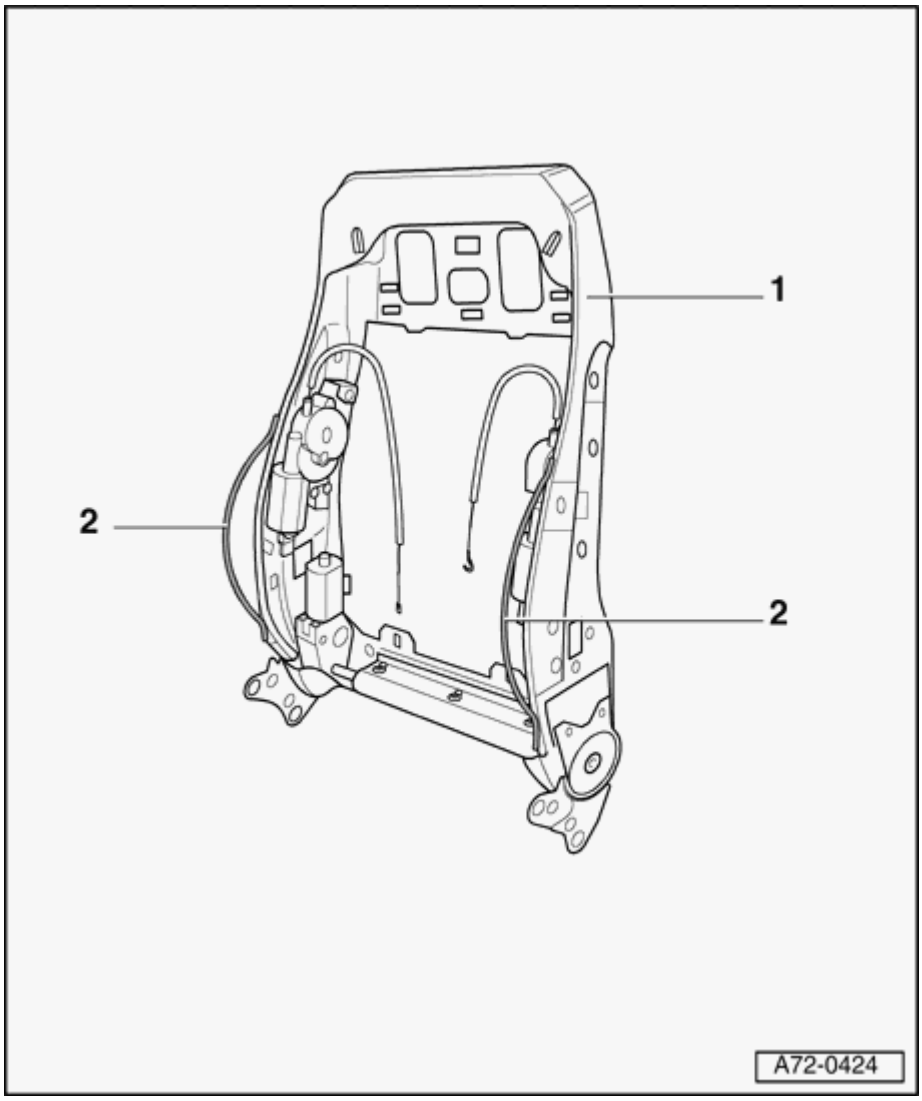


Fig. 567: Backrest, Replacing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Sports seat backrest

- Adaptation

- Remove wire brackets - **2** - (2x) from sport seat backrest - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- The paint construction must be re-established.

2 - Wire bracket (2x)

Seat pan, replacing

NOTE:

- **Only the sport-seat seat pan is available as a replacement part. Retrofit the sport-seat seat pan for the normal seat.**

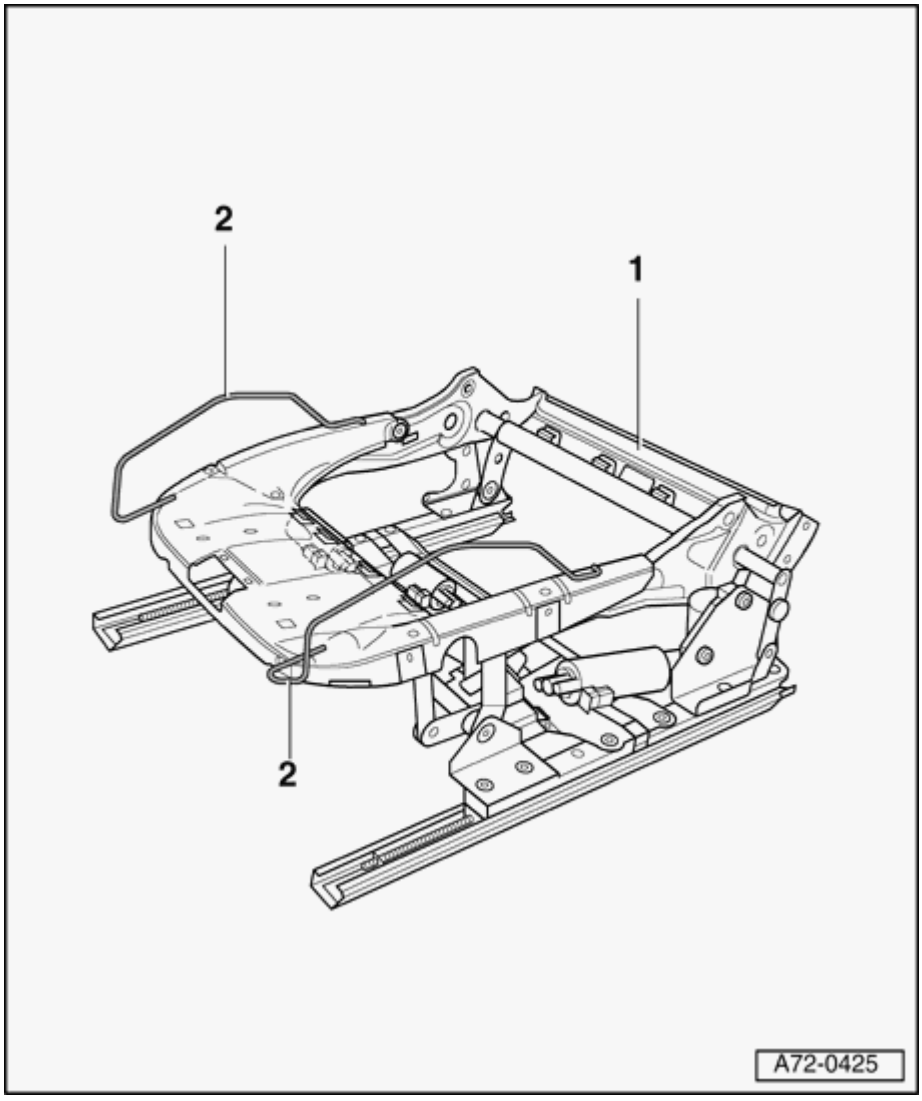


Fig. 568: Seat Pan, Replacing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Sports seat pan

- Adaptation

cardiagn.com

- Remove wire brackets - **2** - (2x) from sport-seat seat pan - **1** -.
- The paint construction must be re-established.

2 - Wire bracket (2x)

Seat adjustment switch, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

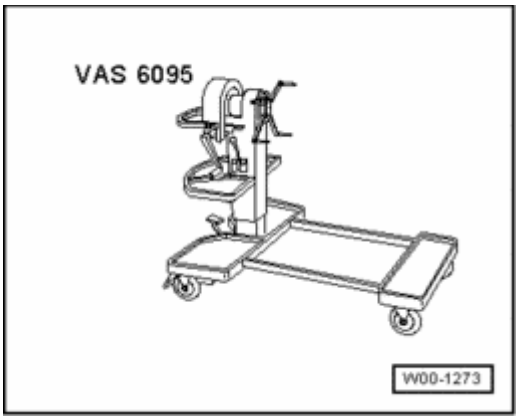


Fig. 569: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

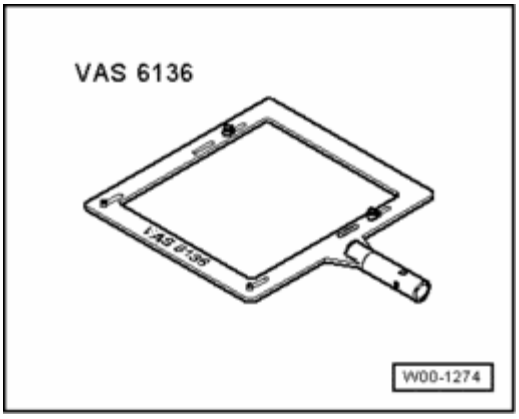


Fig. 570: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136
- Removal

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.

cardiagn.com

- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove seat side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.

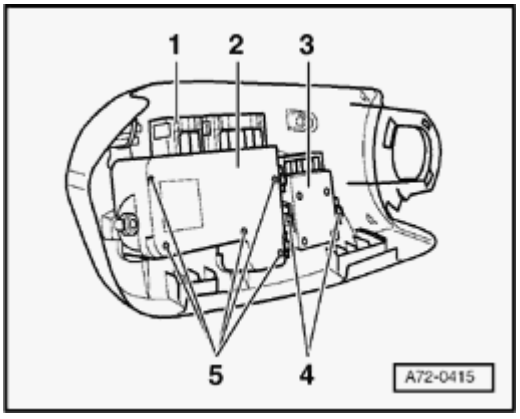


Fig. 571: Seat Adjustment Switch Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **5** - (5x).
- Remove seat adjustment switch - **2** -.
- Remove circuit board with connectors - **1** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

- Tightening torques for bolts - **5** - : 1.5 Nm

Four-way lumbar support switch, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

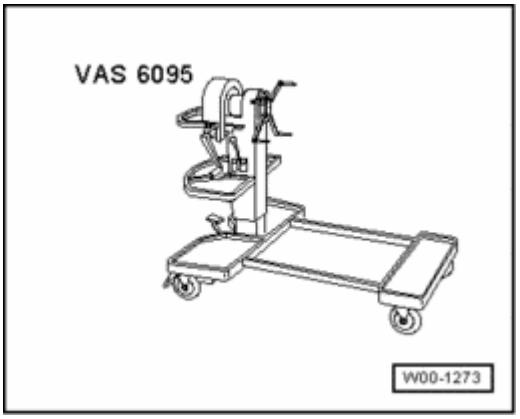


Fig. 572: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

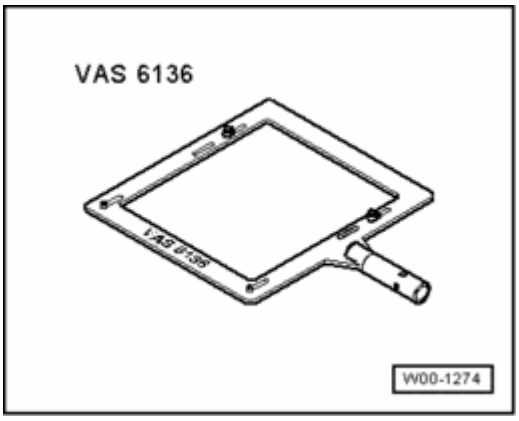


Fig. 573: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

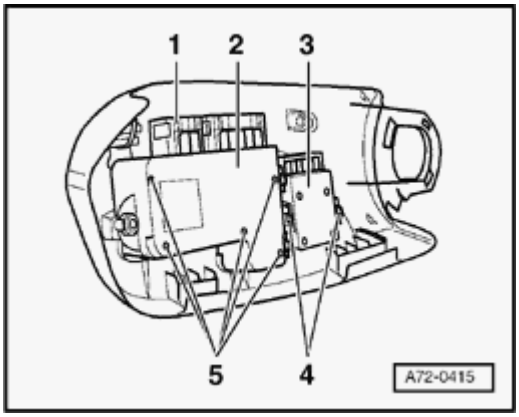


Fig. 574: Four-Way Lumbar Support Switch Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove seat side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.

  - Remove bolts - **4** - (2x).
  - Remove four-way lumbar support switch - **3** -.

- **Installing**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

- Tightening torques for bolts - **4** - : 0.4 Nm

Control Module for memory seat, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **The control module for power seat with memory is located beneath the seat.**
- **With malfunctioning control module, the upper frame of seat pan with backrest must be loosened --> Front seat with malfunctioning control module or malfunctioning motor for seat fore-aft adjustment, removing.**

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

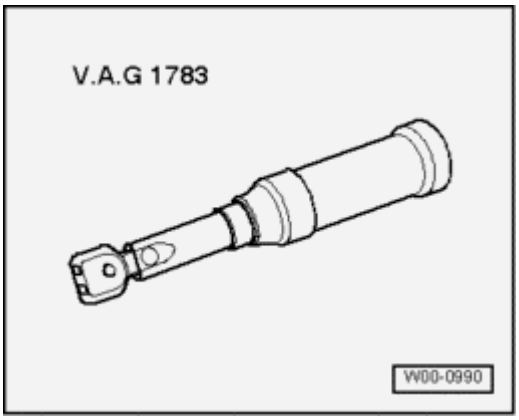


Fig. 575: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G 1783
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1783

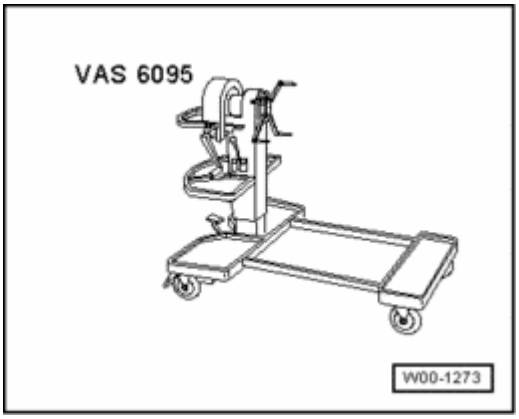


Fig. 576: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

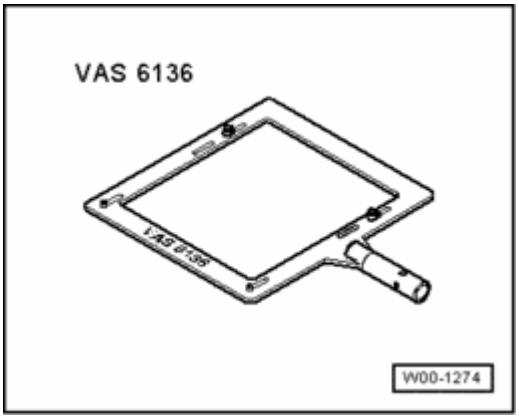


Fig. 577: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

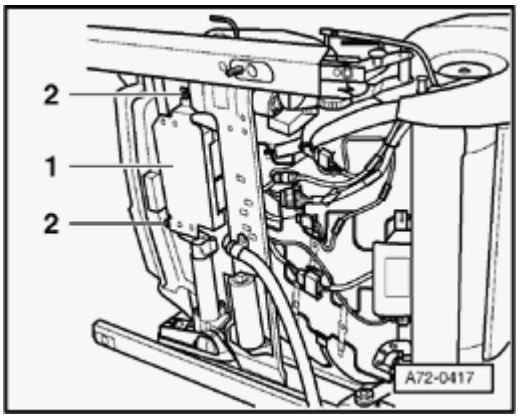


Fig. 578: Identifying Bolts & Control Module
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).

  - Turn control module - **1** - around.

cardiagn.com

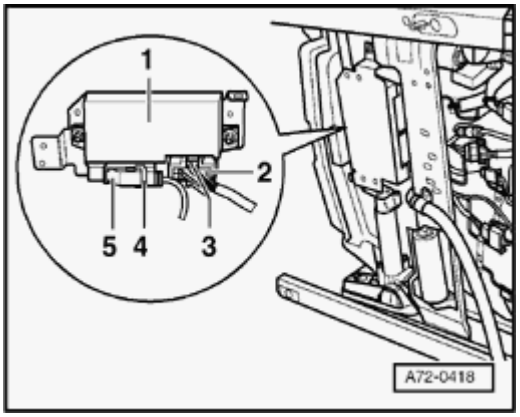


Fig. 579: Identifying Retaining Bracket, Connectors, Catches & Control Module
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage retaining bracket - **4** - and disconnect connector - **5** -.
- Press in catches - **3** - (2x) and disconnect connector - **2** -.
- Remove control module - **1** -.
- Loosen control module from brackets (2x) at nuts (2x) on left and right.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

- Tightening torques for bolts - **2** - : 1.5 Nm

Longitudinal seat adjustment motor, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **With malfunctioning motor, the lower frame of seat pan must be replaced - -> Front seat with malfunctioning control module or malfunctioning motor for seat fore-aft adjustment, removing.**

cardiagn.com

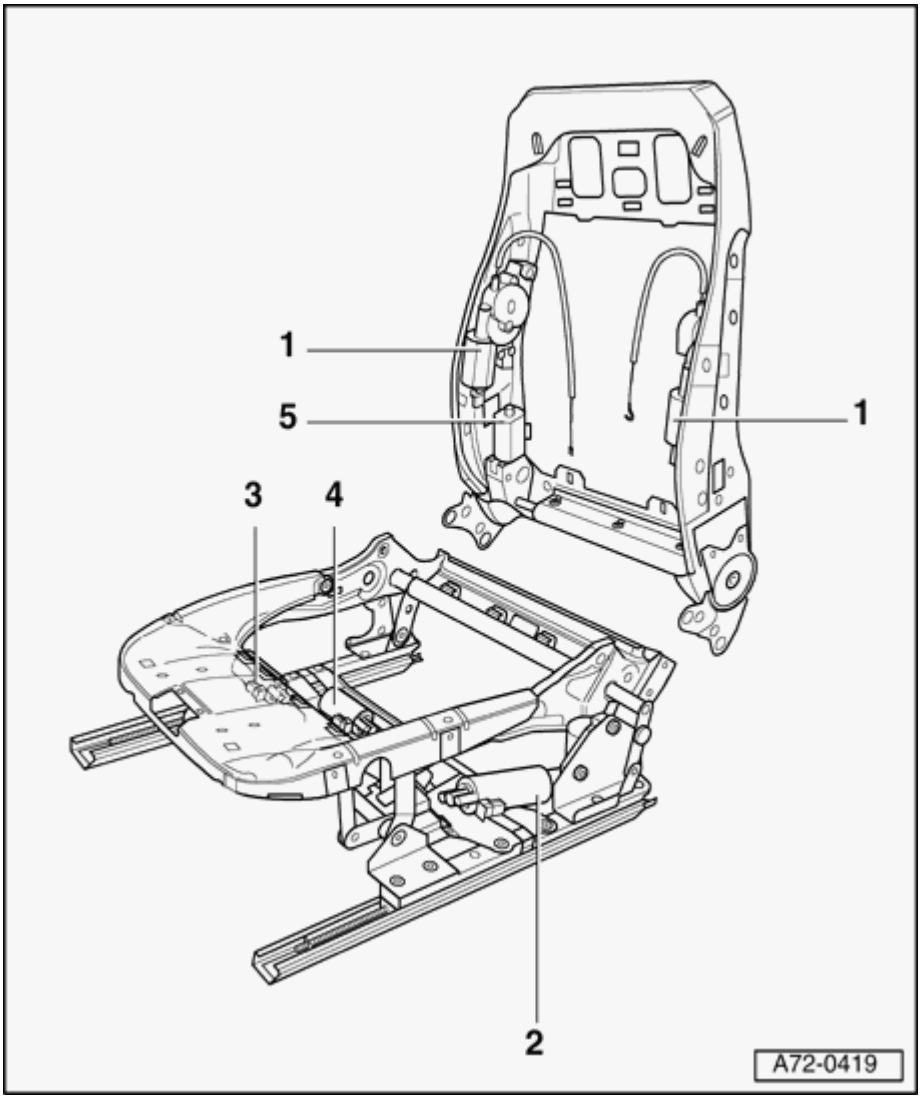


Fig. 580: Longitudinal Seat Adjustment Motor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Four-way lumber support motors (Qty. 2)

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

3 - Seat angle adjustment motor

4 - Longitudinal seat adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor

Seat height adjustment motor, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

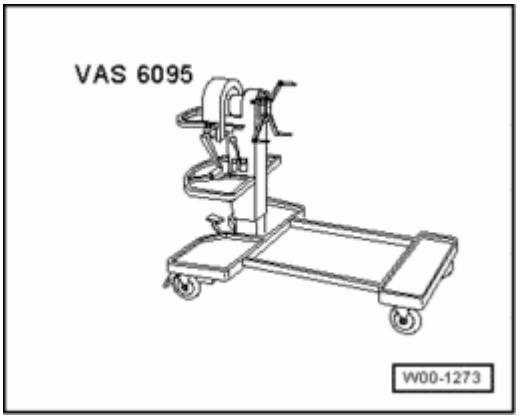


Fig. 581: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

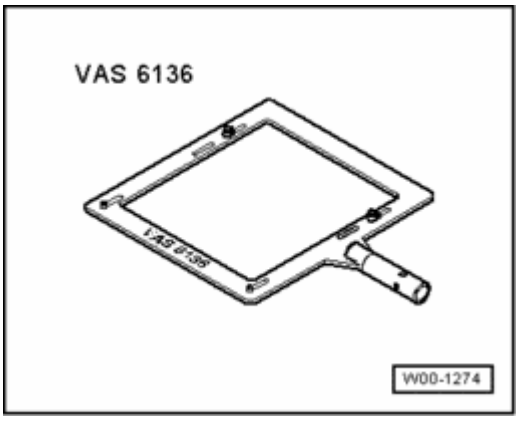


Fig. 582: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

NOTE:

- **If motor is defective, replace upper seat pan frame.**

cardiagn.com

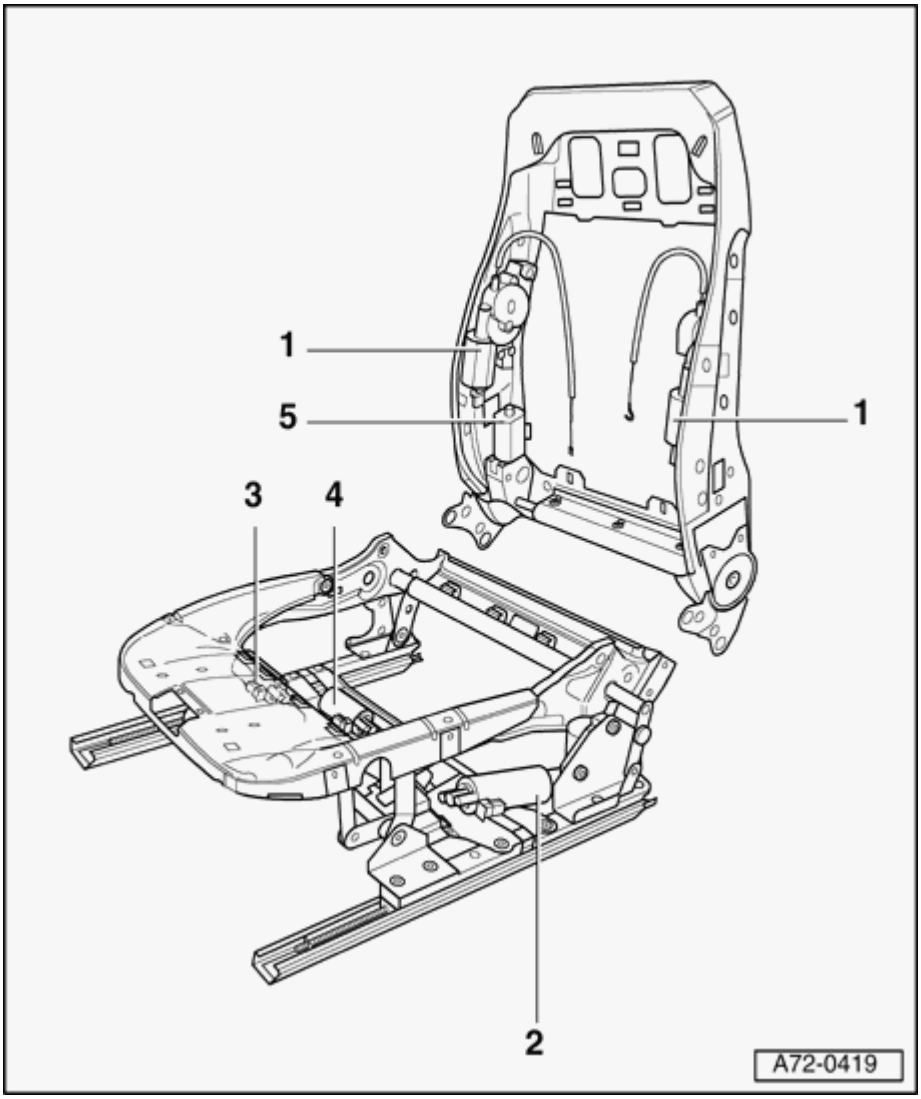


Fig. 583: Longitudinal Seat Adjustment Motor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Four-way lumber support motors (Qty. 2)

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.
- Remove control module --> **Control Module for memory seat, removing and installing**.
- Remove belt buckle --> **Seat belt anchor, removing and installing**.
- Remove spring mat with wiring harness from seat pan --> **Spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan, removing and installing**.
- Separate upper seat pan frame from lower seat pan frame.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Seat angle adjustment motor

4 - Longitudinal seat adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor

Motor for seat tilt adjustment, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

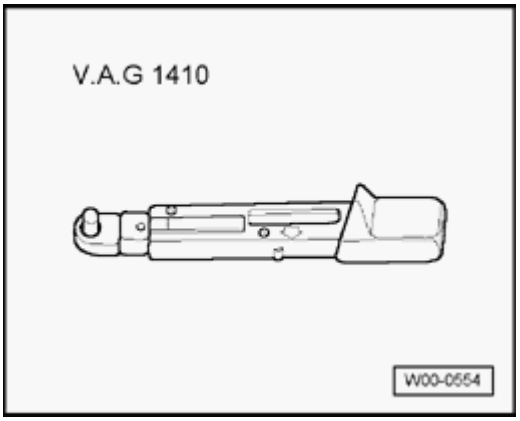


Fig. 584: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

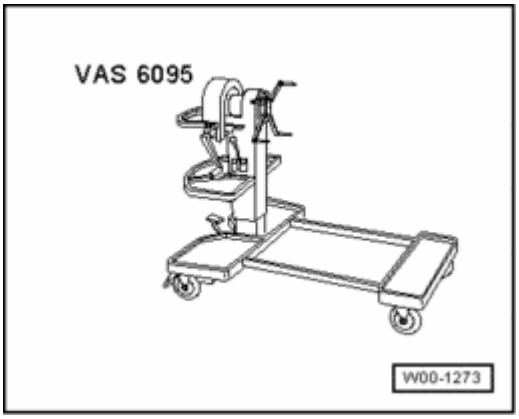


Fig. 585: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

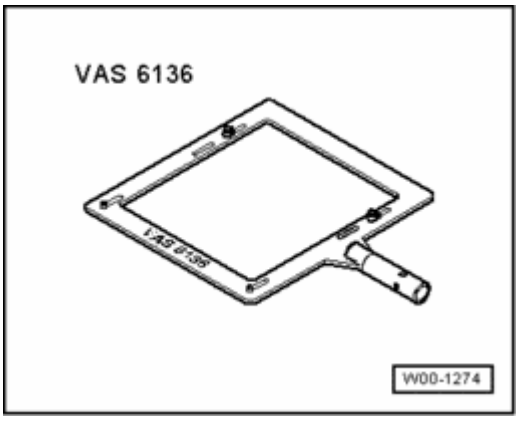


Fig. 586: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

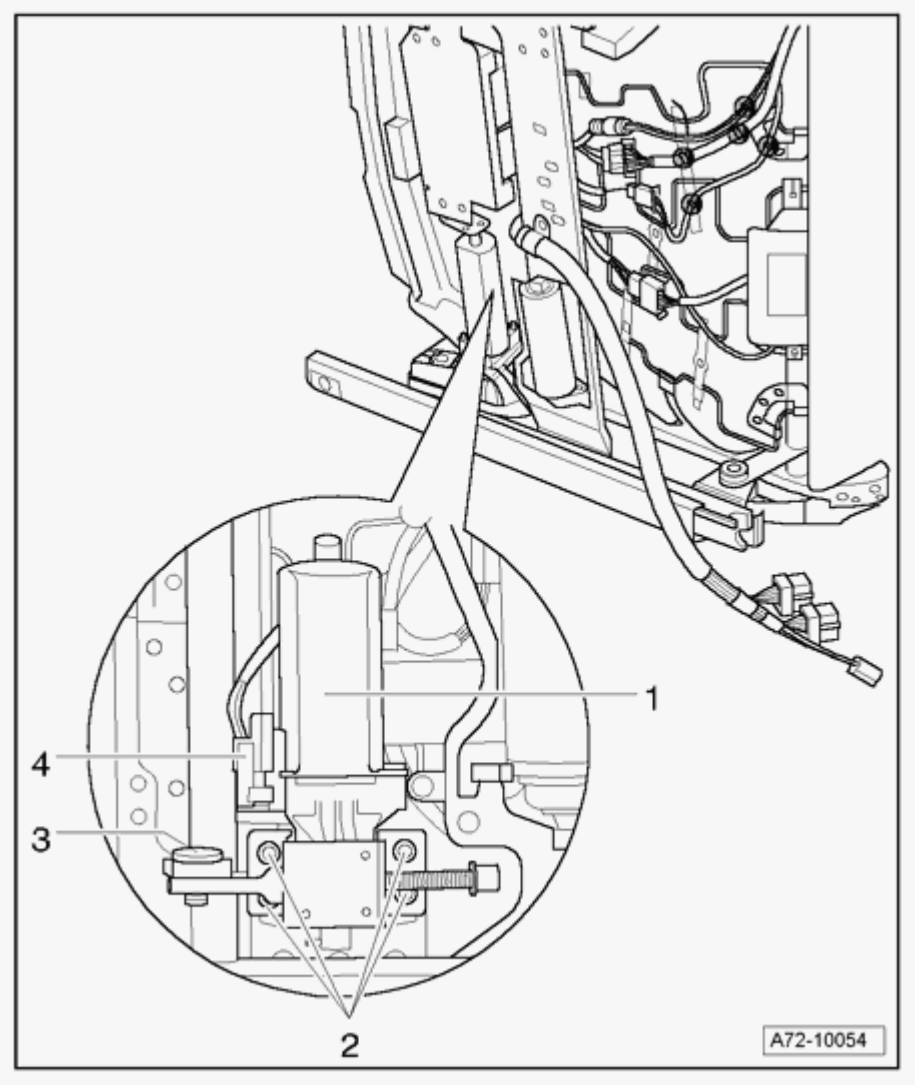


Fig. 587: Motor For Seat Tilt Adjustment Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat angle adjustment motor

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove bolts - **2** - (4x).

  - Remove screw - **3** -.
  - Remove connector - **4** -.
  - Remove motor for seat tilt adjustment - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Screw

- 12 Nm
- Qty. 4

3 - Screw

- 20 Nm
- Replace
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

4 - Connector

Drawer, removing and installing - vehicles through 06.06

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

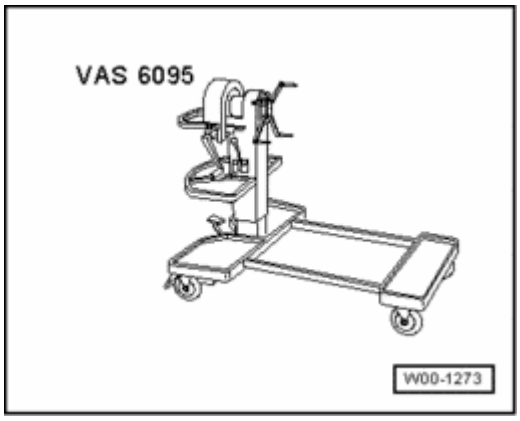


Fig. 588: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

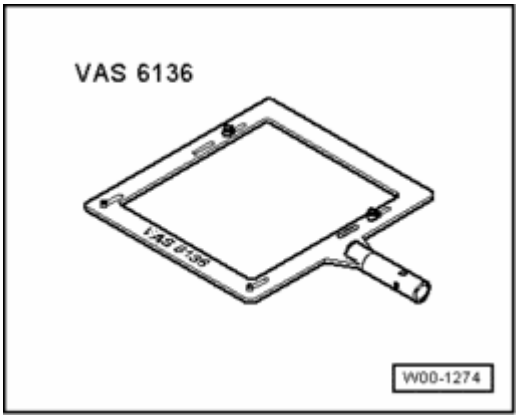
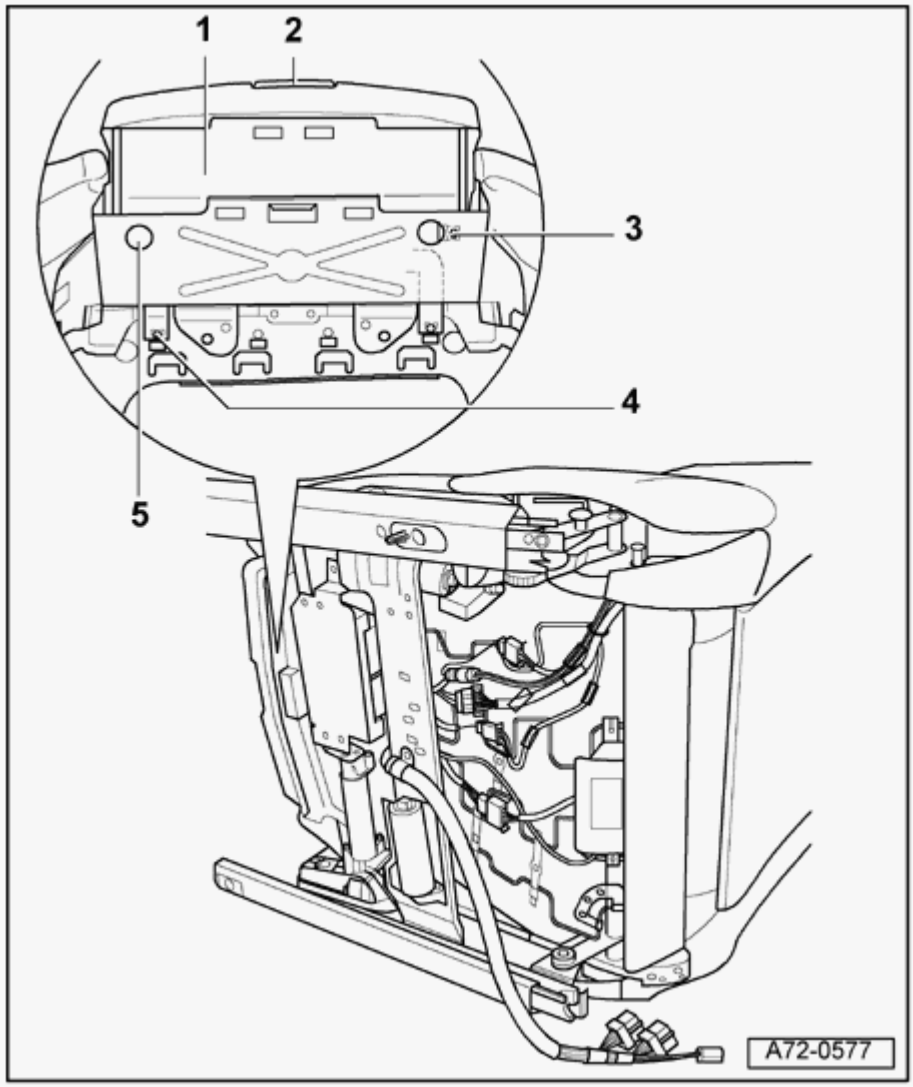


Fig. 589: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136



cardiagn.com

Fig. 590: Drawer Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Drawer

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Pull handle - **2** - and pull out drawer - **1** -.

  - Insert a screwdriver with inserted bit into opening - **5** - and remove the bolt installed beneath.
  - Remove bolts - **4** - (Qty. 2).
  - Remove bolts - **3** - (Qty. 2).
  - Remove drawer - **1** -.

- **Installing**

  - Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Grip

3 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm
- Qty. 2

4 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm
- Qty. 2

5 - Opening

Passenger side storage compartment, assembly overview - vehicles from 06.06

Passenger side storage compartment, assembly overview --> **Passenger side storage compartment, from 06.06, assembly overview**

Storage compartment, removing and installing

Storage compartment, removing and installing --> **Storage compartment, removing and installing**

Storage compartment individual parts, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

Storage compartment individual parts, assembly overview --> **Storage compartment individual parts, assembly overview**

Storage compartment, disassembling and assembling

Storage compartment, disassembling and assembling --> **Storage compartment, disassembling and assembling**

Seat cushion extension, removing and installing (sports seat)

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

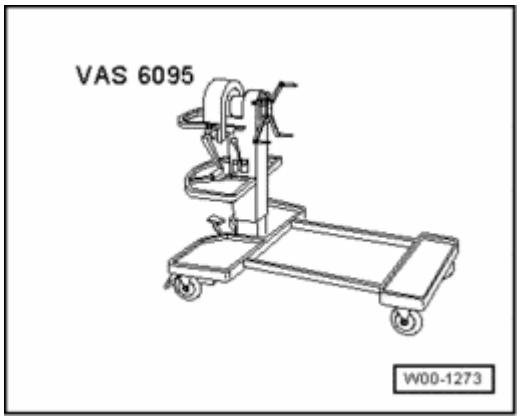


Fig. 591: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

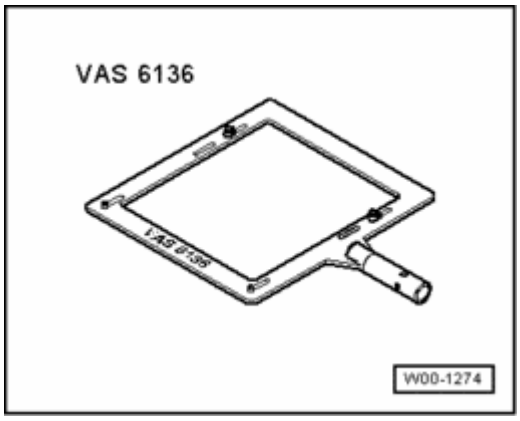


Fig. 592: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

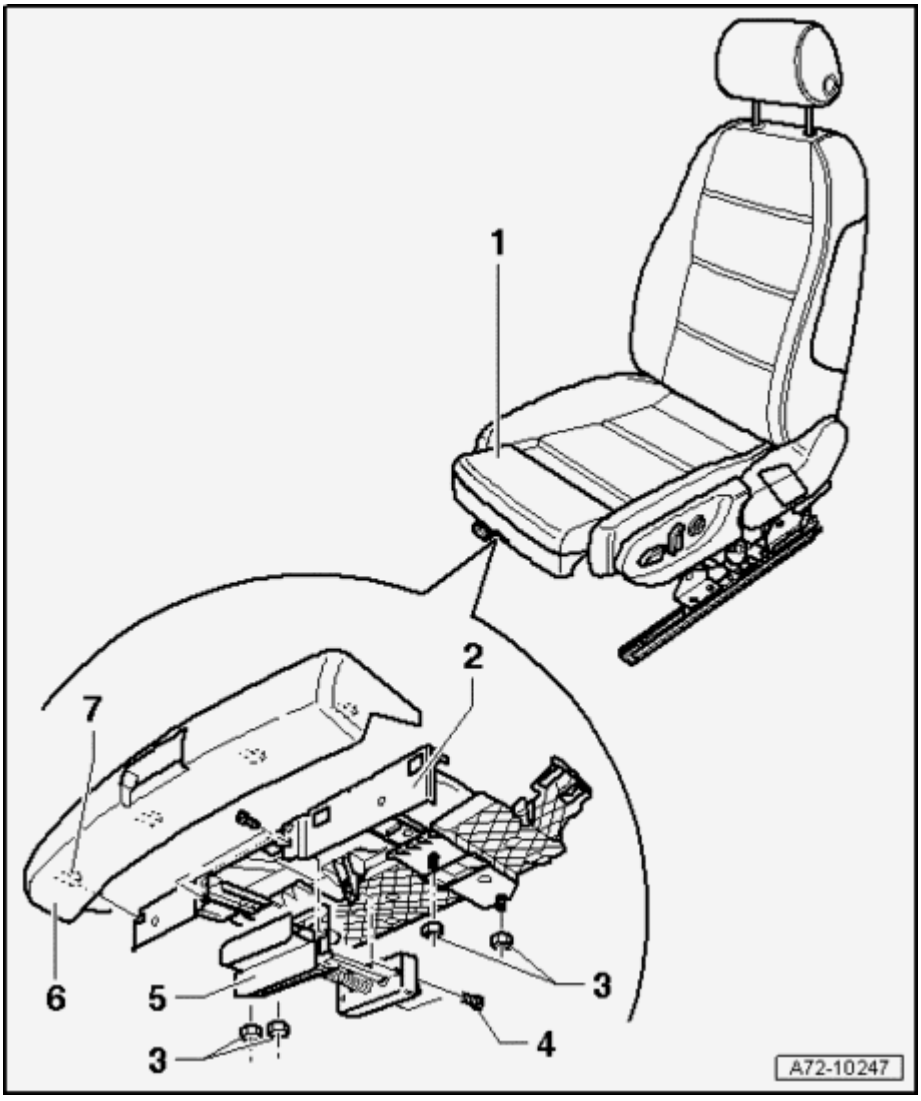


Fig. 593: Seat Cushion Extension (Sports Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat cushion extension

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove drawer or storage compartment:

- Drawer, removing and installing (through 06.06) --> **Drawer, removing and installing - vehicles through 06.06**
- Storage compartment, removing and installing (from 06.06) --> **Storage compartment, removing and**

cardiagn.com

installing.

- Detach cover and cushion from seat pan --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.
- Detach seat cushion extension from cover and cushion.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Seat surface extension base plate

3 - Nut

- 35 Nm
- Qty. 4

4 - Screw

- Qty. 4

5 - Grip

- Removal

- Remove bolts - **4** - (Qty. 4).
- Remove handle - **5** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

6 - Trim

- Removal

- Remove clips - **7** - (Qty. 4) on trim - **6** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

7 - Clips

- Qty. 4

cardiagn.com

Backrest adjustment motor, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

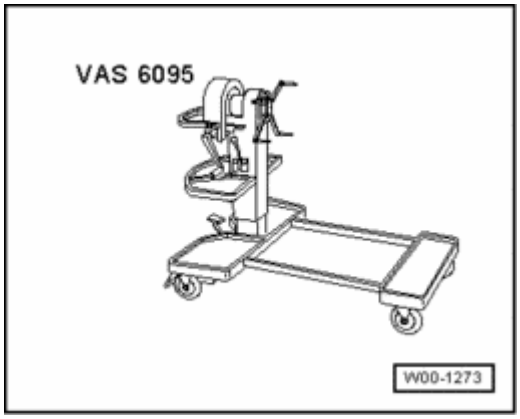


Fig. 594: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

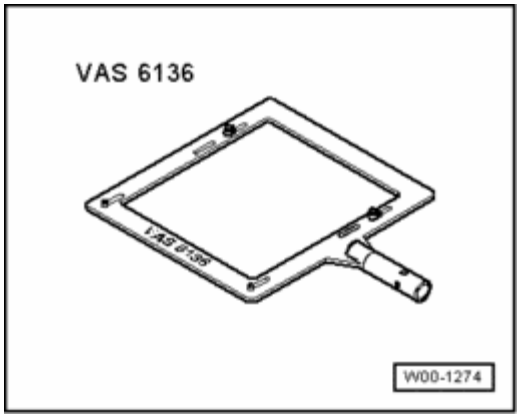


Fig. 595: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

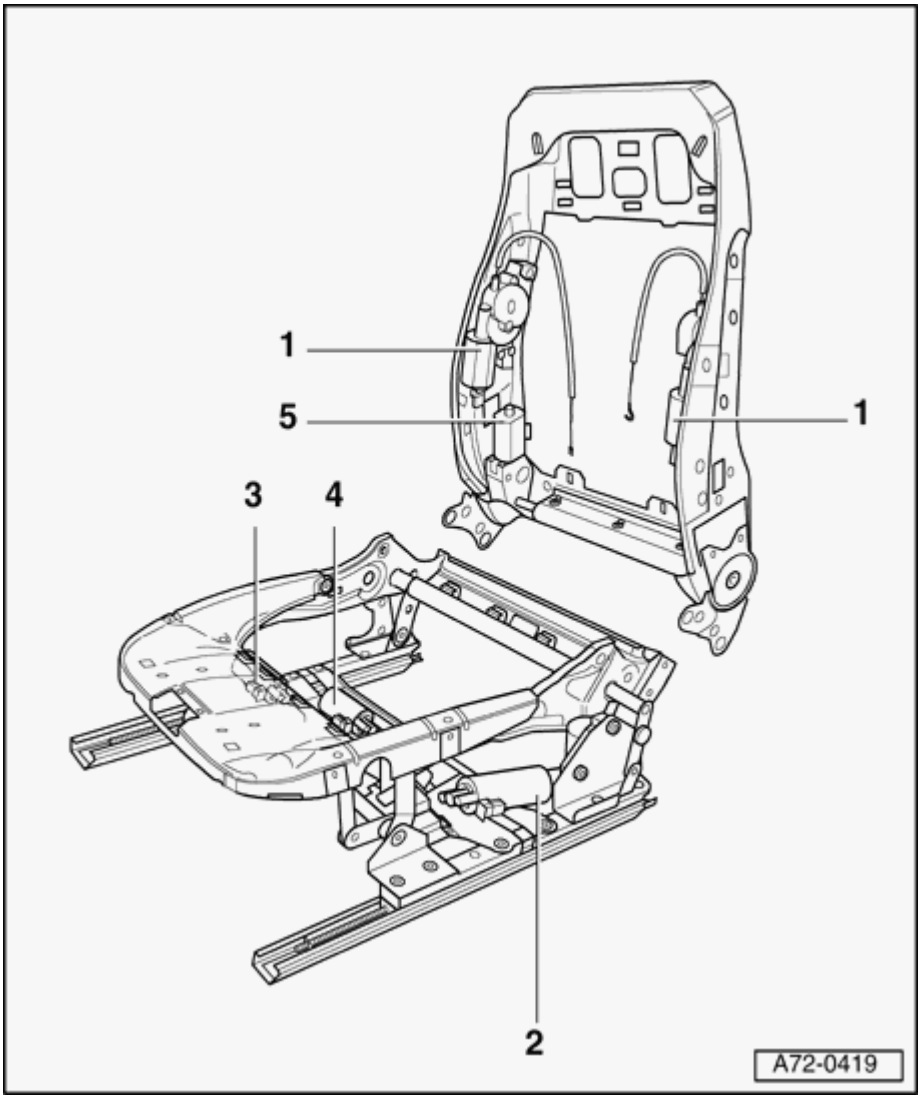


Fig. 596: Backrest Adjustment Motor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Four-way lumber support motors (Qty. 2)

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

3 - Seat angle adjustment motor

4 - Longitudinal seat adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor

- Removal
  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.

- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.

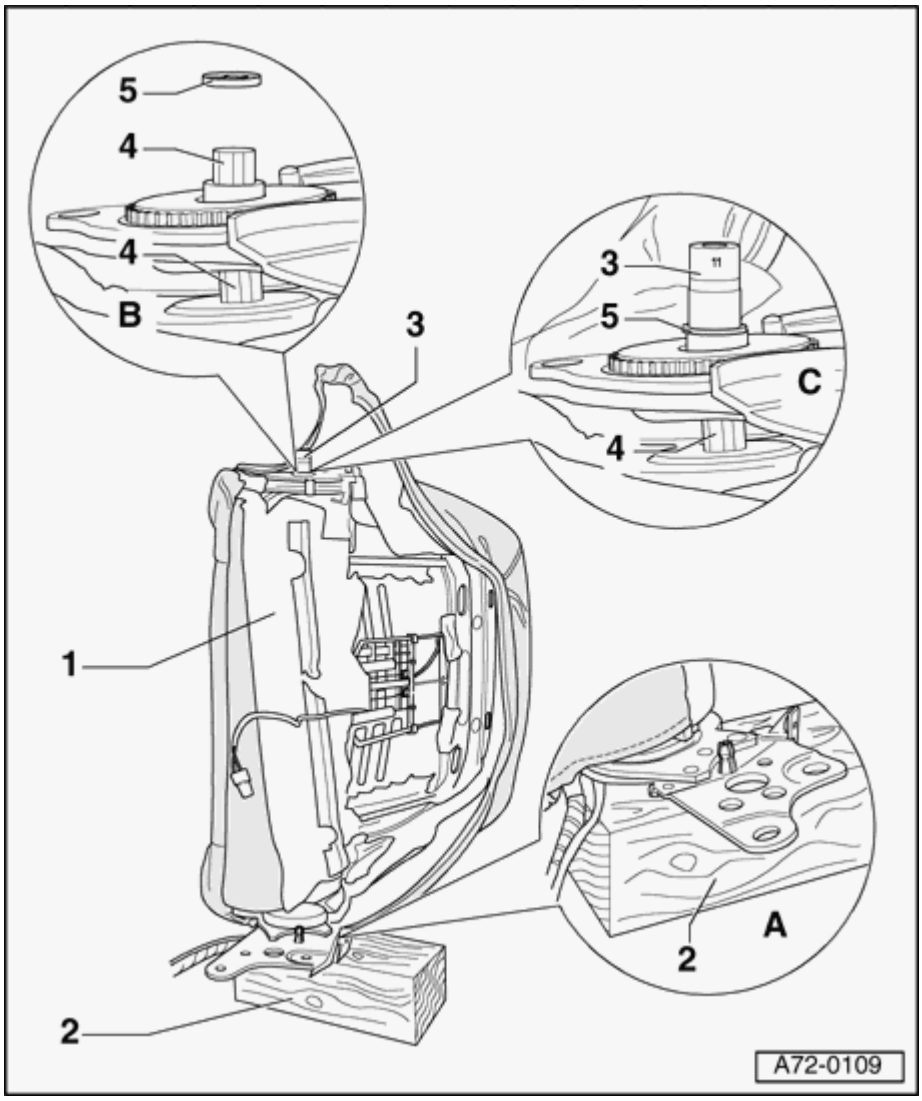


Fig. 597: Identifying Backrest Frame, Wood Block, Socket, Shaft & Spring Washer
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

NOTE:

- **A passenger seat backrest is shown in the illustration.**

- Remove bolt from motor for backrest adjustment **Removing mount for motor for backrest adjustment**.
- Pry out spring washer - **5** - on side of backrest motor with a screwdriver (magnified area of illustration - **B**

cardiagn.com

-.)

- Tap shaft - **4** - through the side of the backrest frame using a hammer and drift punch.
- Pull out shaft - **4** - just far enough out of backrest frame - **1** - until motor for backrest adjustment can be removed.

- **Installing**

- Adapt the splines of new motor for backrest adjustment **Preparing backrest adjustment motor**.
- Slide shaft - **4** - through motor for backrest adjustment and through backrest frame - **1** -.
- Set seat aside.
- Place a wood block - **2** - beneath shaft - **4** - (**Fig. 598**- **A** -) on opposite side of motor for backrest adjustment.

- Tap spring washer - **5** - onto shaft - **4** - using a socket wrench 11 mm insert - **3** - (**Fig. 598**- **C** -).
- Install screw on backrest adjustment motor and connect connector.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.

- For seats with seat memory: After installing seat, perform a basic setting for backrest or seat.

cardiagn.com

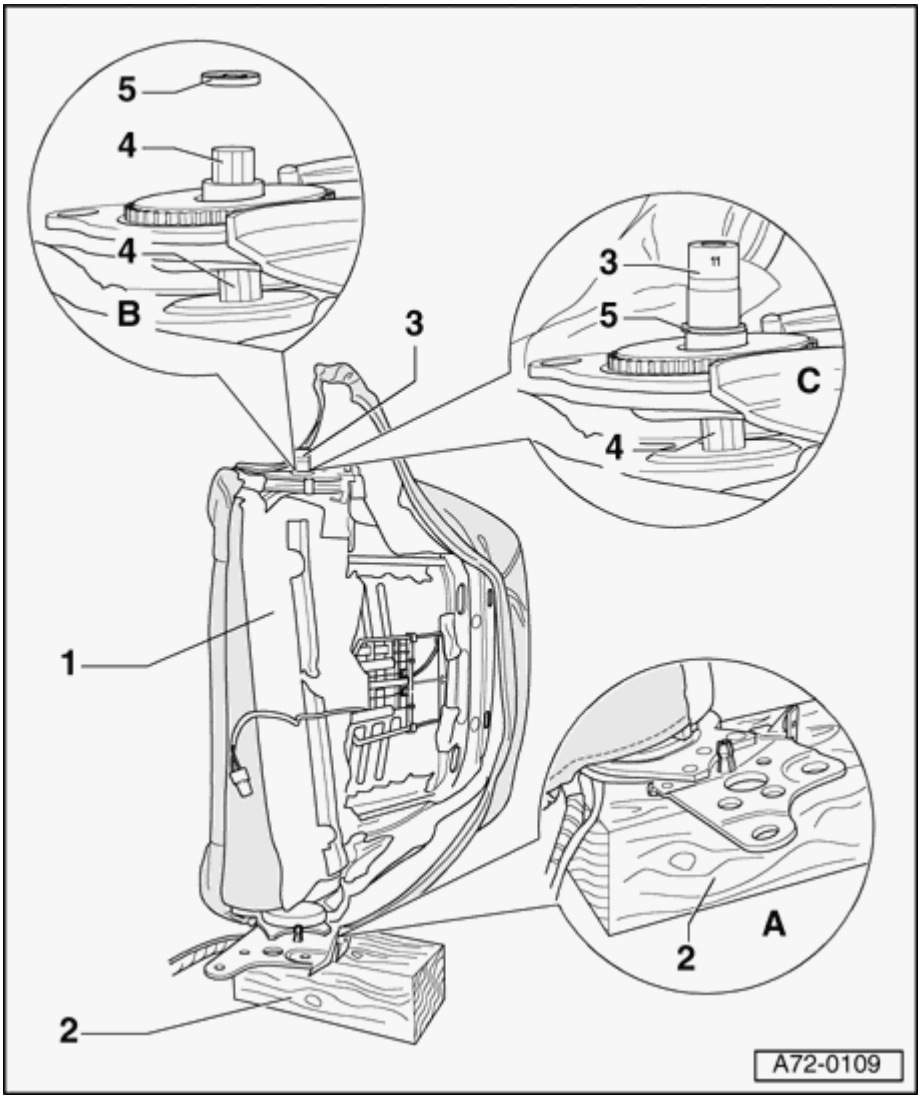


Fig. 598: Identifying Backrest Frame, Wood Block, Socket, Shaft & Spring Washer
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest frame

2 - Wood block

3 - Socket 11 mm

4 - Shaft

5 - Spring washer

Removing mount for motor for backrest adjustment

cardiagn.com

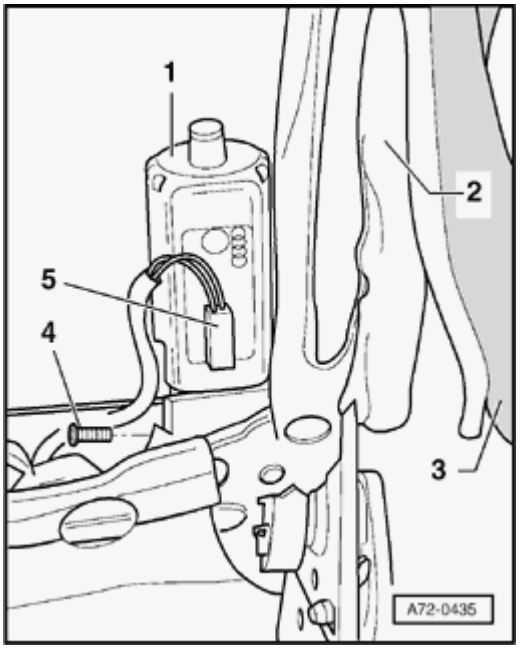


Fig. 599: Removing Mount For Motor For Backrest Adjustment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector - **5** -.
- Remove cover - **3** - and anti-crush fleece - **2** - to side.
- Remove screw - **4** -.

Preparing backrest adjustment motor

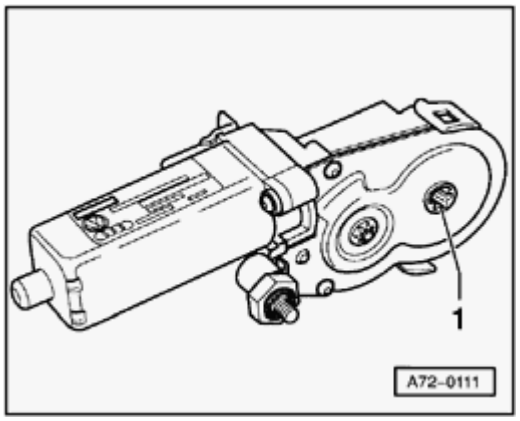


Fig. 600: Preparing Backrest Adjustment Motor
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, turn the locating element of splines - **1** - so it aligns with shaft of backrest frame.

Backrest cover, removing and installing

NOTE:

cardiagn.com

- **In the illustration, removal and installation of backrest cover is shown on a front seat with the active head restraint system.**
- **Removal and installation of backrest cover on a front seat without active head restraint system is the same.**

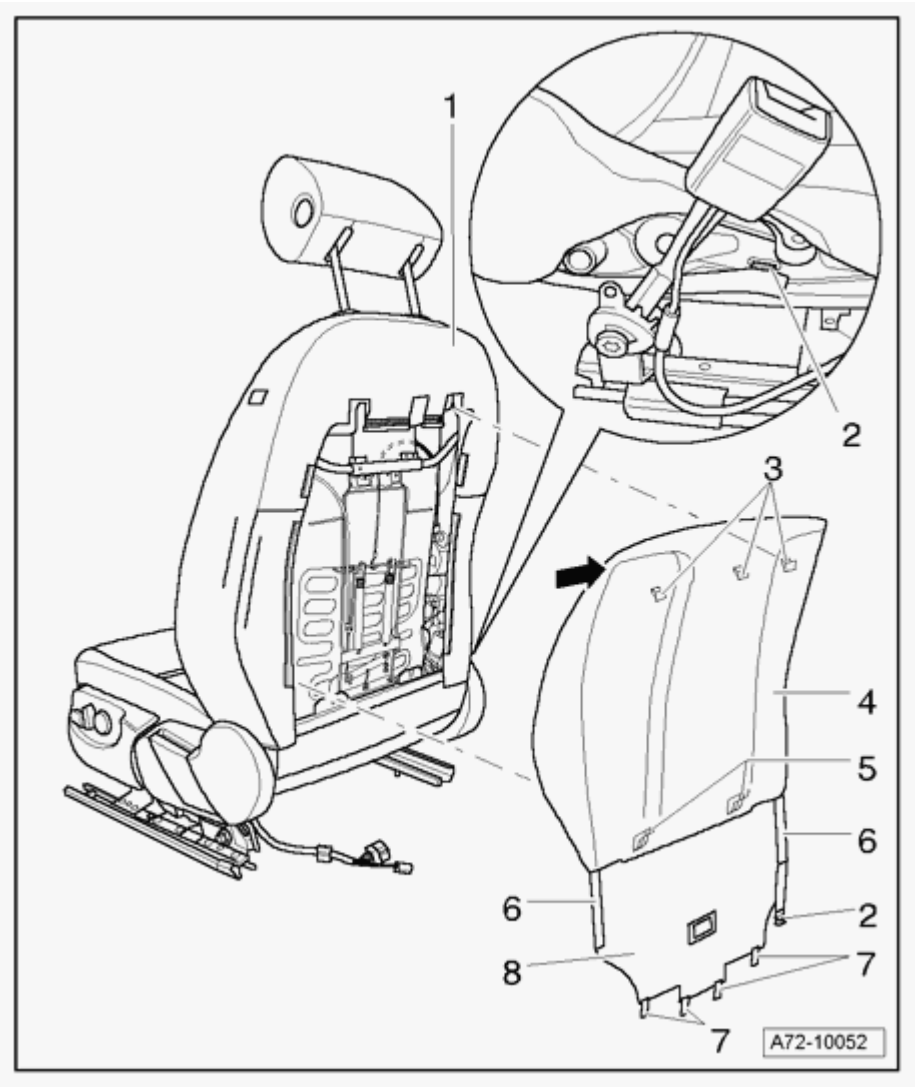


Fig. 601: Backrest Cover Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Fastening strip

- Always on tunnel side

3 - Clips

cardiagn.com

- Qty. 3
- Replace

4 - Backrest cover

- Removal

  - Disengage footwell cover - **8** - on underside of seat at tabs - **7** - (Qty. 4) from spring mat.
  - Disengage retaining strip - **2** -.
  - Loosen retaining strips - **6** - (Qty. 2) from side panels.
  - Press against backrest cover where indicated by arrow - **4** - to remove wire clips - **3** - (Qty. 3).
  - Disengage backrest cover - **4** - upward from brackets - **5** - (Qty. 2).

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

  - Replace clips - **3** - (Qty. 3).
  - Slide footwell fastening strip into side trim bracket **Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening**.

5 - Bracket

- Qty. 2

6 - Fastening strips

- Qty. 2

7 - Tabs

- Qty. 4

8 - Footwell cover

Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening

cardiagn.com

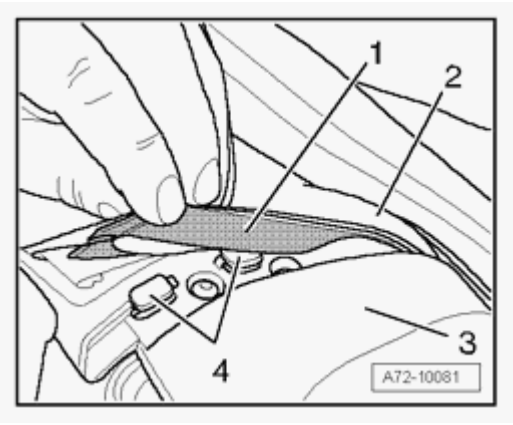


Fig. 602: Disengaging Retaining Strip On Footwell Cover From Brackets Rear Sill Side Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage retaining strip - **1** - on footwell cover - **2** - from brackets - **4** - (Qty. 2) on side panel - **3** -.

Four-way lumber support, vehicles up to 06.06 or from 11.06, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

- Special pop rivet pliers V.A.G 1753 A

cardiagn.com

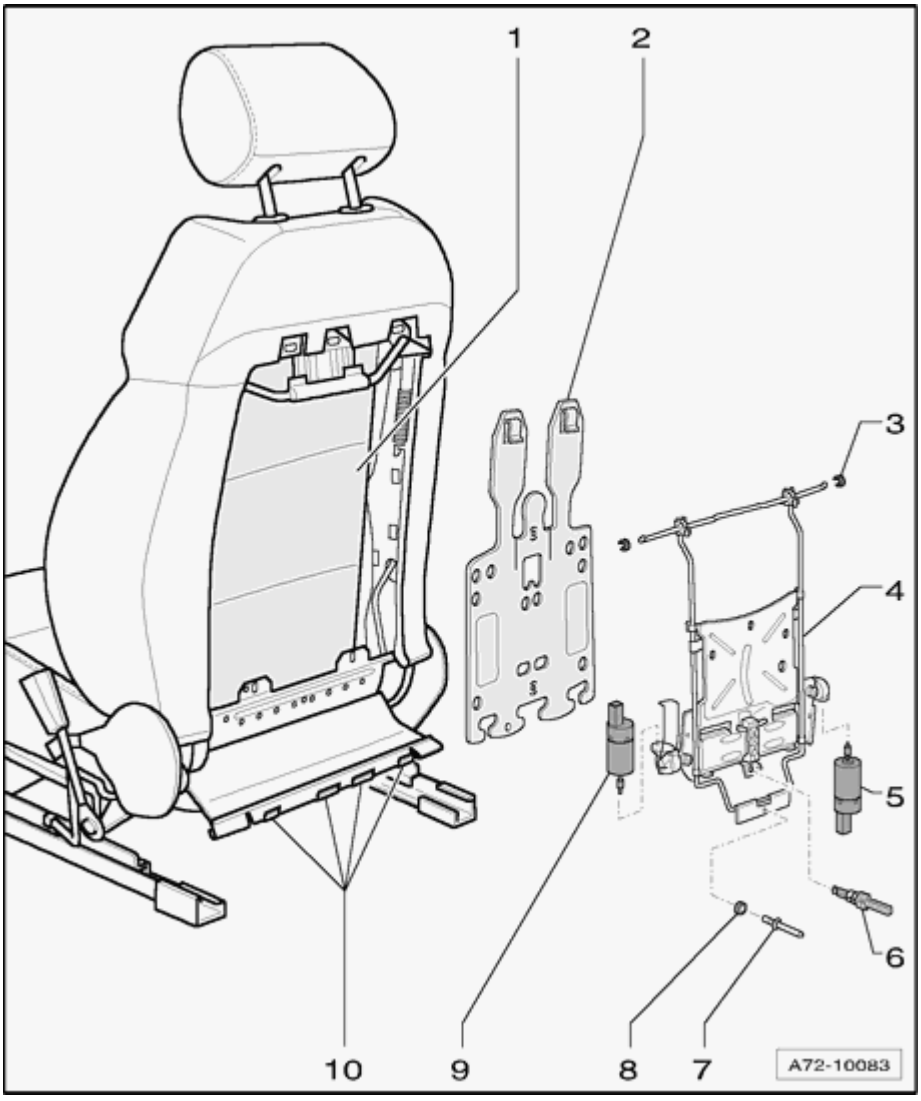


Fig. 603: Four-Way Lumber Support, Vehicles Up To 06.06 Or From 11.06 Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest padding

2 - four-way lumbar support

- Removing and installing --> **Four-way lumber support, vehicles up to 06.06 or from 11.06, removing and installing**

3 - Clamping sleeve

4 - Four-way lumbar support frame

- **Removing:**

cardiagn.com

- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
- Pry fastening strips - **10** - (4x) out with a screwdriver.
- Insert foil between upholstery and backrest frame to protect against metal particles.
- Drill out rivet - **7** -.

- Disengage four-way lumbar support frame - **4** - at upper left and right from backrest frame.
- Disconnect electrical harness connectors at actuators - **5** - and - **9** - for four-way lumbar support.
- Disconnect Velcro connector between four-way lumber support - **2** - and backrest upholstery - **1** -.
- Disengage four-way lumbar support at top of frame.

- Remove four-way lumbar support.

- **Installing:**

Installation is performed in reverse order of removal, noting the following:

- Place a plastic film over Velcro strips on four-way lumbar support. Secure plastic film to four-way lumbar support --> **Secure four-way lumbar support with assembly aid and secure plastic film to four-way lumbar support**.
- Ensure four-way lumbar support is secured to frame with transport fastener or a suitable pin **Four-way lumbar support with backrest frame, riveting**.
- Position lumbar support frame behind backrest and engage lumbar support frame at top left and right in mounts on frame.
- Rivet bottom of four-way lumbar support frame with backrest frame. A plastic washer must be placed between four-way lumbar support frame and backrest frame **Four-way lumbar support with backrest frame, riveting**.

- Remove plastic film between backrest padding and four-way lumbar support.
- Press four-way lumbar support Velcro fastener onto backrest padding to secure.
- Connect electrical connectors to four-way lumbar support adjustment motors.

5 - Four-way lumber support positioning motor

- Removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing**

6 - Assembly safety guard

For centering four-way lumbar support with frame

7 - Rivet

- Rivet using special pop rivet pliers V.A.G 1753 A
- Before riveting, a plastic washer must be placed between four-way lumbar support and backrest frame

cardiagn.com

8 - Plastic washer

9 - Four-way lumbar support height adjustment motor

- Removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing**

10 - Fastening strips

Secure four-way lumbar support with assembly aid and secure plastic film to four-way lumbar support

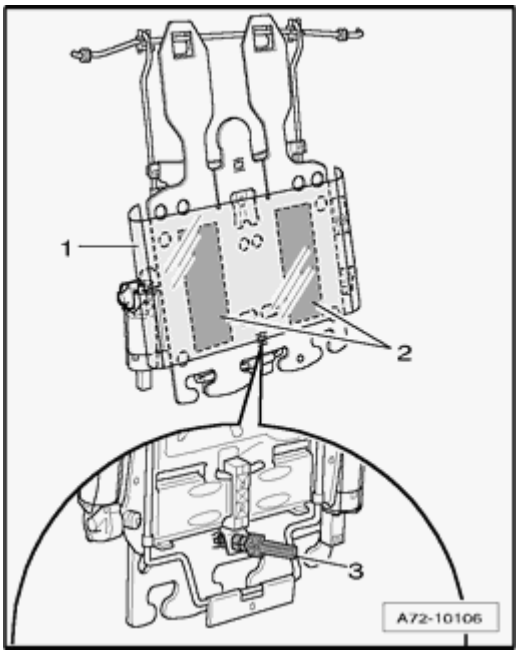


Fig. 604: Securing Four-Way Lumbar Support With Assembly Aid And Plastic Film To Four-Way Lumbar Support
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Lay plastic film - **1** - over Velcro strips - **2** - on four-way lumbar support. Secure plastic film to four-way lumbar support.
- Ensure four-way lumbar support is attached to four-way lumbar support frame with assembly fastener - **3** - or a suitable pin.

Four-way lumbar support with backrest frame, riveting

cardiagn.com

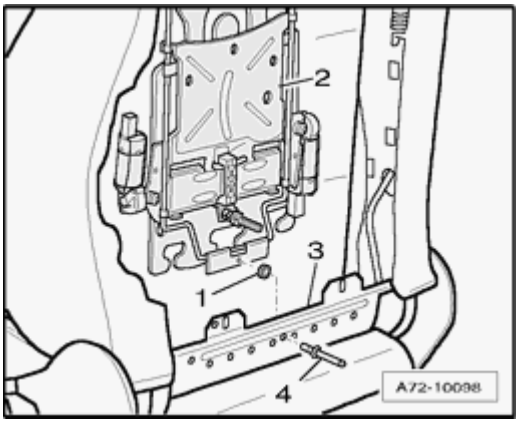


Fig. 605: Four-Way Lumbar Support With Backrest Frame, Riveting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Before securing rivet - **4** - , a plastic washer - **1** - must be placed between four-way lumbar support - **2** - and backrest frame - **3** -.

Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

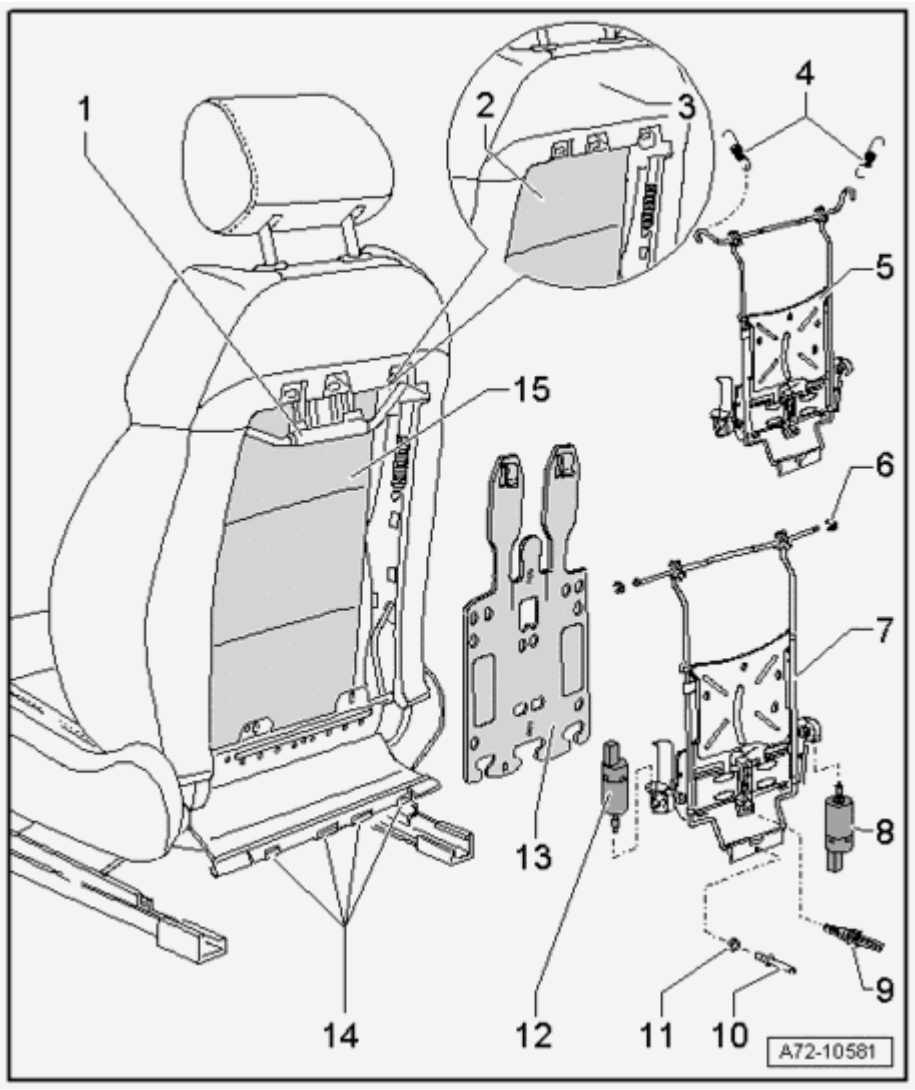


Fig. 606: Four-Way Lumbar Support Positioning Motors Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest with active restraint system

- Through 06.06 (for specific countries)
- Through 11.06 (rest of world)

2 - Backrest padding

- From 06.06 (for specific countries)
- From 11.06 (rest of world)

3 - Backrest without active head restraint system

- From 06.06 (for specific countries)

cardiagn.com

- From 11.06 (rest of world)

4 - Spring

- Qty. 2
- For engaging four-way lumbar support in backrest frame
- From 06.06 (for specific countries)
- From 11.06 (rest of world)

5 - Four-way lumbar support frame

- From 06.06 (for specific countries)
- From 11.06 (rest of world)

6 - Clamping sleeve

- Through 06.06 (for specific countries)
- Through 11.06 (rest of world)

7 - Four-way lumbar support frame

- Through 06.06 (for specific countries)
- Through 11.06 (rest of world)

8 - Four-way lumber support positioning motor

- Removal

NOTE:

- **When replacing positioning motor, four-way lumbar support must not be on an end stop.**

  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
  - Disconnect electrical harness connector **Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator**.
  - Disengage retaining bracket and remove actuator downward **Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator**.

- **Installing**

Installation is performed in reverse order of removal, noting the following:

  - Actuator can only be installed in one position.

9 - Central screws

cardiagn.com

For centering four-way lumbar support with frame

10 - Rivet

11 - Plastic washer

12 - Four-way lumbar support height adjustment motor

- Removal

NOTE:

- **When replacing positioning motor, four-way lumbar support must not be on an end stop.**

  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
  - Disconnect electrical harness connector **Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator**.
  - Disengage retaining bracket and remove actuator upward **Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator**.

- **Installing**

Installation is performed in reverse order of removal, noting the following:

  - Actuator can only be installed in one position.

13 - four-way lumbar support

14 - Fastening strips

15 - Backrest padding

- Through 06.06 (for specific countries)
- Through 11.06 (rest of world)

Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator

cardiagn.com

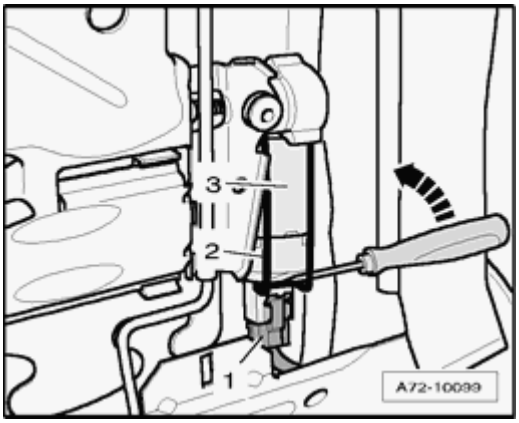


Fig. 607: Disconnecting Electrical Harness Connector And Disengaging Retaining Bracket At Actuator
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

NOTE:

- **When replacing positioning motor, four-way lumbar support must not be on an end stop.**

- Disconnect electrical connector - **4** -.
- Disengage retaining bracket - **3** - using a screwdriver - **2** - and remove actuator - **1** -.

Headrest with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing

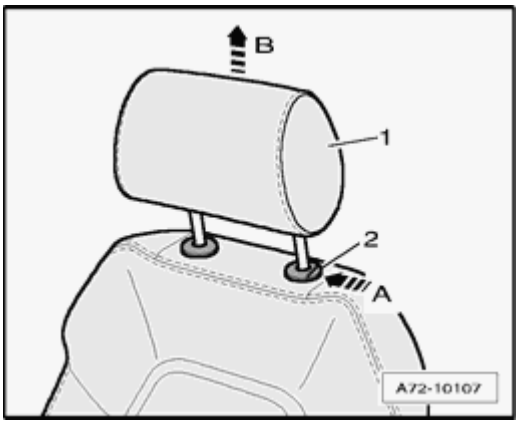


Fig. 608: Pushing Release Button In And Pulling Headrest Upward As Far As Possible
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Push release button - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and pull headrest - **1** - upward as far as possible - **arrow B** - , keep release button pushed while doing so.

cardiagn.com

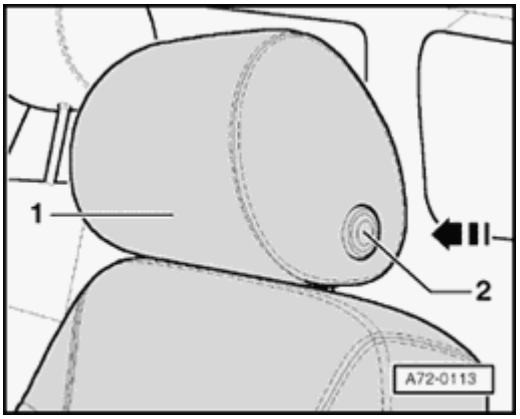


Fig. 609: Pressing Release Button On Headrest Until Stop
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press release button - **2** - on headrest - **1** - until stop - **arrow** -.
- Slide headrest down completely on rods, release button on headrest must be kept pressed while doing so.
- Remove headrest completely from headrest guides.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Footwell light, removing and installing

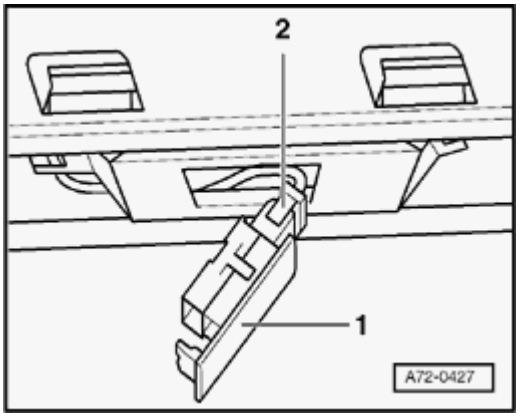


Fig. 610: Identifying Rear Footwell Light & Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Removal

- Press out rear footwell light - **1** - from rear.
- Remove connector - **2** -.

- **Installing**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

Seat pan, assembly overview

NOTE:

- **On the front seat, the upper and lower seat pan frames can be separated and replaced individually.**
- **When removing seat pan, ensure bushings in bearing points (upper and lower frame threaded connection) are not damaged. These bushings cannot be replaced with workshop materials.**

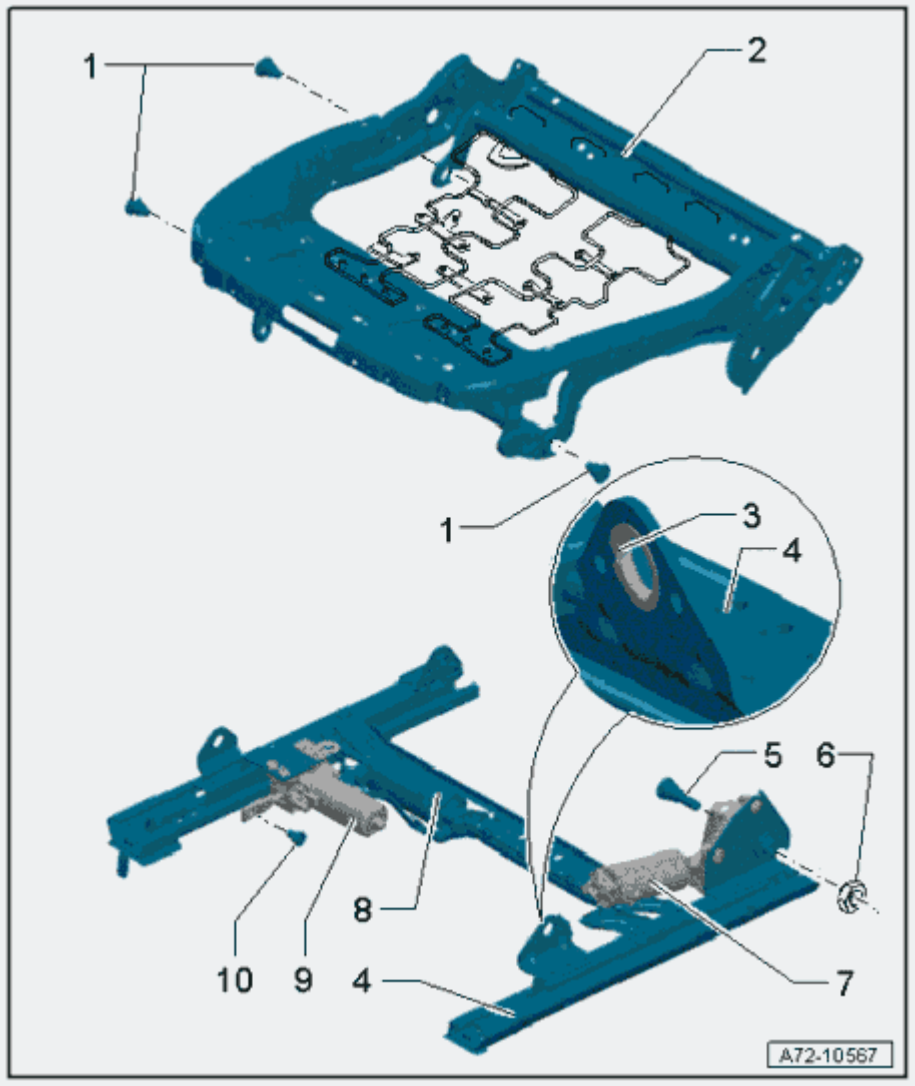


Fig. 611: Seat Pan, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Screw, self-locking

- 28 Nm

cardiagn.com

- Qty. 3
- Replace
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

2 - Seat pan upper frame

- Removing and installing --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**

3 - Bushing

- Inserted in all bearing locations
- Cannot be replaced with workshop materials
- If bushings are damaged, assembly part must be replaced

4 - Seat pan lower frame

- Removing and installing --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**

5 - Screw

- 28 Nm
- Replace

6 - Nut

- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

7 - Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or Front Passenger s Seat Height Adjustment Motor V246

- Removing and installing --> **Seat height adjustment motor, removing and installing**

8 - Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288

- Cannot be removed and installed with workshop materials

9 - Drivers Seat Inclination Adjustment Motor V243 or Front Passenger s Seat Inclination Adjustment Motor V244

- Removing and installing --> **Motor for seat tilt adjustment, removing and installing**

10 - Screw, self-locking

- 20 Nm
- Replace
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

cardiagn.com

Seat pan, disassembling and assembling

Seat pan, disassembling

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Remove front seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Attach seat to Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove cover with seat pan upholstery:

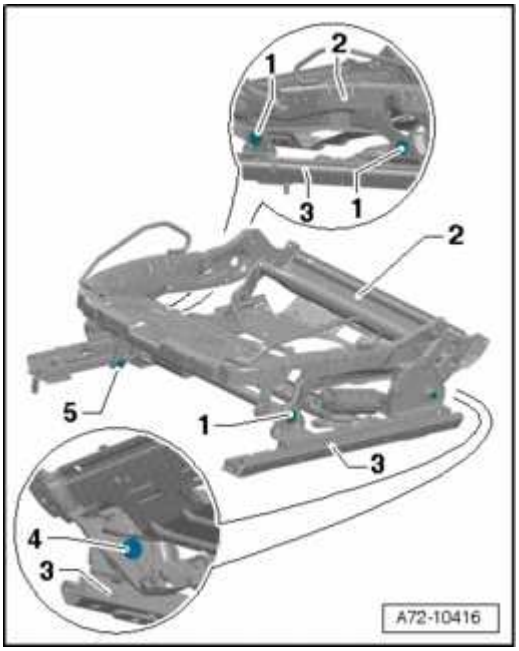
- For standard seat --> **Seating area cover and upholstery, removing and installing (standard seat)**
- For sport seat --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.

- Disconnect electrical connectors if necessary.

Seat pan upper frame, replacing

- Remove spring mat with wiring harness from seat pan upper frame --> **Spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan, removing and installing**.

Continuation: Upper or lower frame, replacing



cardiagn.com

Fig. 612: Identifying Bolts & Seat Pan Upper Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (Qty. 3).
- Remove bolt - **4** -.
- Remove bolt - **5** -.
- Remove seat pan upper frame - **2** - upward from lower frame - **3** -.

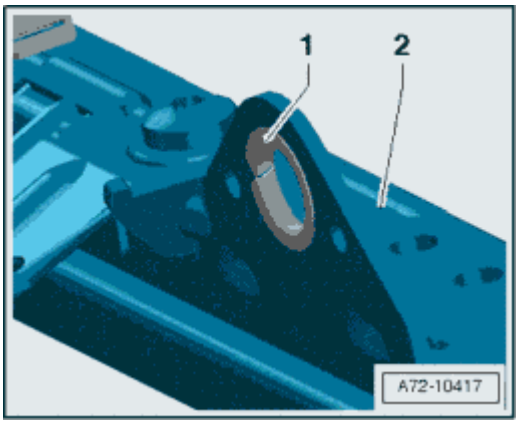


Fig. 613: Identifying Bushings & Lower Seat Pan Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Be careful of bushings - **1** - in bearing points.

2 - Lower seat pan frame

CAUTION:

- **Do not damage bushings - 1 - inserted in all bearing points when separating or disassembling upper and lower frame.**
- **The bushings cannot be replaced with workshop materials.**
- **If the bushings are damaged, the corresponding assembly parts must be replaced.**

- Remove Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or Front Passenger s Seat Height Adjustment Motor V246 --> **Seat height adjustment motor, removing and installing**.
- Remove Drivers Seat Inclination Adjustment Motor V243 or Front Passenger s Seat Inclination Adjustment Motor V244 --> **Motor for seat tilt adjustment, removing and installing**.

Seat pan, assembling

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**

cardiagn.com

- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Install removed Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or Front Passenger s Seat Height Adjustment Motor V246 in new seat pan lower frame --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**.
- Install removed Drivers Seat Inclination Adjustment Motor V243 or Front Passenger s Seat Inclination Adjustment Motor V244 in new seat pan lower frame --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**.
- Install spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan upper frame --> **Spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan, removing and installing**.

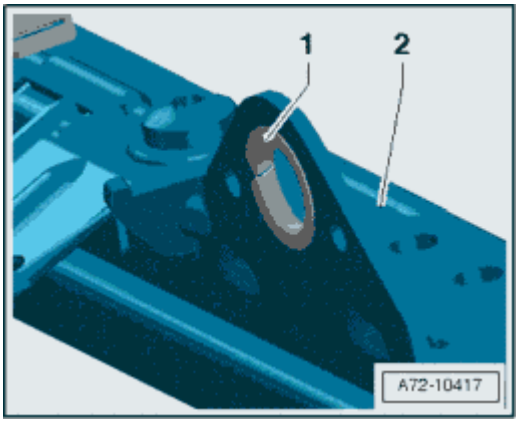


Fig. 614: Identifying Bushings & Lower Seat Pan Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Do not damage bushings - **1** - during further assembly.

CAUTION:

- **Do not damage bushings - 1 - inserted in all bearing points when separating or disassembling upper and lower frame.**
- **The bushings cannot be replaced with workshop materials.**
- **If the bushings are damaged, the corresponding assembly parts must be replaced.**

NOTE:

- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

cardiagn.com

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

Tightening torques --> **Seat pan, assembly overview**

Spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

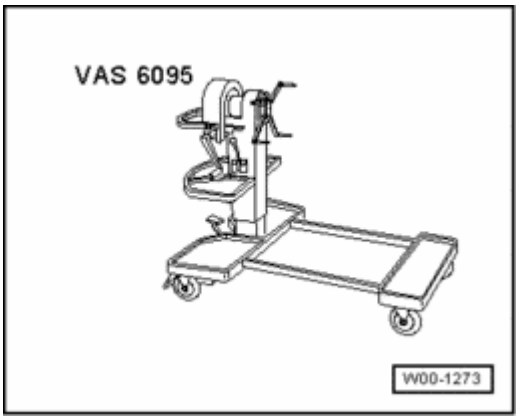


Fig. 615: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

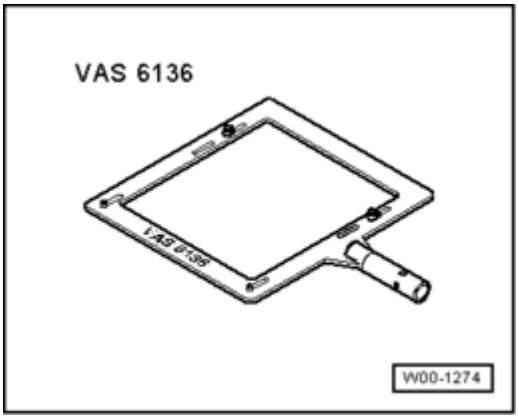


Fig. 616: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

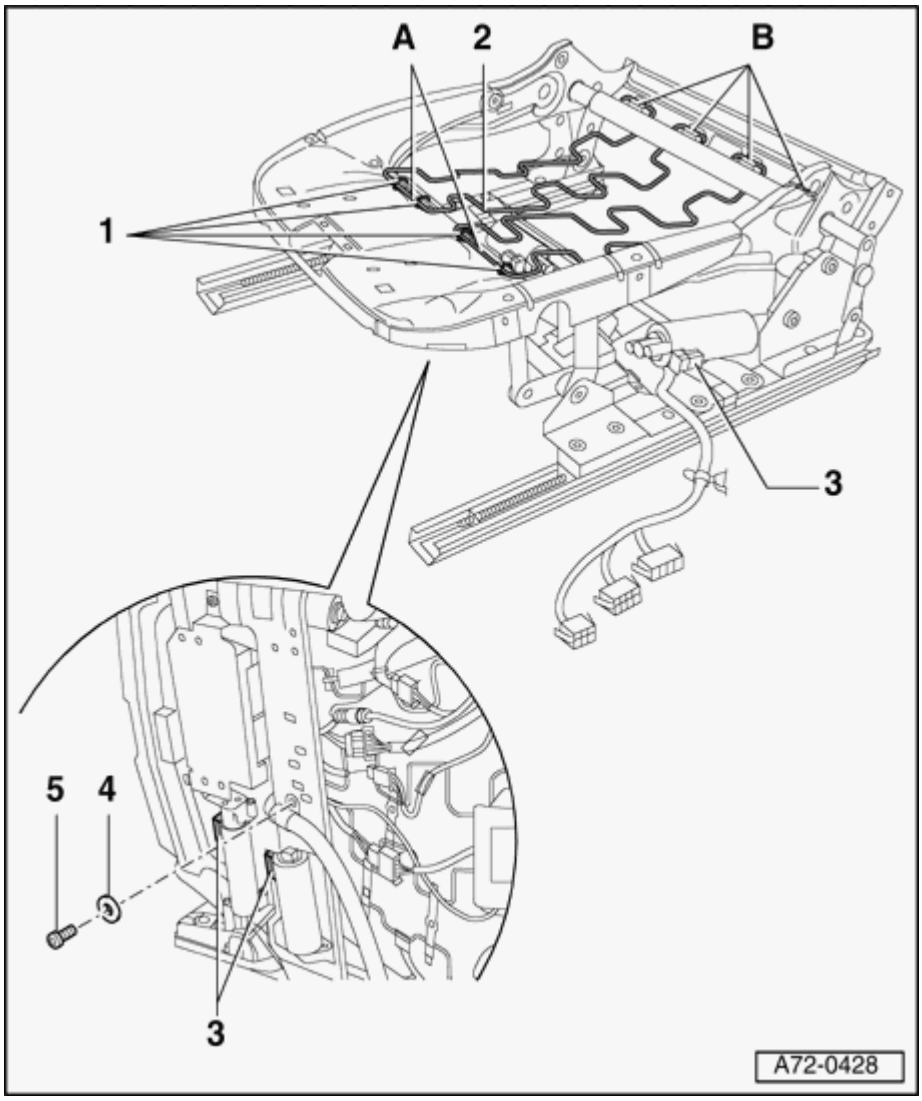


Fig. 617: Spring Mat With Wiring Harness In Seat Pan Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable ties (4x)

2 - Spring mat with wiring harness

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove belt buckle:

- Belt latch anchorage point --> **Belt buckle anchorage point**
- Seat Occupied Recognition passenger airbag deactivation belt latch (country-specific), replacing --> **Passive Occupant Detection System (PODS) passenger airbag deactivation belt latch (USA only), replacing**.

- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.
- Remove cable ties - **1** - (4x).
- Disengage spring mat - **2** - at - **A** - positions (2x).

- Disengage spring mat - **2** - at - **B** - positions (4x).
- Tip seat to side.
- Disconnect connectors - **3** - (3x).
- For vehicles with seatbelt fasten sensor: Loosen cable.

- Remove screw - **5** -.
- Remove spring mat with wiring harness - **2** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

- If metal tabs on positions - **A** - and - **B** - are damaged: Replace seat pan.

3 - Connector (3x)

4 - Washer

5 - Screw

Seat wiring harness location

cardiagn.com

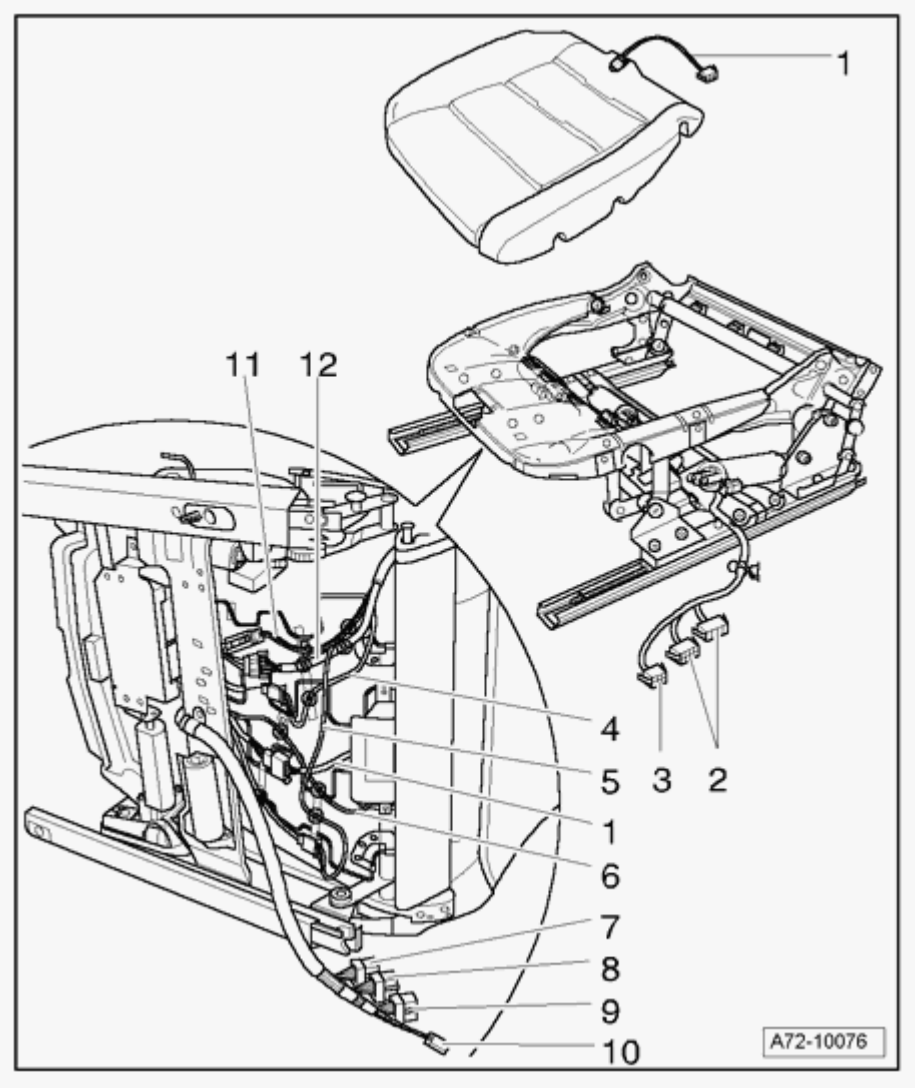


Fig. 618: Seat Wiring Harness Location
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat heating wiring harness

2 - Seat adjustment connector (2x)

3 - Four-way lumbar support connector

4 - Backrest heating wiring harness

5 - Wire of side airbag Ground (GND)

6 - Wiring set of footwell lighting

7 - Belt buckle sensor connector (black)

cardiagn.com

8 - Seat heating connector (green)

9 - Current supply connector (red)

10 - Airbag connector (yellow)

11 - Airbag wiring harness

12 - Electric four-way lumbar support wiring harness, tunnel side

Backrest wiring assignment

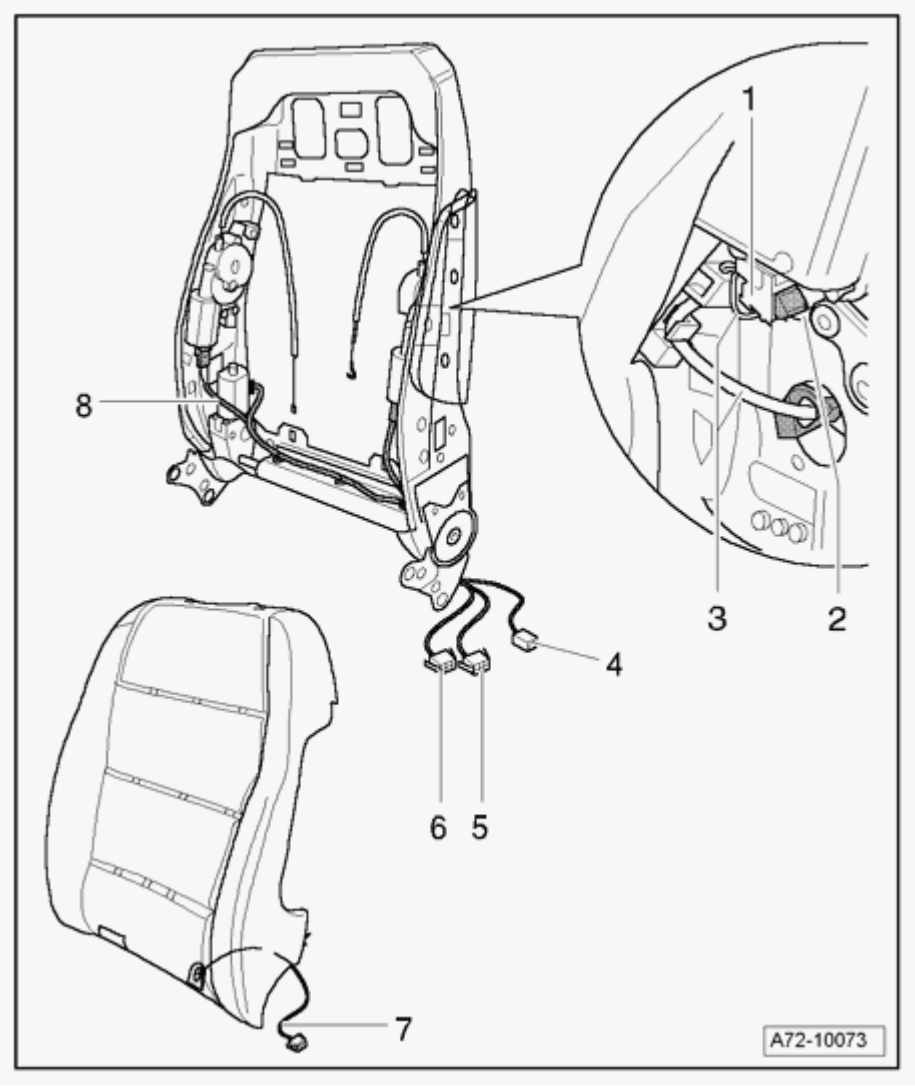


Fig. 619: Backrest Wiring Assignment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Harness connector of side airbag

cardiagn.com

2 - Wire of side airbag Ground (GND)

3 - Wiring set for side airbag

4 - Harness connector of side airbag

5 - Electrical four-way lumbar support connector

6 - Backrest heater connector

7 - Backrest heating wiring harness

8 - Electric four-way lumbar support wiring harness, tunnel side

Wiring harness for backrest, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

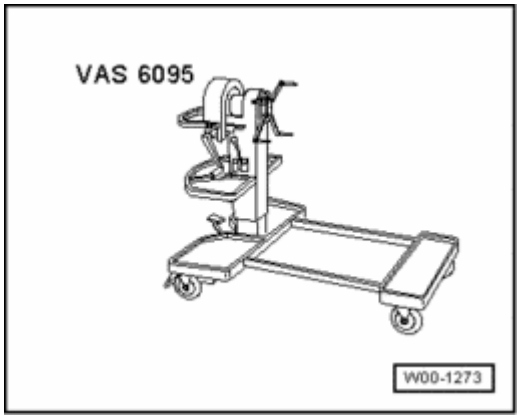


Fig. 620: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

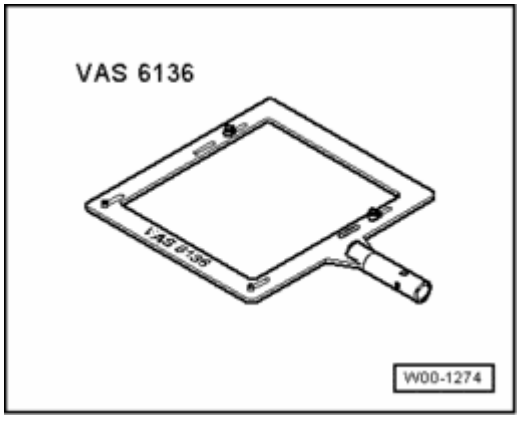


Fig. 621: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

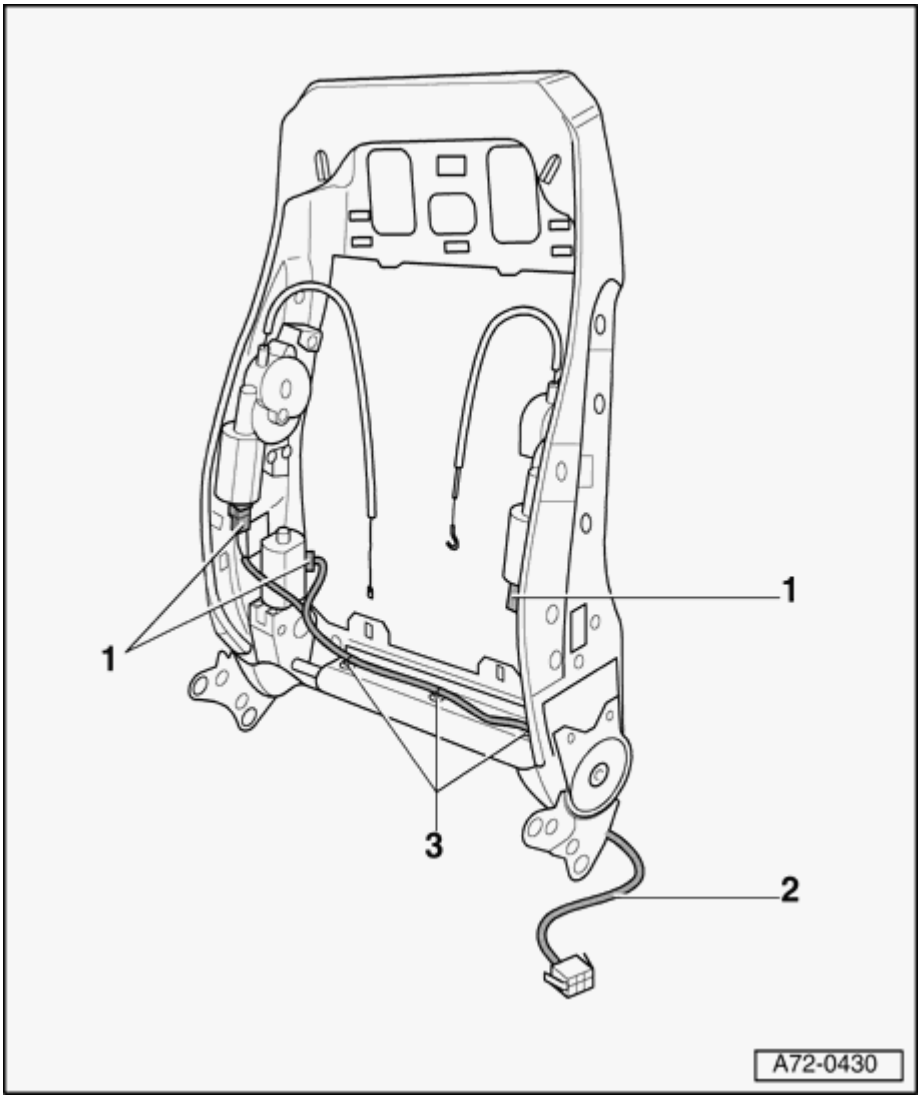


Fig. 622: Wiring Harness For Backrest Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Connector (3x)

2 - Cable harness

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.

cardiagn.com

- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
- Remove cover and padding from backrest --> **Cover and cushion for backrest, removing and installing (sport seat, standard seat)**.
- Remove cable ties - **3** - (3x).
- Remove connectors - **1** - (3x).
- Remove wiring harness - **2** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Cable ties (3x)

Front seat (electric memory seat) without active head restraint system, vehicles from 06.06 or from 11.06, assembly overview

NOTE:

- **With the introduction of backrests without the active head restraint system, the active head restraint system has been discontinued.**
- **The upper area of the backrest frame for backrests without the active head restraint system was changed.**
- **Inclination adjustment has been changed on headrests for backrest without active head restraint system.**
- **The rear side of the upholstery was adapted in the upper area of the changed backrest frame.**
- **With the introduction of backrests without the active head restraint system, the mount for four-way lumbar support in the upper area of the backrest frame has changed.**
- **Removal and installation of curvature and height adjustment motors for four-way lumbar support is similar to removal and installation on backrests with active head restraint system.**
- **The covers are identical for backrests with and without the active head restraint system.**

CAUTION: For safety reasons, headrests from vehicles with the active head restraint system should not be used on seats without the active head restraint system.

cardiagn.com

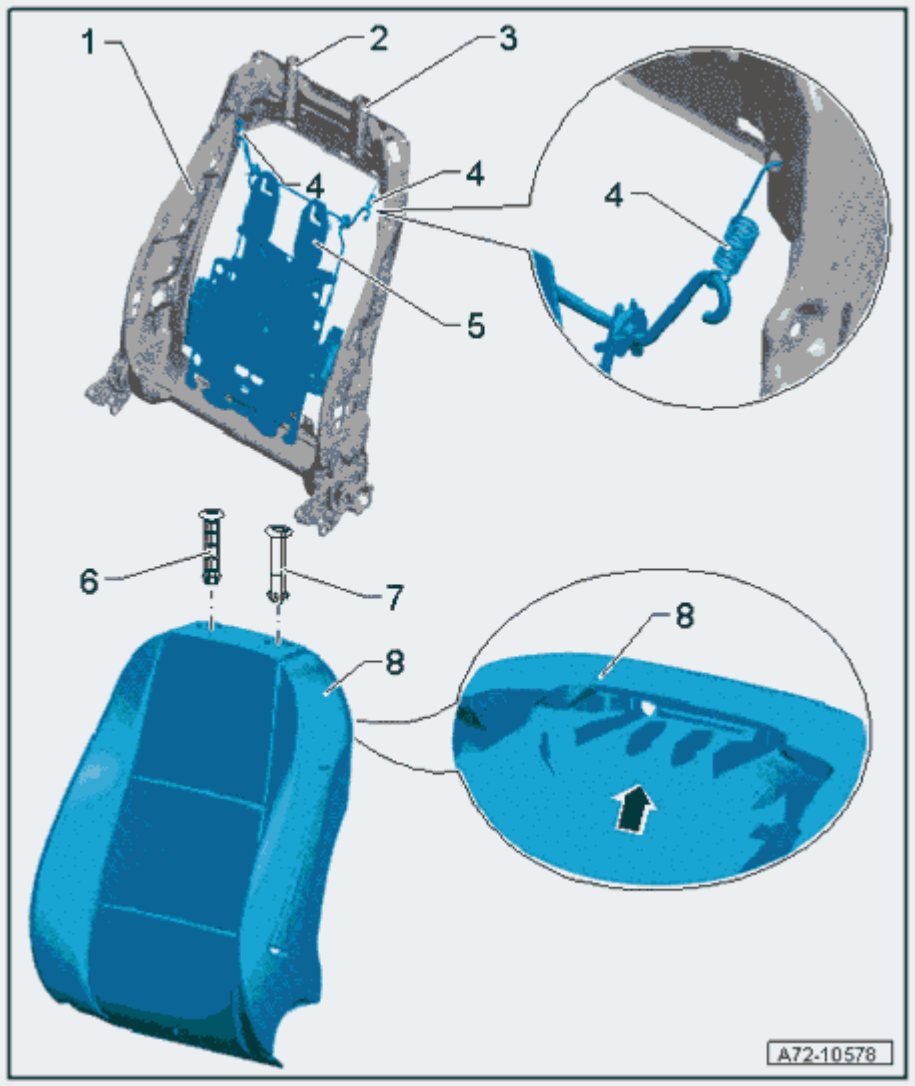


Fig. 623: Front Seat (Electric Memory Seat) Without Active Head Restraint System, Vehicles From 06.06 Or From 11.06, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest frame

2 - Right headrest guide mount

- Welded with backrest frame

3 - Left headrest guide mount

- Welded with backrest frame

4 - Spring

cardiagn.com

- Qty. 2
- Engaged in backrest frame
- To upper four-way lumbar support mount

5 - four-way lumbar support

- Removing and installing --> **Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing four-way lumbar support**

6 - Right headrest guide

- Removing and installing --> **Headrest guides, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**

7 - Left headrest guide

- Removing and installing --> **Headrest guides, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**

8 - Upholstery

- Rear side adapted to new backrest in upper area
- Removing and installing --> **Cover and cushion for backrest, removing and installing (sport seat, standard seat)**

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing headrests

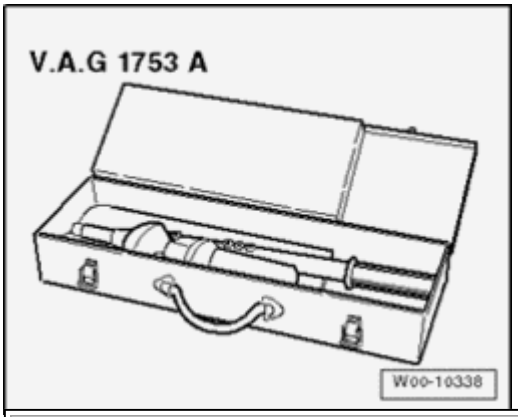
Head rests, removing and installing --> **Headrest with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing**

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing backrest cover

Backrest cover, removing and installing --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing four-way lumbar support

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required



cardiagn.com

Fig. 624: Special Pop Rivet Pliers V.A.G 1753A
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special pop rivet pliers V.A.G 1753A

Removing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions.

- Remove front seat (electric memory seat) --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.

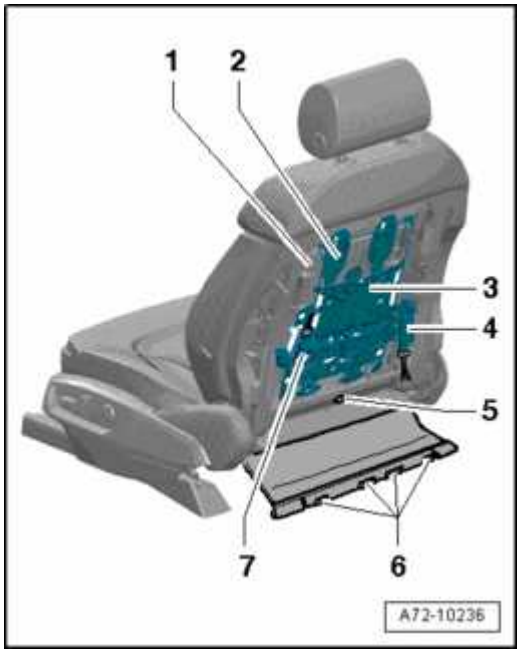


Fig. 625: Backrest Without Active Head Restraint System - Four-Way Lumbar Support Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry fastening strips - **6** - (Qty. 4) out with a screwdriver.
- Insert foil between upholstery and backrest frame to protect against metal particles.
- Drill out rivet - **5** -.
- Disconnect electrical connectors at lumbar support curvature and height adjustment motors - **4** - and - **7** -.

cardiagn.com

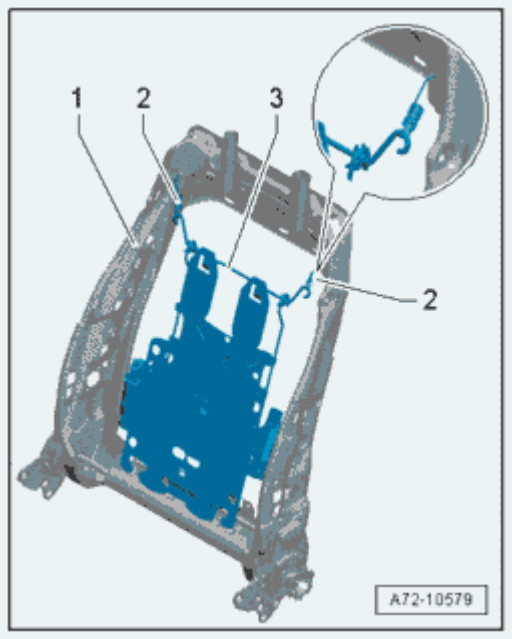


Fig. 626: Disengaging Four-Way Lumbar Support With Springs At Backrest Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage four-way lumbar support - **3** - with springs - **2** - (Qty. 2) at backrest frame - **3** -.

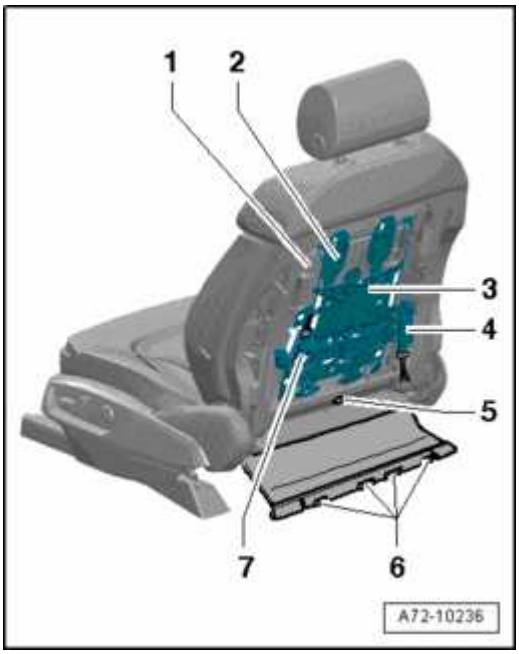


Fig. 627: Backrest Without Active Head Restraint System - Four-Way Lumbar Support Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect Velcro connector between lumbar support - **2** - and backrest padding - **1** -.
- Disengage lumbar support - **2** - at top of support frame - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove lumbar support frame - **3** - with lumbar support - **2** -.

Installing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag system, general safety precautions.

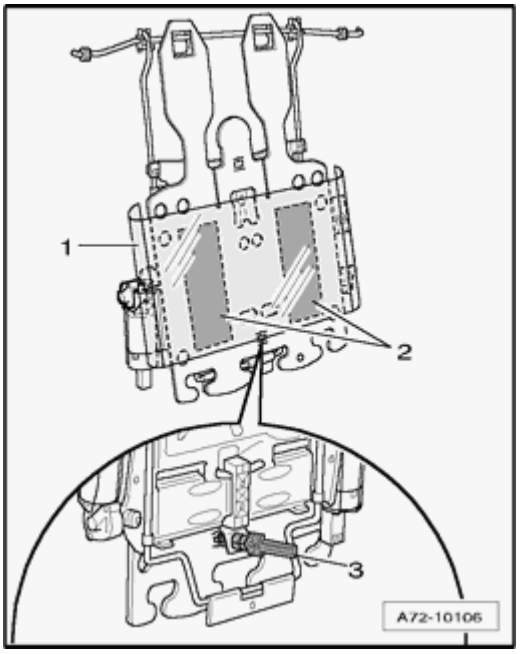


Fig. 628: Securing Four-Way Lumbar Support With Assembly Aid And Plastic Film To Four-Way Lumbar Support
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Lay plastic film - **1** - over Velcro strips - **2** - on lumbar support. Secure plastic film on lumbar support.
- Ensure lumbar support is attached to lumbar support frame with assembly fastener - **3** - or a suitable screw.
- Position lumbar support frame behind backrest and engage lumbar support frame at top left and right in mounts on frame.

cardiagn.com

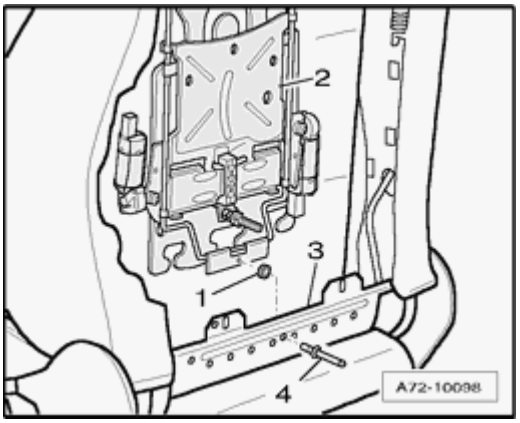


Fig. 629: Four-Way Lumbar Support With Backrest Frame, Riveting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Before securing rivet - **4** - , a plastic washer - **1** - must be placed between lumbar support - **2** - and backrest frame - **3** -.
- Rivet lumbar support frame - **2** - with backrest frame - **3** -.
- Remove plastic film between backrest padding and lumbar support.
- Press lumbar support Velcro fastener onto backrest padding to secure.

- Connect electrical connectors at curvature and height adjustment motors.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION: Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.

NOTE:

- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery with ignition on, procedure -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

cardiagn.com

- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing four-way lumbar support adjusting motors

Motors for:

- Drivers Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor V125 or V126 , removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing**
- Drivers Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor V129 or V130 , removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing**

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing headrest guides

Headrest guides, removing and installing --> **Headrest guides, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing cover with upholstery

Cover with upholstery, removing and installing --> **Cover and cushion for backrest, removing and installing (sport seat, standard seat)**

Backrest without active head restraint system, separating cover from upholstery

Separating cover from upholstery --> **Cover and upholstery for seat pan, removing and installing (standard seat)**

FRONT RECARO SEATS, VEHICLES THROUGH 10.04

Seat, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

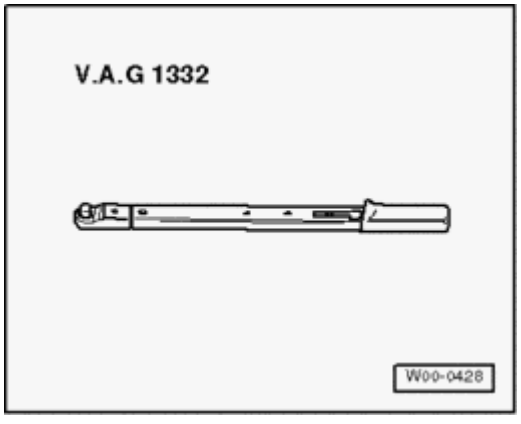


Fig. 630: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1332
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1332

NOTE:

- **Before disconnecting battery: Obtain radio code.**

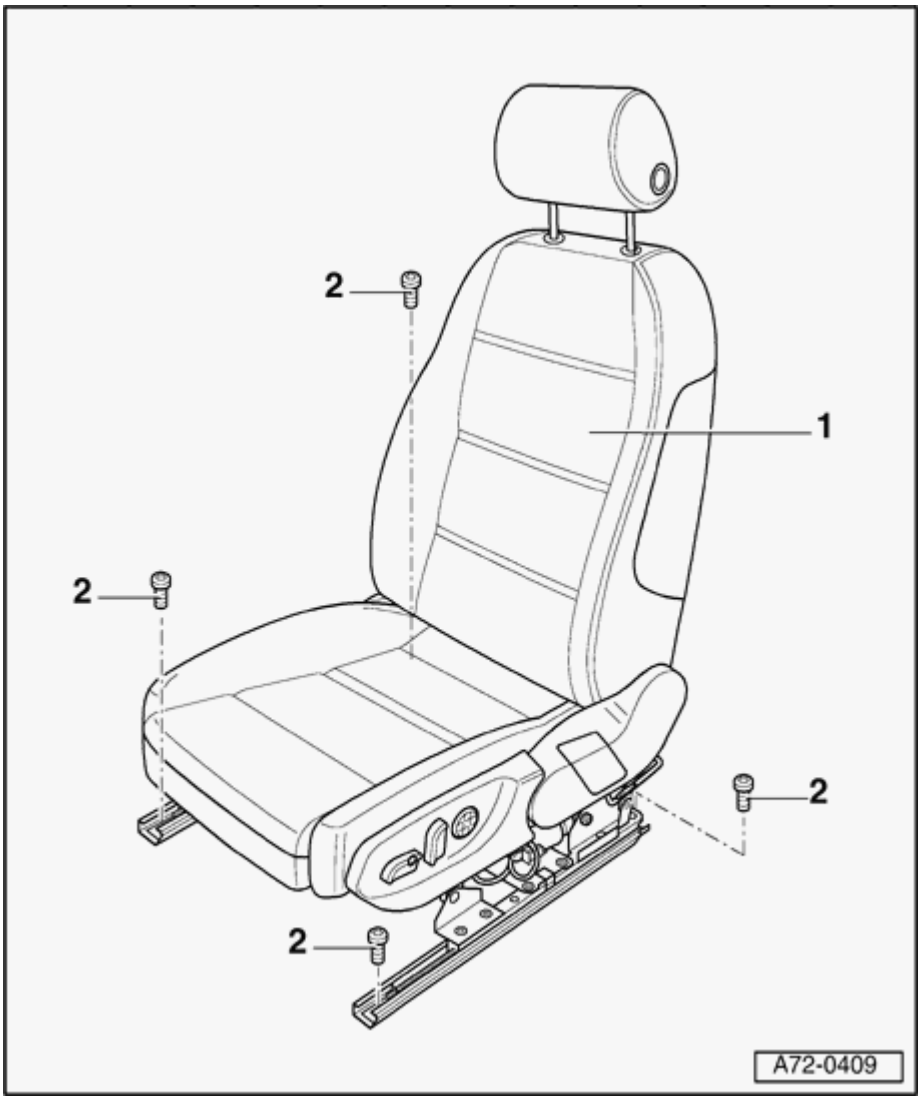


Fig. 631: Seat Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

- Removal:

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

- Remove front seat rail covers --> **Front seat rail covers, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove rear seat rail covers --> **Rear seat rail covers, removing and installing**.
- Push front seat - **1** - fully upward and to the rear.
- Remove front bolts - **2** - (2x).

- Move seat forward.
- Remove rear bolts - **2** - (2x).
- Disconnect battery ground wire -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

CAUTION: Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.

- Tip front seat - **1** - back.
- Disconnect harness connectors --> **Disconnecting connections**.
- Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:
- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Remove Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 only after installing front seat --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.

NOTE:
- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Connect connector to couplings on connector station location in floor --> **Disconnecting connections**.
- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside

cardiagn.com

the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

2 - Screw

- 50 Nm
- Qty. 4

Seat with faulty control module or seat fore-aft adjustment motor, removing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

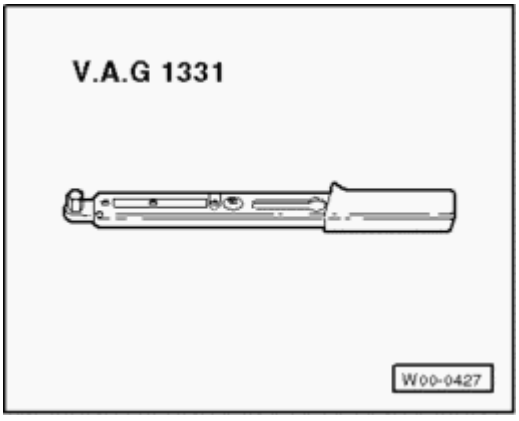


Fig. 632: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

NOTE:

- **If possible: Tilt seat up.**
- **Seat is shown without upholstery and without backrest in picture for the sake of a better illustration.**

cardiagn.com

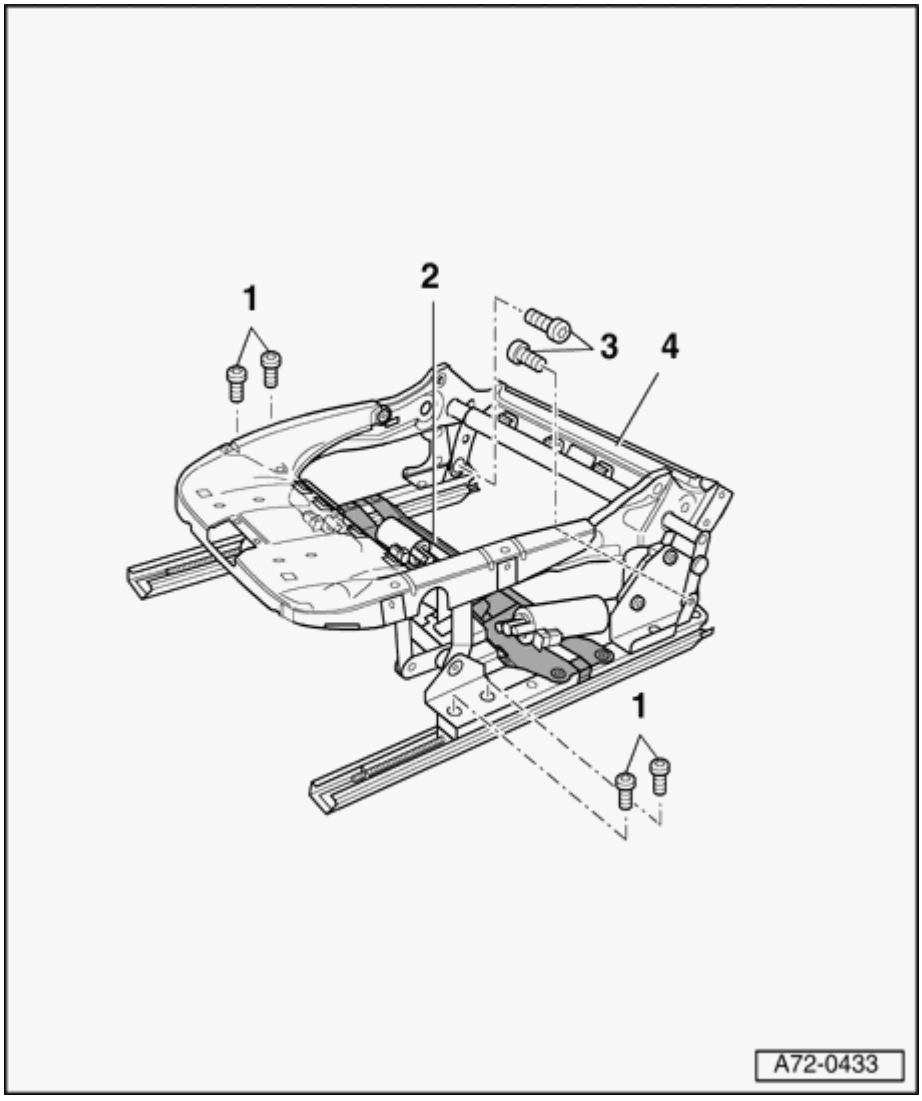


Fig. 633: Seat With Faulty Control Module Or Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment Motor, Removing Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Screws (4x)

- Tightening torque 17 Nm

2 - Motor mounting plate

3 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 19 Nm

4 - Seat pan upper frame

- Removal:

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).
- Fold seat all the way forward.
- Remove screws - **1** - (4x).
- Loosen wiring harness from motors and control module.
- With a second technician, remove backrest with seat pan from vehicle.

If control module is defective:

- Disconnect connector on seat fore-aft adjustment motor.
- Run seat fore/aft adjustment motor using an external power source until seat rail covered bolts are visible.
- Remove bolts.
- Remove control module --> **Control module, removing and installing**.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

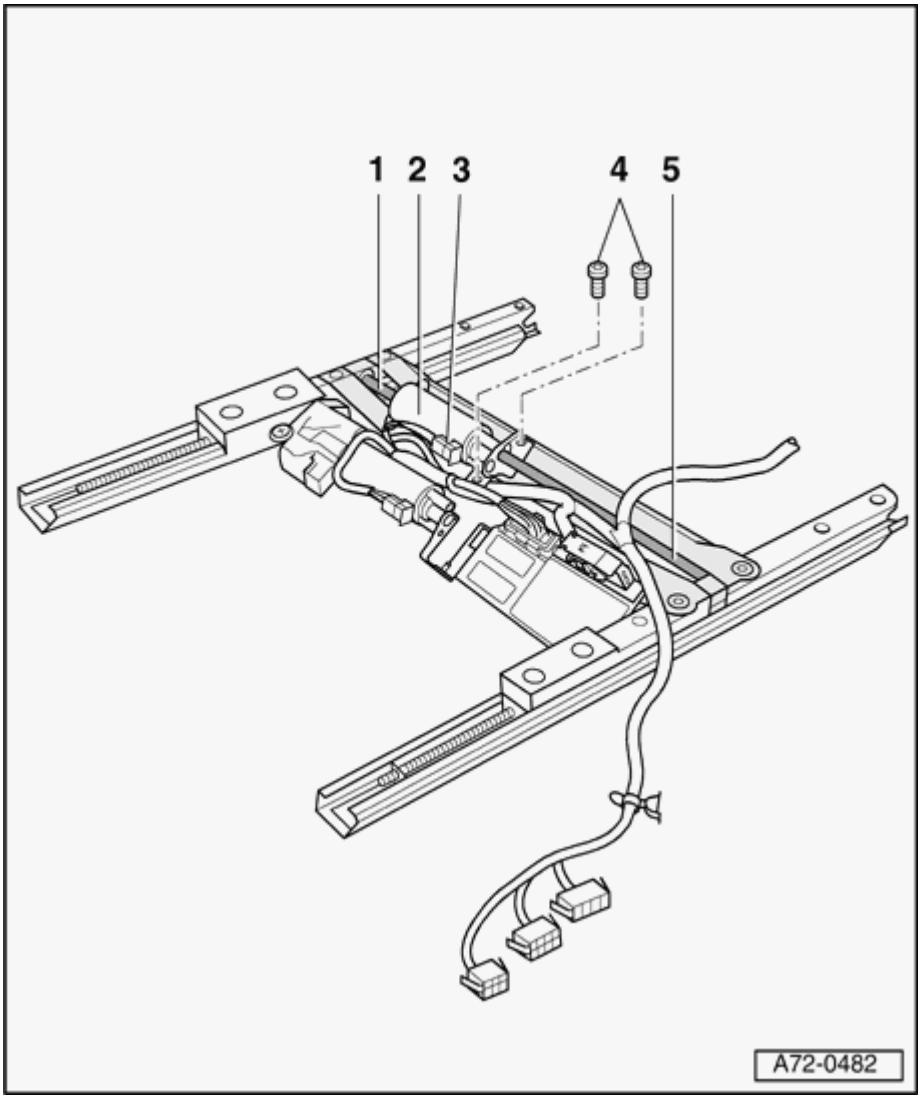


Fig. 634: Seat With Faulty Control Module Or Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment Motor, Installing Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Shaft

2 - Longitudinal seat adjustment motor

- Removal:

If longitudinal seat adjustment motor is defective:

- Remove bolts - **4** - (2x) at seat fore-aft adjustment motor.
- Disengage seat fore-aft adjustment motor - **2** - from both shafts - **1** - and - **5** -.
- Using a cordless drill and long shaft - **5** - , move both seat rails by sliding until the concealed bolts are visible.
- Remove bolts.

cardiagn.com

- Replace seat lower frame with fore-aft adjustment motor.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Connector

4 - Screws, (2x)

5 - Shaft

Front seat rail covers, removing and installing

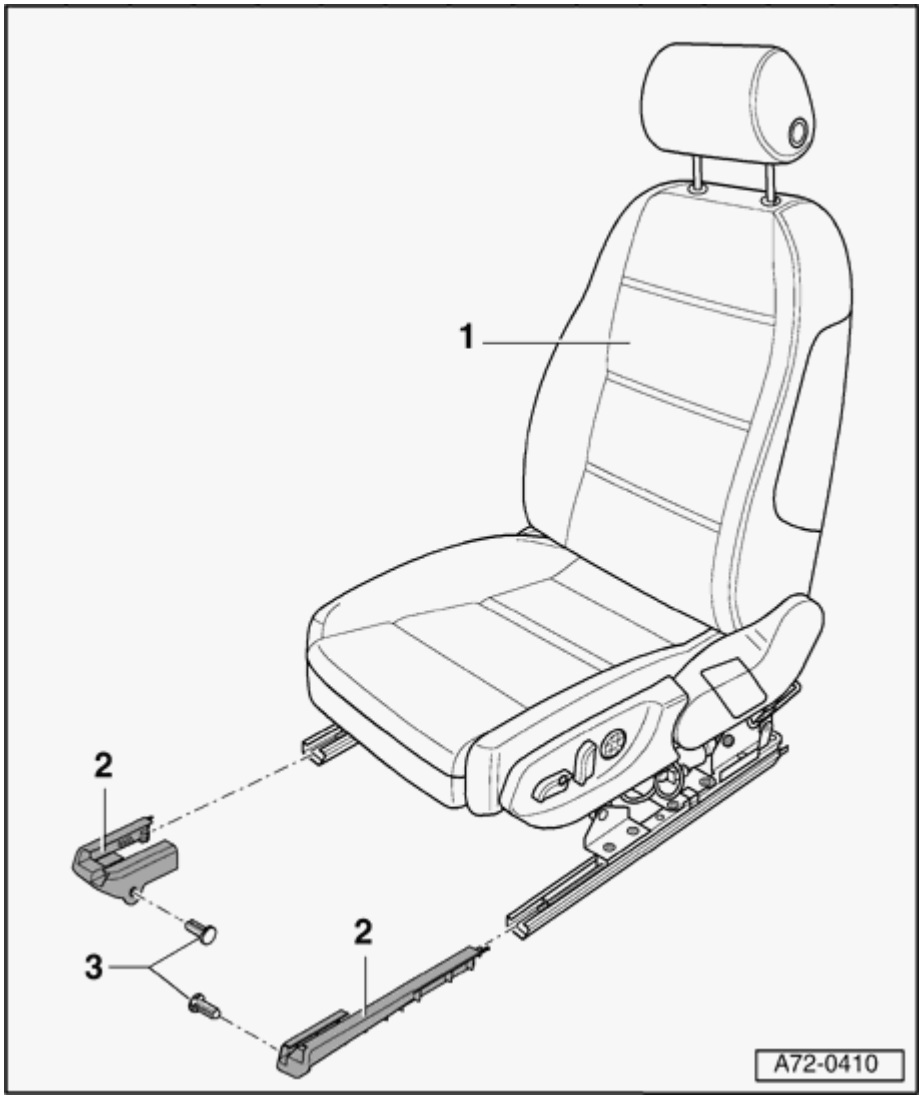


Fig. 635: Front Seat Rail Covers Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Front seat

2 - Seat rail covers (Qty. 2)

- Removal:

  - Move front seat - **1** - fully to the rear.
  - Remove securing clips - **3** - (2x).
  - Remove seat rail covers - **2** - (2x).

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Securing clips (Qty. 2)

Rear seat rail covers, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

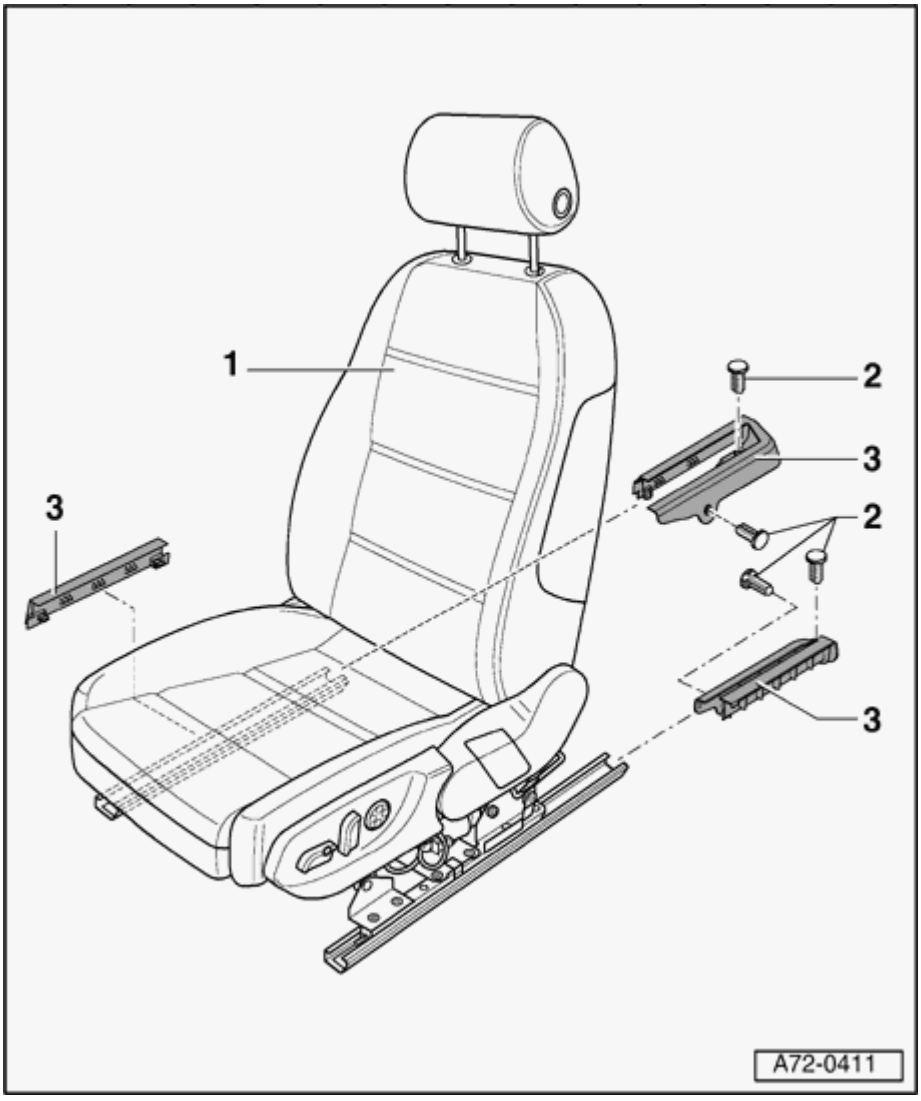


Fig. 636: Rear Seat Rail Covers Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Securing clips (Qty. 4)

3 - Seat rail covers (Qty. 3)

- Removal:

  - Move front seat - **1** - fully to the front.
  - Remove securing clips - **2** - (4x).
  - Remove seat rail covers - **3** - (3x).

- **Installing:**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

Disconnecting connections

NOTE:

- **Technician must be grounded before disconnecting ignition and ground wiring, touching door striker or body.**

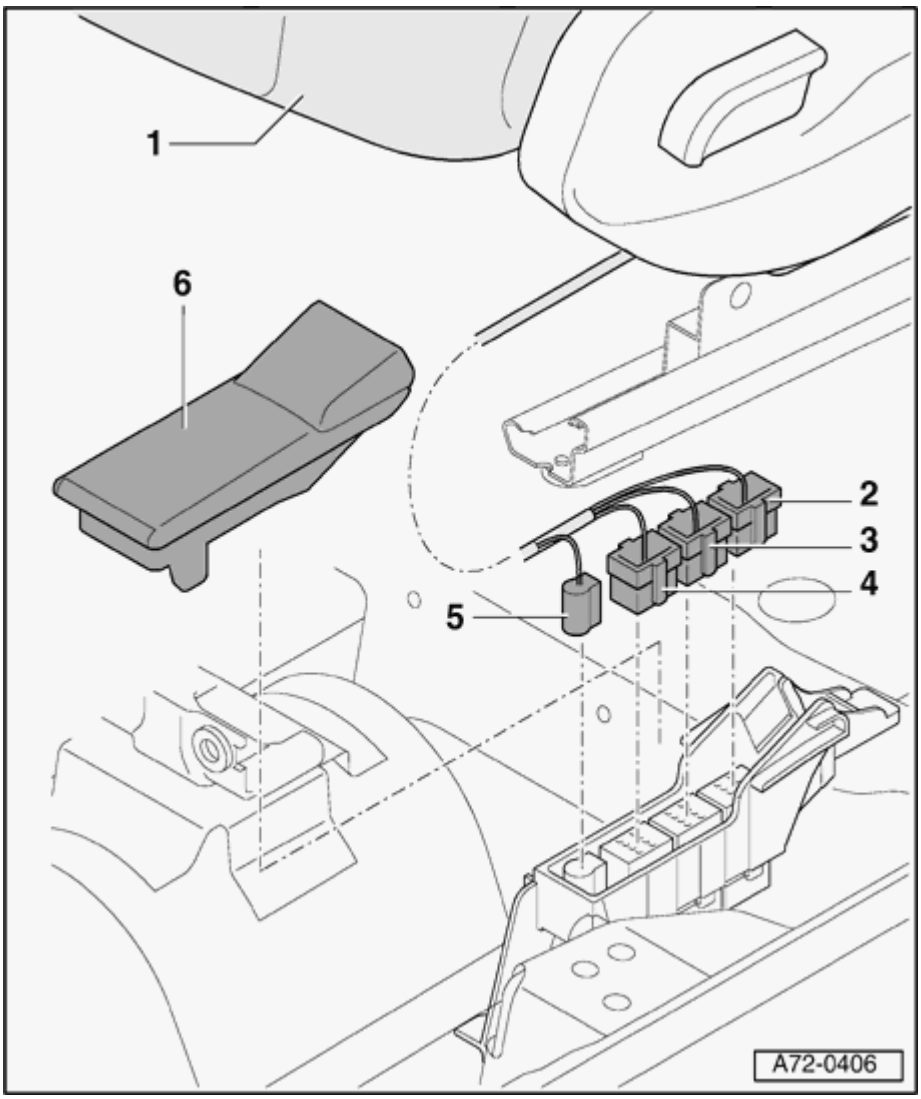


Fig. 637: Disconnecting Connections
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Belt buckle sensor connector (black)

3 - Seat heating connector (green)

cardiagn.com

4 - Current supply connector (red)

5 - Airbag connector (yellow)

6 - Connector point cover

- Removal:

  - Tip front seat - **1** - back.
  - Remove coupling station cover - **6** - upward.
  - Press in tab on airbag connector - **5** - on tunnel side and disconnect airbag connector - **5** -.
  - Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.
  - Press in tab on connector for voltage supply - **4** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for voltage supply - **4** -.
  - Press in tab on airbag connector for heated seat - **3** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for heated seat - **3** -.

For vehicles with seatbelt fasten sensor:

  - Press in tab on connector for seatbelt fasten sensor - **2** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for seatbelt fasten sensor - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

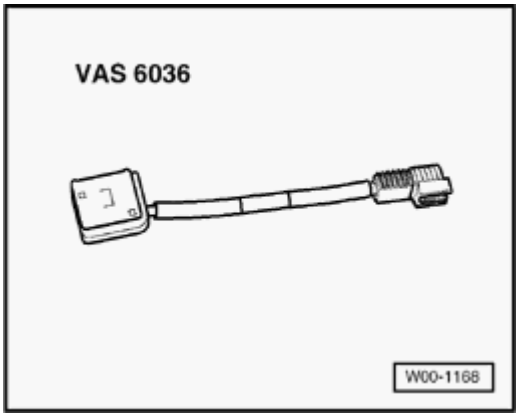


Fig. 638: Airbag Adapter VAS 6036
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Airbag adapter VAS 6036

CAUTION: Technician must be grounded before disconnecting ignition and ground wiring, touching door striker or body.

CAUTION: The Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 must stay connected to seat until seat is installed again.

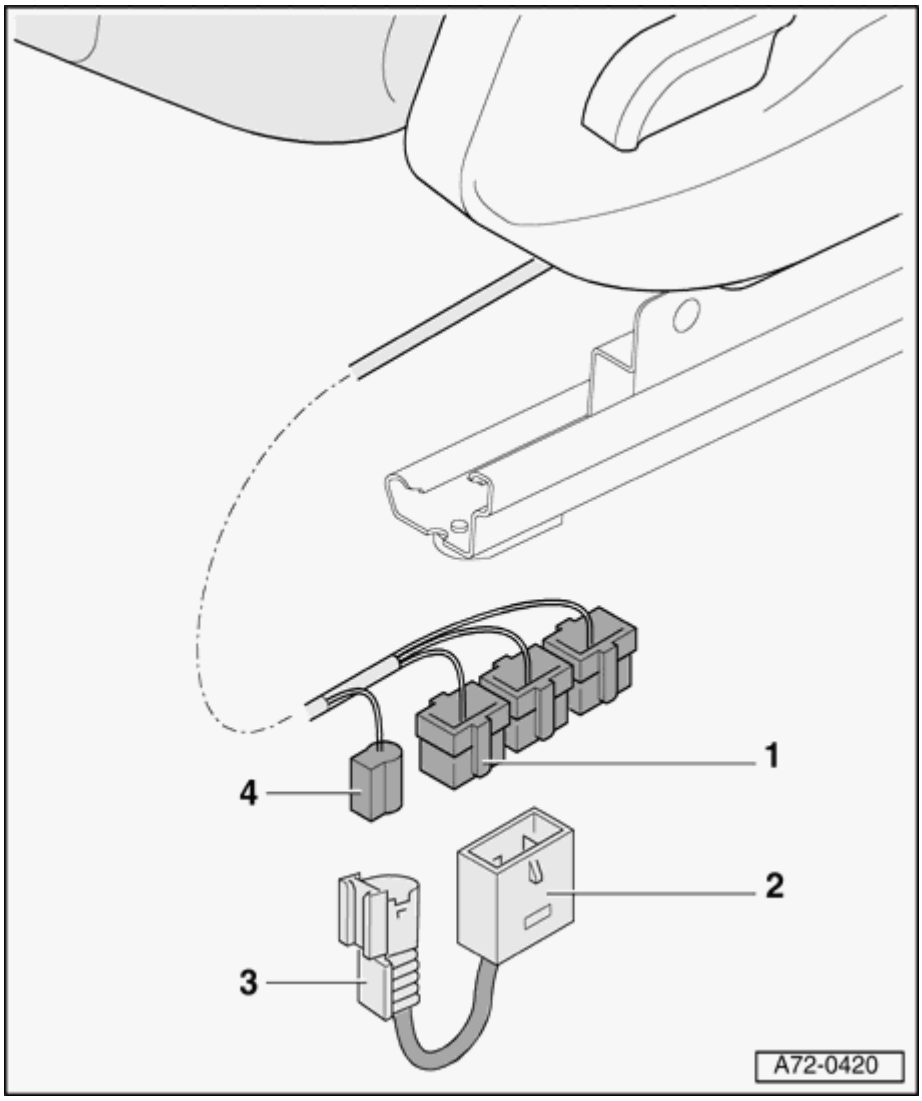


Fig. 639: Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , Connecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat connector power supply connector (red)

2 - Voltage supply connector for airbag adapter (red)

cardiagn.com

3 - Airbag adapter connector (yellow)

4 - Airbag connector (yellow)

- Disconnect ignition and ground wiring.
- Connect airbag connector - **4** - to airbag adapter connector - **3** -.

If present:

- Connect voltage supply connector for airbag adapter - **2** - to voltage supply connector for seat - **1** -.

Side airbag connector, disconnecting

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

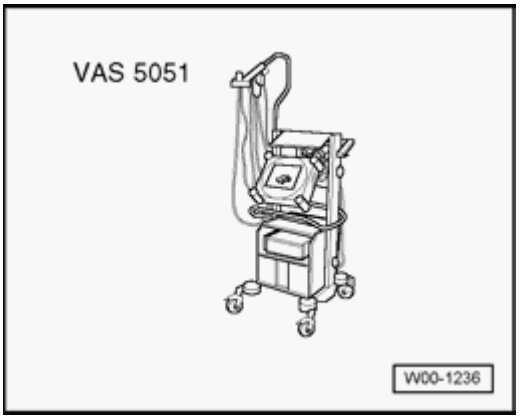


Fig. 640: Identifying Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing And Information System VAS 5051
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A

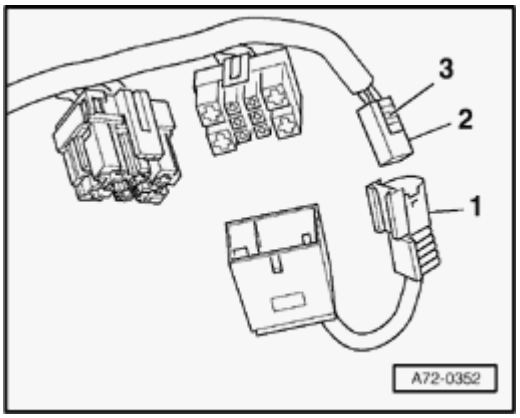


Fig. 641: Side Airbag Connector, Disconnecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Press catch - **3** - of airbag connector - **2** - out of airbag adapter connector - **1** - and disconnect airbag connector - **2** -.

NOTE:

- **Follow safety measures after connecting battery -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 shows a malfunction after assembly, DTC memory must be checked with Vehicle Diagnostic, Testing and Information System VAS 5051 A , cleared and then rechecked.**

Front backrest, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

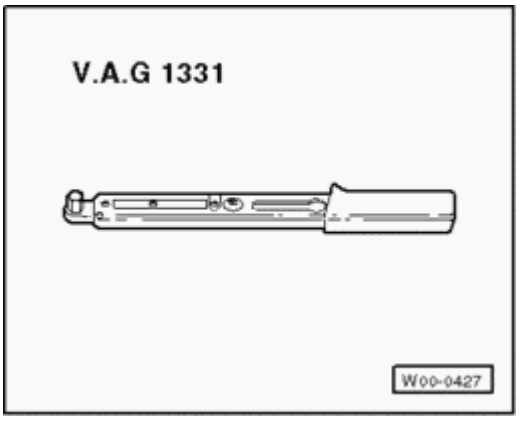


Fig. 642: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

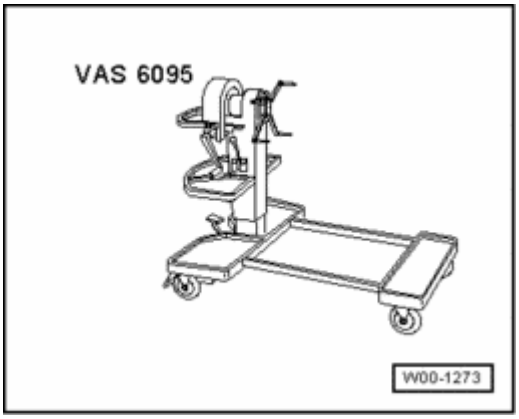


Fig. 643: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

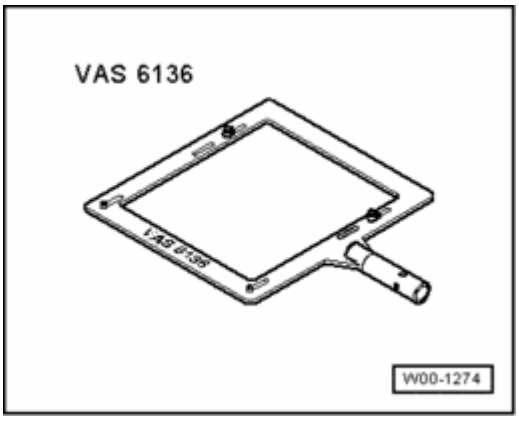


Fig. 644: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

cardiagn.com

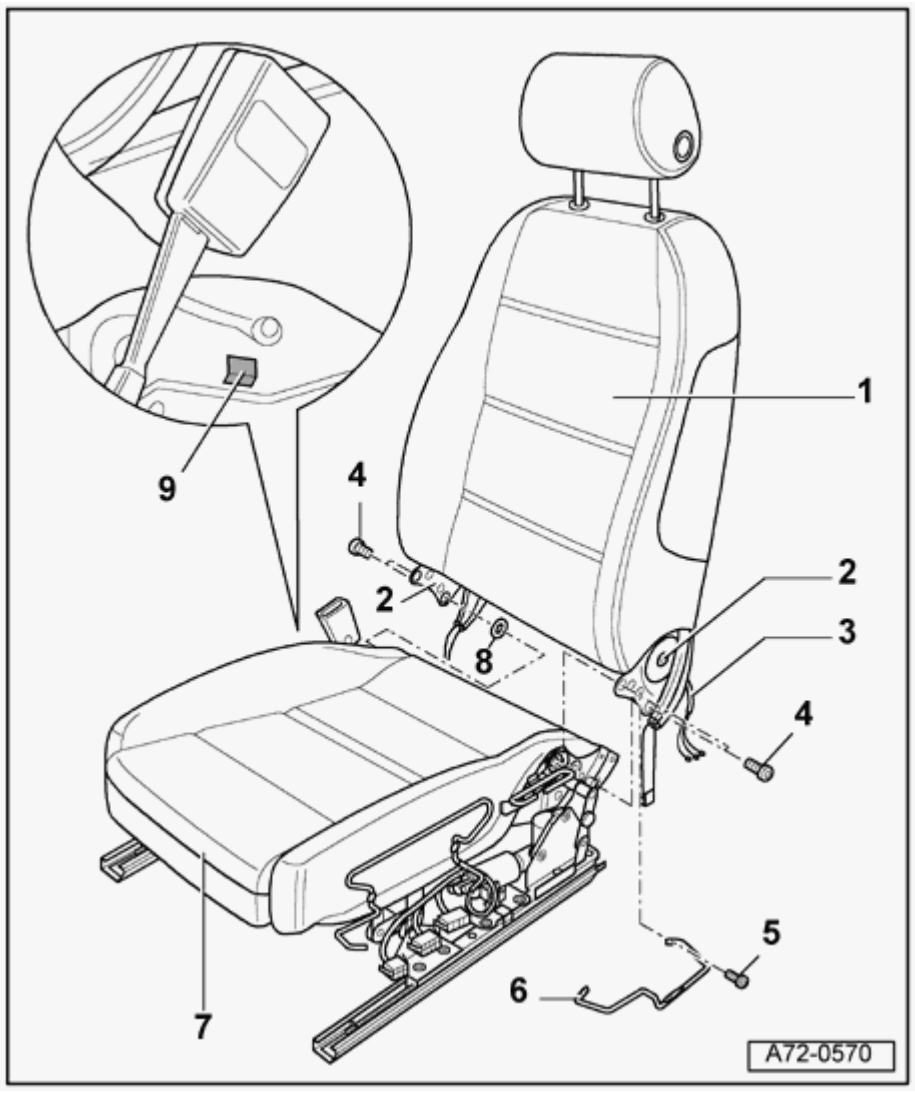


Fig. 645: Front Backrest Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
  - Remove screw - **5** -.
  - Turn bracket - **6** - upward.

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolts - **4** - (Qty. 4).
- Disengage retaining strip - **9** - from seat pan - **7** -.
- Pry off backrest mounting brackets - **2** - (Qty. 2) on guides in seat pan - **7** -.
- Tip backrest - **1** - forward on seat.
- Push cushion aside and carefully disconnect wiring harness - **3** - from seat pan - **7** -.
- Remove backrest - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Position spacer - **8** - on tunnel side onto lower guide in seat pan so that the spacer stands flush with guide.
- Always replace bolts - **4** - (Qty. 4).
- Cut threads in backrest frame before installing bolts - **4** - (Qty. 4).

For seats with seat memory:

- Perform a basic setting for backrest or seat after installing seat in vehicle.

2 - Backrest

- Qty. 2

3 - Cable harness

4 - Screw, self-locking

- 20 Nm
- Replace
- Qty. 4
- Threaded holes must always be cleaned (e.g. with a thread cutter)

5 - Screw

6 - Support

7 - Seat pan

8 - Spacer, tunnel side only

9 - Fastening strip

cardiagn.com

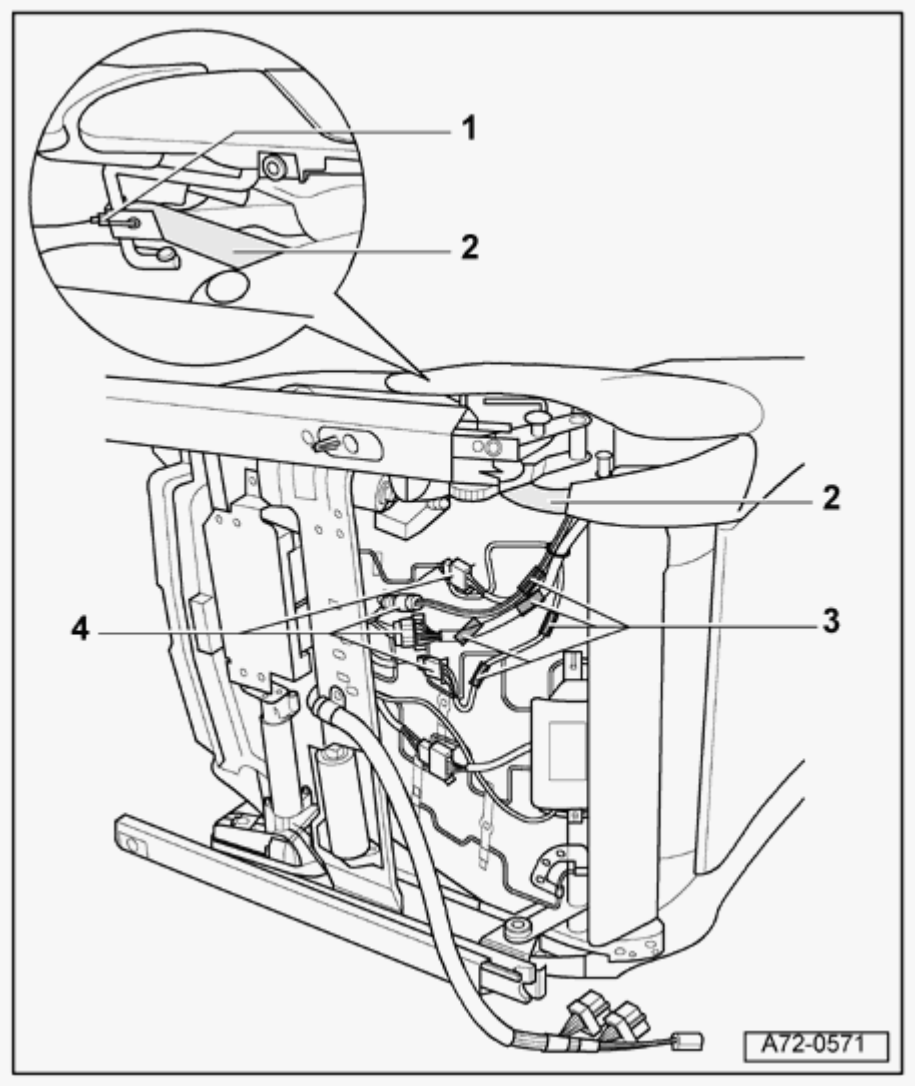


Fig. 646: Front Backrest Remove/Install Components (Seats With Seat Memory)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable tie

- Cut cable tie - **1** -.
- Remove rubber strap - **2** -.
- Disconnect connector - **4** - (Qty. 4).
- Remove adhesive strips on securing rails - **3** - (Qty. 5).

2 - Rubber strap

3 - Securing rail

- Qty. 5

cardiagn.com

4 - Connector

- Qty. 4

Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

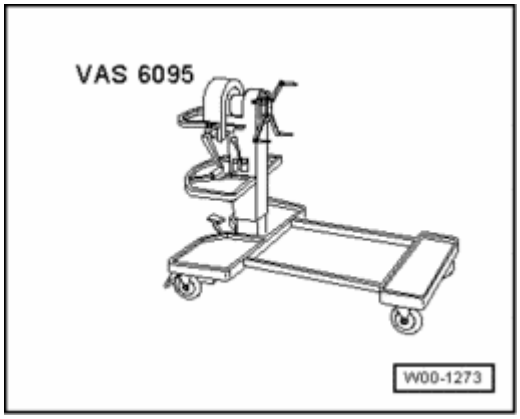


Fig. 647: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

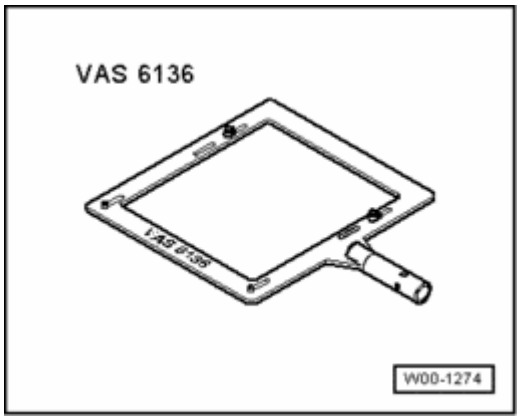


Fig. 648: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

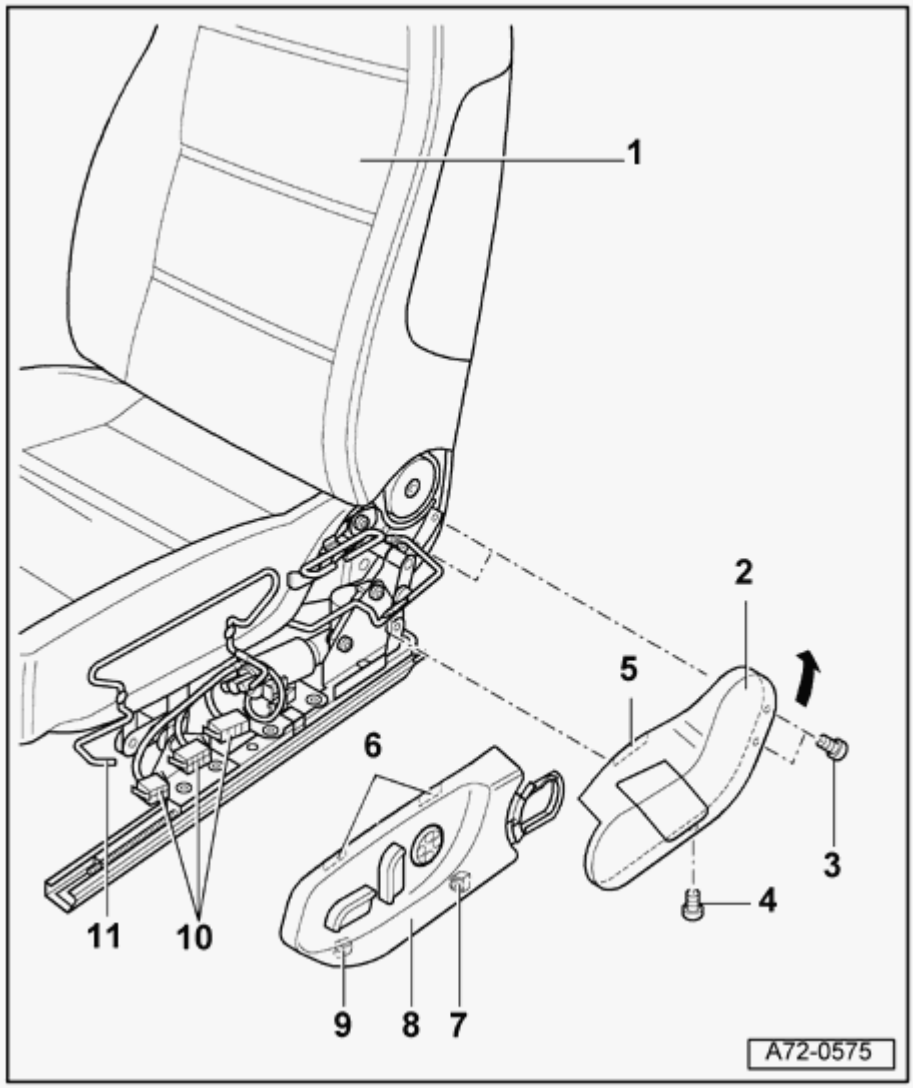


Fig. 649: Side Panels On Door Sill Side Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

2 - Rear side trim (sill side)

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).

  - Remove screw - **4** -.

cardiagn.com

- Disengage rear side panel - **2** - at bracket - **5** - upward.
- Disconnect rear side panel - **2** - from front side panel - **8** - using a turning motion in direction of arrow.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Screws, (2x)

4 - Screw

5 - Bracket

6 - Retainers (2x)

7 - Eye

8 - Front side trim (sill side)

- Removal:

- Push front side panel - **8** - toward front in order to disengage eyelet - **7** - from bracket - **11** -.
- Disengage front side panel - **8** - upward at brackets - **6** - (2x).
- Open locking mechanism - **9** -.
- Disconnect connectors - **10** - (3x).

- Remove front side panel - **8** -.

- **Installing:**

- Install side panels on door sill side - **2** - and - **8** - in reverse order of removal.

9 - Catch

10 - Connector (3x)

11 - Support

Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

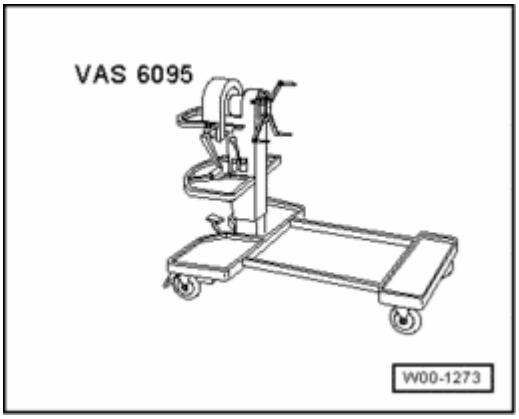


Fig. 650: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

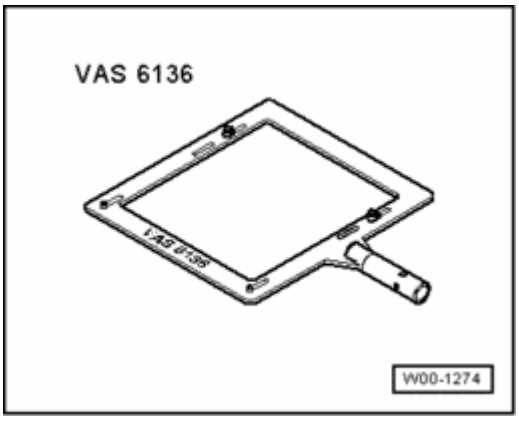


Fig. 651: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

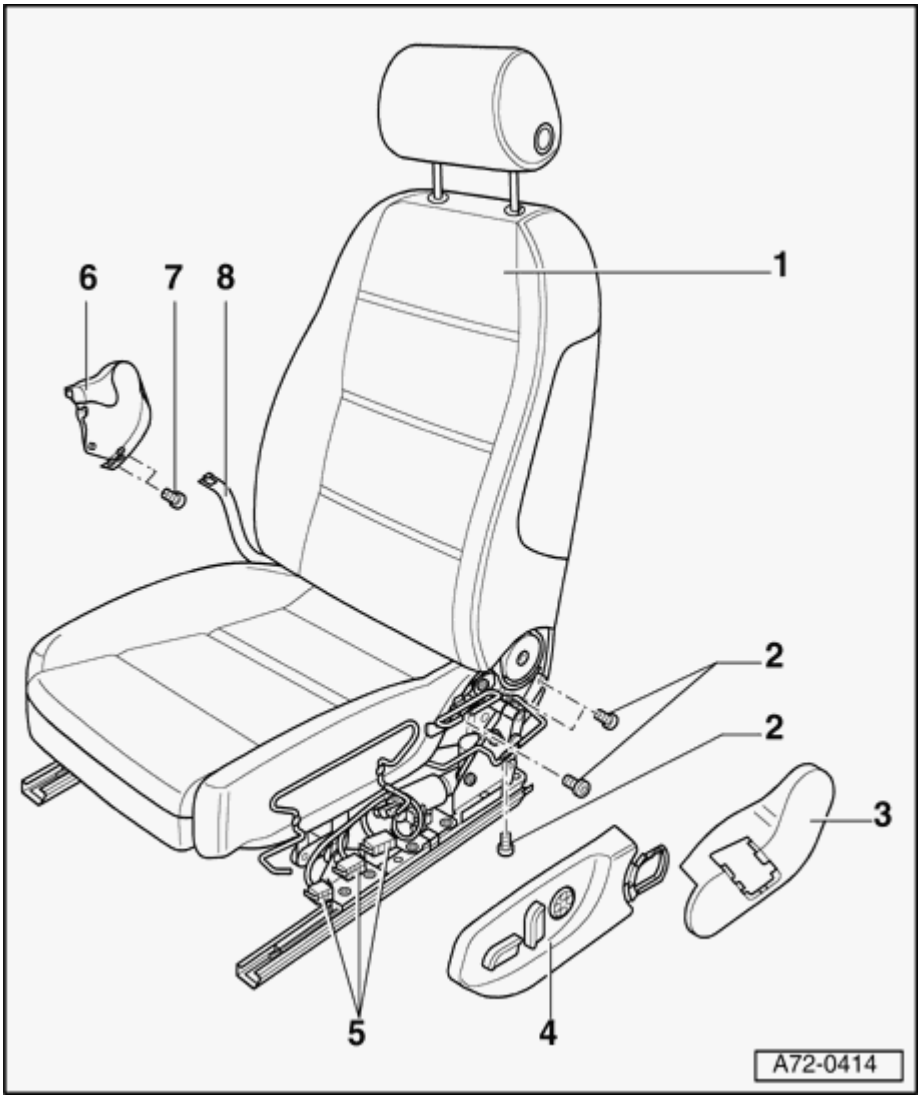


Fig. 652: Tunnel-Side Side Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

2 - Screws (4x)

3 - Rear side trim (sill side)

4 - Front side trim (sill side)

5 - Connector (3x)

6 - Side trim (tunnel side)

- Removal:

cardiagn.com

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove bolts - **7** - (2x).
- Remove side panel - **6** - upward.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

7 - Screws, (2x)

8 - Backrest cover rubber strap

Drawer, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

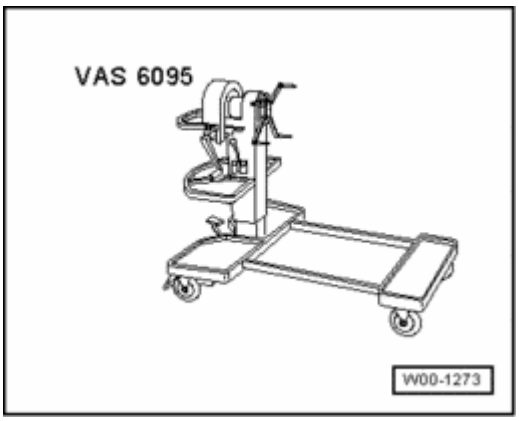


Fig. 653: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

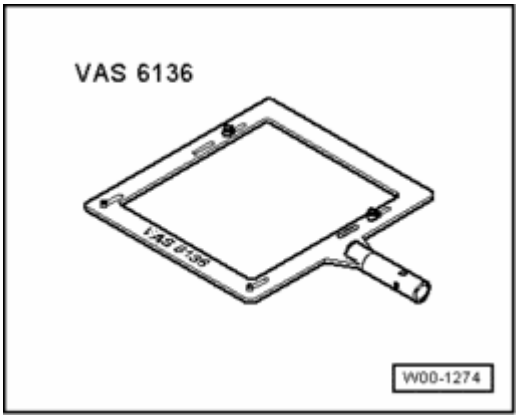
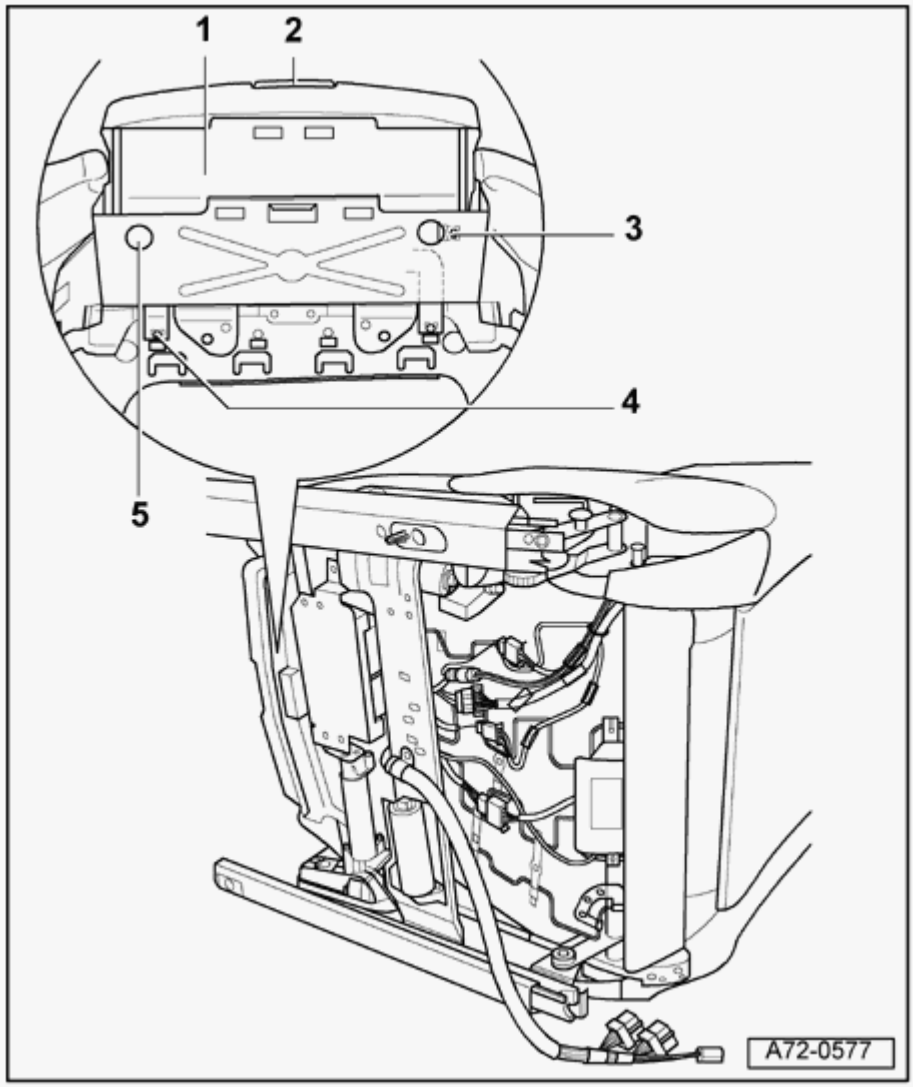


Fig. 654: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136



cardiagn.com

Fig. 655: Drawer Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Drawer

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Pull handle - **2** - and pull out drawer - **1** -.

  - Insert a screwdriver with inserted bit into opening - **5** - and remove the bolt installed beneath.
  - Remove bolts - **4** - (2x).
  - Remove screw - **3** -.
  - Remove drawer - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

  - Install drawer - **1** - in reverse order of removal.

2 - Grip

3 - Screw

4 - Screw

- Qty. 2

5 - Opening

Guide for side airbag, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

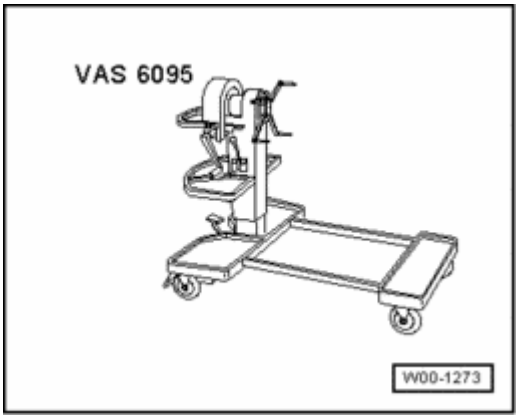


Fig. 656: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

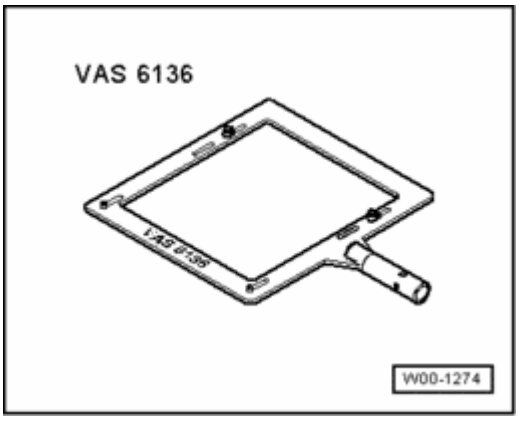


Fig. 657: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

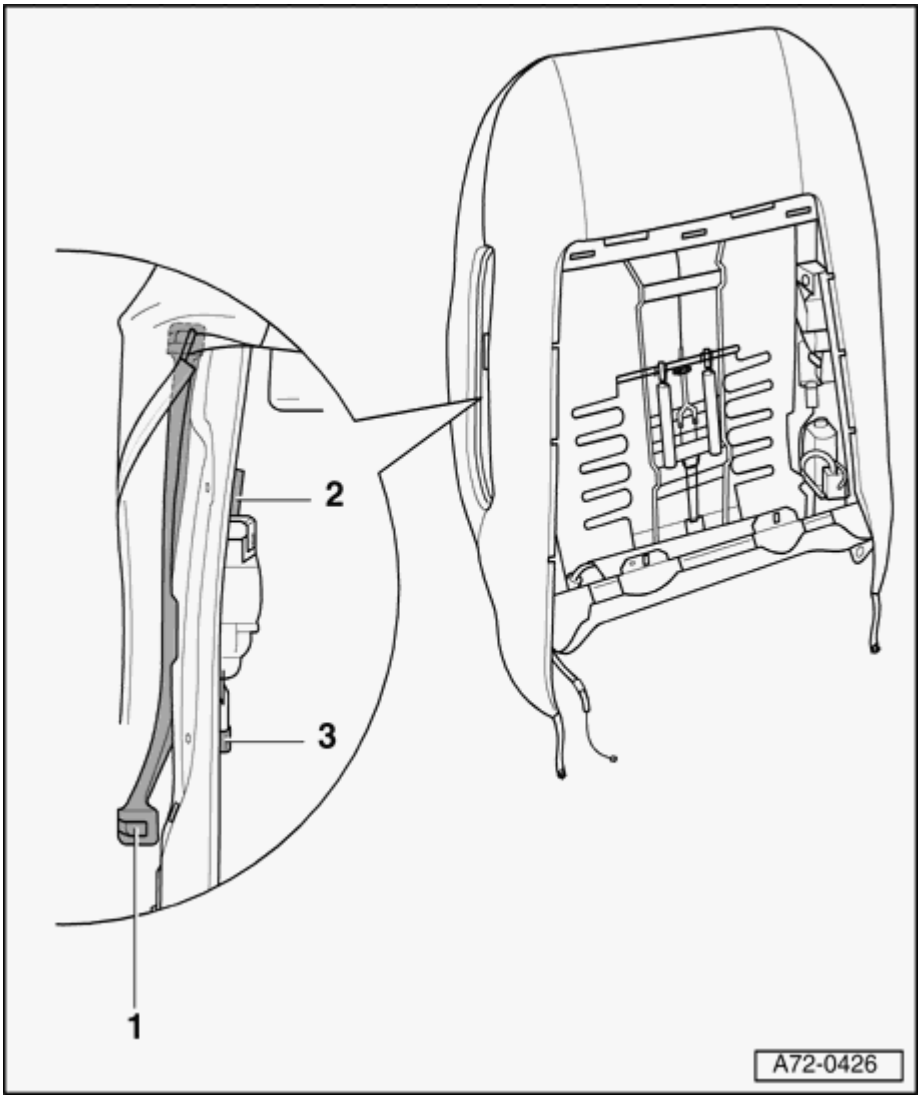


Fig. 658: Guide For Side Airbag Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Side airbag guide

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
  - Remove backrest frame --> **Backrest frame, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side airbag --> **Side airbags, servicing**.
  - Press clip - **3** - together and remove clip - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

- Pry out bracket - **2** - from inside.
- Remove guide for side airbag - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Retainer

3 - Clip

Seat adjustment switch, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

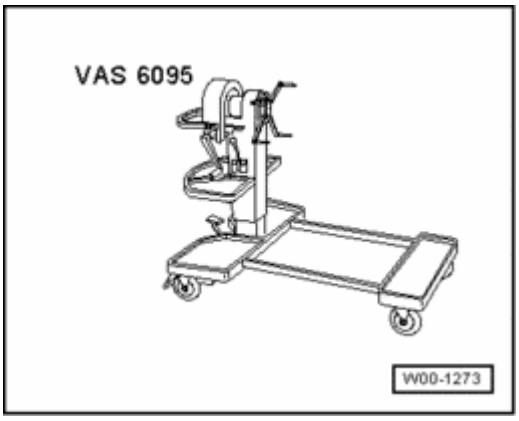


Fig. 659: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

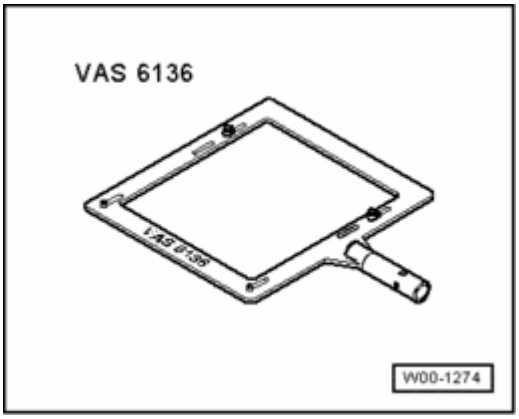


Fig. 660: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove seat side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.

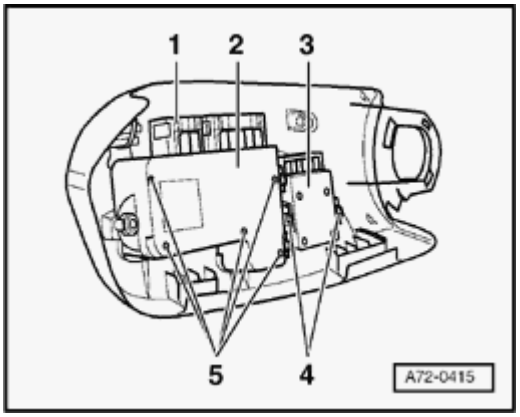


Fig. 661: Seat Adjustment Switch Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **5** - (5x).

Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm

- Remove seat adjustment switch - **2** -.
- Remove circuit board with connectors - **1** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Four-way lumbar support switch, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

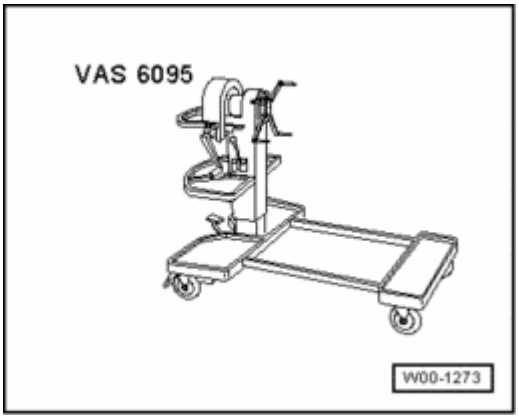


Fig. 662: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

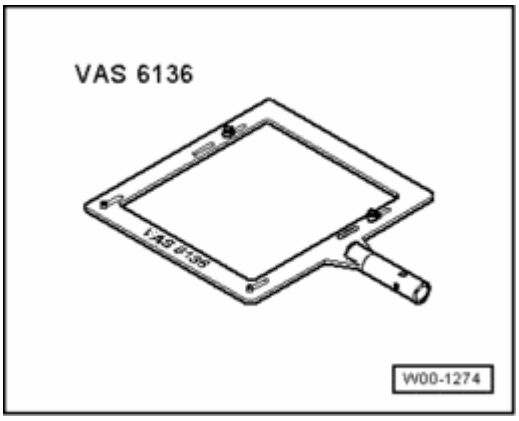


Fig. 663: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove seat side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

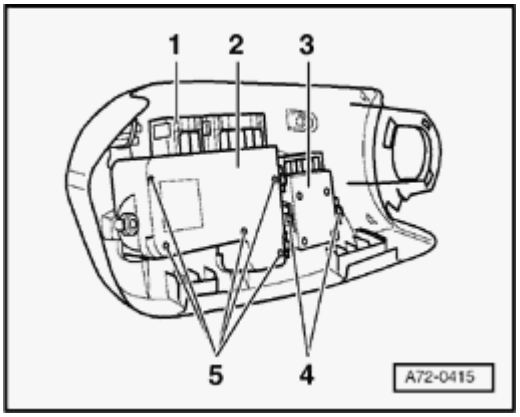


Fig. 664: Four-Way Lumbar Support Switch Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **4** - (2x).

Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm

- Remove four-way lumbar support switch - **3** -.

Installing

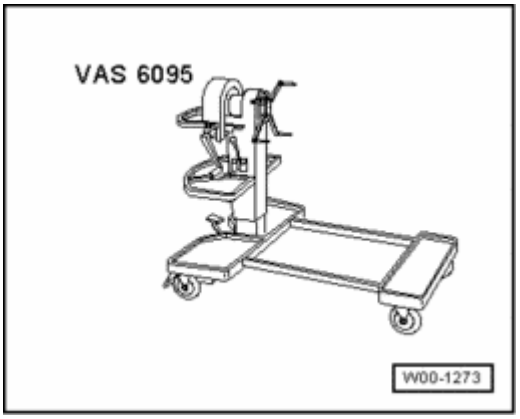
Installation is reverse of removal.

Control module, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **The control module for power seat with memory is located beneath the drivers seat.**
- **With malfunctioning control module, the upper frame of seat pan with backrest must be removed --> Front seat with malfunctioning motor for seat fore-aft adjustment or malfunctioning control module, removing.**

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required



cardiagn.com

Fig. 665: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

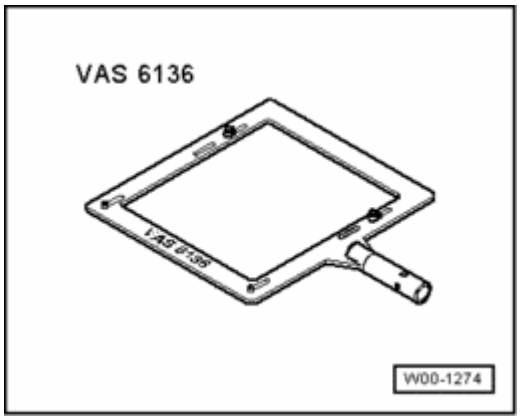


Fig. 666: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.

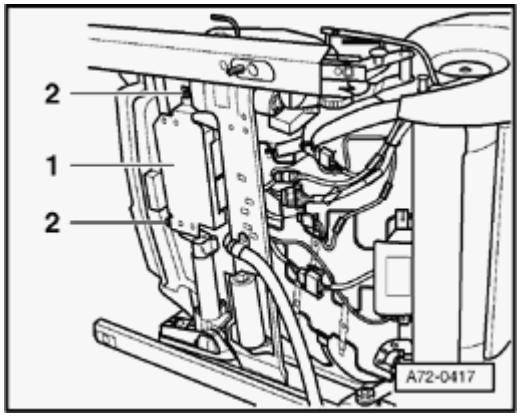


Fig. 667: Identifying Bolts & Control Module
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).

Tightening torque: 1.5 Nm

cardiagn.com

- Turn control module - **1** - around.

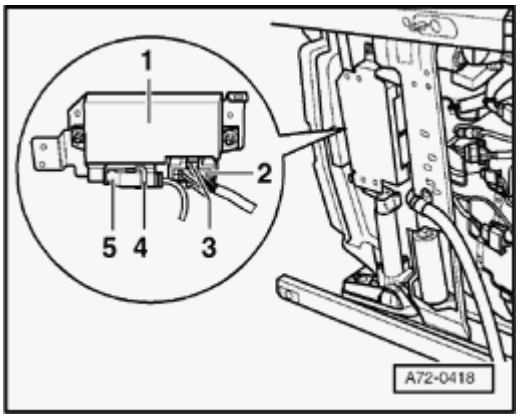


Fig. 668: Identifying Retaining Bracket, Connectors, Catches & Control Module
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage retaining bracket - **4** - and disconnect connector - **5** -.
- Press in catches - **3** - (2x) and disconnect connector - **2** -.
- Remove control module - **1** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Longitudinal seat adjustment motor, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **With malfunctioning motor, the lower frame of seat pan must be replaced - -> Front seat with malfunctioning motor for seat fore-aft adjustment or malfunctioning control module, removing.**

cardiagn.com

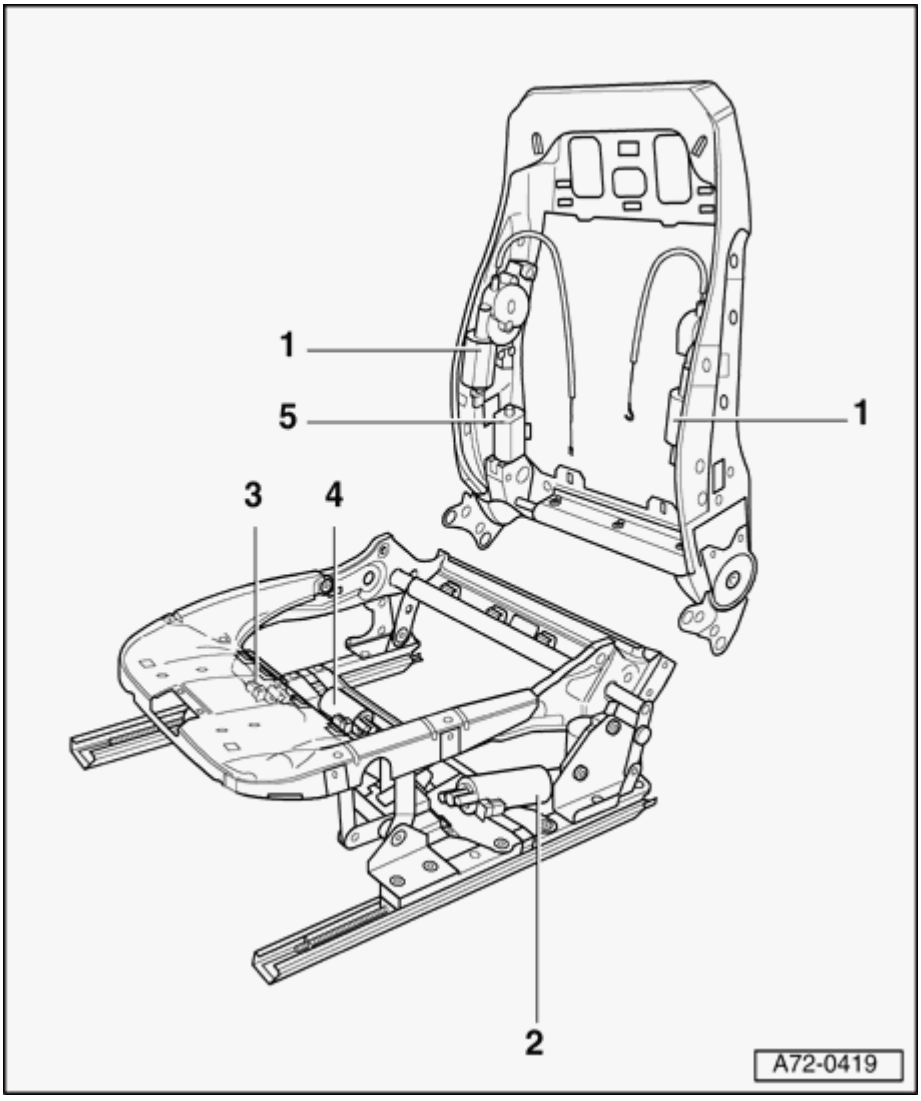


Fig. 669: Longitudinal Seat Adjustment Motor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Four-way lumber support motors (Qty. 2)

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

3 - Seat angle adjustment motor

4 - Longitudinal seat adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor

Seat height adjustment motor, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

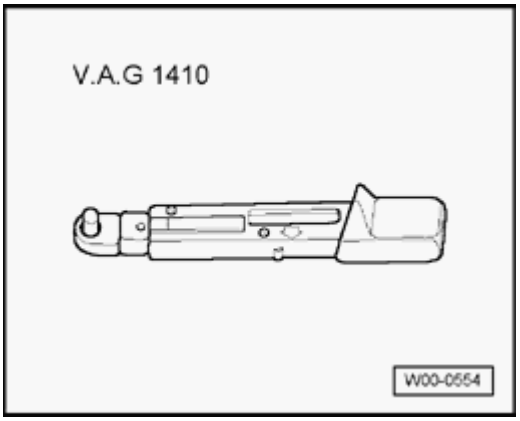


Fig. 670: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

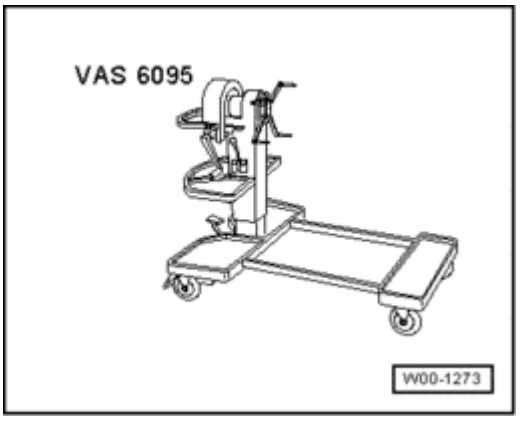


Fig. 671: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

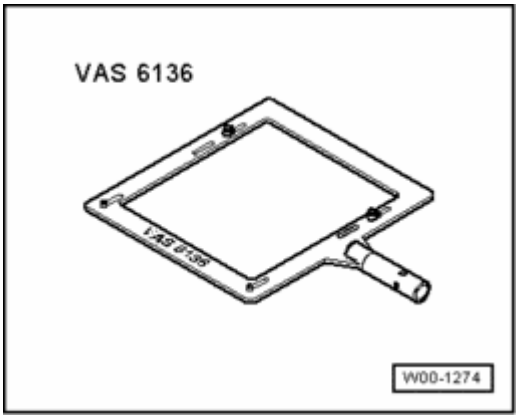


Fig. 672: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

NOTE:

- **If motor is defective, replace upper seat pan frame.**

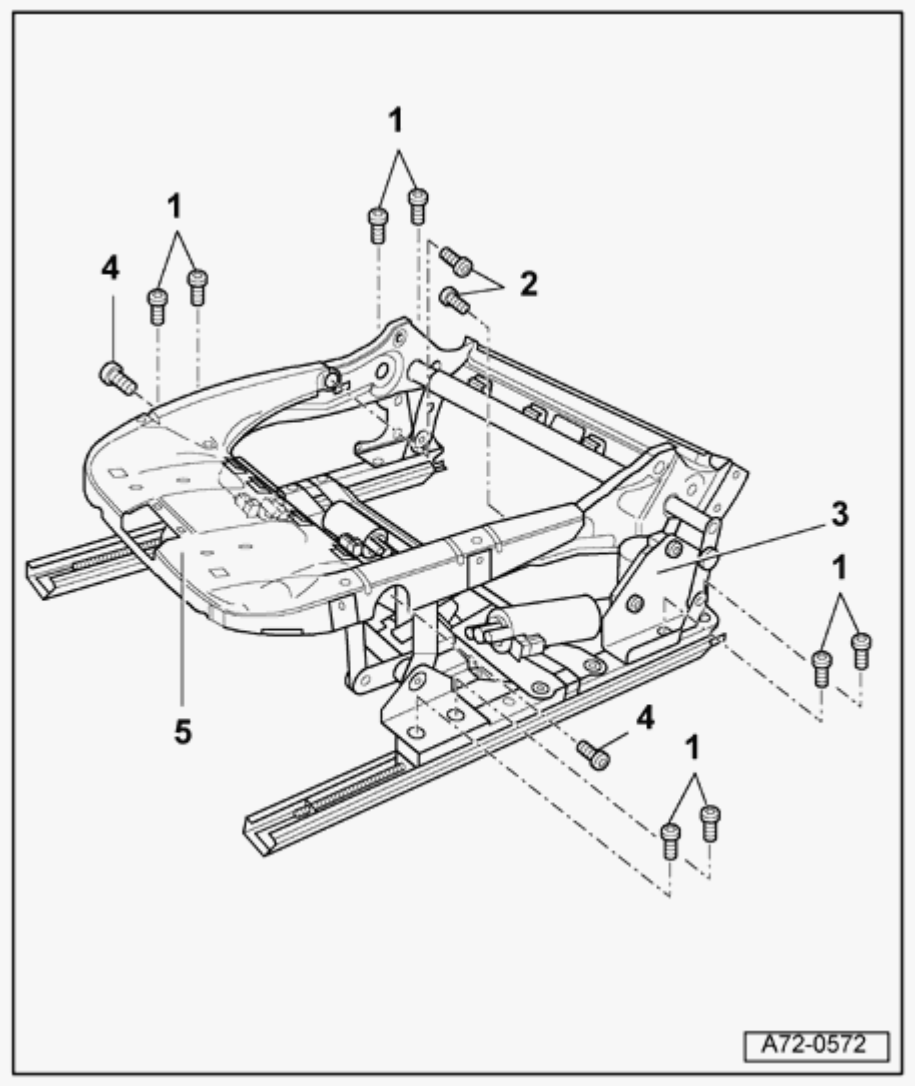


Fig. 673: Seat Height Adjustment Motor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Bolts (Qty. 8)

- Tightening torque 17 Nm

2 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 10 Nm

3 - Seat pan upper frame with seat height adjustment motor

cardiagn.com

- Removal:

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove drawer --> **Drawer, removing and installing**.

- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove belt buckle --> **Seat belt anchor, removing and installing**.

- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.
- Remove motor for seat tilt adjustment --> **Motor for seat tilt adjustment, removing and installing**.
- Remove spring mat with wiring harness --> **Spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan, removing and installing**.
- Remove bolts - **2** - (2x).

- Remove bolts - **4** - (2x).
- Remove bolts - **1** - (8x).
- Replace upper frame of seat pan - **3** -.

- **Installing:**

- Install upper frame of seat pan with motor for seat height adjustment - **3** - in reverse order of removal.

4 - Screw

- 10 Nm
- Qty. 2

5 - Seat pan

Motor for seat tilt adjustment, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

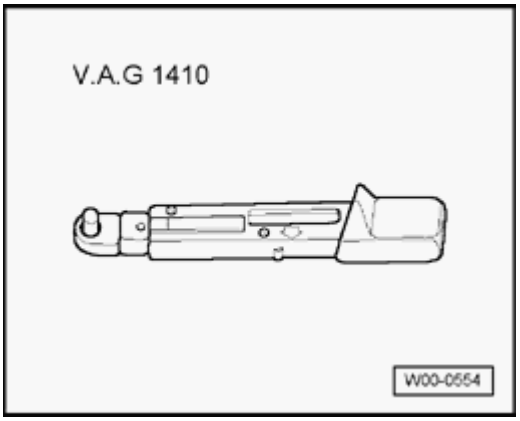


Fig. 674: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

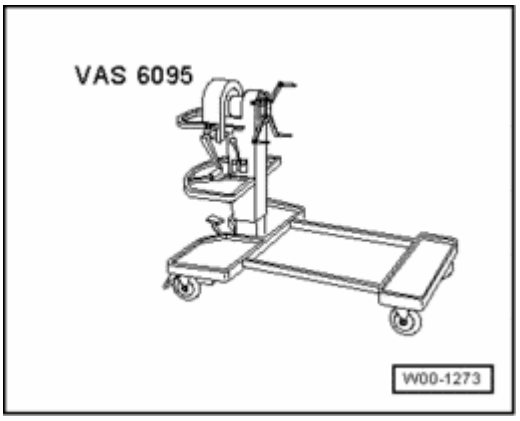


Fig. 675: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

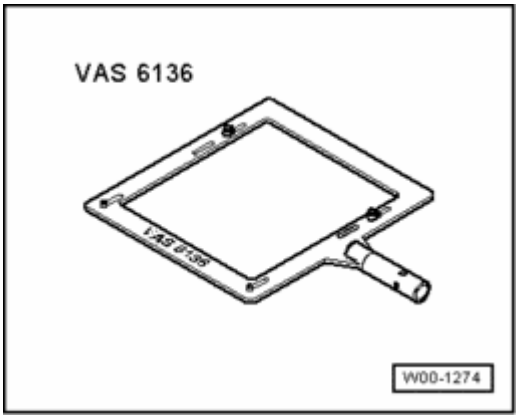


Fig. 676: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

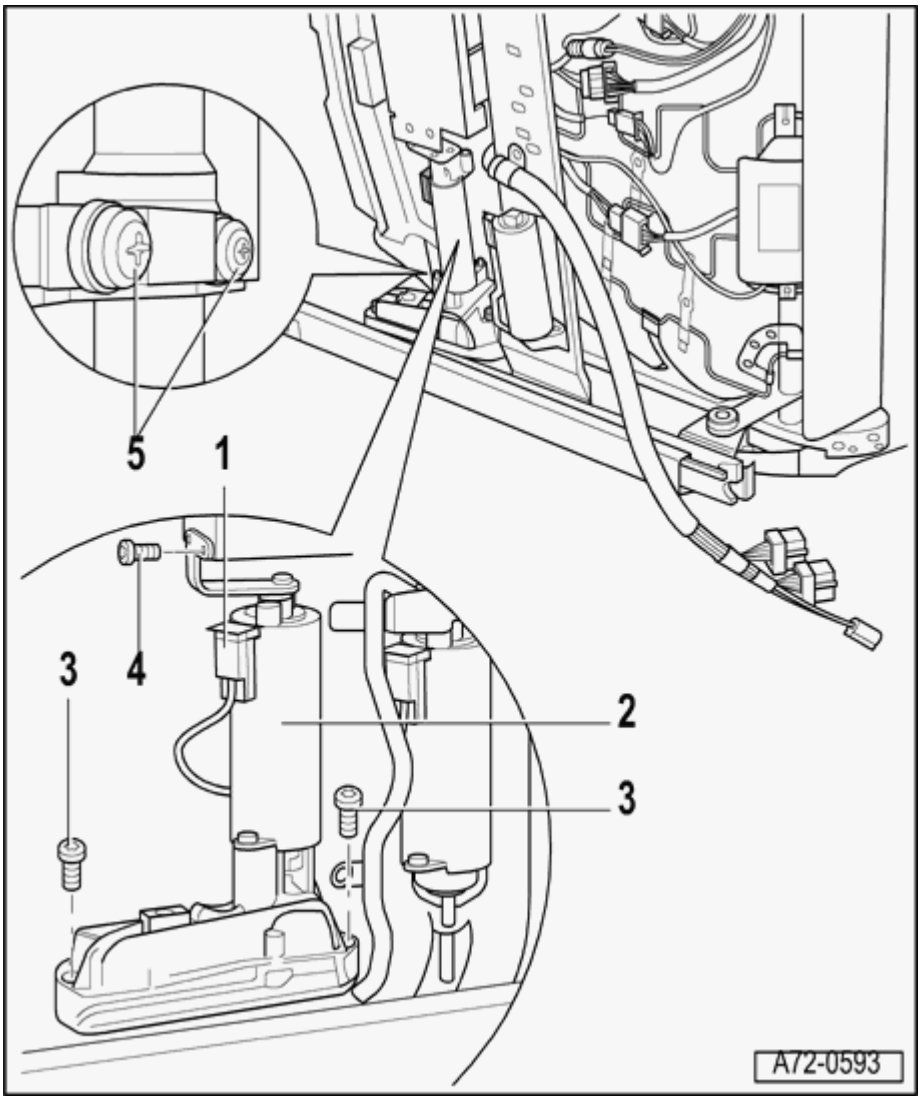


Fig. 677: Motor For Seat Tilt Adjustment Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Connector

2 - Seat angle adjustment motor

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove bolts - **5** - (2x).

cardiagn.com

- Remove screw - **4** -.
- Remove connector - **1** -.
- Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).
- Remove motor for seat tilt adjustment - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Screw

- 10 Nm
- Qty. 2

4 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm

5 - Screw

- 5 Nm
- Qty. 2

Seat surface extension, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

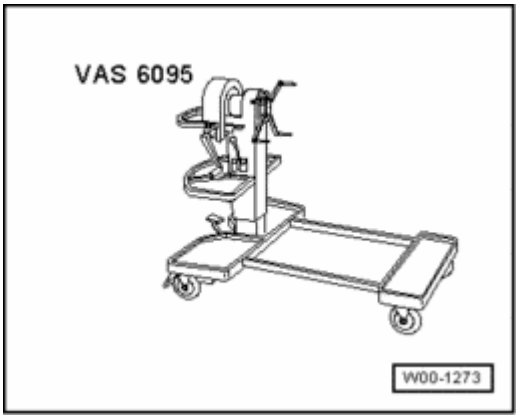


Fig. 678: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

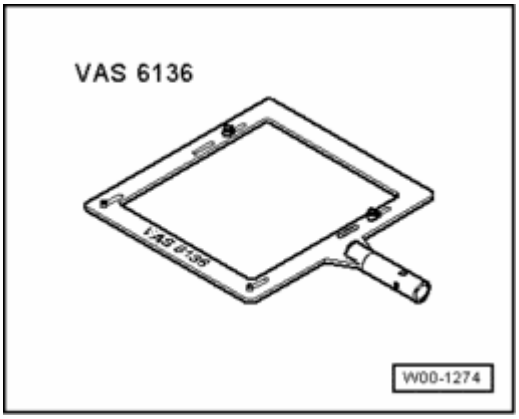
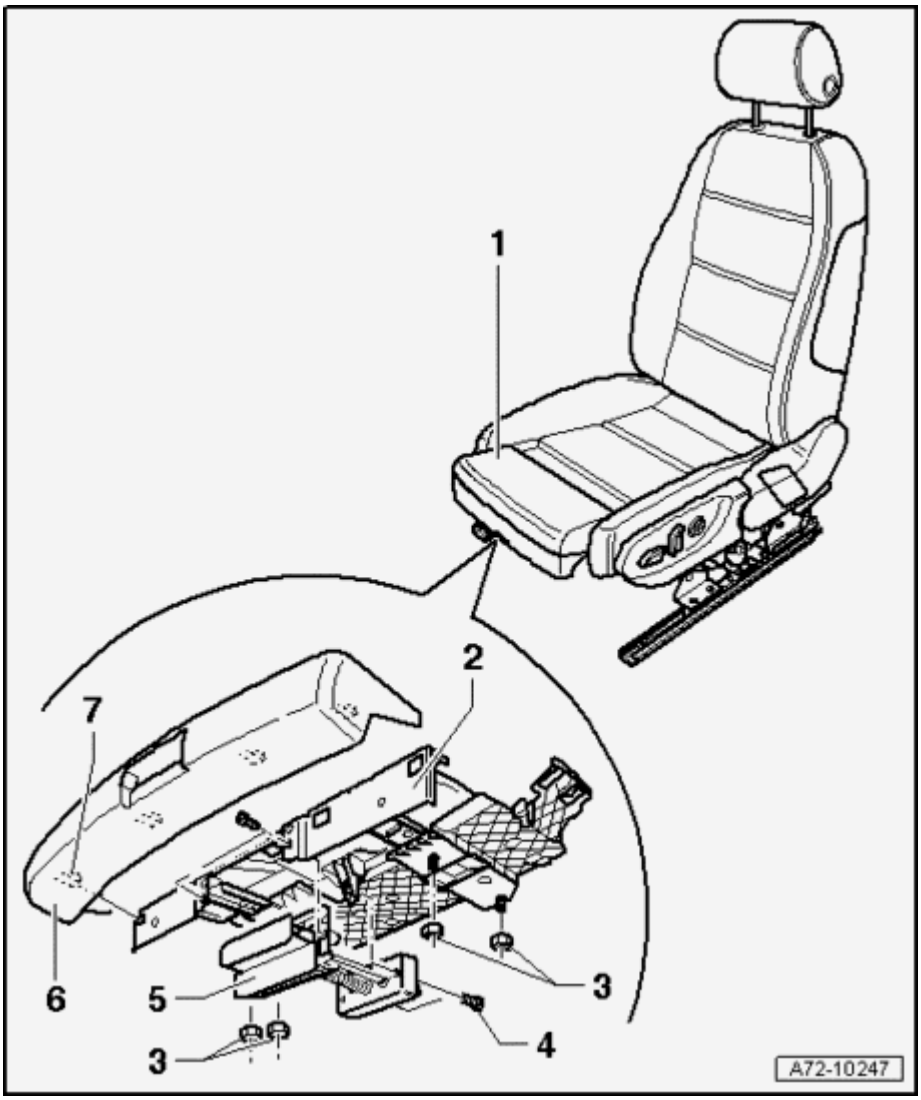


Fig. 679: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136



cardiagn.com

Fig. 680: Seat Surface Extension Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat cushion extension

- Removal
  - Remove seat --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove drawer --> **Drawer, removing and installing**.
  - Detach cover and cushion from seat pan --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.
  - Detach seat cushion extension from cover and cushion.
- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Seat surface extension base plate

3 - Nut

- 35 Nm
- Qty. 4

4 - Screw

- Qty. 4

5 - Grip

- Removal
  - Remove bolts - **4** - (Qty. 4).
  - Remove handle - **5** -.
- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

6 - Trim

- Removal

cardiagn.com

- Remove clips - **7** - (Qty. 4) on trim - **6** -.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

7 - Clips

- Qty. 4

Backrest adjustment motor, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

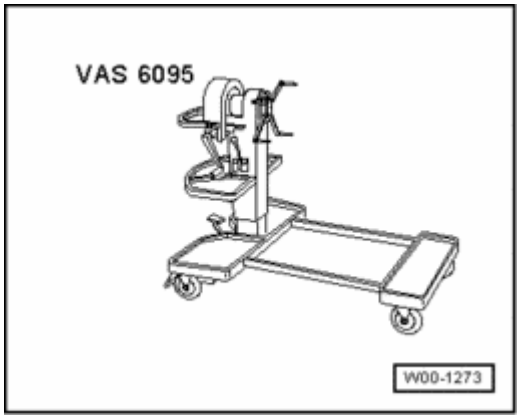


Fig. 681: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

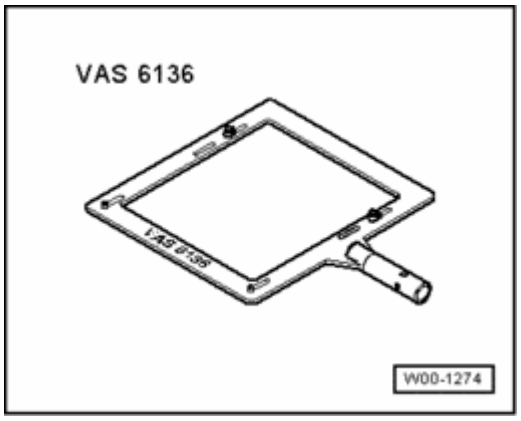


Fig. 682: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

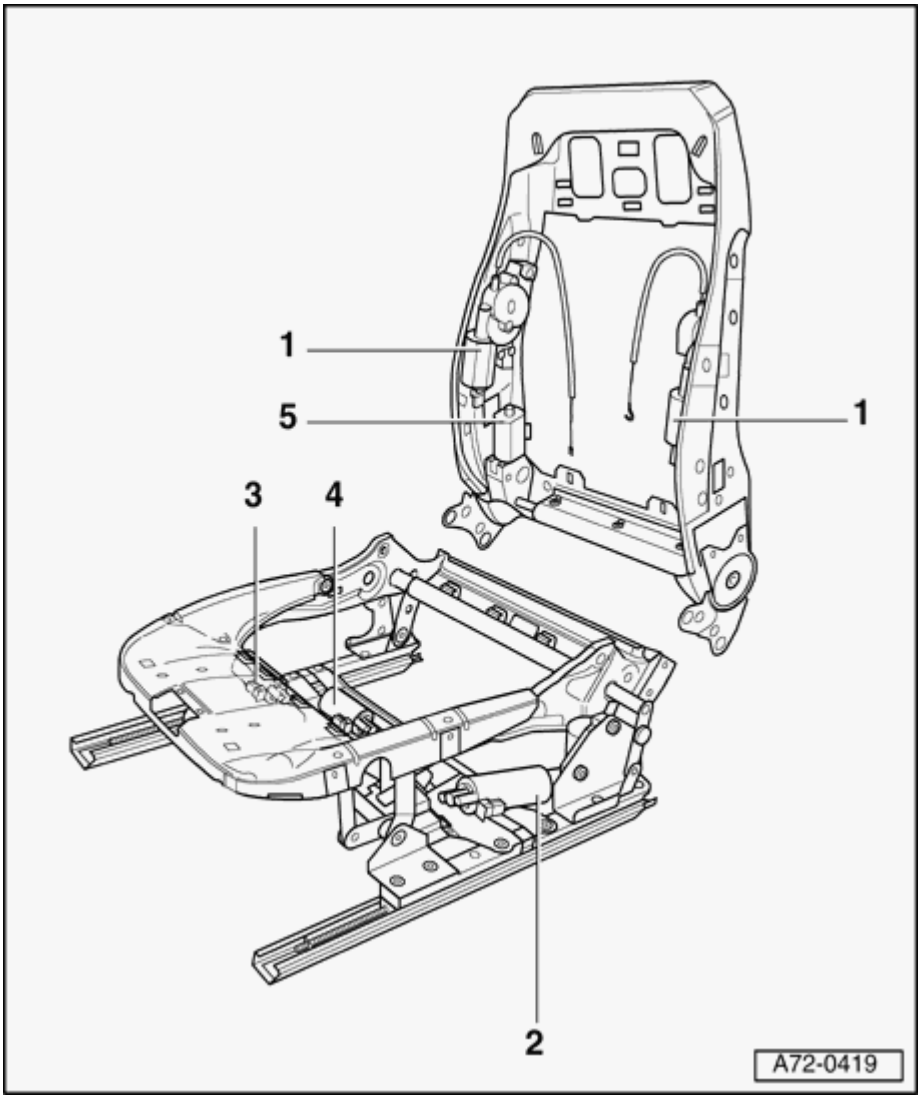


Fig. 683: Longitudinal Seat Adjustment Motor Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Four-way lumber support motors (Qty. 2)

2 - Seat height adjustment motor

3 - Seat angle adjustment motor

4 - Longitudinal seat adjustment motor

5 - Backrest adjustment motor

- Removal:
  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.

- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.

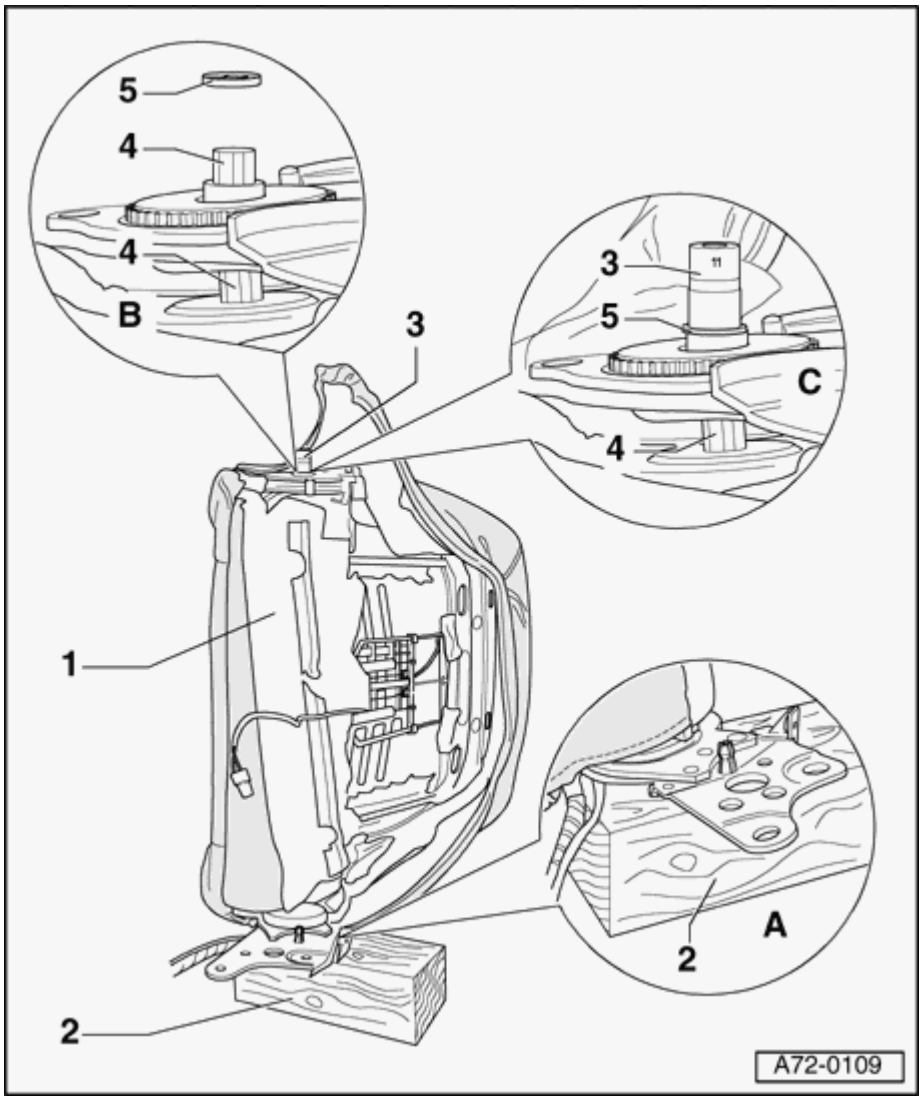


Fig. 684: Identifying Backrest Frame, Wood Block, Socket, Shaft & Spring Washer
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

NOTE:

- **A passenger seat backrest is shown in the illustration.**

- Remove bolt from motor for backrest adjustment **Removing mount for motor for backrest adjustment**.
- Pry out spring washer - **5** - on side of backrest motor with a screwdriver (magnified area of **Fig. 684**- **B** -.)

cardiagn.com

- Tap shaft - **4** - through the side of the backrest frame using a hammer and drift punch.
- Pull out shaft - **4** - just far enough out of backrest frame - **1** - until motor for backrest adjustment comes out.

- **Installing:**

- Adapt the splines of new motor for backrest adjustment **Preparing backrest adjustment motor**.
- Slide shaft - **4** - through motor for backrest adjustment and through backrest frame - **1** -.
- Set seat aside.
- Place a wood block - **2** - beneath shaft - **4** - (**Fig. 684** - **A** -) on opposite side of motor for backrest adjustment.

- Tap spring washer - **5** - onto shaft - **4** - using a socket wrench 11 mm insert - **3** - (**Fig. 684** - **C** -).
- Install screw on backrest adjustment motor and connect connector.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.

For seats with seat memory:

- After installing seat, perform a basic setting for backrest or seat.

cardiagn.com

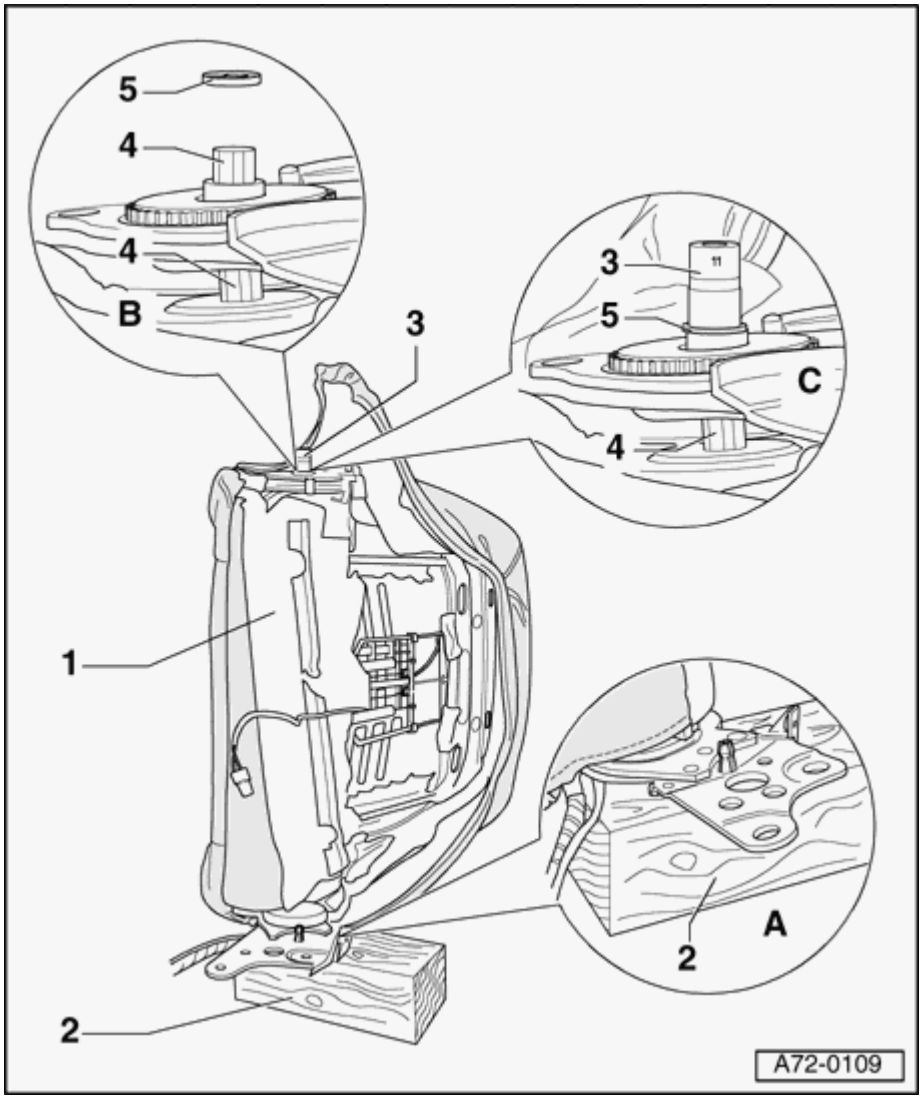


Fig. 685: Identifying Backrest Frame, Wood Block, Socket, Shaft & Spring Washer
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest frame

2 - Wood block

3 - Socket 11 mm

4 - Shaft

5 - Spring washer

Removing mount for motor for backrest adjustment

cardiagn.com

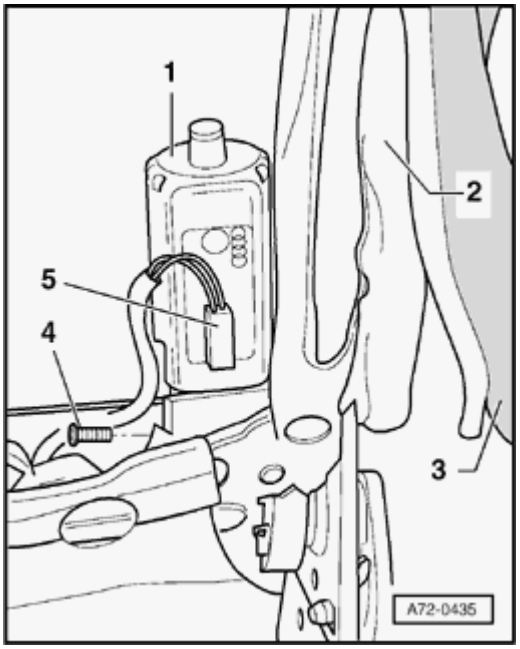


Fig. 686: Removing Mount For Motor For Backrest Adjustment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect connector - **5** -.
- Remove cover - **3** - and anti-crush fleece - **2** - to side.
- Remove screw - **4** -.

Preparing backrest adjustment motor

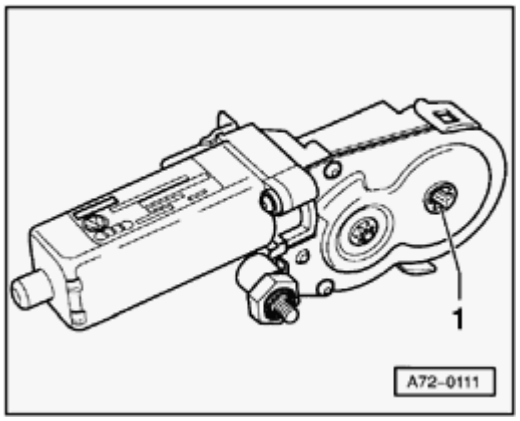


Fig. 687: Preparing Backrest Adjustment Motor
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, turn the locating element of splines - **1** - so it aligns with shaft of backrest frame.

Backrest cover, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

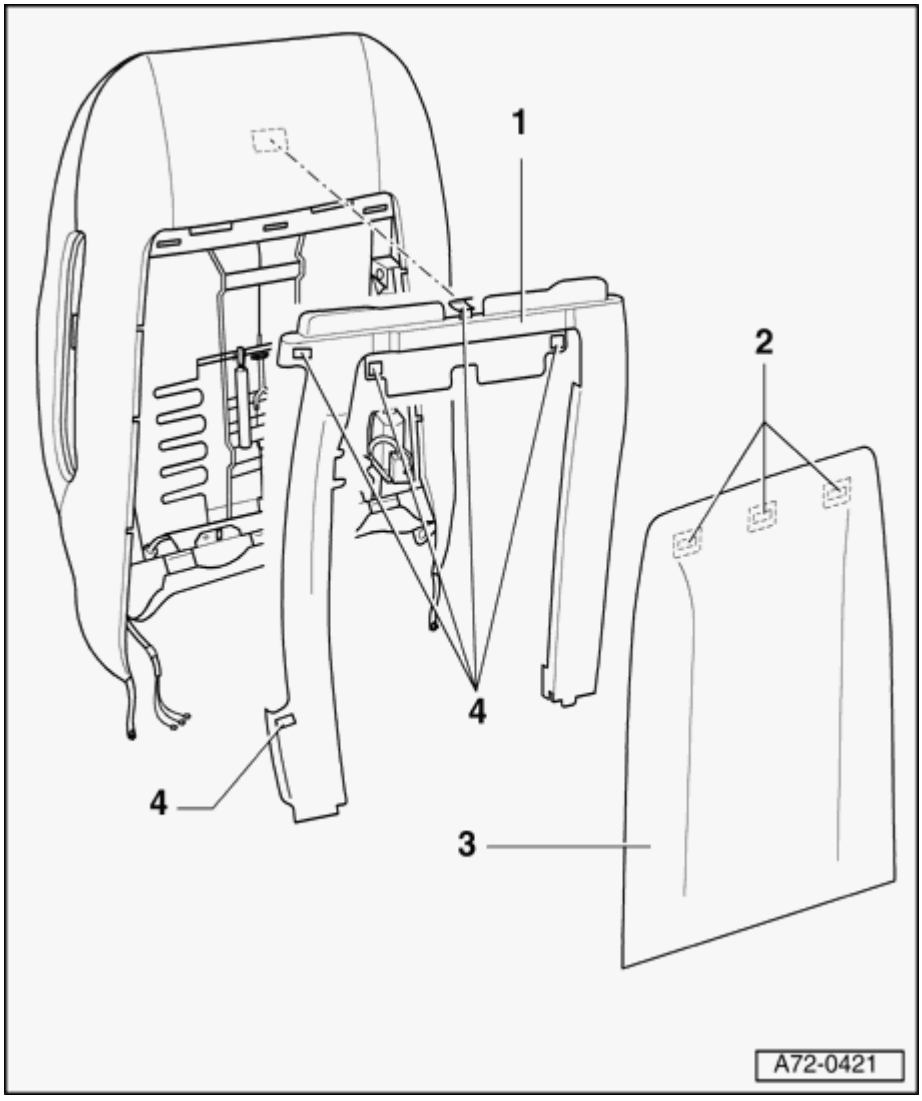


Fig. 688: Identifying Backrest Frame, Wire Clips, Backrest Cover & Clips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest frame

2 - Wire clips (Qty. 3)

3 - Backrest cover

- Removal:

  - Pry out wire clips - **2** - (3x) on backrest panel - **1** -.
  - Remove backrest panel - **3** - upward.

- **Installing:**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

4 - Clips (Qty. 5)

Backrest frame, removing and installing

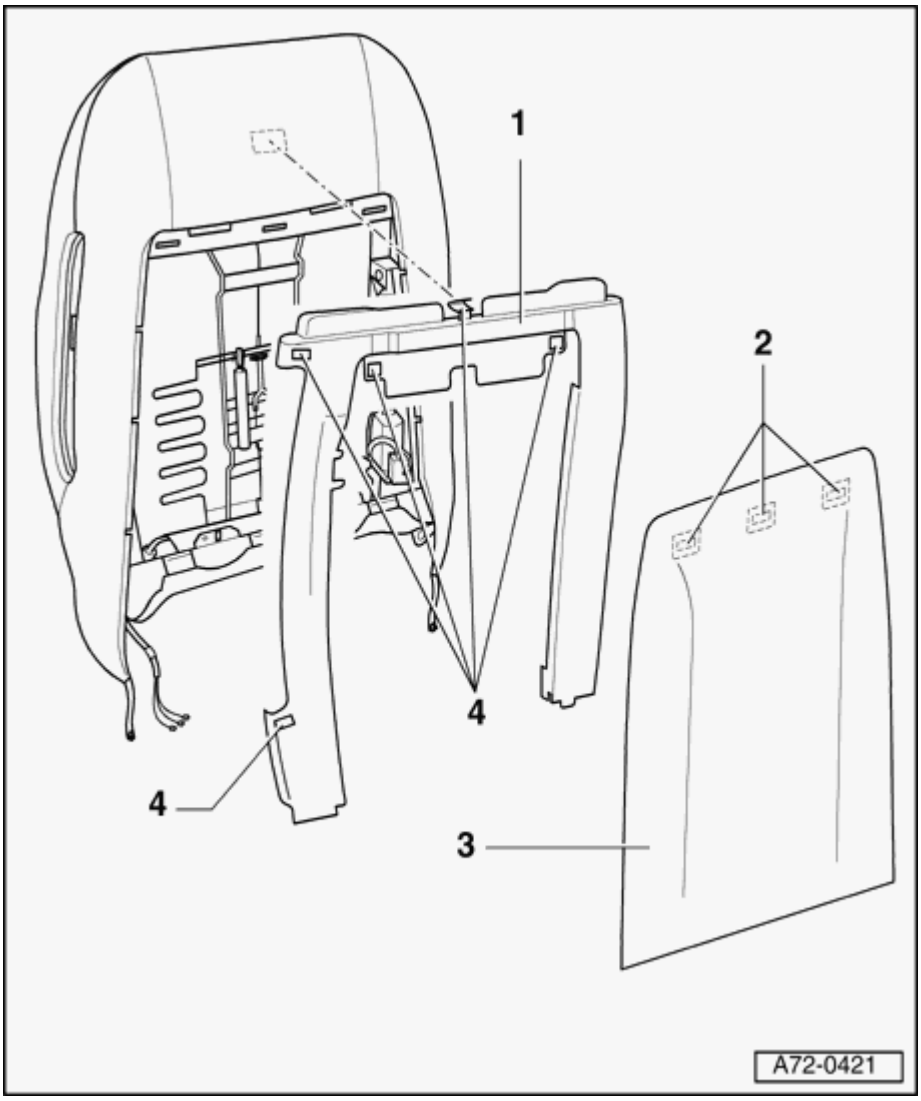


Fig. 689: Identifying Backrest Frame, Wire Clips, Backrest Cover & Clips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest frame

- Removal:

  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
  - Pry out clips - **4** - (5x).
  - Remove backrest frame - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Wire clips (Qty. 3)

3 - Backrest cover

4 - Clips (Qty. 5)

Four-way lumbar support, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

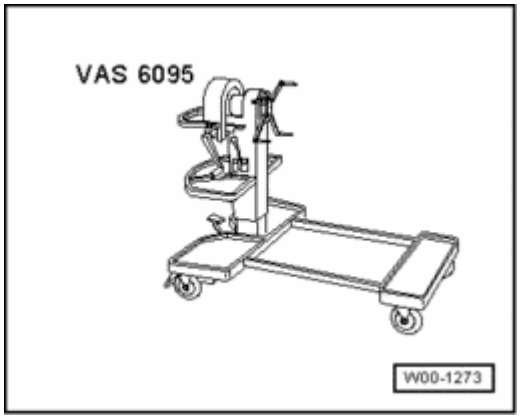


Fig. 690: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

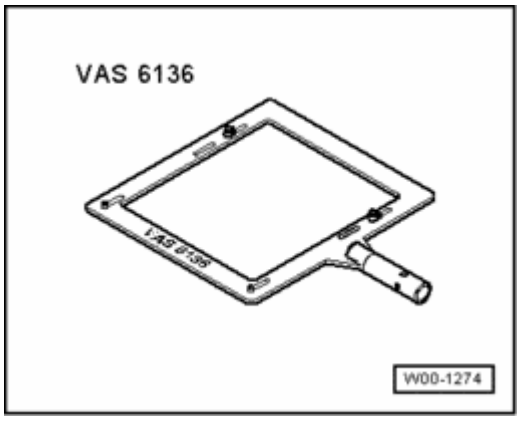


Fig. 691: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

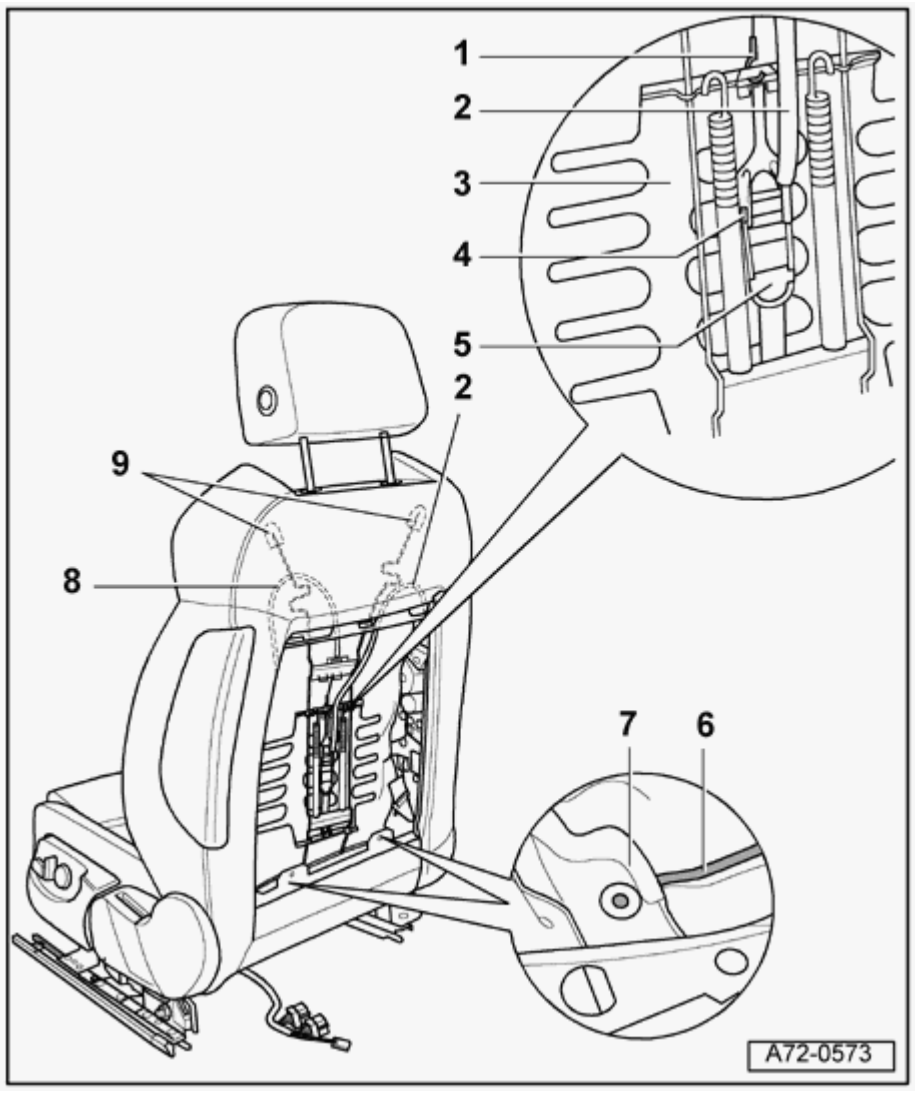


Fig. 692: Four-Way Lumbar Support Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Hook

2 - Four-way lumbar support release

3 - four-way lumbar support

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Disengage bracket - **6** - at bottom on left and right sides from backrest frame - **7** -.
- Disengage four-way lumbar support - **3** - at top on left and right sides from brackets - **9** - (Qty. 2).
- Disengage release for four-way lumbar adjustment - **8** - at hook - **1** -.
- Disengage four-way lumbar support height adjustment release - **2** - at retaining pin - **4** - and at idler pulley - **5** -.
- Remove four-way lumbar support - **3** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

4 - Retaining pins

5 - Idler pulley

6 - Support

7 - Backrest frame

8 - Four-way lumbar support height adjuster release

9 - Retainers (2x)

Four-way lumbar support motors, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

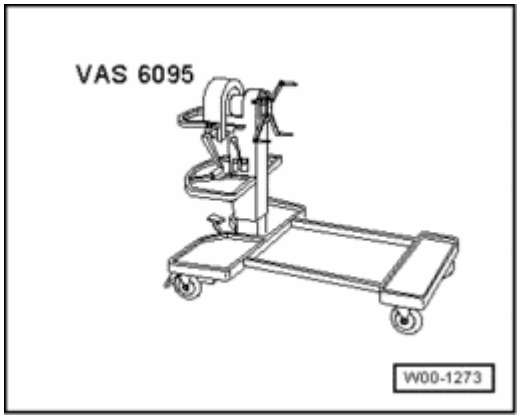


Fig. 693: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

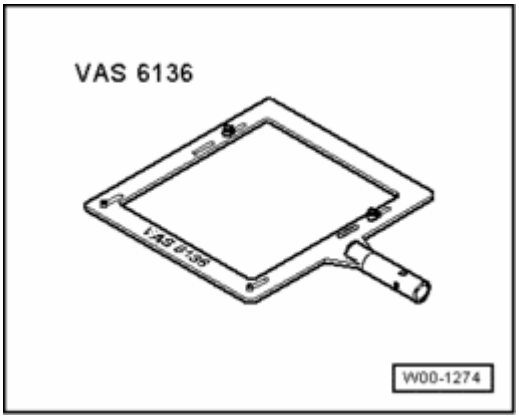


Fig. 694: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

NOTE:

- **On the drivers seat shown in the illustration, the four-way lumbar support height adjustment motor is on the left side and the four-way lumbar support motor is on the right side.**

cardiagn.com

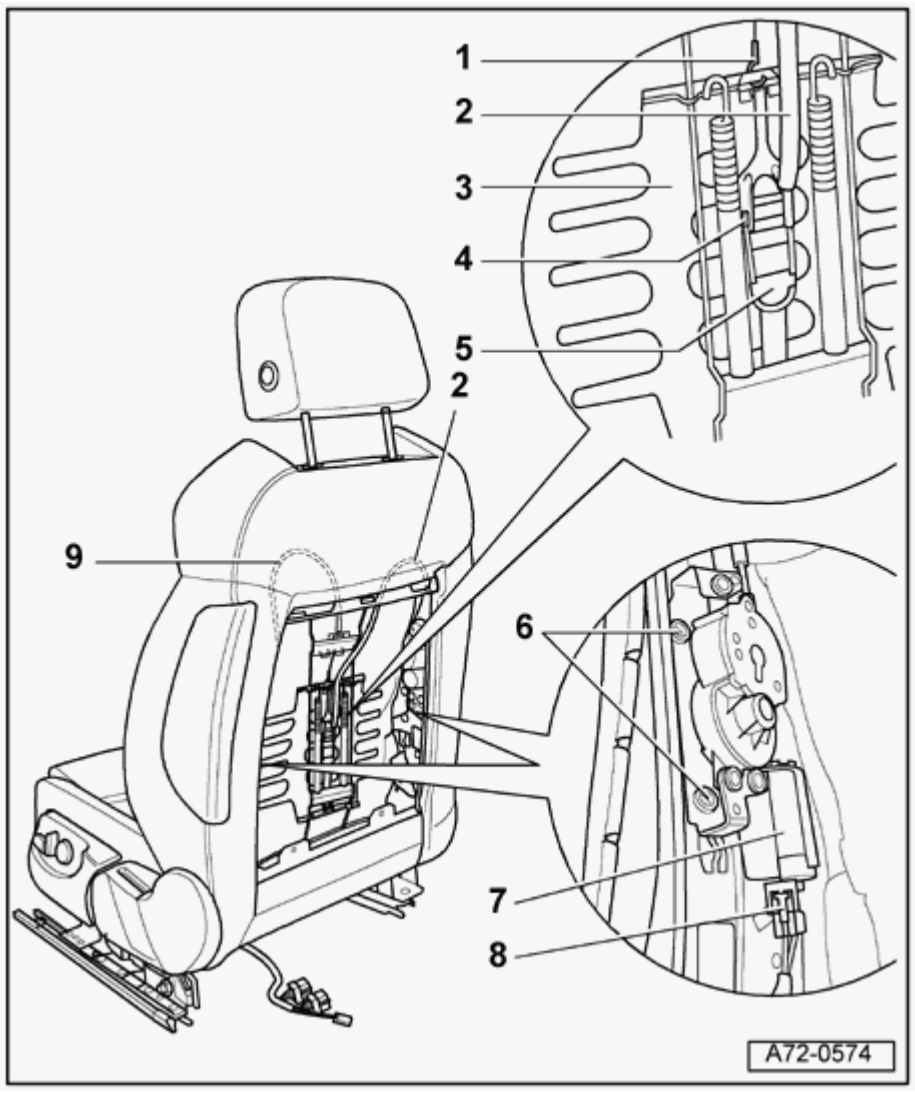


Fig. 695: Four-Way Lumbar Support Motors Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Hook

2 - Four-way lumbar support release

3 - four-way lumbar support

4 - Retaining pins

5 - Idler pulley

6 - Rivets (4x)

7 - Four-way lumber support motors (Qty. 2)

cardiagn.com

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.

  - Remove connector - **8** -.
  - Drill out rivets - **6** - (2x).
  - Remove motor on opposite side the same way.
  - Disengage release for four-way lumber support height adjuster - **9** - at hook - **1** -.

  - Disengage four-way lumbar support adjustment release - **2** - at retaining pins - **4** - and at relay pulley - **5** -.
  - Remove four-way lumbar support motors - **7** - (Qty. 2).

- **Installing:**

  - Install four-way lumbar support motors - **7** - in reverse order of removal.

8 - Connector (Qty. 2)

9 - Four-way lumbar support height adjuster release

Headrest with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing

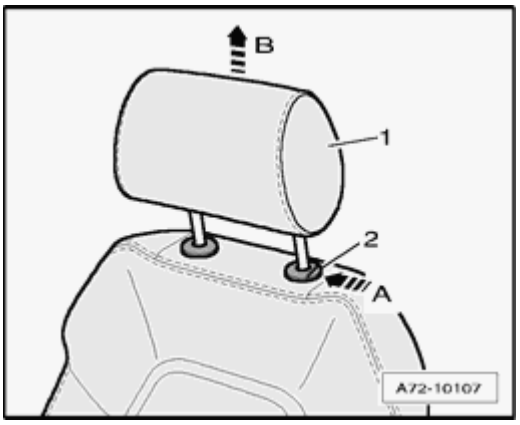


Fig. 696: Pushing Release Button In And Pulling Headrest Upward As Far As Possible
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

  - Push release button - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and pull headrest - **1** - upward as far as possible - **arrow B** - , keep release button pushed while doing so.

cardiagn.com

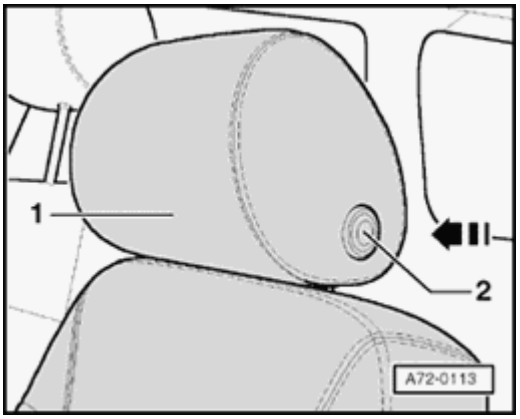


Fig. 697: Pressing Release Button On Headrest Until Stop
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press release button - **2** - on headrest - **1** - until stop - **arrow** -.
- Slide headrest down completely on rods, release button on headrest must be kept pressed while doing so.
- Remove headrest completely from headrest guides.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Rear footwell lighting, removing

Removing

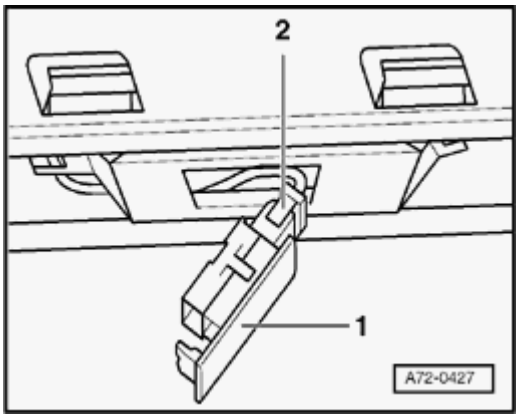


Fig. 698: Identifying Rear Footwell Light & Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press out rear footwell light - **1** - from rear.
- Remove connector - **2** -.

Installing

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

Spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

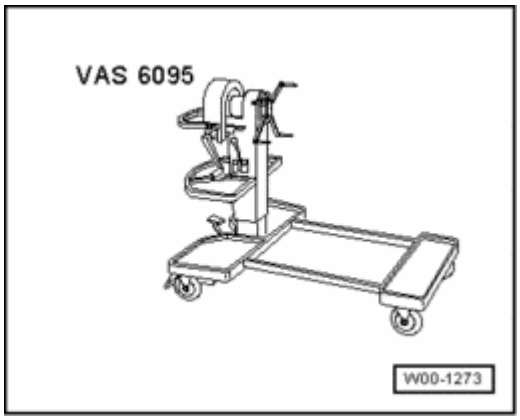


Fig. 699: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

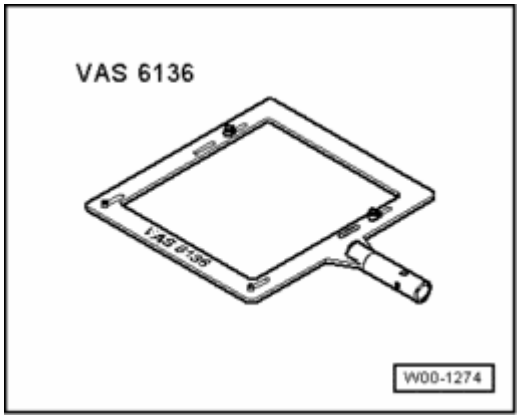


Fig. 700: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

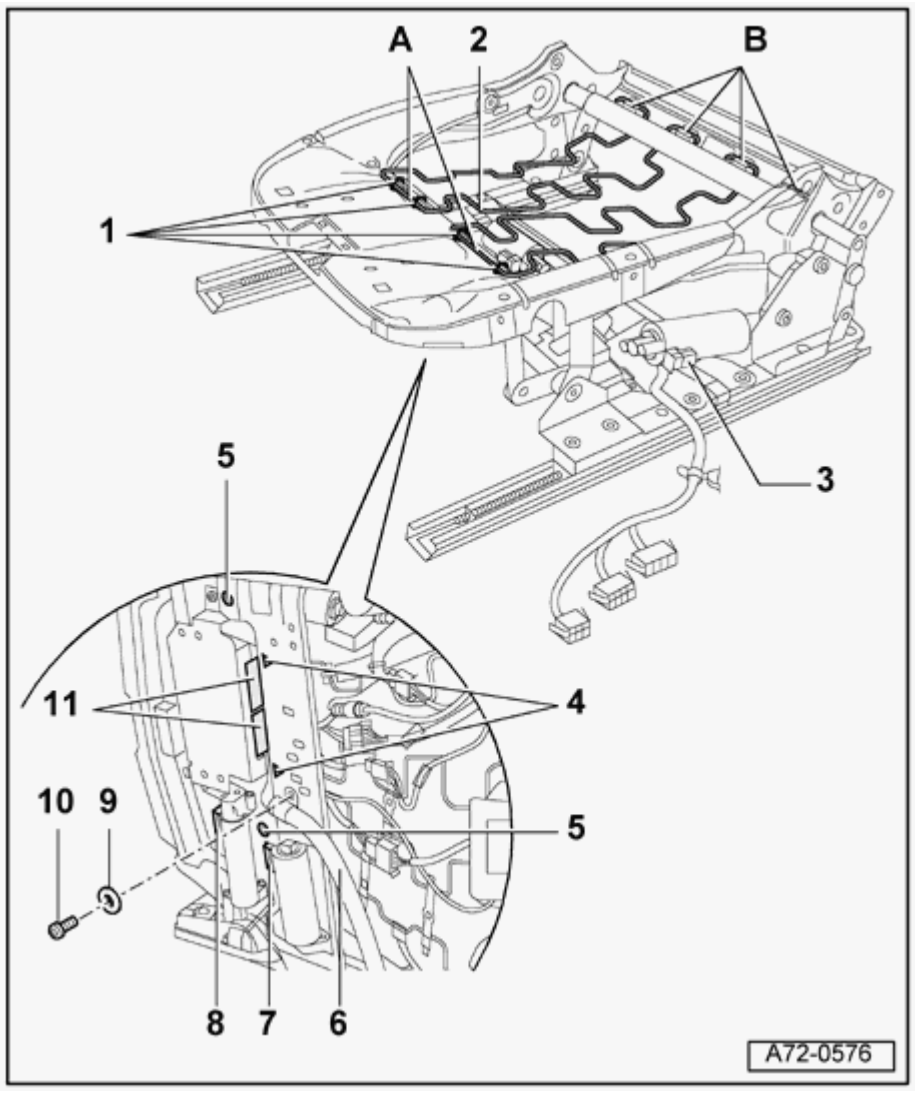


Fig. 701: Spring Mat With Wiring Harness In Seat Pan Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable tie

- Qty. 2

2 - Spring mat with wiring harness

- Removal:

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove drawer --> **Drawer, removing and installing**.
- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.

- Remove cable ties - **1** - (Qty. 4)
- Disengage spring mat - **2** - at - **A** - positions (Qty. 2).
- Disengage spring mat - **2** - at - **B** - positions (Qty. 4).
- Tip seat pan to side.

- Disconnect connectors - **3** - , - **7** - and - **8** - (Qty. 3).
- Disconnect connector - **11** - (Qty. 2).
- Remove screw - **10** -.
- Remove wiring harness at clips - **4** - and - **5** - (Qty. 4).

- Remove spring mat with wiring harness - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Connector

4 - Clip

- Qty. 2

5 - Clip

- Qty. 2

6 - Cable harness

7 - Connector

8 - Connector

9 - Washer

10 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm

cardiagn.com

11 - Connector

- Qty. 2

Seat wiring harness location

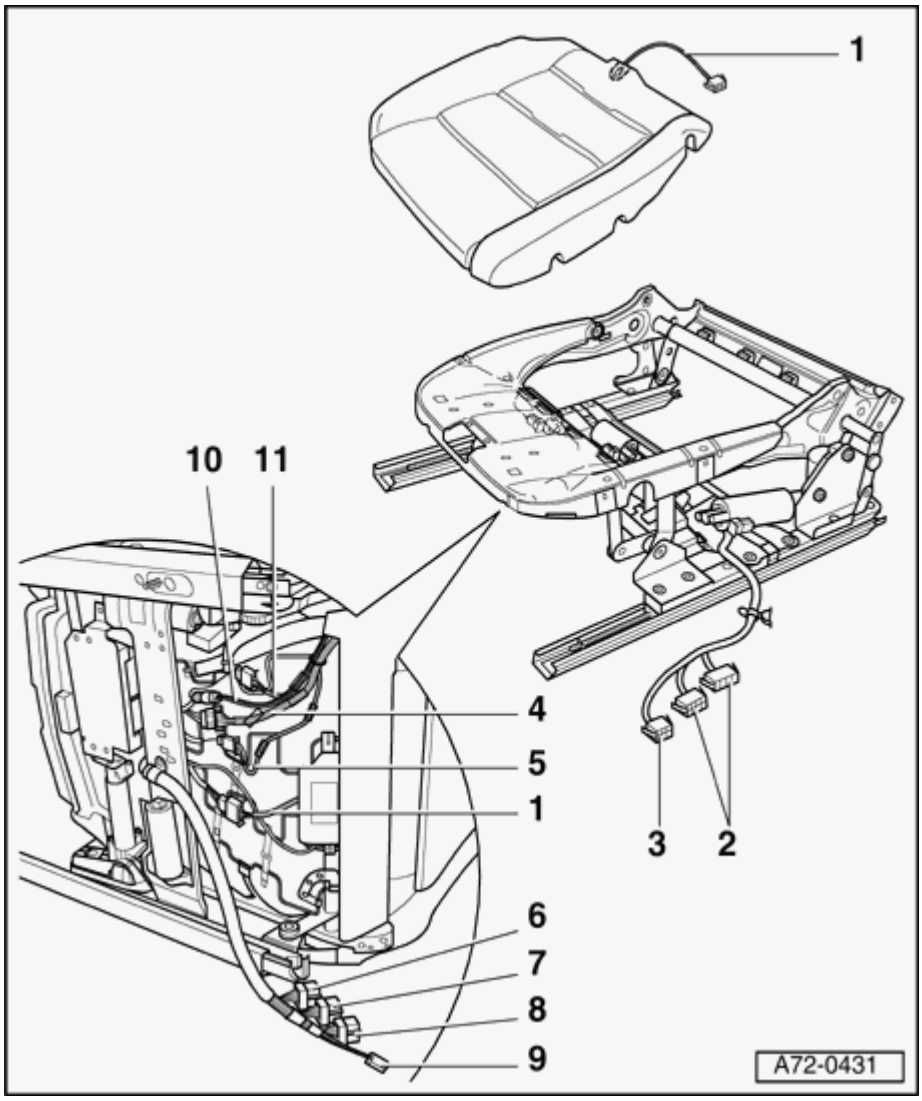


Fig. 702: A
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat heating wiring harness

2 - Seat adjustment connector (2x)

3 - Four-way lumbar support connector

4 - Electric four-way lumbar support wiring harness, tunnel side

cardiagn.com

5 - Backrest heating wiring harness

6 - Belt buckle sensor connector (black)

7 - Seat heating connector (green)

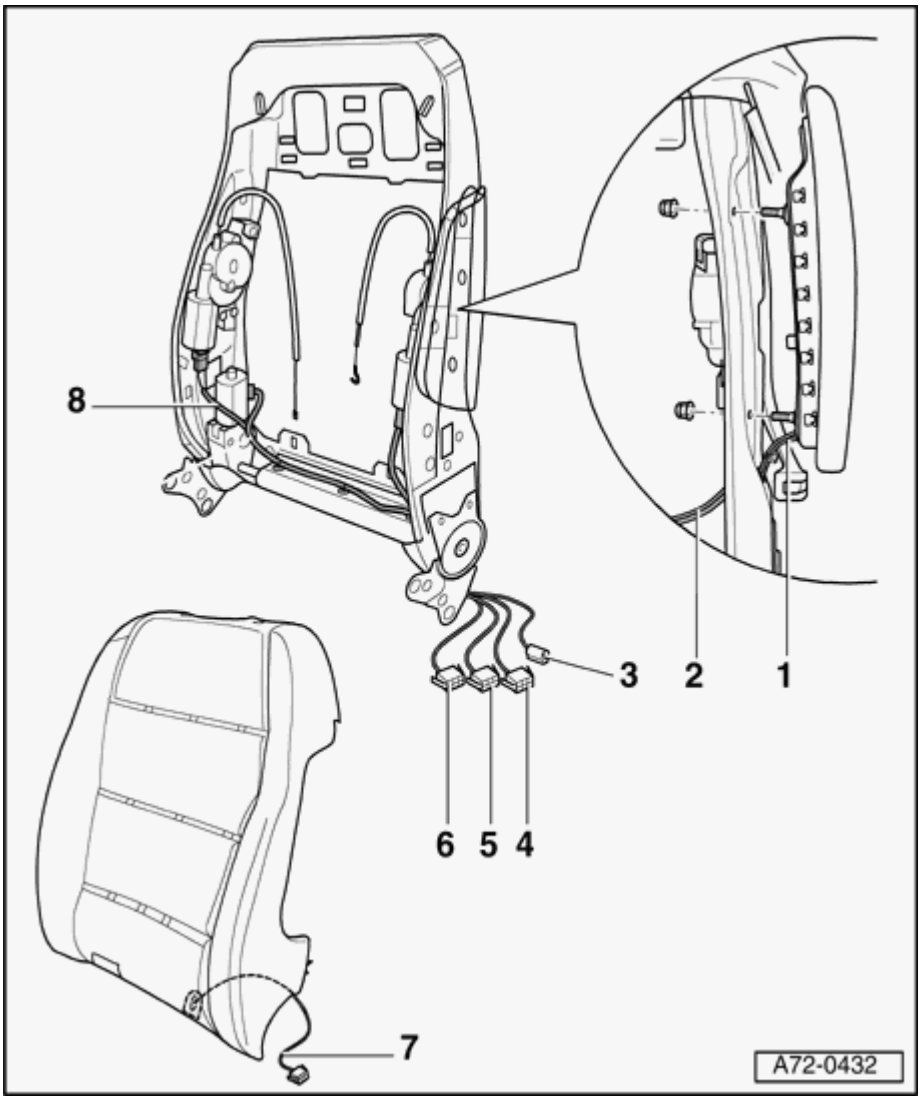
8 - Current supply connector (red)

9 - Airbag connector (yellow)

10 - Airbag wiring harness

11 - Electrical four-way lumbar support wiring harness for 4-pin side airbag

Backrest wiring assignment



cardiagn.com

Fig. 703: Backrest Wiring Assignment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Airbag wiring harness

2 - Electrical four-way lumbar support wiring harness for 4-pin side airbag

3 - Airbag connector

4 - Electrical four-way lumbar support connector for 4-pin side airbag

5 - Electrical four-way lumbar support connector

6 - Backrest heater connector

7 - Backrest heating wiring harness

8 - Electric four-way lumbar support wiring harness, tunnel side

Wiring harness for backrest, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

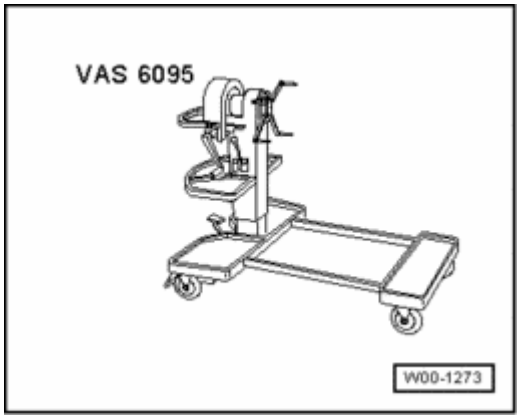


Fig. 704: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

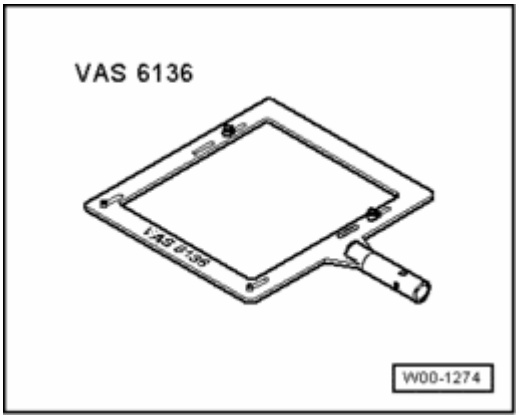
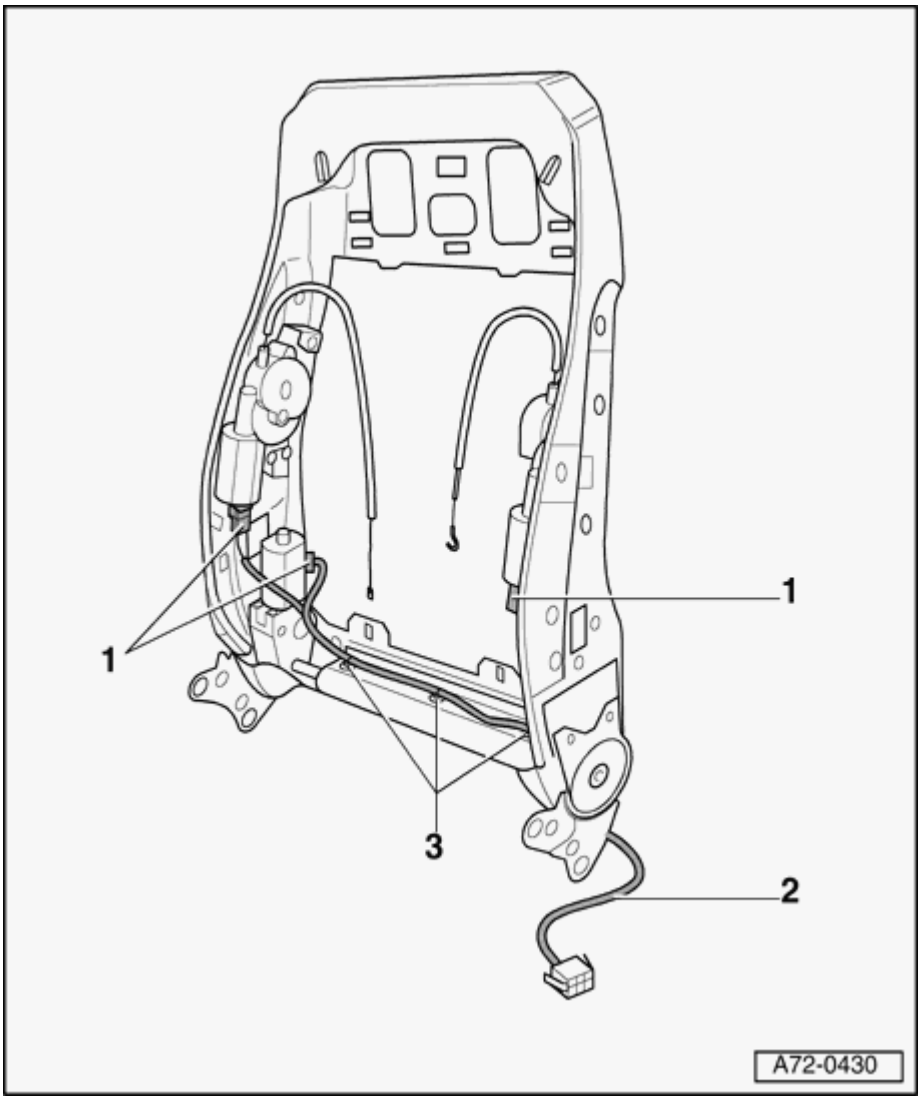


Fig. 705: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136



cardiagn.com

Fig. 706: Wiring Harness For Backrest Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Connector (3x)

2 - Cable harness

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
  - Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
  - Remove cover and padding from backrest --> **Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing**.
  - Remove cable ties - **3** - (3x).
  - Remove connectors - **1** - (3x).
  - Remove wiring harness - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Cable ties (3x)

FRONT RECARO SEATS, VEHICLES FROM 11.04

Front Recaro seats, vehicles from 11.04

NOTE:

- **From 08.05, the usual wiring harness routing to connector station under front seat --> Disconnecting connections has been replaced with modular wiring routing --> Modular wiring routing, vehicles from 08.05, assembly overview.**
- **The modular wiring routing has not been implemented for all countries.**

Seat, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **Before disconnecting battery: Obtain coding of radio.**

cardiagn.com

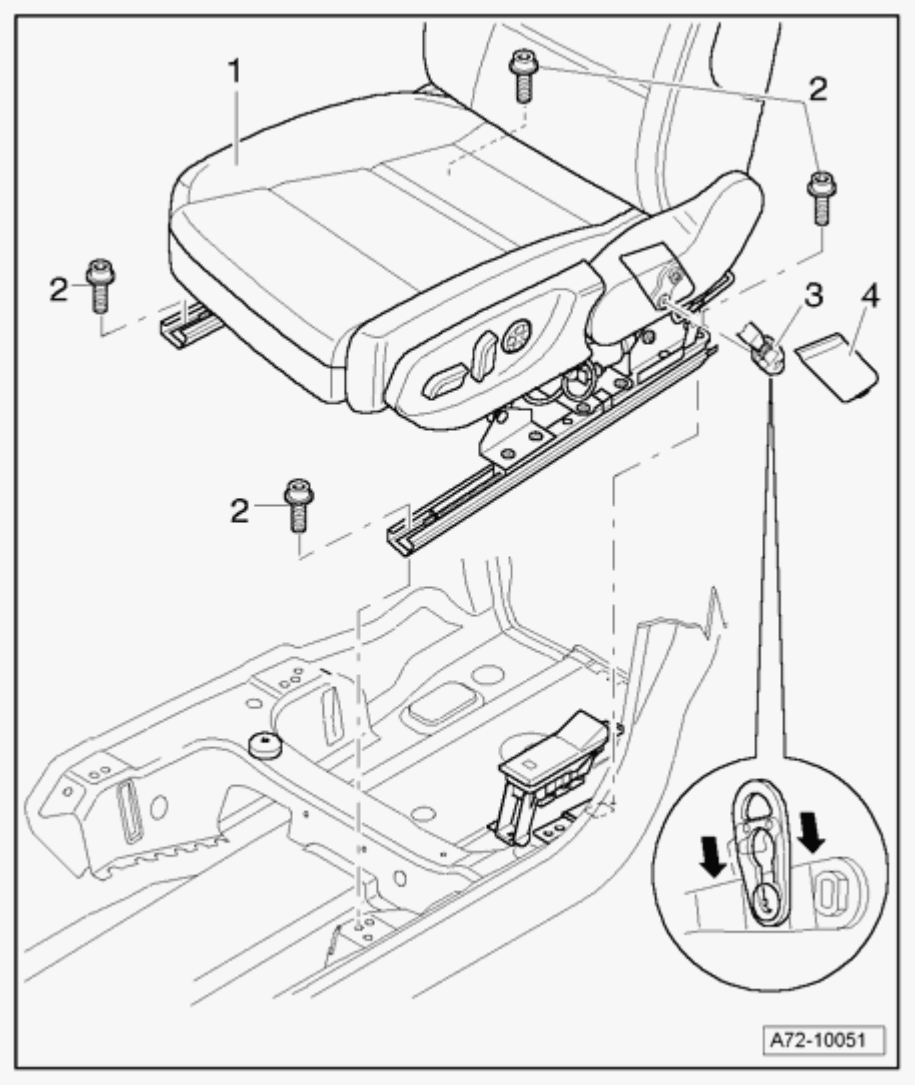


Fig. 707: Front Power Seats With Memory Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

- Removal

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

- Push front seat - **1** - fully upward and to the rear.
- Pull assembly cover - **4** - up and remove.
- Pull seat belt anchor - **3** - down in direction of arrow and remove.
- Remove front bolts - **2** - (Qty. 2).

cardiagn.com

- Move seat forward.
- Remove rear bolts - **2** - (Qty. 2).
- Disconnect battery ground wire -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

CAUTION: Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.

- Tip front seat - **1** - back.
- Disconnect harness connectors --> **Disconnecting connections**.
- Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.
- With help from a second mechanic, lift front seat - **1** - out of vehicle.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Remove Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 only after installing front seat.

NOTE:

- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Connect connector to couplings on connector station location in floor --> **Disconnecting connections**.
- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**

cardiagn.com

- **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

2 - Screw

- 50 Nm
- Qty. 4

3 - Seat belt anchor

4 - Assembly cover

Front seat with malfunctioning control module or malfunctioning motor for seat fore-aft adjustment, removing

NOTE:

- **If possible: Tilt seat up.**
- **Before disconnecting battery: Obtain coding of radio.**
- **Seat is shown without upholstery and without backrest in picture for the sake of a better illustration.**

CAUTION: Loosen bolts - 6 - only after checking electrical or electronic components and wires.

After loosening bolts - 6 - , lower part of seat pan - 7 - including Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288 must be replaced with transverse member - 9 -.

cardiagn.com

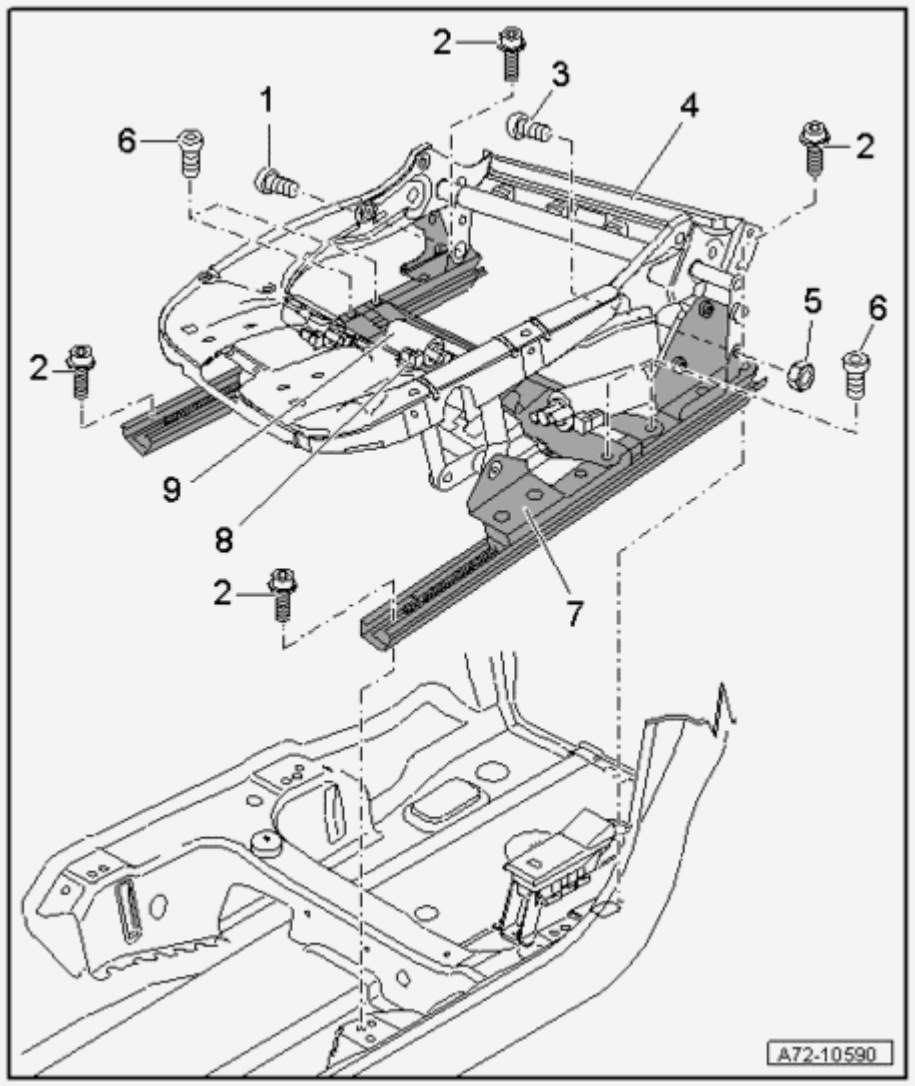


Fig. 708: Front Seat With Malfunctioning Control Module Or Malfunctioning Motor For Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment, Removing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Screw

- Tightening torque --> **Seat pan, assembly overview**
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

2 - Screw

- Tightening torque --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**
- Qty. 4

3 - Screw

cardiagn.com

- Tightening torque --> **Seat pan, assembly overview**

4 - Seat pan upper frame

- Removal

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

- Remove screw - **1** -.
- Remove nut - **5** - and bolt - **3** -.
- Fold seat fully toward front. If necessary: Remove steering wheel --> **Steering wheel, removing and installing (standard steering wheel)**.

CAUTION: Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.

NOTE:

- **Check electrical and electronic components and wires before removing seat further to avoid unnecessary repair costs.**

- Perform the following tests:

- Check fuse --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations
- Check voltage at connector station, perform fault-finding if necessary --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations
- Check voltage to control module --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations
- Check voltage to Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288 --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations

- If fuse is faulty: replace fuse --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations.
- If voltage to connector station is low: repair or replace wire --> Electrical Wiring Diagrams, Troubleshooting and Component Locations.
- If control module is defective: Replace control module --> **Control module, removing and installing**.
- If Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288 is faulty: replace lower frame of seat pan - **7** - --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**.

Further removal only if Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288 is faulty

- Disconnect battery ground wire -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**

cardiagn.com

- **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

- Remove bolts - **6** - (Qty. 4).

CAUTION: Before removing seat: Disconnect battery ground (GND) strap -->

- **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
- **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

.

- Disconnect connector - **8** -.
- Tip front seat back.
- Move seat until bolts - **2** - (Qty. 4) are visible.
- Remove bolts - **2** - (Qty. 4).

- Disconnect harness connectors --> **Disconnecting connections**.
- Connect airbag adapter --> **Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting**.
- With help from a second technician, lift front seat out of vehicle.
- Disconnect seat pan lower frame - **7** - and upper frame - **4** - --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**.

- Replace seat pan lower frame - **7** - with Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288 with the transverse member - **9** - --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**.

5 - Nut

- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

6 - Screw

- Qty. 4
- For transverse member to seat pan lower frame

7 - Lower seat pan frame

- Replace --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**

8 - Connector

9 - Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288 with transverse member

cardiagn.com

- **Installing**

  - Install front seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.

Seat rail covers, removing and installing

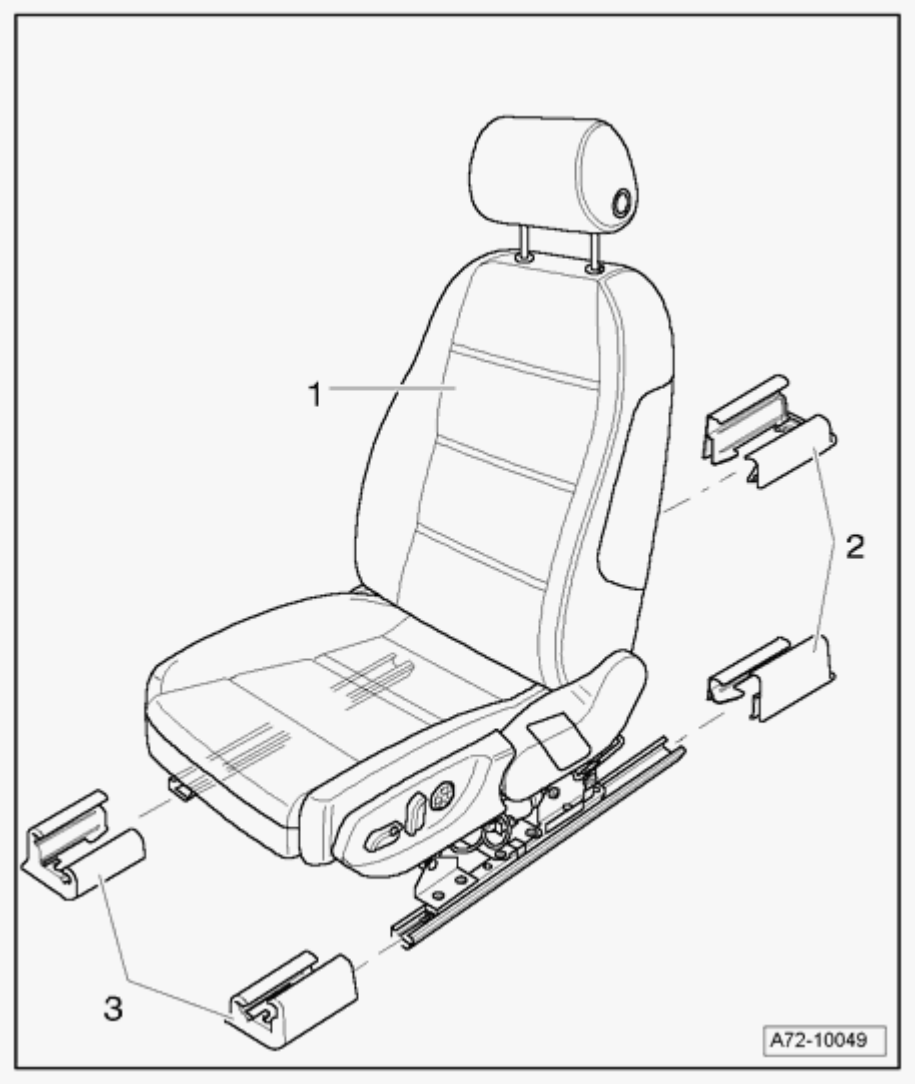


Fig. 709: Seat Rail Covers Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Rear seat rail covers

- Qty. 2
- Removal

cardiagn.com

- Drive front seat - **1** - to center position.
- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Remove seat rail cover - **2** - or - **3** - from below on interior side.
- Pry out seat rail cover on the outside.
- Pull seat rail cover - **2** - or - **3** - out as straight as possible.

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Front seat rail covers

- Qty. 2

Disconnecting harness connectors

Connections, disconnecting --> Disconnecting connections

Airbag adapter VAS 6036 , connecting

Airbag adapter VAS 6036 , connecting --> Airbag Adapter VAS 6036 , connecting

Side airbag connector, disconnecting

Side airbag connector, disconnecting --> Side airbag connector, disconnecting

Front backrest, removing and installing

Front backrest, removing and installing --> Front backrest, removing and installing

Sill and tunnel side trim panels, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

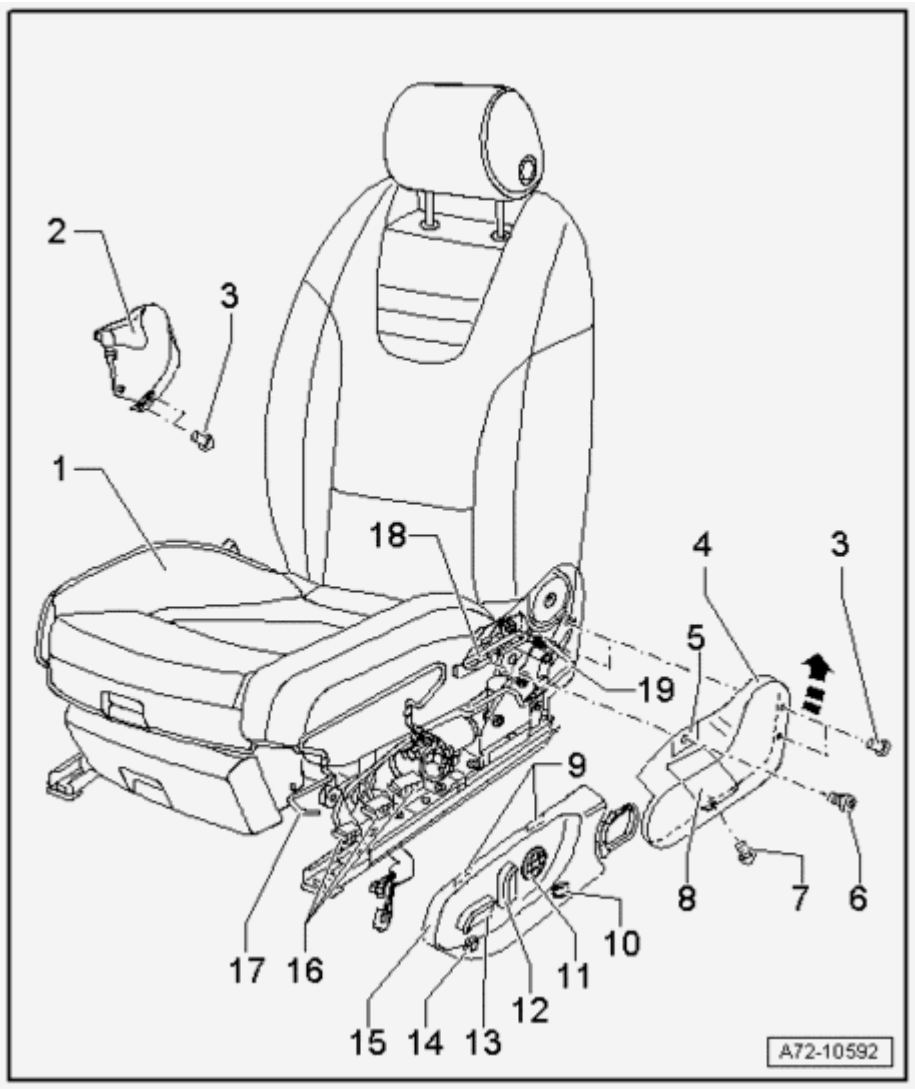


Fig. 710: Sill And Tunnel Side Trim Panels, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Tunnel side trim

- Removing and installing --> **Tunnel side trim panel, removing and installing**

3 - Expanding rivet

- Qty. 4

4 - Rear sill side trim

- Removing and installing **Front and rear sill side trim, removing and installing**

cardiagn.com

5 - Bracket

6 - Screw

- 1.0 Nm

7 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm

8 - Assembly cover

- Removing and installing **Assembly cover, removing and installing**

9 - Bracket

- Qty. 2

10 - Eyelet

11 - Drivers Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch E176 or Front Passenger s Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch E177

- Removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support switch, removing and installing**

12 - Actuator

- For Backrest Adjustment Button E425
- Pry out with Trim Removal Wedge 3409

13 - Actuator

- For Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Button E418
- For Inclination Adjustment Button E421
- For Seat Height Adjustment Button E424
- Pry out with Trim Removal Wedge 3409

14 - Catch

15 - Front sill side trim

- Removing and installing **Front and rear sill side trim, removing and installing**

16 - Connector

- Qty. 3

cardiagn.com

17 - Front retaining bracket

- Removing and installing --> **Front retaining bracket, removing and installing**

18 - Upper retaining bracket

- Removing and installing --> **Upper retaining bracket, removing and installing**

19 - Rear retaining bracket

- Removing and installing --> **Rear retaining bracket, removing and installing**

Sill side trim and assembly cover, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

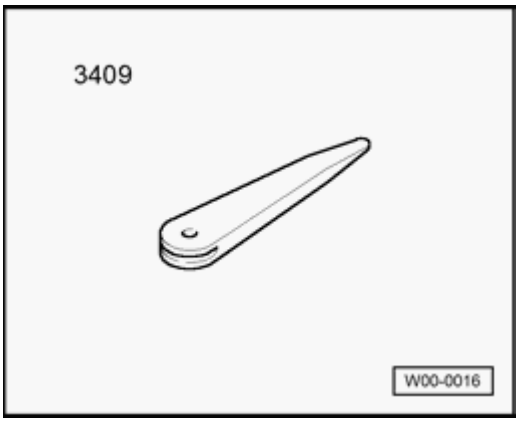


Fig. 711: Identifying Trim Removal Wedge 3409
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Trim removal wedge 3409

Assembly cover, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **Removal and installation of assembly cover can be performed when seat is installed.**

Removing

cardiagn.com

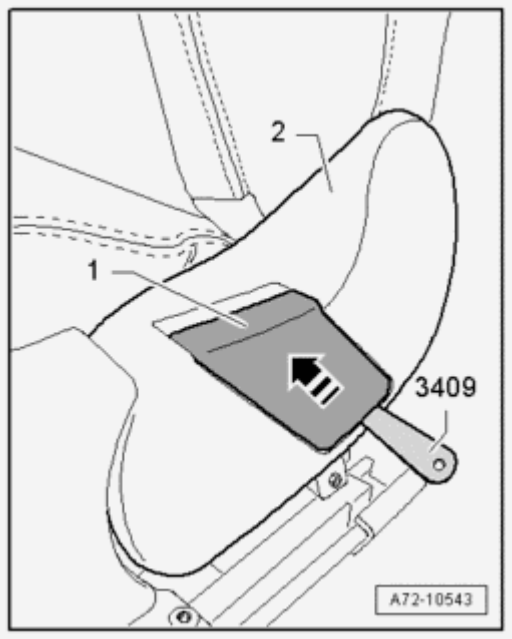


Fig. 712: Assembly Cover, Removing/Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Position Trim Removal Wedge 3409 at bottom center of assembly cover - **1** -.
- Remove assembly cover - **1** -.
- Remove assembly cover - **1** - in - **direction of arrow** - from rear sill side trim - **2** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Front and rear sill side trim, removing and installing

Removing

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Remove front seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Attach seat to Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136.
- Remove assembly cover **Assembly cover, removing and installing**.
- Disengage cover at seat pan upper frame.

cardiagn.com

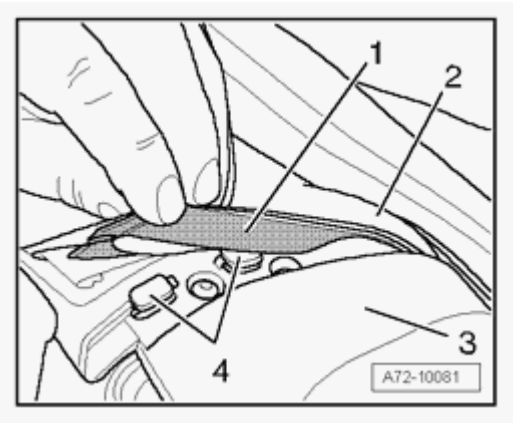


Fig. 713: Disengaging Retaining Strip On Footwell Cover From Brackets Rear Sill Side Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage retaining strip - **1** - on footwell cover - **2** - from brackets - **4** - (Qty. 2) rear sill side trim - **3** -.

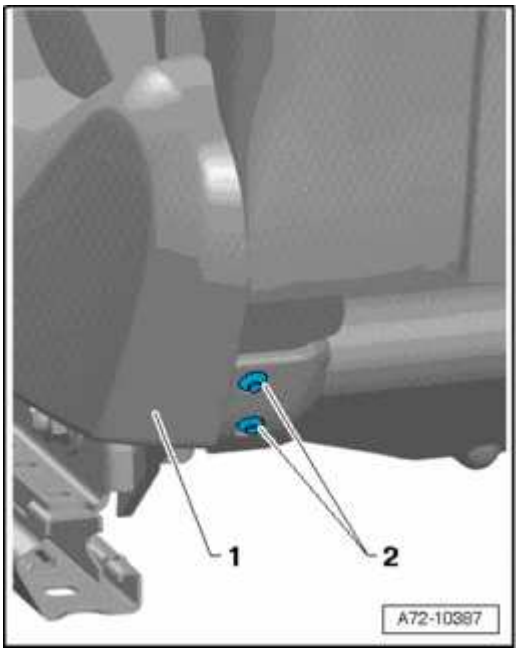


Fig. 714: Removing Expanding Rivets
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove expanding rivets - **2** - (Qty. 2).

1. Rear sill side trim

cardiagn.com

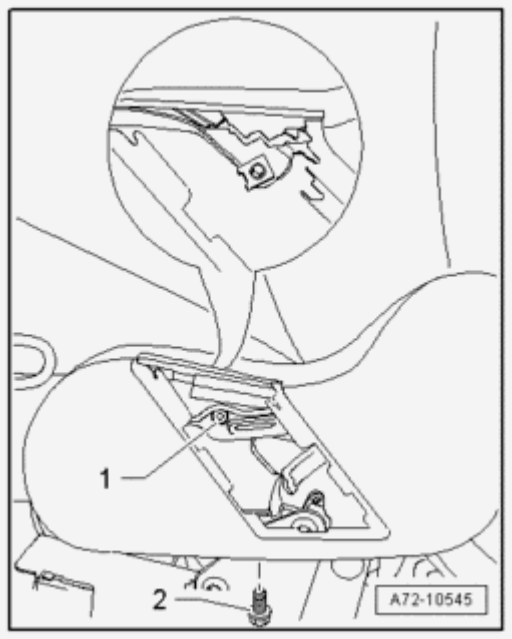


Fig. 715: Removing Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - and - **2** -.

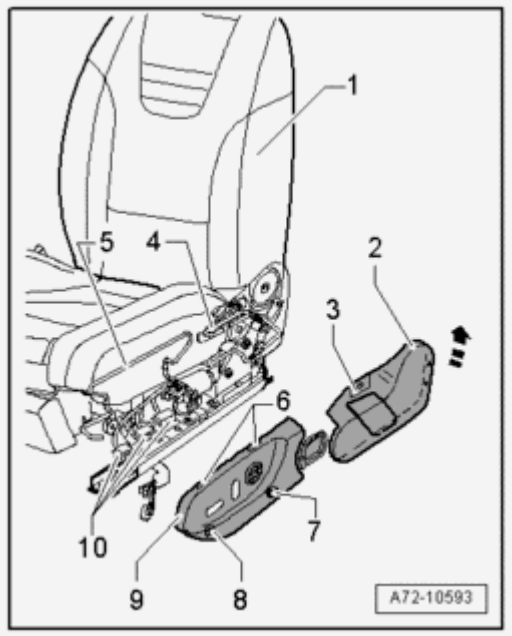


Fig. 716: Front/Rear Sill Side Trim Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage rear sill side trim - **2** - upward at rear retaining bracket - **4** -.
- Separate rear sill side trim - **2** - from front sill side trim - **9** - by turning in - **direction of arrow** -.
- Pull front sill side trim - **9** - forward in order to disengage eyes - **7** - from front retaining bracket - **5** -.

cardiagn.com

- Disengage front sill side trim - **9** - upward at brackets - **6** - (Qty. 2).
- Open locking mechanism - **8** -.
- Disconnect connector - **10** - (Qty. 3).
- Remove front sill-side trim - **9** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:
- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

NOTE:
- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

Tightening torque --> **Sill and tunnel side trim panels, assembly overview**

Tunnel side trim panel, removing and installing

Removing

CAUTION:
- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**

cardiagn.com

- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Remove front seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Attach seat to Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136.
- Disengage cover at seat pan upper frame.

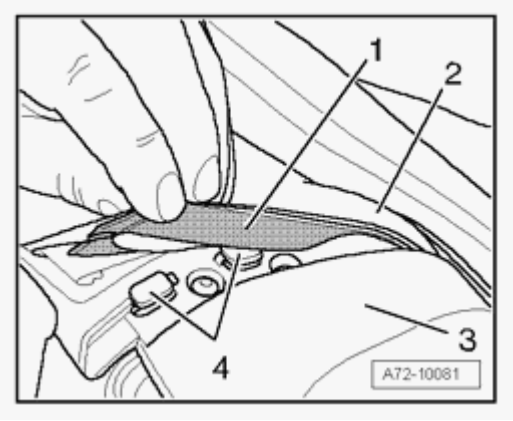


Fig. 717: Disengaging Retaining Strip On Footwell Cover From Brackets Rear Sill Side Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage grip channel - **1** - on footwell cover - **2** - from brackets - **4** - (Qty. 2) on tunnel side trim - **3** -.

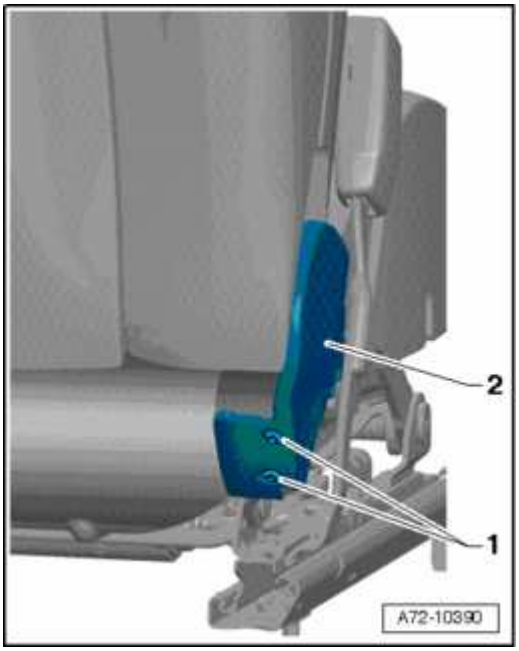


Fig. 718: Removing Expanding Rivets & Tunnel Side Trim Panel Upward
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Remove expanding rivets - **2** - (Qty. 2).
- Remove tunnel side trim panel - **1** - upward.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:
- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

NOTE:
- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

Sill side trim retaining bracket, assembly overview

I Front retaining bracket

cardiagn.com

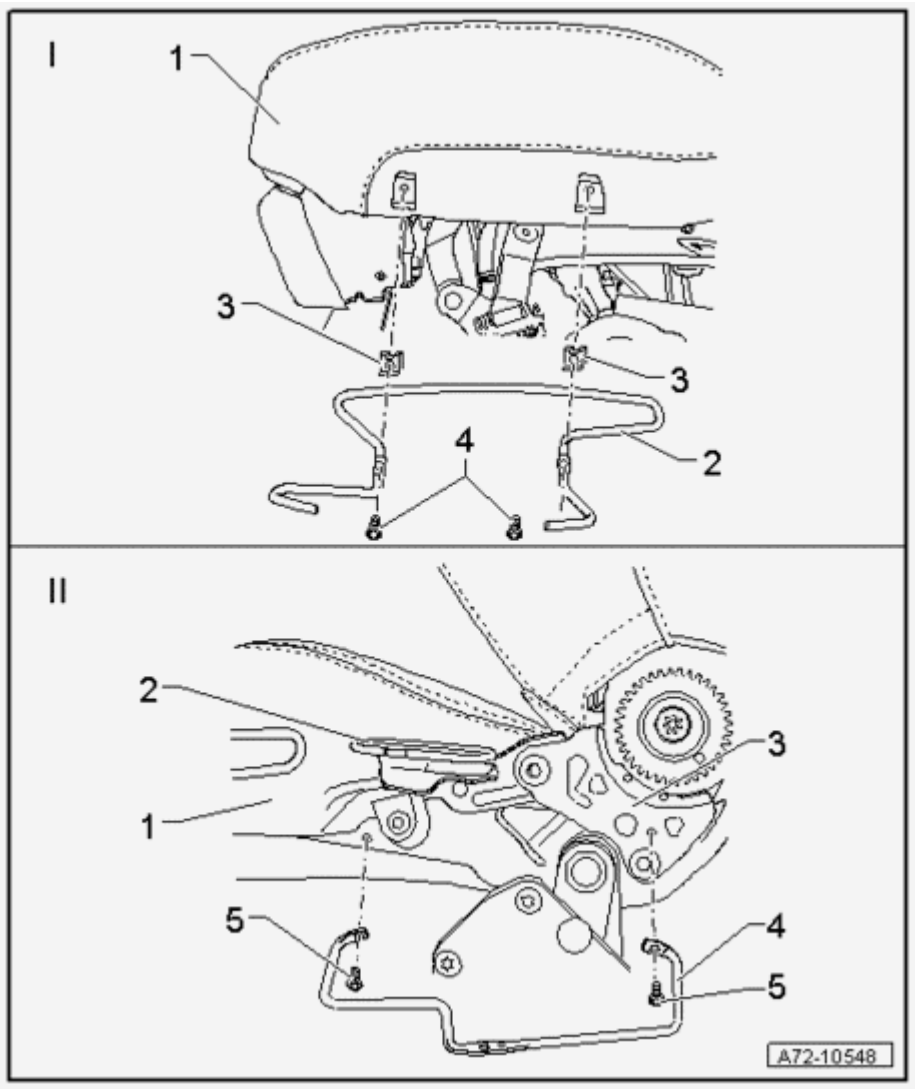


Fig. 719: Sill Side Trim Retaining Bracket, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat pan upper frame

- With cover and upholstery

2 - Front retaining bracket

- Removing and installing --> **Front retaining bracket, removing and installing**

3 - Spring nut

- Qty. 2

4 - Screw

cardiagn.com

- 3.5 Nm
- Qty. 2

II Rear retaining bracket

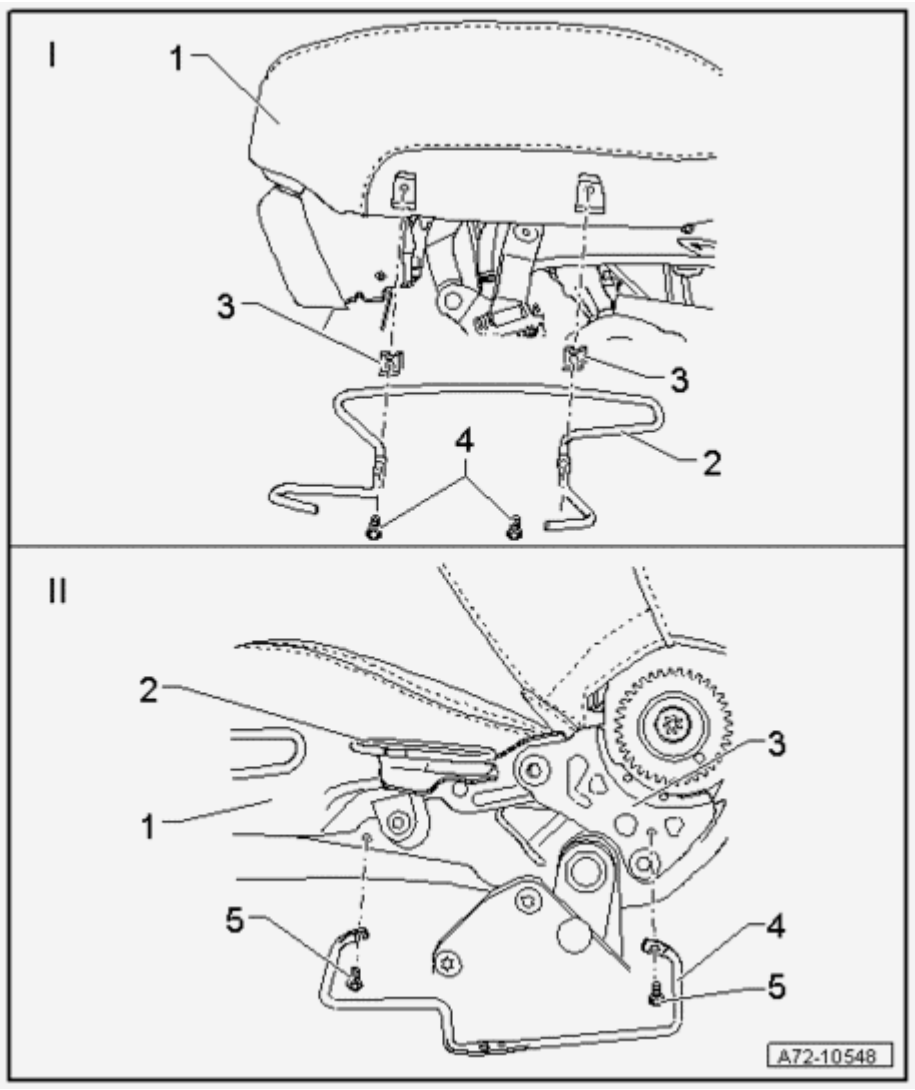


Fig. 720: Sill Side Trim Retaining Bracket, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat pan upper frame

- With cover and upholstery

2 - Upper retaining bracket

- Removing and installing --> **Upper retaining bracket, removing and installing**

cardiagn.com

3 - Backrest

- With cover and upholstery

4 - Rear retaining bracket

- Removing and installing --> **Rear retaining bracket, removing and installing**

5 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm
- Qty. 2

Front retaining bracket, removing and installing

Removing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

- Remove sill side trim and assembly cover --> **Sill side trim and assembly cover, removing and installing**.

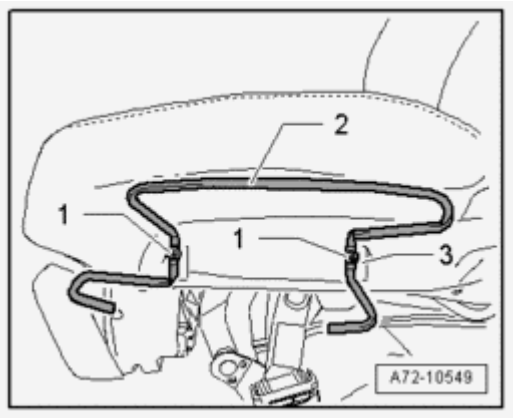


Fig. 721: Front Retaining Bracket Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (Qty. 2).
- Remove front retaining bracket - **2** - from seat pan upper frame - **3** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

cardiagn.com

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

NOTE:

- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

Rear retaining bracket, removing and installing

Removing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

- Remove assembly cover **Assembly cover, removing and installing**.
- Remove tunnel side rear trim panel **Front and rear sill side trim, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

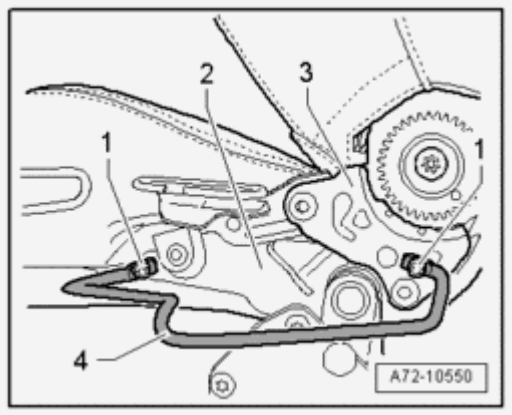


Fig. 722: Rear Retaining Bracket Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (Qty. 2).
- Remove rear retaining bracket - **4** - from seat pan upper frame - **2** - and backrest - **3** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:
- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

NOTE:
- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must

cardiagn.com

be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

Upper retaining bracket, removing and installing

Removing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

- Remove assembly cover **Assembly cover, removing and installing**.
- Remove tunnel side rear trim panel **Front and rear sill side trim, removing and installing**.
- Remove tunnel side trim panel --> **Tunnel side trim panel, removing and installing**.

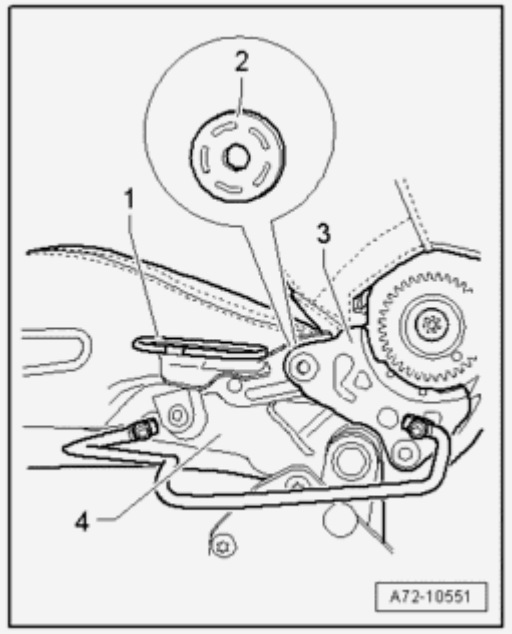


Fig. 723: Upper Retaining Bracket Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove the backrest - **3** - --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove spacer ring - **2** -.
- Remove upper retaining bracket - **1** - from seat pan upper frame - **4** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**

cardiagn.com

- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

NOTE:

- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

Drawer, vehicles through 06.06, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

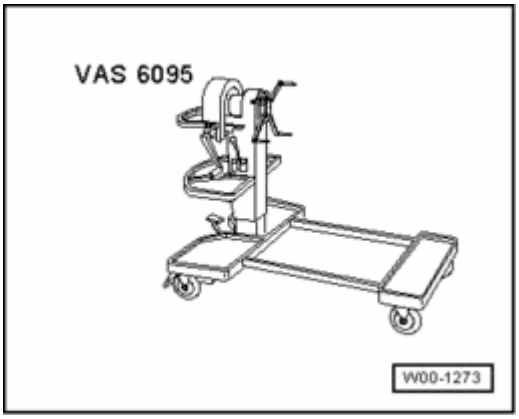


Fig. 724: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

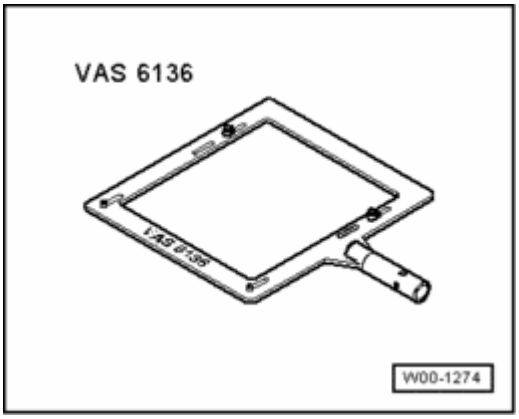
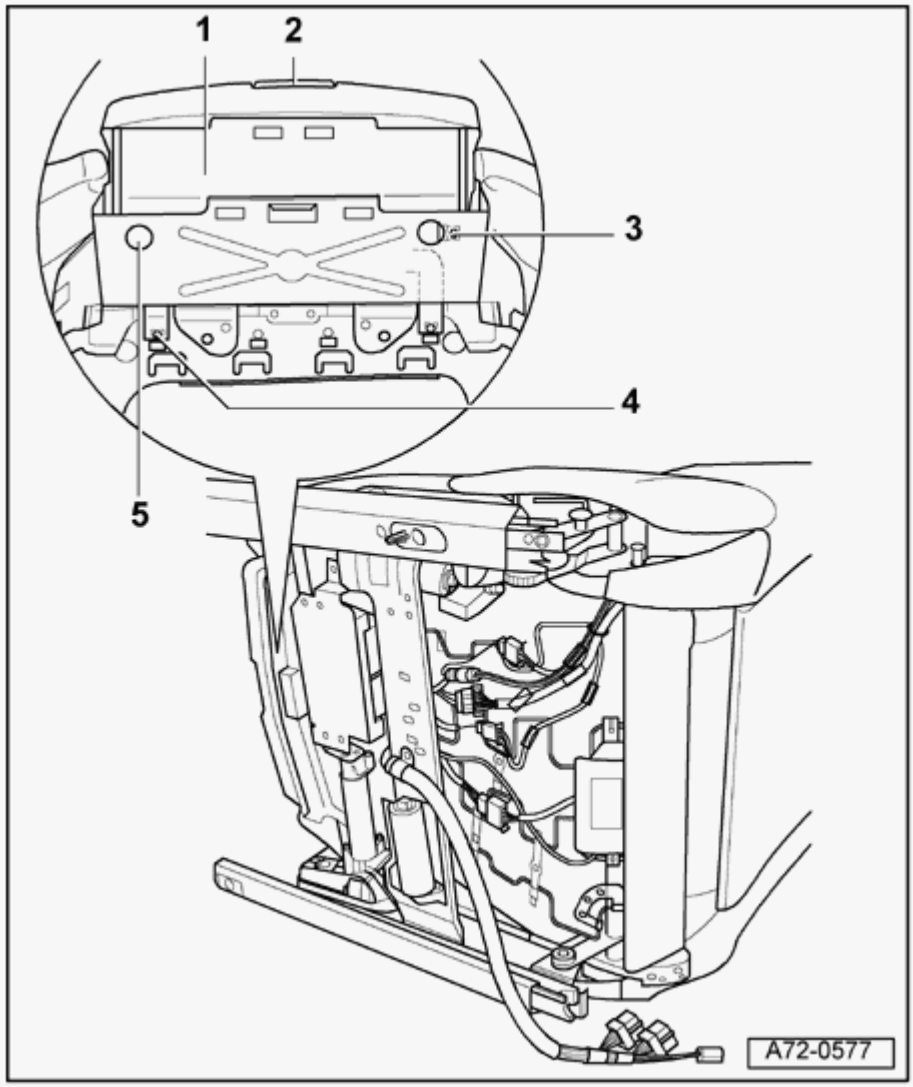


Fig. 725: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136



cardiagn.com

Fig. 726: Drawer, Vehicles Through 06.06 Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Drawer

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Pull handle - **2** - and pull out drawer - **1** -.

  - Insert a screwdriver with inserted bit into opening - **5** - and remove the bolt installed beneath.
  - Remove bolts - **4** - (Qty. 2).
  - Remove bolts - **3** - (Qty. 2).
  - Remove drawer - **1** -.

- **Installing**

  - Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Grip

3 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm
- Qty. 2

4 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm
- Qty. 2

5 - Opening

Passenger side storage compartment, vehicles from 06.06, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

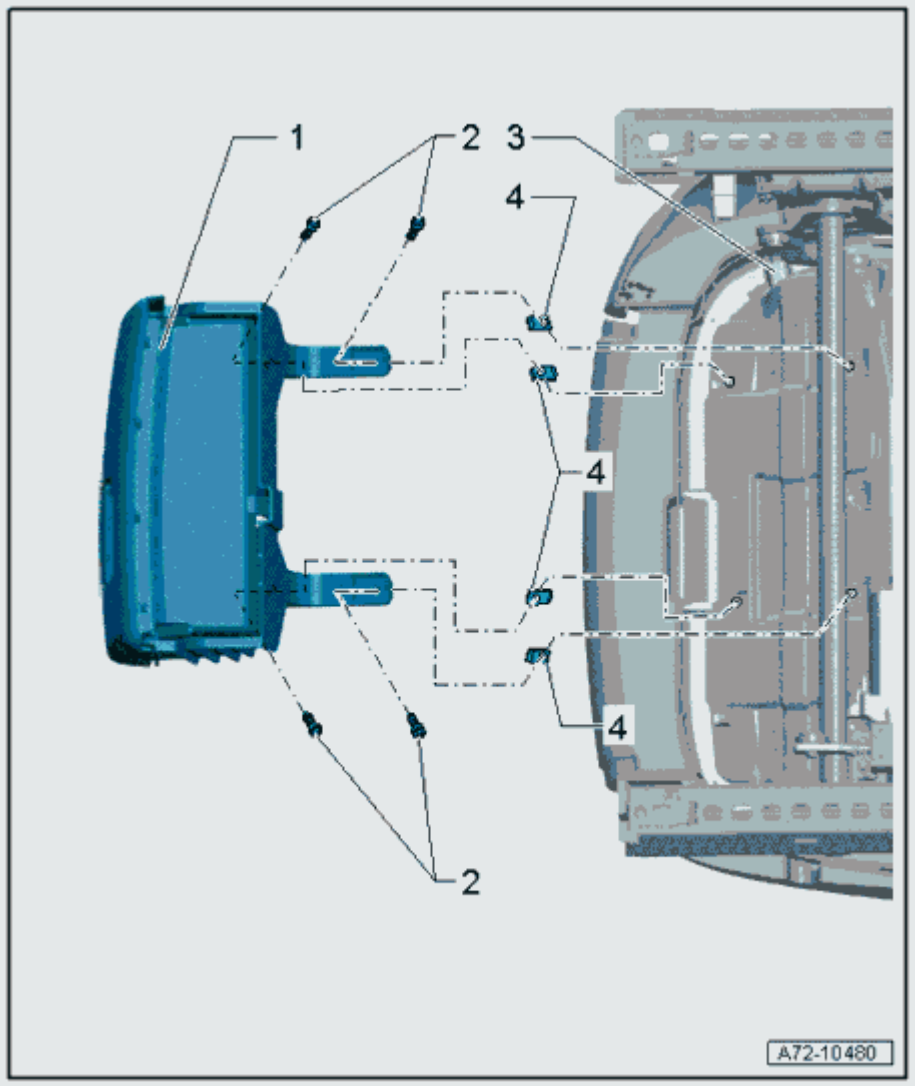


Fig. 727: Passenger Side Storage Compartment, Vehicles From 06.06, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Storage compartment

- Removing and installing --> **Storage compartment, removing and installing**
- Storage compartment individual parts, assembly overview --> **Storage compartment individual parts, assembly overview**
- Disassembling and assembling --> **Storage compartment, disassembling and assembling**
- Only installed on passenger side

2 - Screw

- 3.5 Nm
- Qty. 4

cardiagn.com

3 - Seat pan

4 - Spring nut

- Qty. 4

Storage compartment, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

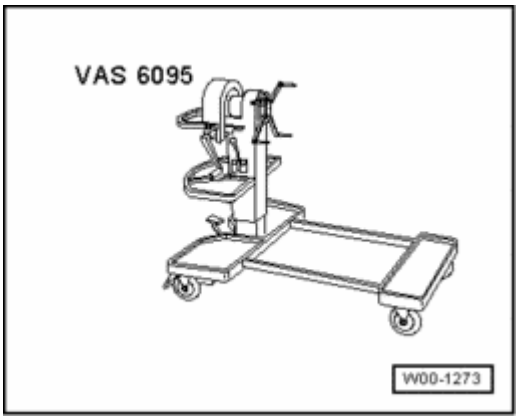


Fig. 728: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

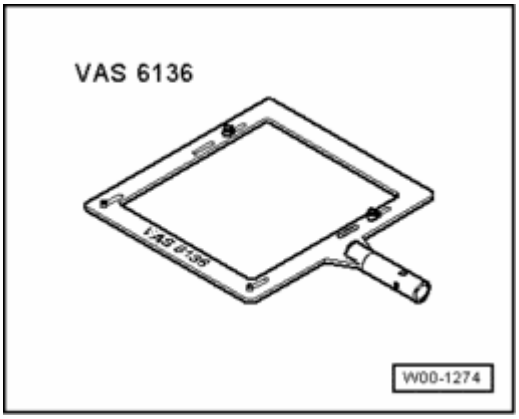


Fig. 729: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

Removing

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety**

cardiagn.com

precautions.

- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Remove front seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach seat to Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136.
- Open storage compartment.

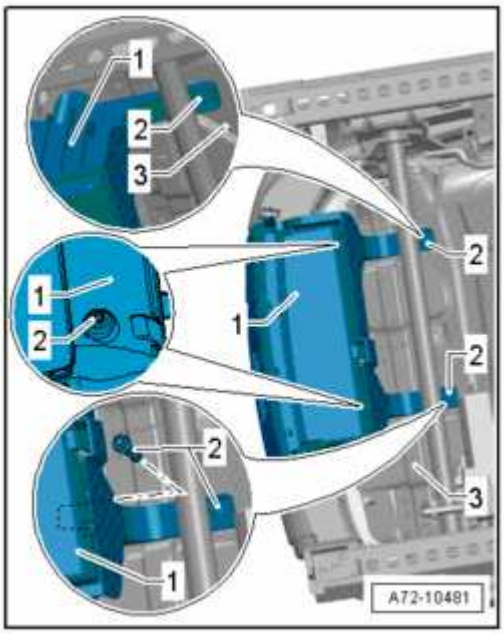


Fig. 730: Storage Compartment Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **2** - (Qty. 4).

NOTE:

- **For illustrative purposes, the storage compartment is shown closed in the illustration.**

- Remove entire storage compartment - **1** - from front seat - **3** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**

cardiagn.com

- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

NOTE:

- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

Tightening torques --> **Passenger side storage compartment, from 06.06, assembly overview**

Storage compartment individual parts, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

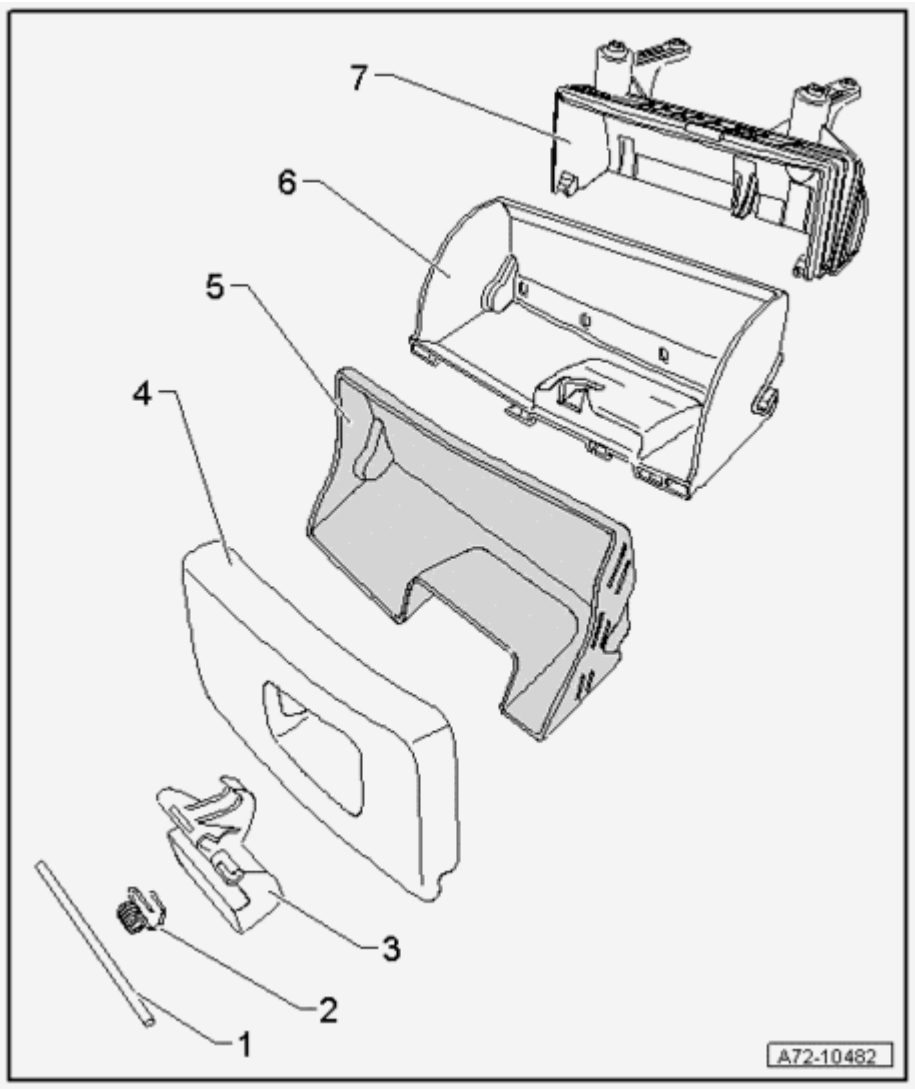


Fig. 731: Storage Compartment Individual Parts, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rod

- For handle with locking mechanism

2 - Torsion spring

- As a replacement part only with handle with locking mechanism and rod

3 - Handle with locking mechanism

- As replacement part handle with locking mechanism, rod and torsion spring

4 - Trim

cardiagn.com

- Clipped with inner part

5 - Insert

6 - Inner part

- As replacement part only with outer part

7 - Outer part

- As replacement part only with inner part

Storage compartment, disassembling and assembling

Storage compartment, disassembling

- Remove storage compartment --> **Storage compartment, removing and installing**

Remove trim

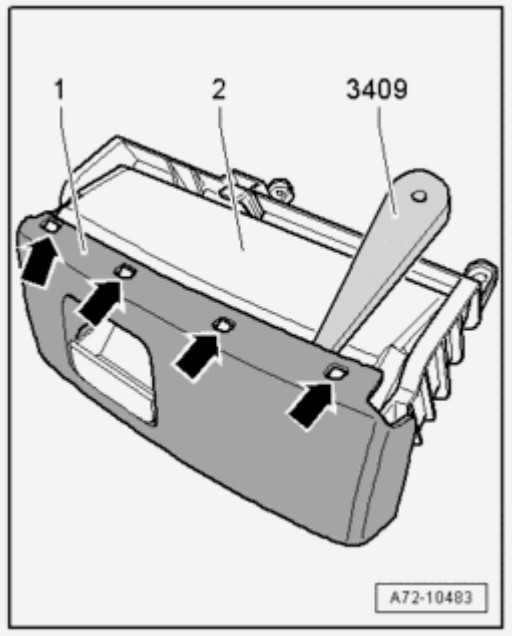


Fig. 732: Using Trim Removal Wedge 3409 To Unclip Trim From Retaining Tabs On Inner Part
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using Trim Removal Wedge 3409 , unclip trim - **1** - from retaining tabs - **arrows** - (Qty. 4) on inner part - **2** -.

Handle with locking mechanism, removing

- Remove trim --> **Remove trim**.

cardiagn.com

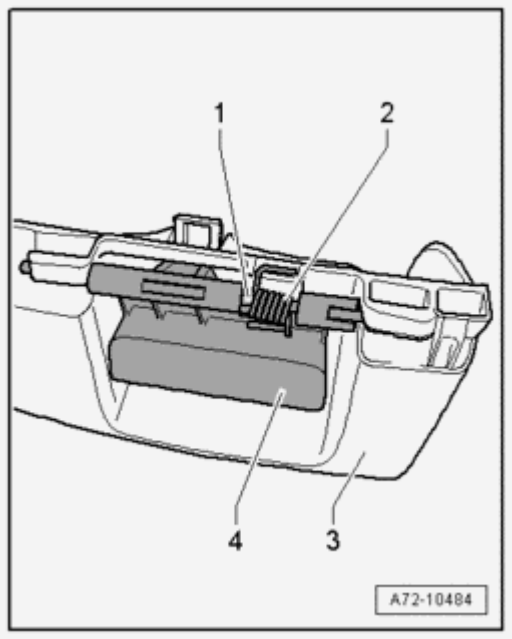


Fig. 733: Handle With Locking Mechanism, Removing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove rod - **1** - from inner part - **3** -.
- Remove handle with locking mechanism - **4** - , torsion spring - **2** - and rod - **1** -.

Insert, removing

NOTE:

- **The insert is placed in the inner part and is not secured by any additional means.**
- **For overview purposed, the trim and handle with locking mechanism are not shown in the illustration.**

- Open storage compartment.

cardiagn.com

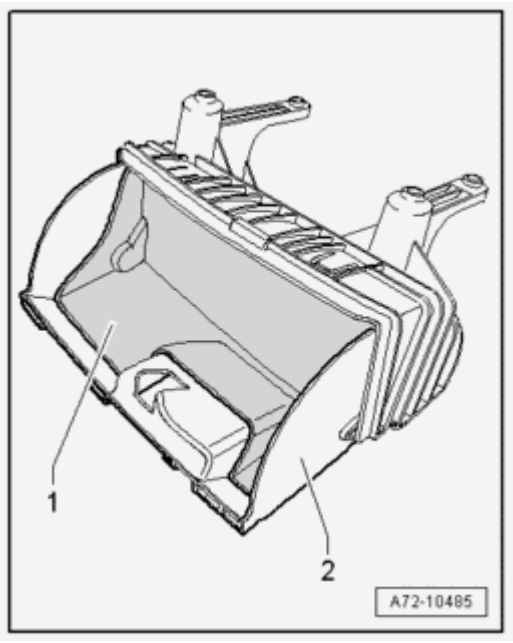


Fig. 734: Removing Insert From Inner Part
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove insert - **1** - from inner part - **2** -.

Inner part, removing from outer part

- Open storage compartment.

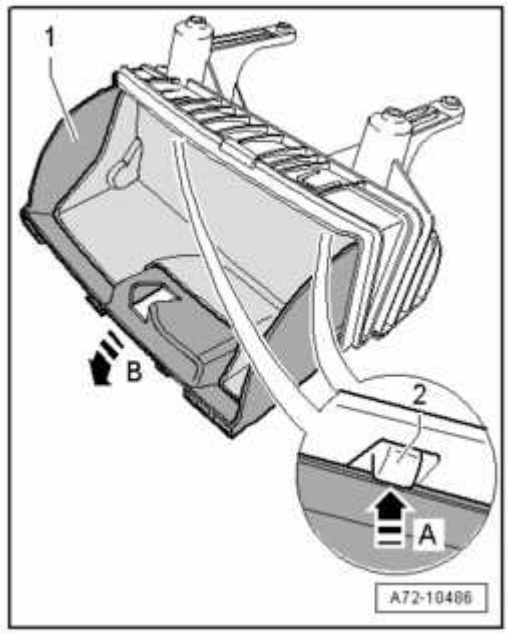


Fig. 735: Inner Part, Removing From Outer Part
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Press retainers - **2** - (Qty. 2) upward in - **direction of arrow A** -.
- Tip inner part - **1** - down in - **direction of arrow B** -.

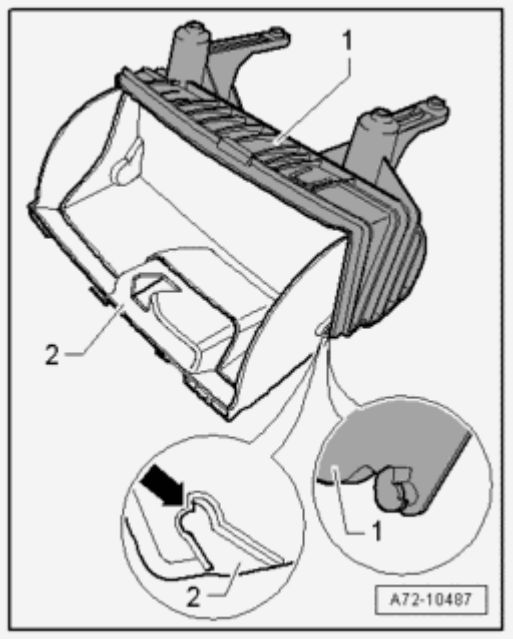


Fig. 736: Removing Outer Part From Guide On Inner Part
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove outer part - **1** - from guide - **arrow** - on inner part - **2** -.

Storage compartment, assembling

Assembly is performed in the reverse order of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

cardiagn.com

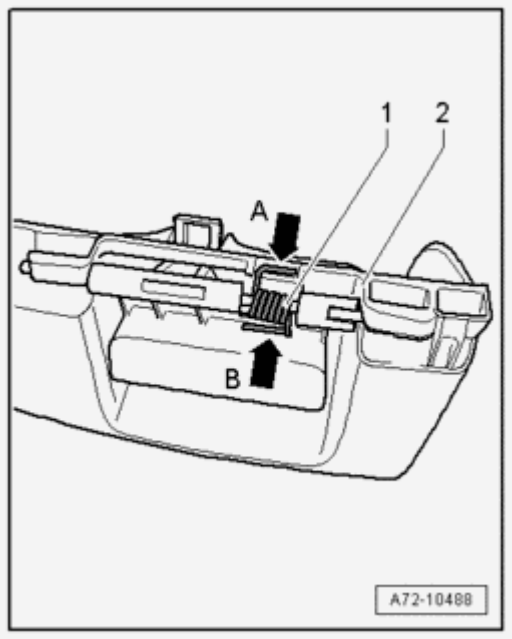


Fig. 737: Storage Compartment, Assembling
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engage torsion spring - **1** - so that shorter side - **arrow A** - is supported on inner part - **2** - and longer side - **arrow B** - is supported on handle - **3** -.

Seat adjustment switch, removing and installing

Seat adjustment switch, removing and installing --> **Seat adjustment switch, removing and installing**

Four-way lumbar support switch, removing and installing

Four-way lumbar support switch, removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support switch, removing and installing**

Control module, removing and installing

Control module, removing and installing --> **Control Module for memory seat, removing and installing**

Longitudinal seat adjustment motor, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **The seat fore/aft adjustment motor cannot be removing and installed separately. It can only be replaced together with the seat pan lower frame.**

Longitudinal seat adjustment motor, removing and installing --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**

Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or V246 , assembly overview

cardiagn.com

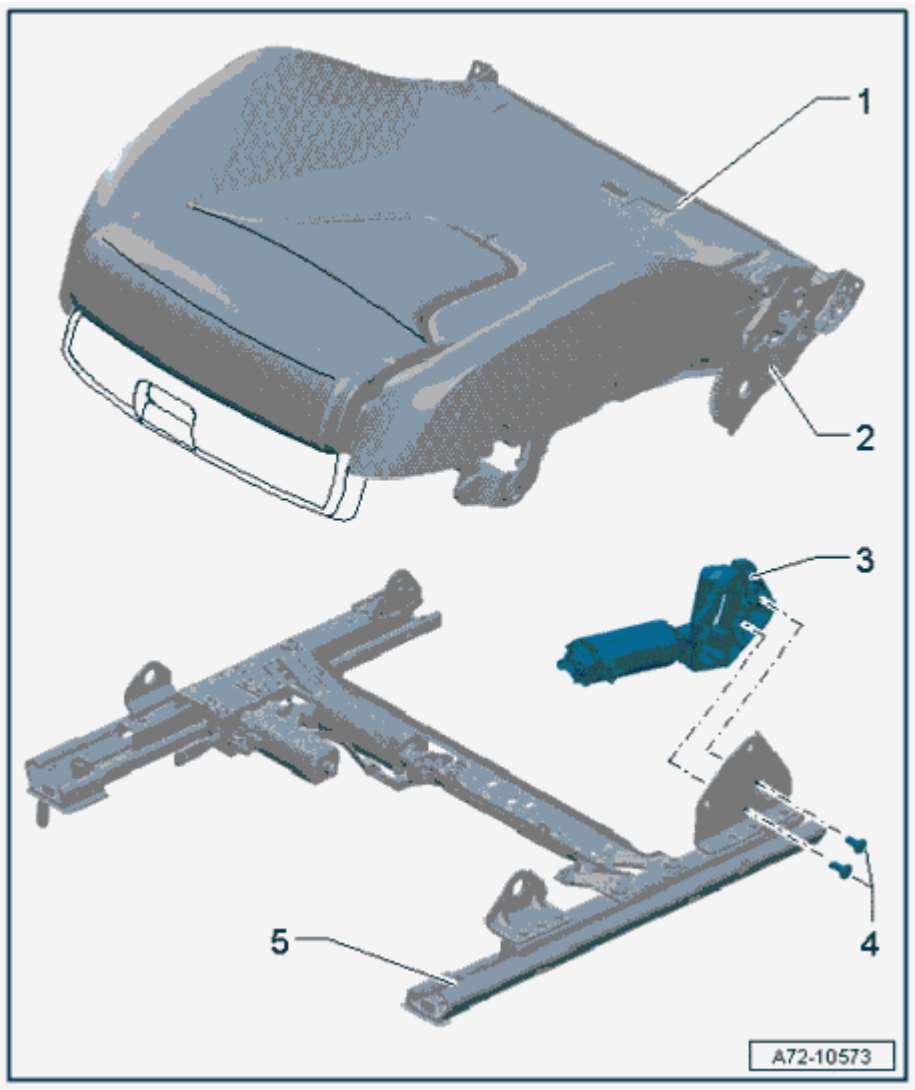


Fig. 738: Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 Or V246 , Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat pan upper frame

- With cover and upholstery
- Removing and installing --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**

2 - Toothed segment

- Plastic toothed segment
- Removing and installing --> **Seat height adjustment toothed segment, removing and installing**
- Clipped to fitting

3 - Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or Front Passenger s Seat Height Adjustment Motor V246

cardiagn.com

- Removing and installing --> **Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or V246 , removing and installing**

4 - Screw, self-locking

- 31 Nm
- Qty. 2
- Replace
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

5 - Seat pan lower frame

- Removing and installing --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**

Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or V246 , removing and installing

Removing

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Attach seat to Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136.
- Remove tunnel side trim --> **Sill side trim and assembly cover, removing and installing**.
- Remove tunnel side trim panel --> **Tunnel side trim panel, removing and installing**.
- Remove front backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

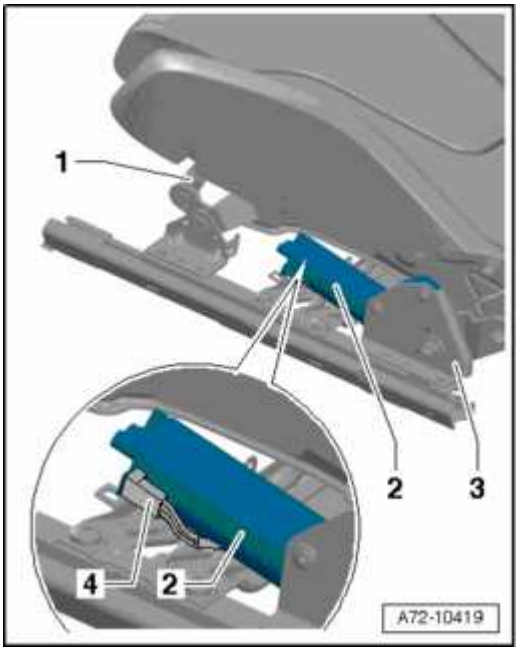


Fig. 739: Disconnecting Electrical Connector On Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 Or Front Passenger S Seat Height Adjustment Motor V246
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect electrical connector - **4** - on Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 - **2** - or Front Passenger s Seat Height Adjustment Motor V246.
- Disconnect seat pan upper frame - **1** - from lower frame - **3** - --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**.
- Remove seat pan upper frame with cover and upholstery from lower frame.

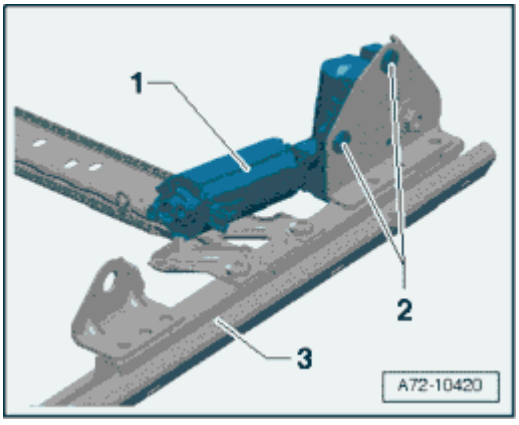


Fig. 740: Removing Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 Or Front Passenger Seat Height Adjustment Motor V246 Toward Center Of Seat From Seat Pan Lower Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **2** -.
- Remove Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 - **1** - or Front Passenger s Seat Height Adjustment

cardiagn.com

Motor V246 toward center of seat from seat pan lower frame - **3** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

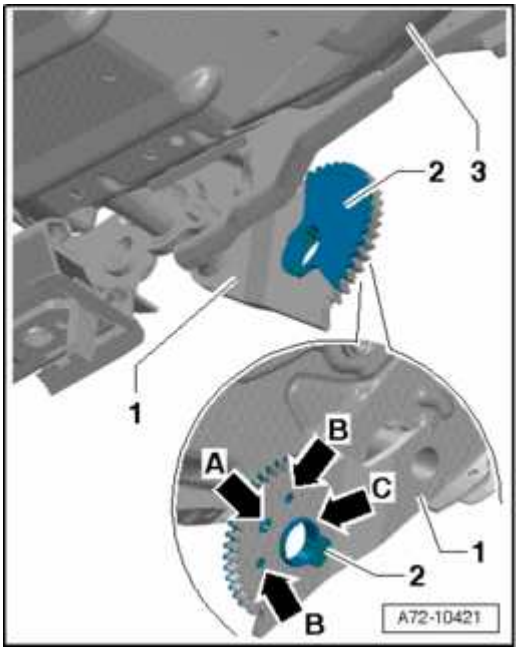


Fig. 741: Ensuring Clip And Plastic Toothed Segment Collar As Well As Locking Pins Are Inserted Correctly In Holes On Fitting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Ensure clip - **A** - and plastic toothed segment collar - **2** - as well as locking pins - **B arrows** - are inserted correctly in holes on fitting - **1** -.
- Ensure plastic toothed segment - **2** - is clipped to fitting - **1** - correctly.

Plastic toothed segment collar - **arrow C** - must contact fitting - **1** - evenly.

cardiagn.com

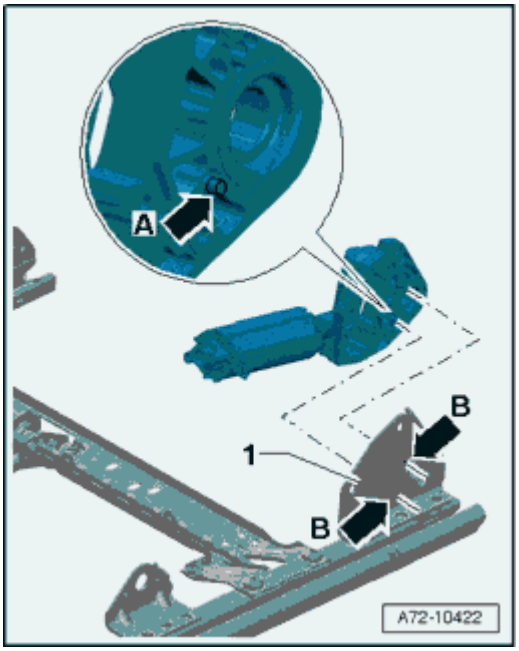


Fig. 742: Ensuring Locking Pins Are Inserted Correctly In Holes On Link Plate
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Ensure locking pins - **A arrows** - are inserted correctly in holes - **B arrows** - on link plate - **1** -.

NOTE:

- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

Tightening torques --> **Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or V246 , assembly overview**

Seat height adjustment toothed segment, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

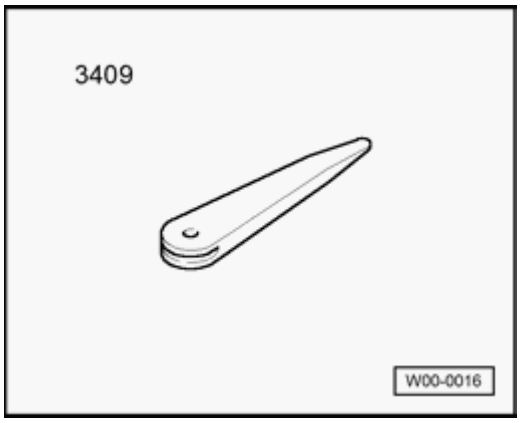


Fig. 743: Identifying Trim Removal Wedge 3409
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Trim removal wedge 3409

Removing

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Remove Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or Front Passenger s Seat Height Adjustment Motor V246 --> **Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or V246 , removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

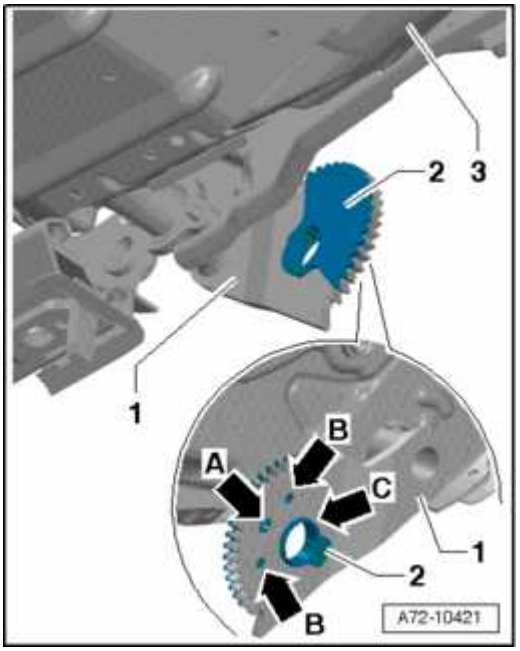


Fig. 744: Using Trim Removal Wedge 3409 To Unclip Plastic Toothed Segment From Fitting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using Trim Removal Wedge 3409 , unclip plastic toothed segment - **2** - from fitting - **1** -.

Installing

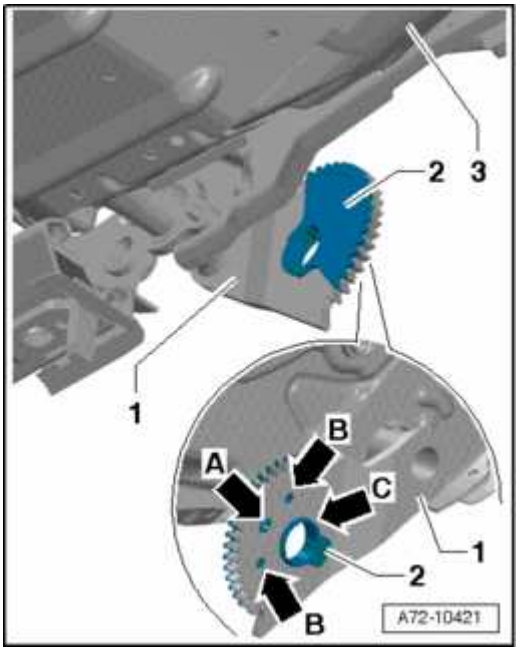


Fig. 745: Clipping Plastic Toothed Segment Into Fitting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Clip plastic toothed segment - **2** - into fitting - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- Ensure clip - **A** - and plastic toothed segment collar - **2** - as well as locking pins - **B arrows** - are inserted correctly in holes on fitting - **1** -.
- Ensure plastic toothed segment - **2** - is clipped to fitting - **1** - correctly.

Plastic toothed segment collar - **arrow C** - must contact fitting - **1** - evenly.

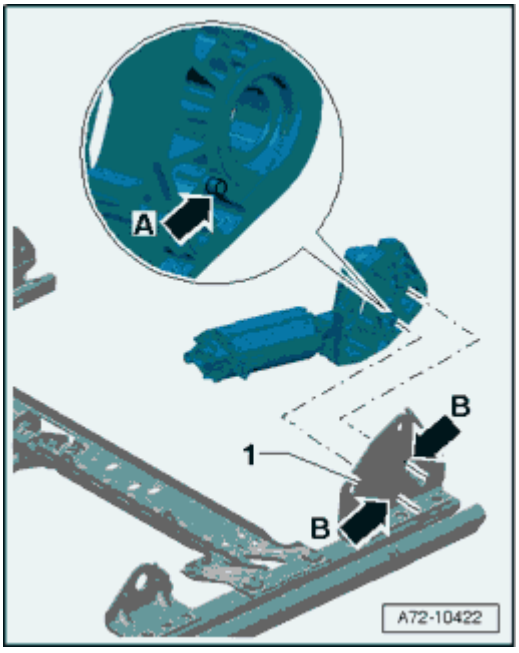


Fig. 746: Ensuring Locking Pins Are Inserted Correctly In Holes On Link Plate
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Ensure locking pins - **A arrows** - are inserted correctly in holes - **B arrows** - on link plate - **1** -.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:
- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

NOTE:
- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy

cardiagn.com

unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

Motor for seat tilt adjustment, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

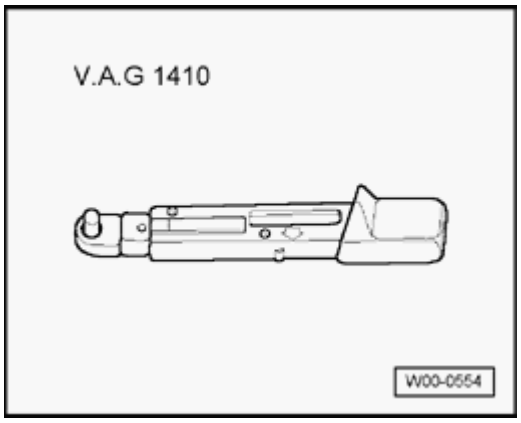


Fig. 747: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

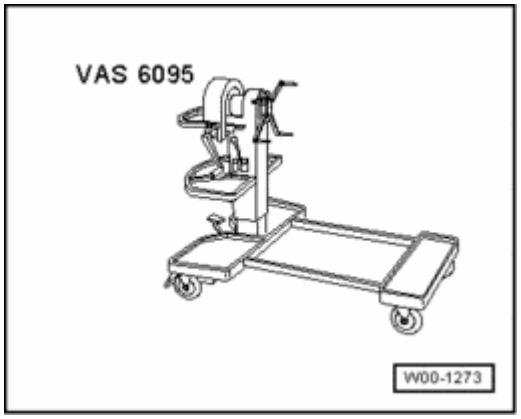


Fig. 748: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

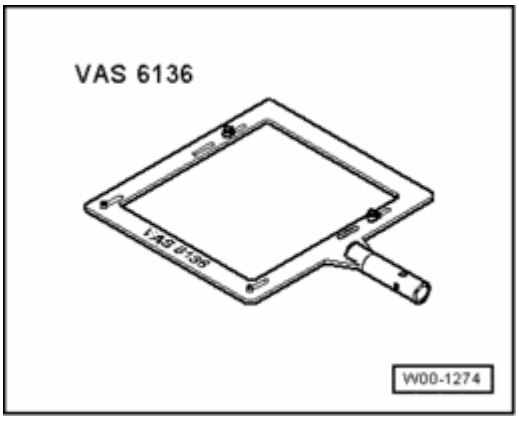


Fig. 749: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

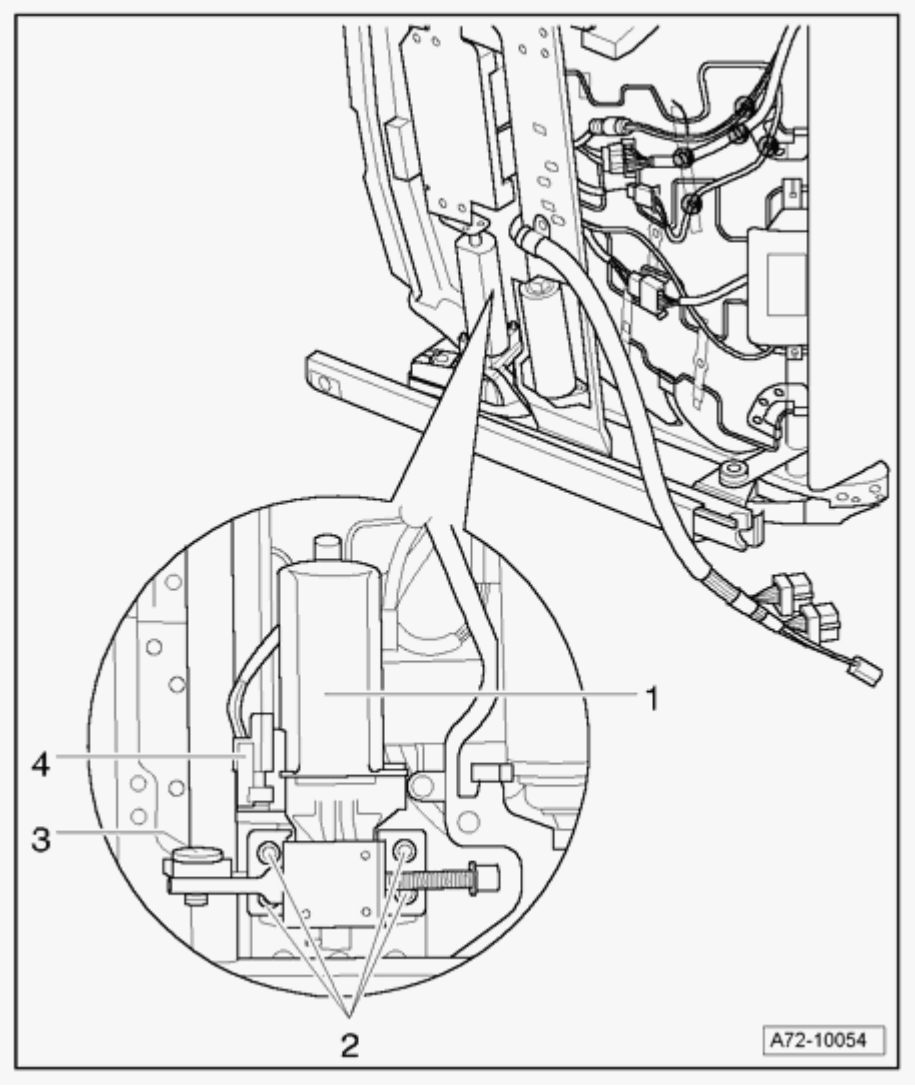


Fig. 750: Motor For Seat Tilt Adjustment Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat angle adjustment motor

- Removal

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
  - Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove bolts - **2** - (Qty. 4).

  - Remove screw - **3** -.
  - Remove connector - **4** -.
  - Remove motor for seat tilt adjustment - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Screw

- 12 Nm
- Qty. 4

3 - Screw

- 20 Nm
- Replace
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

4 - Connector

Backrest adjustment motor, removing and installing

Backrest adjustment motor, removing and installing --> **Backrest adjustment motor, removing and installing**

Seat surface extension, removing and installing

Seat surface extension, removing and installing --> **Seat cushion extension, removing and installing (sports seat)**

Backrest cover, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **In the illustration, removal and installation of backrest cover is shown on a front seat with the active head restraint system.**
- **Removal and installation of backrest cover on a front seat without active head restraint system is the same.**

cardiagn.com

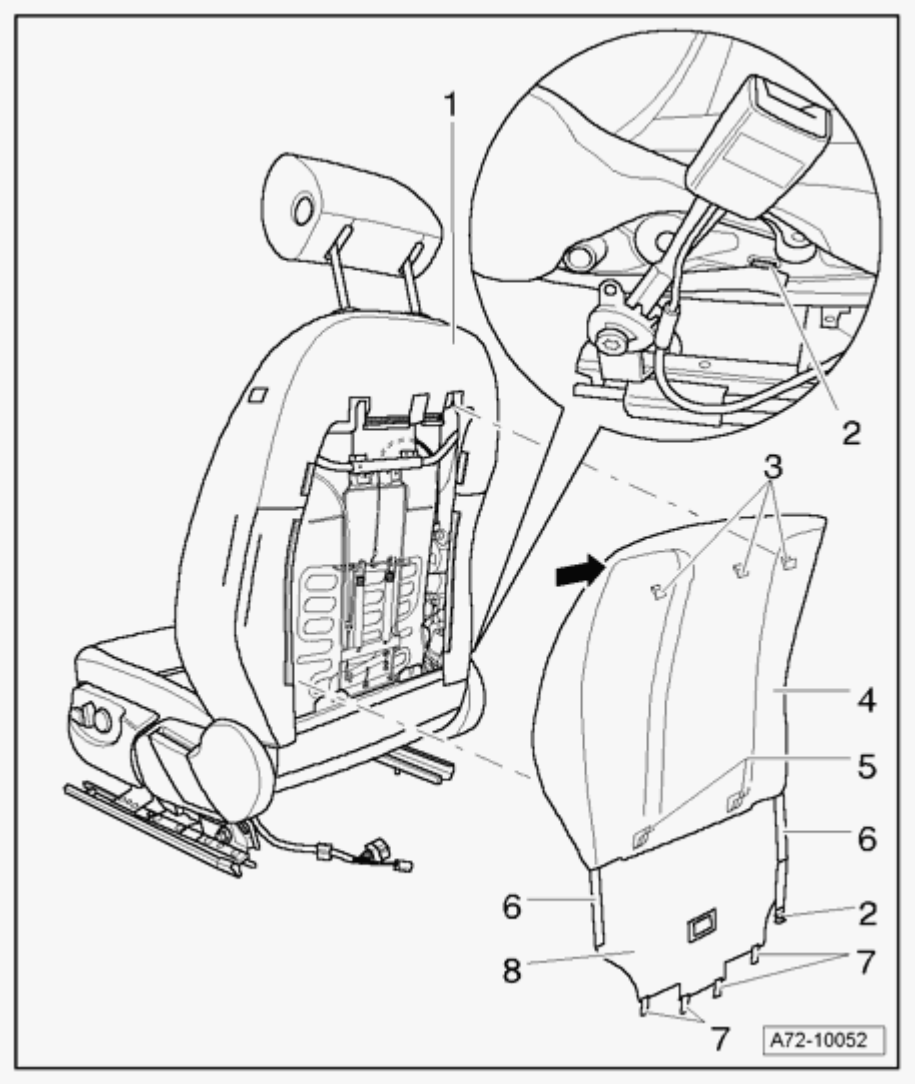


Fig. 751: Backrest Cover Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

2 - Fastening strip

- Always on tunnel side

3 - Clips

- Qty. 3
- Replace

4 - Backrest cover

cardiagn.com

- Removal

  - Disengage footwell cover - **8** - on underside of seat at tabs - **7** - (Qty. 4) from spring mat.
  - Disengage retaining strip - **2** -.
  - Loosen retaining strips - **6** - (Qty. 2) from side panels **Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening**.
  - Press against backrest cover where indicated by arrow - **4** - to remove wire clips - **3** - (Qty. 3).
  - Disengage backrest cover - **4** - upward from brackets - **5** - (Qty. 2).

- **Installing**

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

  - Replace clips - **3** - (Qty. 3).
  - Slide footwell fastening strip into side trim bracket **Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening**.

5 - Bracket

- Qty. 2

6 - Fastening strip

- Qty. 2

7 - Tab

- Qty. 4

8 - Footwell cover

Footwell cover retaining strip, loosening

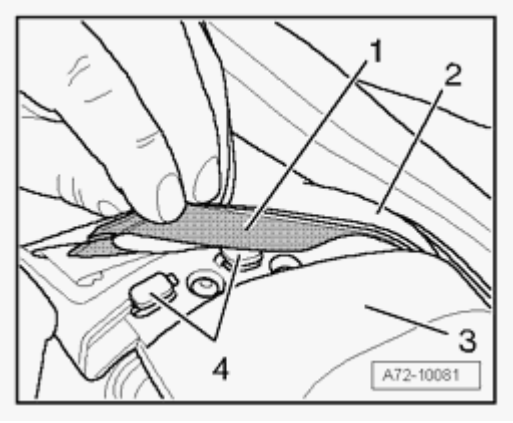


Fig. 752: Disengaging Retaining Strip On Footwell Cover From Brackets Rear Sill Side Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Disengage retaining strip - **1** - on footwell cover - **2** - from brackets - **4** - (2x) on side panel - **3** -.

Four-way lumbar support, removing and installing

Versions for specific countries: Vehicles through 06.06

Rest of world: Vehicles through 11.06

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

- Special pop rivet pliers V.A.G 1753 A

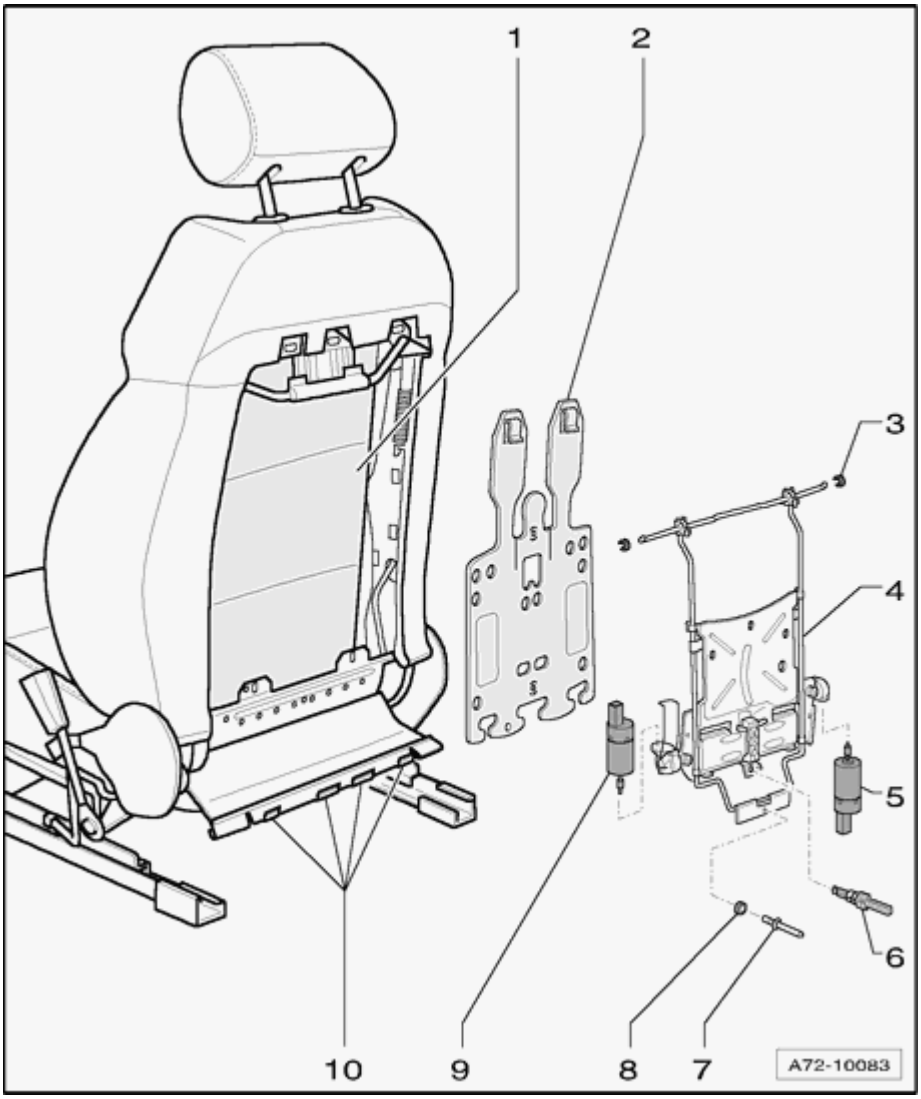


Fig. 753: Four-Way Lumbar Support Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest padding

cardiagn.com

2 - Four-way lumbar support

3 - Clamping sleeve

4 - Four-way lumbar support frame

- **Removing:**

- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
- Pry fastening strips - **10** - (Qty. 4) out with a screwdriver.
- Insert foil between upholstery and backrest frame to protect against metal particles.
- Drill out rivet - **7** -.

- Disengage four-way lumbar support frame - **4** - at upper left and right from backrest frame.
- Disconnect electrical harness connectors at actuators - **5** - and - **9** - for four-way lumbar support.
- Disconnect Velcro connector between four-way lumber support - **2** - and backrest upholstery - **1** -.
- Disengage four-way lumber support at top of frame.

- Remove four-way lumbar support.

- **Installing:**

Installation is performed in reverse order of removal, noting the following:

- Place a plastic film over Velcro strips on four-way lumbar support. Secure plastic film to four-way lumbar support --> **Secure four-way lumbar support with assembly aid and secure plastic film to four-way lumbar support**.
- Ensure four-way lumbar support is secured to frame with transport fastener or a suitable pin --> **Secure four-way lumbar support with assembly aid and secure plastic film to four-way lumbar support**.
- Position lumbar support frame behind backrest and engage lumbar support frame at top left and right in mounts on frame.
- Rivet bottom of four-way lumbar support frame with backrest frame. A plastic washer must be placed between four-way lumbar support frame and backrest frame **Four-way lumbar support with backrest frame, riveting**.

- Remove plastic film between backrest padding and four-way lumbar support.
- Press four-way lumbar support Velcro fastener onto backrest padding to secure.
- Connect electrical connectors to four-way lumbar support motors.

5 - Four-way lumber support positioning motor

- Removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing**

6 - Assembly safety guard

cardiagn.com

For centering four-way lumbar support with frame

7 - Rivet

- Rivet using special pop rivet pliers V.A.G 1753 A
- Before riveting, a plastic washer must be placed between four-way lumbar support and backrest frame

8 - Plastic washer

9 - Four-way lumbar support height adjustment motor

- Removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing**

10 - Fastening strips

Secure four-way lumbar support with assembly aid and secure plastic film to four-way lumbar support

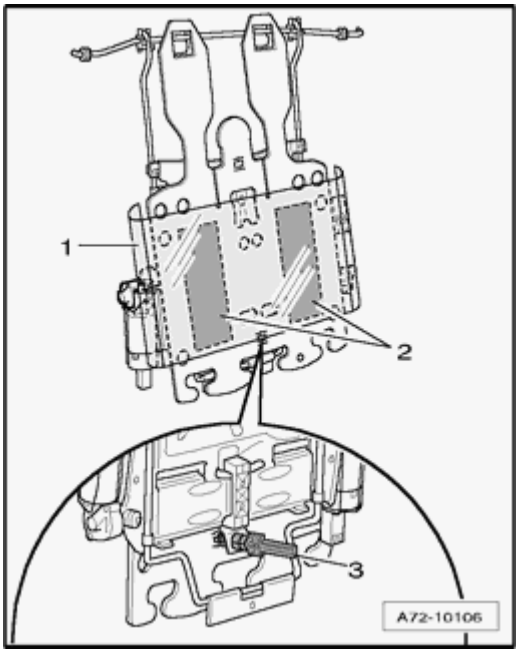


Fig. 754: Securing Four-Way Lumbar Support With Assembly Aid And Plastic Film To Four-Way Lumbar Support
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Lay plastic film - **1** - over Velcro strips - **2** - on four-way lumbar support. Secure plastic film to four-way lumbar support.
- Ensure four-way lumbar support is attached to four-way lumbar support frame with assembly fastener - **3** - or a suitable pin.

Four-way lumbar support with backrest frame, riveting

cardiagn.com

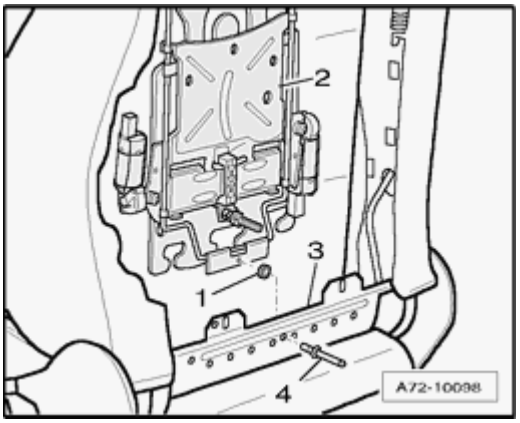


Fig. 755: Four-Way Lumbar Support With Backrest Frame, Riveting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Before securing rivet - **4** - , a plastic washer - **1** - must be placed between four-way lumbar support - **2** - and backrest frame - **3** -.

Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

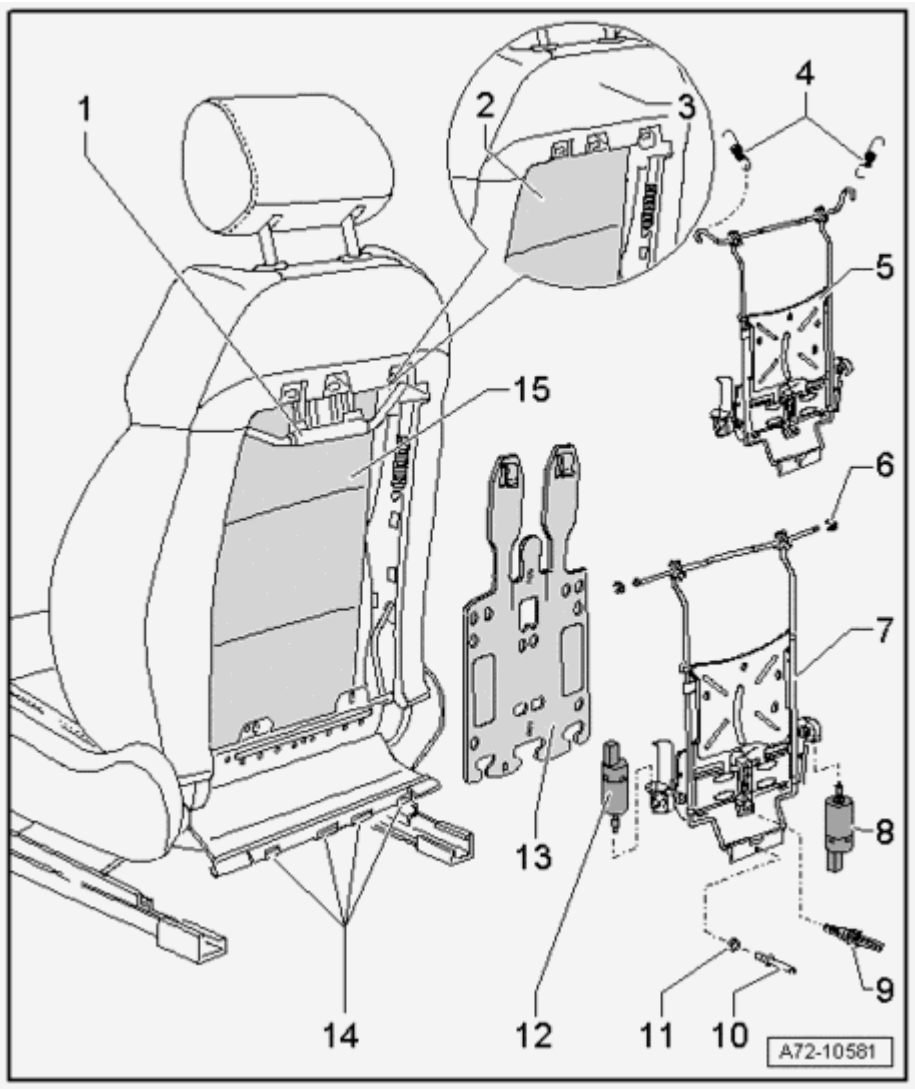


Fig. 756: Four-Way Lumbar Support Positioning Motors Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest with active restraint system

- Through 06.06 (for specific countries)
- Through 11.06 (rest of world)

2 - Backrest padding

- From 06.06 (for specific countries)
- From 11.06 (rest of world)

3 - Backrest without active head restraint system

- From 06.06 (for specific countries)

cardiagn.com

- From 11.06 (rest of world)

4 - Spring

- Qty. 2
- For engaging four-way lumbar support in backrest frame
- From 06.06 (for specific countries)
- From 11.06 (rest of world)

5 - Four-way lumbar support frame

- From 06.06 (for specific countries)
- From 11.06 (rest of world)

6 - Clamping sleeve

- Through 06.06 (for specific countries)
- Through 11.06 (rest of world)

7 - Four-way lumbar support frame

- Through 06.06 (for specific countries)
- Through 11.06 (rest of world)

8 - Four-way lumber support positioning motor

- **Removing:**

NOTE:

- **When replacing positioning motor, four-way lumbar support must not be on an end stop.**

  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
  - Disconnect electrical harness connector **Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator**.
  - Disengage retaining bracket and remove actuator downward **Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator**.

- **Installing:**

Installation is performed in reverse order of removal, noting the following:

  - Actuator can only be installed in one position.

9 - Central screws

cardiagn.com

For centering four-way lumbar support with frame

10 - Rivet

11 - Plastic washer

12 - Four-way lumbar support height adjustment motor

Removing

NOTE:

- **When replacing positioning motor, four-way lumbar support must not be on an end stop.**

- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
- Disconnect electrical harness connector **Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator**.
- Disengage retaining bracket and remove actuator upward **Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator**.

Installing

Installation is performed in reverse order of removal, noting the following:

- Actuator can only be installed in one position.

13 - four-way lumbar support

14 - Fastening strips

15 - Backrest padding

- Through 06.06 (for specific countries)
- Through 11.06 (rest of world)

Disconnecting electrical harness connector and disengaging retaining bracket at actuator

cardiagn.com

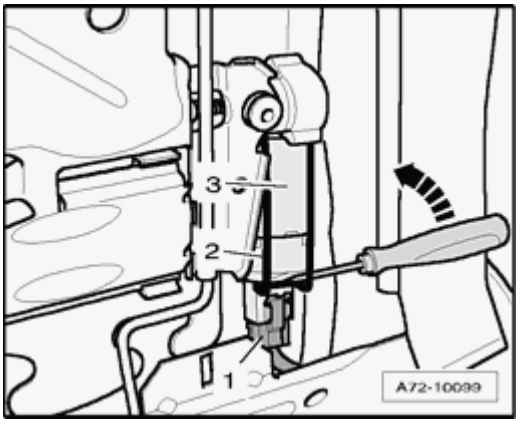


Fig. 757: Disconnecting Electrical Harness Connector And Disengaging Retaining Bracket At Actuator
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

NOTE:

- **When replacing positioning motor, four-way lumbar support must not be on an end stop.**

- Disconnect electrical connector - **4** -.
- Disengage retaining bracket - **3** - using a screwdriver - **2** - and remove actuator - **1** -.

Headrest with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing

Headrest with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing --> **Headrest with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing**

Footwell light, removing and installing

Rear footwell light, removing and installing --> **Footwell light, removing and installing**

Spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan, removing and installing

Spring mat with seat pan wiring harness, removing and installing --> **Spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan, removing and installing**

Seat pan, assembly overview

NOTE:

- **On the front seat, the upper and lower seat pan frames can be separated and replaced individually.**
- **When removing seat pan, ensure bushings in bearing points (upper and lower frame threaded connection) are not damaged. These bushings cannot be replaced with workshop materials.**

cardiagn.com

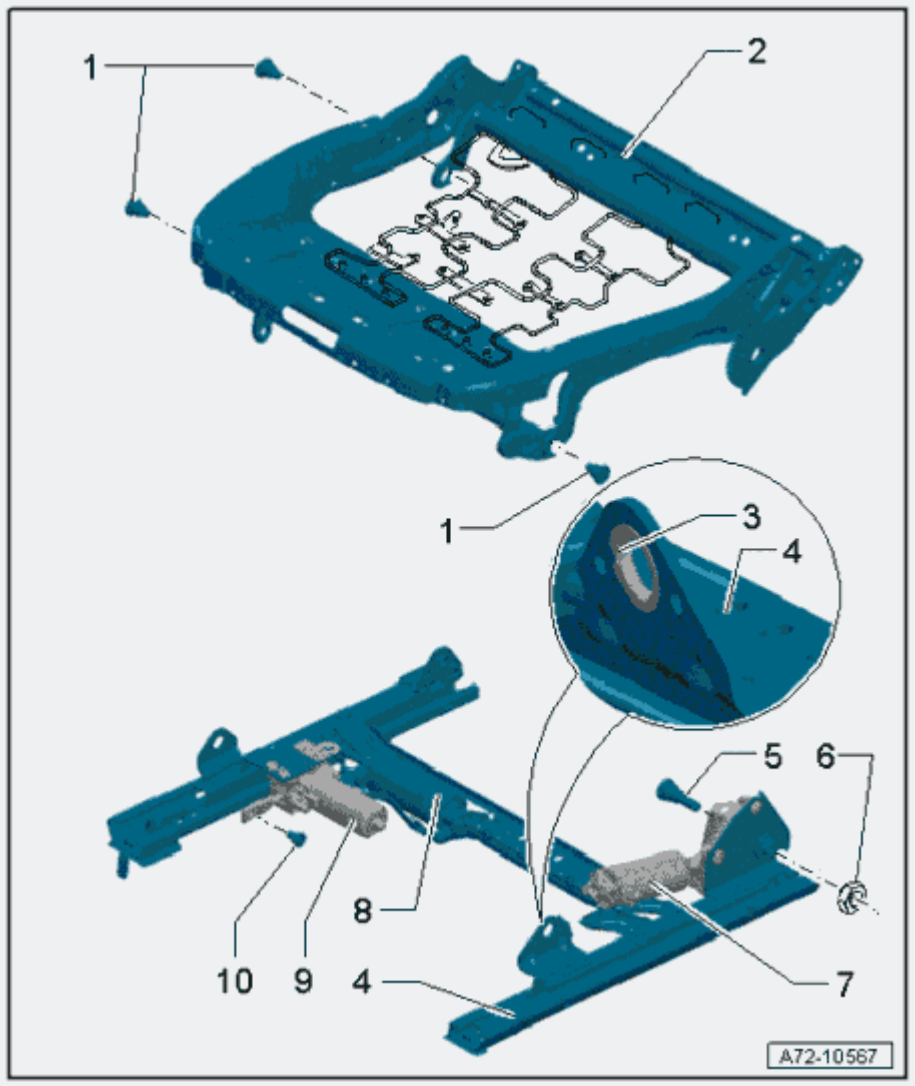


Fig. 758: Seat Pan, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Screw, self-locking

- 28 Nm
- Qty. 3
- Replace
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

2 - Seat pan upper frame

- Removing and installing --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**

3 - Bushing

cardiagn.com

- Inserted in all bearing locations
- Cannot be replaced with workshop materials
- If bushings are damaged, assembly part must be replaced

4 - Seat pan lower frame

- Removing and installing --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**

5 - Screw

- 28 Nm
- Replace

6 - Nut

- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

7 - Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or Front Passenger s Seat Height Adjustment Motor V246

- Removing and installing --> **Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or V246 , removing and installing**

8 - Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor V288

- Cannot be removed and installed with workshop materials

9 - Drivers Seat Inclination Adjustment Motor V243 or Front Passenger s Seat Inclination Adjustment Motor V244

- Removing and installing --> **Motor for seat tilt adjustment, removing and installing**

10 - Screw, self-locking

- 20 Nm
- Replace
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

Seat pan, disassembling and assembling

Seat pan, disassembling

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical**

cardiagn.com

connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.

- Remove front seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Attach seat to Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove cover with seat pan upholstery:

- For standard seat --> **Seating area cover and upholstery, removing and installing (standard seat)**
- For sport seat --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.

- Disconnect electrical connectors if necessary.

Seat pan upper frame, replacing

- Remove spring mat with wiring harness from seat pan upper frame --> **Spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan, removing and installing**.

Continuation: Upper or lower frame, replacing

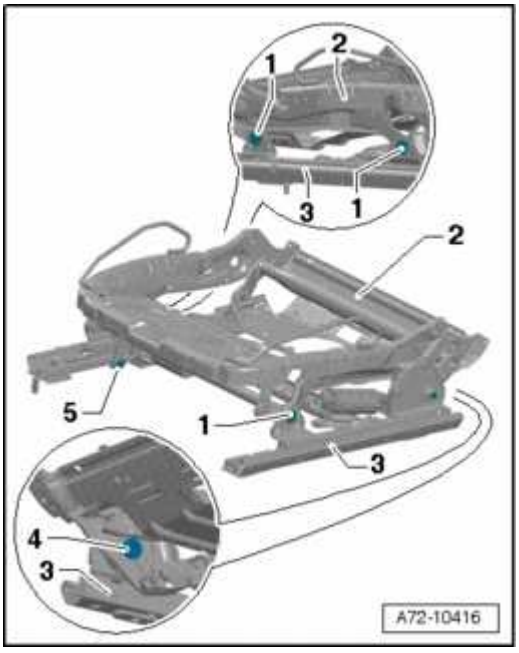


Fig. 759: Identifying Bolts & Seat Pan Upper Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (Qty. 3).
- Remove bolt - **4** -.
- Remove bolt - **5** -.
- Remove seat pan upper frame - **2** - upward from lower frame - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

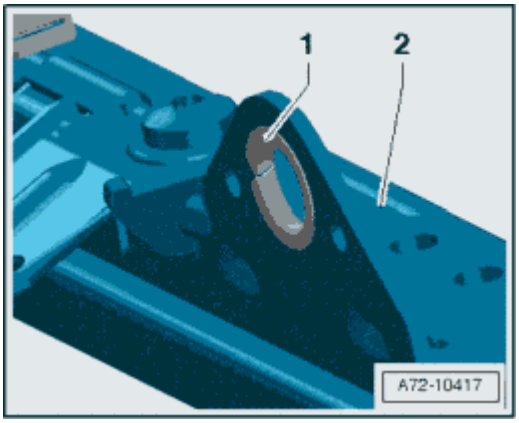


Fig. 760: Identifying Bushings & Lower Seat Pan Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Be careful of bushings - **1** - in bearing points.

2 - Lower seat pan frame

CAUTION:

- **Do not damage bushings - 1 - inserted in all bearing points when separating or disassembling upper and lower frame.**
- **The bushings cannot be replaced with workshop materials.**
- **If the bushings are damaged, the corresponding assembly parts must be replaced.**

- Remove Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or Front Passenger s Seat Height Adjustment Motor V246 --> **Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or V246 , removing and installing**.
- Remove Drivers Seat Inclination Adjustment Motor V243 or Front Passenger s Seat Inclination Adjustment Motor V244 --> **Motor for seat tilt adjustment, removing and installing**.

Seat pan, assembling

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION:

- **Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.**
- **Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.**

- Install removed Drivers Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 or Front Passenger s Seat Height Adjustment Motor V246 in new seat pan lower frame --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**.
- Install removed Drivers Seat Inclination Adjustment Motor V243 or Front Passenger s Seat Inclination Adjustment Motor V244 in new seat pan lower frame --> **Seat pan, disassembling and assembling**.

cardiagn.com

- Install spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan upper frame --> **Spring mat with wiring harness in seat pan, removing and installing**.

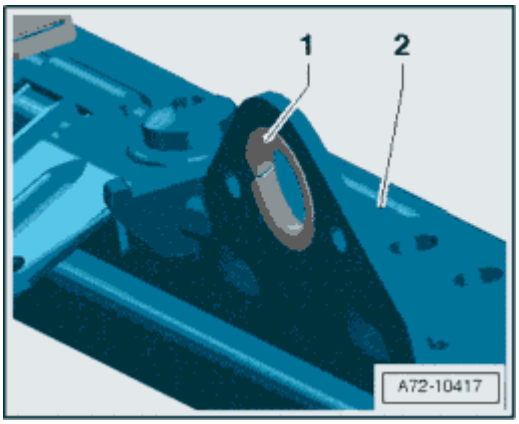


Fig. 761: Identifying Bushings & Lower Seat Pan Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Do not damage bushings - **1** - during further assembly.

CAUTION:
- **Do not damage bushings - 1 - inserted in all bearing points when separating or disassembling upper and lower frame.**
- **The bushings cannot be replaced with workshop materials.**
- **If the bushings are damaged, the corresponding assembly parts must be replaced.**

NOTE:
- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground wire with ignition switched on -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

.

- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System VAS 5051B.

cardiagn.com

Tightening torques --> Seat pan, assembly overview

Recaro front seats without active head restraint system, assembly overview

Versions for specific countries: Vehicles from 06.06

Rest of world: Vehicles from 11.06

NOTE:

- **With the introduction of backrests without the active head restraint system, the active head restraint system has been discontinued.**
- **The upper area of the backrest frame for backrests without the active head restraint system was changed.**
- **Inclination adjustment has been changed on headrests for backrest without active head restraint system.**
- **The rear side of the upholstery was adapted in the upper area of the changed backrest frame.**
- **With the introduction of backrests without the active head restraint system, the mount for four-way lumbar support in the upper area of the backrest frame has changed.**
- **Removal and installation of curvature and height adjustment motors for four-way lumbar support is similar to removal and installation on backrests with active head restraint system.**
- **The covers are identical for backrests with and without the active head restraint system.**

CAUTION: For safety reasons, headrests from vehicles with the active head restraint system should not be used on seats without the active head restraint system.

cardiagn.com

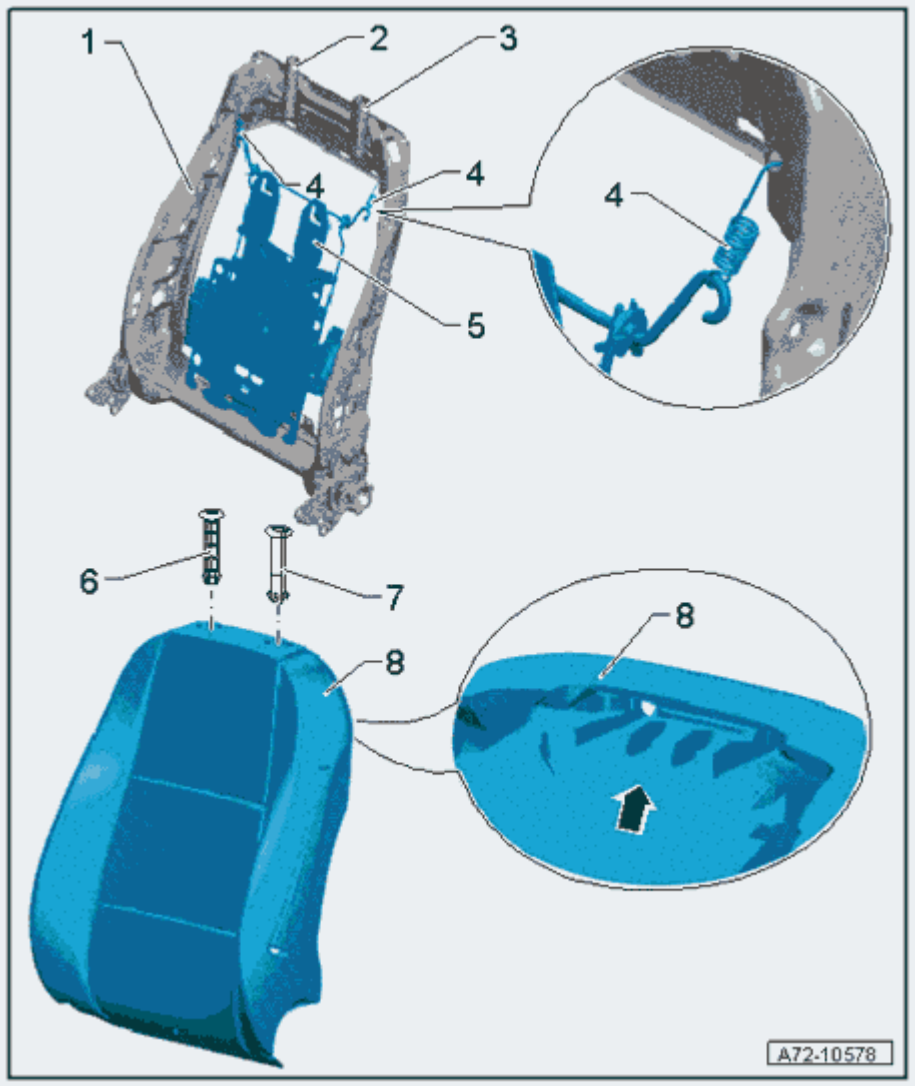


Fig. 762: Recaro Front Seats Without Active Head Restraint System, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest frame

2 - Right headrest guide mount

- Welded with backrest frame

3 - Left headrest guide mount

- Welded with backrest frame

4 - Spring

- Qty. 2

cardiagn.com

- Engaged in backrest frame
- To upper four-way lumbar support mount

5 - four-way lumbar support

- Removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support, removing and installing**

6 - Right headrest guide

- Removing and installing --> **Headrest guides, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**

7 - Left headrest guide

- Removing and installing --> **Headrest guides, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**

8 - Upholstery

- Rear side adapted to new backrest in upper area
- Removing and installing --> **Cover and cushion for backrest, removing and installing (sport seat, standard seat)**

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing headrests

Head rests, removing and installing --> **Headrest with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing**

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing backrest cover

Backrest cover, removing and installing --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing four-way lumbar support

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

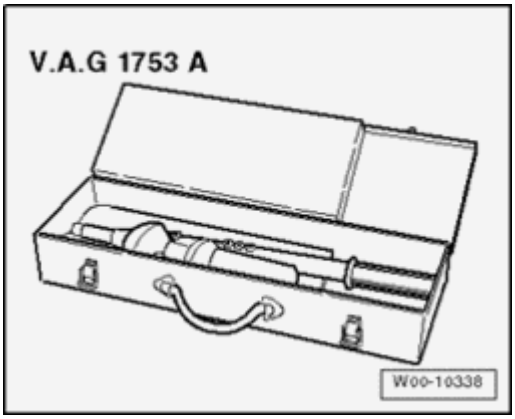


Fig. 763: Special Pop Rivet Pliers V.A.G 1753A

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Special pop rivet pliers V.A.G 1753A

Removing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

- Remove front seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Remove the seat backrest panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**

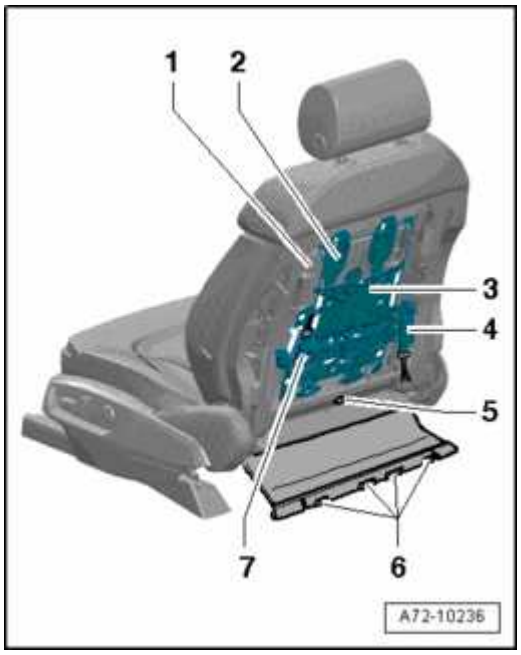


Fig. 764: Backrest Without Active Head Restraint System - Four-Way Lumbar Support Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry fastening strips - **6** - (Qty. 4) out with a screwdriver.
- Insert foil between upholstery and backrest frame to protect against metal particles.
- Drill out rivet - **5** -.
- Disconnect electrical connectors at lumbar support curvature and height adjustment motors - **4** - and - **7** -.

cardiagn.com

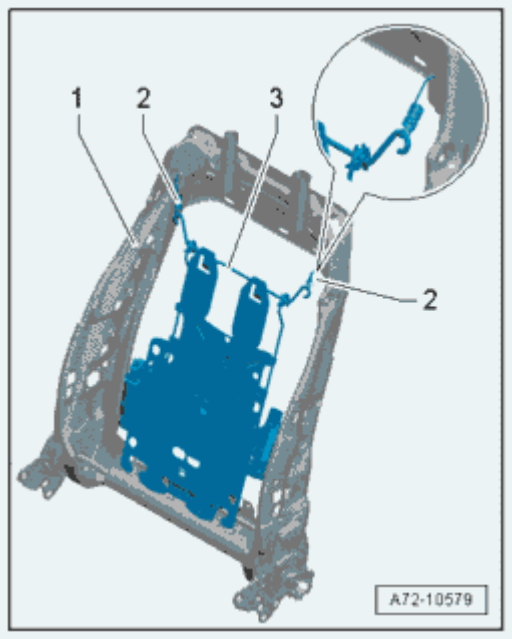


Fig. 765: Disengaging Four-Way Lumbar Support With Springs At Backrest Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage four-way lumbar support - **3** - with springs - **2** - (Qty. 2) at backrest frame - **3** -.

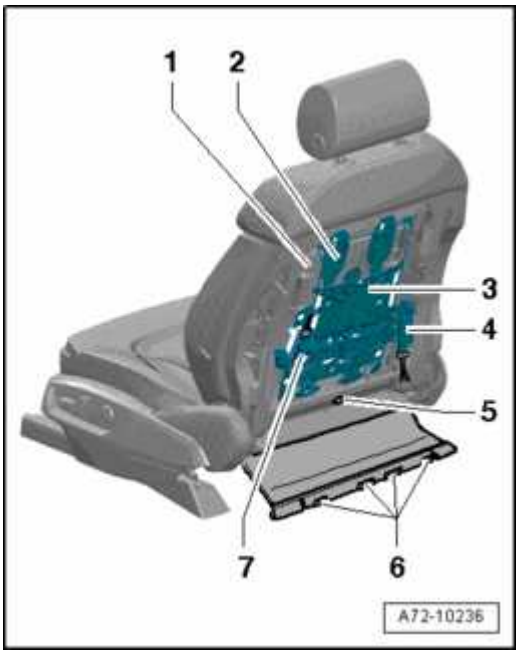


Fig. 766: Backrest Without Active Head Restraint System - Four-Way Lumbar Support Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect Velcro connector between lumbar support - **2** - and backrest padding - **1** -.
- Disengage lumbar support - **2** - at top of support frame - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

- Remove lumbar support frame - **3** - with lumbar support - **2** -.

Installing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

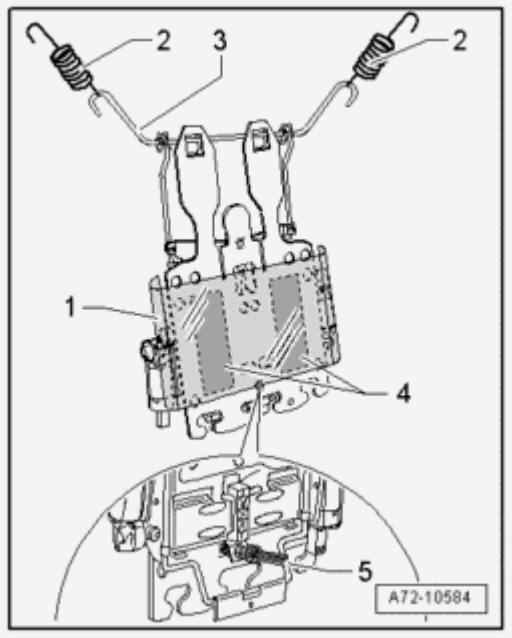
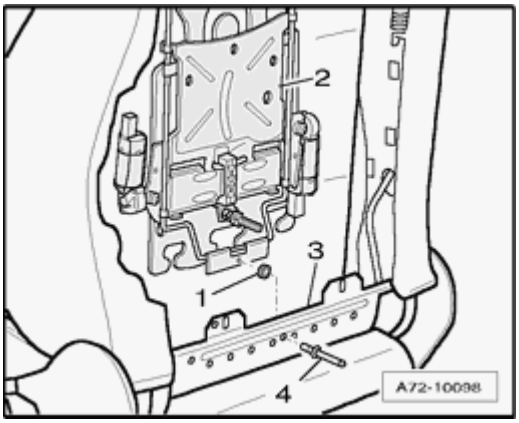


Fig. 767: Laying Plastic Film Over Velcro Strips On Lumbar Support
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Lay plastic film - **1** - over Velcro strips - **4** - on lumbar support. Secure plastic film on lumbar support.
- Ensure lumbar support is attached to lumbar support frame with assembly fastener - **5** - or a suitable screw.
- Position four-way lumbar support frame behind backrest frame and engage top of frame - **3** - in mounts on backrest frame at left and right with springs - **2** -.



cardiagn.com

Fig. 768: Four-Way Lumbar Support With Backrest Frame, Riveting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Before securing rivet - **4** - , a plastic washer - **1** - must be placed between lumbar support - **2** - and backrest frame - **3** -.
- Rivet lumbar support frame - **2** - with backrest frame - **3** -.
- Remove plastic film between backrest padding and lumbar support.
- Press lumbar support Velcro fastener onto backrest padding to secure.
- Connect electrical connectors at curvature and height adjustment motors.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION: Before handling airbag units (e.g. disconnecting electrical connector), the person handling it must "electrostatically discharge". This can be done by touching door striker, for example.

NOTE:

- **Ensure that electrical connections are pushed in as far as stop and engage with a click.**

- Switch on ignition.

CAUTION: Ignition must be on when connecting battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery with ignition on, procedure -->
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL** for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION

  .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing four-way lumbar support adjusting motors

Motors for:

- Drivers Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor V125 or V126 , removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing**
- Drivers Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor V129 or V130 , removing and installing --> **Four-way lumbar support positioning motors, removing and installing**

cardiagn.com

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing headrest guides

Headrest guides, removing and installing --> Headrest guides, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04

Backrest without active head restraint system, removing and installing cover with upholstery

Cover with upholstery, removing and installing --> Cover and cushion for backrest, removing and installing (sport seat, standard seat)

Backrest without active head restraint system, separating cover from upholstery

Separating cover from upholstery --> Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing

FRONT RS SPORT SEAT

Seat, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

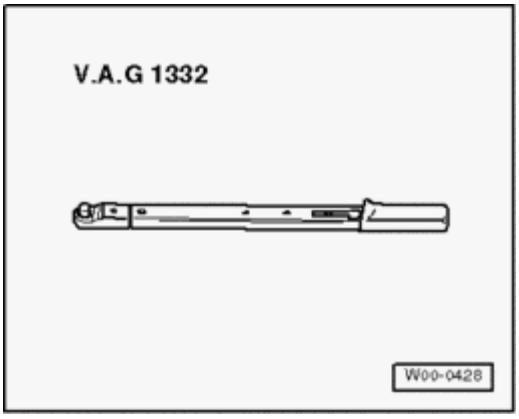


Fig. 769: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1332
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1332

NOTE:

- **The RS sport seat has no side airbag. Therefore, the electrical connection for the side airbag must have a terminal resistance in the wiring harness.**
- **Depending on the version, this terminal resistance is securely connected to the wiring harness, or is designed as a separate connector housing with terminal resistance --> Connector housing with terminal resistance for side airbag.**

cardiagn.com

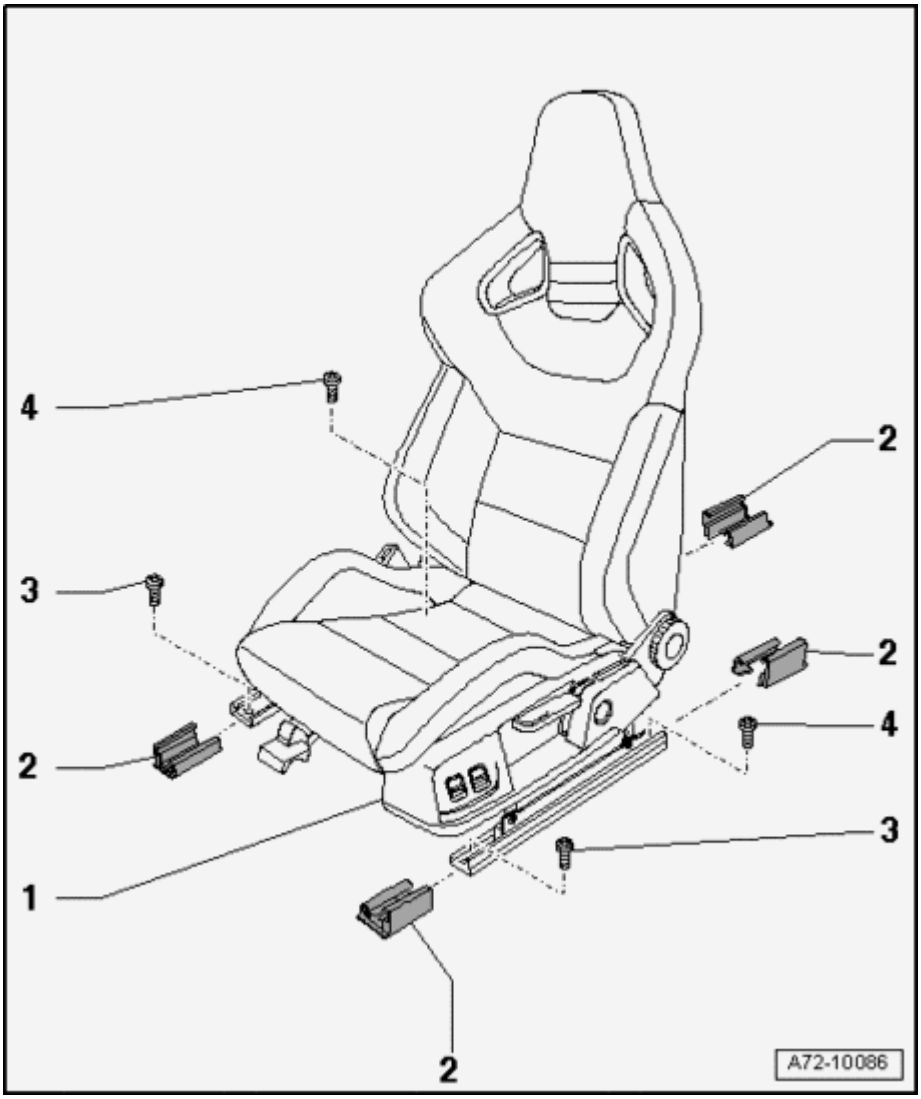


Fig. 770: Seat Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Front seat

Removing

- Push front seat - **1** - fully upward and to the rear.
- Remove front bolts - **3** - (Qty. 2).
- Move seat forward.
- Loosen seatbelt eyelet at outer anchoring point for seat and remove seatbelt from belt guide.
- Remove rear bolts - **4** - (Qty. 2).
- Tip front seat - **1** - back.
- Disconnect electrical harness connectors --> **Electrical harness connectors, disconnecting**.

cardiagn.com

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Seat rail covers

- Right front and left rear are identical
- Left front and right rear are identical
- Removing and installing --> **Seat rail cover, removing and installing**

3 - Front bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

4 - Rear bolts (2x)

- Tightening torque 50 Nm

Seat rail cover, removing and installing

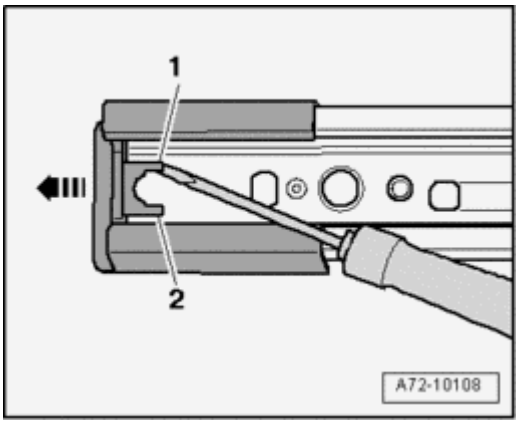


Fig. 771: Seat Rail Cover Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Carefully disengage both catches - **1** - and - **2** -.
- Remove seat rail cover in - **direction of arrow** -.

Installing

- Seat rail cover must be removed until it audibly engages.

Electrical harness connectors, disconnecting

cardiagn.com

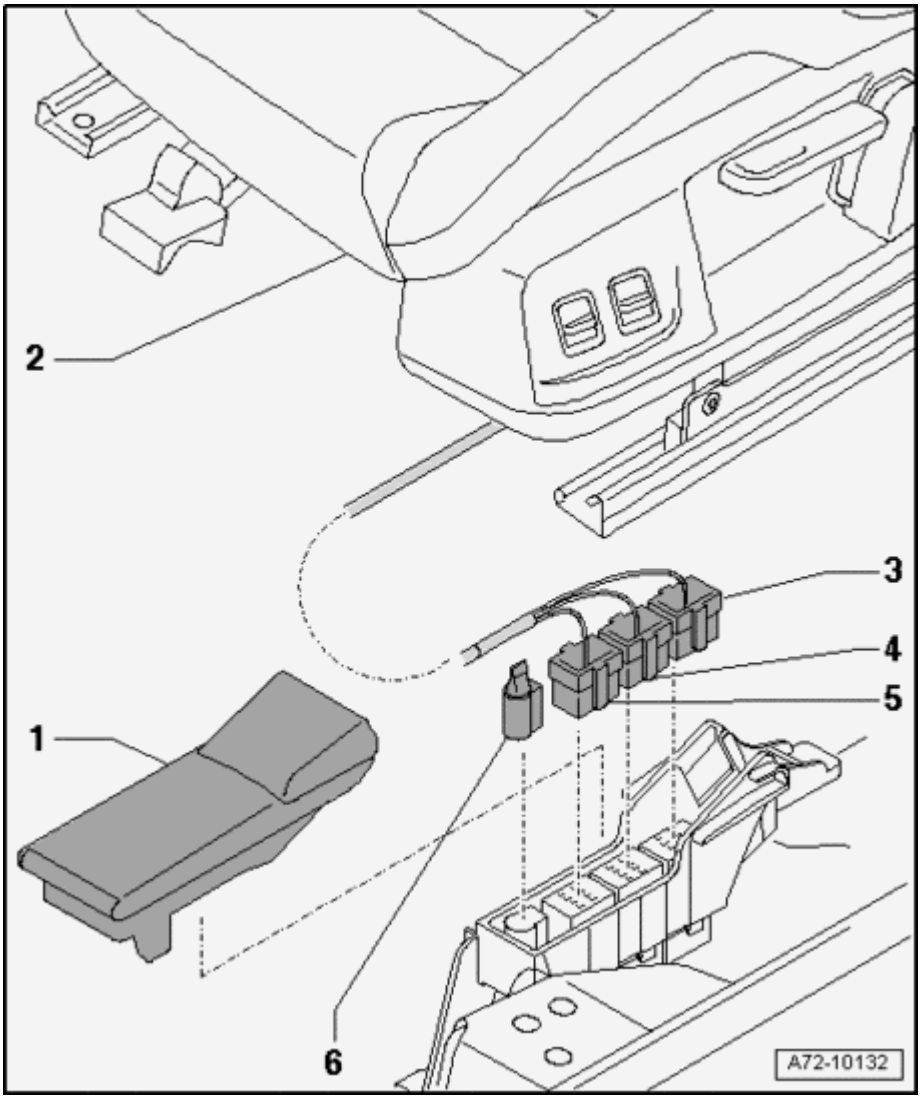


Fig. 772: Electrical Harness Connectors, Disconnecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Connector point cover

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Tip front seat - **2** - back.
- Remove coupling station cover - **1** - upward.
- Press in tab on connector for voltage supply - **5** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for voltage supply.
- Press in tab on connector for heated seat - **4** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for heated seat.

For vehicles with seatbelt fasten sensor:

cardiagn.com

- Press in tab on connector for seatbelt fasten sensor - **3** - on tunnel side and disconnect connector for seatbelt fasten sensor.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Front seat

3 - Belt buckle sensor connector (black)

- Depending on version

4 - Seat heating connector (green)

5 - Current supply connector (red)

6 - Connector housing with terminal resistance for side airbag

- Depending on the version, this terminal resistance is securely connected to the wiring harness, or is designed as a separate connector housing with terminal resistance.
- Installation location --> **Connector housing with terminal resistance for side airbag**

Connector housing with terminal resistance for side airbag

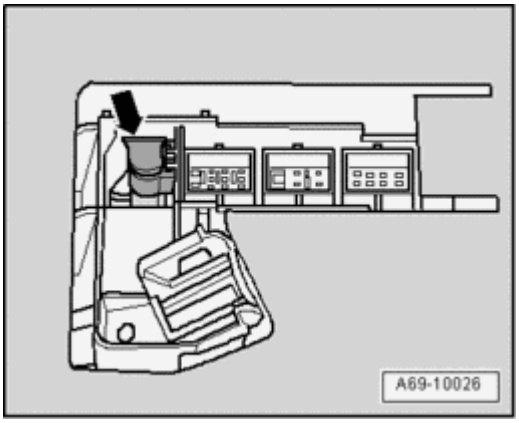


Fig. 773: Connector Housing With Terminal Resistance For Side Airbag
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

NOTE:

- **The RS sport seat has no side airbag. Therefore, the electrical connection for the side airbag must have a terminal resistance - arrow - in the wiring harness.**
- **Depending on the version, this terminal resistance is securely connected to the wiring harness, or is designed as a separate connector housing with terminal resistance.**

cardiagn.com

Side panels, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

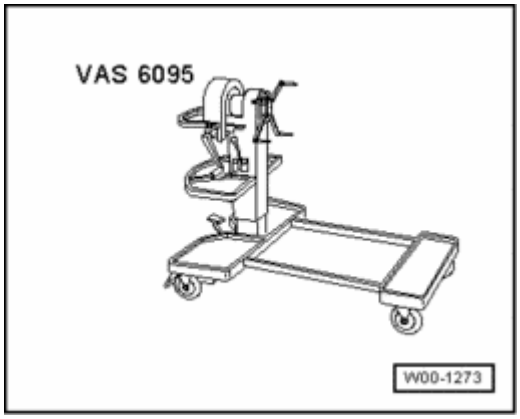


Fig. 774: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

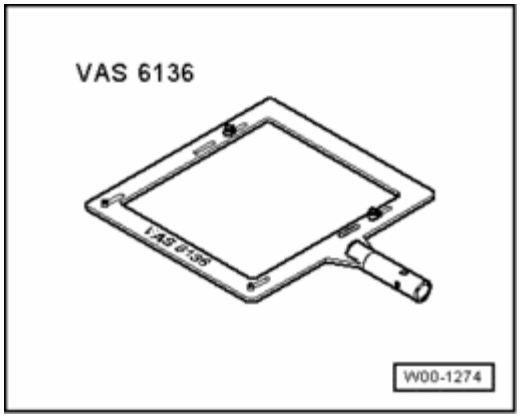


Fig. 775: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

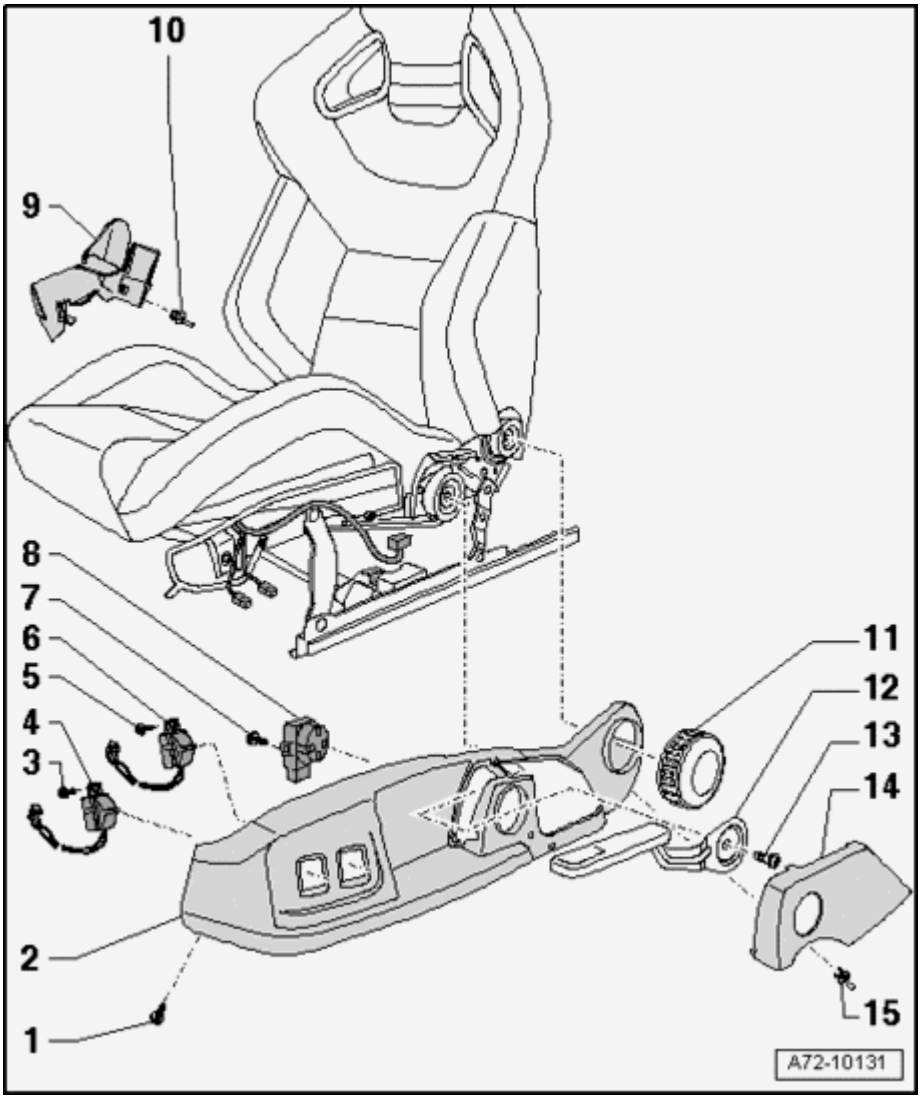


Fig. 776: Side Panels Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Screw (1.2 Nm)

2 - Side trim (sill side)

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove hand wheel for backrest adjustment - **11** -.

- Unclip side panel - **14** - on outside.

cardiagn.com

- Remove bolt - **13** - at handle for height adjustment.
- Remove handle for height adjustment - **12** -.
- Remove expanding clip - **15** - , press clamping pin through to the inside.

- Remove mounting bolt - **1** -.
- Remove side panel at lower edge from retaining bracket on seat.
- Swivel side panel upward at front edge.
- Remove side panel to side.

- Pull tab at rear of side panel out under backrest trim.
- Disengage brackets for electrical harness connectors.
- Free up electrical wiring.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

3 - Screw (0.4 Nm)

4 - Button for seat bolster inflation adjustment

- Drivers Seat Bolster Inflation Adjustment Button E587
- Front Passengers Seat Bolster Inflation Adjustment Button E588
- Removing and installing --> **Backrest bolster inflation adjustment button and bolster inflation adjustment button, removing and installing**

5 - Screw (0.4 Nm)

6 - Button for backrest bolster inflation adjustment

- Drivers Backrest Bolster Inflation Adjustment Button E589
- Front Passengers Backrest Bolster Inflation Adjustment Button E590
- Removing and installing --> **Backrest bolster inflation adjustment button and bolster inflation adjustment button, removing and installing**

7 - Screw (0.4 Nm)

8 - Switch for lumbar support adjustment

- Drivers Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch E176
- Front Passengers Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch E177
- Removing and installing --> **Backrest bolster inflation adjustment button and bolster inflation adjustment button, removing and installing**

cardiagn.com

9 - Side trim (tunnel side)

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove expanding clip - **10** - , press clamping pin through to the inside.
- Disengage retaining detent at rear side of side panel on tunnel side.
- Remove trim.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

10 - Spreader clip

11 - Hand wheel for backrest adjustment

- Removing and installing --> **Hand wheel for backrest adjustment, removing and installing**

12 - Handle for seat height adjustment

13 - Bolt (22 Nm)

- Replace with locking compound
- Locking compound

14 - Side panel on outside

15 - Spreader clip

Hand wheel for backrest adjustment, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

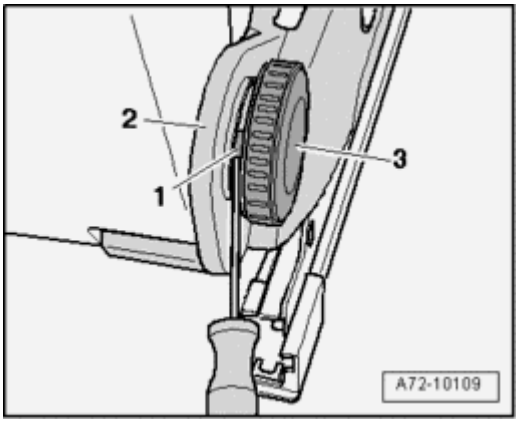


Fig. 777: Hand Wheel For Backrest Adjustment Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Press side panel - **2** - lightly in direction of backrest.
- Slightly lift and disengage retaining detent - **1** - using a screwdriver.
- Turn hand wheel for backrest adjustment and disengage another retaining detent.
- Remove hand wheel for backrest adjustment.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal, but note the following:

- Hand wheel must be pressed on until it audibly engages.

NOTE:

- **If the hand wheel for backrest adjustment sits loosely on the adjustment shaft, the hand wheel for backrest adjustment must be replaced.**

Seat height adjustment handle, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

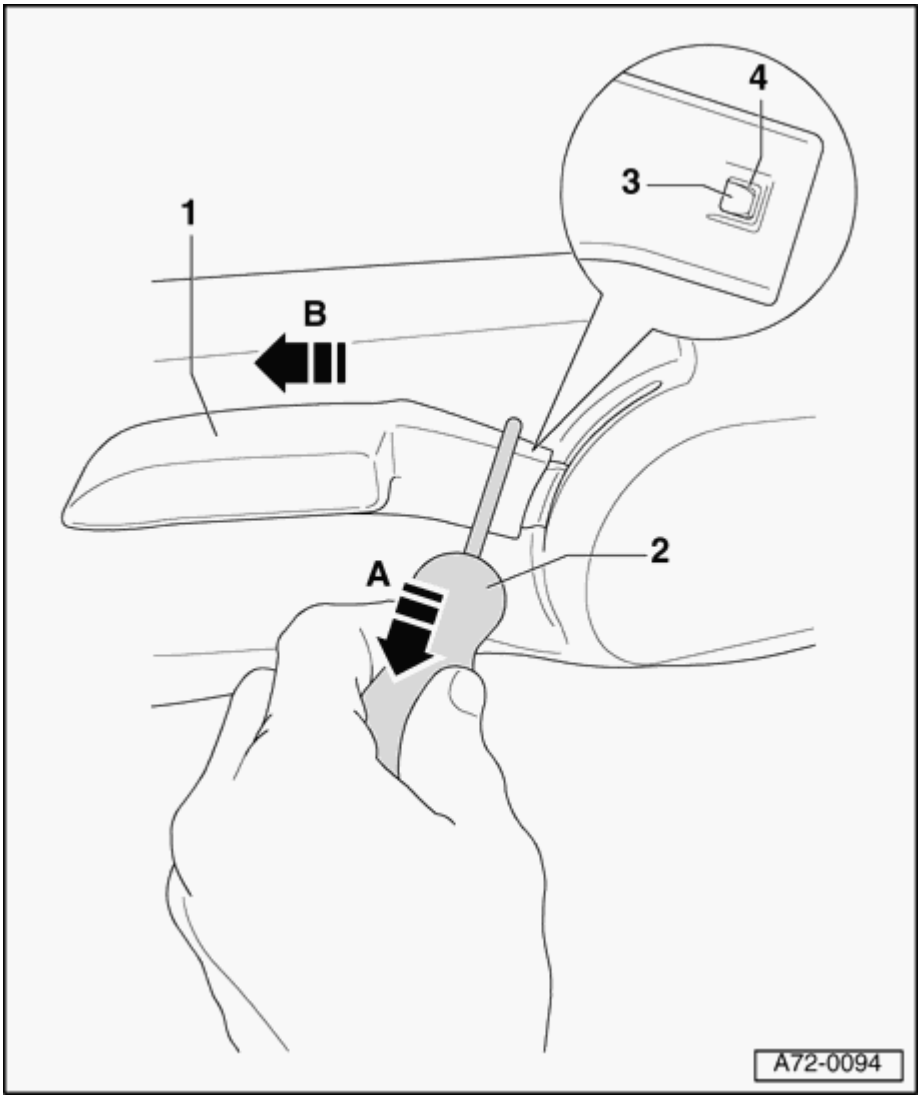


Fig. 778: Seat Height Adjustment Handle Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat height adjustment handle

Removing

- Create an assisting tool **Preparing assist tool to remove seat height adjusting handle**.
- Pull seat height adjustment handle - **1** - fully upward.
- Guide assisting tool - **2** - into mount - **4** -.
- Pull assisting tool - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - to push spring - **3** - back.
- Pull seat height adjustment handle - **1** - in - **direction of arrow B** -.

Installing

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal, but note the following:

- Note installation position of retaining clamp **Retaining clamp installation position**.

2 - Assisting tool

3 - Spring

4 - Mount

Preparing assist tool to remove seat height adjusting handle

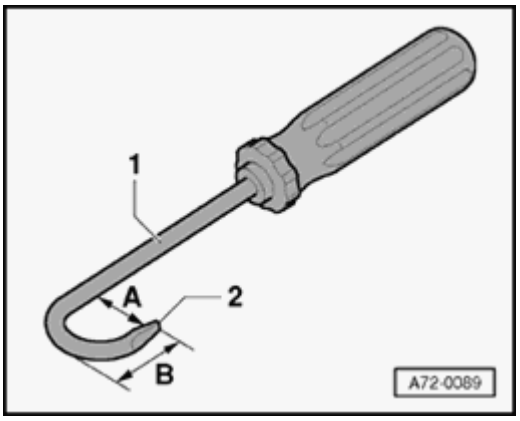


Fig. 779: Preparing Assist Tool To Remove Seat Height Adjusting Handle
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Bend a screwdriver - **1** - with a width - **2** - of 3.5 mm and dimensions - **A** - 20 mm and - **B** - max. 15 mm.

Retaining clamp installation position

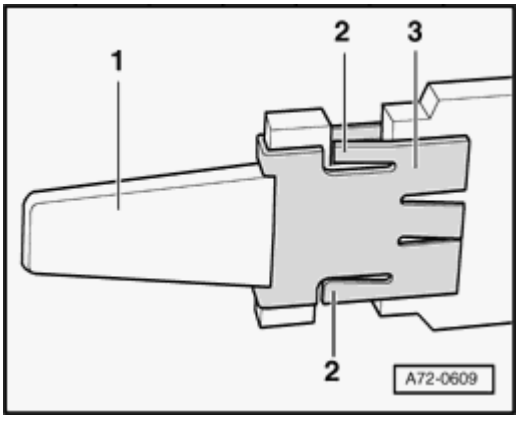


Fig. 780: Retaining Clamp Installation Position
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Ensure springs - **2** - (2x) in retaining clamp - **3** - are position on outside of lever - **1** -.

cardiagn.com

Lumbar support adjustment switch, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

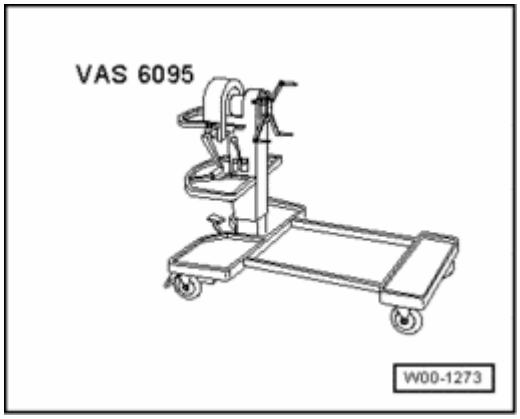


Fig. 781: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

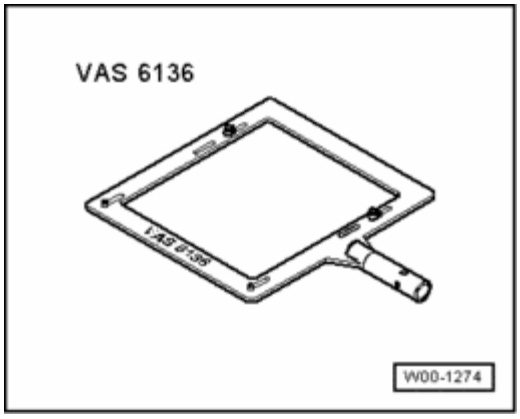


Fig. 782: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

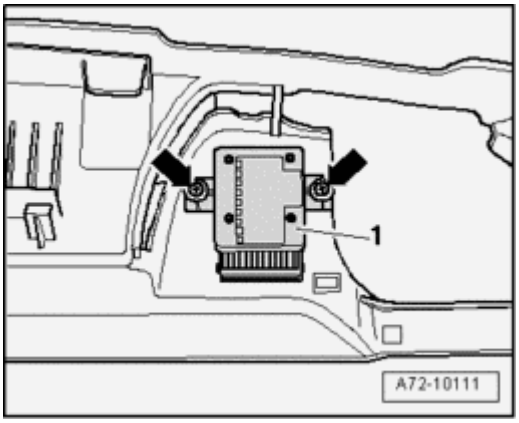


Fig. 783: Removing Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch Bolts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels, removing and installing**.

- Remove bolts - **arrows** -.
- Remove lumbar support adjustment switch - **1** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal, noting the following:

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Switch for lumbar support adjustment at side panel, door sill side	0.4

Backrest bolster inflation adjustment button and bolster inflation adjustment button, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

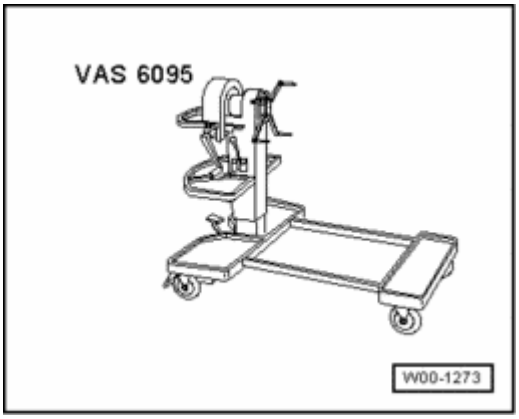


Fig. 784: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

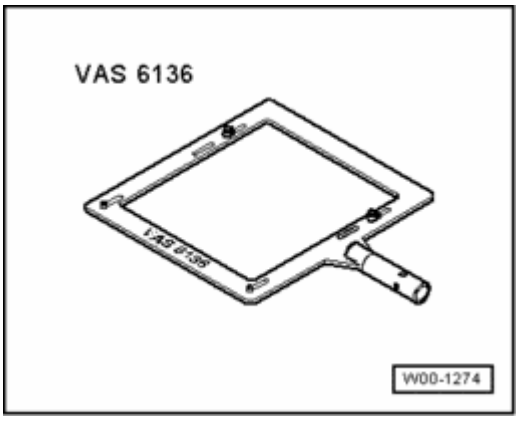


Fig. 785: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

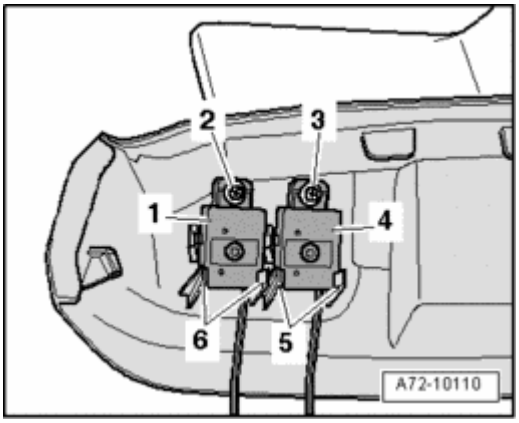


Fig. 786: Backrest Bolster Inflation Adjustment Button And Bolster Inflation Adjustment Button Remove/Install Components

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels, removing and installing**.

- Remove bolts - **2** - and - **3** -.
- Disengage retaining clips - **5** - and - **6** - and remove bolster inflation adjustment button - **item 1** - or backrest bolster inflation adjustment button - **item 4** -.

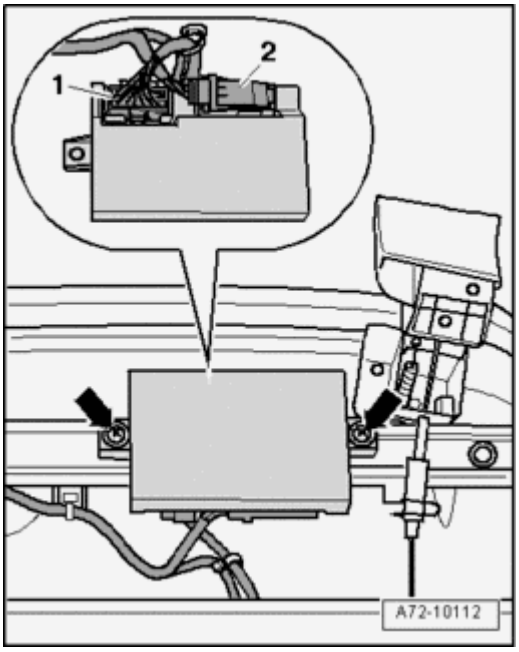
Installing

Installation is reverse of removal, noting the following:

Tightening torques

Component	Nm
Bolster inflation adjustment button on side panel, door sill side	0.4
Backrest bolster inflation adjustment button on side panel, door sill side	0.4

Control module, removing and installing



cardiagn.com

Fig. 787: Control Module Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Push front seat fully upward and to the front.
- Remove bolts - **arrows** -.
- Disconnect electrical harness connectors - **1** - and - **2** - at rear of control module.
- Remove control module.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal, noting the following:

Tightening torque

Component	Nm
Control module to seat frame	1.5

Front seat backrest and seat pan, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

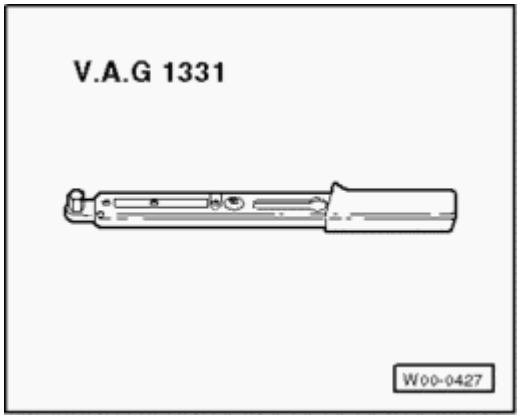


Fig. 788: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1331
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1331

cardiagn.com

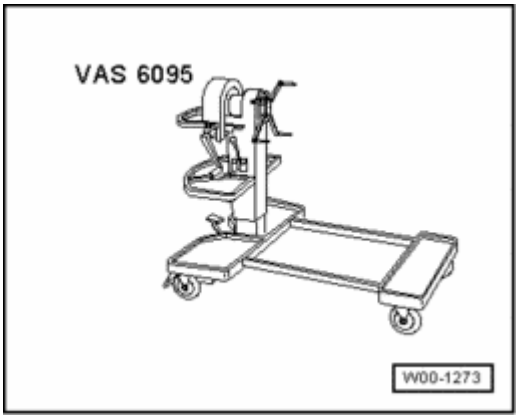


Fig. 789: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

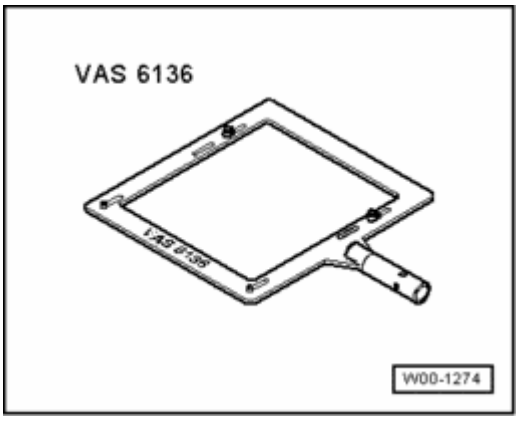


Fig. 790: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136

cardiagn.com

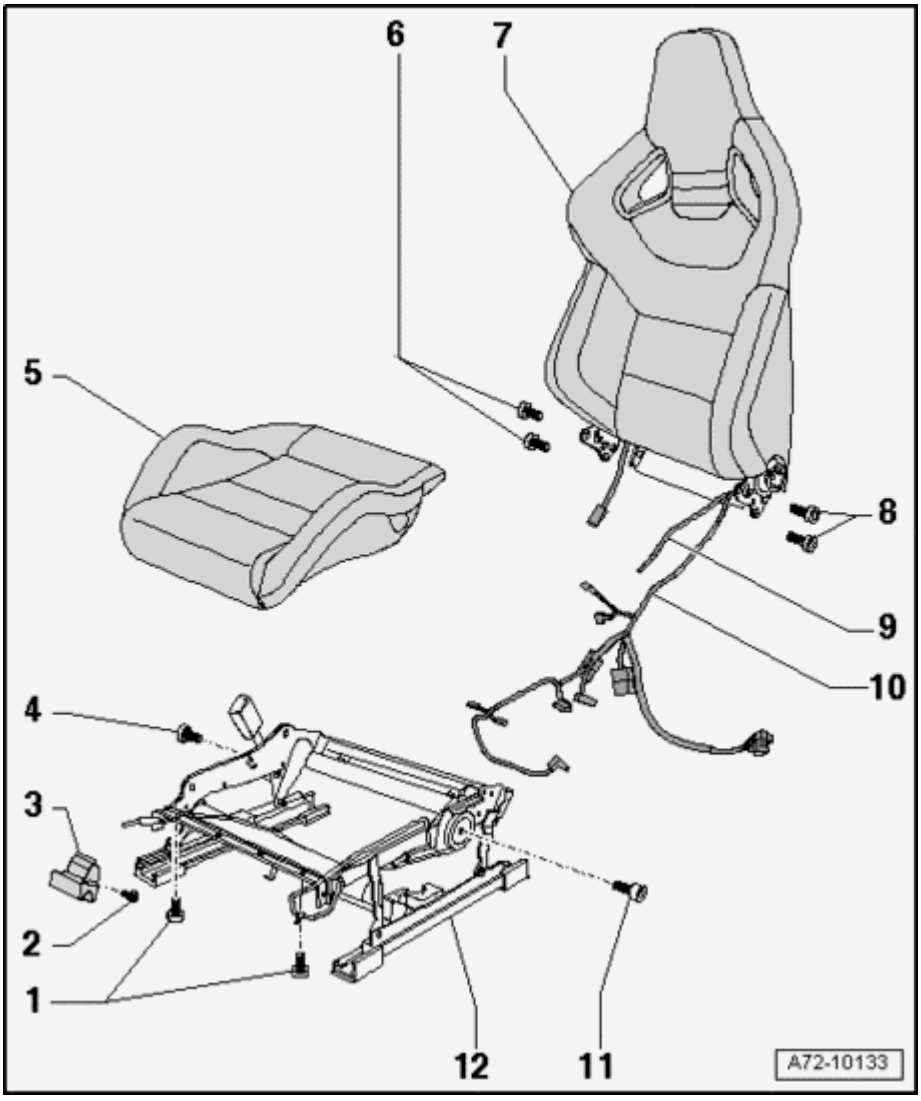


Fig. 791: Front Seat Backrest And Seat Pan Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Bolt (24 Nm)

- Replace with locking compound
- Locking compound

2 - Bolt (4 Nm)

3 - Seat fore/aft adjustment handle

- Disengaging actuating link for seat fore/aft adjustment **Disengaging actuating link for seat fore/aft adjustment**

4 - Bolt (24 Nm)

cardiagn.com

- Replace with locking compound
- Locking compound

5 - Seat pan

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Side panels, removing and installing**.
- Remove control module --> **Control module, removing and installing**.
- Disconnect relay sockets from metal retainer **Disconnect relay socket, disconnect harness connectors and pneumatic hose**.
- Disconnect pneumatic hose **Disconnect relay socket, disconnect harness connectors and pneumatic hose**.
- Expose electrical cables **Disconnect relay socket, disconnect harness connectors and pneumatic hose**.
- Disengage actuating link for seat fore/aft adjustment from release lever **Disengaging actuating link for seat fore/aft adjustment**.
- Remove bolts - **1** - , - **4** - and - **11** -
- Remove bolts - **6** - and - **8** - and set backrest aside behind seat pan.
- Remove seat pan.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal, but note the following:

- Insert bolts with locking compound; locking compound .

6 - Bolt (20 Nm)

- Replace with locking compound
- Locking compound

7 - Backrest

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels, removing and installing**.

- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Side panels, removing and installing**.
- Remove control module --> **Control module, removing and installing**.
- Disconnect relay sockets from metal retainer **Disconnect relay socket, disconnect harness connectors and pneumatic hose**.
- Disconnect pneumatic hose **Disconnect relay socket, disconnect harness connectors and pneumatic hose**.

- Expose electrical cables **Disconnect relay socket, disconnect harness connectors and pneumatic hose**.
- Remove handle for seat fore/aft adjustment - **3** - , for this purpose, remove bolt - **2** -.
- Disengage actuating link for seat fore/aft adjustment from release lever **Disengaging actuating link for seat fore/aft adjustment**.
- Remove bolts - **1** - , - **4** - and - **11** -

- Remove seat pan - **5** -.
- Remove bolts - **6** - and - **8** -.
- Remove backrest and guide electrical wiring harness out of seat frame.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal, but note the following:

- Insert bolts with locking compound; locking compound .

8 - Bolt (20 Nm)

- Replace with locking compound
- Locking compound

9 - Pneumatic hose

- For lids for backrest bolster inflation adjustment

10 - Electrical wiring harness

11 - Bolt (24 Nm)

- Replace with locking compound
- Locking compound

cardiagn.com

12 - Seat frame

Disconnect relay socket, disconnect harness connectors and pneumatic hose

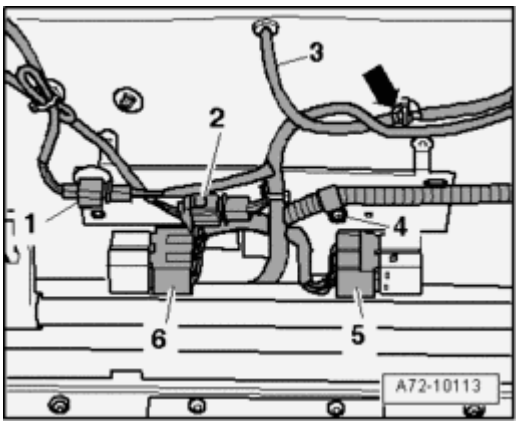


Fig. 792: Disconnecting Relay Socket, Harness Connectors And Pneumatic Hose
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disconnect relay sockets - **5** - and - **6** - from metal retainer to outside.
- Disconnect electrical harness connectors - **1** - and - **2** - from retaining base at metal retainer, press release button to do so.
- Disconnect electrical connectors - **1** - and - **2** -.
- Remove bolt - **4** - and remove guide.

- Cut all cable ties and move electrical wiring free.
- Disconnect pneumatic hose - **3** - at connecting piece - **arrow** -.

Disengaging actuating link for seat fore/aft adjustment

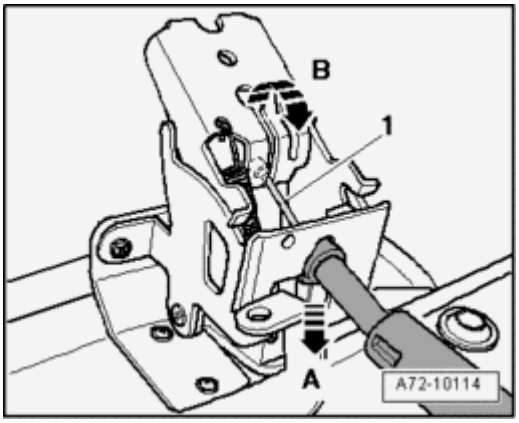


Fig. 793: Disengaging Actuating Link For Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove handle for seat fore/aft adjustment.

cardiagn.com

- Press cable sleeve in - **direction of arrow A** - out of bracket.
- Disengage actuating link - **1** - for seat fore/aft adjustment from release lever - **arrow B** -.

Seat height adjustment unit, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

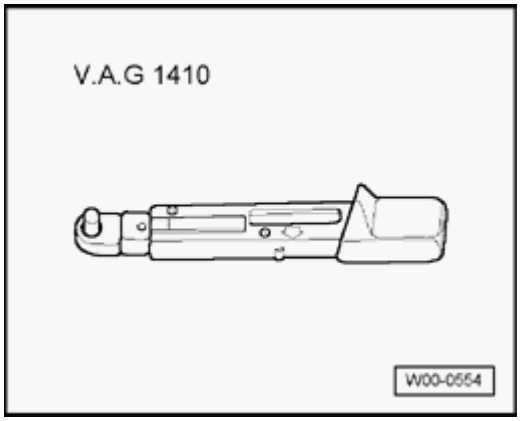


Fig. 794: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

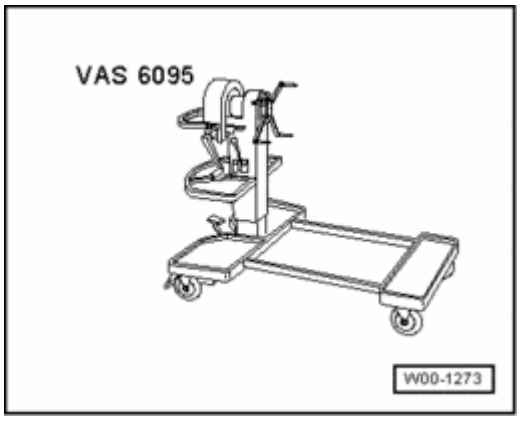


Fig. 795: Special Tool - Engine And Transmission Holder VAS 6095
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Engine and transmission holder VAS 6095

cardiagn.com

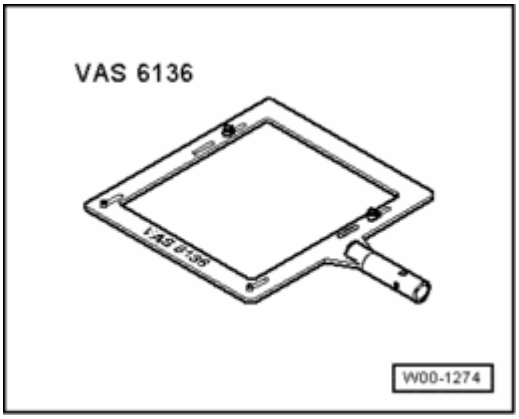
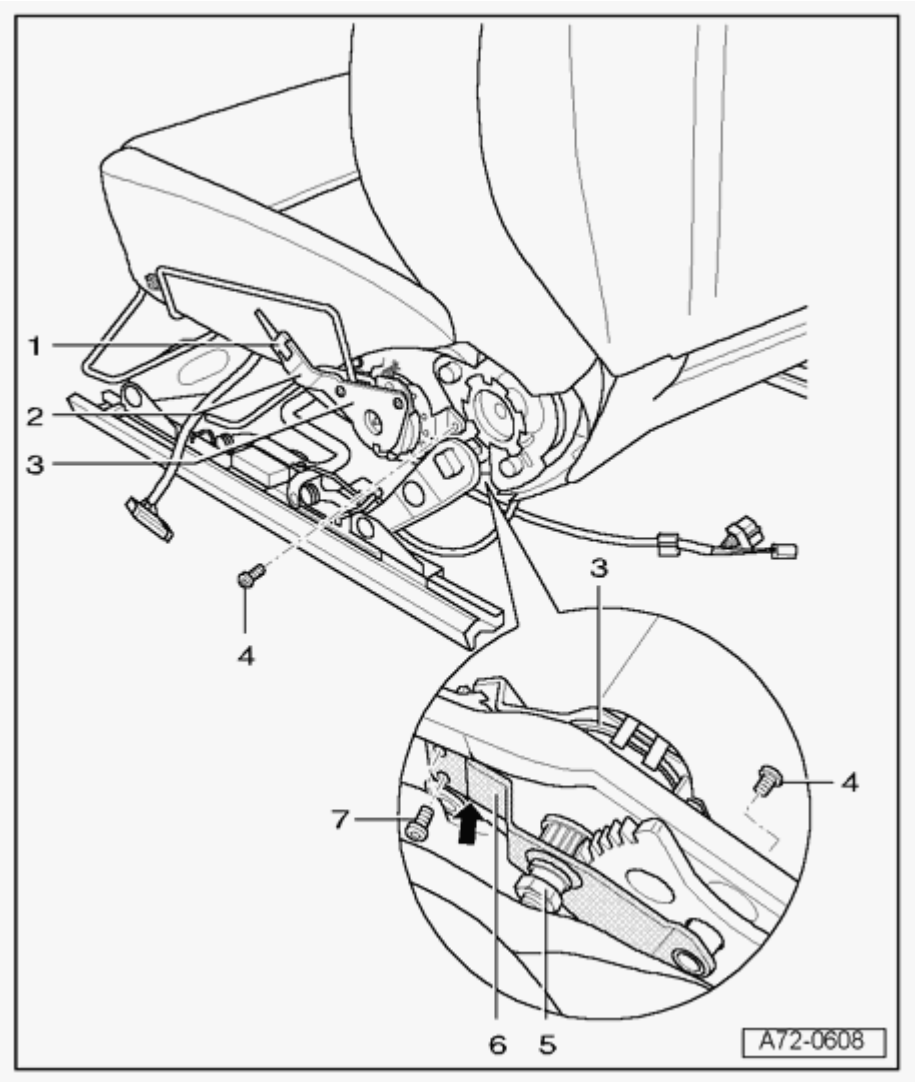


Fig. 796: Fixture For Seat Repair VAS 6136
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Fixture for seat repair VAS 6136



cardiagn.com

Fig. 797: Seat Height Adjustment Unit Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Retaining clamp

2 - Seat height adjustment handle lever

- The illustration does not correspond to the construction style of the RS sport seat

3 - Seat height adjustment unit

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 on the engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove backrest and front seat pan --> **Front seat backrest and seat pan, removing and installing**.
- Remove nut - **5** -.
- Remove bolts - **7** - (2x).
- Remove bolt - **4** -.
- Remove seat height adjustment unit - **3** - and retaining plate - **6** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. When doing so, note the following:

- Make sure that the retaining plate - **6** - makes contact on backrest frame at - **position of arrow** -.

4 - Screw

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

5 - Nut

- Tightening torque 12 Nm

6 - Retaining plate

7 - Screws, (2x)

- Tightening torque 8 Nm

Backrest covers, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

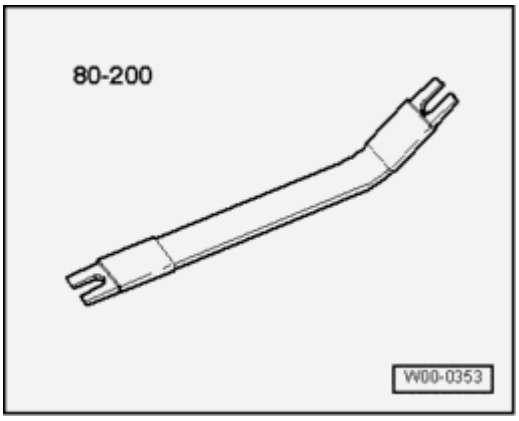


Fig. 798: Identifying Pry Lever 80-200
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry lever 80 - 200

cardiagn.com

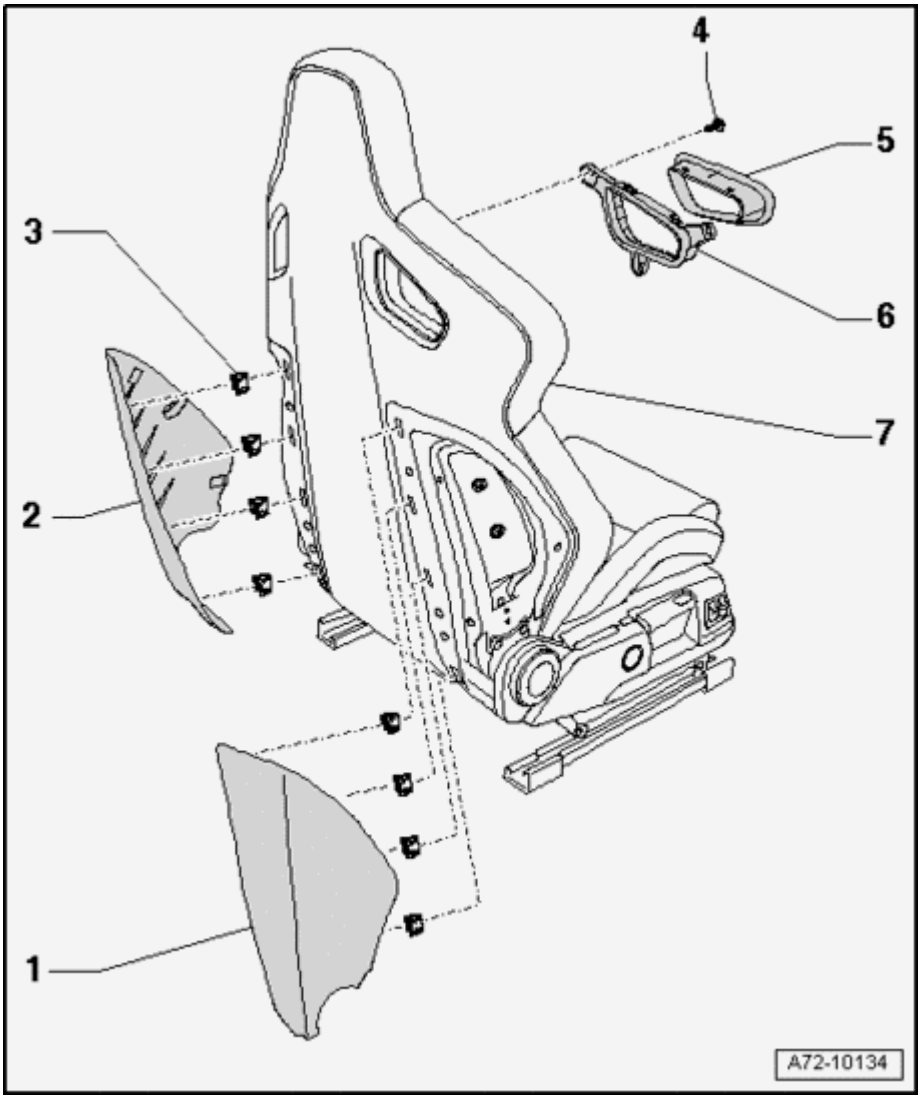


Fig. 799: Seat Height Adjustment Unit Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Right backrest cover

- Removing and installing **Backrest cover, removing and installing**

2 - Left backrest cover

- Removing and installing **Backrest cover, removing and installing**

3 - Retaining clamp

4 - Screw (2.5 Nm)

5 - Belt guide, outer part

cardiagn.com

- Removing and installing **Outer part of belt guide, removing and installing**

6 - Belt guide, inner part

- To remove, remove backrest cover --> **Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing**

7 - Backrest frame

Backrest cover, removing and installing

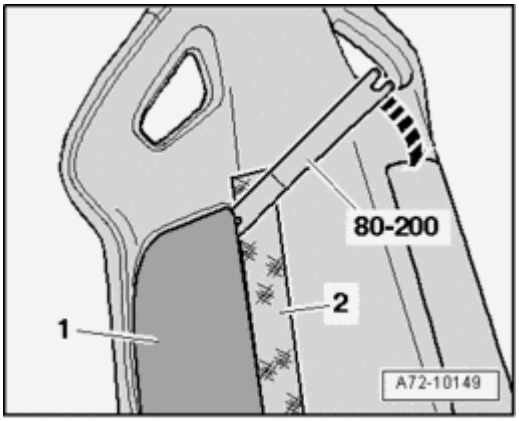


Fig. 800: Backrest Cover, Removing/Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Attach backrest panel all around trim - **1** - using adhesive tape - **2** -.
- Using pry lever 80-200 , pry off upper backrest cover at inner side, starting from backrest panel.
- Disengage clip at front corner of backrest panel extremely carefully.

Outer part of belt guide, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

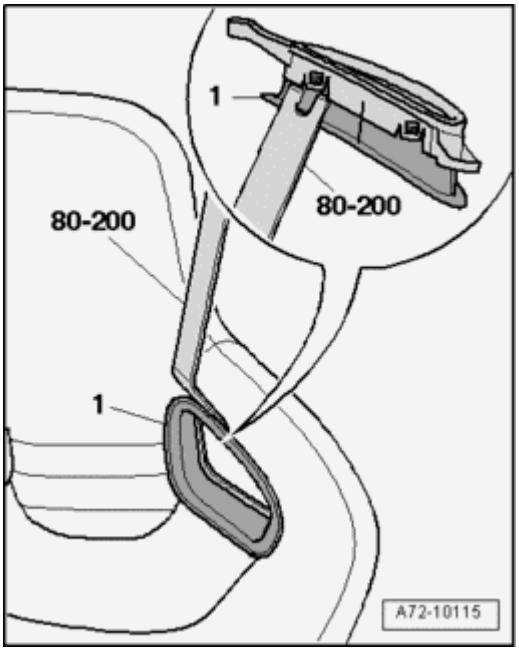


Fig. 801: Outer Part Of Belt Guide, Removing/Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Carefully guide pry lever 80-200 between backrest cover and outer part of belt guide.
- Carefully press to disengage outer part of belt guide from inner part of belt guide.

Pneumatic block - component assignment

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

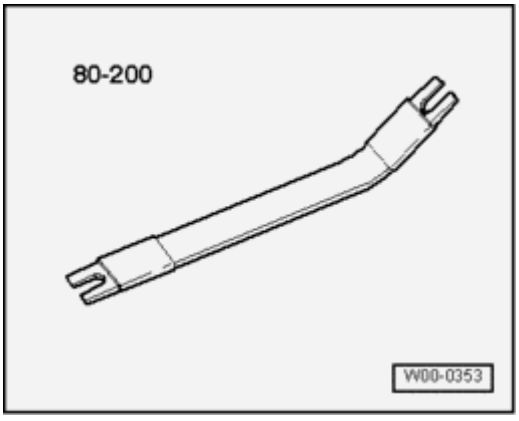


Fig. 802: Identifying Pry Lever 80-200
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry lever 80 - 200

cardiagn.com

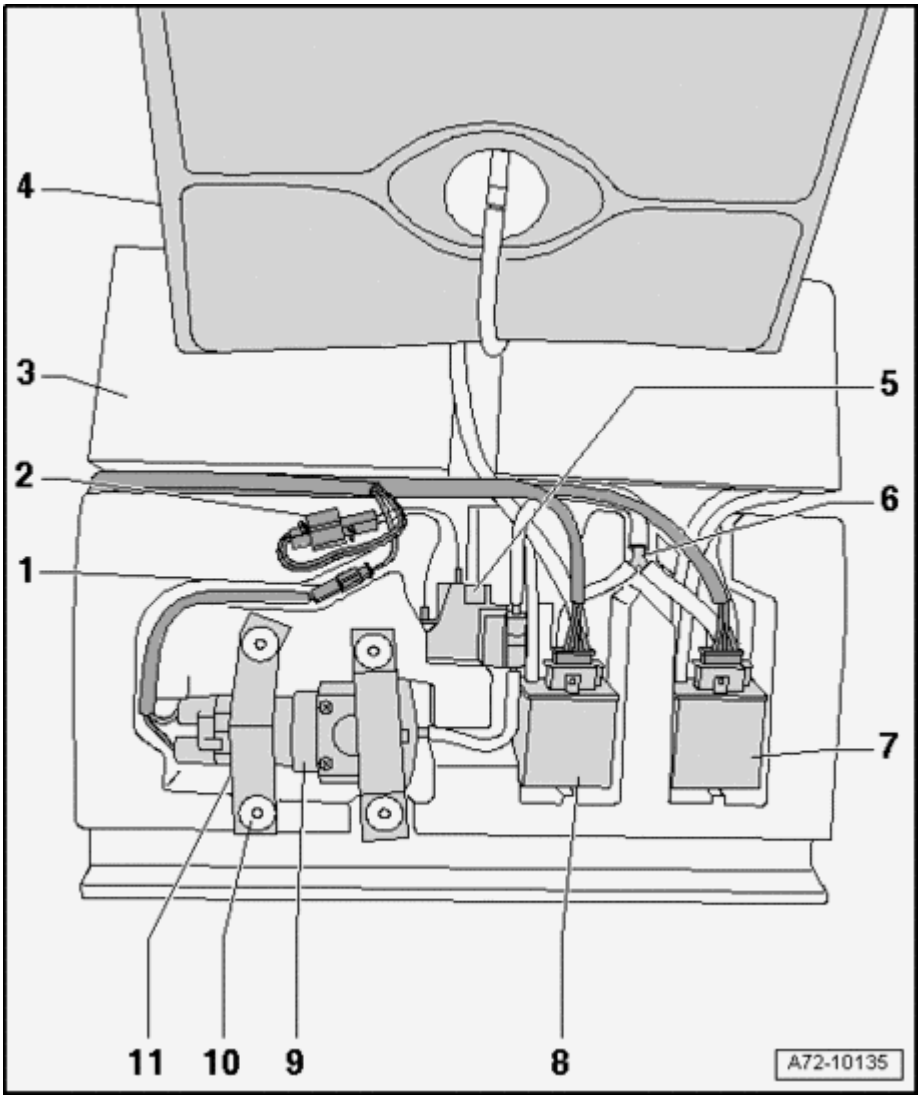


Fig. 803: Pneumatic Block - Component Assignment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Electrical connection

- For Driver s Lumbar Support Pump V152
- For Front Passenger s Lumbar Support Pump V153

2 - Electrical connection

- For Driver s Lumbar Support Pressure Switch F224
- For Front Passenger s Lumbar Support Pressure Switch F225

3 - Hard foam block

- For pneumatic components

cardiagn.com

- Secured to backrest at underside using double adhesive tape
- Removing and installing --> **Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing**

4 - Four-way lumbar support adjustment air cushion

- Secured to hard foam block - **3** - using plastic plug
- To remove, remove backrest cushion --> **Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing**
- Pry off plastic plug using pry lever 80-200

5 - Pressure switch for lumbar support adjustment

- Driver s Lumbar Support Pressure Switch F224
- Front Passenger s Lumbar Support Pressure Switch F225
- To remove, remove backrest cushion --> **Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing**

6 - Y-piece

- For pneumatic hoses to valve blocks

7 - Lumbar support valve block

- Driver s Lumbar Support Valve Block N209
- Front Passenger s Lumbar Support Valve Block N210
- To remove, remove backrest cushion --> **Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing**

8 - Backrest inflation adjustment valve block

- Driver s Lumbar Support Valve Block V378
- Front Passengers Seat/Backrest Inflation Adjustment Valve Block V379
- To remove, remove backrest cushion --> **Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing**

9 - Lumbar support pump

- Driver s Lumbar Support Pump V152
- Front Passenger s Lumbar Support Pump V153
- To remove, remove backrest cushion --> **Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing**
- Secured using rubber strap - **11** - and plastic plugs - **10** -

10 - Plastic plug

- Pry off using pry lever 80-200

11 - Rubber strap

cardiagn.com

REAR SEATS

Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles up to 10.04

Removing

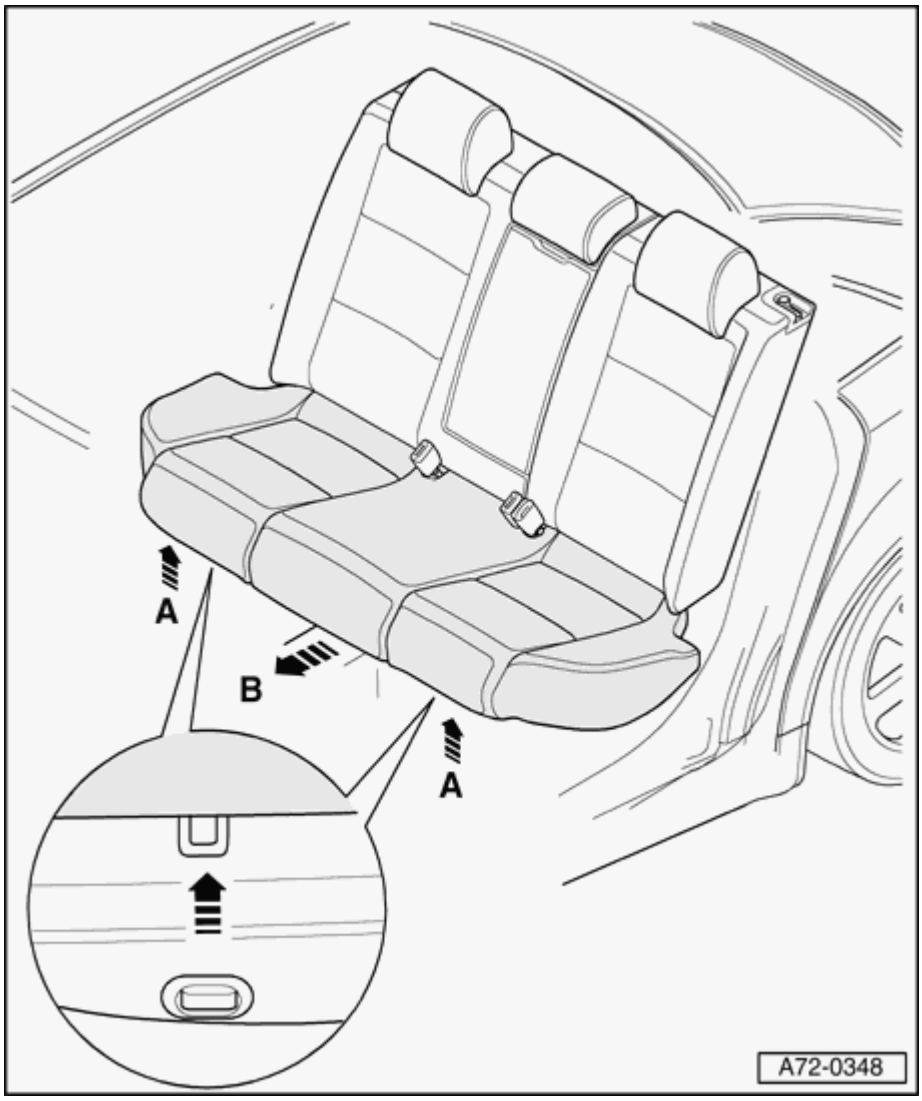


Fig. 804: Seatbench - Vehicles Up To 10.04 Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Lift seatbench in - **direction of arrow A** - and pull forward in - **direction of arrow B** -.
- Remove electrical harness connector for side airbag from groove **Side airbag cable connector**
- Remove seat bench from vehicle.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

cardiagn.com

CAUTION: Mountings must be replaced after each removal of seatbench Replacing mountings

Side airbag cable connector

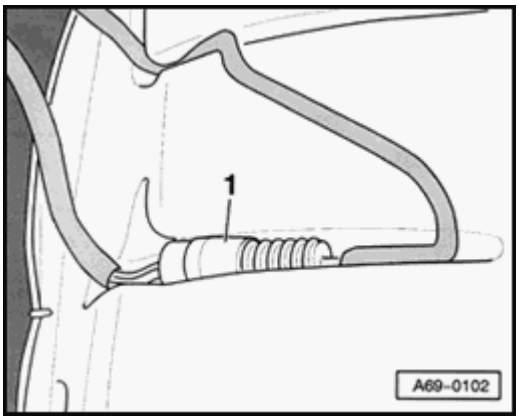


Fig. 805: Side Airbag Cable Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

Replacing mountings

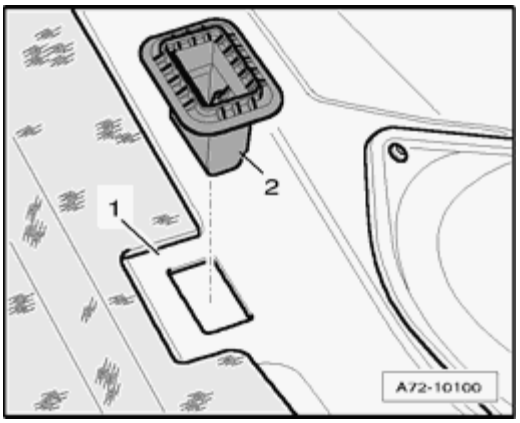


Fig. 806: Replacing Mountings
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove used mounting from chassis cut-out.
- Insert new mounting grommet - **2** - into body cut-out until it clicks into place - **1** -.

Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04

Removing

cardiagn.com

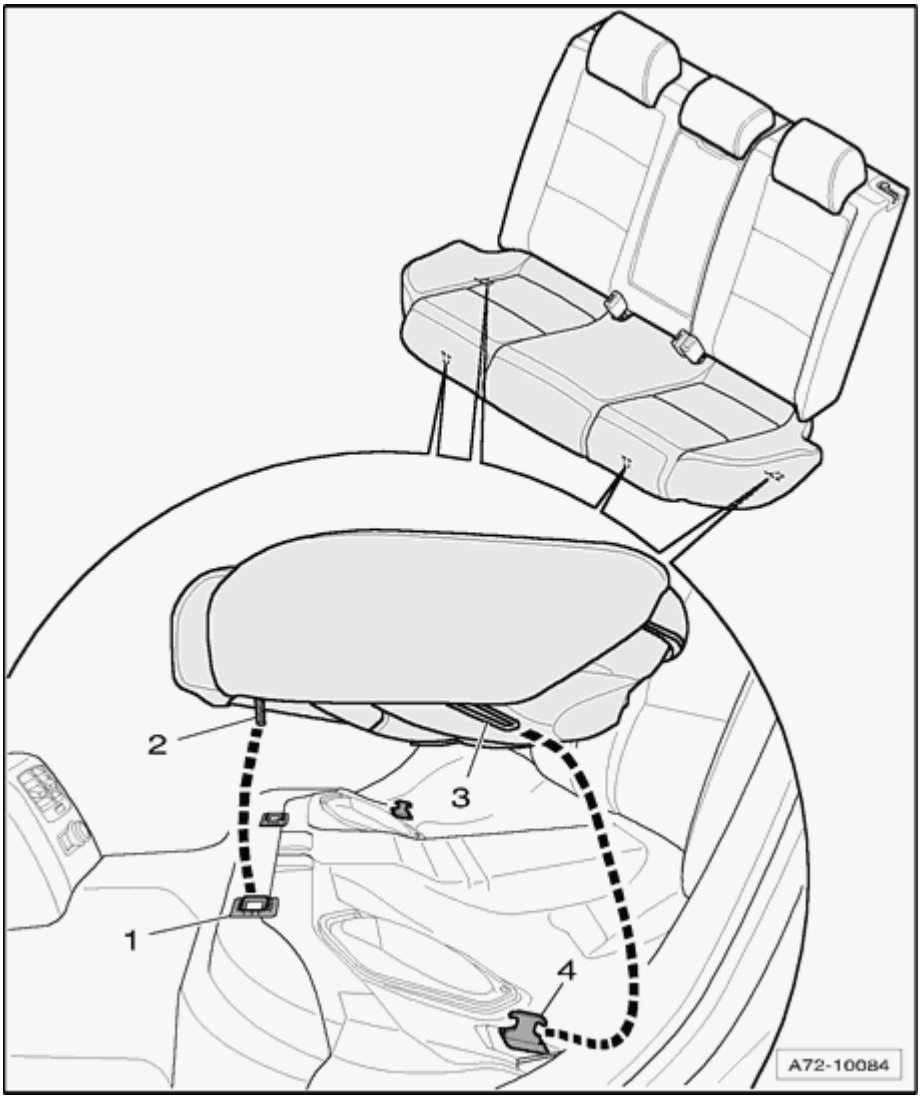


Fig. 807: Seatbench - Vehicles From 11.04 Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove seatbench upward at front edge and out of mounting - **1** - on left and right side.
- Disengage seatbench from mounting - **4** - on left and right, forcefully push seatbench backward to do so.
- On vehicles with seat heaters, lift seatbench far enough so that electrical harness connectors can be disconnected.
- Remove electrical harness connector for side airbag from groove **Side airbag cable connector**.
- Remove seat bench from vehicle.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

cardiagn.com

CAUTION: Mountings must be replaced after each removal of seatbench Replacing mountings.

Side airbag cable connector

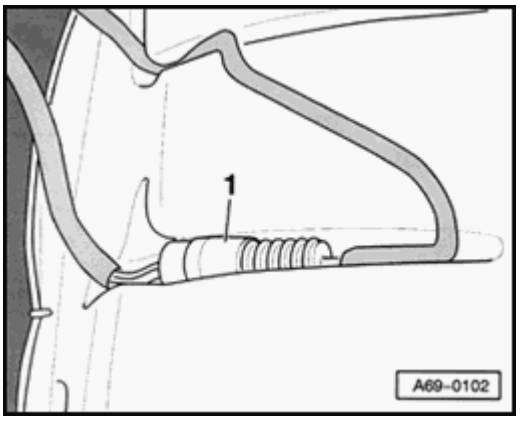


Fig. 808: Side Airbag Cable Connector
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

Replacing mountings

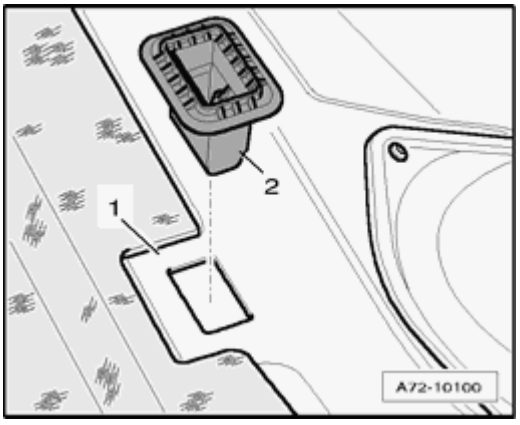


Fig. 809: Replacing Mountings
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove used mounting from chassis cut-out.
- Insert new mounting grommet - **2** - into body cut-out until it clicks into place - **1** -.

1/3 backrest, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

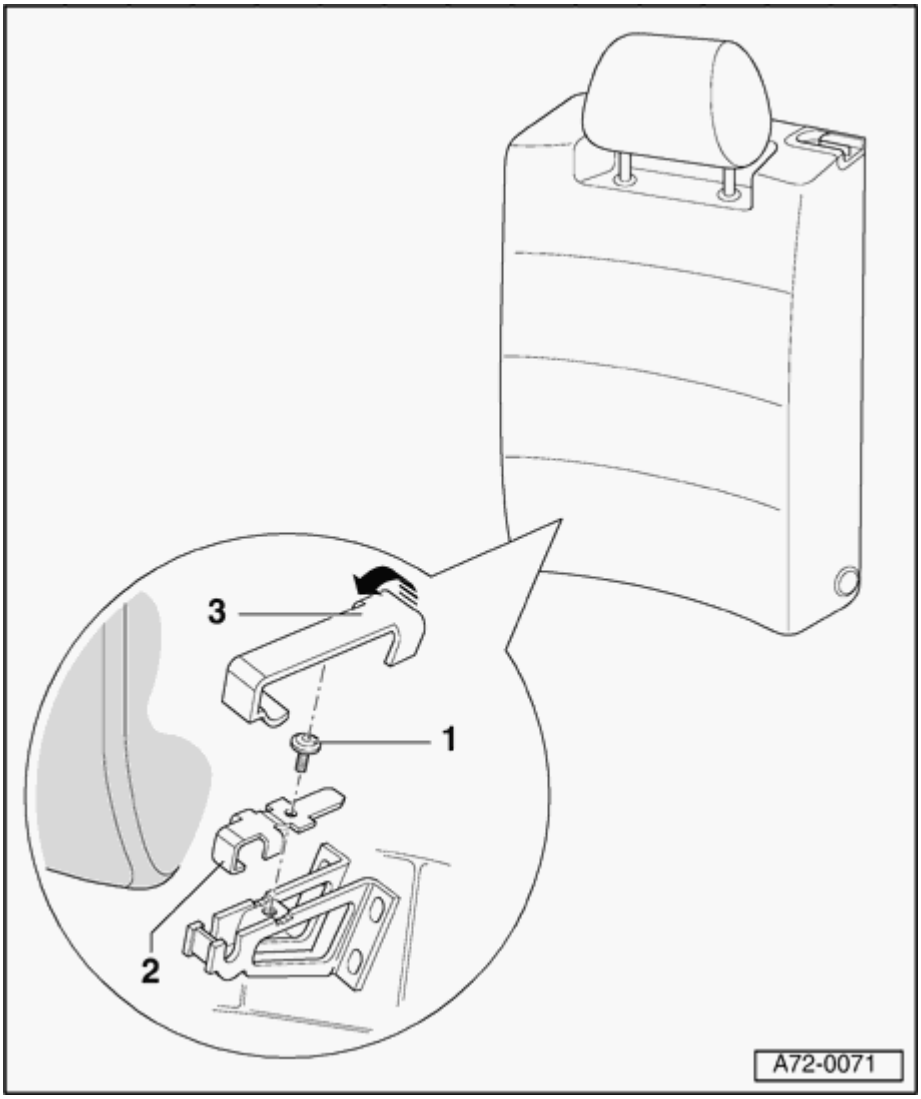


Fig. 810: Identifying Screw, Clamp & Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Removal:

  - Fold both backrests forward.
  - Unclip panels - **3** - from behind in - **direction of arrow** - , lever out through a hole from behind if necessary.
  - Unscrew bolt - **1** - and remove clamp - **2** -.

Tightening torques for bolt - **1** - : 10 Nm.

cardiagn.com

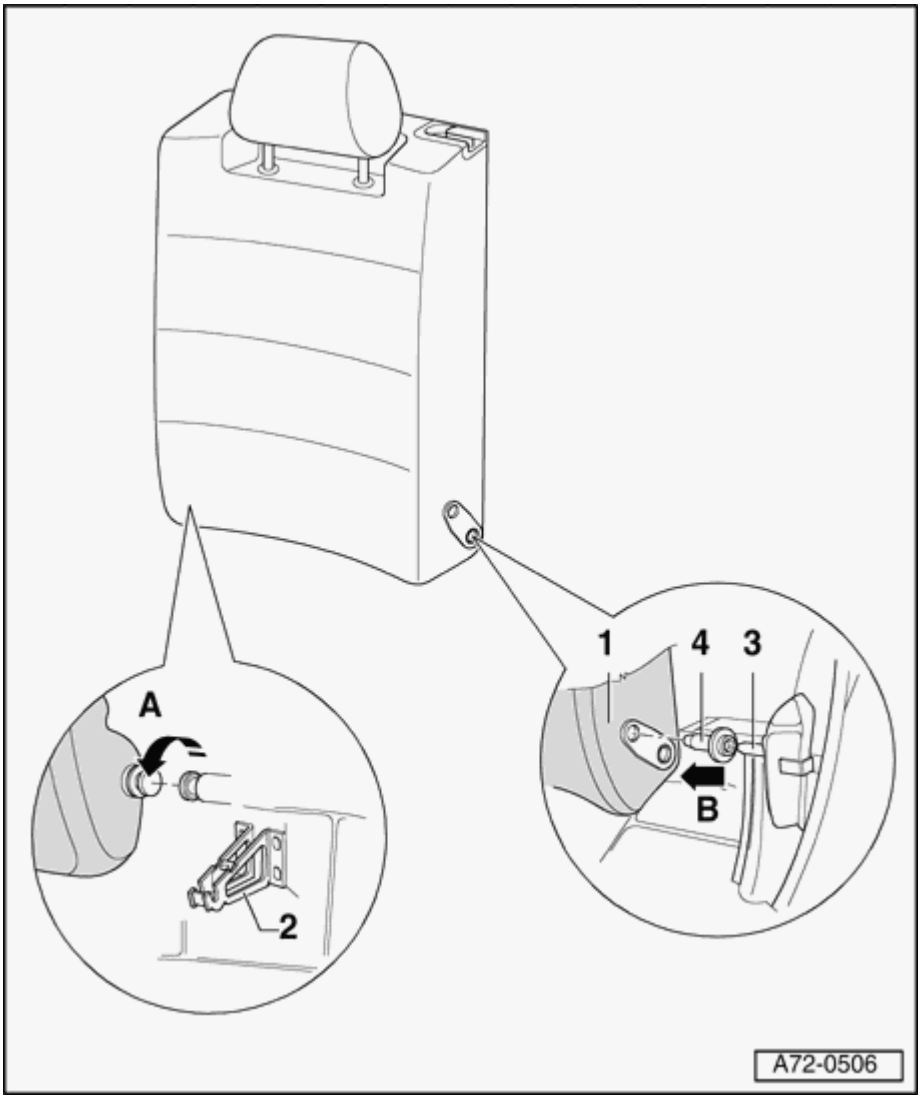


Fig. 811: Identifying Backrest, Center Bracket, Fitting & Grommet
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Lift backrest - **1** - from center support - **2** - in direction of arrow - **A** - and detach from fitting - **3** - in - **direction of arrow B** -.

NOTE:

- **If the sleeve - 4 - of fitting is pulled out as well, attach it again.**
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

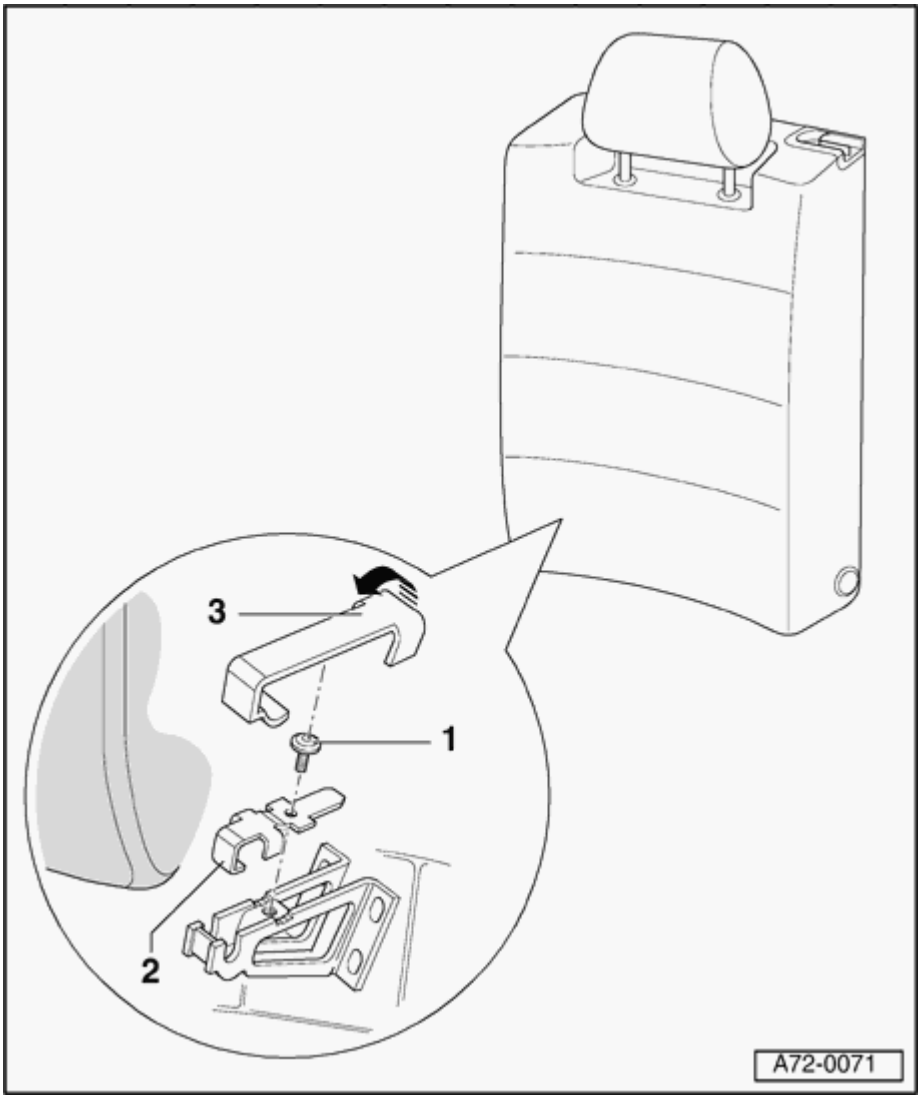


Fig. 812: Identifying Screw, Clamp & Trim
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Screw

2 - Clamp

3 - Trim

cardiagn.com

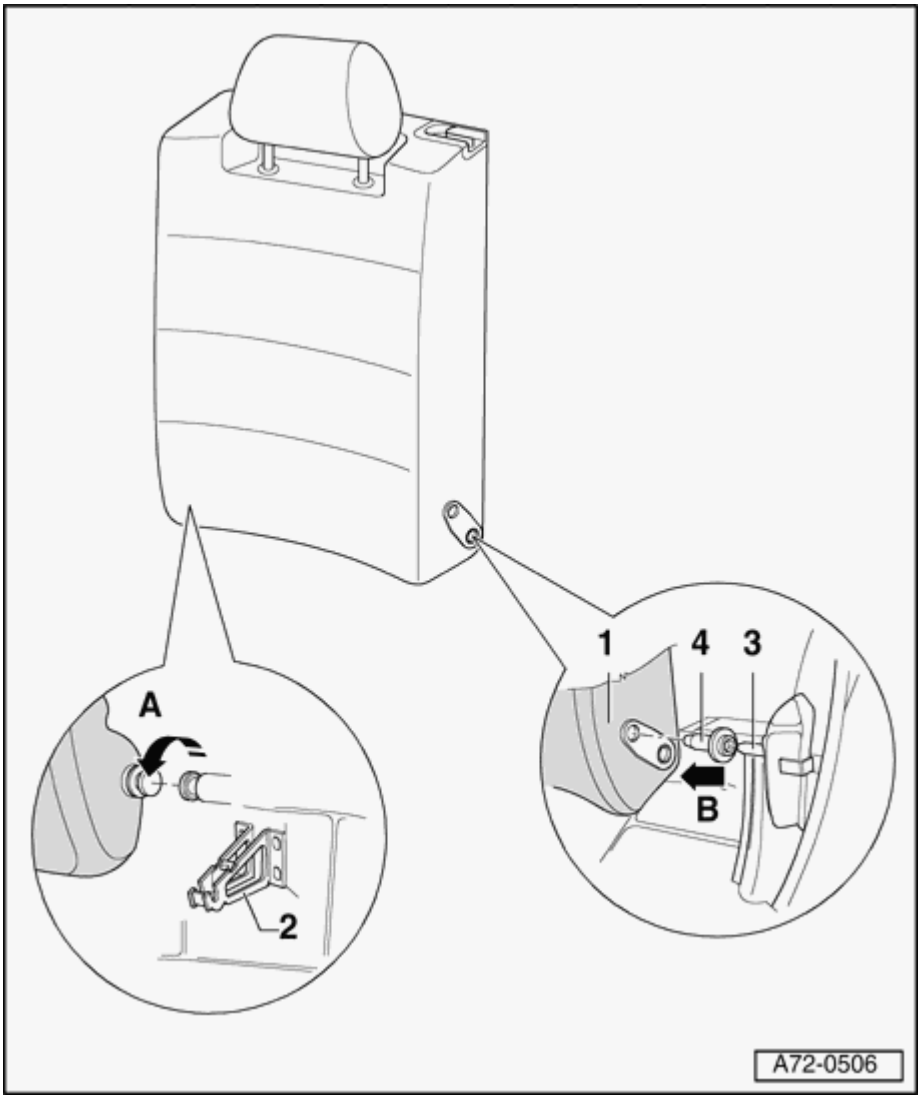


Fig. 813: Identifying Backrest, Center Bracket, Fitting & Grommet
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

2 - Center bracket

3 - Fitting

4 - Grommet

2/3 right backrest, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

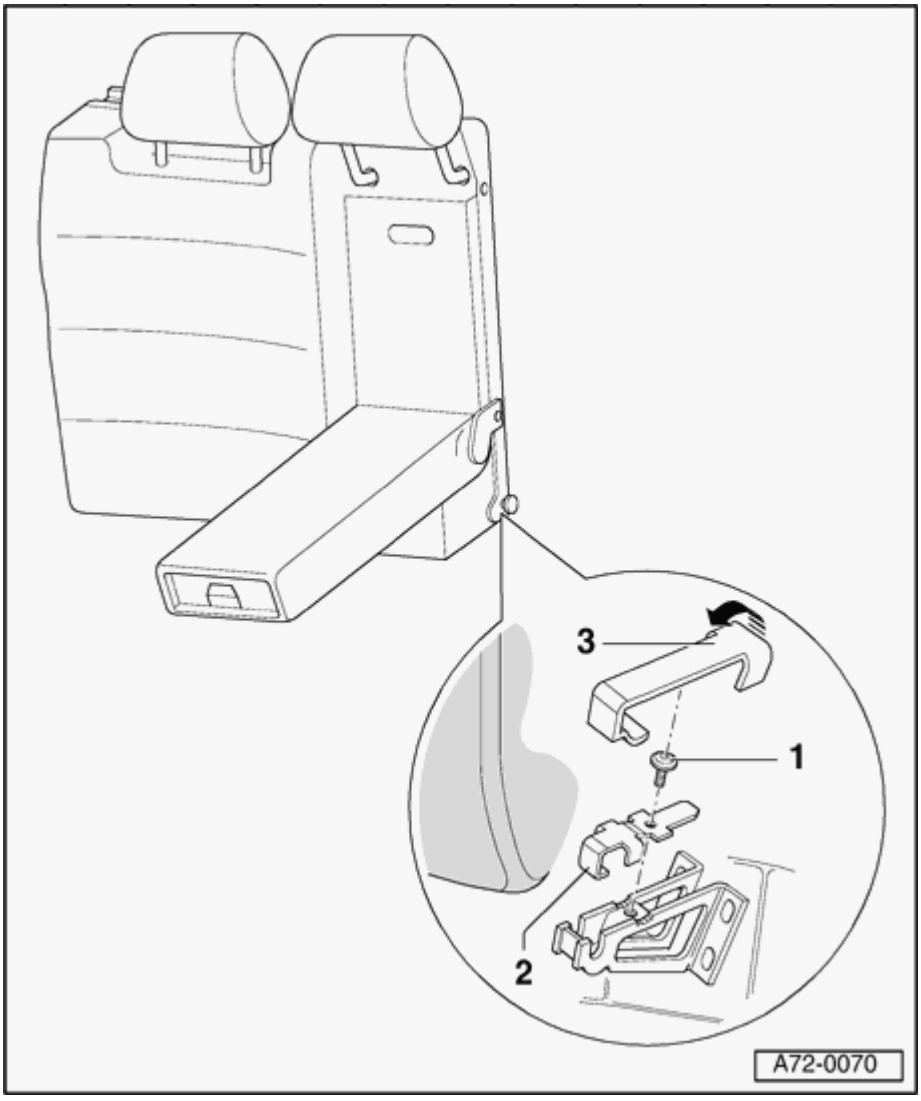


Fig. 814: 2/3 Right Backrest Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

- Removal:

  - Fold both backrests forward.
  - Unclip panels - **3** - from behind in direction of arrow, lever out through a hole from behind if necessary.
  - Unscrew bolt - **1** - and remove clamp - **2** -.

- Tightening torques for bolt - **1** - : 10 Nm

2 - Clamp

3 - Trim

cardiagn.com

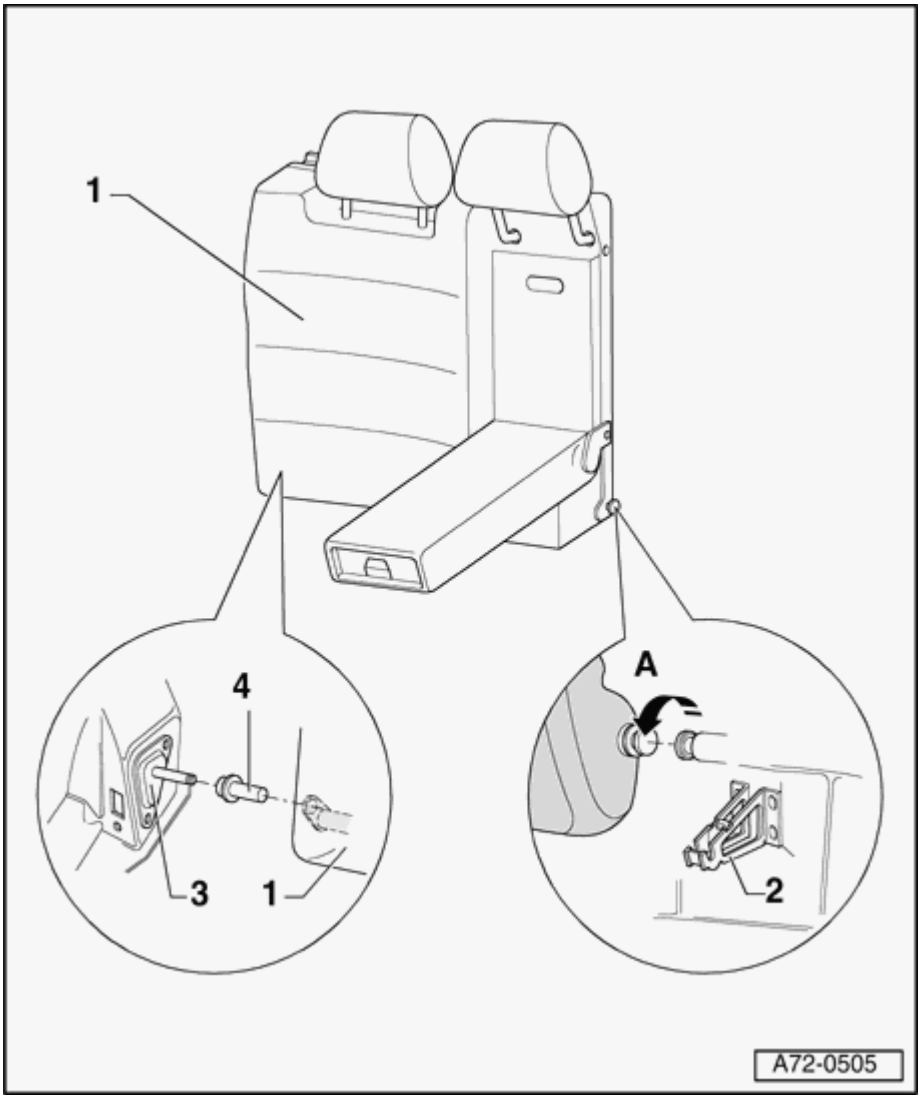


Fig. 815: Identifying Backrest, Center Bracket, Fitting & Grommet
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Lift backrest - **1** - from center support - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and detach from fitting - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

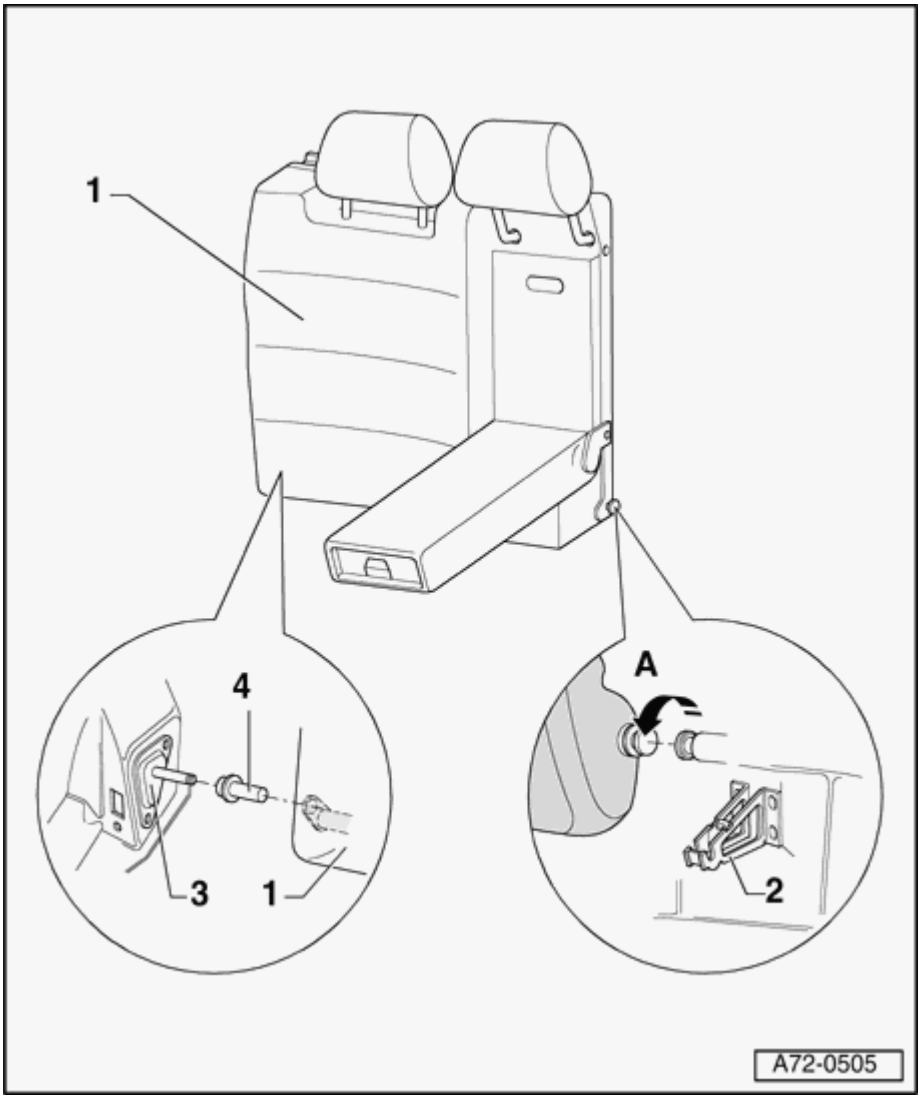


Fig. 816: Identifying Backrest, Center Bracket, Fitting & Grommet
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

NOTE:

- **If the sleeve - 4 - of fitting is pulled out as well, attach it again.**
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

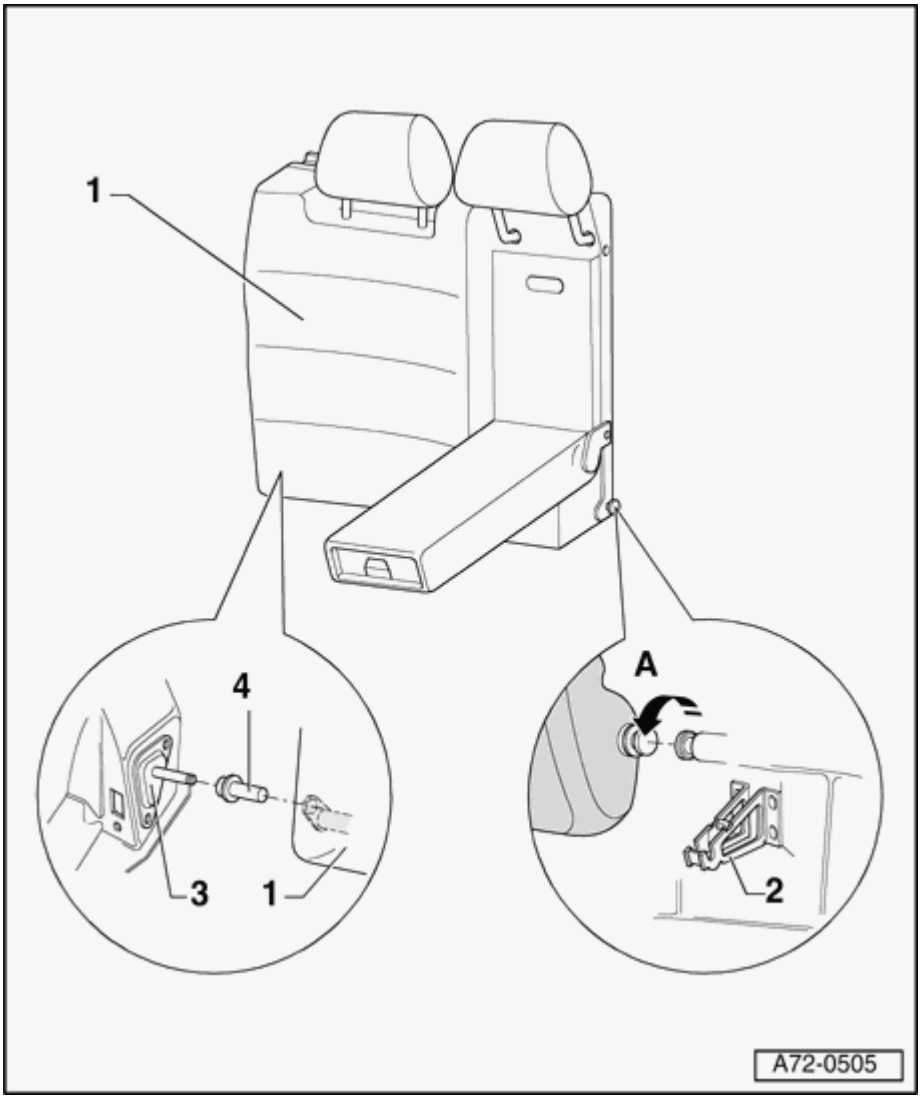


Fig. 817: Identifying Backrest, Center Bracket, Fitting & Grommet
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

2 - Center bracket

3 - Fitting

4 - Grommet

Center armrest, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

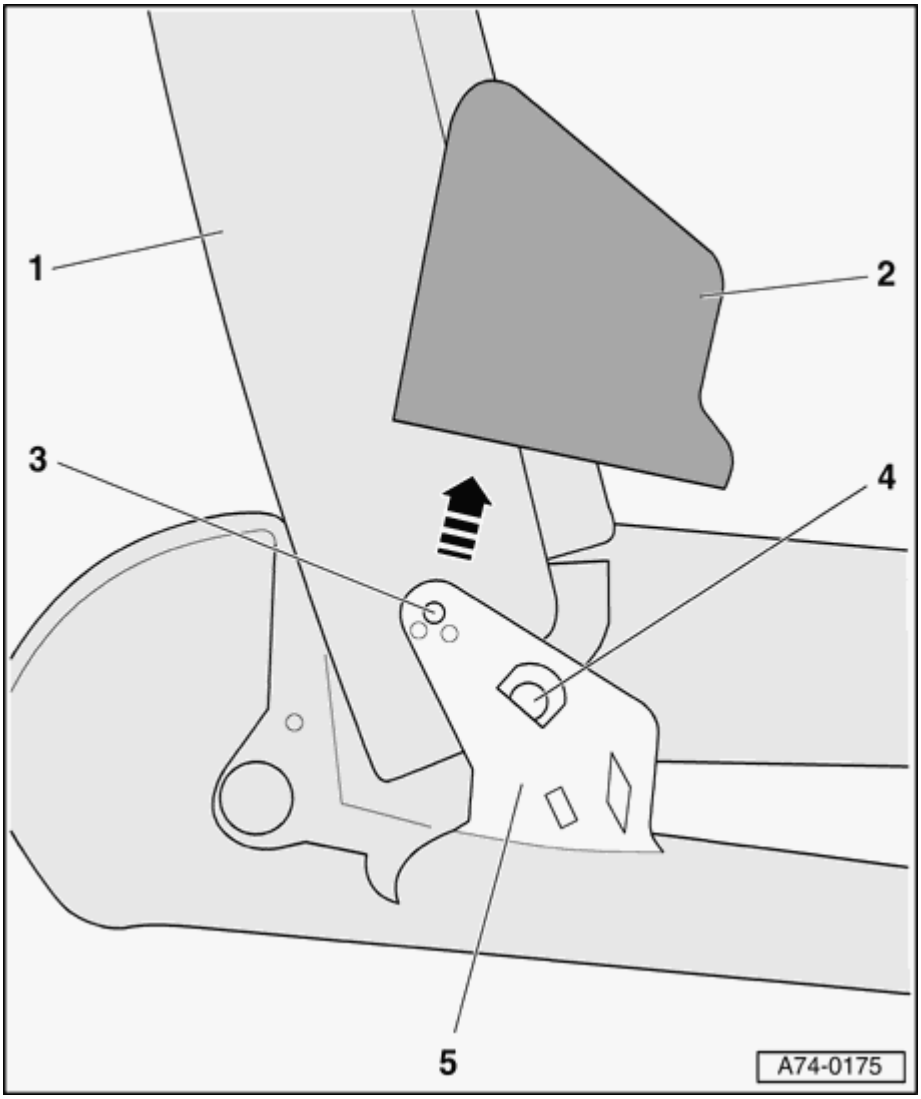


Fig. 818: Center Armrest Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Center armrest

- Removal:

  - Remove cover - **2** - in direction of arrow.
  - Remove bolts - **3** -.
  - Remove pin - **4** - from hinge arm - **5** -.
  - Remove center armrest - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

2 - Cover

3 - Screw

4 - Bolts

5 - Hinge arm

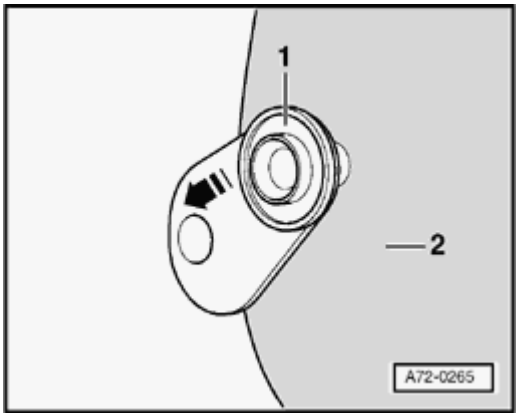


Fig. 819: Removing Bearing Bushing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing bearing bushing

- Press off bushing - **1** - using a flat-head screwdriver in - **direction of arrow** -.

2 - Backrest cover

Rear seat side padding, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

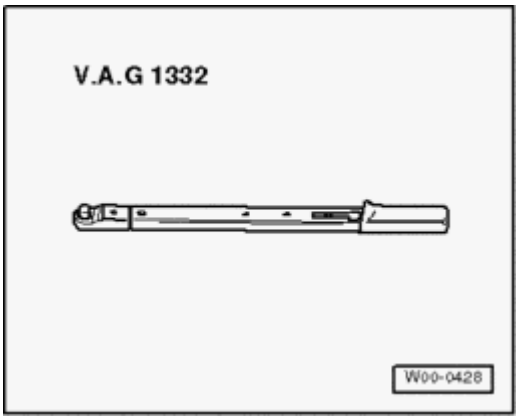


Fig. 820: Identifying Torque Wrench V.A.G. 1332
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1332

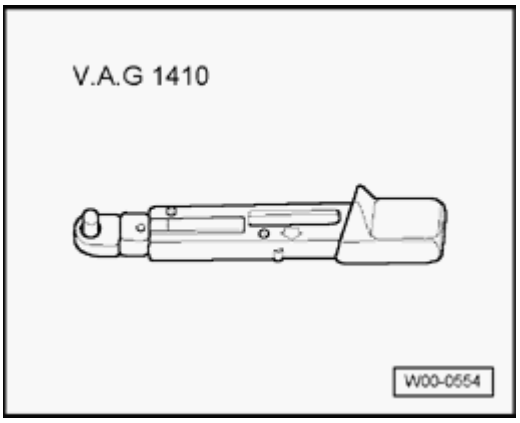


Fig. 821: Torque Wrench V.A.G 1410
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Torque wrench V.A.G 1410

cardiagn.com

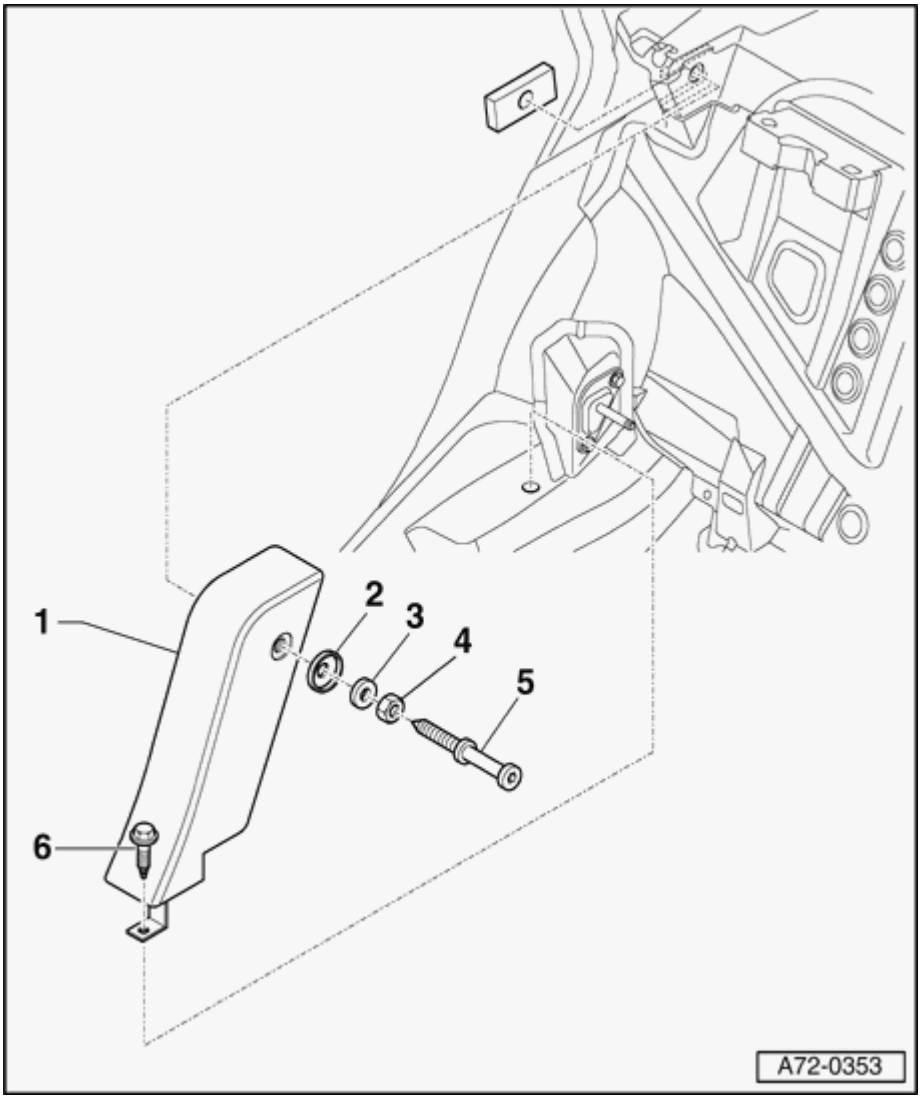


Fig. 822: Rear Seat Side Padding Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Side upholstery

- Removal:

  - Remove rear seat bench: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles up to 10.04** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.
  - Remove bolt - **6** -.
  - Disconnect cable connectors for vehicles with side airbag **Side airbag connector, disconnecting**.
  - Remove nut - **4** -.
  - Remove latch bolt - **5** - with washer - **3** - and dished washer - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Insert latch bolt - **5** - and tighten nut - **4** -.

NOTE:

- **After connecting battery, vehicle options (radio, clock, electrical window regulator, etc.) must be checked -->**
  - **27 BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL**
  - **27 - BATTERY, STARTER, GENERATOR, CRUISE CONTROL for ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT - GENERAL INFORMATION**

  .
- **If the Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) K75 signals a malfunction, DTC memory must be erased and then checked again using the Diagnostic Operation System VAS 5051 A.**

2 - Dished washer

3 - Window

4 - Nut

- Tightening torque: 55 Nm.

5 - Striker pin

6 - Screw

- Tightening torque: 10 Nm.

Side airbag connector, disconnecting

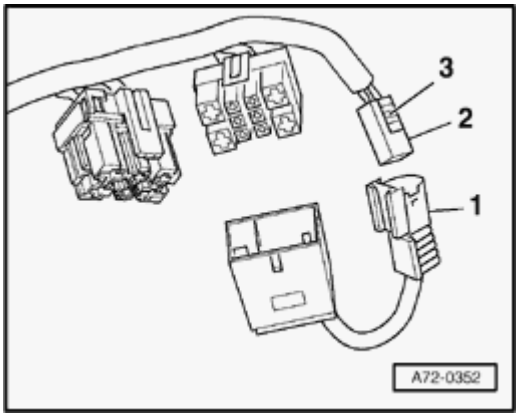


Fig. 823: Side Airbag Connector, Disconnecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press catch - **3** - on connector for side airbag - **2** - from counterpart - **1** - and remove it.

cardiagn.com

Center bracket, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove left and right rear backrests --> **1/3 backrest, removing and installing**.

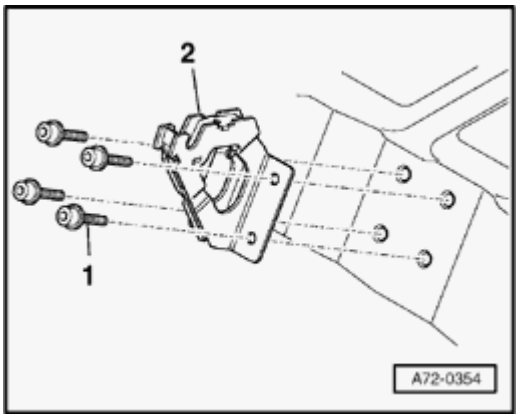


Fig. 824: Removing Bolts From Center Mounting Bracket
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (4x) from center mounting bracket - **2** -.

Tightening torque: 16 Nm

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Outer backrest fitting, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove left and right rear backrests --> **1/3 backrest, removing and installing**.

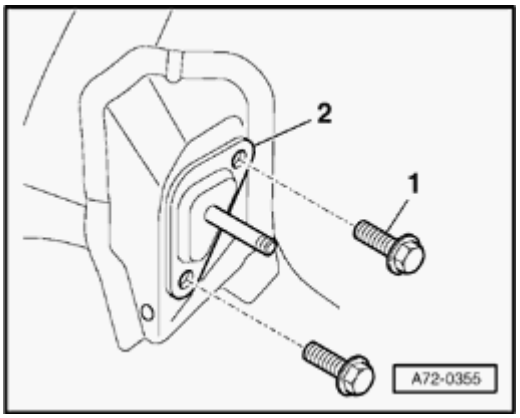


Fig. 825: Removing Bolts From Outer Fitting

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove bolts - **1** - (2x) from outer fitting - **2** -.

Tightening torque: 16 Nm

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Headrests - component overview

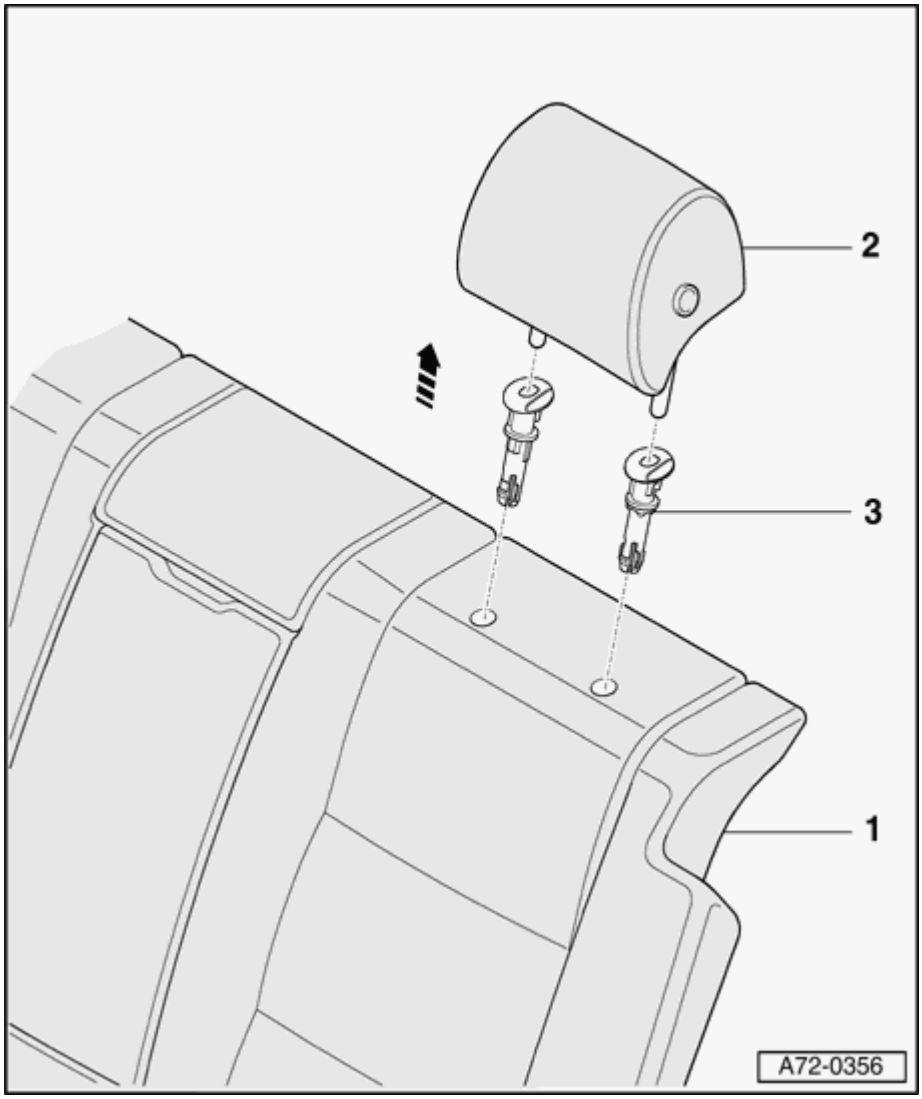


Fig. 826: Headrests - Component Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear seat backrest

cardiagn.com

2 - Outer headrests

- With insertion lock: Removing and installing --> **Headrest with insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Without insertion lock: Removing and installing --> **Headrests without insertion lock, removing and installing**

3 - Head rest guide

- With release button
- Must always be installed on left side

Headrest with insertion lock, removing and installing

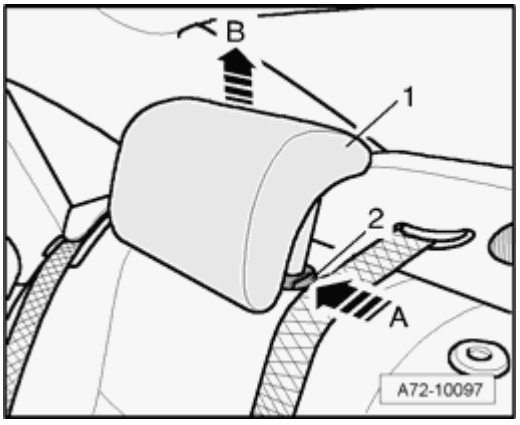


Fig. 827: Pushing Release Button And Pulling Headrest Upward As Far As Possible
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Push release button - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and pull headrest - **1** - upward as far as possible - **arrow B** - , keep release button pushed while doing so.

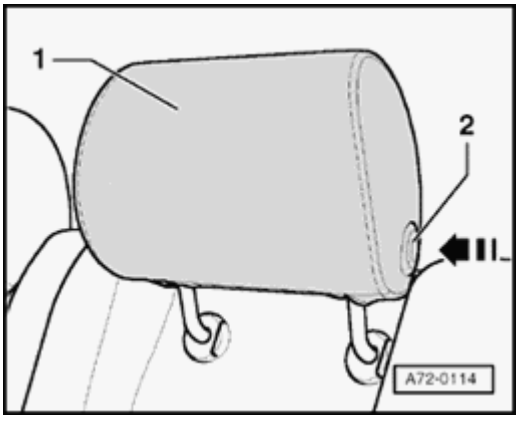


Fig. 828: Pressing Release Button On Headrest Until Stop
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Press release button - **2** - on headrest - **1** - until stop - **arrow** -.
- Slide headrest down completely on rods, release button on headrest must be kept pressed while doing so.
- Remove headrest completely from headrest guides.

Installing

- Insert headrest into headrest guides until it audibly engages.

Headrests without insertion lock, removing and installing

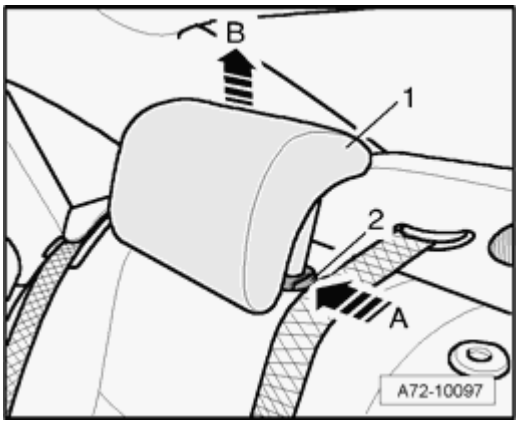


Fig. 829: Pushing Release Button And Pulling Headrest Upward As Far As Possible
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Push release button - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and pull headrest - **1** - upward as far as possible - **arrow B** - , keep release button pushed while doing so.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal, but note the following:

- Insert headrest into headrest guides until it audibly engages.

Fixed backrest, removing and installing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

Removing

cardiagn.com

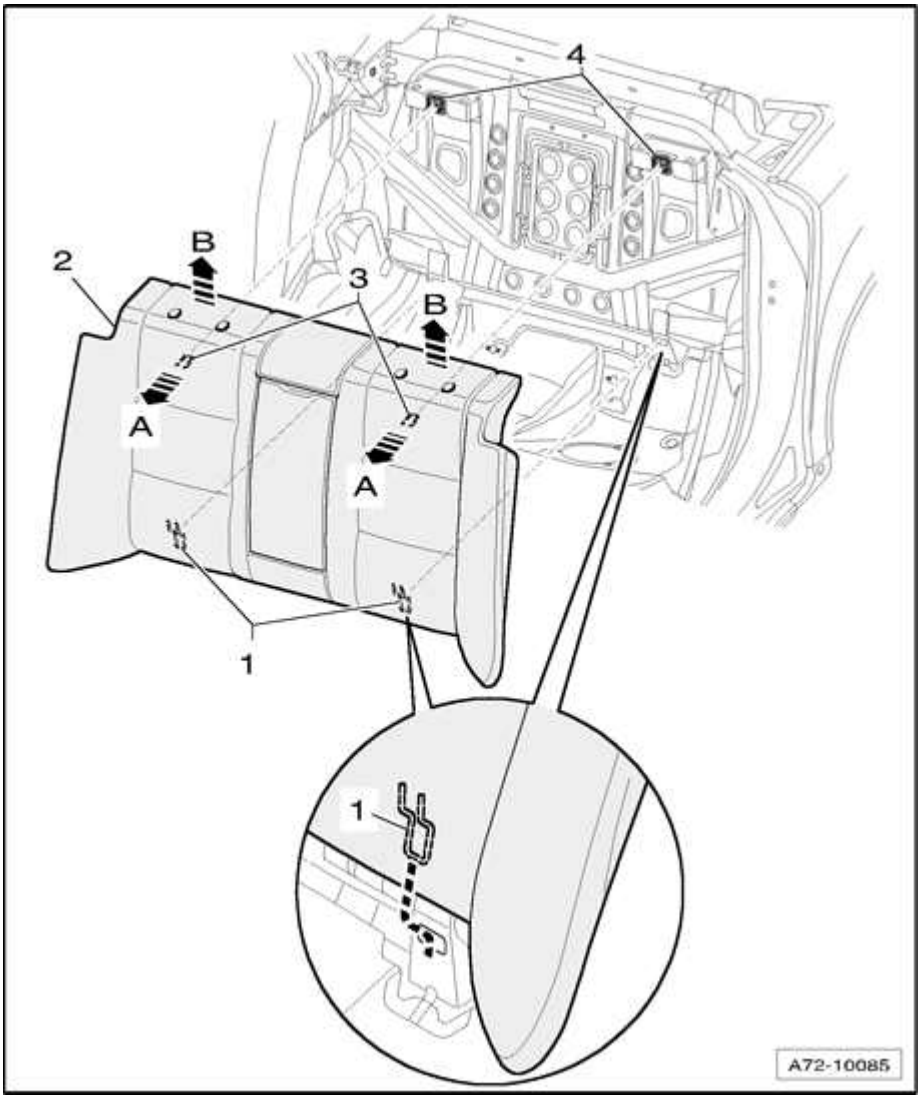


Fig. 830: Fixed Backrest Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove rear seat bench: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles up to 10.04** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.
- Remove headrests --> **Headrest with insertion lock, removing and installing** or --> **Headrests without insertion lock, removing and installing**.
- For vehicles with ski sack, remove ski sack frame --> **Frame for ski sack, removing and installing (foldable rear seat)**.
- Remove headrest guides:

- Headrest guides with slide in locking mechanism --> **Headrest guides with insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Outer headrest guides without slide in locking mechanism --> **Outer headrest guides without insertion lock, removing and installing**

cardiagn.com

- Inner headrest guides without slide in locking mechanism --> **Inner headrest guides without insertion lock, removing and installing**

- On vehicles with side airbag, disconnect electrical harness connector **Side airbag wiring connector, disconnecting**
- On vehicles with heated backrest, disconnect electrical harness connectors.
- Remove rear backrest - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - out of mountings - **4** -.
- Remove rear backrest in - **direction of arrow B** - from chassis cut-out.

- Remove rear backrest from vehicle.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

CAUTION: Mountings must be replaced after each removal of rear backrest Replacing mountings.

Side airbag wiring connector, disconnecting

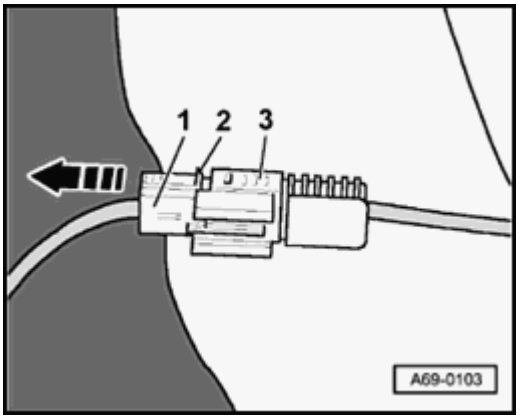


Fig. 831: Side Airbag Wiring Connector, Disconnecting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press catch - **2** - and disconnect cable connector - **1** - in - **direction of arrow** -.

Replacing mountings

cardiagn.com

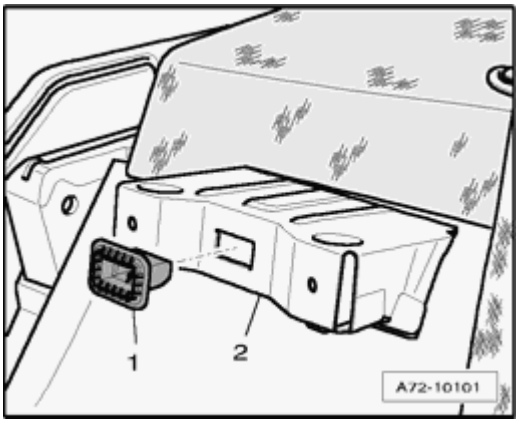


Fig. 832: Replacing Mountings
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove used mounting from chassis cut-out.
- Install new mounting - **1** - in chassis cut-out - **2** - until it audibly engages.

REAR RECARO SEATS

Rear seat bench, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **The technical construction of rear Recaro seats is identical to that of rear seats with divided backrests.**
- **The rear Recaro seats are only differentiated from standard seats by covers and upholstery.**

The following cross references serve for orientation:

- Remove rear seat bench: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles up to 10.04** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.
- Removing and installing left 1/3 rear backrest --> **1/3 backrest, removing and installing**.
- Removing and installing right 2/3 rear backrest, removing and installing --> **2/3 right backrest, removing and installing**.
- Center arm rest, removing and installing --> **Center armrest, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

74 - SEATS - UPHOLSTERY, COVERS

FRONT SEAT COVERS AND PADDING

Seat pan cover and padding (standard seat), removing and installing

Removing cover and cushion from seat pan

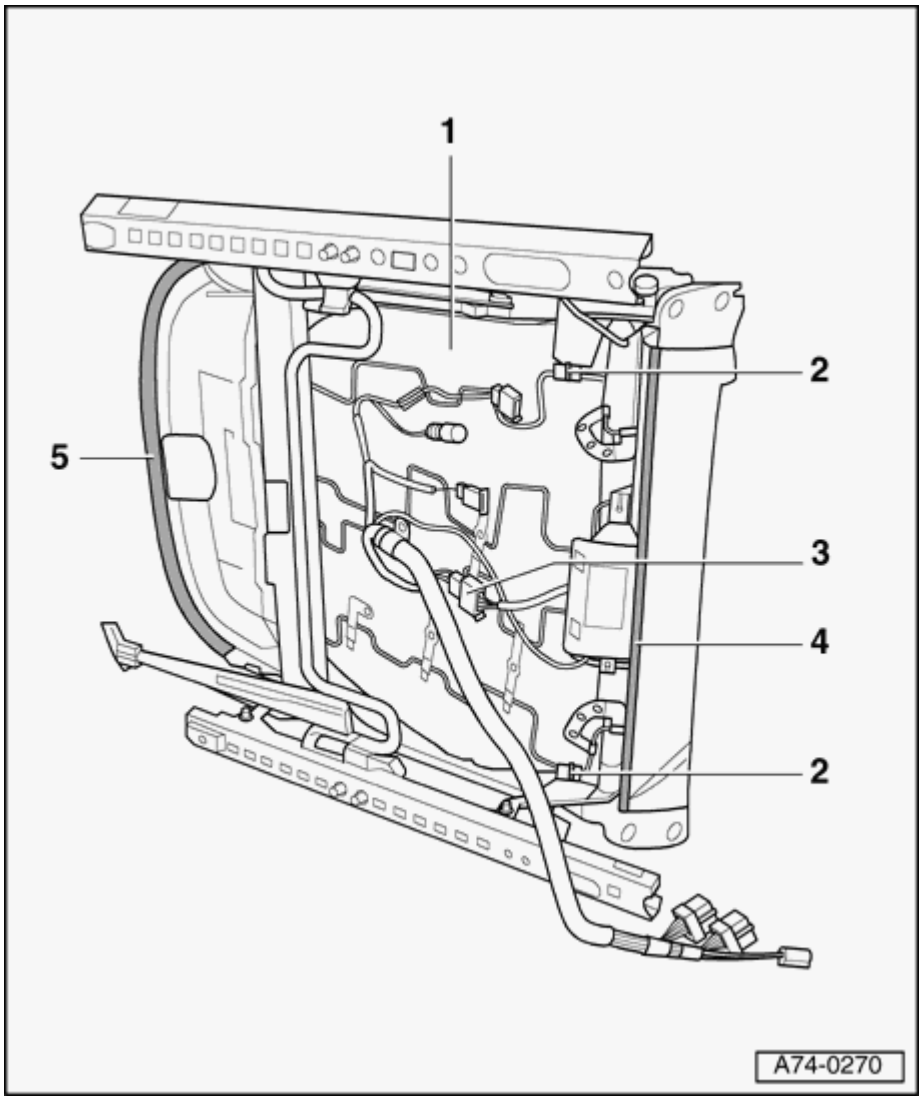


Fig. 303: Removing Cover And Cushion From Seat Pan
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover and padding

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

- Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove storage compartment --> **Storage compartment, removing and installing**.

- Remove backrest adjuster --> **Backrest adjuster, removing and installing**.
- Remove seat height adjuster --> **Seat height adjuster, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on outboard side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on inboard side --> **Side trim on tunnel side, removing and installing**.

- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Disconnect heated seat connector -3-.
- Pinch off clips - **2** - (2x).
- Pry out piping at rear - **4** -.

- Pry out surround piping - **5** -.
- Remove cover and padding - **1** -.
- On vehicles with ISOFIX holder and new cover fabric - **1** - , cut slots in fabric cover at location of ISOFIX holder.

2 - Clips (2x)

3 - Heated seat connector

4 - Rear piping

5 - Surround piping

Removing cover from padding

cardiagn.com

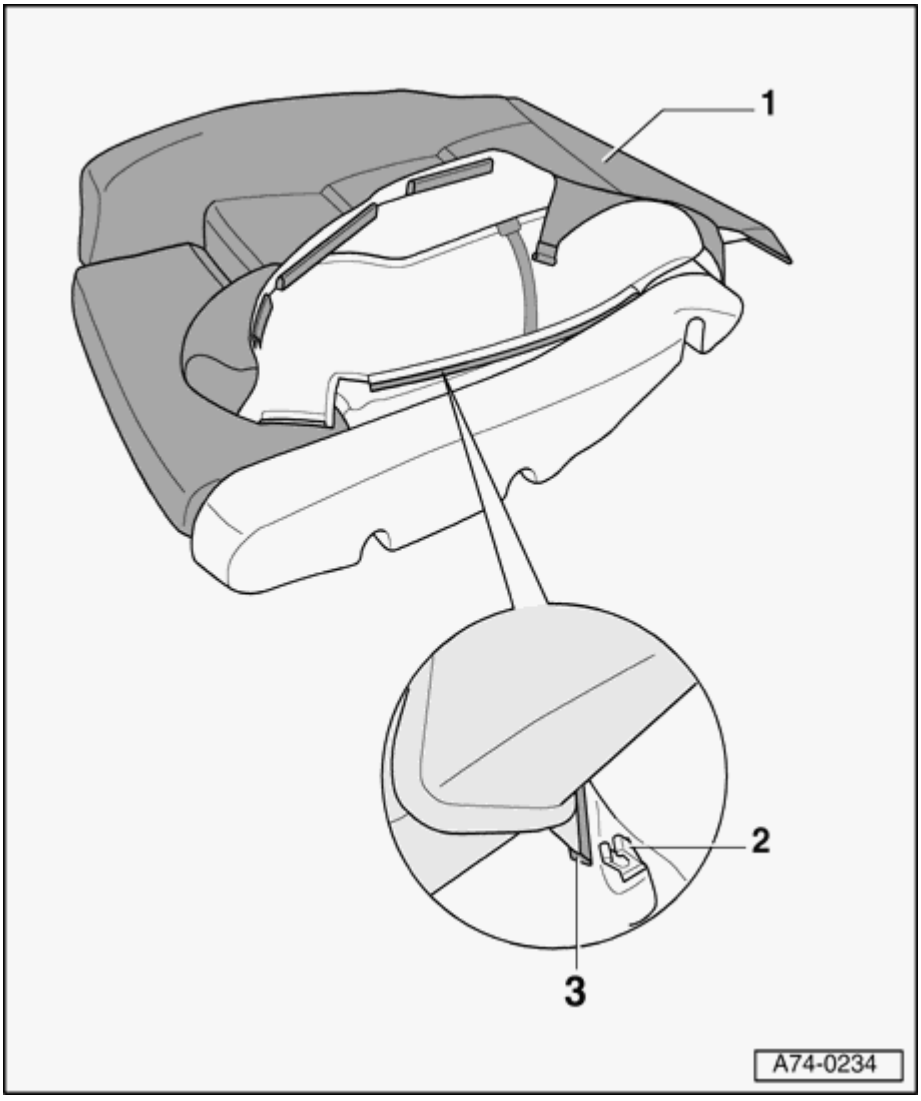


Fig. 304: Identifying Cover, Plastic Clips & Fastening Strips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover

- **Removing**

  - Using a screwdriver pry fastening strips - **3** - out of plastic clips - **2** -.
  - Remove cover - **1** -.
  - On vehicles with ISOFIX holder and new cover fabric - **1** - , cut slots in fabric cover at location of ISOFIX holder.

- **Installing**

  - Replace damaged plastic clips.
  - Pressing in plastic clips of transverse rods.

cardiagn.com

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

2 - Plastic clips

3 - Fastening strips

Cutting slots in fabric cover for ISOFIX holder

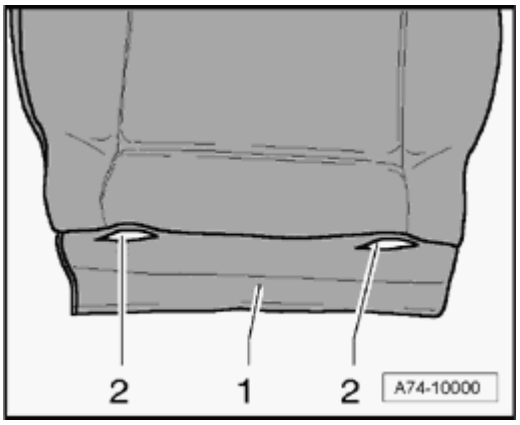


Fig. 305: Cutting Slots In Fabric Cover For ISOFIX Holder
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Cut slots (approx. 60 mm long) on both sides of new fabric cover.

Backrest cover and padding (sports seat, standard seat), removing and installing

CAUTION: Observe side airbag safety precautions for relevant vehicles --> Additional safety precautions for side airbag.

Removing cover and padding from backrest frame

cardiagn.com

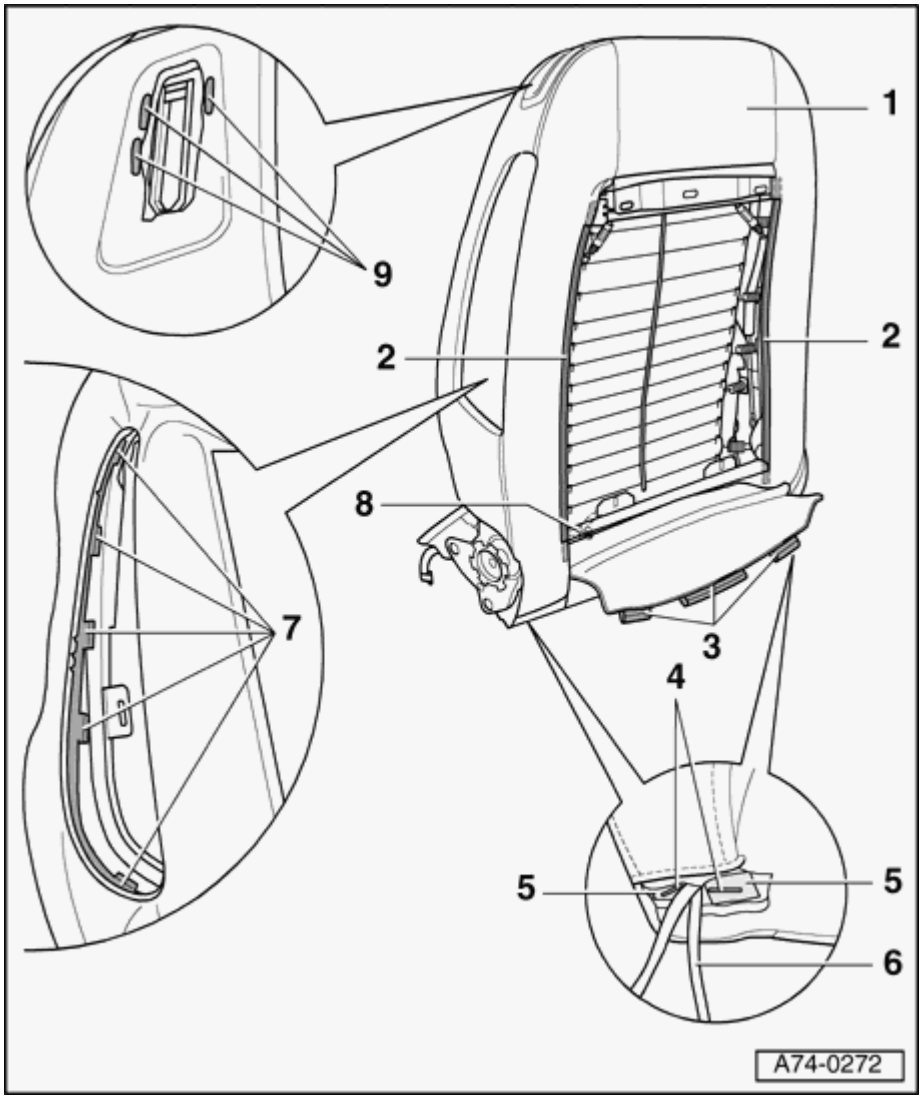


Fig. 306: Removing Cover And Padding From Backrest Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover and padding

- **Removing**

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.

- Remove head restraints --> **Head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism, removing and installing**.
- Remove head restraint guides --> **Head restraint guides, removing and installing**.
- Remove easy-entry facility handle --> **Easy-entry facility handle, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove easy-entry facility trim --> **Removing and installing easy-entry facility trim**.
- Remove backrest panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.
- Pry out staples - **4** - (4x) on left and right.
- Remove velcro strips - **5** - (4x) on left and right.
- Open cable tie - **8** -.
- Remove heated backrest cable - **6** -.
- Disengage piping on side - **2** - (2x).
- Pry out piping at bottom - **3** - (3x).
- Remove side airbag --> **Side airbag (sports seat, standard seat), removing and installing**.
- Pry out plastic tabs -7- (5x).
- Pry out staples - **9** - (3x).
- Remove padding with cover.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

2 - Side piping (2x)

3 - Bottom piping (3x)

4 - Staples (4x) on left and right

- Commercially available.
- Only use upholstery stapler.

5 - Velcro strips (4x) on left and right

6 - Heated backrest cable

7 - Plastic tabs (5x)

8 - Cable tie

9 - Staples (3x)

- Commercially available.
- Only use upholstery stapler.

Detaching cover from padding

cardiagn.com

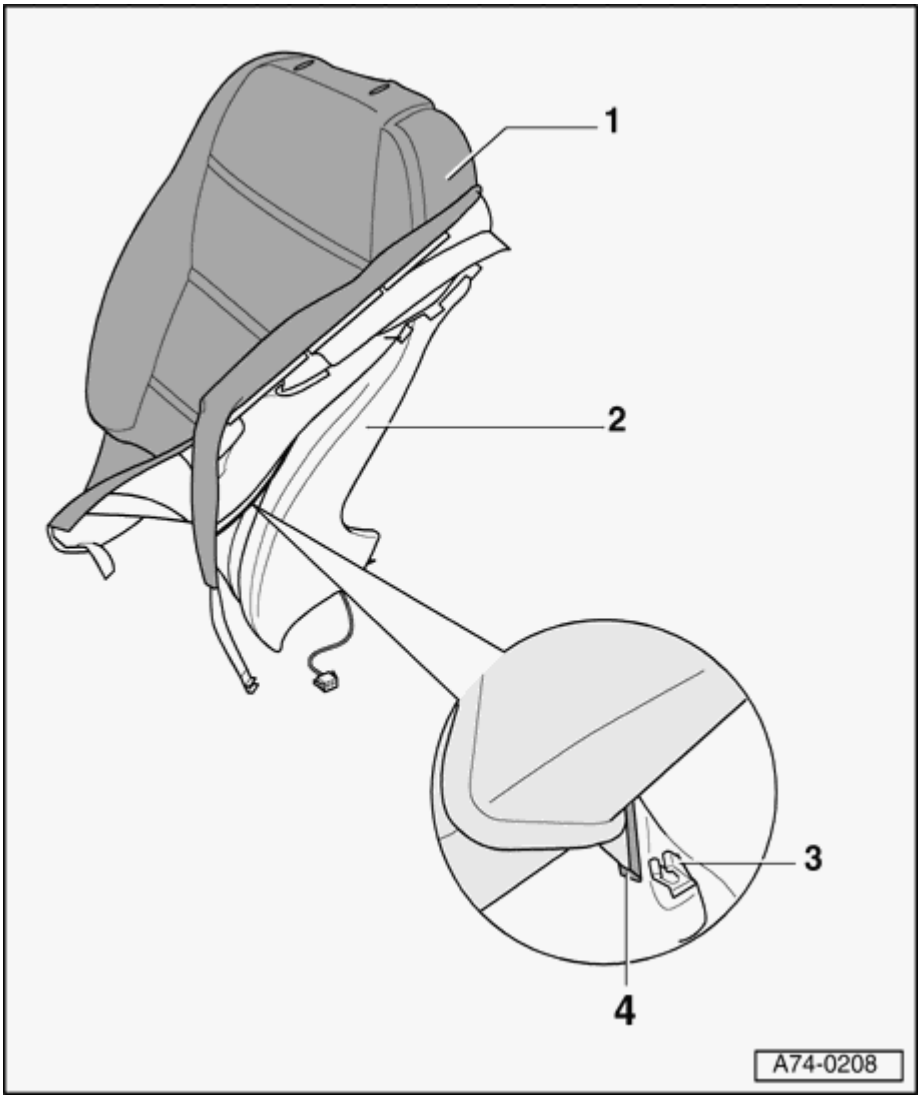


Fig. 307: Detaching Cover From Padding
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat cover

NOTE:

- **When replacing cover, order replacement side trim for sill panel side .**
- **When installing a new cover - 1 - cut a slot in cover - 1 - at location of backrest release.**

- **Removing**
  - Use a screwdriver to pry the securing strips - **4** - out of plastic clips - **3** -.
- Installation
  - Installation is in reverse order of removal.

cardiagn.com

- Replace damaged plastic clips.

2 - Padding

3 - Plastic clips

4 - Securing strips

Head restraint guides, removing and installing

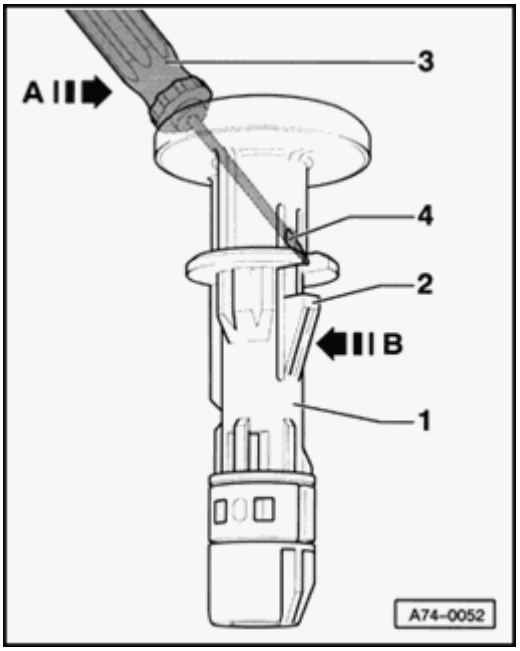


Fig. 308: Headrest Guides, Removing/Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- **Removing**

NOTE:

- **For improved clarity, head restraint guide - 1 - is shown removed.**

- Insert padding needle or screwdriver - **3** - with maximum width of 2 mm into hole - **4** - (hole - **4** - is opposite retaining clip for head restraint guide).
- Pry screwdriver - **3** - in direction of arrow - **A** - , press retainer tab - **2** - in direction of arrow - **B** - , and pull out head restraint guide - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is reverse of removal.

Seat heating element (standard seat), replacing

cardiagn.com

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Seat pan cover and padding (standard seat), removing and installing**.

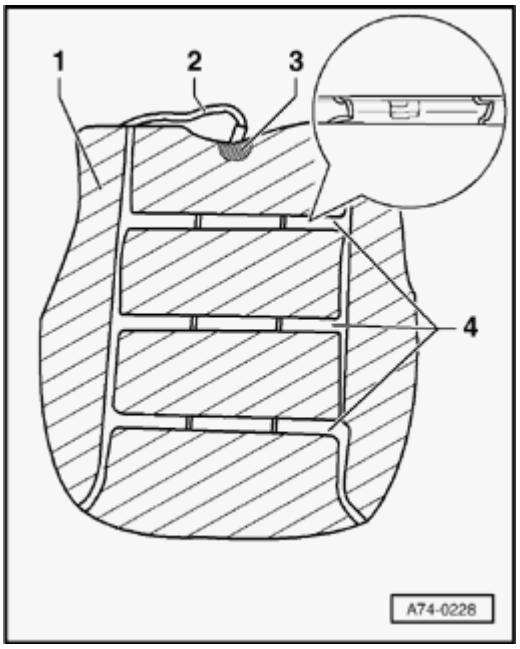


Fig. 309: Identifying Electrical Wire, Heating Element, Gap & Gap Positions
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut electrical wire - **2** - off old heating element - **1** -.
- Align heating elements - **1** - on the seat cushion, remove the protective film and bond the heating elements firmly onto the padded surfaces.
- Push the electric cable - **2** - into the gap - **3** -.
- The connecting cables must be laid without crossing in the bottom of the gaps at positions - **4** -.

Backrest heating element, removing and installing

Removing and installing backrest heating element (bonded)

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Backrest cover and padding (sports seat, standard seat), removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

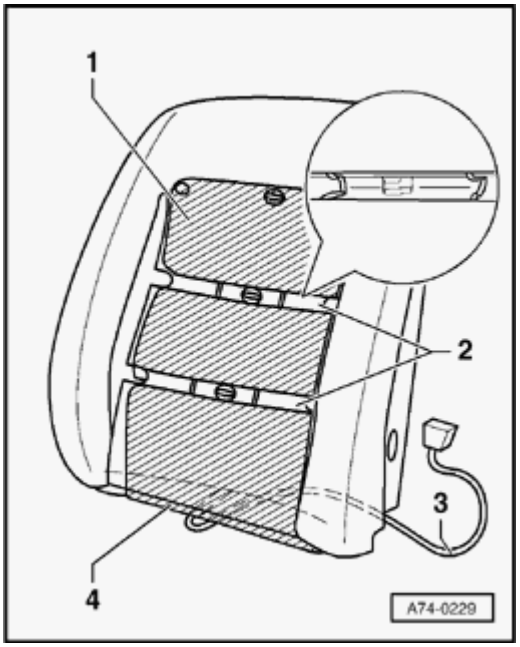


Fig. 310: Identifying Heating Element, Electrical Wire & Gap
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut cable - **3** - off old heating element - **1** -.
- Align heating elements - **1** - on the backrest cushion, remove the protective film and bond the heating elements firmly onto the padded surfaces.
- Push the electric cable - **3** - into the gap - **4** -.
- The connecting cables must be laid without crossing in the bottom of the gaps at positions - **2** -.

Cover and padding for head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism, removing and installing

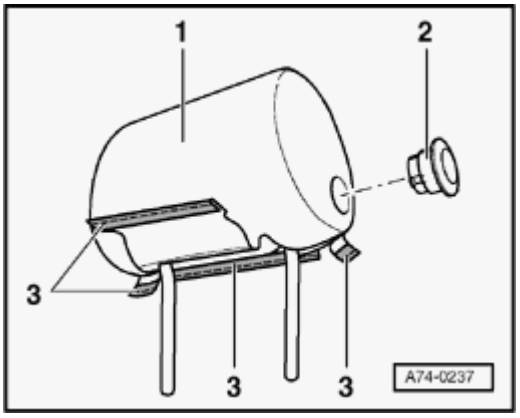


Fig. 311: Cover And Upholstery For Headrests With Slide In Locking Mechanism Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism --> **Head restraint, removing and installing**.
- Using a screwdriver, pry out securing strips - **3** - (4x).

cardiagn.com

- Detach knob - **2** -.
- Detach cover and padding - **1** -.

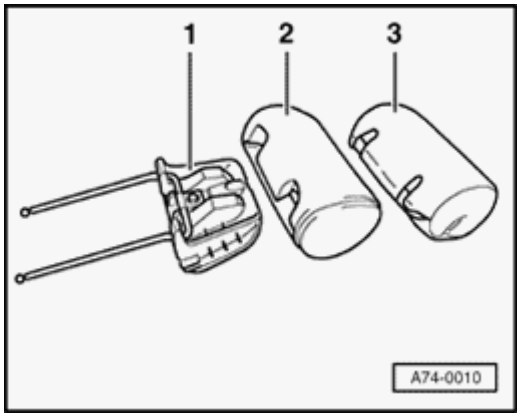


Fig. 312: Identifying Padding, Cover & Head Restraint Mount
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove padding - **2** - from cover - **3** -.

- **Installing:**

- Insert padding - **2** - correctly into cover - **3** -.
- Insert head restraint mount - **1** - into padding with cover.
- Press fastening strips firmly into guide channel (pull to check).

FRONT SEAT COVERS AND PADDING (MEMORY SEAT, ELECTRIC SEAT)

Cover and padding for seat pan (standard seat), assembly overview

Detaching cover and padding from seat pan

cardiagn.com

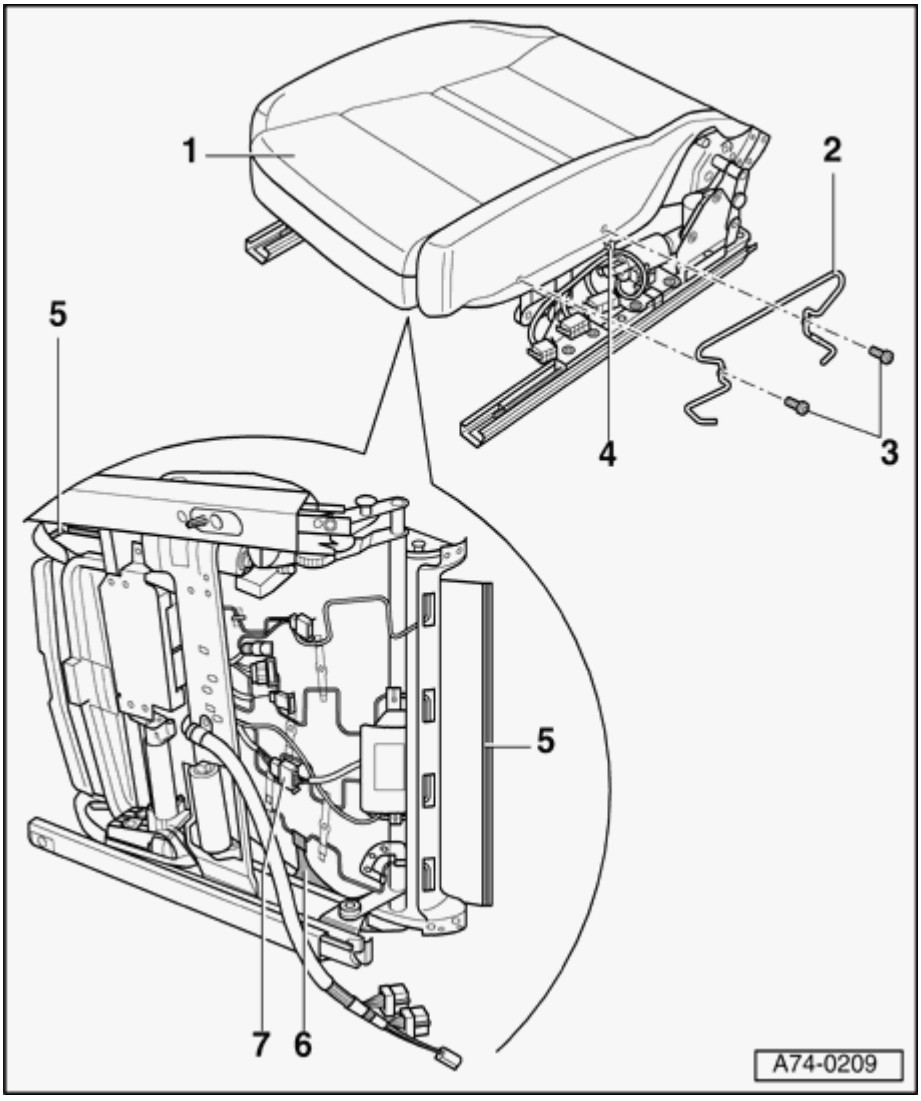


Fig. 313: Detaching Cover And Padding From Seat Pan
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover and padding

- **Removing**

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim, outboard side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim, inboard side --> **Side trim, inboard side, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).

cardiagn.com

- Remove clip - **2** -.
- Disconnect seat heating connector - **7** -.
- Release clip - **4** -.
- Pry out surrounding securing strips - **5** -.
- Disengage tab - **6** -.
- Remove cover and padding - **1** -.
- On vehicles with ISOFIX holder and new cover fabric - **1** - , cut slots in fabric cover at location of ISOFIX holder.

2 - Bracket

3 - Bolts (2x)

4 - Clip

5 - Surround securing strips

6 - Tab

7 - Seat heating connector

Detaching cover from padding

cardiagn.com

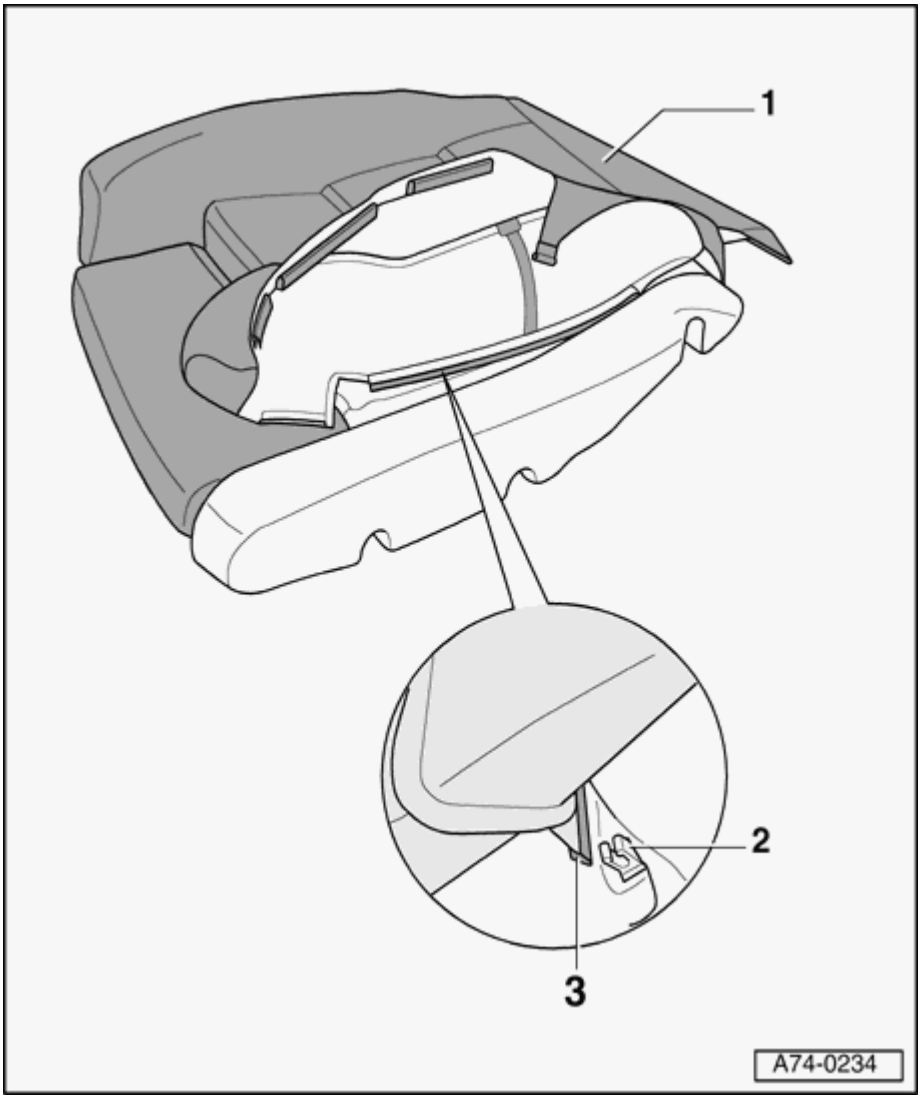


Fig. 314: Identifying Cover, Plastic Clips & Fastening Strips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat cover

- Use a screwdriver to pry the securing strips - **3** - out of the plastic clips - **2** -.
- Remove cover - **1** -.

  - On vehicles with ISOFIX holder and new cover fabric - **1** - , cut slots in fabric cover at location of ISOFIX holder.

2 - Plastic clips

3 - Securing strips

- **Installing**

cardiagn.com

- Replace damaged plastic clips.
- First press in the plastic clips of the cross members.
- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Seat pan cover and padding (sports seat), assembly overview

Detaching cover and padding from seat pan

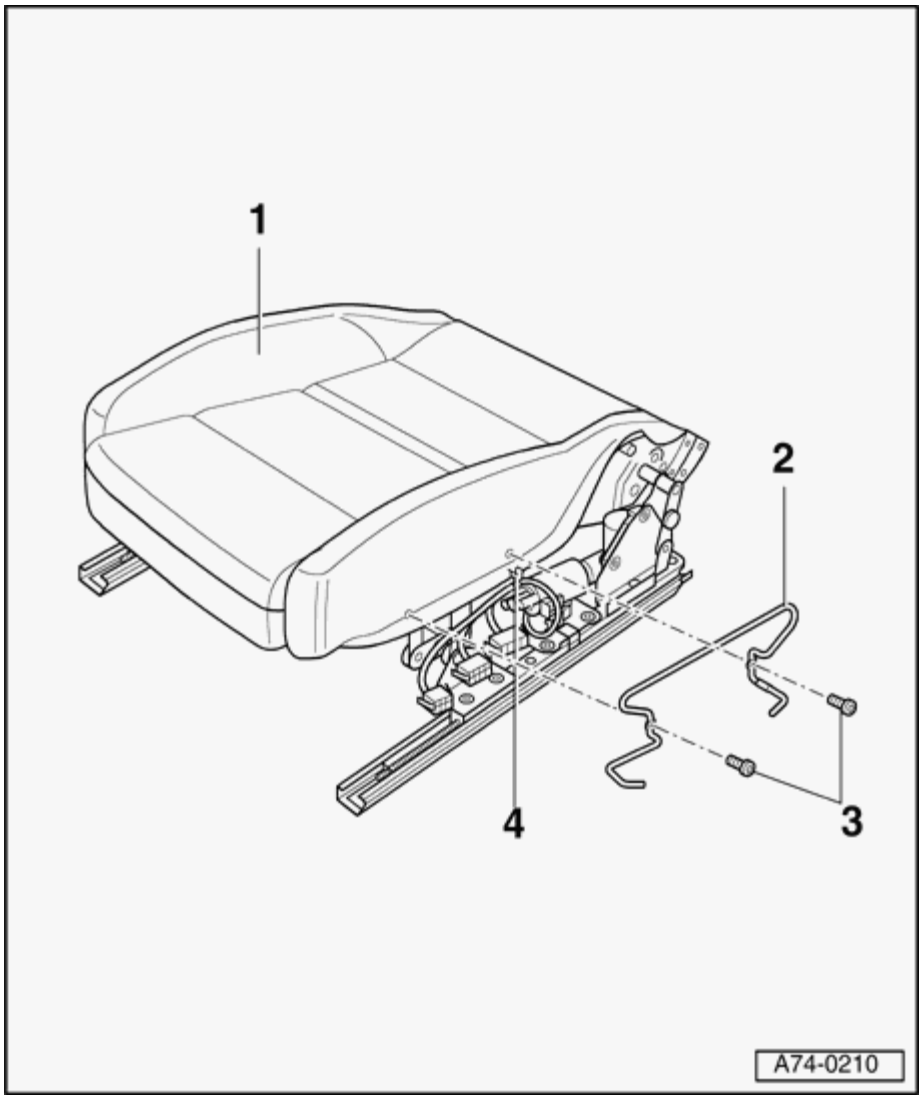


Fig. 315: Detaching Cover And Padding From Seat Pan
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover and padding

- **Removing**

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

- Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
- Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
- Remove side trim, outboard side --> **Side trim on sill panel side, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim, inboard side --> **Side trim, inboard side, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).
- Remove clip - **2** -.
- Release clip - **4** -.

2 - Bracket

3 - Bolts (2x)

4 - Clip

cardiagn.com

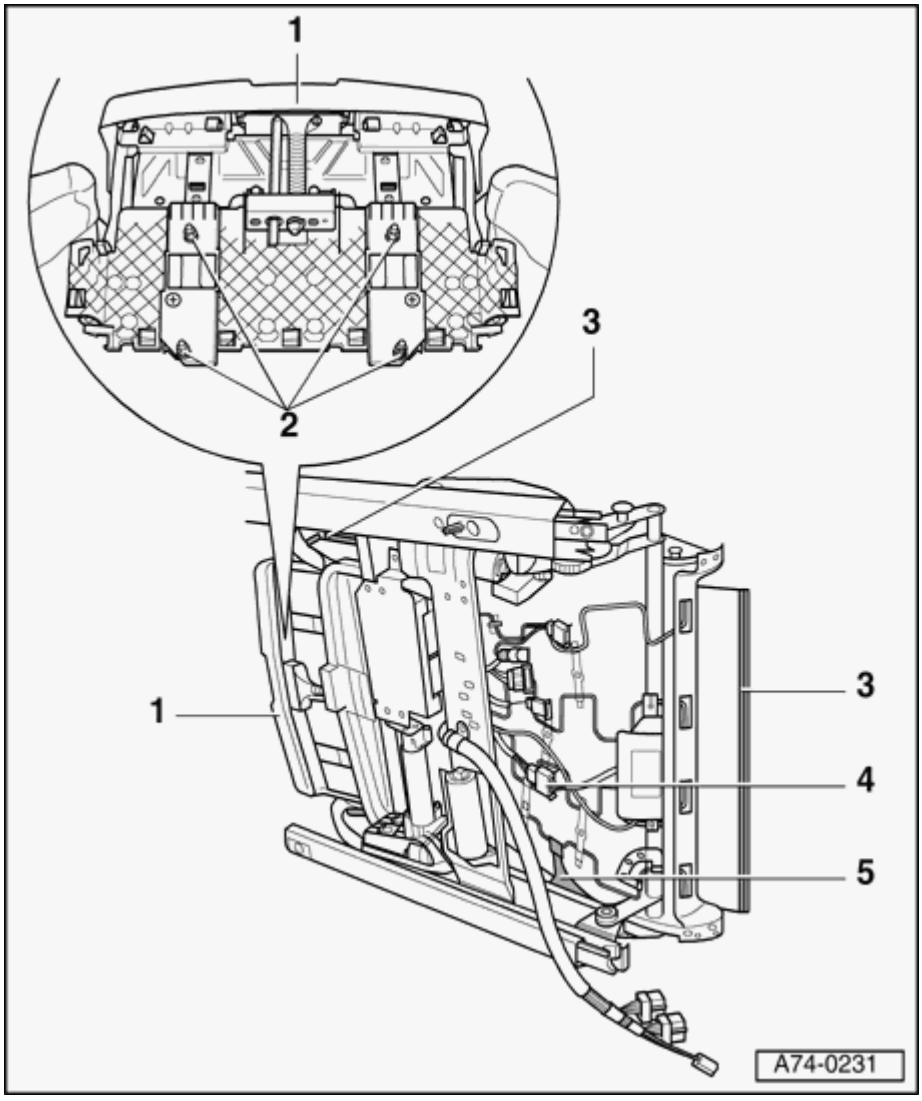


Fig. 316: Identifying Seat Cushion Extension, Nuts, Peripheral Fastening Strips, Seat Heating Connector & Tab
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat cushion extension

- Pry out surrounding securing strips - **3** -.
- Disengage tab - **5** - on underside of seat.
- Disconnect seat heating connector - **4** -.
- Remove seat cushion extension - **1** - completely.

- Remove nuts - **2** - (4x).
- Remove cover and padding.

- On vehicles with ISOFIX holder and new cover fabric - **1** - , cut slots in fabric cover at location of

cardiagn.com

ISOFIX holder.

2 - Nuts (4x)

3 - Surrounding securing strips

4 - Seat heating connector

5 - Tab

Detaching seat cushion extension from cover and padding

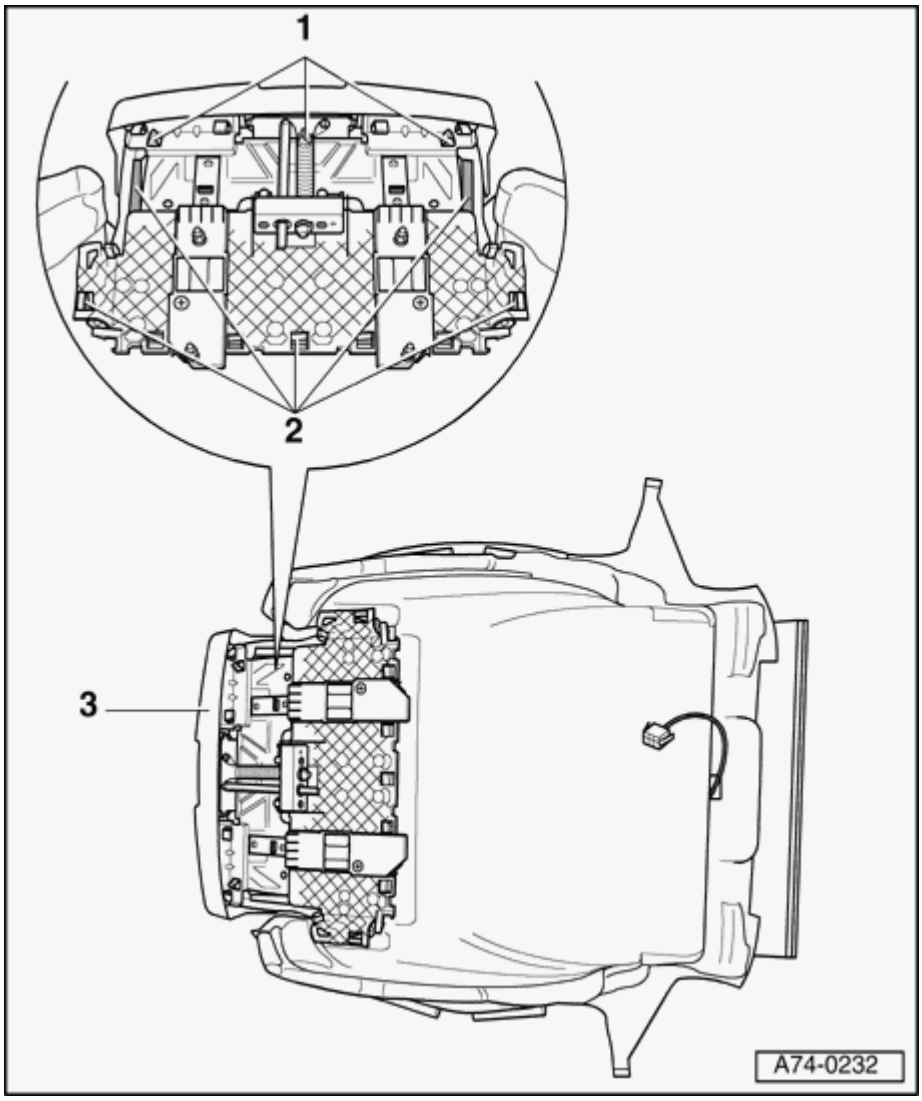


Fig. 317: Detaching Seat Cushion Extension From Cover And Padding
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Clips (3x)

cardiagn.com

2 - Securing strips (5x)

3 - Seat cushion extension

- Pry off securing strips - **2** - (5x).
- Pry off clips - **1** - (3x).
- Remove seat cushion extension - **3** -.

Detaching cover from padding

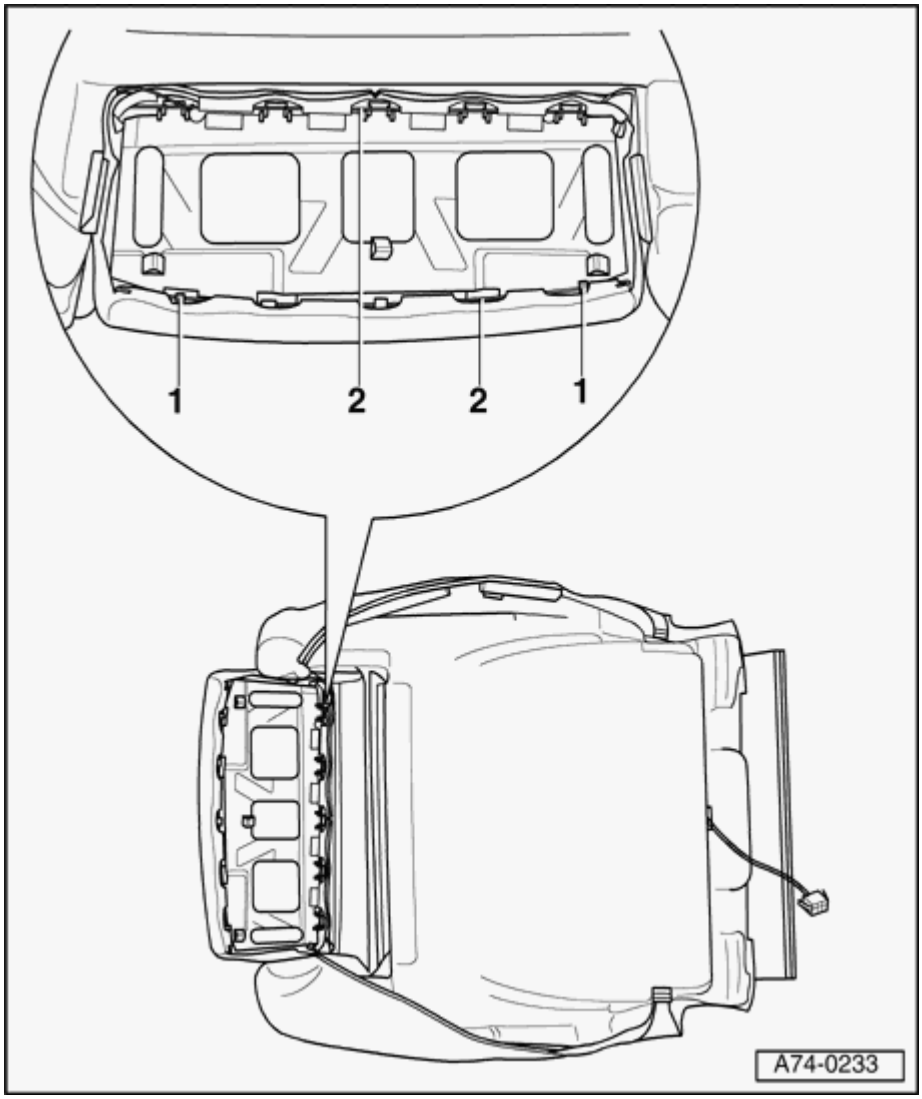


Fig. 318: Detaching Cover From Padding
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable ties (2x)

2 - Rods (2x)

cardiagn.com

- Release cable ties - **1** - (2x).
- Pry out rods - **2** - (2x).

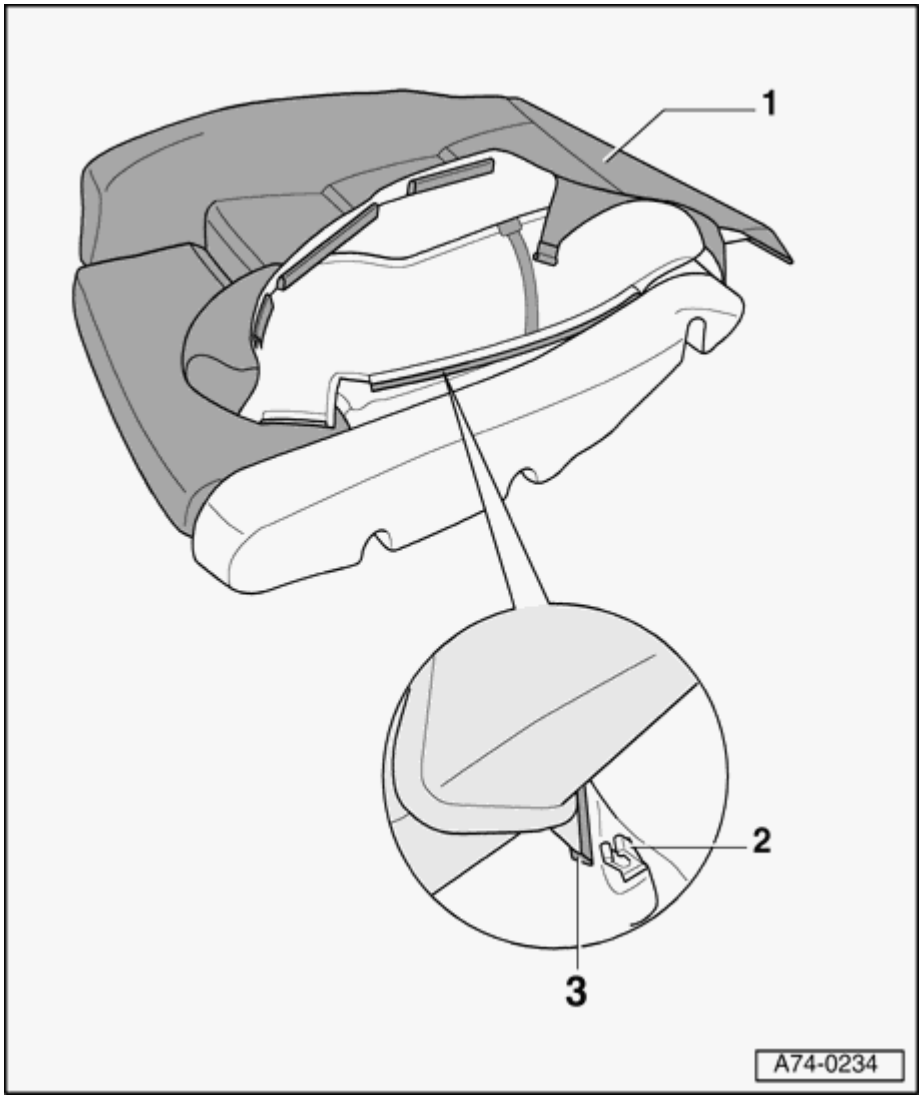


Fig. 319: Identifying Cover, Plastic Clips & Fastening Strips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat cover

- Use a screwdriver to pry the securing strips - **3** - out of the plastic clips - **2** -.
- Remove cover - **1** -.

  - On vehicles with ISOFIX holder and new cover fabric - **1** - , cut slots in fabric cover at location of ISOFIX holder.

2 - Plastic clips

cardiagn.com

3 - Securing strips

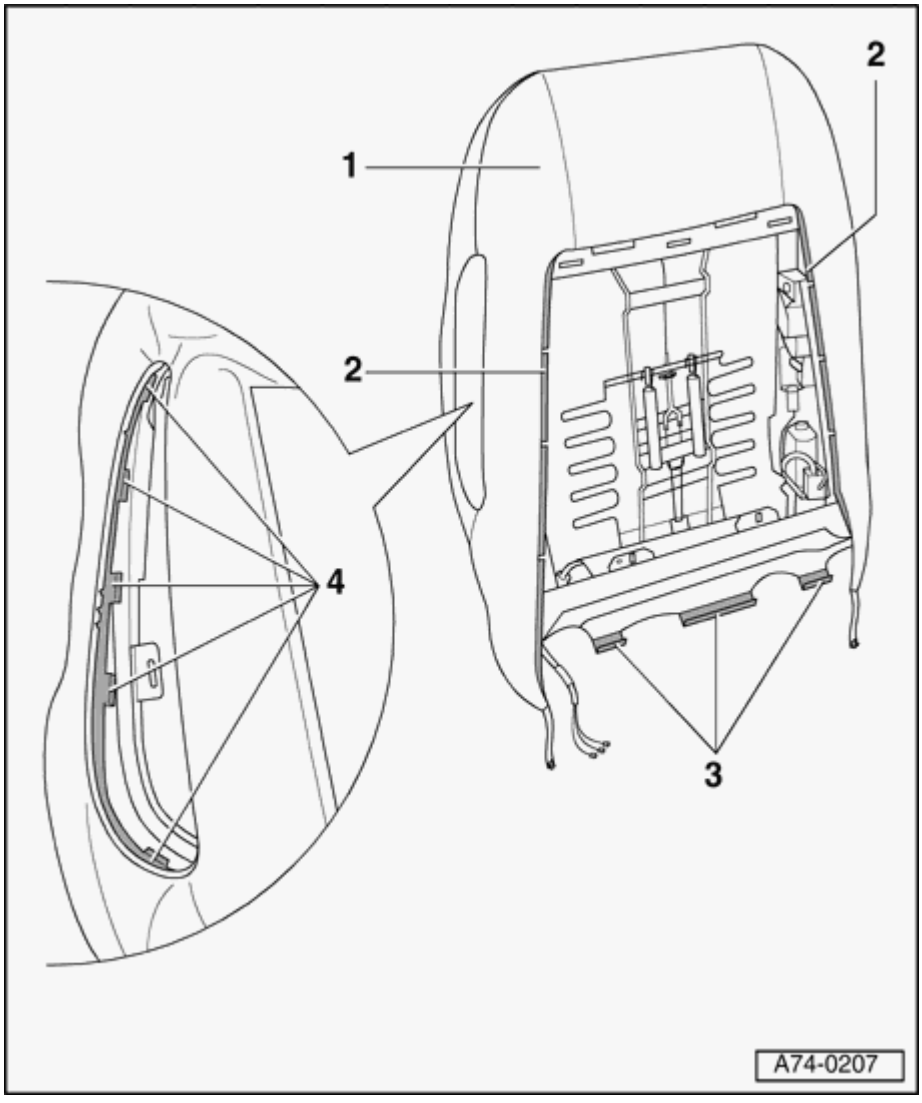
- **Installing**

  - Replace damaged plastic clips.
  - First press in the plastic clips of the cross members.
  - Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Backrest cover and padding (sports seat, standard seat), assembly overview

CAUTION: Observe relevant safety precautions for vehicles with side airbags installed --> Additional safety precautions for side airbag.

Detaching cover and padding from backrest frame



cardiagn.com

Fig. 320: Detaching Cover And Padding From Backrest Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

- **Removing**

  - Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
  - Attach fixture for seat repair VAS 6136 to engine and transmission holder VAS 6095.
  - Attach front seat to fixture for seat repair VAS 6136.
  - Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.

  - Remove head restraints --> **Head restraint, removing and installing**.
  - Remove head restraint guides --> **Head restraint guides, removing and installing**.
  - Remove easy-entry facility --> **Easy-entry facility handle, removing and installing**.
  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover panel, removing and installing**.

  - Pry off lower securing strips - **3** - (3x).
  - Disengage securing strips - **2** - on side (2x).
  - Remove backrest frame --> **Backrest frame, assembly overview**.
  - Remove side airbag --> **Side airbag (electric seat), assembly overview**.

  - Pry off plastic tabs - **4** - (5x).
  - Remove padding with cover.

- **Installing**

  - Installation is in reverse order of removal.

2 - Side securing strips (2x)

3 - Lower securing strips (3x)

4 - Plastic tabs (5x)

Detaching cover from padding

cardiagn.com

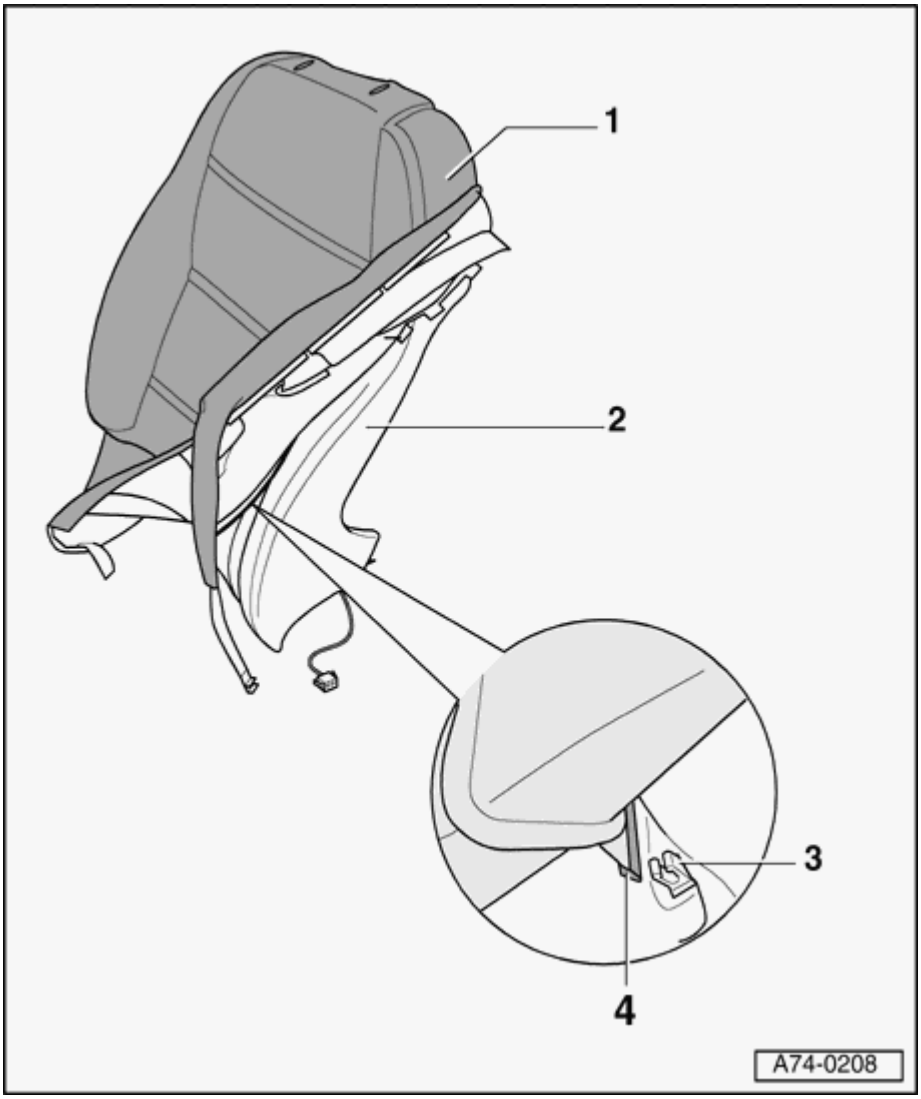


Fig. 321: Detaching Cover From Padding
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat cover

NOTE:

- **When installing a new cover - 1 - cut a slot in cover - 1 - at location of backrest release.**

- **Removing**
  - Use a screwdriver to pry the securing strips - **4** - out of the plastic clips - **3** -.
- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.
- Replace damaged plastic clips.

cardiagn.com

2 - Padding

3 - Plastic clips

4 - Securing strips

Head restraint guides, removing and installing

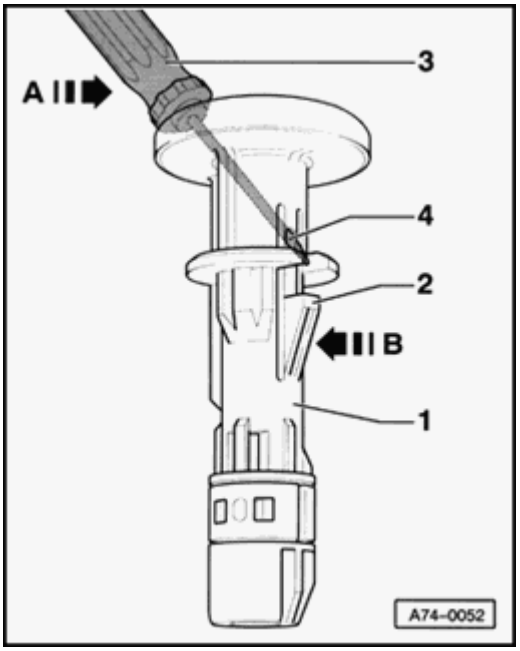


Fig. 322: Headrest Guides, Removing/Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

NOTE:

- **For improved clarity, head restraint guide - 1 - is shown removed.**

  - Insert padding needle or screwdriver - **3** - with maximum width of 2 mm into hole - **4** - (hole - **4** - is opposite retaining clip for head restraint guide).
  - Pry screwdriver - **3** - in direction of arrow - **A** - , press retainer tab - **2** - in direction of arrow - **B** - , and pull out head restraint guide - **1** -.

- **Installing**

  - Installation is in reverse of removal.

Seat heating element (standard seat), replacing

cardiagn.com

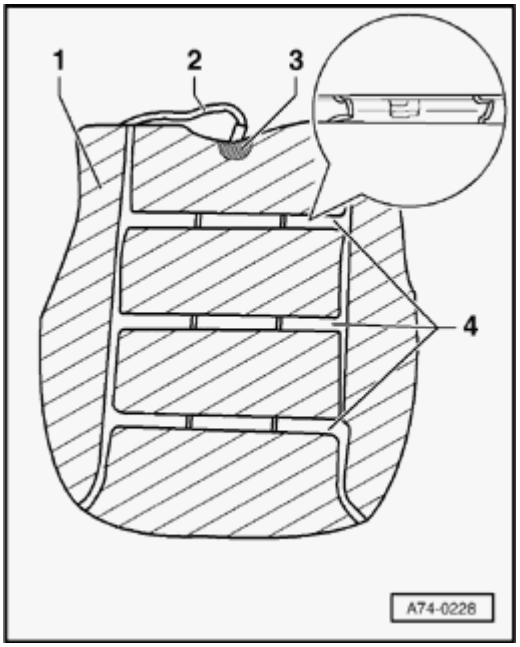


Fig. 323: Identifying Electrical Wire, Heating Element, Gap & Gap Positions
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Seat pan cover and padding (standard seat), removing and installing**.
- Cut electrical wire - **2** - off old heating element - **1** -.

- Align the heating elements - **1** - on the seat cushion, remove the protective film and bond the heating elements firmly onto the padded surfaces.
- Push the electric wire - **2** - into the gap - **3** -.
- The connecting wires must be laid without crossing in the bottom of the gaps at positions - **4** -.

Seat heating element (sports seat), replacing

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.

cardiagn.com

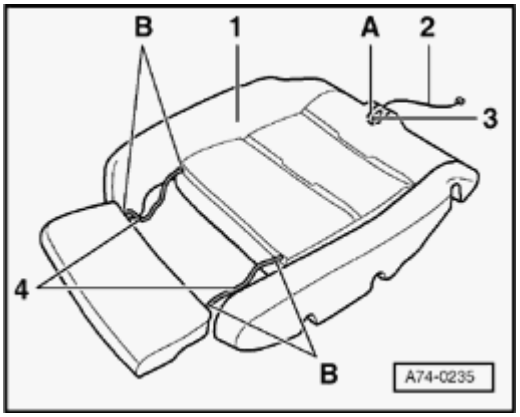


Fig. 324: Seat Heating Element (Sports Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Seat pan cover and padding (sports seat), assembly overview**.
- Cut area - **A** - out of old heating element - **1** -.
- Pull out cable - **2** -.
- Cut off cables - **4** - (2x) at positions - **B** - (4x).

- Align heating elements - **1** - on the seat cushion, remove the protective film and bond the heating elements firmly onto the padded surfaces.
- Insert cable - **2** - into the intended gap - **3** -.
- The connecting cables must be laid without crossing in the bottom of the gaps at positions - **4** -.

Backrest heating element, replacing

Removing and installing backrest heating element (bonded)

- Remove seat --> **Seat, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest --> **Front seat backrest, assembly overview**.
- Remove backrest cover and padding from seat pan --> **Backrest cover and padding (sports seat, standard seat), removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

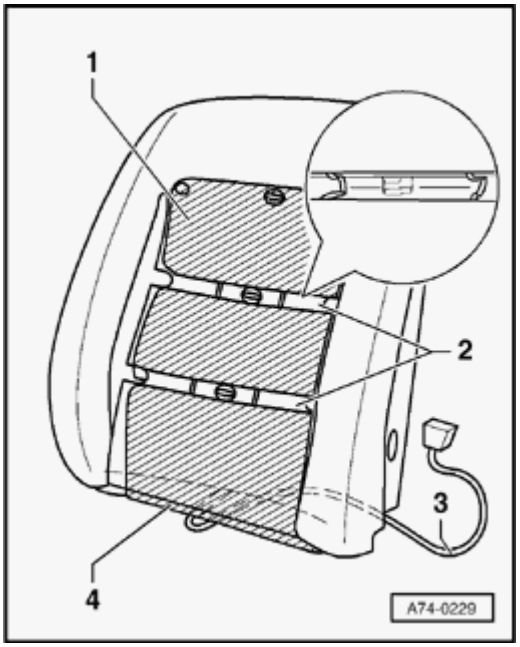


Fig. 325: Identifying Heating Element, Electrical Wire & Gap
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut cable - **3** - off old heating element - **1** -.
- Align heating elements - **1** - on the backrest cushion, remove the protective film and bond the heating elements firmly onto the padded surfaces.
- Push the electric cable - **3** - into gap - **4** -.
- The connecting cables must be laid without crossing in the bottom of the gaps at positions - **2** -.

Cover and padding for head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism, removing and installing

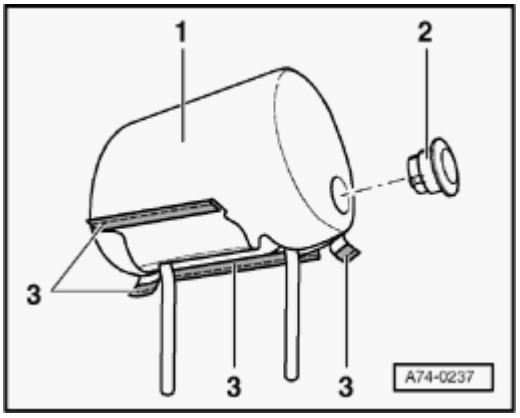


Fig. 326: Cover And Upholstery For Headrests With Slide In Locking Mechanism Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism --> **Head restraint, removing and installing**.
- Using a screwdriver, pry out securing strips - **3** - (4x).

cardiagn.com

- Detach knob - **2** -.
- Remove cover and padding - **1** -.

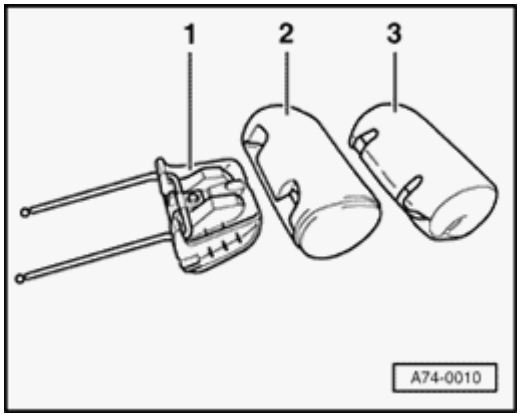


Fig. 327: Identifying Padding, Cover & Head Restraint Mount
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove padding - **2** - from cover - **3** -.

- **Installing:**

- Insert padding - **2** - correctly into cover - **3** -.
- Insert head restraint mount - **1** - into padding with cover.
- Press fastening strips firmly into guide channel (pull to check).

REAR SEAT COVERS AND PADDING

Seat cover and padding for rear seat bench, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

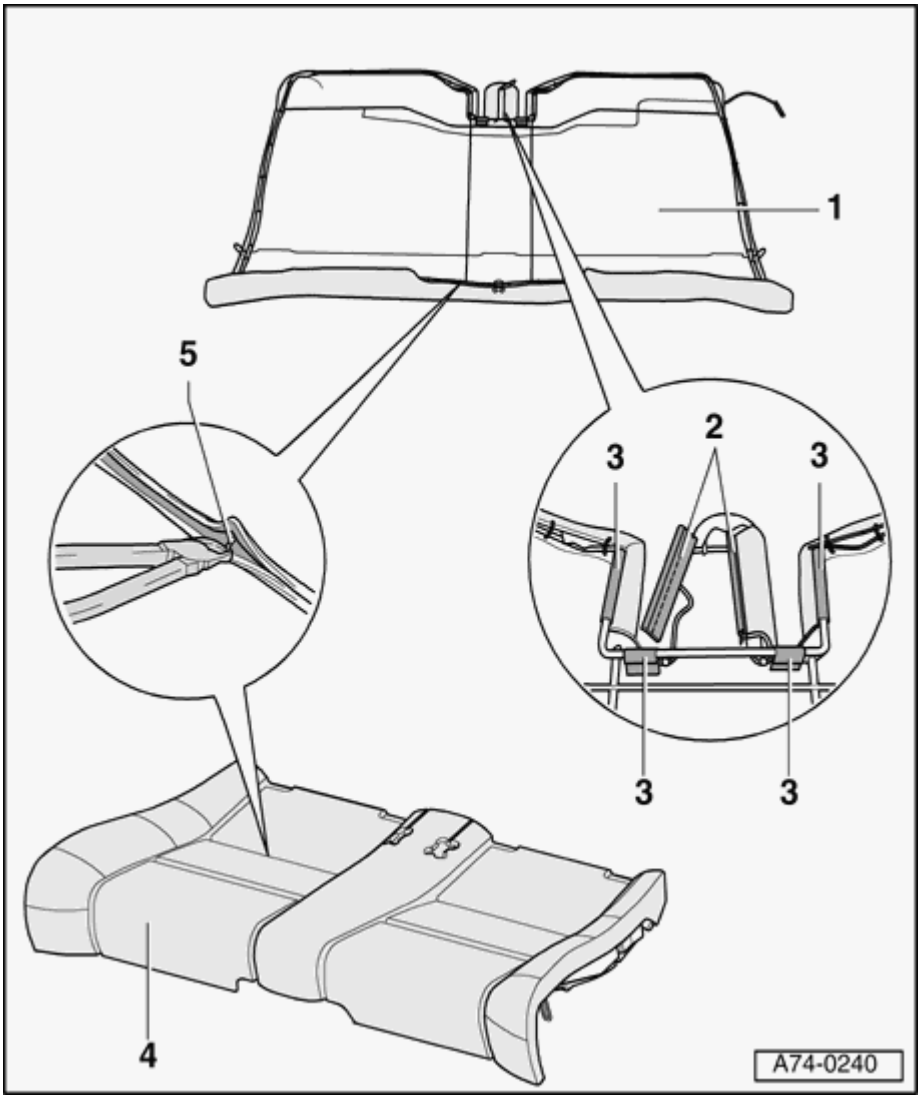


Fig. 328: Seat Cover And Padding For Rear Seat Bench, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Padding

2 - Securing strips (2x)

3 - Securing strips (4x)

4 - Seat cover

- **Removing**

  - Remove rear bench seat --> **Rear seat bench, assembly overview**.
  - Push securing strips - **2** - (2x) apart in opposite directions.
  - Pry out securing strips - **3** - (4x).

cardiagn.com

- Cut through staples - **5** -.

- Fold cover - **4** - up.
- Remove cover -4- upward and cut through staples - **5** -.
- Remove padding - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Replace staples - **5** -.
- Install cover and padding in reverse order to removal.

5 - Staples

Heating element for rear seat bench, replacing

- Remove cover and padding from rear seat bench --> **Seat cover and padding for rear seat bench, assembly overview**.

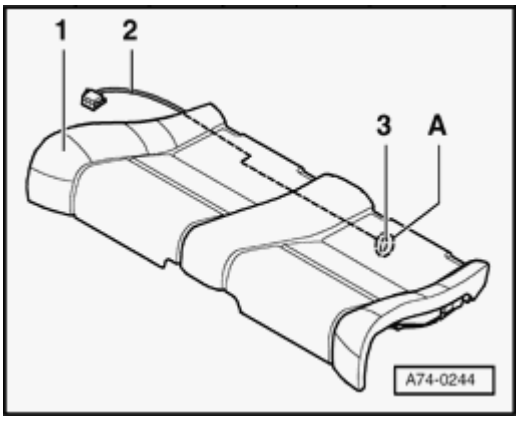


Fig. 329: Heating Element For Rear Seat Bench, Replacing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut area - **A** - out of old heating element - **1** -.
- Pull out cable - **2** -.
- Align new heating element on seat cushion, remove the protective film and bond heating element firmly onto padded surface.
- Insert cable - **2** - into the intended gap - **3** -.

Cover and padding for rear seat backrest, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

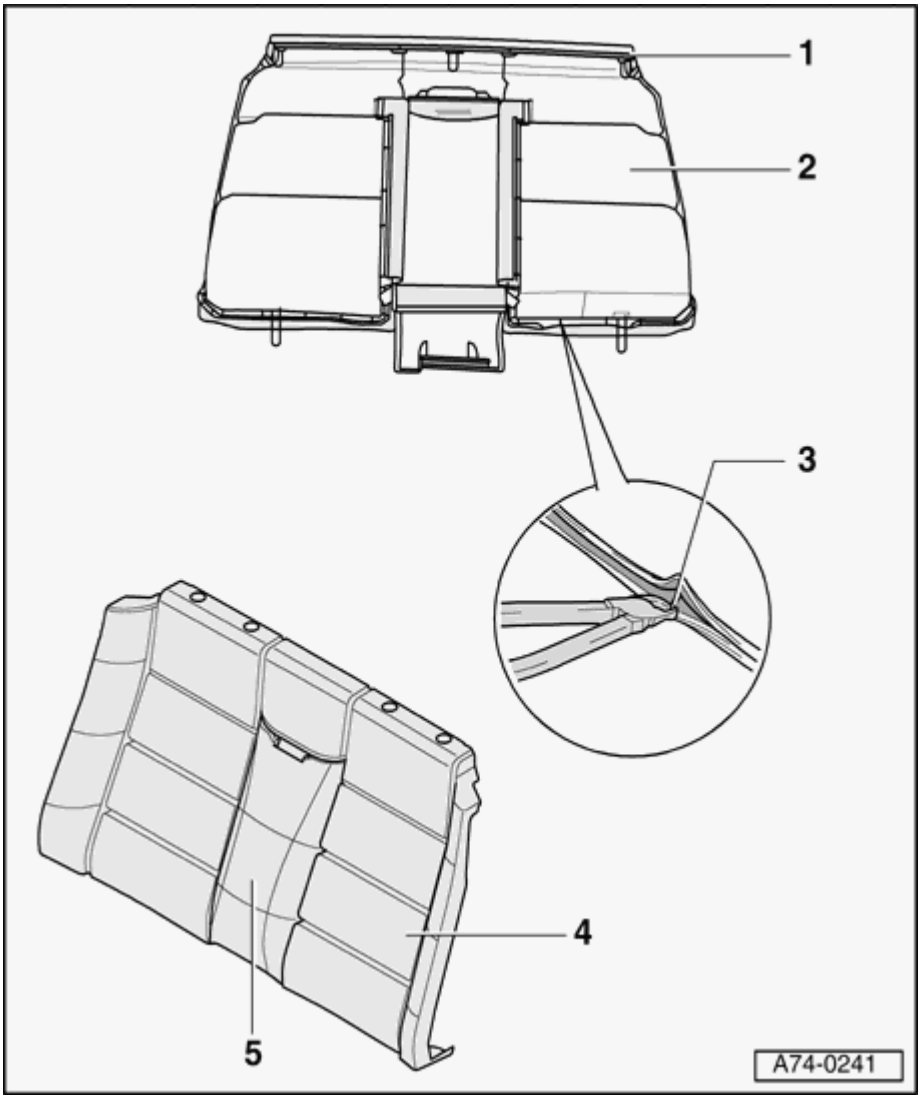


Fig. 330: Cover And Padding For Rear Seat Backrest, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Fastening strip

2 - Padding

3 - Staples

4 - Seat cover

- **Removing**

  - Remove rear seat backrest --> **Rear seat backrest, assembly overview**.
  - Remove head restraint guides --> **Head restraint guides, removing and installing**.
  - Disengage center armrest - **5** -.

cardiagn.com

- Pry off securing strip - **1** -.
- Cut through staples - **3** -.
- Fold cover - **4** - up.
- Remove cover - **4** - upward and cut through staples - **3** -.
- Remove padding - **2** -.

- **Installing**

- Replace staples - **3** -.
- Install cover and padding in reverse order to removal.

5 - Center armrest

Heating element for rear seat backrest, replacing

- Remove cover and padding for rear seat backrest --> **Cover and padding for rear seat backrest, assembly overview**.

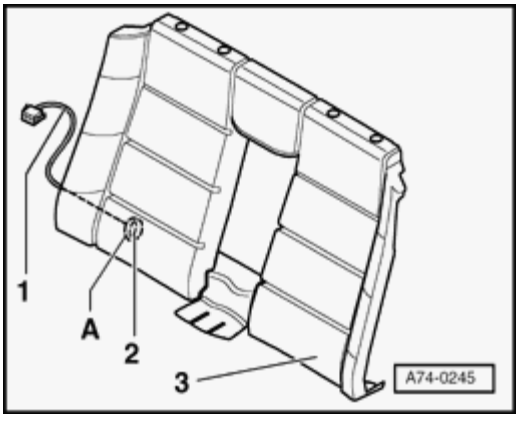


Fig. 331: Heating Element For Rear Seat Backrest, Replacing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut area - **A** - out of old heating element - **3** -.
- Pull out cable - **1** -.
- Align new heating element on backrest cushion, remove the protective film and bond heating element firmly onto padded surface.
- Insert cable - **1** - into the intended gap - **2** -.

Head restraint guides, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **Head restraint guide is shown removed for greater clarity.**

- Remove head restraints --> **Head restraints, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

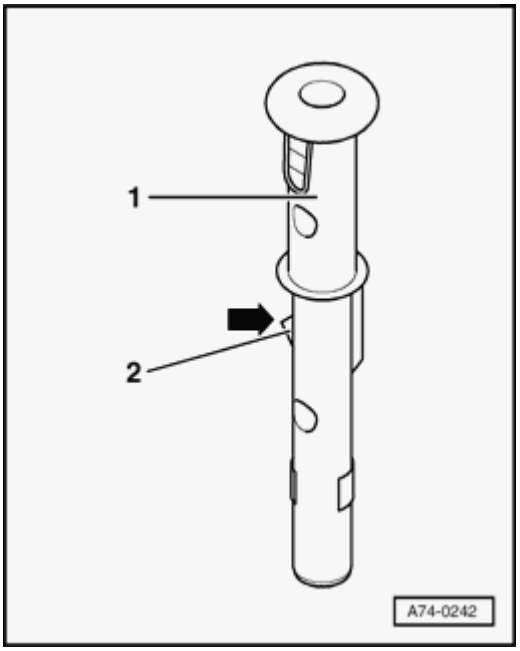


Fig. 332: Using Screwdriver To Press Out Retainer Tab From Outside & Pulling Out Head Restraint Guide
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, press out retainer tab - **2** - from outside.
- Pull out head restraint guide - **1** -.

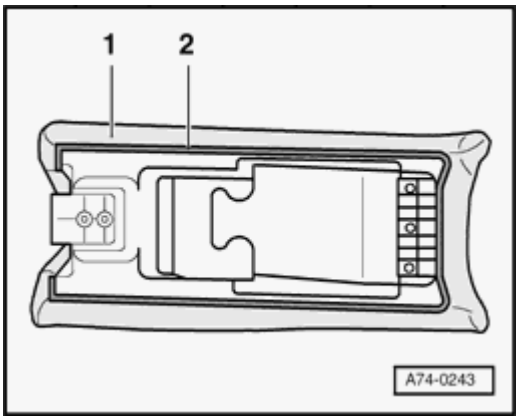
- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Cover and padding for center armrest, removing and installing

- **Removing**

- Detach center armrest from rear seat backrest.



cardiagn.com

Fig. 333: Identifying Piping, Cover And Padding
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, detach piping - **2** - all around.
- Remove cover and padding - **1** -.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Removing and installing trim for through-load bag

NOTE:

- **Panel can only be removed with convertible top compartment folded up. For this, convertible top must be closed.**

- **Removing**

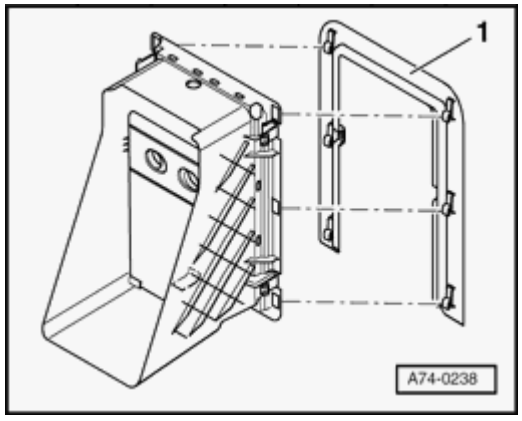


Fig. 334: Removing Trim For Through-Load Bag
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- In luggage compartment, lift panel - **1** - upward and pull out panel - **1** - forward.

- **Installing**

- Installation is in reverse order of removal.

Ski bag, assembly overview

cardiagn.com

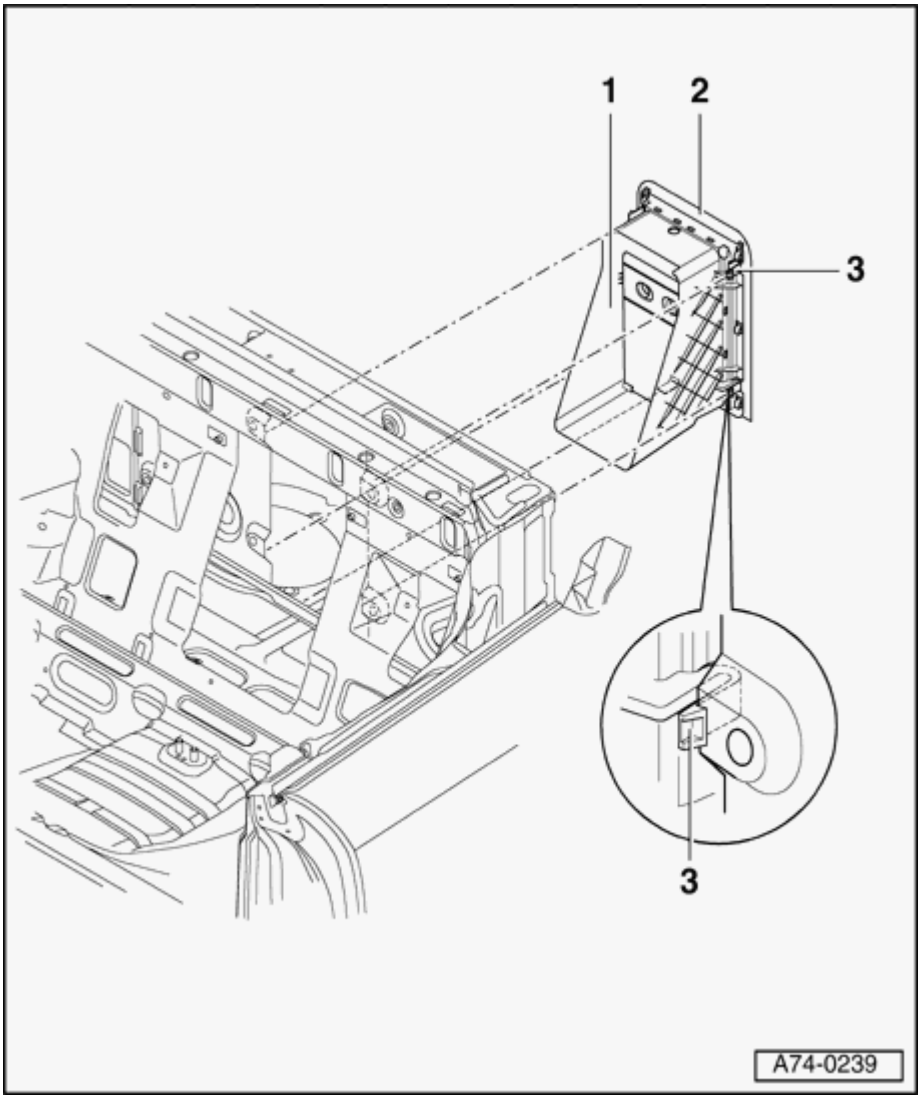


Fig. 335: Ski Bag, Assembly Overview
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Ski bag

- **Removing**

  - Remove ski bag panel - **2** - --> **Removing and installing trim for through-load bag**.
  - Using a screwdriver, pry out clips - **3** - (4x).
  - Pull out ski bag - **1** -.

2 - Panel

3 - Clips (4x)

cardiagn.com

.

74 - SEATS - UPHOLSTERY, COVERS

FRONT SEAT COVERS AND UPHOLSTERY

Seating area cover and upholstery, removing and installing (standard seat)

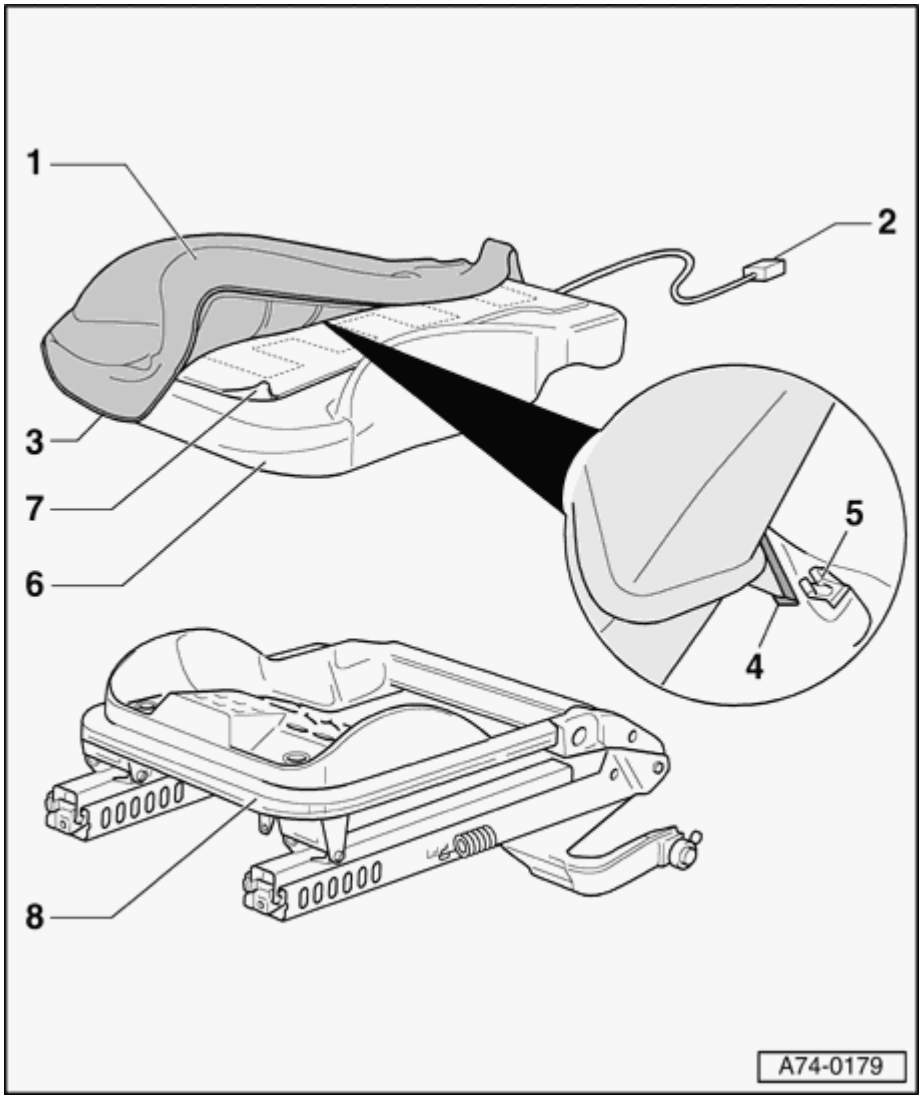


Fig. 833: Seating Area Cover And Upholstery (Standard Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover

- Removal:
  - Remove seat: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing** , vehicles

cardiagn.com

from 11.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.

- Remove backrest: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front backrest (standard seat), removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front backrest (standard seat), removing and installing**.
- Unclip connector for heated seat - **2** - from bracket.
- Pry out plastic strips - **3** - all around using a screwdriver.
- Install cover - **1** -.
- Pry out grip channels - **4** - from plastic clips - **5** - using a screwdriver.
- Remove cover - **1** - upward.
- Remove upholstery - **6** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Damaged plastic clamps - **5** - must be replaced.
- For vehicles with LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket and new cover - **1** - , cover must be cut in at LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket.

2 - Seat heating connector

3 - Plastic strips all around

4 - Fastening strips

5 - Plastic clips

- Replace damaged plastic clips

6 - Upholstery

7 - Seat heating

8 - Seat pan

Cover for LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket, cutting

cardiagn.com

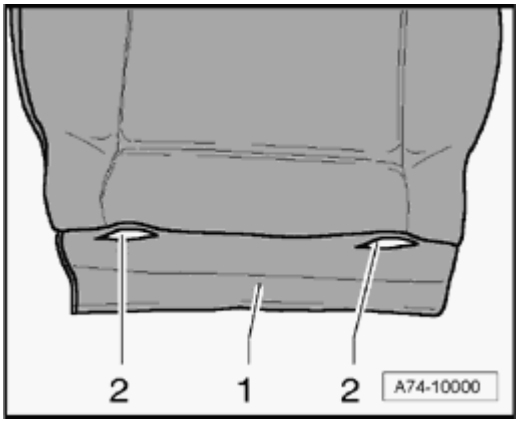


Fig. 834: Cover For Latch "Lower Anchor And Tethers For Children" Bracket, Cutting
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Cut into new cover on left and right sides at a length of approx. 60 mm.

Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)

cardiagn.com

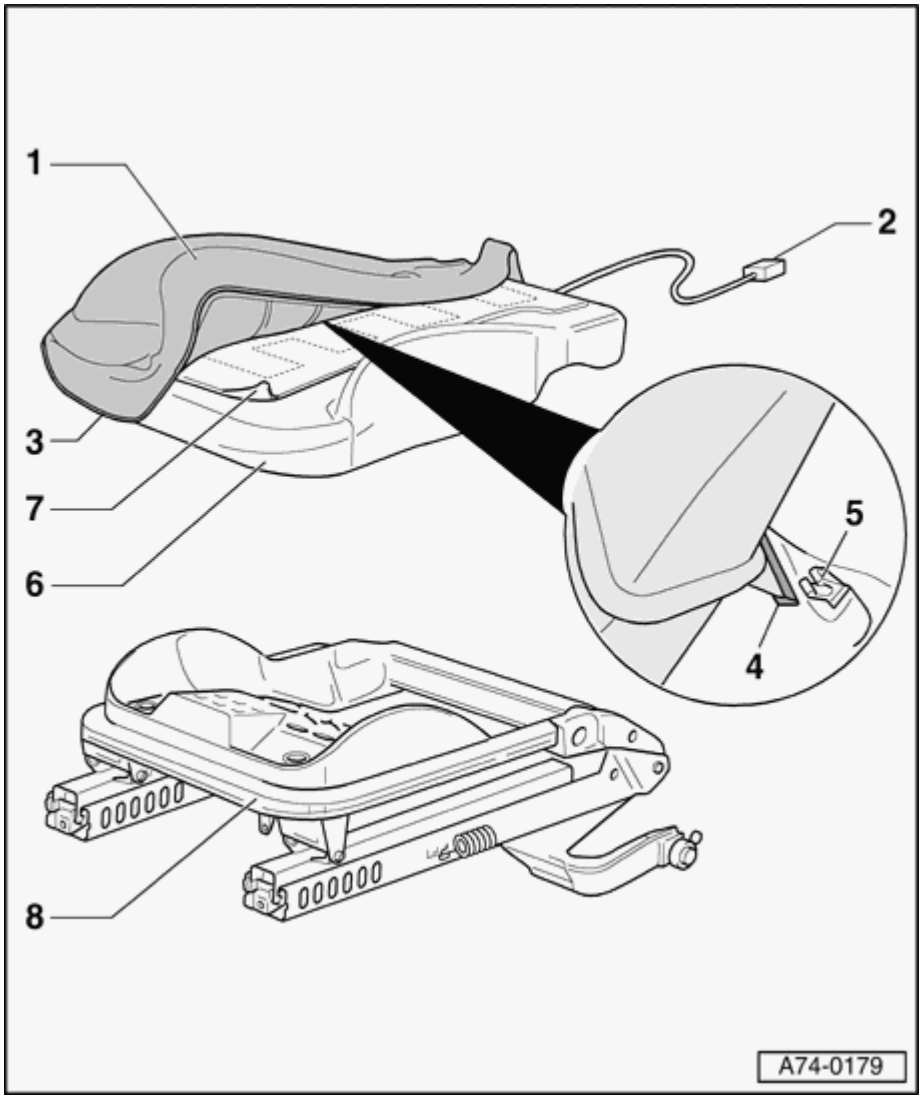


Fig. 835: Cover And Cushion For Seat Pan (Sport Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover

- Removal:

  - Remove seat: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Remove backrest: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front backrest (standard seat), removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front backrest (standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Unclip connector for heated seat - **2** - from bracket.
  - Pry out plastic strips - **3** - all around using a screwdriver.

  - For vehicles with LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket and new cover - **1** - , cover must be cut in at LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket.

cardiagn.com

2 - Seat heating connector

3 - Circular plastic strips

4 - Fastening strips

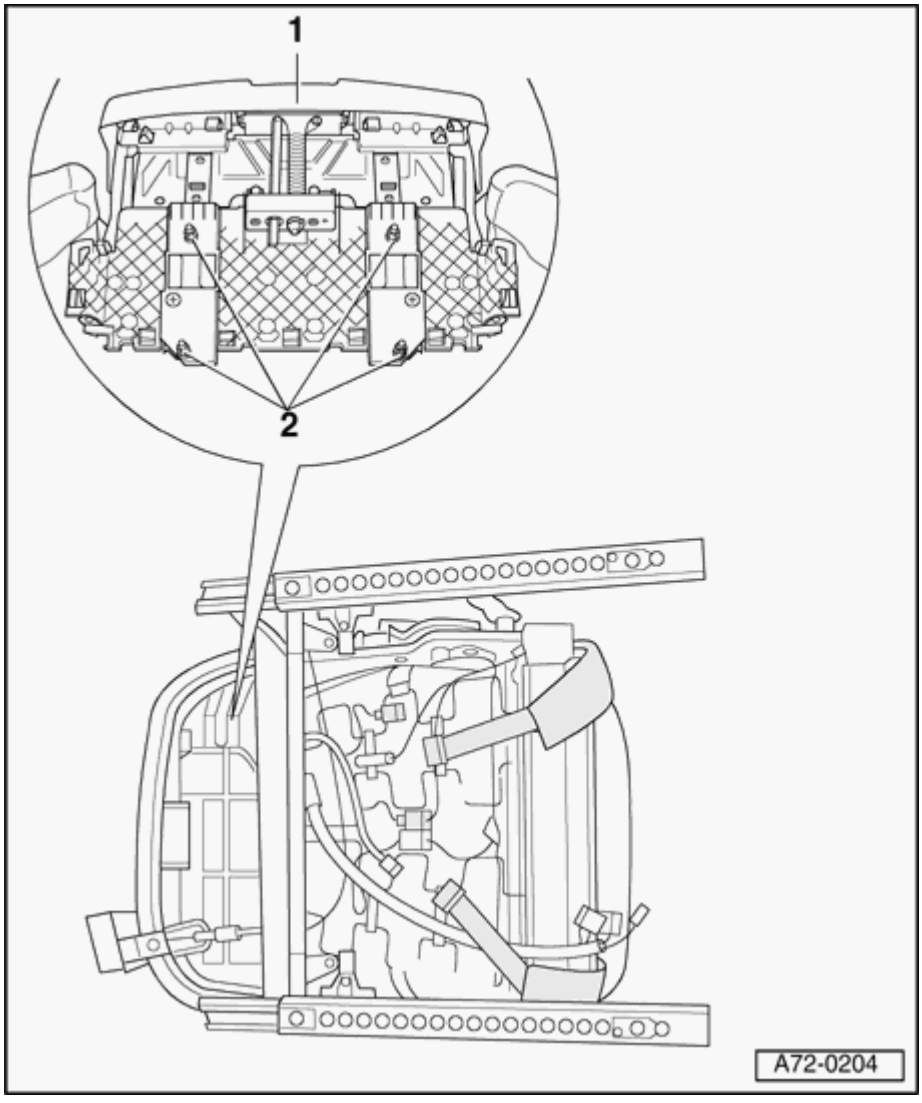
5 - Plastic clips

- Replace damaged plastic clips

6 - Upholstery

7 - Seat heating

8 - Seat pan



cardiagn.com

Fig. 836: Identifying Seat Cushion Extension & Nuts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat cushion extension

- Removal:
  - Remove nuts - **2** - (4x).
  - Remove cover and upholstery.
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

  - Damaged plastic clamps must be replaced.

2 - Nuts (4x)

Separating seat cushion extension from cover and cushion

cardiagn.com

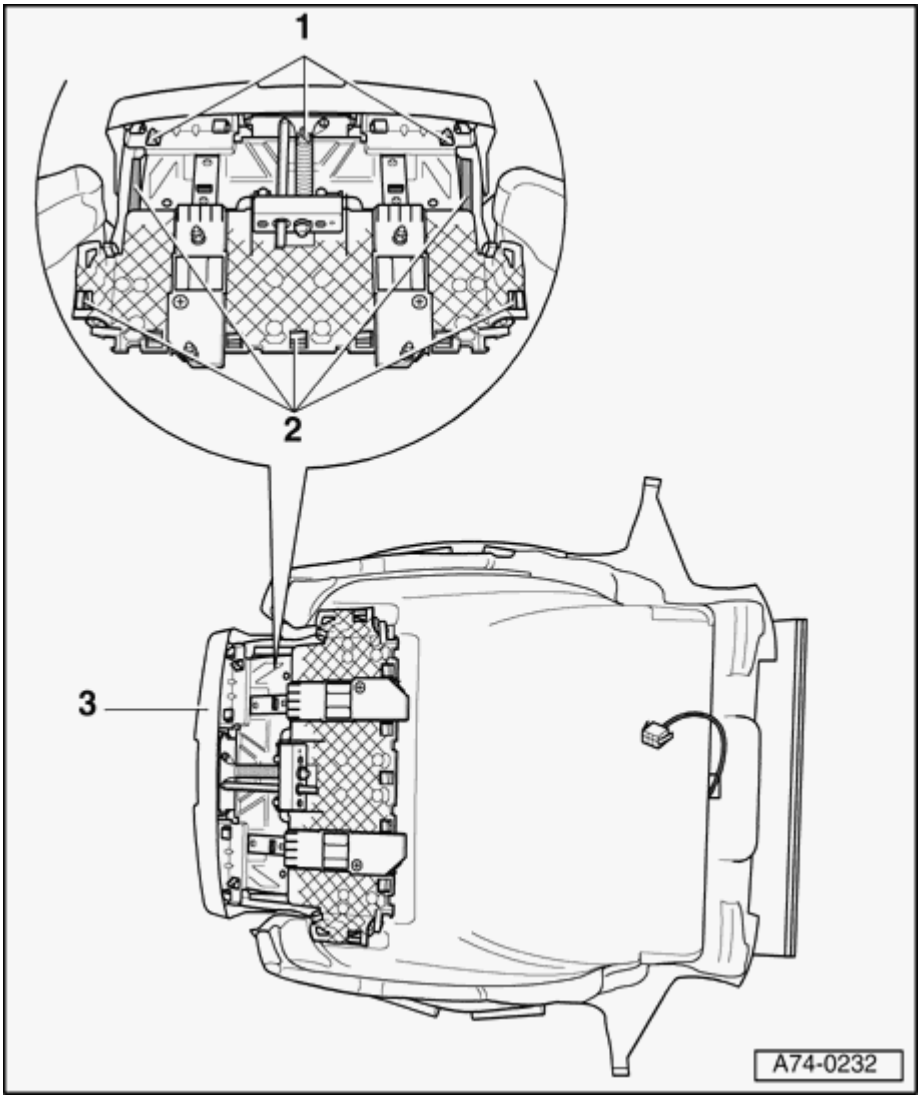


Fig. 837: Separating Seat Cushion Extension From Cover And Cushion
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Clips (3x)

2 - Fastening strips (5x)

3 - Seat cushion extension

- Pry out grip channels - **2** - (5x).
- Pry out clips - **1** - (3x).
- Remove seat cushion extension - **3** -.

Separating cover from upholstery

cardiagn.com

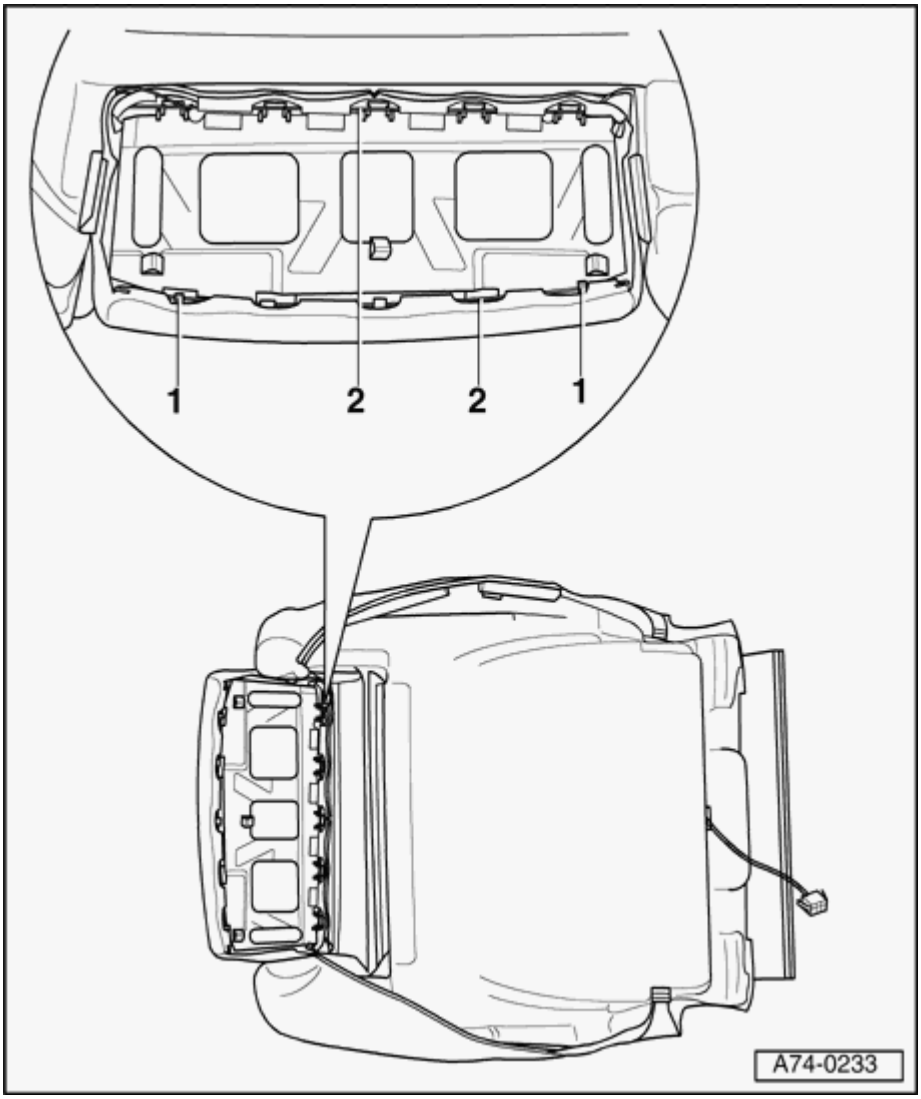


Fig. 838: Separating Cover From Upholstery
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable ties (2x)

2 - Rods (2x)

- Remove upholstery.

cardiagn.com

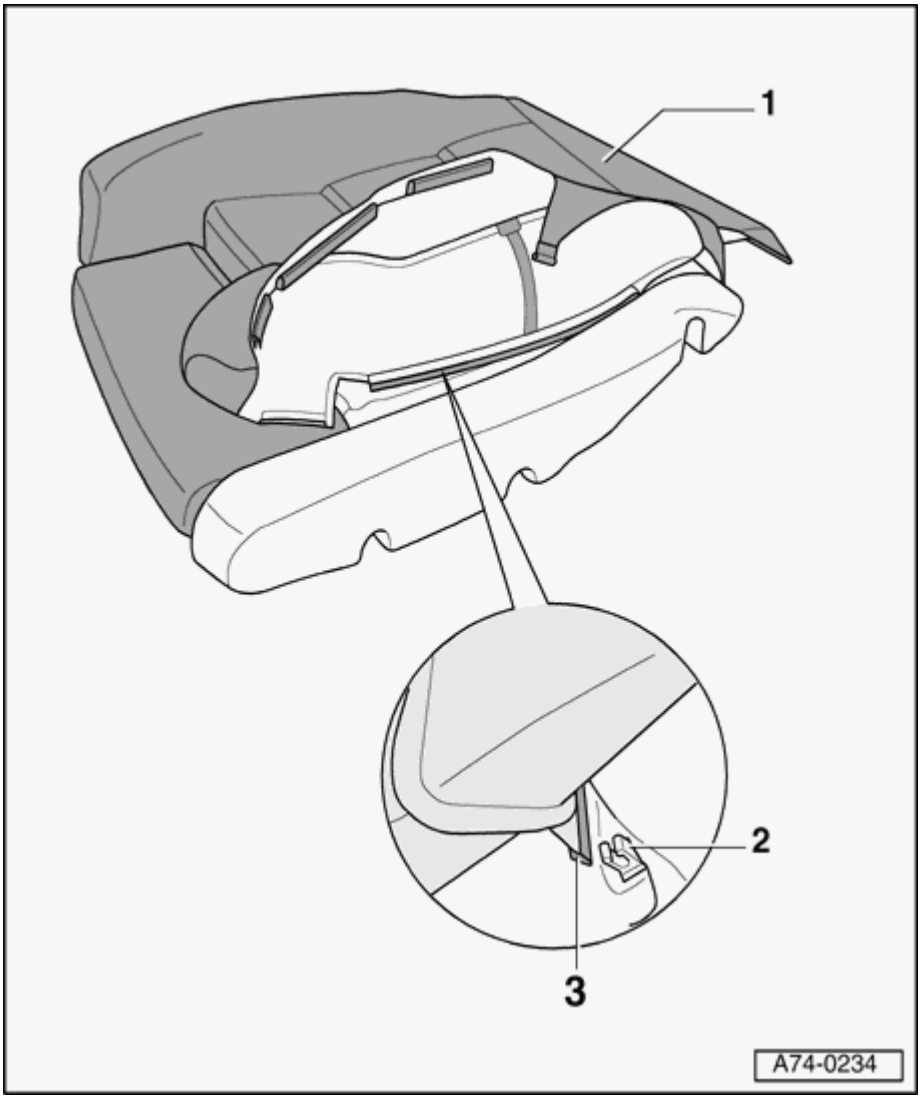


Fig. 839: Identifying Cover, Plastic Clips & Fastening Strips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover

- Remove upholstery.
- For vehicles with LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket and new cover - **1** - , cover must be cut in at LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket.

2 - Plastic clips

- Replace if damaged

3 - Fastening strips

Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

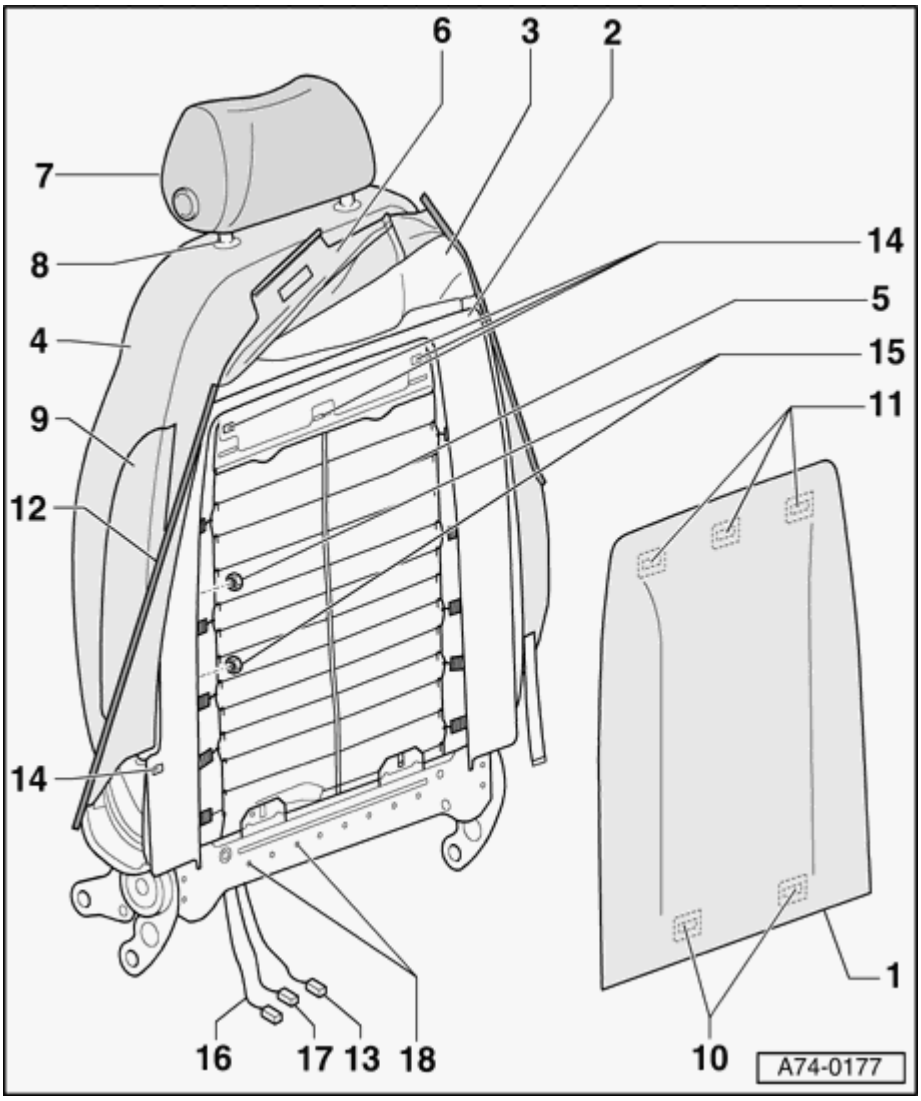


Fig. 840: Backrest Cover And Padding Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Rear backrest cover

- Removal:

  - Remove seat: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Remove backrest: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front backrest (standard seat), removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front backrest (standard seat), removing and installing**.
  - Remove headrest - **7** - by pressing button.

cardiagn.com

- Remove headrest guides - **8** -. Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Headrest guides, vehicles through 10.04, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Headrest guides, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**

- Pry out wire clips - **11** - (Qty. 3) at top of rear backrest panel - **1** -.
- Remove rear backrest panel - **1** -.
- Pry off grip channel - **12** - (4x) all around.
- Turn back backrest cover - **6** - and remove it.

2 - Holding frame

- Unclip clips - **14** - (4x).
- Pry off holding frame - **2** -.
- Remove nuts - **15** - (2x) of side airbag - **9** -.
- Detach side airbag - **9** - and feed cable through the opening.

- Remove clips of cable for seat heater - **16** - and side airbag - **17** - and remove side airbag - **9** -.
- Cut cable tie clips - **18** - (2x).
- Pry out grip channels and plastic clips.
- Remove backrest cover - **6** -.

- Remove upholstery - **3** -.
- Remove heated backrest - **5** - --> **Backrest heating element, removing and installing**.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- When installing and mounting backrest cables for side airbag and seat heater, ensure that no tension is applied to the cables.

3 - Upholstery

4 - Backrest

5 - Backrest heating

6 - Backrest cover

7 - Headrest

8 - Head rest guide

9 - Side airbag

cardiagn.com

10 - Plastic clips (Qty. 2)

11 - Wire clips (Qty. 3)

12 - Circular plastic strips (Qty. 4)

13 - Airbag connector

14 - Clips (backrest frame) (Qty. 4)

15 - Nuts (side airbag) (Qty. 2)

- Torque 5 Nm.
- Replace after each disassembly

16 - Seat heating cable

17 - Side airbag cable

18 - Cable tie clips (Qty. 2)

Grip channels and plastic clips, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

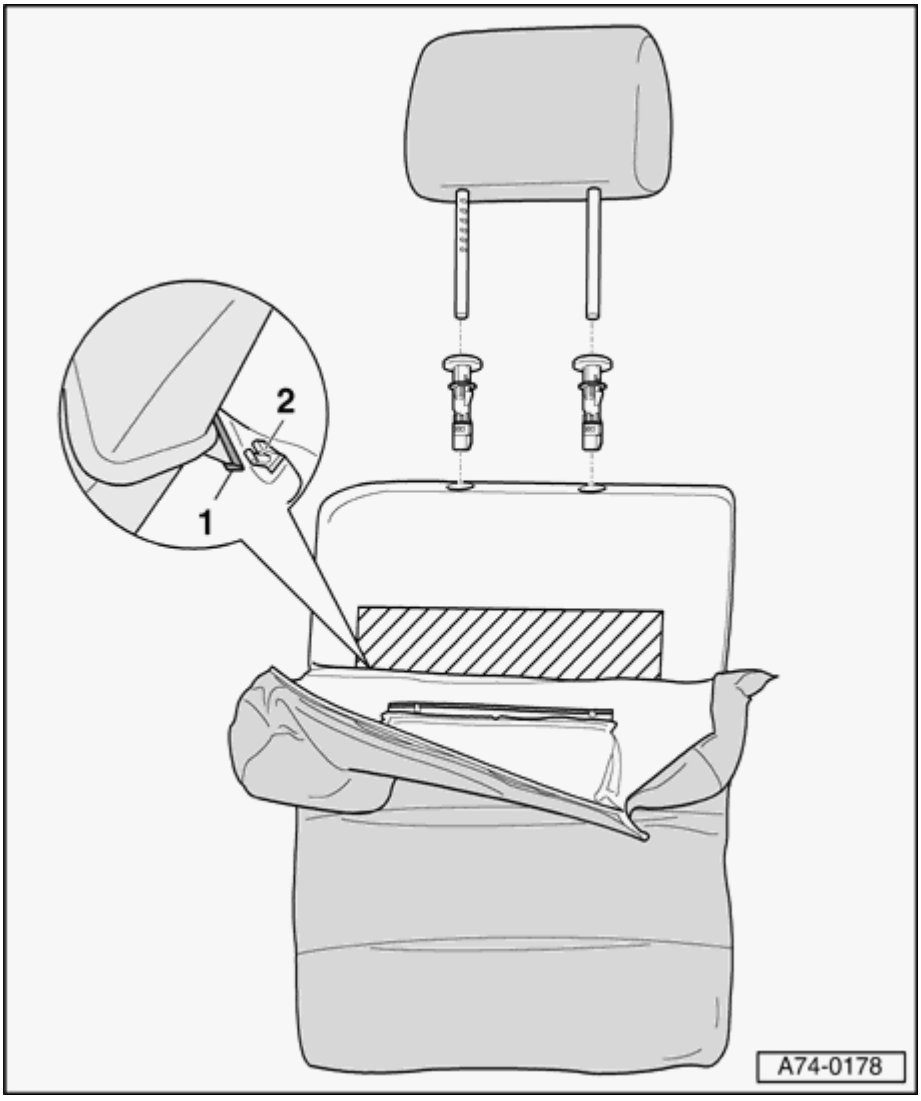


Fig. 841: Grip Channels And Plastic Clips Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Removal:
  - Pry out grip channels - **1** - from plastic clips - **2** - using a screwdriver.
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Replace damaged plastic clips.

Footwell light, removing and installing

Removing

cardiagn.com

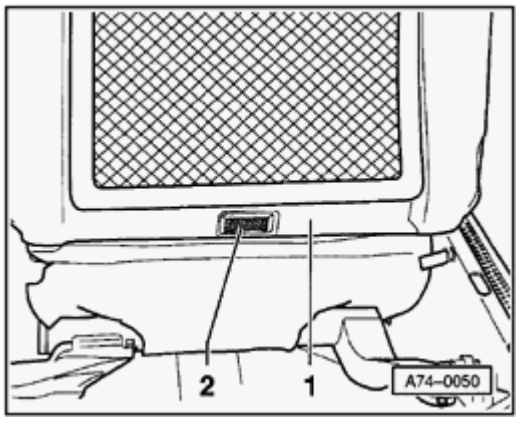


Fig. 842: Prying Out Rear Footwell Light Off On One Side From Backrest Panel Using Screwdriver
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry out rear footwell light - **2** - off on one side from backrest panel - **1** - using a screwdriver.
- Disconnect harness connector for rear footwell light - **2** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Seat heating element, removing and installing

Seat heating element (glued in), removing and installing

Removing:

- Remove seat: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
- Remove seat cover --> **Front seat covers and upholstery**.

cardiagn.com

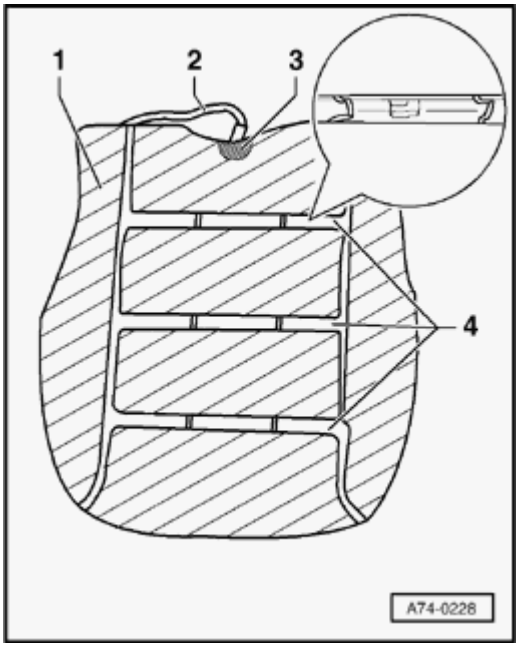


Fig. 843: Seat Heating Element (Glued In) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut wire - **2** - off of old heating element - **1** -.

Installing:

- Align heating element - **1** - on seat surface, remove protective foil and glue heating element to cushion.
- Slide electrical wire - **2** - into openings - **3** -.
- Lay wire connections without crossing into bottom of openings at positions - **4** -.

Seat heating element, removing and installing (sports seat)

Removing

- Remove seat: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.

cardiagn.com

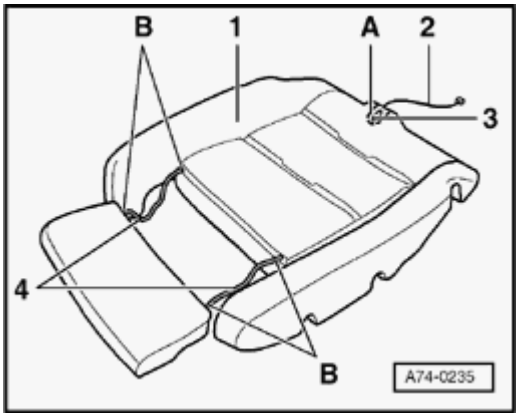


Fig. 844: Seat Heating Element (Sports Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut section - **A** - from old heating element - **1** -.
- Remove cable - **2** -.
- Cut off cables - **4** - (2x) at - **B** - positions (4x).

Installing

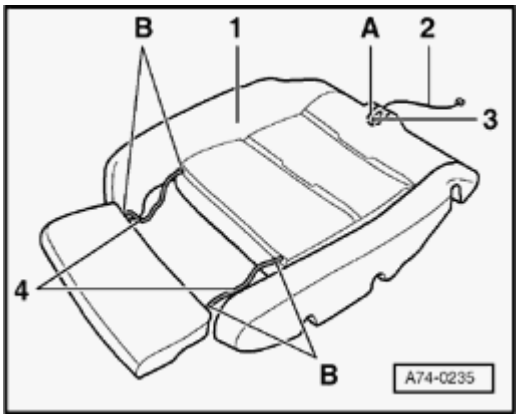


Fig. 845: Seat Heating Element (Sports Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Align heating element - **1** - on seat surface, remove protective foil and glue heating element to cushion.
- Insert cable - **2** - into designated opening - **3** -.
- Lay wire connections without crossing into bottom of openings at positions - **4** -.

cardiagn.com

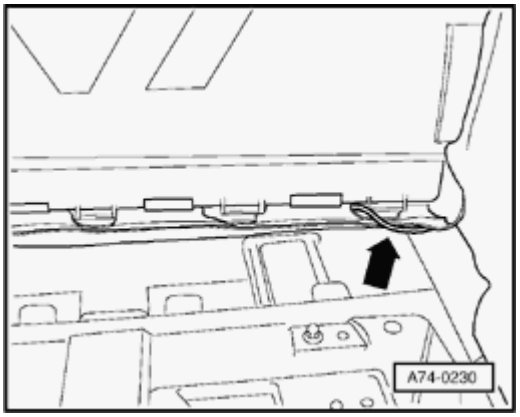


Fig. 846: Laying Right And Left Wire Connections Into Opening
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Lay right and left wire connections into opening - **arrow** -.

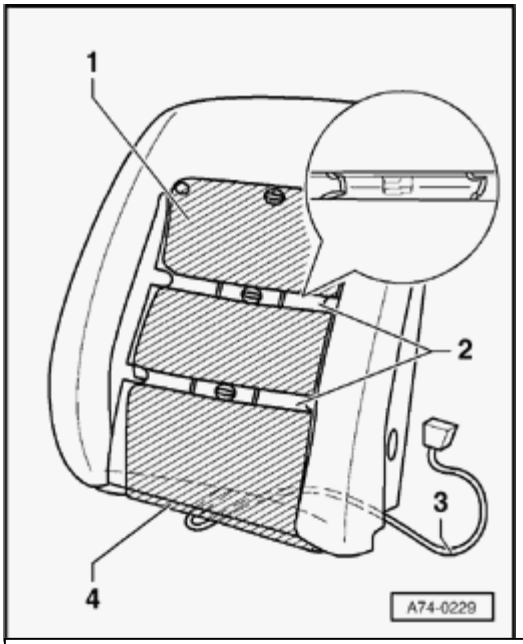
With improper routing, wire connection may wear through and the seat depth adjustment may be "hooked" during adjustment.

Backrest heating element, removing and installing

Backrest heating element (glued in), removing and installing

Removing:

- Remove seat: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front seats (standard seat), removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest part --> **Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing**.



cardiagn.com

Fig. 847: Identifying Heating Element, Electrical Wire & Gap
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut wire - **3** - off of old heating element - **1** -.

Installing:

- Align heating element - **1** - on backrest surface, remove protective foil and glue heating element to cushion.
- Insert electrical wire - **3** - into gap - **4** -.
- Lay wire connections without crossing into bottom of openings at positions - **2** -.

Cover and upholstery for headrests with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove headrest.

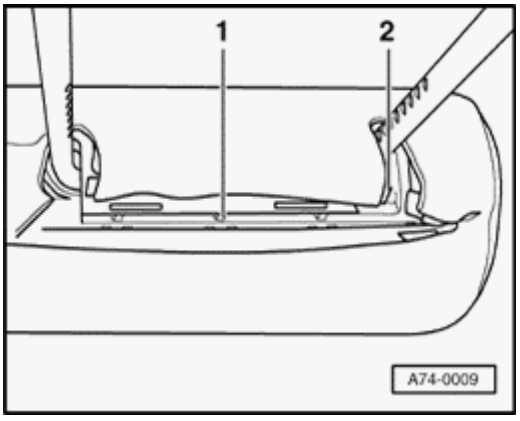
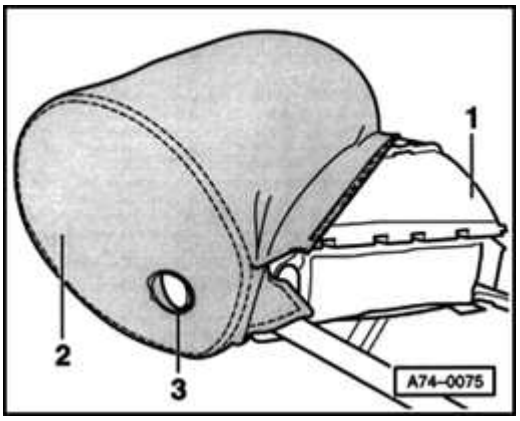


Fig. 848: Disengaging Grip Channel By Prying Out Of Guide Channel Using A Screwdriver
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Disengage grip channel - **2** - by prying out of guide channel - **1** - using a screwdriver.



cardiagn.com

Fig. 849: Removing First Headrest Support On Side Lying Opposite Of Button From Cushion With Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Lift cover over button collar - **3** - using a screwdriver.
- Remove first headrest support - **1** - on the side lying opposite of button - **3** - from cushion with cover - **2** -.

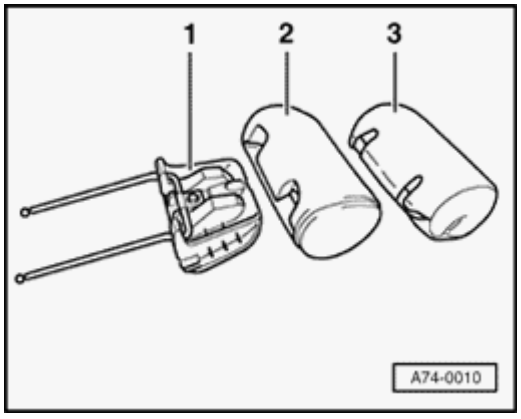


Fig. 850: Removing/Installing Cushion Out Of Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove cushion - **2** - out of cover - **3** -.

Installing

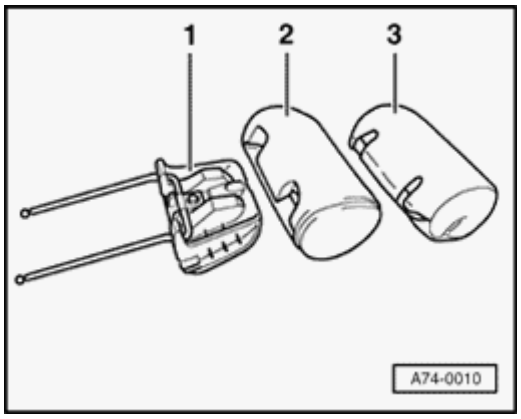


Fig. 851: Removing/Installing Cushion Out Of Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Insert cushion - **2** - with proper fit in cover - **3** -.

cardiagn.com

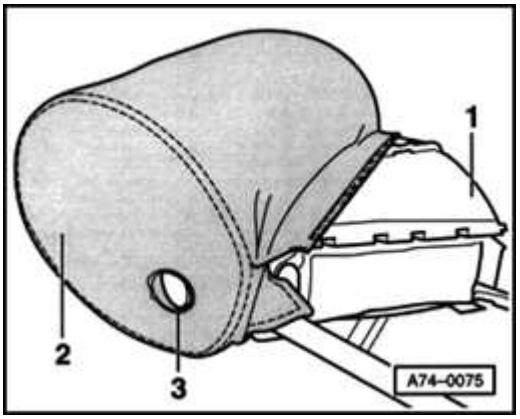


Fig. 852: Removing First Headrest Support On Side Lying Opposite Of Button From Cushion With Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Insert headrest support - **1** - first on button side into cushion with cover - **2** -.
- Press retaining strips firmly in guide channel (test by pulling).

FRONT SEAT COVERS AND UPHOLSTERY (SEAT MEMORY, ELECTRICAL SEAT ADJUSTMENT)

Cover and upholstery for seat pan, removing and installing (standard seat)

Separating cover and upholstery from seat pan

cardiagn.com

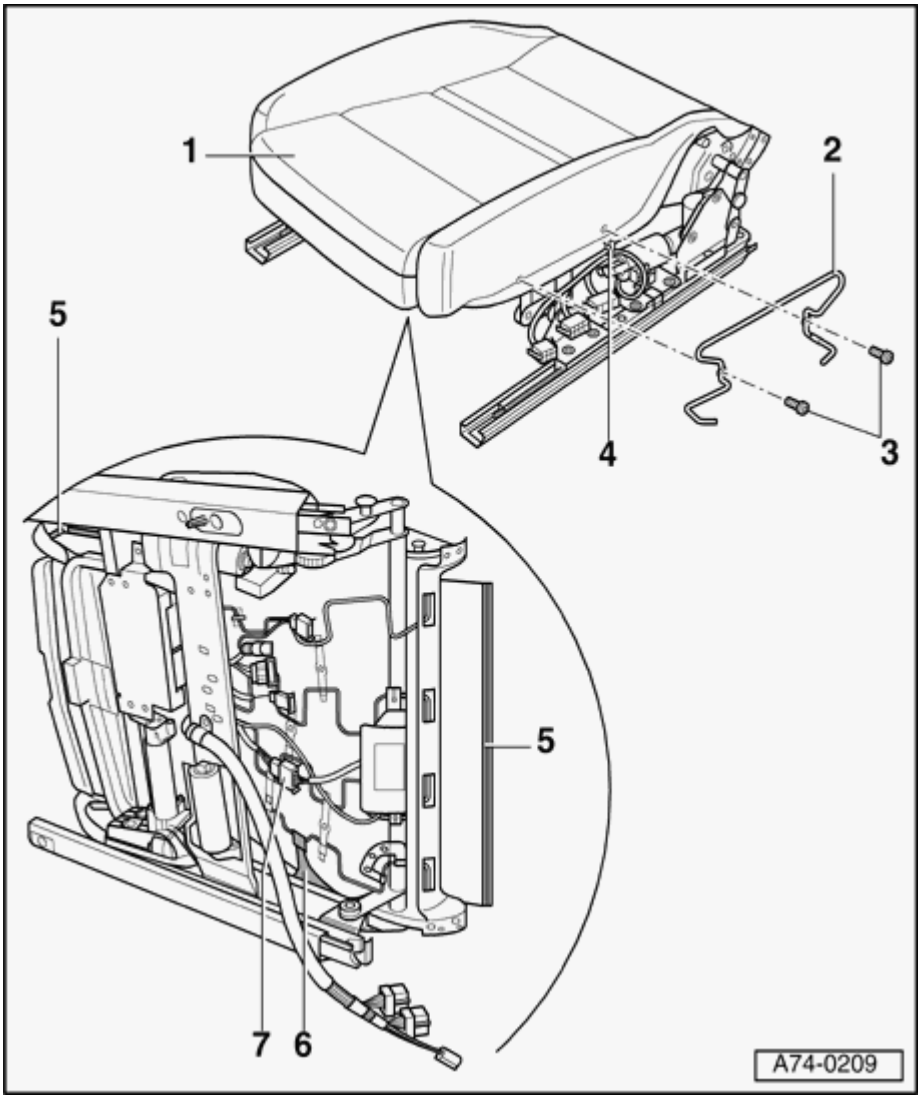


Fig. 853: Separating Cover And Upholstery From Seat Pan
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover and upholstery

- Removal:

  - Remove seat: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.

  - Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).
  - Remove bracket - **2** -.

cardiagn.com

- Disconnect connector for seat heater - **7** -.
- Remove clip - **4** -.
- Pry out grip channels - **5** - all around.
- Disengage tab - **6** -.
- Remove cover and upholstery - **1** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

- For vehicles with LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket and new cover - **1** - , cover must be cut in at LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket.

2 - Support

3 - Screws, (2x)

4 - Clip

5 - Peripheral fastening strips

6 - Tab

7 - Seat heating connector

Separating cover from upholstery

cardiagn.com

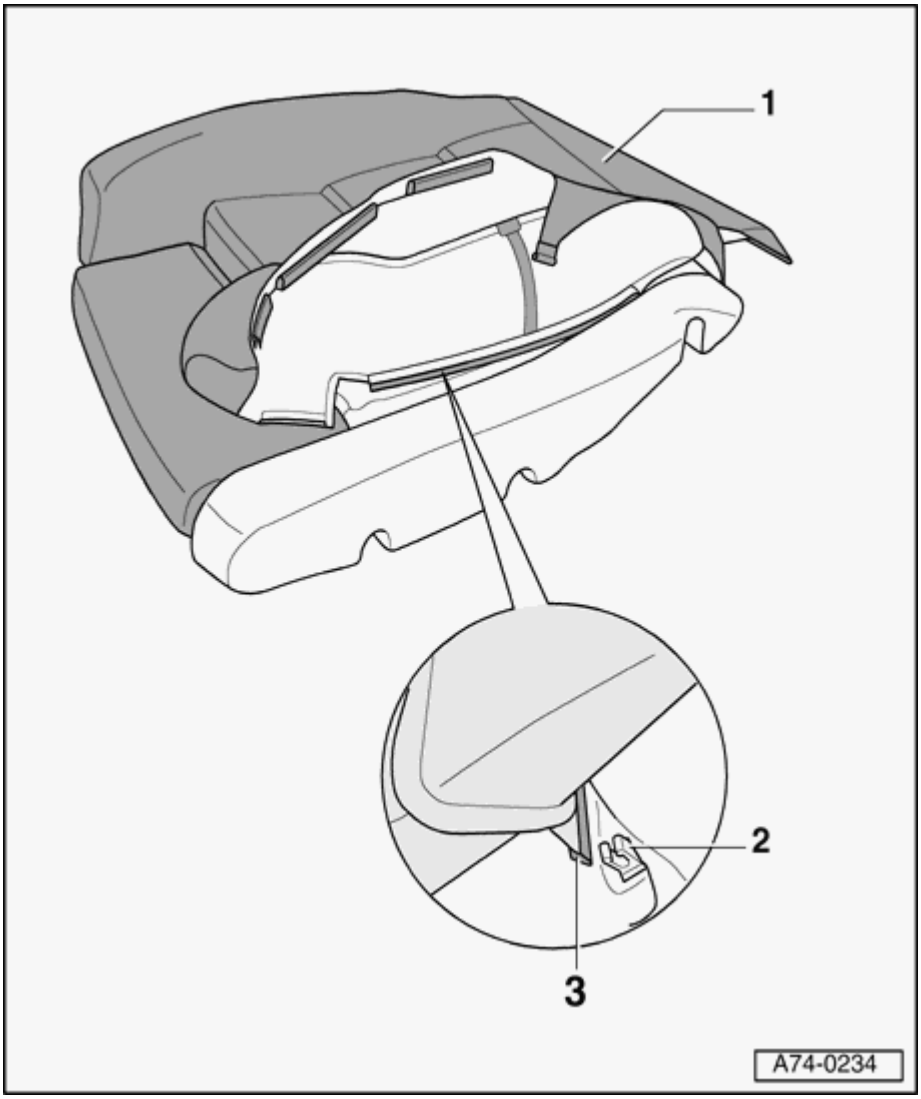


Fig. 854: Identifying Cover, Plastic Clips & Fastening Strips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover

- Removal:

  - Pry out grip channels - **3** - from plastic clips - **2** - using a screwdriver.
  - Remove cover - **1** -.
  - For vehicles with LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket and new cover - **1** - , cover must be cut in at LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

cardiagn.com

- Replaced damaged plastic clips.
- Press in first the plastic clips of transverse beam.

2 - Plastic clips

- Replace if damaged

3 - Fastening strips

Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)

Separating cover and upholstery from seat pan

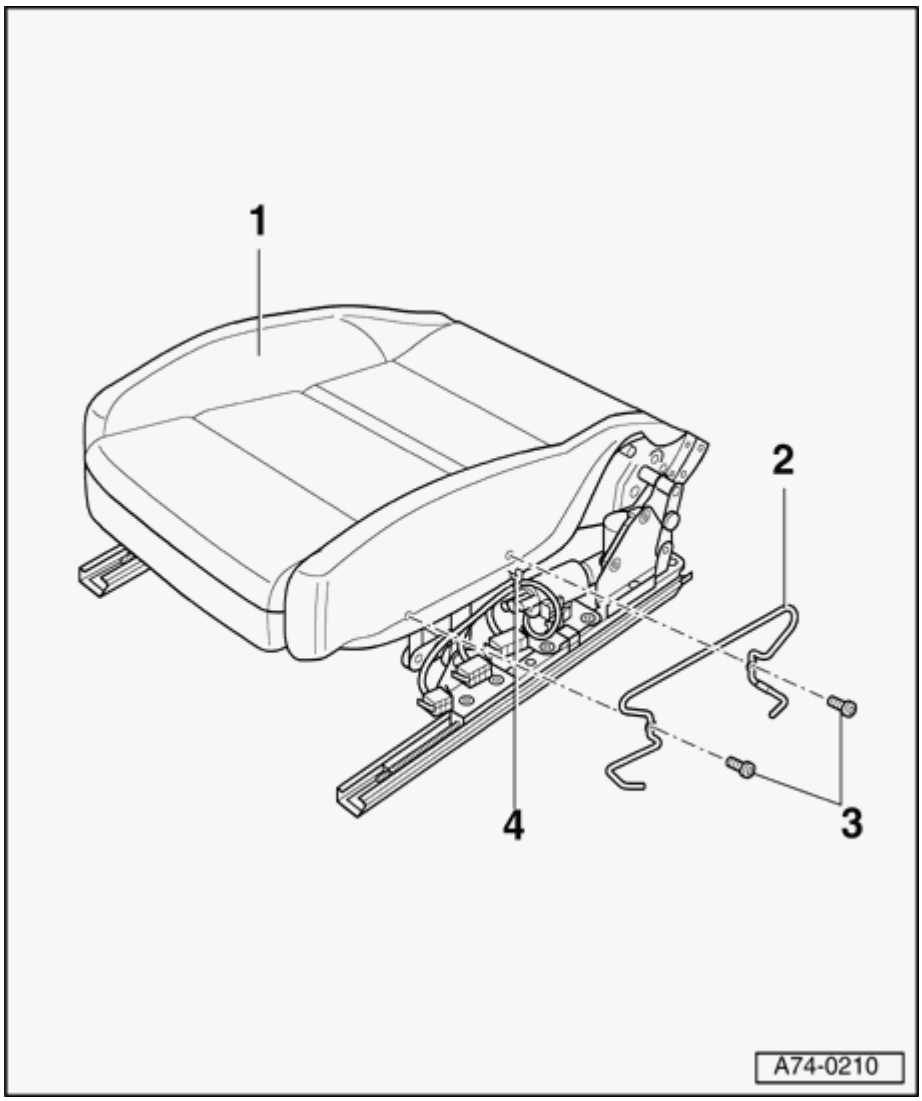


Fig. 855: Separating Cover And Upholstery From Seat Pan
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Cover and upholstery

- Removal:

  - Remove seat: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
  - Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Tunnel-side side trim, removing and installing**.
  - Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.

  - Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).
  - Remove bracket - **2** -.
  - Remove clip - **4** -.

2 - Support

3 - Screws, (2x)

4 - Clip

cardiagn.com

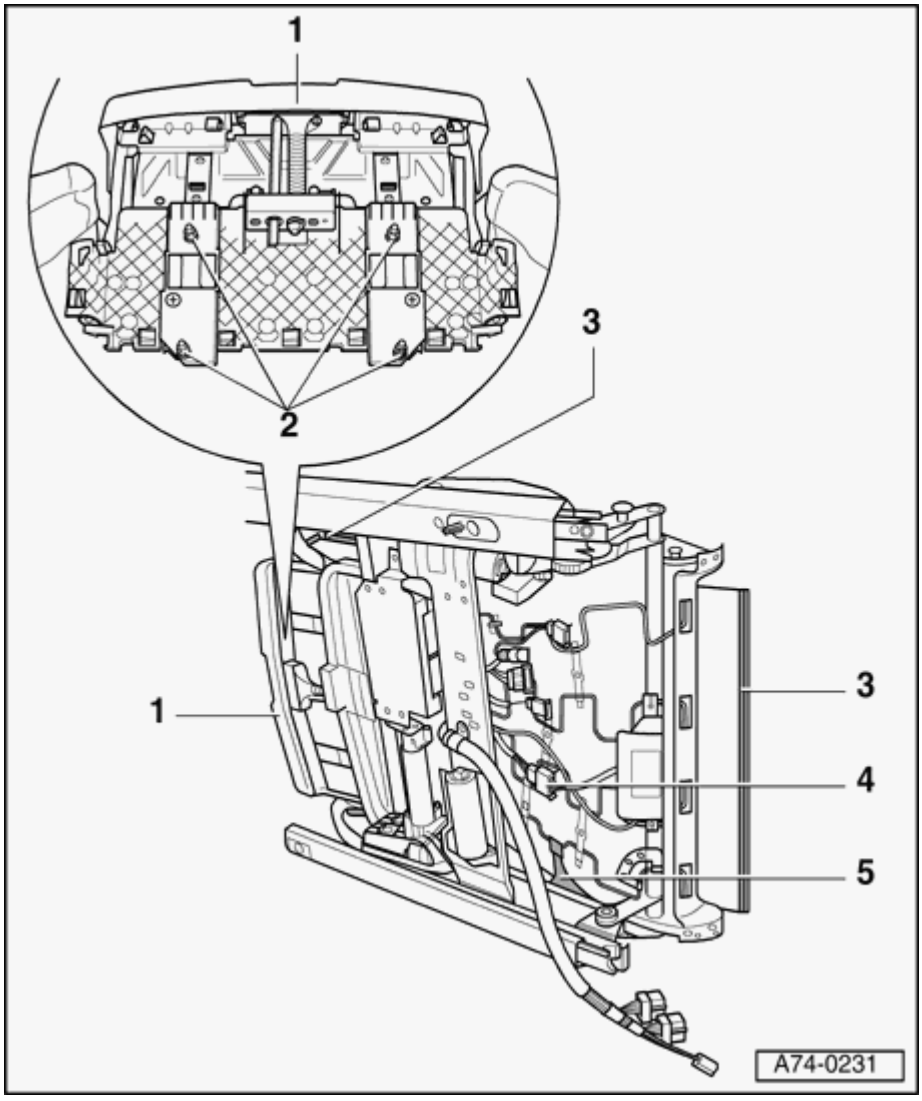


Fig. 856: Identifying Seat Cushion Extension, Nuts, Peripheral Fastening Strips, Seat Heating Connector & Tab
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat cushion extension

- Pry out grip channels - **3** - all around.
- Disengage tab - **5** - on underside of seat.
- Disconnect connector for seat heater - **4** -.
- Pull out seat cushion extension - **1** - completely.

- Remove nuts - **2** - (4x).
- Remove cover and upholstery.
- For vehicles with LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket and new cover - **1** - , cover must be cut in at LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket.

cardiagn.com

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Nuts (4x)

3 - Peripheral fastening strips

4 - Seat heating connector

5 - Tab

Separating seat cushion extension from cover and cushion

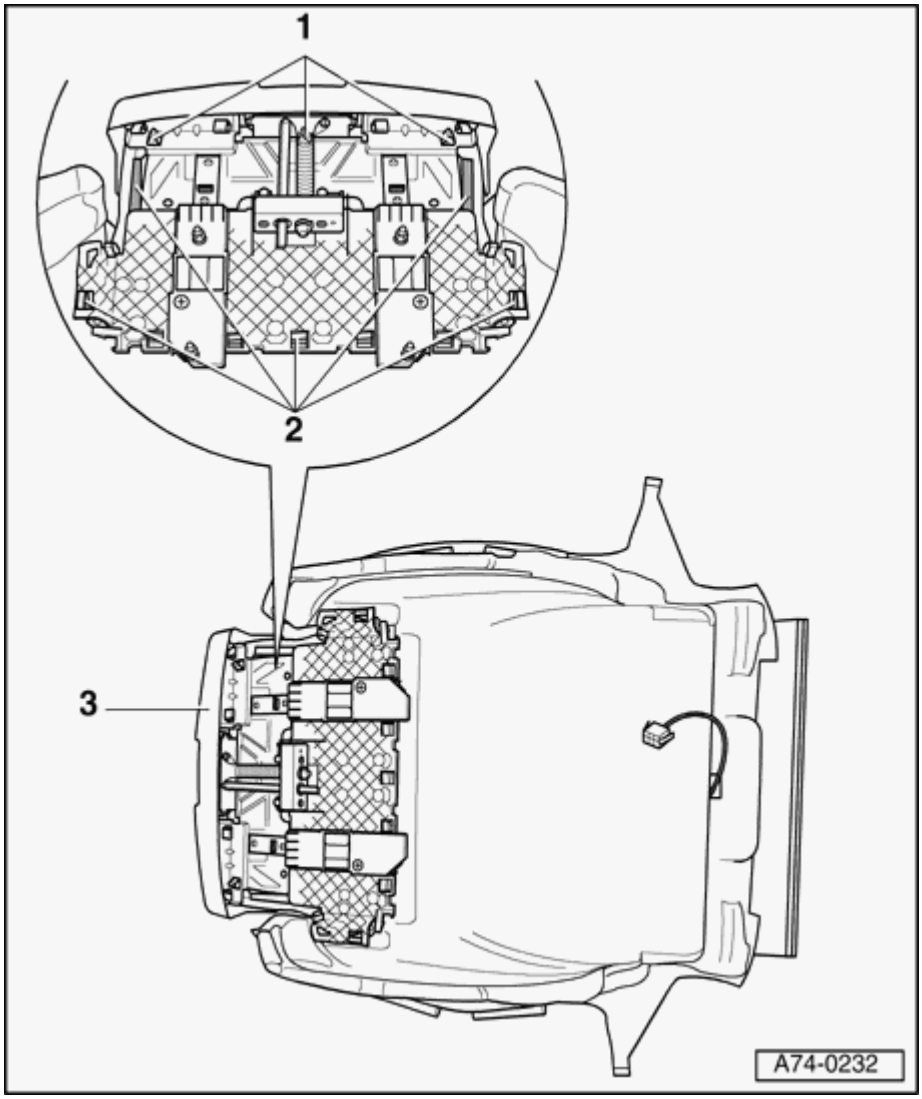


Fig. 857: Separating Seat Cushion Extension From Cover And Cushion
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Clips (3x)

2 - Fastening strips (5x)

3 - Seat cushion extension

- Pry out grip channels - **2** - (5x).
- Pry out clips - **1** - (3x).
- Remove seat cushion extension - **3** -.

Separating cover from upholstery

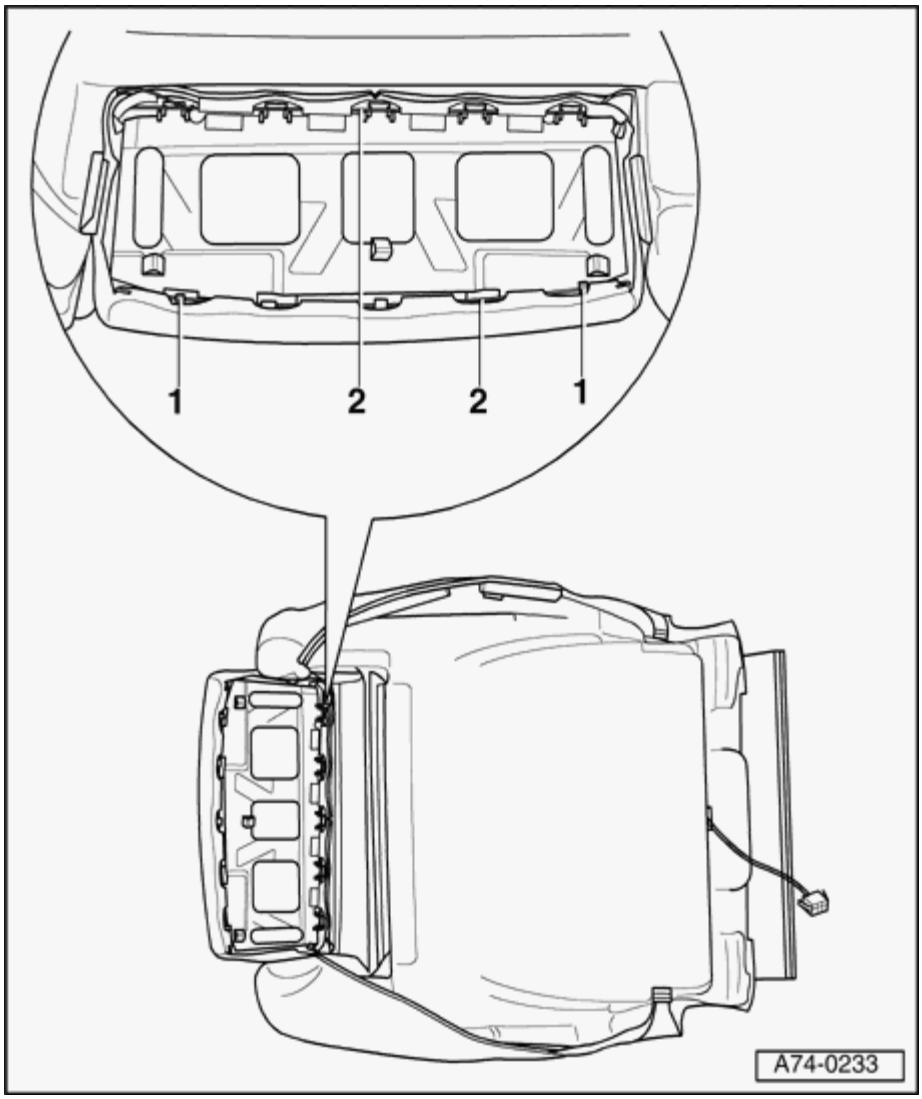


Fig. 858: Separating Cover From Upholstery
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cable ties (2x)

cardiagn.com

2 - Rods (2x)

- Loosen cable ties - **1** - (2x).
- Pry out rods - **2** - (2x).

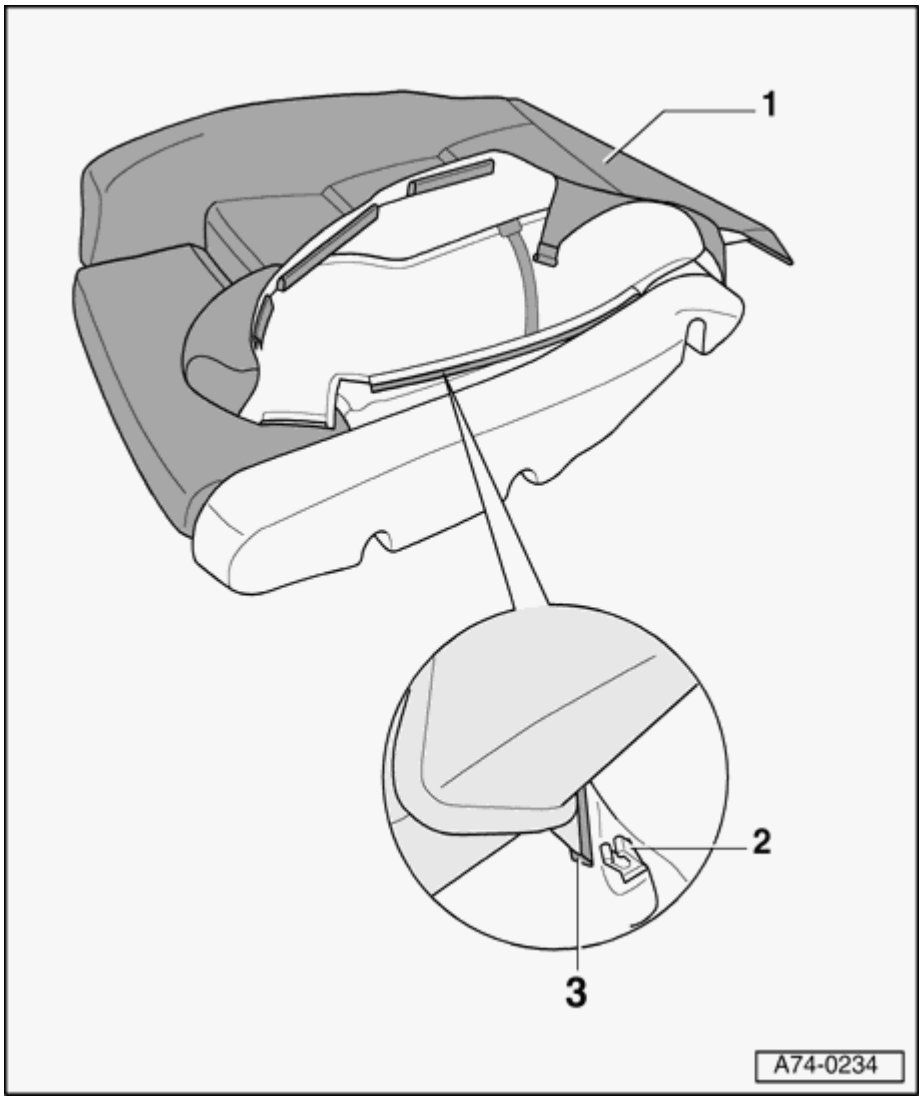


Fig. 859: Identifying Cover, Plastic Clips & Fastening Strips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover

- Pry out grip channels - **3** - from plastic clips - **2** - using a screwdriver.
- Remove cover - **1** -.
- For vehicles with LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket and new cover - **1** - , cover must be cut in at LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket.

- **Installing:**

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Replaced damaged plastic clips.
- Press in first the plastic clips of transverse beam.

2 - Plastic clips

- Replace if damaged

3 - Fastening strips

Cover and cushion for backrest, removing and installing (sport seat, standard seat)

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

Separating cover and upholstery from backrest frame

cardiagn.com

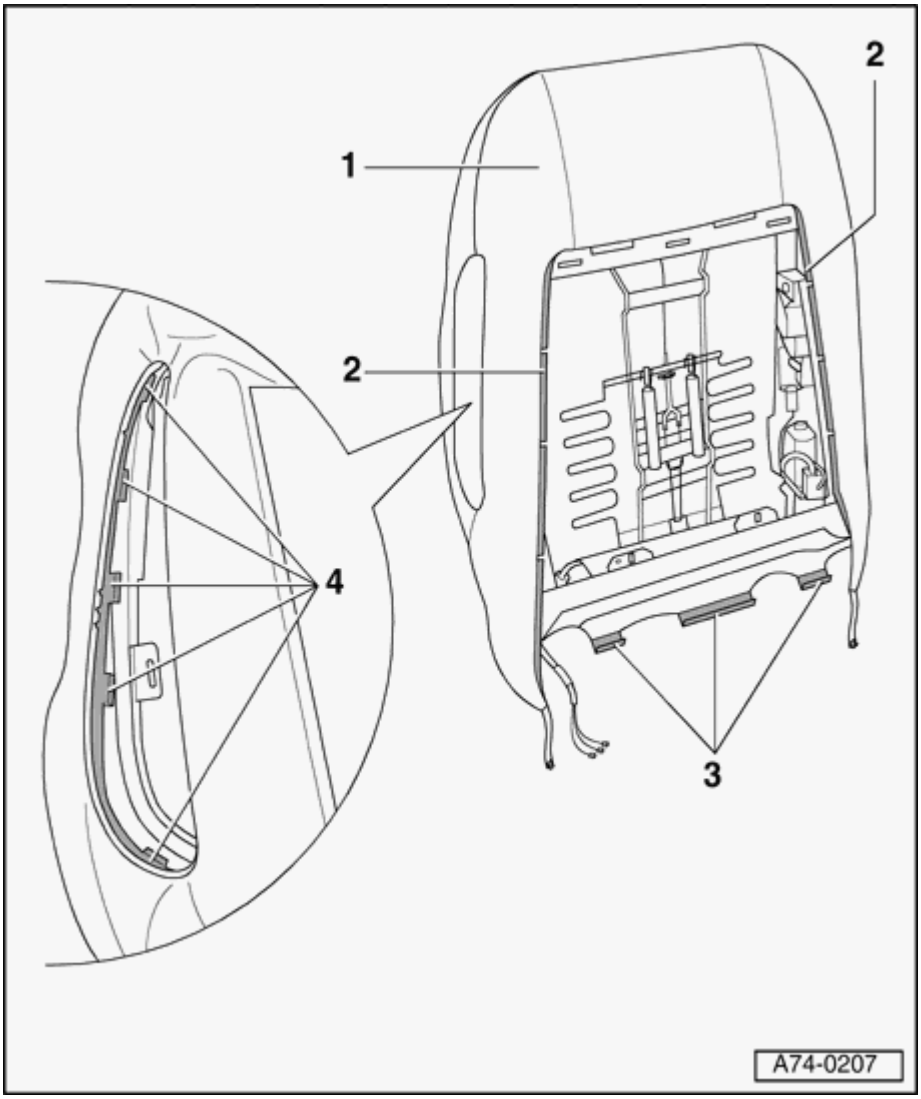


Fig. 860: Separating Cover And Upholstery From Backrest Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest

- Removal:

  - Remove seat: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Remove backrest: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front backrest, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
  - Remove headrest --> **Headrest with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing**.
  - Remove headrest guides: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Headrest guides, vehicles through 10.04, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Headrest guides, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
- Pry out lower grip channels - **3** - (3x).
- Disengage side grip channels - **2** - (2x).
- Remove backrest frame --> **Backrest frame, removing and installing**.

- Remove side airbag --> **Side airbags, servicing**.
- Pry out plastic tabs - **4** - (5x).
- Remove upholstery with cover.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Side fastening strips (2x)

3 - Lower fastening strips (3x)

4 - Plastic tabs (Qty. 5)

Separating cover from upholstery

cardiagn.com

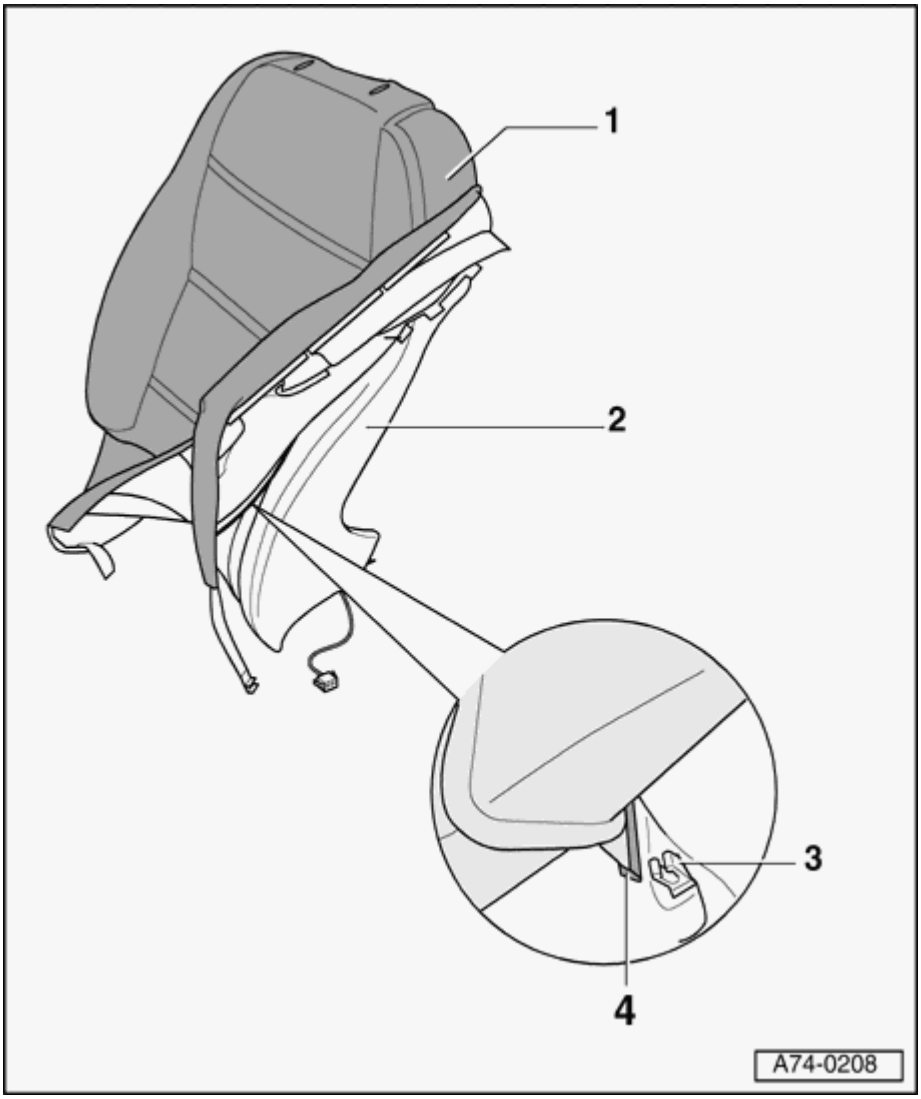


Fig. 861: Separating Cover From Upholstery
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover

- Removal:
  - Lever out grip channels - **4** - from plastic clips - **3** - using a screwdriver.
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Replaced damaged plastic clips.

2 - Upholstery

cardiagn.com

3 - Plastic clips

- Replace if damaged

4 - Fastening strips

Headrest guides, vehicles through 10.04, removing and installing

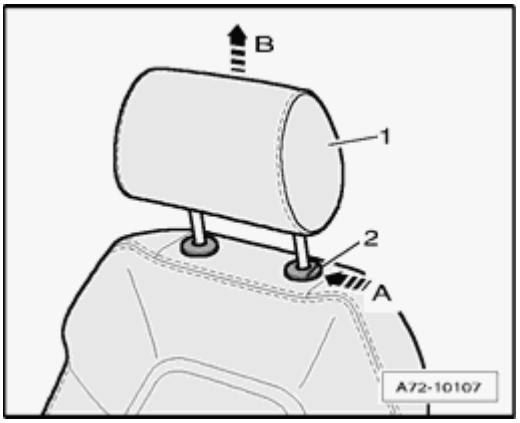


Fig. 862: Pushing Release Button In And Pulling Headrest Upward As Far As Possible
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Push release button - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and pull headrest - **1** - upward as far as possible - **arrow B** - , keep release button pushed while doing so.

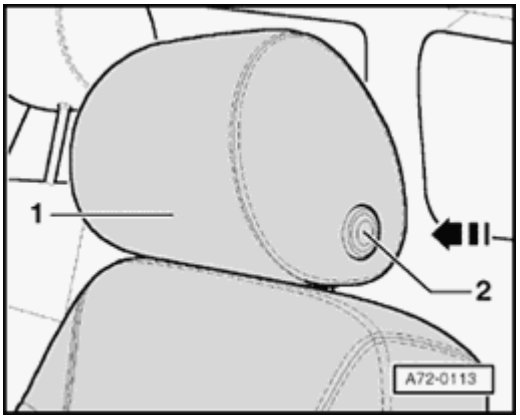


Fig. 863: Pressing Release Button On Headrest Until Stop
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press release button - **2** - on headrest - **1** - until stop - **arrow** -.
- Slide headrest down completely on rods, release button on headrest must be kept pressed while doing so.
- Remove headrest completely from headrest guides.

cardiagn.com

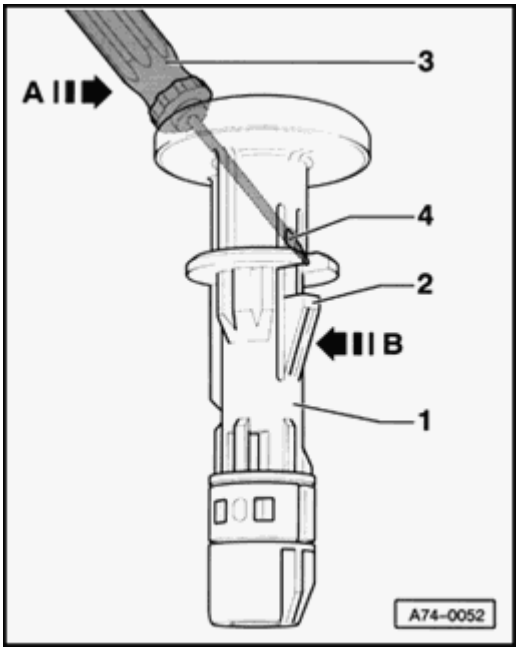


Fig. 864: Headrest Guides, Removing And Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

For clarity, headrest guide - **1** - is shown removed.

- Insert an upholstery needle or screwdriver - **3** - (max. width 2 mm) into hole - **4** - (hole - **4** - is located across from retaining clip for headrest guide).
- Pry screwdriver - **3** - in direction of arrow - **A** - and press catch - **2** - in direction of arrow - **B** - , pull out headrest guide - **1** - while doing so.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Headrest guides, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04

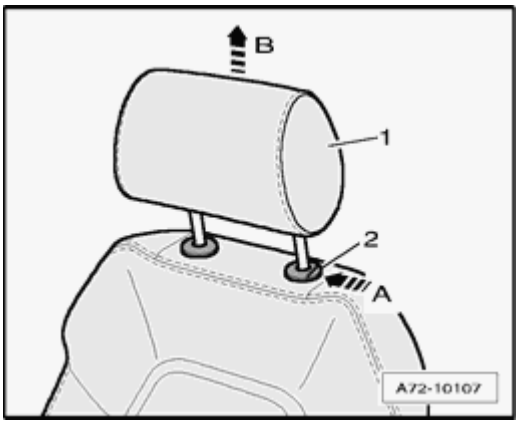


Fig. 865: Pushing Release Button In And Pulling Headrest Upward As Far As Possible

cardiagn.com

Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Push release button - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and pull headrest - **1** - upward as far as possible - **arrow B** - , keep release button pushed while doing so.

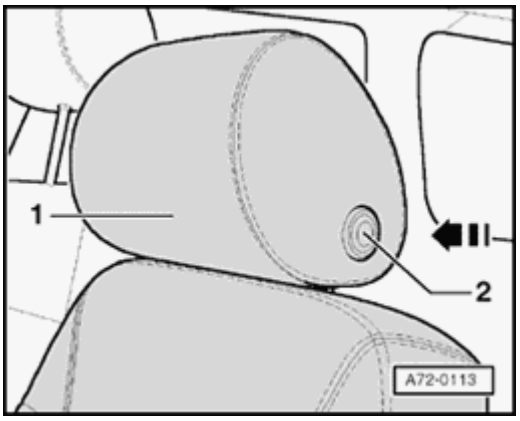


Fig. 866: Pressing Release Button On Headrest Until Stop
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press release button - **2** - on headrest - **1** - until stop - **arrow** -.
- Slide headrest down completely on rods, release button on headrest must be kept pressed while doing so.
- Remove headrest completely from headrest guides.

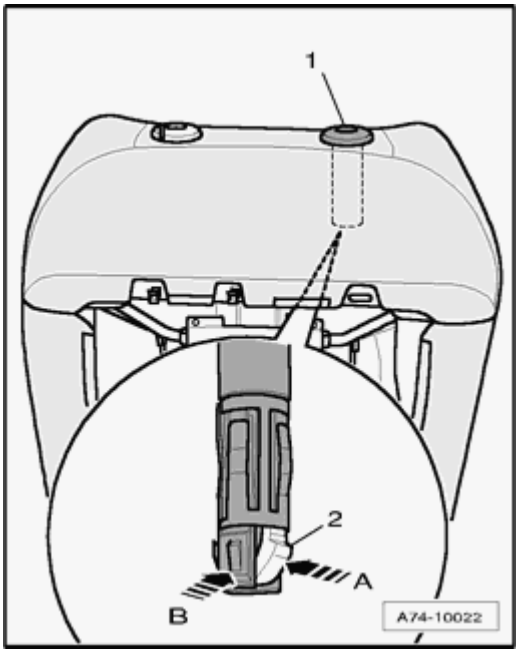


Fig. 867: Headrest Guide Without Release Button:
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

Headrest guide without release button:

- Remove backrest panel: Standard seat --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing** , power seat --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
- Press catch - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and press retaining claws in - **direction of arrow B** -.
- Pull headrest guide - **1** - upward out of mount.

NOTE:

- **Headrest guide cannot be removed without destroying it.**

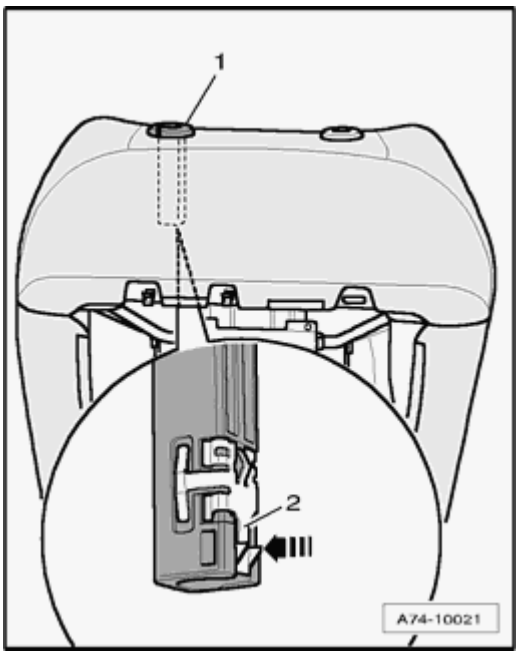


Fig. 868: Headrest Guide With Release Button:
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Headrest guide with release button:

- Remove backrest panel: Standard seat --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing** , power seat --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
- Disengage catch - **2** - in - **direction of arrow** - and pull headrest guide - **1** - upward at the same time and out of mount.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal, but note the following:

- The headrest guide can only be inserted in one position.
- Guide lug of headrest guide must engage in cut-out of mount for headrest guide.

Seat heating element, removing and installing (standard seat)

cardiagn.com

Removing

- Remove seat: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front backrest (standard seat), removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front backrest (standard seat), removing and installing**.
- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Cover and upholstery for seat pan, removing and installing (standard seat)**.

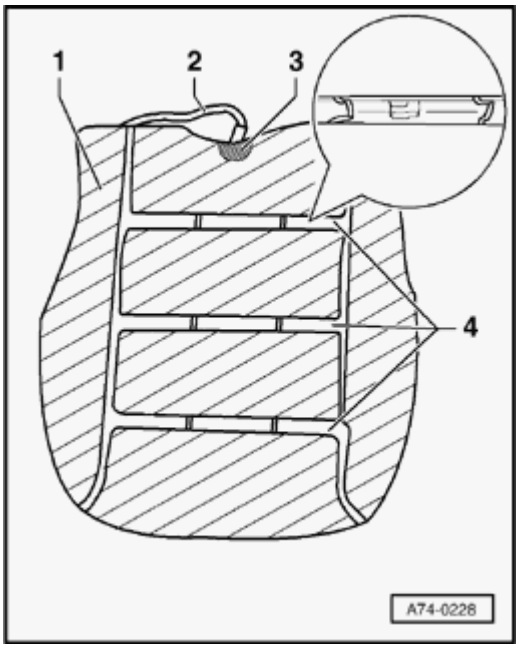


Fig. 869: Seat Heating Element (Glued In) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut wire - **2** - off of old heating element - **1** -.

Installing

- Align heating element - **1** - on seat surface, remove protective foil and glue heating element to cushion.
- Slide electrical wire - **2** - into openings - **3** -.
- Lay wire connections without crossing into bottom of openings at positions - **4** -.

Seat heating element, removing and installing (sports seat)

Removing

- Remove seat: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front backrest, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Cover and cushion for seat pan, removing and installing (sport seat)**.

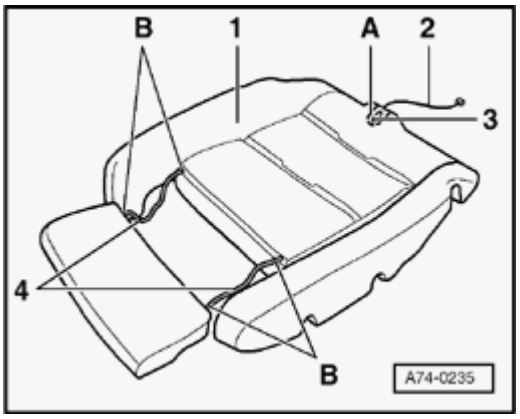


Fig. 870: Seat Heating Element (Sports Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut section - **A** - from old heating element - **1** -.
- Remove cable - **2** -.
- Cut off cables - **4** - (2x) at - **B** - positions (4x).

Installing

- Align heating element - **1** - on seat surface, remove protective foil and glue heating element to cushion.
- Insert cable - **2** - into designated opening - **3** -.
- Lay wire connections without crossing into bottom of openings at positions - **4** -.

Backrest heating element, removing and installing

Backrest heating element (glued in), removing and installing

Removing:

- Remove seat: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Remove backrest: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Front backrest, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove cover and padding from backrest --> **Cover and cushion for backrest, removing and installing (sport seat, standard seat)**.

cardiagn.com

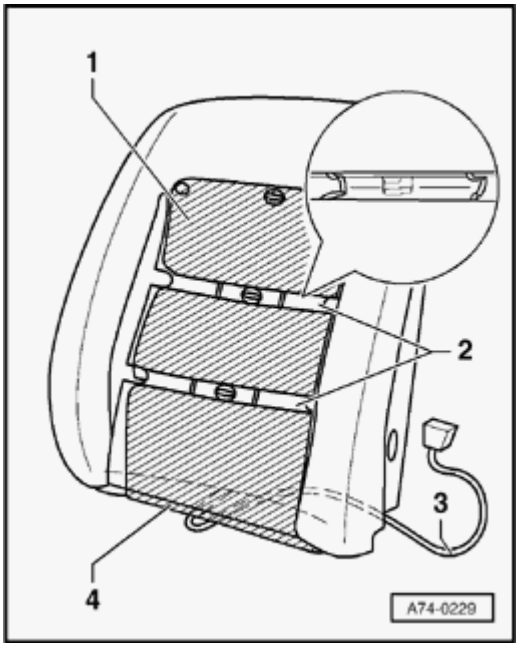


Fig. 871: Identifying Heating Element, Electrical Wire & Gap
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut wire - **3** - off of old heating element - **1** -.

Installing:

- Align heating element - **1** - on backrest surface, remove protective foil and glue heating element to cushion.
- Insert electrical wire - **3** - into gap - **4** -.
- Lay wire connections without crossing into bottom of openings at positions - **2** -.

Cover and upholstery for headrests with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove headrest with insertion lock --> **Headrest with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

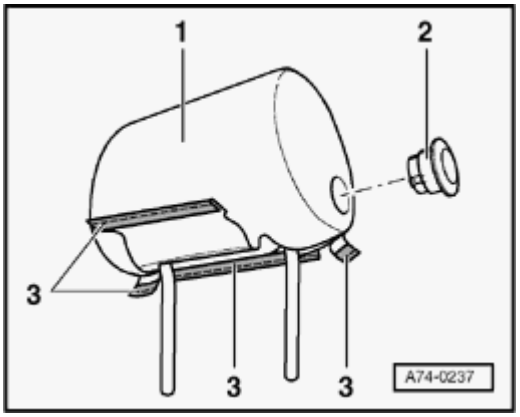


Fig. 872: Cover And Upholstery For Headrests With Slide In Locking Mechanism Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry fastening strips - **3** - (4x) out with a screwdriver.
- Remove button - **2** -.
- Remove cover and upholstery - **1** -.

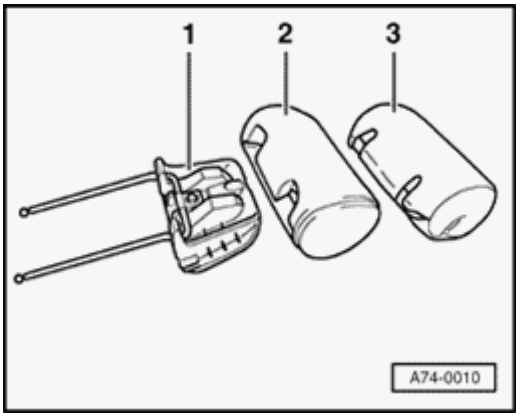


Fig. 873: Removing/Installing Cushion Out Of Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove cushion - **2** - out of cover - **3** -.

Installing

- Insert cushion - **2** - with proper fit in cover - **3** -.
- Insert headrest mount - **1** - in upholstery with cover.
- Press retaining strips firmly in guide channel (test by pulling).

FRONT RECARO SEAT COVERS AND UPHOLSTERY

Seat pan cover and padding, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

Separating cover and upholstery from seat pan

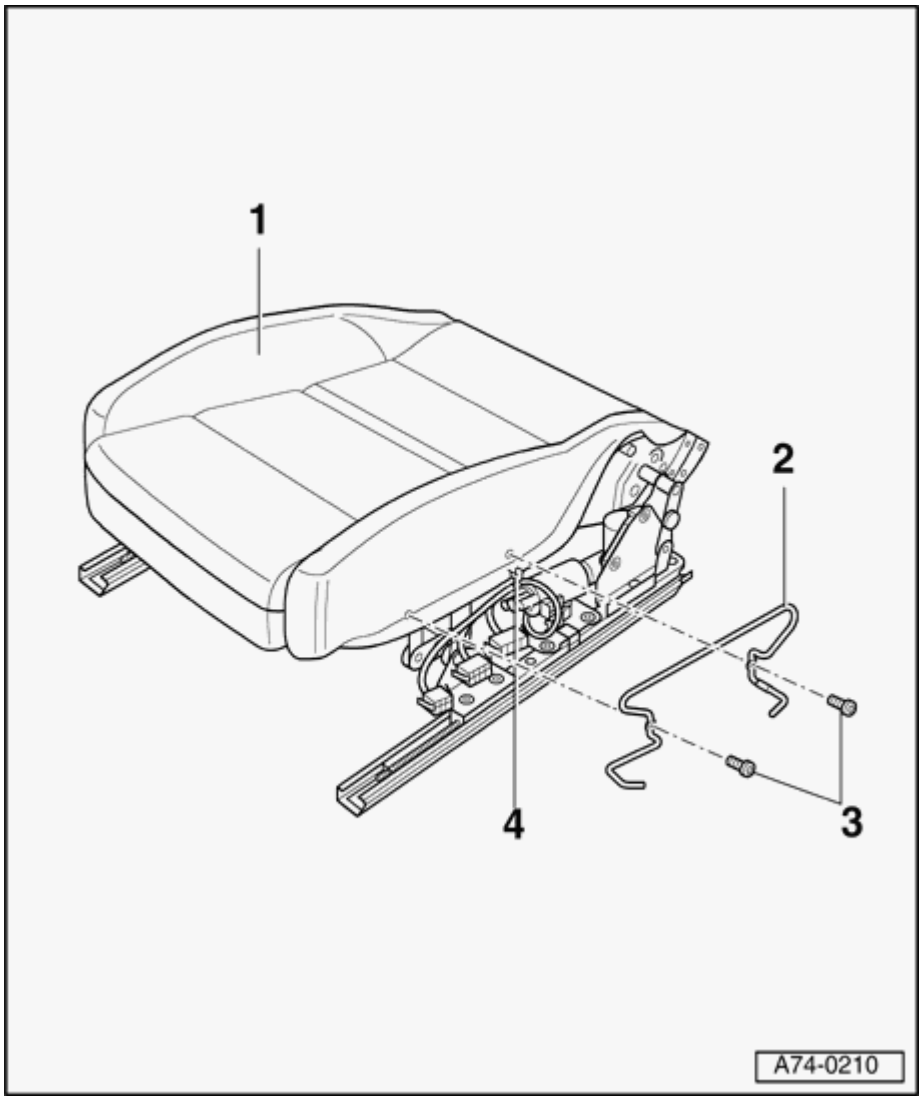


Fig. 874: Separating Cover And Upholstery From Seat Pan
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover and upholstery

- Removal:

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on sill side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
- Remove side trim on tunnel side --> **Side panels on door sill side, removing and installing**.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.

- Remove drawer --> **Drawer, removing and installing**.
- Remove bolts - **3** - (2x).

cardiagn.com

- Remove bracket - **2** -.
- Remove clip - **4** -.

2 - Support

3 - Screws, (2x)

4 - Clip

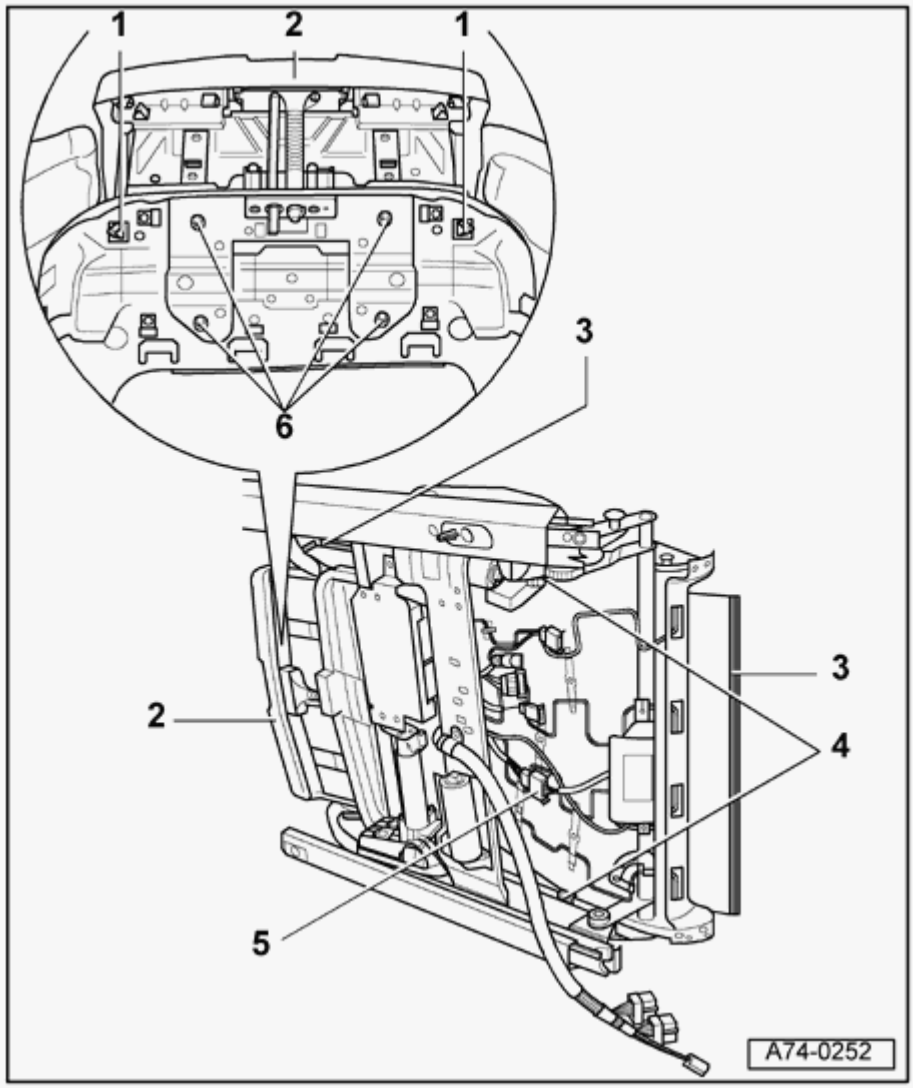


Fig. 875: Identifying Clips, Seat Cushion Extension, Grip Channels, Seat Heater, Seat Cushion Extension & Nuts
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Clips (Qty. 2)

2 - Seat cushion extension

cardiagn.com

- Pry out grip channels - **3** - all around.
- Disengage grip channels - **4** - (2x) on underside of seat.
- Disconnect connector for seat heater - **5** -.
- Pull out seat cushion extension - **2** - completely.

- Remove nuts - **6** - (4x).
- Pry out seat cushion extension - **2** - at clips - **1** - (2x).
- Remove cover and upholstery.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

- For vehicles with LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket and new cover - **1** - , cover must be cut in at LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket.

3 - Peripheral fastening strips

4 - Fastening strips (2x)

5 - Seat heating connector

6 - Nuts (4x)

Separating seat cushion extension from cover and cushion

cardiagn.com

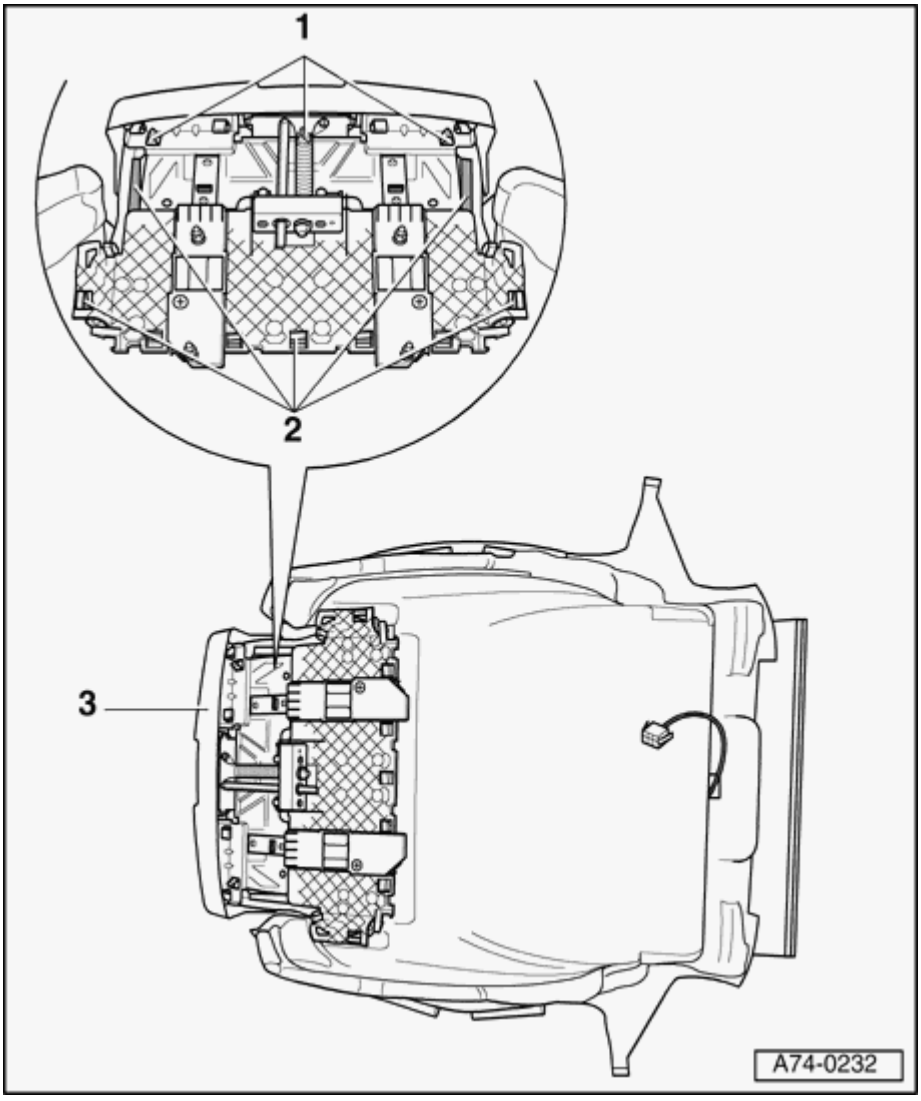


Fig. 876: Separating Seat Cushion Extension From Cover And Cushion
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Clips (3x)

2 - Fastening strips (5x)

3 - Seat cushion extension

- Pry out grip channels - **2** - (5x).
- Pry out clips - **1** - (3x).
- Remove seat cushion extension - **3** -.

Separating cover from upholstery

cardiagn.com

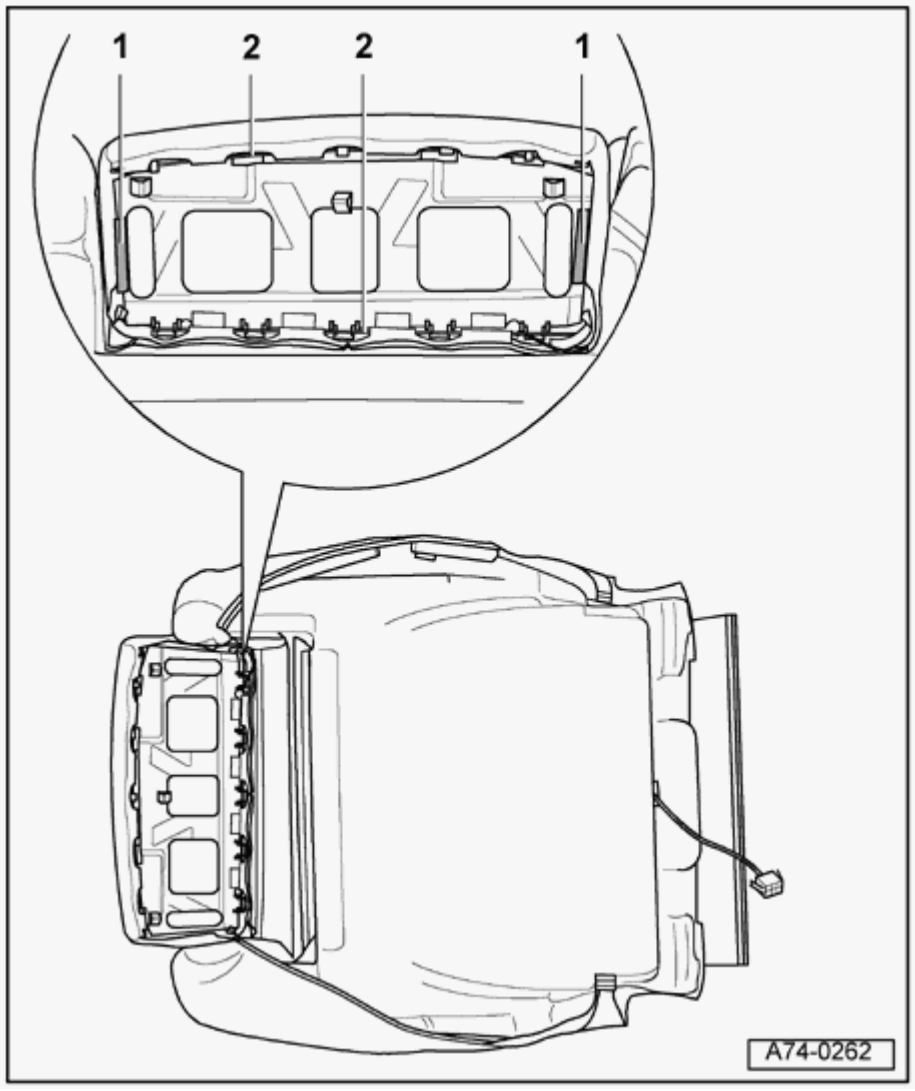


Fig. 877: Separating Cover From Upholstery
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Fastening strips (2x)

2 - Rods (2x)

- Remove fastening strips - **1** - (2x).
- Pry out rods - **2** - (2x).

cardiagn.com

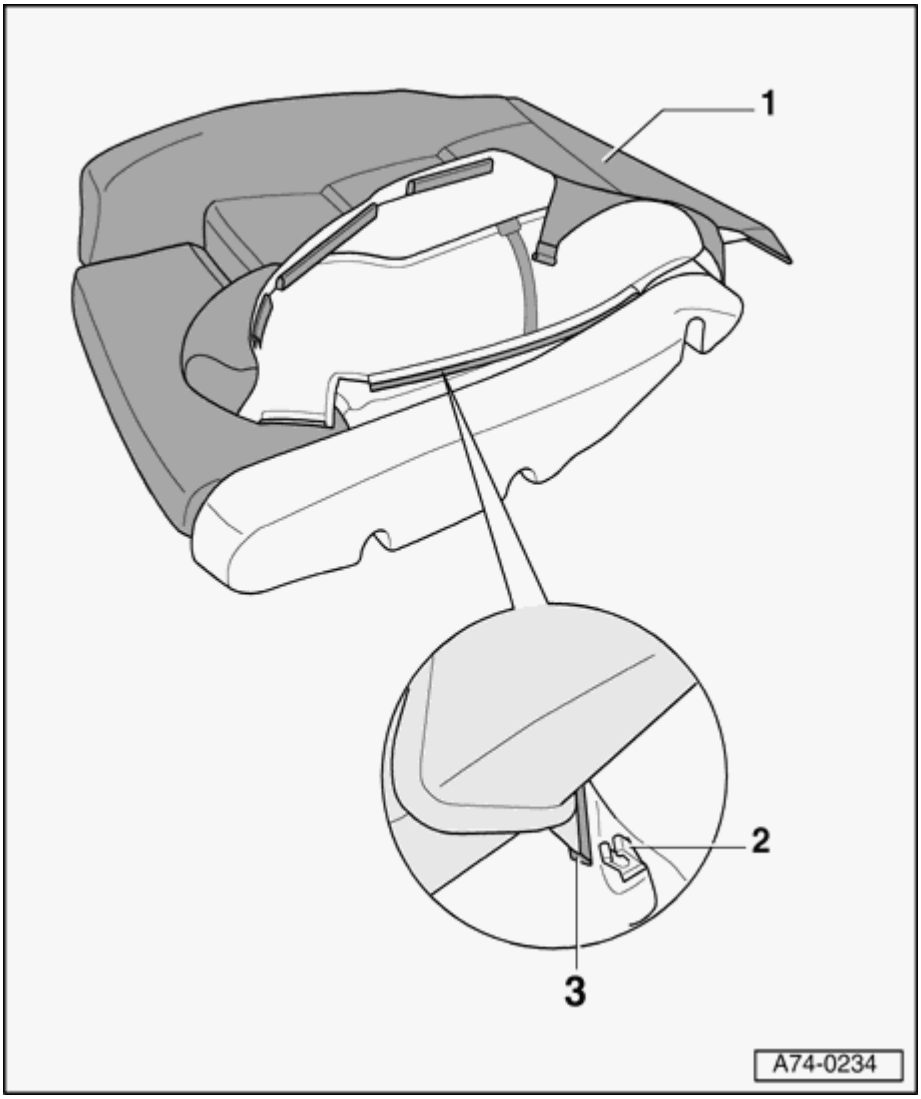


Fig. 878: Identifying Cover, Plastic Clips & Fastening Strips
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover

- Pry out grip channels - **3** - from plastic clips - **2** - using a screwdriver.
- Remove cover - **1** -.
- For vehicles with LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket and new cover - **1** - , cover must be cut in at LATCH "Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children" bracket.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Replaced damaged plastic clips.
- Press in first the plastic clips of transverse beam.

cardiagn.com

2 - Plastic clips

- Replace if damaged

3 - Fastening strips

Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing

CAUTION: Observe safety precautions for work on airbags --> Airbag safety precautions.

Separating cover and upholstery from backrest frame

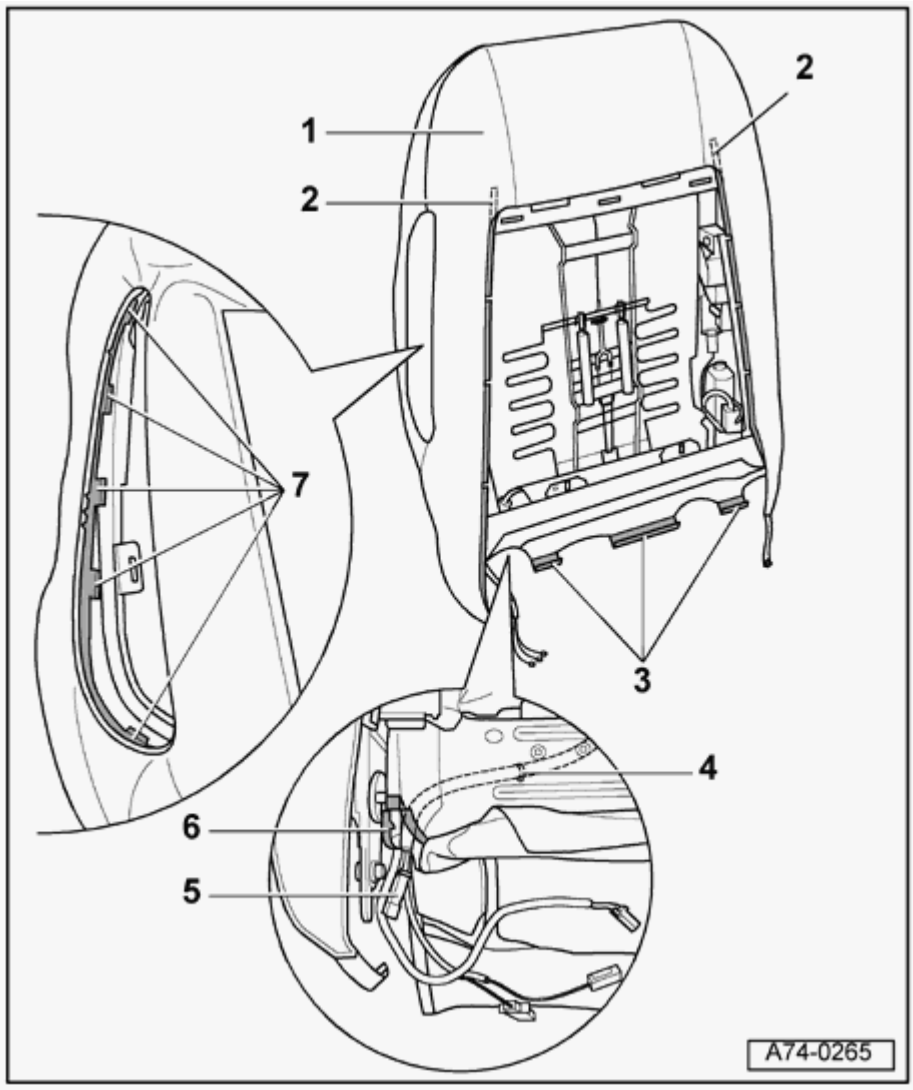


Fig. 879: Separating Cover And Upholstery From Backrest Frame
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

1 - Backrest

- Removal:

  - Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
  - Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
  - Remove headrest --> **Headrest with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing**.
  - Remove headrest guides: Vehicles until 10.04 --> **Headrest guides, vehicles through 10.04, removing and installing** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Headrest guides, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.
  - Remove backrest cover panel --> **Backrest cover, removing and installing**.
  - Pry out lower grip channels - **3** - (3x).
  - Disengage side grip channels - **2** - (2x).
  - Remove backrest frame --> **Backrest frame, removing and installing**.
  - Remove cable guide - **6** -.
  - Open cable tie - **4** -.
  - Pull seat heater cable - **5** - up and out.
  - Remove side airbag --> **Side airbags, servicing**.
  - Pry out plastic tabs - **7** - (5x).
  - Remove upholstery with cover.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Side fastening strips (2x)

3 - Lower fastening strips (3x)

4 - Cable tie

5 - Seat heating cable

6 - Cable guide

7 - Plastic tabs (Qty. 5)

Separating cover from upholstery

cardiagn.com

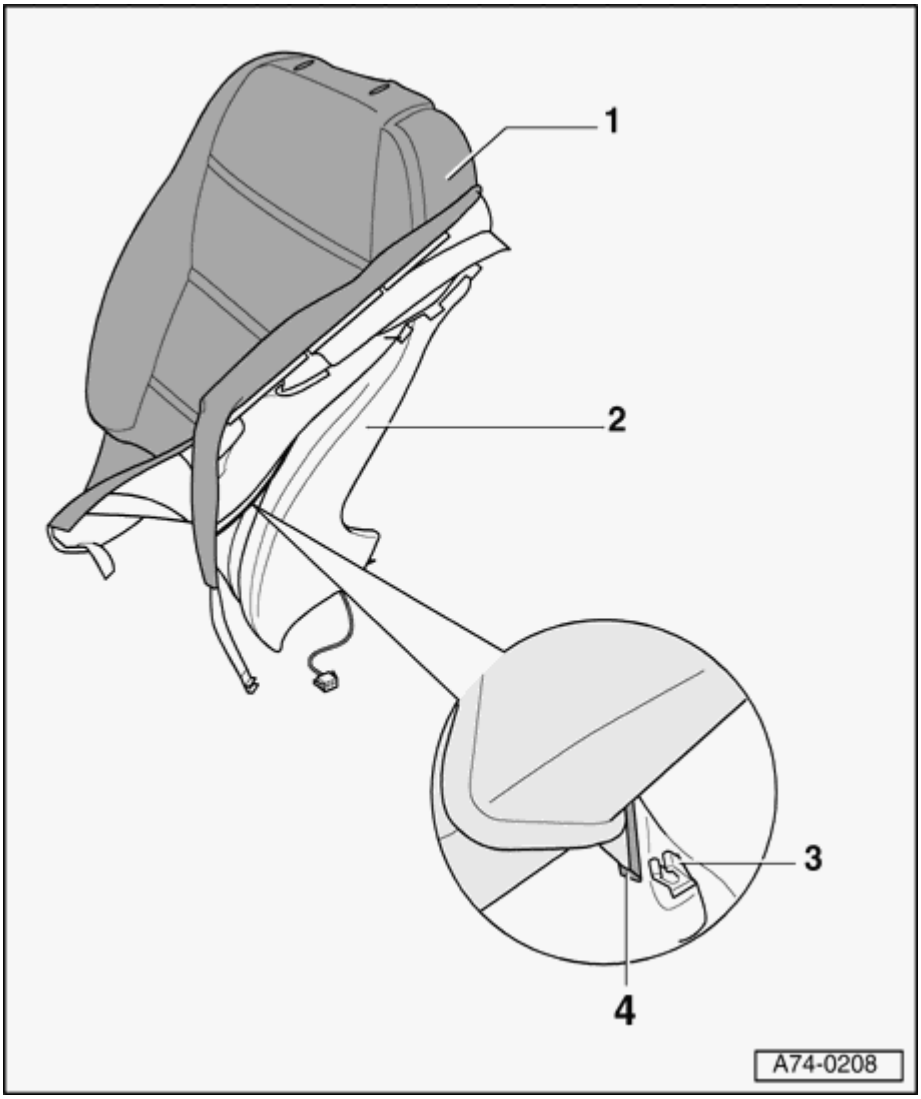


Fig. 880: Separating Cover From Upholstery
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover

- Removal:
  - Lever out grip channels - **4** - from plastic clips - **3** - using a screwdriver.
- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

- Replaced damaged plastic clips.

2 - Upholstery

cardiagn.com

3 - Plastic clips

4 - Fastening strips

Headrest guides, removing and installing

Removing

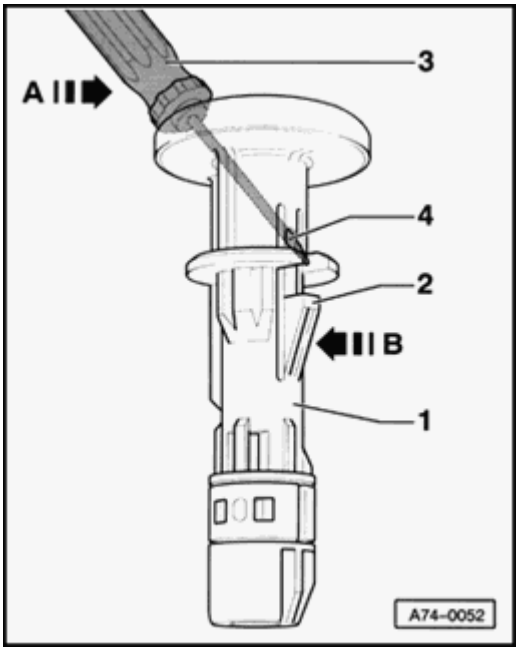


Fig. 881: Headrest Guides, Removing And Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

For clarity, headrest guide - **1** - is shown removed.

- Insert an upholstery needle or screwdriver - **3** - (max. width 2 mm) into hole - **4** - (hole - **4** - is located across from retaining clip for headrest guide).
- Pry screwdriver - **3** - in direction of arrow - **A** - and press catch - **2** - in direction of arrow - **B** - , pull out headrest guide - **1** - while doing so.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Seat heating element, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove cover and padding from seat pan --> **Seating area cover and upholstery, removing and installing (standard seat)**.

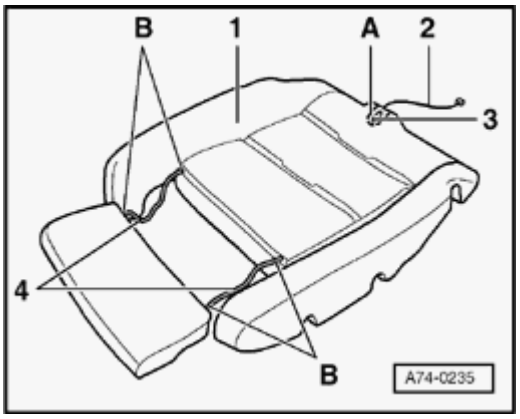


Fig. 882: Seat Heating Element (Sports Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut section - **A** - from old heating element - **1** -.
- Remove cable - **2** -.
- Cut off cables - **4** - (2x) at - **B** - positions (4x).

Installing

- Align heating element - **1** - on seat surface, remove protective foil and glue heating element to cushion.
- Insert cable - **2** - into designated opening - **3** -.
- Lay wire connections without crossing into bottom of openings at positions - **4** -.

Backrest heating element, removing and installing

Backrest heating element (glued in), removing and installing

Removing:

- Remove seat --> **Front power seats with memory, removing and installing**.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front backrest, removing and installing**.
- Remove cover and padding from backrest --> **Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

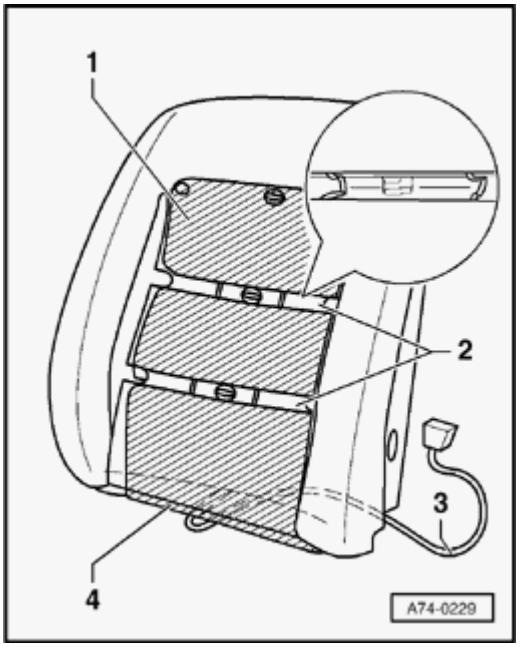


Fig. 883: Identifying Heating Element, Electrical Wire & Gap
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut wire - **3** - off of old heating element - **1** -.

Installing:

- Align heating element - **1** - on backrest surface, remove protective foil and glue heating element to cushion.
- Insert electrical wire - **3** - into gap - **4** -.
- Lay wire connections without crossing into bottom of openings at positions - **2** -.

Cover and upholstery for headrests with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing

Removing

- Remove headrest with insertion lock --> **Headrest with slide in locking mechanism, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

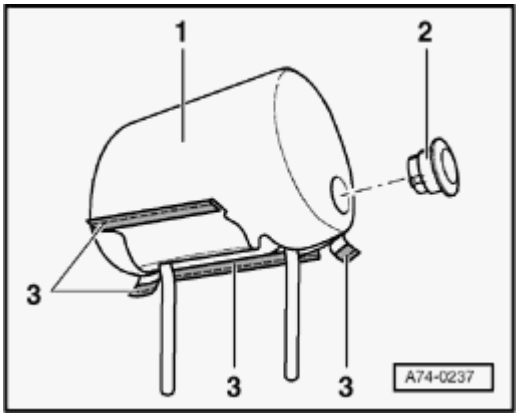


Fig. 884: Cover And Upholstery For Headrests With Slide In Locking Mechanism Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Using a screwdriver, pry out grip channels - **3** - (4x).
- Remove button - **2** -.
- Remove cover and upholstery - **1** -.

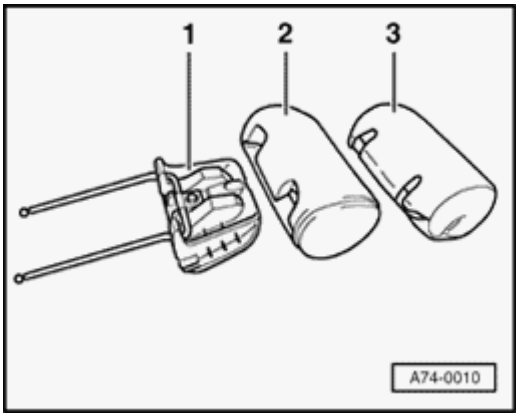


Fig. 885: Removing/Installing Cushion Out Of Cover
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove cushion - **2** - out of cover - **3** -.

Installing

- Insert cushion - **2** - with proper fit in cover - **3** -.
- Insert headrest mount - **1** - in upholstery with cover.
- Press retaining strips firmly in guide channel (test by pulling).

SEAT CUSHION AND COVER OF FRONT RS SPORT SEAT

Seat pan cover and padding, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

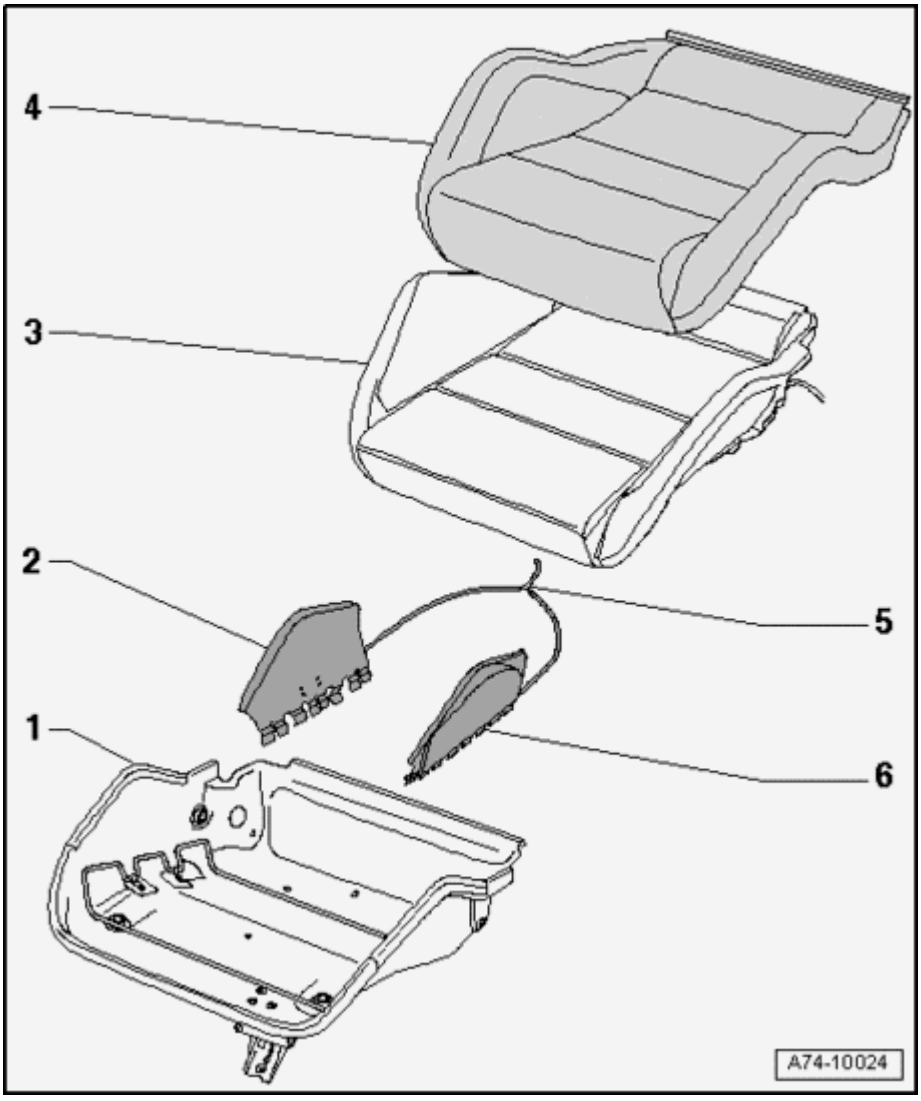


Fig. 886: Seat Pan Cover And Padding Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Seat pan

- Removing and installing --> **Front seat backrest and seat pan, removing and installing**

2 - Flap with air cushion for right seat bolster inflation adjustment

- Disengage **Disengaging flap with air cushion for seat bolster inflation adjustment**

3 - Seat pan cushion

4 - Seat pan cover

Removing

cardiagn.com

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Remove seat pan --> **Front seat backrest and seat pan, removing and installing**.
- Remove Velcro fastener on left and right from rear seat cover.
- Pry grip channel at edge of seat cover - **4** - all around out of guide at seat pan - **1** -.
- Carefully loosen seams of seat pan cover from Velcro fastener at seat pan cushion - **3** -.
- Remove seat cover.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

5 - Y-piece

- Connects both pneumatic hoses to seat bolster inflation adjustment

6 - Flap with air cushion for left seat bolster inflation adjustment

- Disengage **Disengaging flap with air cushion for seat bolster inflation adjustment**

Disengaging flap with air cushion for seat bolster inflation adjustment

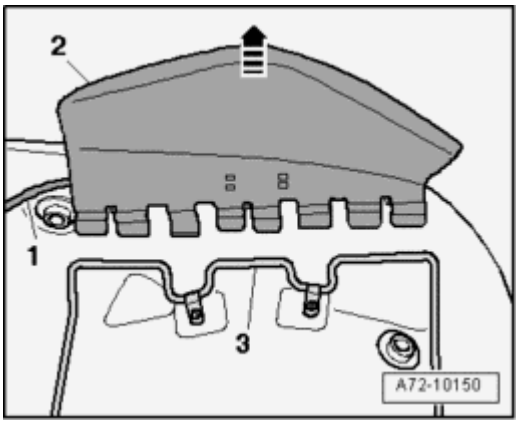


Fig. 887: Disengaging Flap With Air Cushion For Seat Bolster Inflation Adjustment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Remove flap - **2** - with air cushion for seat bolster inflation adjustment from retaining bracket - **3** - of seat pan - **arrow** -.
- Disconnect pneumatic hose - **1** - to seat bolster inflation adjustment at Y-piece.
- Remove flap with air cushion for seat bolster inflation adjustment.

Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

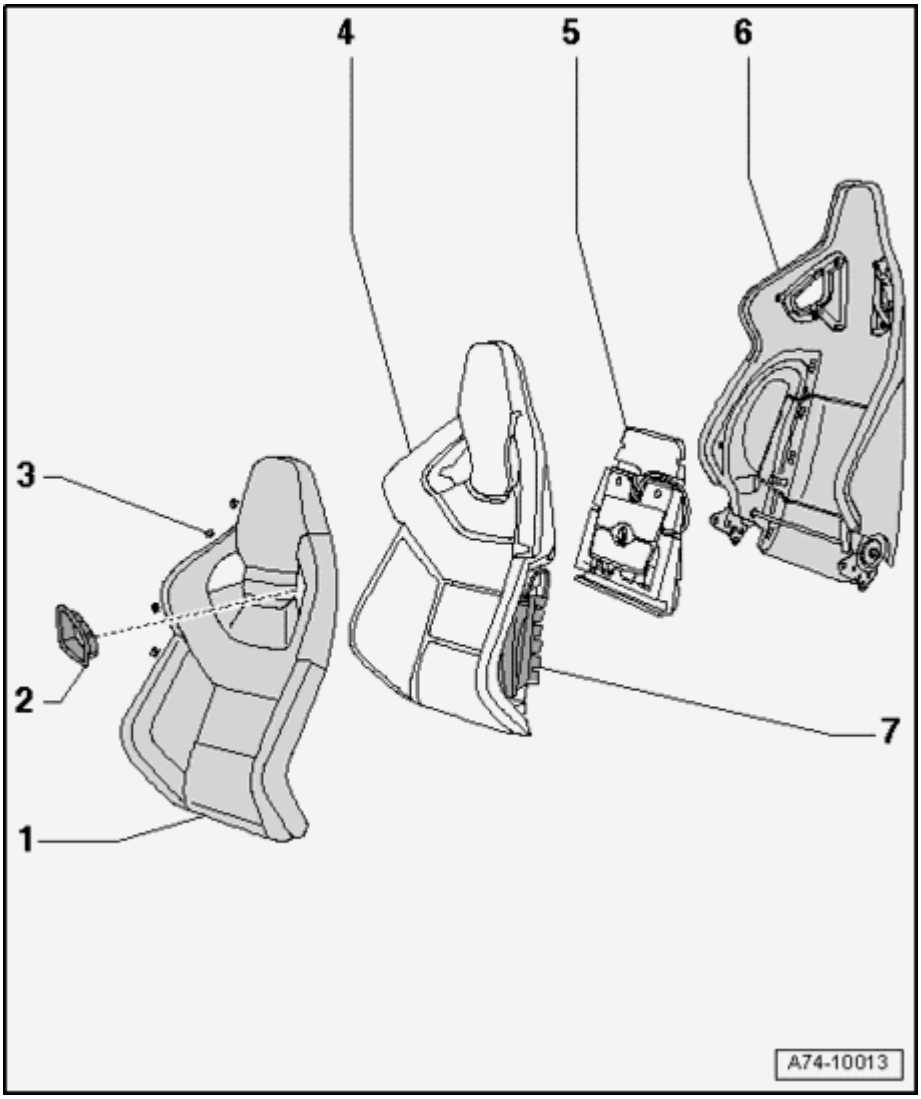


Fig. 888: Backrest Cover And Padding Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Backrest cover

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front seat backrest and seat pan, removing and installing**.
- Remove both outer parts of belt guide **Outer part of belt guide, removing and installing**.
- Pry grip channel at edge of backrest cover - **1** - all around out of guide at backrest - **6** - **Pry grip channel for backrest cover out of guide**.

- In bending sections, grip channel is also secured using retaining clamps - **3** - , carefully remove retaining clamps.

cardiagn.com

- Carefully loosen seams of backrest cover from Velcro fastener at backrest cushion - **4** -.
- Disengage lower retaining strip at pneumatic block - **5** -.
- Remove backrest cover.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

2 - Belt guide, outer part

- Removing and installing **Outer part of belt guide, removing and installing**

3 - Retaining clamps (8x)

- For grip channel of backrest cover
- Install in bended section of backrest

4 - Backrest padding

Removing

- Remove backrest cover - **1** -.
- Disengage flaps for backrest bolster inflation adjustment - **7** - at retaining bracket of backrest **Disengaging flap for backrest bolster inflation adjustment**.
- Disconnect pneumatic hose to backrest bolster inflation adjustment.
- Remove backrest cushion from backrest.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

5 - Pneumatic block

Removing

- Remove backrest cover - **1** -.
- Remove backrest cushion - **4** -.
- Carefully loosen bonding of pneumatic block from backrest.
- Swivel pneumatic block toward front at upper edge.

- Free up electrical wiring harness.
- Remove pneumatic block.

Installing

cardiagn.com

Installation is reverse of removal.

- If necessary, replace double adhesive tape .

- Assignment of pneumatic block --> **Pneumatic block - component assignment**

6 - Backrest

- Removing and installing --> **Front seat backrest and seat pan, removing and installing**

7 - Flap for backrest bolster inflation adjustment

- Disengage **Disengaging flap for backrest bolster inflation adjustment**

Pry grip channel for backrest cover out of guide

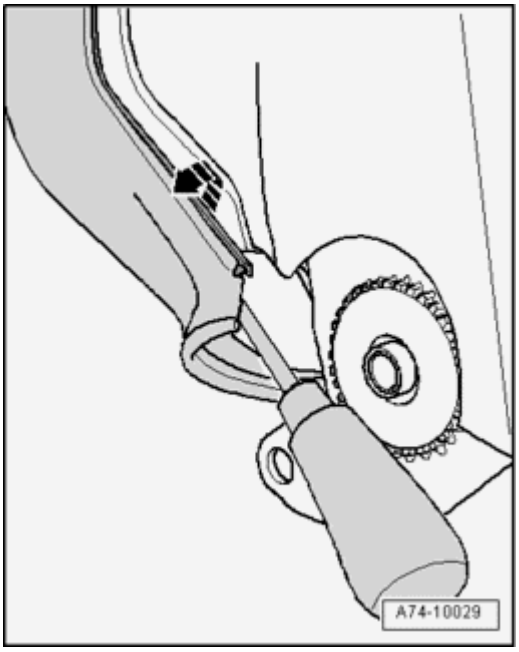


Fig. 889: Pry Grip Channel For Backrest Cover Out Of Guide
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Starting at bottom, pry grip channel for backrest cover out of guide at backrest, using e.g. an awl - **arrow** - ; lightly press together backrest cushion in order to release backrest cover.

Disengaging flap for backrest bolster inflation adjustment

cardiagn.com

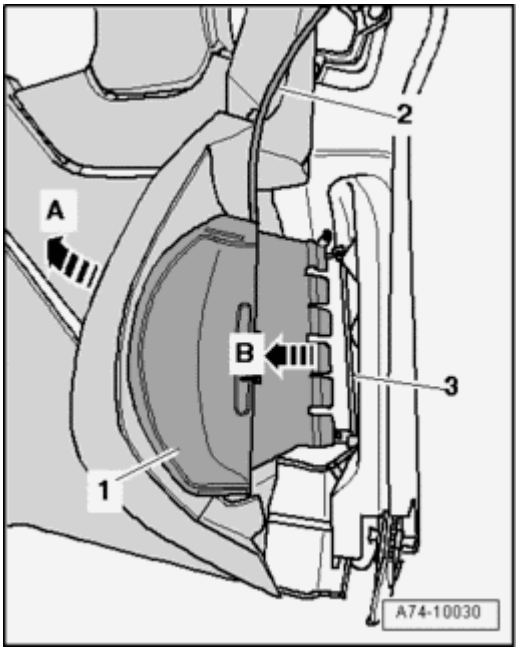


Fig. 890: Disengaging Flap For Backrest Bolster Inflation Adjustment
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Swivel backrest bolster inward - **arrow A** - and disengage flaps - **1** - for backrest bolster inflation adjustment at retaining bracket - **3** - of backrest - **arrow B** -.
- Disconnect pneumatic hose - **2** - to backrest bolster inflation adjustment.
- Remove backrest cushion from backrest.

Seat heating element, removing and installing

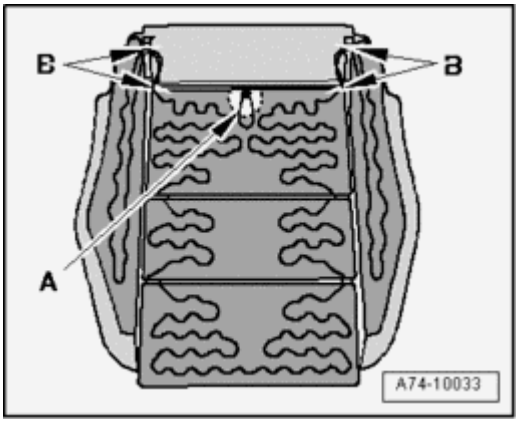


Fig. 891: Seat Heating Element Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.

cardiagn.com

- Remove seat pan --> **Front seat backrest and seat pan, removing and installing**.
- Remove seat pan cover and upholstery --> **Seat pan cover and padding, removing and installing**.
- Cut out area - **A** - with electrical connection wire from old heating element.
- Pull out old electrical connection wire.
- Disconnect electrical wire connections to heating elements at seat bolsters at positions - **B** -.

Installing

- Align new heating element on seat surface, remove protective foil and glue new heating element to same positions as old heating elements.
- Route connecting wires to seat bolsters through openings in seat cushion without crossing.
- Guide electrical connection wire downward through designated opening in seat cushion.

Backrest heating element, removing and installing

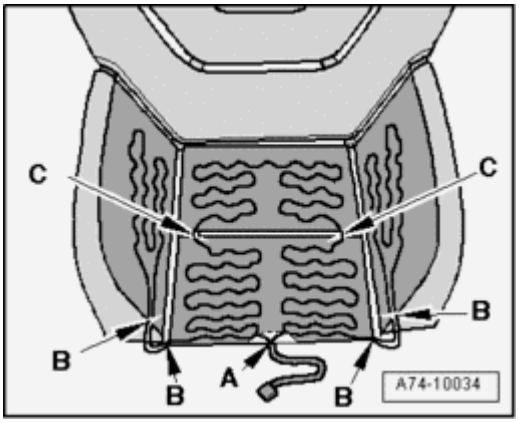


Fig. 892: Backrest Heating Element Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Remove seat --> **Seat, removing and installing**.
- Remove the backrest --> **Front seat backrest and seat pan, removing and installing**.

NOTE:

- **Electrical wiring harness must not be loosened at seat pan.**
- **Set aside backrest toward rear on soft surface.**

- Remove backrest cover and upholstery --> **Backrest cover and padding, removing and installing**.
- Cut out area - **A** - with electrical connection wire from old heating element.
- Remove old electrical connection wire.
- Disconnect electrical wire connections to heating elements at backrest bolsters at positions - **B** -.

cardiagn.com

- Disconnect electrical connection wires to upper backrest heating element at positions - **C** -.

Installing

- Align new heating element on backrest surface, remove protective foil and glue new heating element to same positions as old heating elements.
- Route connecting wires to backrest bolsters through openings in seat cushion without crossing.

REAR SEAT COVERS AND UPHOLSTERY

Seat bench cover and upholstery, removing and installing

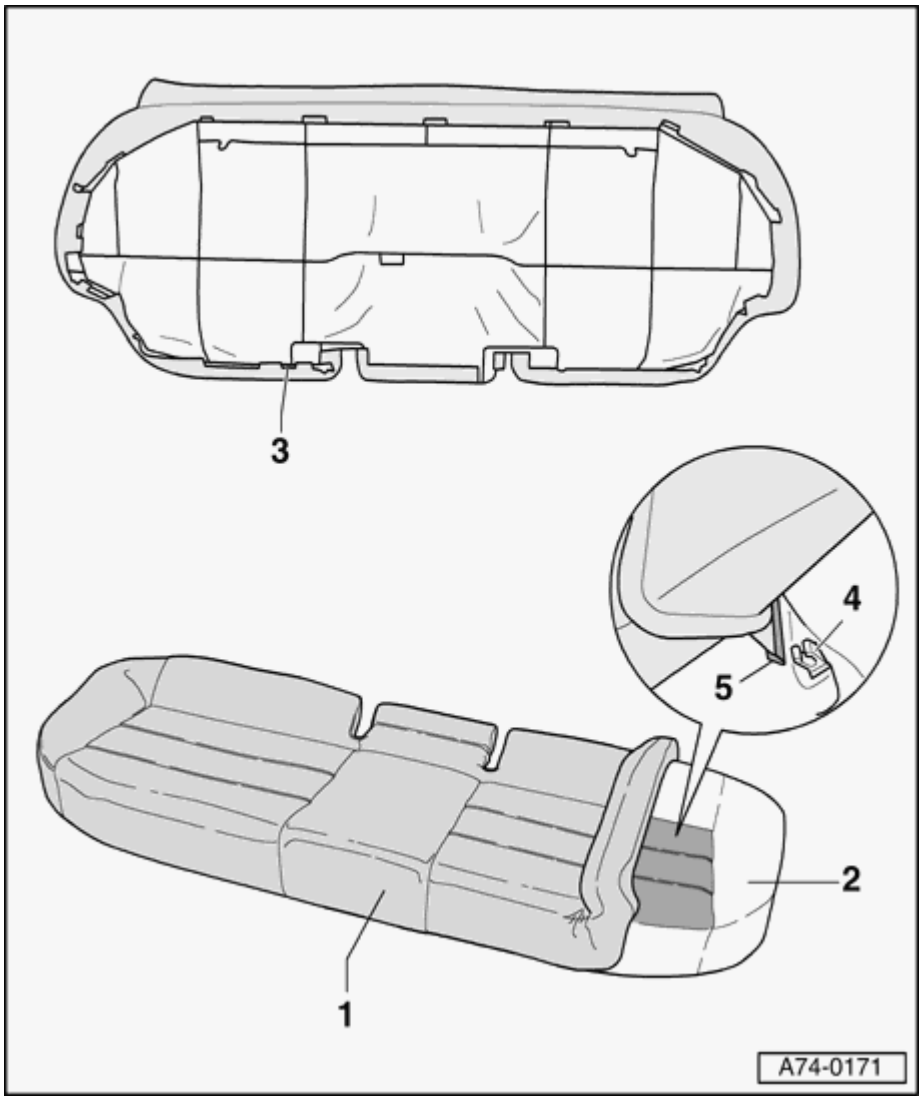


Fig. 893: Seat Bench Cover And Upholstery Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover

cardiagn.com

- Removal:

  - Remove rear seat bench: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles up to 10.04** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.
  - Pry out plastic strips - **3** - using a screwdriver.
  - Turn back cover - **1** -.
  - Remove cover - **1** - upward and press in plastic clips - **4** - (24x) using a screwdriver.
  - Pry out plastic strips - **5** -.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

  - Replaced damaged plastic clips.

2 - Upholstery

3 - Plastic strips (Qty. 24)

4 - Plastic clips (Qty. 24)

- Replace damaged plastic clips.

5 - Plastic strips

Cover and cushion for solid rear backrest, removing and installing

Separating cover and upholstery from backrest frame

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

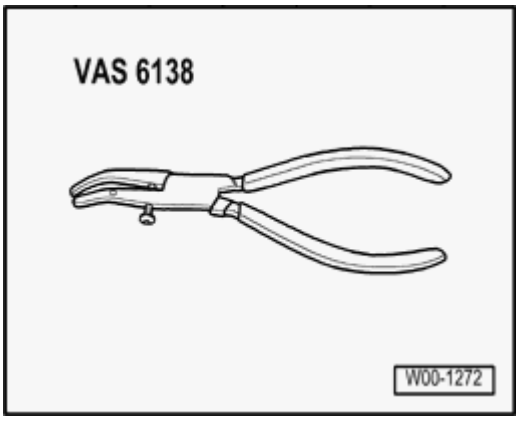


Fig. 894: Closing Pliers VAS 6138
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

cardiagn.com

- Closing pliers VAS 6138

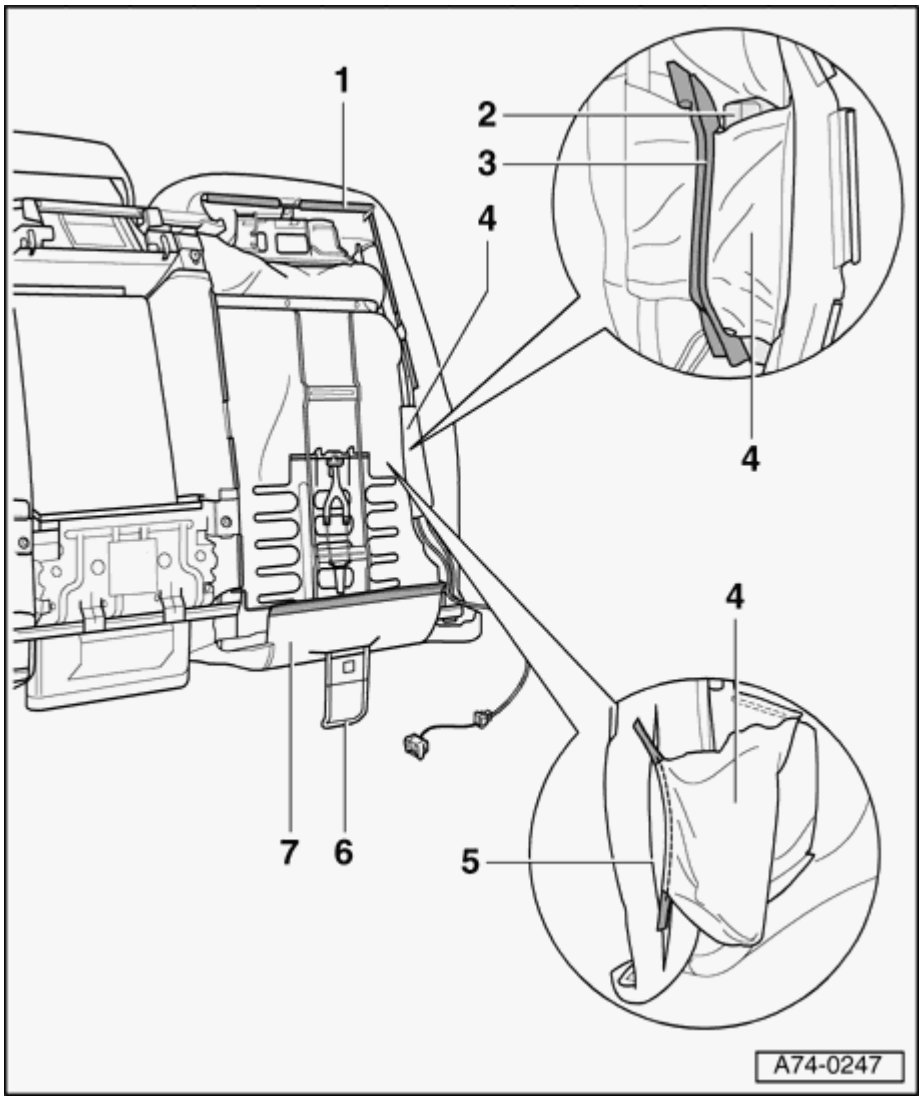


Fig. 895: Cover And Cushion For Solid Rear Backrest Remove/Install Components (Separating Cover And Upholstery From Backrest Frame)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Peripheral fastening strips

2 - Side airbag

3 - Zip fastener

4 - Protective cover for side airbag

5 - Opening in cushion

cardiagn.com

6 - Support

7 - Cover

- Removal:

  - Remove rear seat bench: Vehicles through 10.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles up to 10.04** , vehicles from 11.04 --> **Seatbench, removing and installing - vehicles from 11.04**.
  - Remove rear seat backrest --> **Fixed backrest, removing and installing**.
  - Remove headrests.

- Headrests with slide in locking mechanism --> **Headrest with insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Headrests without slide in locking mechanism --> **Headrests without insertion lock, removing and installing**

  - Remove headrest guides:

- Headrest guides with slide in locking mechanism --> **Headrest guides with insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Outer headrest guides without slide in locking mechanism --> **Outer headrest guides without insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Inner headrest guides without slide in locking mechanism --> **Inner headrest guides without insertion lock, removing and installing**

  - Use a screwdriver to pry out retaining strips - **1** - all around.
  - Slide cover - **7** - at bottom over bracket - **6** -.
  - Turn back cover - **7** - in area of side airbag - **2** -.
  - Unzip - **3** - protective cover of side airbag - **4** -.

  - Remove protective cover for side airbag - **4** - through opening in cushion - **5** -.
  - Remove cover and cushion from backrest frame.

- **Installing:**

Install cover and cushion in reverse order of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

  - Close zip fastener on side airbag protective cover with Closing Pliers VAS 6138.

Separating cover from upholstery

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

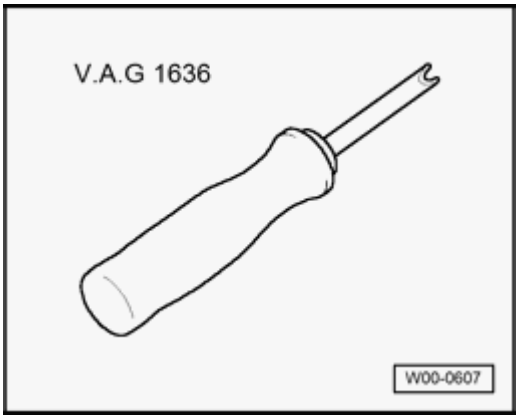
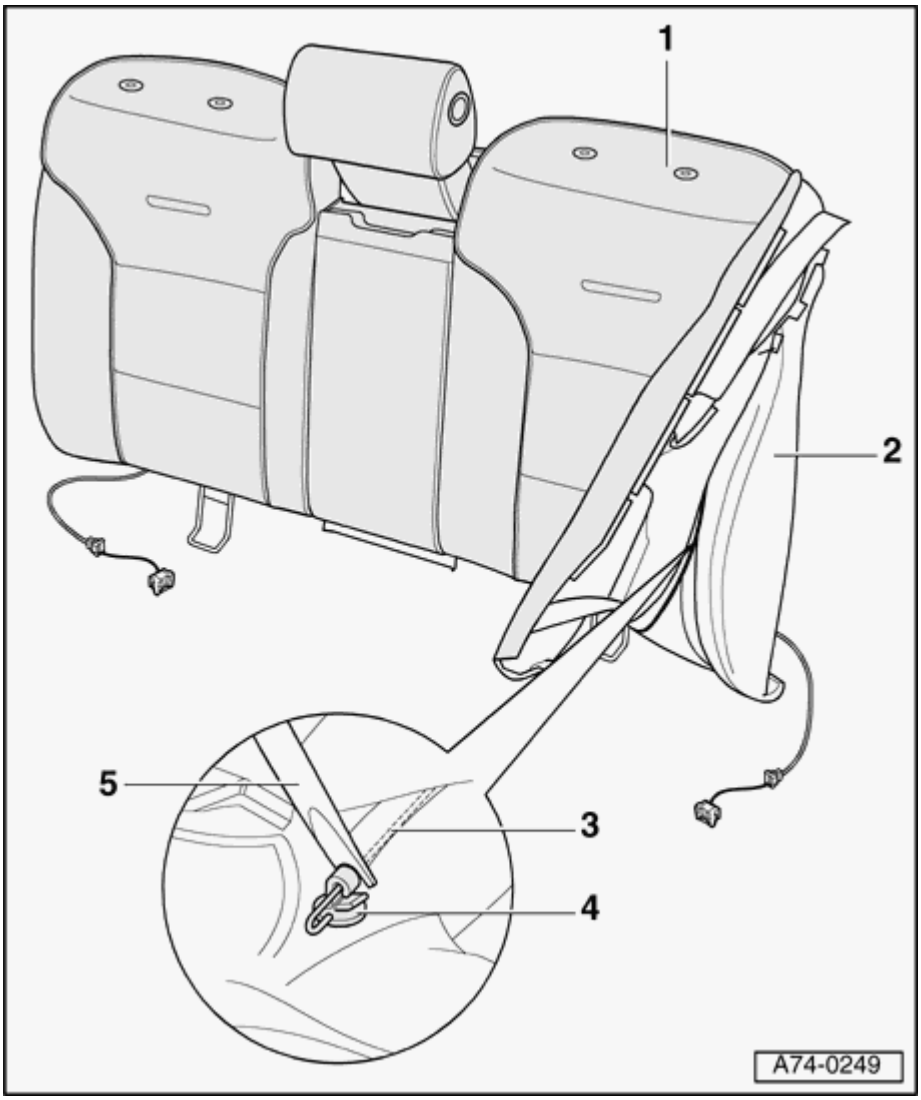


Fig. 896: Awl V.A.G 1636
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Awl V.A.G 1636A



cardiagn.com

Fig. 897: Cover And Cushion For Solid Rear Backrest Remove/Install Components (Separating Cover From Upholstery)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Cover

- Removal:

  - Pry brackets - **3** - out of plastic clips - **4** - using awl V.A.G 1636A - **5** -.
  - Remove cover - **1** - from cushion - **2** -.

- **Installing:**

Install cover in reverse order of removal. Observe the following when doing so:

  - Replaced damaged plastic clips.
  - Press brackets of transverse beams in plastic clips first.

2 - Upholstery

3 - Support

4 - Plastic clips

5 - Awl V.A.G 1636A

Divided backrest cover and upholstery, removing and installing

1/3 backrest cover and upholstery, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

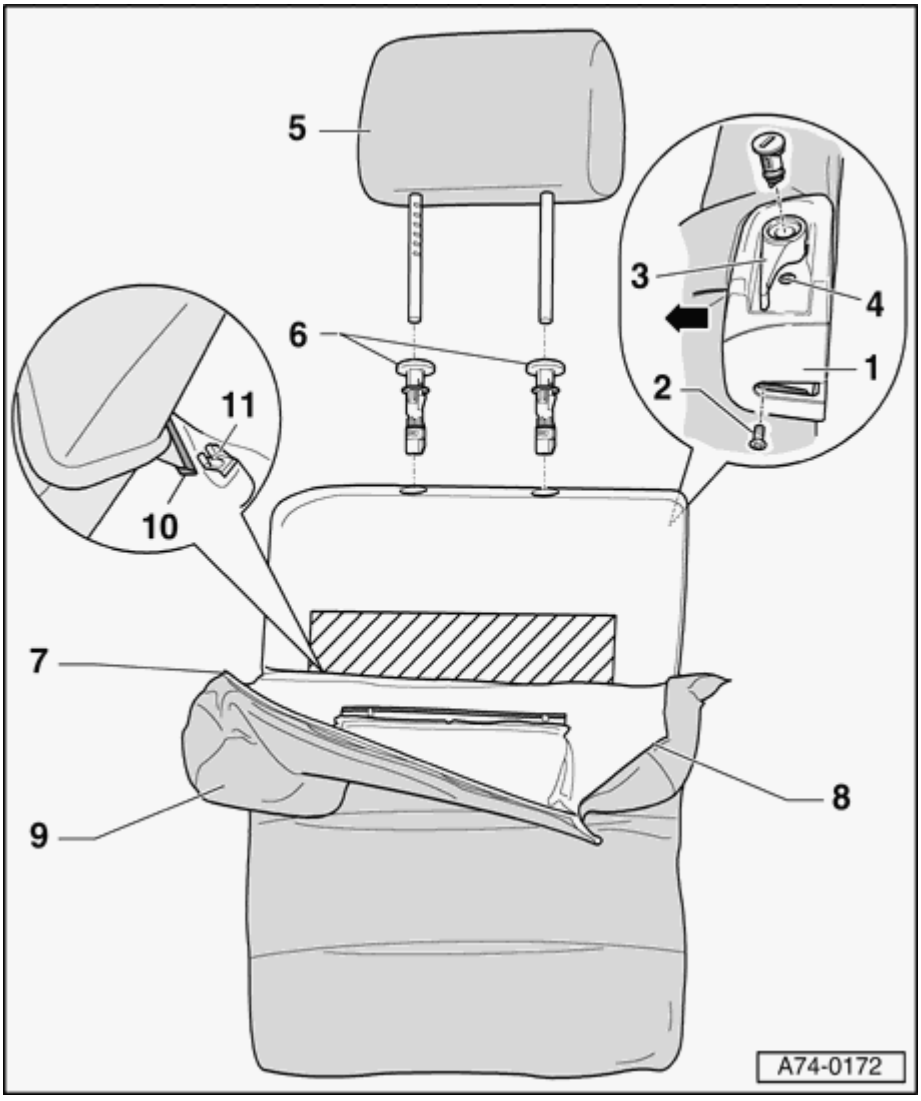


Fig. 898: Divided Backrest Cover And Upholstery Remove/Install Components (1/3 Backrest Cover And Upholstery, Removing And Installing)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Removal:

  - Remove backrest --> **1/3 backrest, removing and installing**
  - Remove bolt - **2** - of lock trim - **1** -.
  - Press lock lever - **3** - in direction of arrow.
  - Remove bolt - **4** - beneath lock lever - **3** -.

  - Lift latch trim - **1** - off.
  - Remove headrests - **5** - :

- Headrests with slide in locking mechanism --> **Headrest with insertion lock, removing and installing**

cardiagn.com

- Headrests without slide in locking mechanism --> **Headrests without insertion lock, removing and installing**

  - Remove headrest guides - **6** -.

- Headrest guides with slide in locking mechanism --> **Headrest guides with insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Outer headrest guides without slide in locking mechanism --> **Outer headrest guides without insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Inner headrest guides without slide in locking mechanism --> **Inner headrest guides without insertion lock, removing and installing**

  - Pry out rear plastic strip all around - **7** - and plastic strip - **8** - using a screwdriver and remove cushion from backrest panel.
  - Turn back cover - **1** -.
  - Pry out grip channels - **10** - from plastic clips - **11** - using a screwdriver.

1 - Latch trim

2 - Screw

3 - Lock lever

4 - Screw

5 - Headrest

- Outer rear headrests not the same as front headrests.
- If you remove all headrests, mark them with adhesive tape.

6 - Headrest guide (Qty. 2)

- With insertion lock: Removing and installing --> **Headrest guides with insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Without insertion lock: Removing and installing --> **Outer headrest guides without insertion lock, removing and installing**

7 - Rear plastic strip all around

8 - Plastic strip

9 - Cover

10 - Fastening strips (2x)

cardiagn.com

11 - Plastic clips

- Replace damaged plastic clips

2/3 backrest cover and upholstery, removing and installing

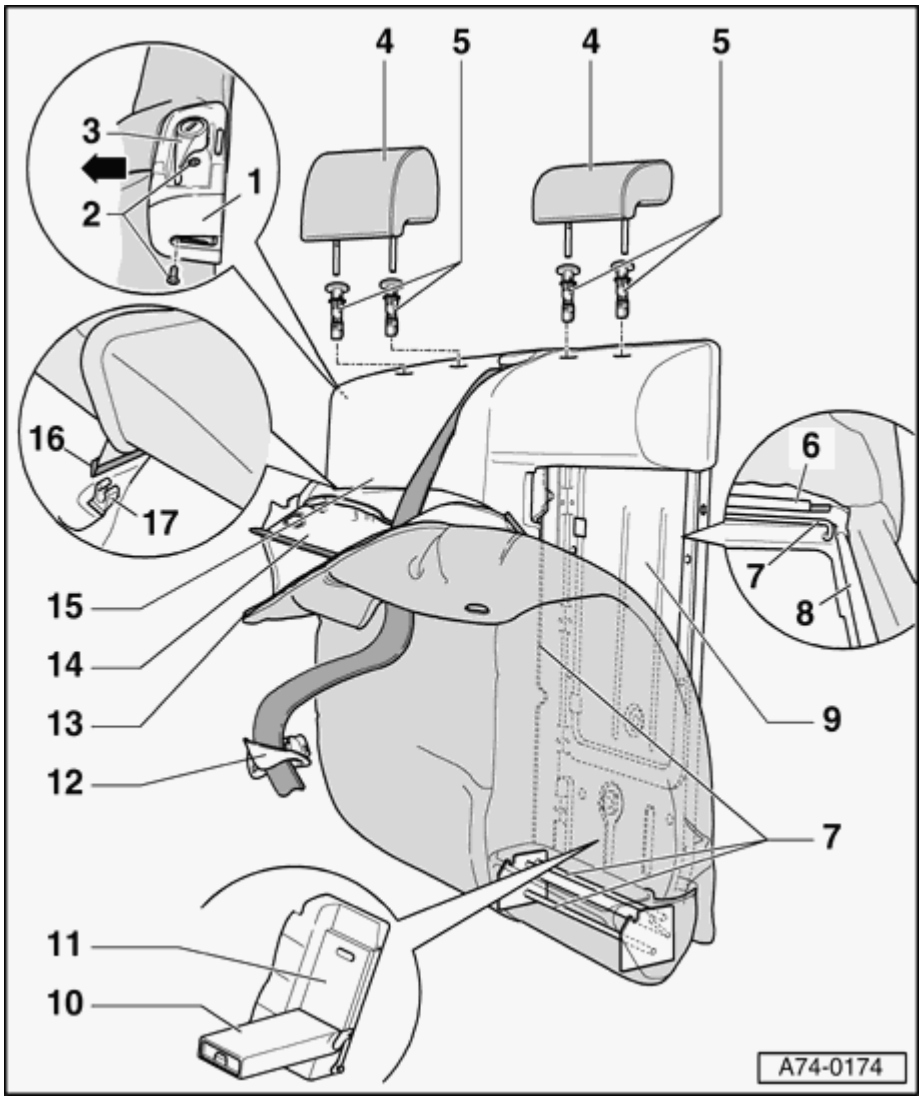


Fig. 899: Divided Backrest Cover And Upholstery Remove/Install Components (2/3 Backrest Cover And Upholstery, Removing And Installing)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Removal:

- Remove backrest --> **2/3 right backrest, removing and installing**
- Remove bolt - **2** - (2x) of lock trim - **1** -.
- Press latch lever - **3** - in direction of arrow.
- Lift latch trim - **1** - off.

cardiagn.com

- Remove headrests - **4** - :

- Headrests with slide in locking mechanism --> **Headrest with insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Headrests without slide in locking mechanism --> **Headrests without insertion lock, removing and installing**

- Remove headrest guides - **5** -.

- Headrest guides with slide in locking mechanism --> **Headrest guides with insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Outer headrest guides without slide in locking mechanism --> **Outer headrest guides without insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Inner headrest guides without slide in locking mechanism --> **Inner headrest guides without insertion lock, removing and installing**

- Remove center armrest - **11** -.
- Remove ski sack - **11** - --> **Ski sack, removing and installing (folding rear seat backrest)**.
- Using a screwdriver, pry off cover for three-point seatbelt - **12** -.
- Pry off plastic strip - **6** - (4x) from brackets - **7** - (4x).

- Remove plastic strip - **8** - (4x) from bracket.
- Pry out rear plastic strip - **13** - all around using a screwdriver.
- Remove upholstery piece - **15** - from backrest panel - **9** -.
- Turn back cover - **14** -.

- Lever out grip channel - **16** - from plastic clip - **17** - using a screwdriver.
- Remove cover - **14** -.

cardiagn.com

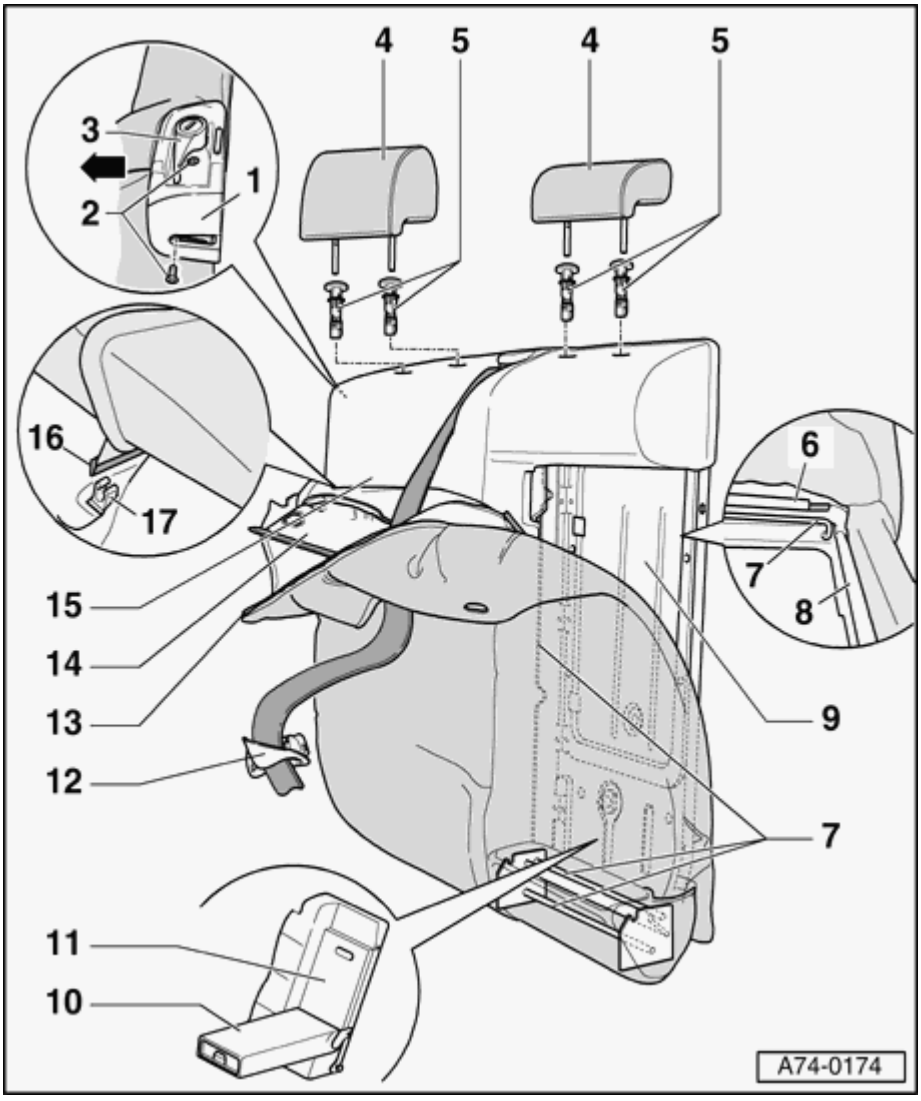


Fig. 900: Divided Backrest Cover And Upholstery Remove/Install Components (2/3 Backrest Cover And Upholstery, Removing And Installing)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Latch trim

2 - Bolts (Qty. 2)

3 - Lock lever

4 - Headrest (Qty. 2)

- Outer rear headrests not the same as front headrests.
- If you remove all headrests, mark them with adhesive tape.

5 - Headrest guides (Qty. 4)

cardiagn.com

- Removing and installing --> **Headrest guides with insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Install headrest guide with button at left.

6 - Plastic strip (Qty. 4)

7 - Bracket (Qty. 4)

8 - Plastic strip (Qty. 4)

9 - Backrest shell

10 - Center armrest

11 - Ski bag

12 - Three-point belt cover

13 - Rear plastic strip all around

14 - Cover

15 - Upholstery

16 - Fastening strip

17 - Plastic clips

- Replace damaged plastic clips

Check points after complete backrest installation

- Seat belt relay and belt webbing must not make contact with or rub against foam parts or seat cover fabric.
- Anti-twist stop must follow all movements of belt webbing.
- Belt webbing must move freely in all directions.

Lock cylinder, removing and installing

cardiagn.com

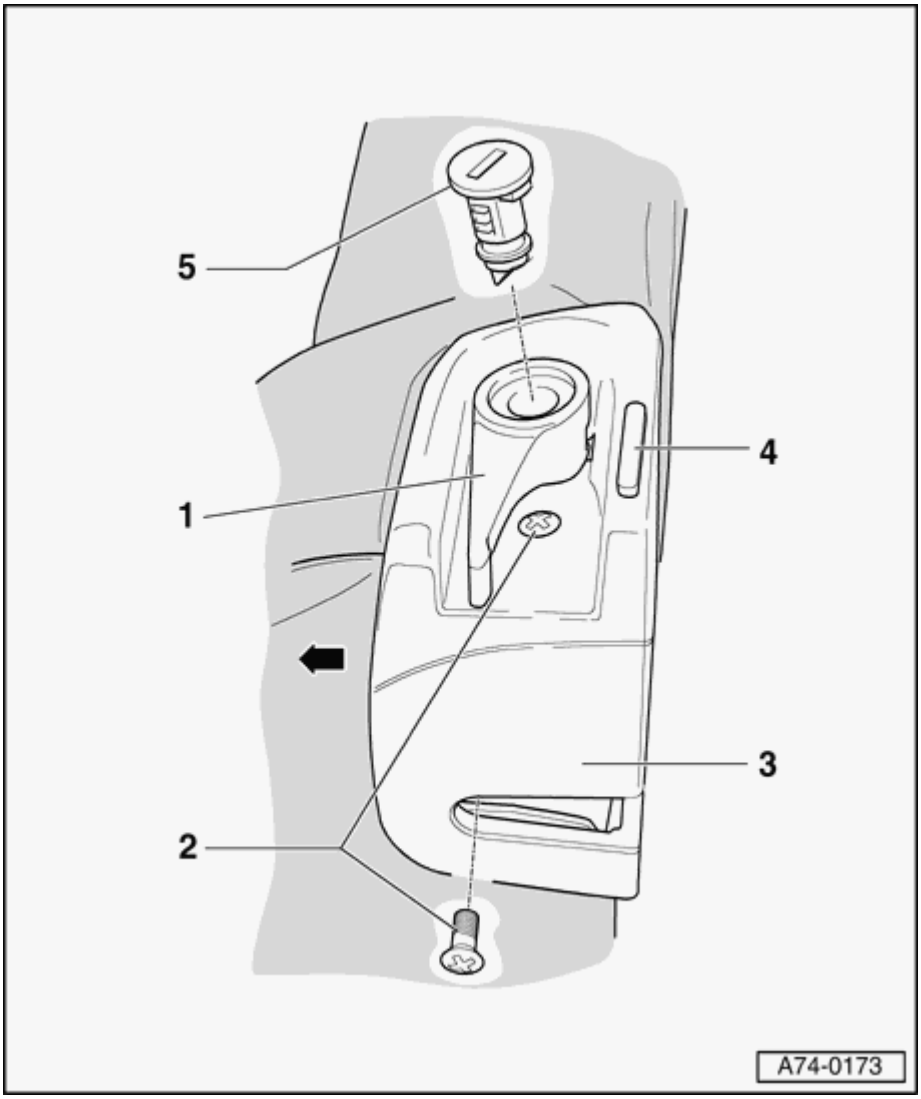


Fig. 901: Lock Cylinder Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Removal:

  - Remove bolts - **2** - (2x) of lock trim - **3** -.
  - Detach lock lever from below from catches (2x).
  - Pry off top of lock lever using screwdriver.

- **Installing:**

Installation is reverse of removal.

cardiagn.com

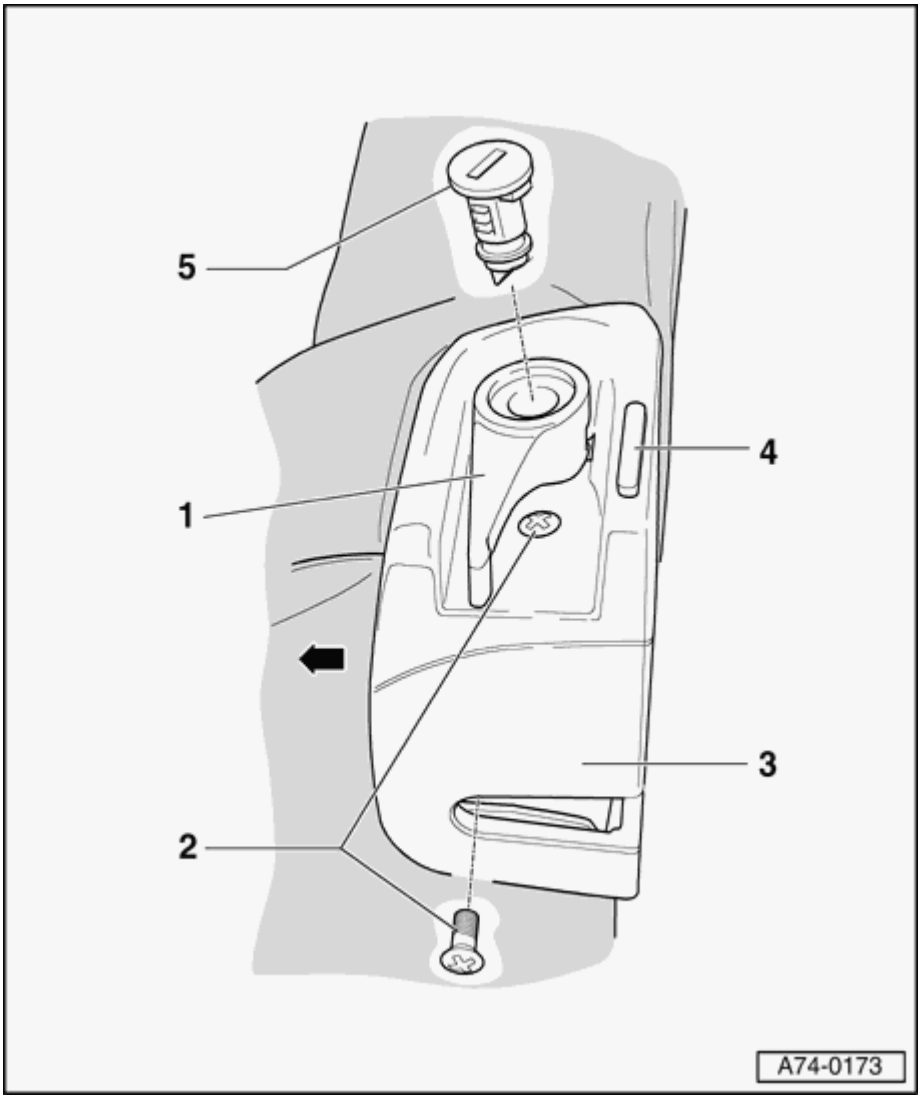


Fig. 902: Lock Cylinder Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

1 - Lock lever

2 - Bolts

3 - Latch trim

4 - Latch trim

- When rear backrest is locked, pin - **1** - is 2 mm above lock trim.
- If rear backrest is not locked, pin lies approx. 20 mm above lock trim and a red mark is visible.

5 - Lock cylinder

cardiagn.com

- To remove and install the lock cylinder, ignition key must be inserted.

Headrest guides with insertion lock, removing and installing

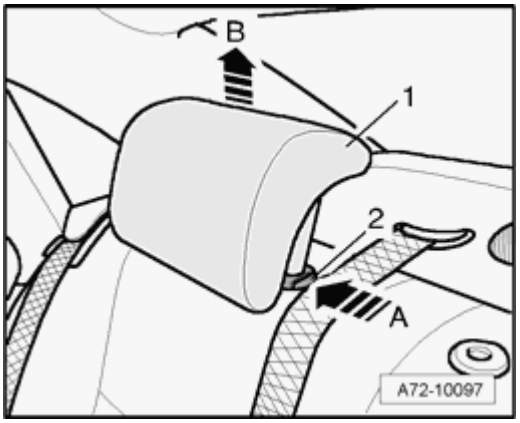


Fig. 903: Pushing Release Button And Pulling Headrest Upward As Far As Possible
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Push release button - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and pull headrest - **1** - upward as far as possible - **arrow B** - , keep release button pushed while doing so.

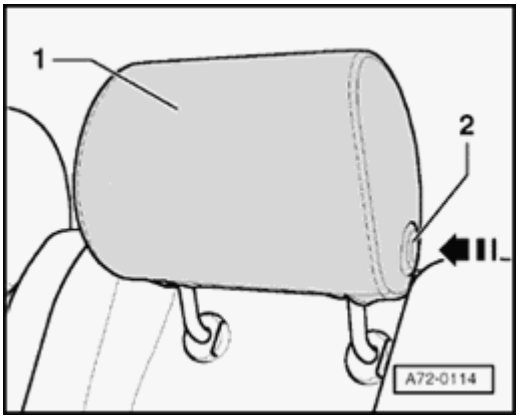


Fig. 904: Pressing Release Button On Headrest Until Stop
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press release button - **2** - on headrest - **1** - until stop - **arrow** -.
- Slide headrest down completely on rods, release button on headrest must be kept pressed while doing so.
- Remove headrest completely from headrest guides.

cardiagn.com

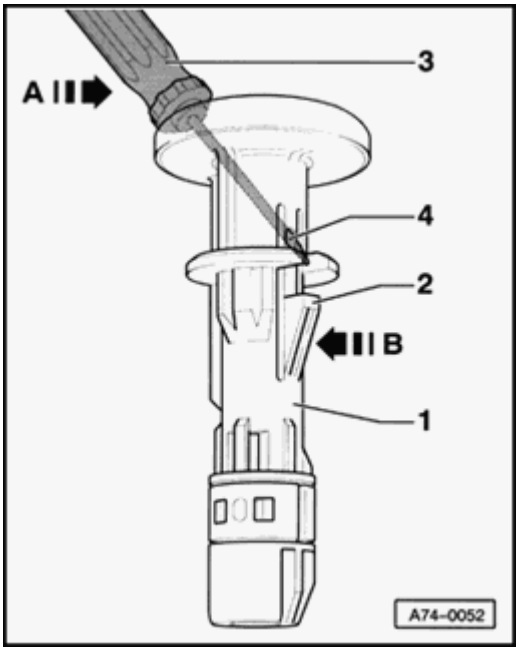


Fig. 905: Headrest Guides, Removing And Installing
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

NOTE:

- **For clarity, headrest guide is depicted as removed.**

- Insert an upholstery needle or screwdriver - **3** - (max. width 2 mm) into hole - **4** - (it is located across from retaining clip for headrest guide).
- Disengage catch - **2** - of headrest guide - **1** - in - **direction of arrow B** - , press screwdriver - **3** - in - **direction of arrow A** - to do so.
- Remove headrest guide.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Outer headrest guides without insertion lock, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

cardiagn.com

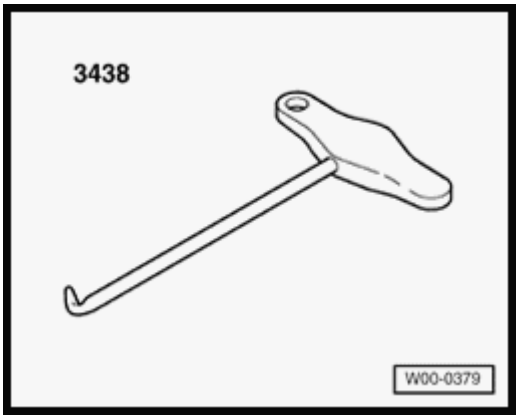


Fig. 906: Hook 3438
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Hook 3438

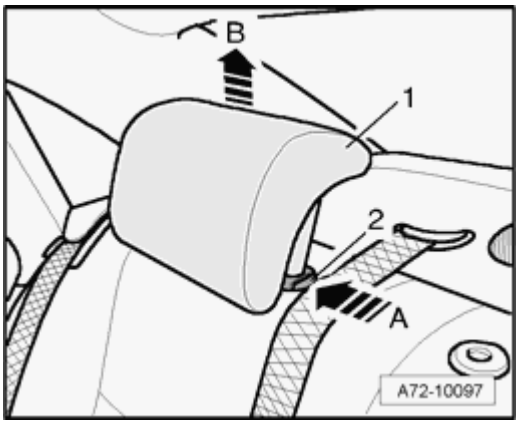


Fig. 907: Pushing Release Button And Pulling Headrest Upward As Far As Possible
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Push release button - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and pull headrest - **1** - upward as far as possible - **arrow B** - , keep release button pushed while doing so.

cardiagn.com

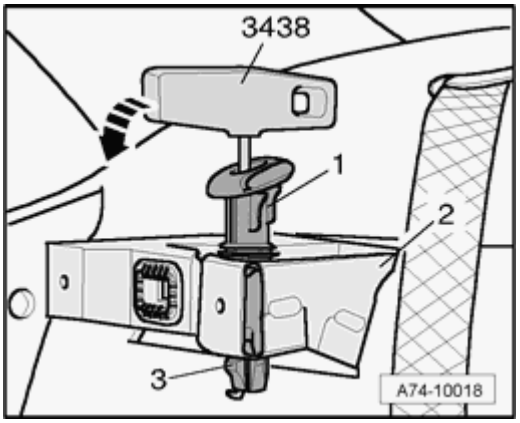


Fig. 908: Guiding Hook 3438 Into Hole In Headrest And Engage Hook At Retaining Tab
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Guide hook 3438 into hole in headrest - **1** - and engage hook at retaining tab - **3** -.
- Hook must point in direction of travel.
- Tilt hook 3438 toward front - **arrow** - and pull headrest guide upward at the same time and out of mount - **2** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal, but note the following:

- The headrest guide can only be inserted in one position.

Inner headrest guides without insertion lock, removing and installing

Special tools, testers and auxiliary items required

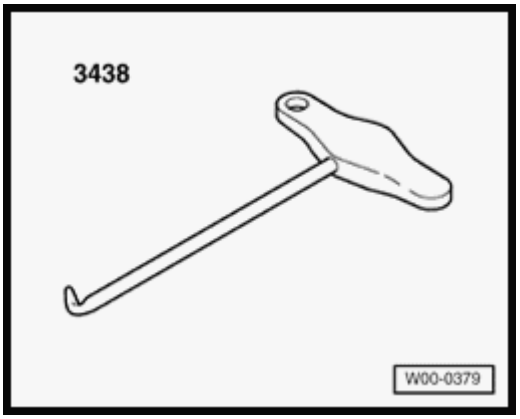


Fig. 909: Hook 3438
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Hook 3438

cardiagn.com

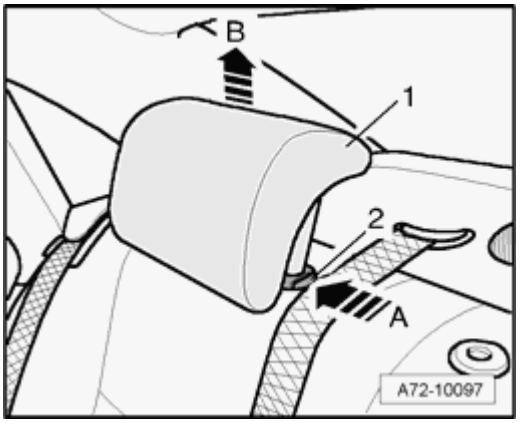


Fig. 910: Pushing Release Button And Pulling Headrest Upward As Far As Possible
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Removing

- Push release button - **2** - in - **direction of arrow A** - and pull headrest - **1** - upward as far as possible - **arrow B** - , keep release button pushed while doing so.

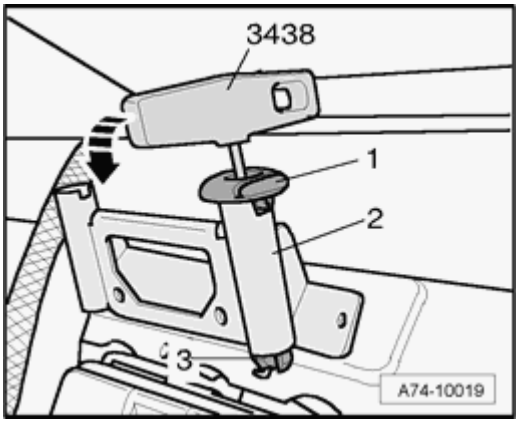


Fig. 911: Guiding Hook 3438 Into Hole In Headrest And Engaging Hook At Retaining Tab
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Guide hook 3438 into hole in headrest - **1** - and engage hook at retaining tab - **3** -.

- Hook must point in direction of travel.

- Tilt hook 3438 toward front - **arrow** - and pull headrest guide upward at the same time and out of mount - **2** -.

cardiagn.com

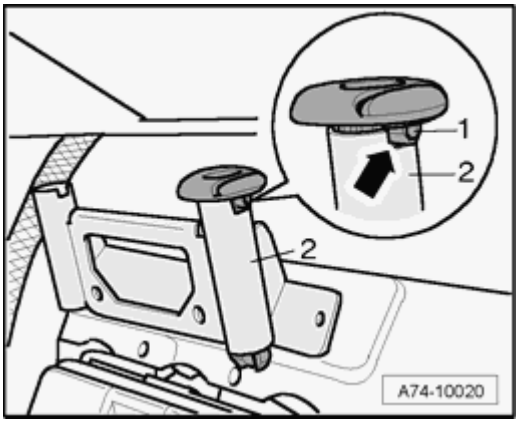


Fig. 912: Guiding Lug Of Headrest Guide Must Engage In Cut-Out Of Mount For Headrest Guide
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal, but note the following:

- The headrest guide can only be inserted in one position.
- Guide lug - **1** - of headrest guide must engage in cut-out - **arrow** - of mount - **2** - for headrest guide.

Frame for ski sack, removing and installing (foldable rear seat)

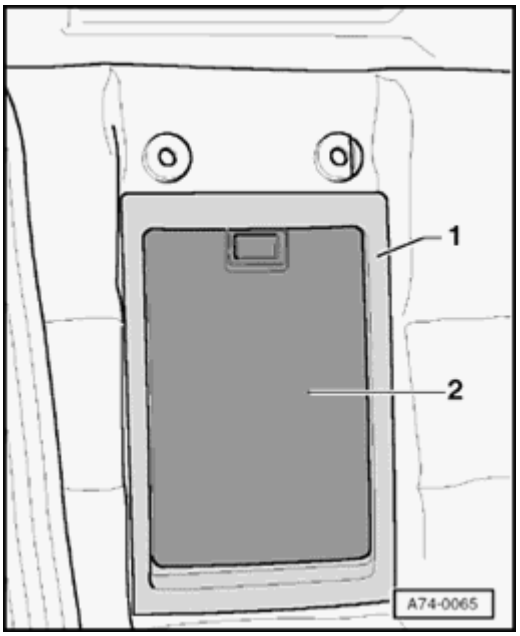


Fig. 913: Frame For Ski Sack (Foldable Rear Seat) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Pry out frame - **1** - for ski sack - **2** -.

Ski sack, removing and installing (folding rear seat backrest)

cardiagn.com

Removing

- Remove frame for ski sack --> **Frame for ski sack, removing and installing (foldable rear seat)**.

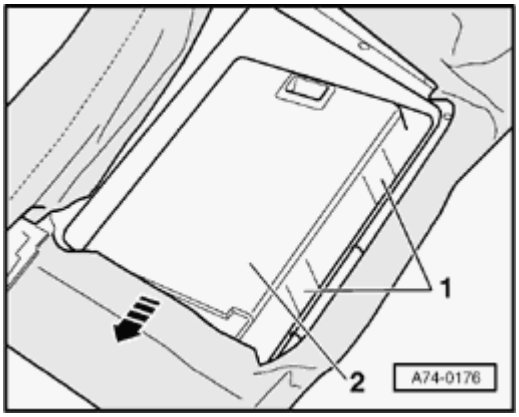


Fig. 914: Ski Sack (Folding Rear Seat Backrest) Remove/Install Components
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Press in tabs - **1** - (4x) and remove ski sack - **2** - in - **direction of arrow** -.

Installing

Installation is reverse of removal.

Ski sack cover, cutting out (non-folding seat)

Ski sack removed

- Cut cover starting at middle and working out to corners.

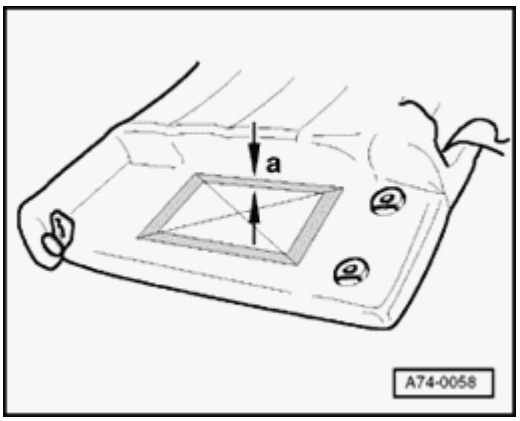


Fig. 915: Ski Sack Cover, Cutting Out (Non-Folding Seat)
Courtesy of VOLKSWAGEN UNITED STATES, INC.

- Cut triangles to dimension - **a** - , approx. 30 mm.

cardiagn.com

- Install ski sack.
- Place 30 mm of cover fabric between ski bag and backrest frame.
- Clip ski-sack frame into place.

REAR RECARO SEATS

Seat bench cover and upholstery, removing and installing

NOTE:

- **The technical construction of rear Recaro seats is identical to that of rear seats with divided backrests.**
- **The rear Recaro seats are only differentiated from standard seats by covers and upholstery. Differences for the positions of cushion grip channel and plastic clips of covers are possible.**

The following cross references serve for orientation:

- Cover and upholstery for rear seatbench, removing and installing --> **Seat bench cover and upholstery, removing and installing**.
- Cover and cushion for 1/3 rear backrest, removing and installing.
- Cover and cushion for 2/3 rear backrest, removing and installing.
- Headrest guide, removing and installing:

- Headrest guides with slide in locking mechanism --> **Headrest guides with insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Outer headrest guides without slide in locking mechanism --> **Outer headrest guides without insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Inner headrest guides without slide in locking mechanism --> **Inner headrest guides without insertion lock, removing and installing**
- Removing and installing ski sack --> **Ski sack, removing and installing (folding rear seat backrest)**.

cardiagn.com